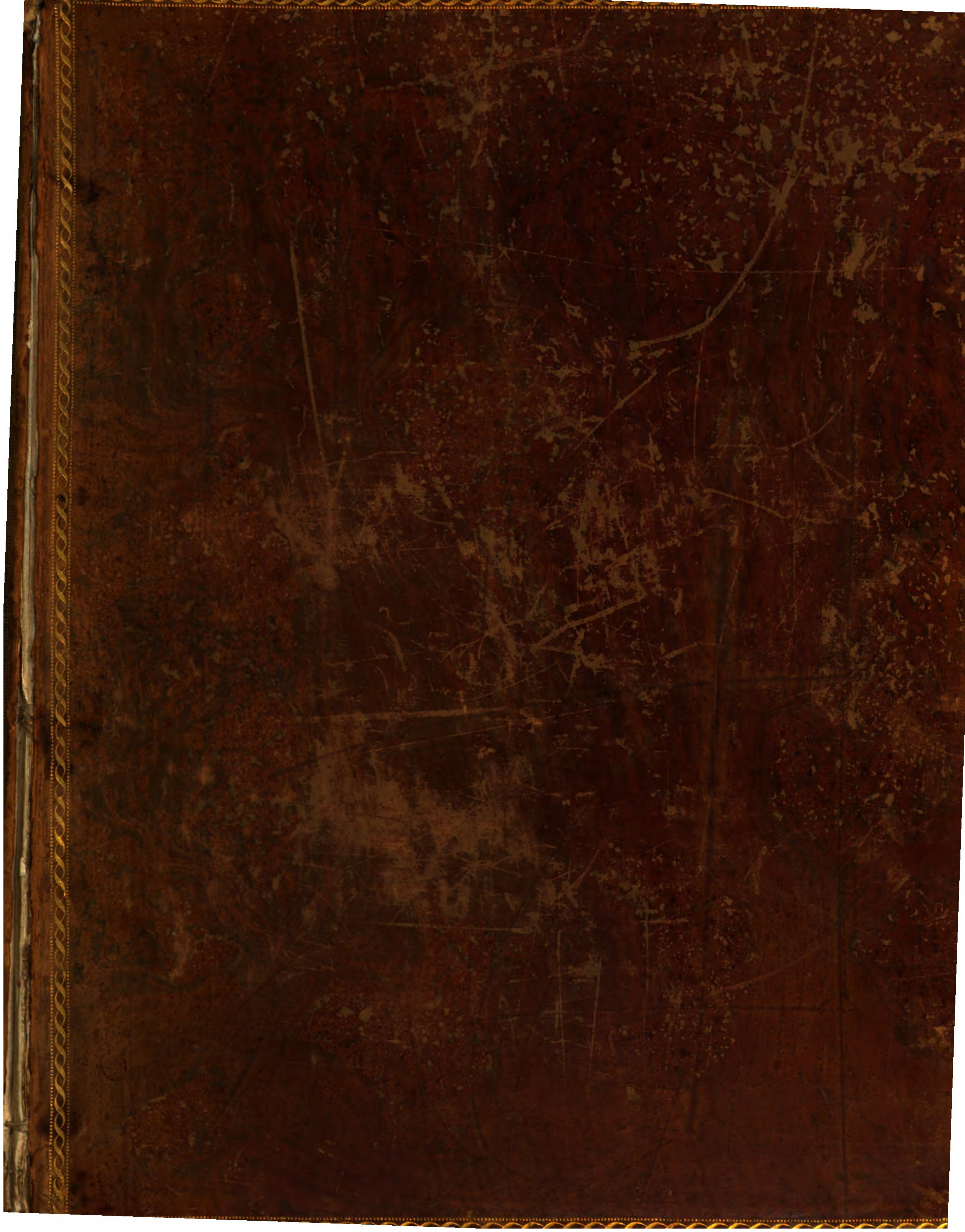






Christian Wink. del.

J. Mich. Söckler. sc. 1779.



~~angle 46.~~

M. J.
5148. a

2

Brit. 46^c



S. Sparrow sc

Published June 7 1788 by J. Hooper

The Entrance of a Street defended by a Chain.

MILITARY
ANTIQUE

RESPECTING

A HISTORY

OF

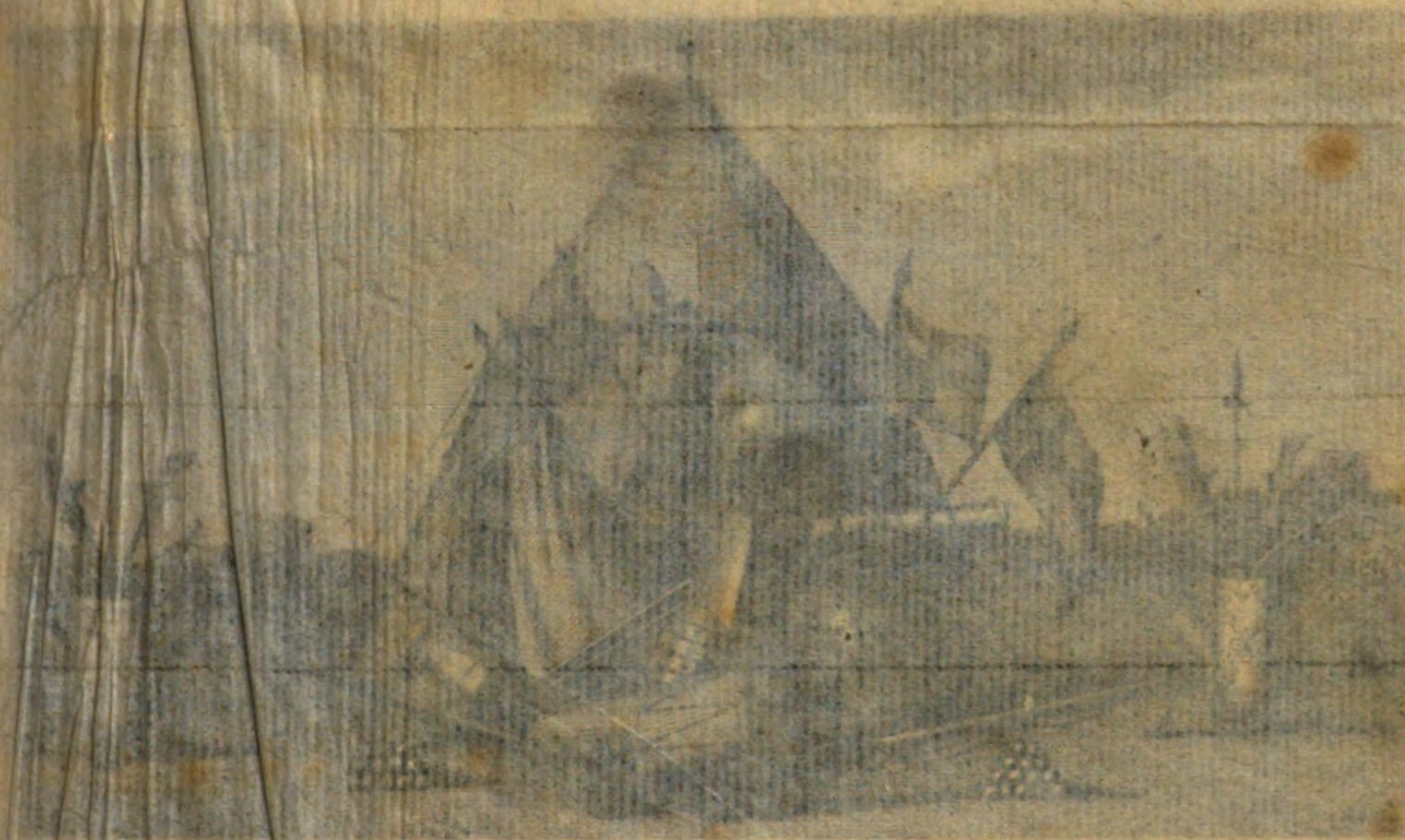
THE ENGLISH ARMY,

FROM

THE CONQUEST TO THE PRESENT TIME.

VOL. II.

By Francis Grose Esq. &c.



LONDON

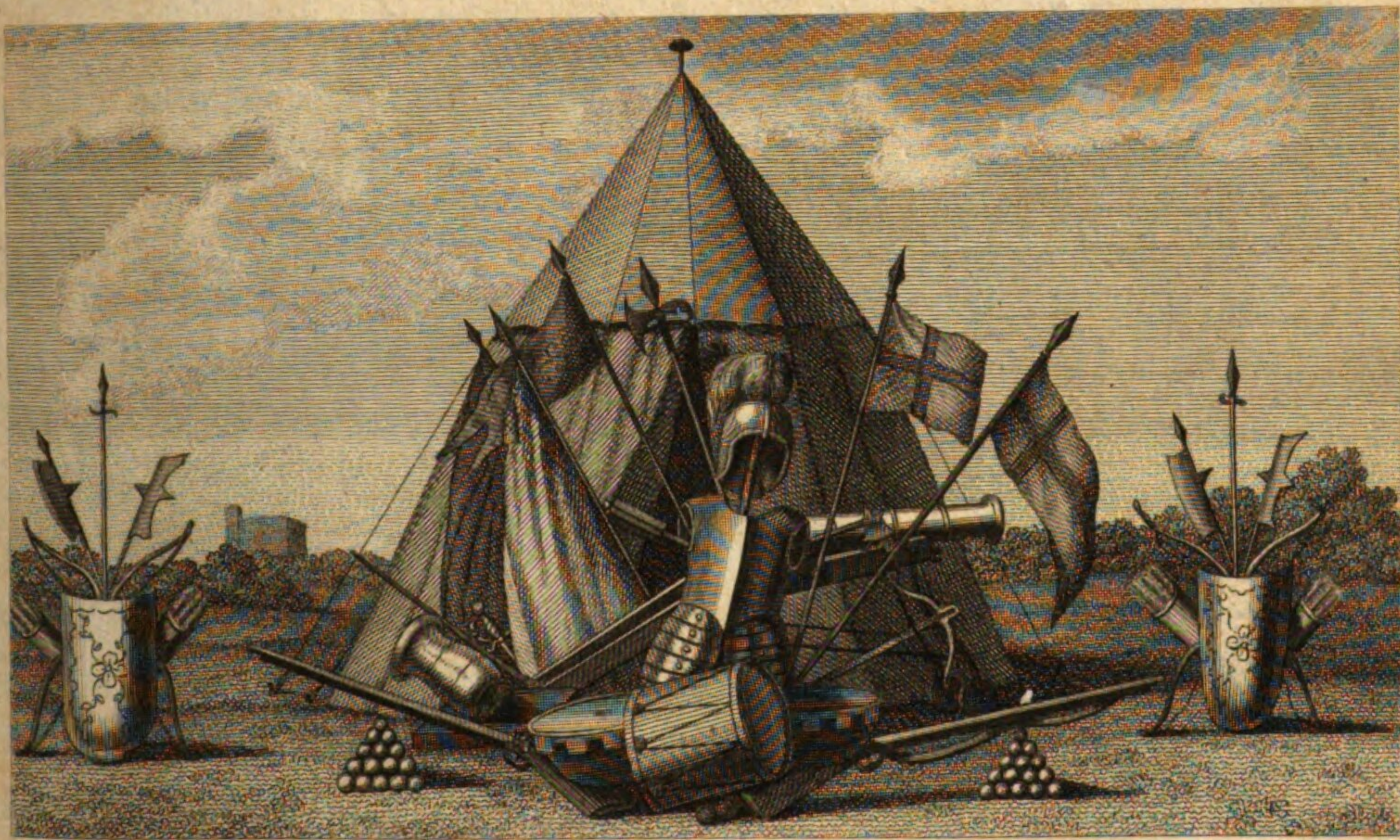
PRINTED FOR S. HOOPER, N° 212, HIGH HOLBORN.

MDCCLXXXVIII.



The Entrance of a Street

MILITARY
ANTIQUE
RESPECTING
A HISTORY
OF
THE ENGLISH ARMY,
FROM
THE CONQUEST TO THE PRESENT TIME.
VOL. II.
By Francis Grose Esq^r. F. A. S.



L O N D O N
PRINTED FOR S. HOOPER, N^o 212, HIGH HOLBORN.
MDCCLXXXVIII.

THE HISTORY OF THE
REIGN OF

CHARLES THE FIRST

BY
WILLIAM WATSON

IN TWO VOLUMES

LONDON
Printed by J. Sturges, in Pall-mall

1719

Price 1s. 6d.

For Sale by J. Sturges

at the Sign of the Crown

in Pall-mall

HISTORY

OF THE

ENGLISH ARMY.

AS the soldiers who composed our ancient armies were not always clothed by government, it seems probable they had not any regular uniform: very little respecting soldiers clothing occurs in history or the records of early date; in several writs commanding the sheriffs to assemble the forces of their counties, the soldiers are directed to come clothed with a suit, but no particular direction is given, either as to its make or colour. Indeed their armour seems to have formed the chief part of the military dress of those times; and this was the soldiers own property, kept either in consequence of their feudal tenures, or provided in obedience to the statute of Winchester, or that of Queen Mary, by which it was superseded. It,

however, appears, that government sometimes clothed the troops, of which Rymer affords us an instance in the year 1337, 11th of King Ed. III. where that king having ordered a thousand men to be raised and trained with lances, five hundred in North Wales and five hundred in South Wales, he also directed the chamberlains of North and South Wales to purchase a sufficient quantity of cloth for making one suit for each man, consisting of a tunic and mantle, the cost of which should be allowed in their accounts at the treasury.

AFTER the practice of furnishing soldiers by indenture took place, it seems, that the captains used to stop part of the soldiers pay, to purchase necessities for them, and also for other purposes; this being complained of, an act of parliament was passed in the 18th of Henry VI. (chap 18.) wherein captains were forbidden to stop any part of a soldier's pay, except for his clothing; "that is to say, if he was waged for half a year, ten shillings a gown for a gentleman, and six shillings and eight pence for a yeoman, upon pain of twenty pounds for every spear, and ten pounds for a bow, to the king;" a spear was the weapon carried by a gentleman, a bow by a yeoman; whence the soldiers of those times, as at present, were denominated from the weapons with which they were armed. By the 2d and 3d of Edward VI. this stoppage is altered to 6s. 8d. per ann. for the livery coat of a yeoman, and 13s. 4d. for that of a gentleman, for a whole year; and that act being repealed in the 1st of Philip and Mary, was in the 4th and 5th of the said reign again revived and made effectual.

IN the conditions of an indenture made between King Edward IV. and Sir Edward Tunstall, knt. for the service of ten spears and one hundred archers in Normandy or other parts of France, it is stipulated, that those soldiers shall be "sufficiently abited." (a) This condition occurs in other indentures, and probably meant

(a) RYMER, A D. 1474, 14 Ed. IV.

no more, than that they should have a sufficient appointment of necessaries, such as shirts, shoes and stockings.

BEFORE this time soldiers were distinguished by badges, of their leaders arms, similar to those now worn by watermen.

AT the battle of St. Albans the army of the Queen of Henry VI. and the Earl of Warwick, as well as that of the duke of York, were distinguished by badges; a mistake concerning them gave the victory to the latter. Besides these badges, the soldiers of those times frequently wore distinguishing scarves. A. D. 1512, 4th of Henry VIII. that king having issued his commission to the earl of Shrewsbury, to raise an army to oppose an invasion, threatened by the French, gives him the following direction: "And ye then to delyver, for us, and in our name, to every of our subjects so retayned in your company, suche badges, tokyns, or lyveres to were, as by you shall be thought most convenient for the same, which we will they shall were for the same purpose." (b)

A CURIOUS manuscript in the college of arms (c) contains the orders of the duke of Norfolk to the conductor of the waward of an army, raised the 36th of Henry VIII. respecting the clothing, which according to our present ideas, seems more calculated for jack puddings or merry Andrews than soldiers: it is here literally transcribed: "Furst, every man sowdyer to have a cote of blew clothe, after suche fashion as all fotemens cotes be made here at London, to serve his majestie in this journey, and that the same be garded with redde clothe, after such sorte as others be made here. And the best sene (d) to be trymmed after such sort as shall please the captayne to devise.

PROVIDED alwayes, that noe gentleman nor other were any manner of silk uppon the garde of his coate, save oonely uppon his

(b) RYMER in anno. || (c) MARKED W. S. and contains a great number of very curious military papers. || (d) "THE best sene," that is, the best looking men.

lefte sleeve, and that noe yoman were any manner of filke upon his faide cote; nor noe gentleman, nor yeoman, to were any manner of badge.

ITEM, every man to provide a payer of hose for every of his men, the right hose to be all red, and the lefte to be blew, with oone stripe of three fingers brode of red upon the outside of his legg from the stocke downward.

ITEM, that every man have an arming doublette of ffustian or chanvas.

ITEM, every man to have a cap to be made to put his sculle or fallette in, after such fashion as I have devised, wh. William Taylor, capper, within Ludgate, doth make for me, where you may have as many of them as ye lyst for eight pence the pece."

THE badge here seems set aside. A proclamation in the same book, signed J. Hertford, explains the distinction adopted in its place. "My lord lieutenant doth farther straytley charge and command, that no man of this armye, nor any other resortinge to the same, be he foldier, victualler, or other, do presum after this proclamation to come within the circuit or presynckt of this campe, oneles he have a red crosse sew'd upon his uppermost garment, upon payne of 15 dayes imprisonment, and to be farther ordered at my lorde lieutenante's pleasure."

THIS was farther enforced by the 48th article of the statutes and ordonances of war, in force 35 Henry VIII. (e) which runs thus: "Also that every man goinge in hostinge or batayle, of what estate, condition or nation he be, of the king's partie and host, except he be a bishop or officer of armes, bear a crosse of Saynt George, sufficient and large, upon the payne that if he be wounded

(e) IN the same vol. i. e. W. S. where there is a MS. bearing the following title, "Statutes and Ordnaunces of War, 35 Henry VIII. printed by Thomas Bartelet, printer to the King's Highness, the xx day of June, the Year of our Lord MDXLIII."

or slayne in the default thereof, he that so woundeth or slaeth him, shall bare no payne therefore: and if he for anie cause passe the bondes of the fields, that then he beare openly a crosse of Saynt George, upon payne to be imprisoned and punished at the king's pleasure. And that noe soldier beare no cognessance but the kinge's and his captaine's, upon payne of death; and that none enemise bare the sayde signe of Saynt George, but if hee bee a prisoner and in warde of his master, upon payne of death."

THE colour of the soldiers coats, notwithstanding the particular before quoted exception, seems generally to have been white, as we learn from the following letter, written by Thomas Lord Wharton to Francis Earl of Shrewsbury, in the Shrewsbury letters, marked vol. D. fol. 109, in the College of Arms.

"My very good Lord, yt may plese yor L: yt yt is the Quene's Maj^s pleasure to send me into the North, and there for a tyme to serve hyr Highness, as it hath been before thys sygnified unto yr lp. And now beyng almost dyspatchyd so as I entend, God wylling, to be with yr lp. at Yorke, the third of August, I have thought good, besyde my lords letters at thys tyme to yr lp. to be so bold as to desyer the same that this horsing to be committed to my charge, may be so chofin, as both her Ma^y may have the same as ye lookyd for of them, and also I honestlye in ferving with them; and as I nothing doubt y^r l. good consideration hereof, so do I thynke myself assured of your honorable favour and assystance in thys, and all other my services, like as I have allways found yr lp. my very good lord, who I shall be rede to honor and esteeme to the best of my poore. I pray you to have their cots to be rede mayde agaynste my comyng, and I shall brynge money for the discharging thereof. Ther cots must be after the old maner, white cots and red crosses, for so my lordes here thynke most fytt, they must also be rede to set forward to the borders at the present, whyche I doubt not also but yr lp. will consydre; and thus beyng bold to trouble yr lp. with thys my reude hard, I grete hast wrytyng,

wrytyng, I shall praye to Almyghty God to send your lp. most long and honorable lyfe. From the cort this xx of August, 1557. The hundreth footemen must be rede at the same daye at Yorke also, to set forwards with theyr cots accordynglye; (f) yr lp. humble at commandement,

Tho. Wharton."

IN the reign of Queen Elizabeth, anno 1584, the colour of the uniform was changed again; for she having caused an hundred men to be raised in Lancashire for the Irish service, a letter from the lords of the council to the sheriff and justices of that county directs, "that besides the arms here specified, the soldiers should be furnished with swords and daggers, likewise convenient doublets and hose, and also a cassocke of some motley or other fadd grene coller, or ruffet." Also every souldier to have five shillings to provide a mantle in Ireland, besyds his livery coat, when he shall be there aryved. (g)

THIS was the regulation for the clothing of the infantry: but we learn from the same authority, that the uniform cloaks worn by the cavalry were red; (h) their fashion is described in a detail of the appointments of the lanciers or horsemen, directed by Queen Elizabeth to be furnished by William Chalderton, bishop of Ches-

(f) COAT and conduct money is a very ancient allowance, and continued till the revolution: the former seems intended to purchase a kind of cheap coat given to the recruits; the conduct money was to subsist them to the regiment or corps, and was paid in proportion to the number of days march, estimating a day's march, at twelve, fifteen, and sometimes at twenty miles. It was paid to disbanded soldiers returning home, as well as to those joining the army.

(g) SEE Peck's *Desiderata Curiosa*.

(h) JULIUS FERRETUS, a writer of the middle of the 16th century, in his *Treatise on the Military Science*, says, that soldiers commonly wore a short red sagum, or frock, which colour was chosen that they might not be discouraged by the sight of the blood from their wounds.

ter,

ter, and his clergy, in part of a thousand launces, to be sent to the assistance of the Low Countries, "And for their apparell (says the order) yt shal be convenient that yow see them furnished of redd clokes, lined, without fleves, and of length to the knee, dubletts, hose, hatts, boots, and all other necessarie apparell for thre bodies."

A VERY particular account of the clothing of the army employed in Ireland, anno 1599, is given by Sir John Harrington, wherein the different articles are specified, and the prices stop'd for them weekly from the subaltern officers and private soldiers. (h)

"BUT I must not forget (says he) nor cease to tell her Majestie's good, wise, and gracious providings for us her captains and our soldiers, in summer heats and winter colds, in hunger and thirst, for our backs and our bellies. That is to say, every captain of a hundred footmen doth receive weekly, upon every Saturday, his full entertainment of twenty-eight shillings, in like case every lieutenant fourteen shillings, and every ensign seven shillings, our sergeant, surgeon, drum and fife, five shillings pay by way of imprest, and every common soldier three shillings, to be delivered to all by the pole weekly. To the four last lower officers two shillings weekly, and for every common soldier twenty-pence weekly, is to be answered to the full value thereof, in good apparel of different kinds, part for winter and part for summer, which is ordered of good quality and stuff for the prices, patterns whereof must be sent to the lord deputy, to be compared and prepared as followeth.

APPAREL FOR AN OFFICER IN WINTER.

A cassock of broad cloth with bays, and trimmed with silk lace, 27 shillings and 7 pence.

(i) NUGÆ Antiquæ, vol. ii. p. 17.

A doublet of canvass with filk buttons, and lined with white linnen, 14 shillings and 5 pence.

Two shirts and two bands, 9 shillings and sixpence.

Three pair of Kersey stockings, at two shillings and four pence, 7 shillings.

Three pair of shoes of neats leather, at 2 shillings and four pence per pair, 7 shillings.

One pair of venetians (k) of broad Kentish cloth, with silver lace, 15 shillings and 4 pence.

IN SUMMER.

Two shirts and bands, 9 shillings and sixpence.

Two pair of shoes, 4 shillings and 8 pence.

One pair of stockings, 2 shillings and eight pence.

A felt hat and band, five shillings and five pence.

APPAREL FOR A COMMON SOLDIER IN WINTER.

A cassock of Kentish broad cloth, lined with cotton, and trimmed, with buttons and loops, 17 shillings and 6 pence.

A doublet of canvass, with white linnen lining, 12 shillings and 6 pence.

A hat-cap coloured, seven shillings.

Two shirts of Osnabridge Holland, and bands, 8 shillings.

Three pair of neats leather shoes, 2 shillings and four pence each, 7 shillings.

Three pair of Kersey stockings, 8 shillings.

One pair of venetians, of Kentish broad cloth, with buttons, loops, and lining of linnen, thirteen shillings and four pence.

(k) VENETIANS, a sort of long trowsers. "To make Venetians down below the garters." See Harrington's Epigram on the Taylor.

IN SUMMER.

Two shirts of Osnabridge, and two falling Holland bands, seven shillings.

Two pair neats leather shoes, four shillings and eight pence.

One pair of stockings, two shillings and eight pence.

A hat cap coloured, three shillings.

FROM the Votes of the House of Commons, 30th of K. Charles II. A. D. 1678, the prices of the clothing of the army were as follows:

			l.	s.	d.
Foot per man	-	-	2	13	0
Dragoons	-	-	6	10	0
Horse	-	-	9	0	0
Horse grenadiers	-	-	8	0	0

THE prices of the clothing for the non commission officers and trumpets and drummers is not mentioned.

AN original contract in 1693, between the right honourable the lord Castleton and Mr. Francis Molineaux, a clothier, preserved in the British Museum among the manuscripts of the Harleian collection, No. 6844, gives the prices of the different articles of clothing for a regiment of foot at that time, both as charged by the clothier, and estimated by an after valuation, made by the officers of the regiment, the original contract being deemed an overcharge.

PRIVATE SENTINELL.

Prices charged in the contract. Prices allowed.

	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Grey coat and breeches	1	12	0	1	5	0
Hat	0	6	6	0	5	0
Shoes	0	4	0	0	4	0
Shirt	0	3	6	0	3	0
Neckcloth	0	1	0	0	0	10
Stockings	0	2	0	0	1	8
	2	9	0	1	19	6

SERJEANT.

	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Grey coat and breeches	4	12	0	3	12	0
Shirt	0	6	6	0	5	6
Neckcloth	0	2	0	0	2	0
Hat	0	12	0	0	10	0
Stockings	0	5	0	0	4	6
Shoes	0	4	0	0	4	0
	6	1	6	4	18	0

DRUMMER.

Purple coat and grey breeches	3	10	0	3	0	0
Hat	0	6	6	0	6	0
Neckcloth	0	1	0	0	10	0
Shirt	0	3	6	0	3	0
Stockings	0	2	0	0	1	8
Shoes	0	4	0	0	4	0
	4	7	0	4	4	8
Grenadier serjeants cap	0	16	0	0	14	0
Private grenadiers cap	0	9	0	0	8	0
Drummers badge	0	3	6	0	3	6

FROM the above account we learn, that the soldiers and serjeants coats and breeches were then grey; the coats of the drummers purple with grey breeches, and that they were likewise distinguished by badges.

THE report from the committee appointed to consider the state of his majesty's land forces and marines, made the 6th of June 1746, containing a complete investigation of the particulars respecting clothing, and being the most authentic information that can be procured on that head, is here extracted.

“THE

“THE first thing necessary to be stated relating to this matter are the regulations for the clothing of his majesty's forces in time of peace, dated the 20th of November 1729, which regulations are as followeth, viz.

FOR A TROOPER.

A new cloth coat, well lined with serge,
A new waistcoat,
A new laced hat,
A pair of new large buff gloves, with stiff tops, once in two years,
A pair of new boots as they shall be wanting.

As it is difficult to fix a period of time for providing saddles, it is to be left to the judgment of the general officer who may be appointed to review them.

HOUSINGS, caps, new horse furniture, bitts, and stirrup-irons, cloaks faced with the livery of the regiment, intirely new, and new buff or buff coloured cross-belts, to be provided as they shall be wanting.

THE second mounting is to consist of new laced hats, and horse collars.

FOR A DRAGOON.

A new cloth coat, well lined with serge,
A new waistcoat,
A pair of new breeches,
A new laced hat,
A pair of new large buff coloured gloves, with stiff tops,
A pair of new boots, as they shall be wanting.

SADDLES to be left to the judgment of the general officer who may be appointed to review them.

HOUSINGS, caps, new horse furniture, bitts and stirrup-irons; and cloaks faced with the livery of the regiment, intirely new, as they shall be wanting.

New buff or buff coloured accoutrements, viz. a shoulder belt, with a pouch, a waist belt sufficient to carry a sword, with a place to receive the bayonet, and sling for the arms, such as the general officers appointed to inspect the clothing shall approve of, as they shall be wanting.

THE second mounting is to consist of new laced hats, gloves and horse collars.

FOR A FOOT SOLDIER.

A good full bodied cloth coat, well lined, which may serve for the waistcoat the second year,

A waistcoat,

A pair of good Kersey breeches,

A pair of good strong stockings,

A pair of good strong shoes,

Two good shirts, and two good neckcloths,

A good strong hat well laced.

FOR THE SECOND YEAR.

A good cloth coat well lined, as the first year,

A waistcoat made of the former year's coat,

A pair of new Kersey breeches,

A pair of good strong stockings,

A pair of good strong shoes,

A good shirt and a neckcloth,

A good strong hat well laced.

For the fusilier regiments, caps once in two years.

THE new waistcoat, in the first year, is only given to regiments new raised, and to additional men : who are likewise to be furnished with two pair of stockings and two shirts.

AND

AND whereas it has been found, that abuses in the clothing have been chiefly committed by regiments in the service abroad; his majesty therefore requires, that the governor or commanding officer of the garrison of each place, as well as the commanding officer of each regiment, shall see the clothing and accoutrements that shall be sent abroad to such regiments, delivered out to the soldiers in the several species according to these regulations: and that the said governor and commanding officer shall certify the delivery of every such clothing and accoutrements, with the state and condition the same is in, to the board of general officers, to be entered by the judge advocate general, in the books of his office; to be transmitted by him to the clothing-board for the ensuing year: which general officers are not to pass any contract for the said regiments, if it does appear to them by the said certificate, that the clothing and accoutrements have not been delivered according to the before mentioned regulations: which will prevent the like abuses for the future.

As to the clothing of the regiments in Great Britain and Ireland, which are under the inspection of such general officers as his majesty shall think fit to appoint for their review; his majesty requires, that the said general officers do particularly inspect the clothing and accoutrements of the said regiments, and see that they are clothed and accoutred according to the foregoing regulation: and if any deficiency be found either in quantity or quality of the said clothing, they are to report the same to his majesty, in order to receive further orders therein.

THE next thing proper to be inserted is, the warrant for regulating the clothing of his majesty's horse and dragoon forces, dated the 26th of March, 1736: which recites, that the general officers of the army to whom his majesty was pleased to refer the fixing a periodical time for providing several species of clothing and accoutrements for the horse and dragoon forces, had, in obedience to his majesty's commands, met, and taken the same under their consideration:

tion : and in their report to his majesty, bearing date the 11th day of March preceding, had given their opinion that the clothing for the horse and dragoons, and the times for providing for them, should be as hereunder mentioned : and his majesty having approved thereof, was pleased thereby to authorise and direct, that the same should be duly observed and put in execution, viz.

FOR A TROOPER.

A new cloth coat, well lined with serge,
 A new waistcoat,
 A new laced hat,
 A pair of new large buff gloves, with stiff tops, once in two years.

At the respective times of clothing, to be delivered to each troop of horse, consisting of thirty-one or thirty-three men, four new saddles, with holster pipes, buckets, stirrup leathers, and stirrup irons, and six bitts ; and to each troop of horse, of twenty-two or twenty-four men on the establishment of Ireland, three new saddles with a proportionable quantity of holster pipes, buckets, &c. as before mentioned, and four bitts.

NEW boots to be supplied every third clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW headstalls, reins, breastplates and cruppers, to be delivered every third clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW housings and caps to be delivered every fifth clothing to the whole regiment.

CLOAKS, faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, to be delivered every sixth clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW cross-belts of the best buff, that can be had in England, to be delivered every tenth clothing to the whole regiment.

THE second mounting is to consist of new laced hats and horse collars.

FOR

FOR A DRAGOON.

A new cloth coat, well lined with serge,
A new waistcoat,
A pair of new breeches,
A new laced hat,
A pair of new large buff coloured gloves, with stiff tops.

AT the respective times of clothing, to be delivered to each troop of dragoons, consisting of fifty-two men, six new saddles with holster pipes, buckets, stirrup leathers, and stirrup irons, and nine bits; and to each troop of dragoons, of twenty-two or twenty-four men, on the establishment of Ireland, three new saddles, with a proportionable quantity of holster pipes, buckets, &c. as before mentioned, and four bits.

NEW boots to be supplied every third clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW head stalls, reins, breast plates and cruppers, to be delivered every third clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW housings and caps to be delivered every fifth clothing to the whole regiment.

CLOAKS faced with the livery of the regiment, entirely new, to be delivered every sixth clothing to the whole regiment.

NEW accoutrements of the best buff that can be had in England; viz. a shoulder belt with a pouch, a waist belt sufficient to carry the sword, with a place to receive the bayonet, and sling for the arms, such as the general officers, appointed to inspect the clothing shall approve of, to be delivered every tenth clothing to the whole regiment.

THE second mounting is to consist of new laced hats, gloves, and horse collars.

AND his majesty in pursuance of these regulations required, that the colonel of each regiment should regulate the delivery of each of
the

the species before mentioned, from the expiration of the then subsisting assignment, which was to be in the year 1737, agreeable to the opinion of the said board of general officers; and directed that, as it sometimes happens, that several of the above-mentioned species are lost, or totally destroyed, by extraordinary accidents, the colonel, in such case, should supply the same, that the regiments clothing may always appear in good order.

AND his majesty further requires, that the colonel of every regiment of horse, dragoons and foot, shall upon his providing a new set of clothing for his regiment, sign and give the following certificate, viz.

"I DO hereby certify, that I have contracted for, and am to deliver, or cause to be delivered, to the regiment under my command, on or before the eleventh day of June, in this present year ——— patterns of which have been inspected and approved of by the clothing board," &c.

AND his majesty further requires, that the commanding officer of every regiment of horse, dragoons and foot in quarters, shall sign and give the certificate following, viz.

"I DO hereby certify, that by command of my colonel I have delivered to the regiment under his command, the following clothing," &c.

BOTH which certificates are to be annually transmitted to the secretary at war, to be laid before his majesty.

YOUR committee in order to obtain the fullest information possible with regard to the clothing of the army, examined the agents, clothiers, and other persons who have been concerned in paying for, making or delivering clothes for the several regiments. And first Mr. Maynard Guerin, agent to the duke of Montagu's regiment of horse, being examined, said, that, in this regiment, the whole off-reckonings are assigned to the clothier for his security, who pays the other tradesmen; that the colonel cannot draw for the money, but can only assign the off-reckonings, and that he must
assign

assign the whole: that the foot are clothed annually: the horse and dragoons every two years, and the horse and grenadier guards every three years: and that the off-reckonings for the clothing of these last troops, which is to be delivered this summer, will not be paid till the year 1750.

BEING required to explain to the committee what is meant by the off-reckonings, he said, that the gross off-reckonings consist of all the pay of the non-commission officers and private men, above the subsistence; and that the net off-reckonings are the produce of the gross off-reckonings reserved for the clothing of the men, after the warrant deductions of 1s. in the pound and one day's pay of the whole regiment, for Chelsea hospital, and also the deduction of 2d. in the pound for the agent, are made at the pay office: that the ballance of the pay of the officers, over and above their subsistence, after the warrant deductions are made, and the respited pay, if there is any, is charged to the officer, is called clearings: which are paid by the paymaster to the agent, who pays them to the officers, and there finds his two-pences.

BEING asked the reason, why the off-reckonings of the horse and grenadier guards, would be no sooner paid than the year 1750; he said, that the fund which the colonel has to assign for the clothing to be delivered this year, and which was contracted for in November last by the king's orders, commences to grow due only from the 25th of June, 1746, for the whole army; and the off-reckonings of three years being required to discharge the clothing of a troop of horse or grenadier guards, they will not be due till June, 1749: and if they were paid as punctually now as they were in time of peace, they will not in course of payment, be all paid till March or April, 1750; the off-reckonings for the last clothing not being cleared farther than to the 24th day of June last, and the first half-yearly payment upon the current assignment, not being to be made till some time in July, 1747.

THIS evidence, so far as it relates to the time when the off-reckonings upon the current assignment will be paid, was confirmed by several members of the house present ; one of whom added, that the colonel either pays the clothier ready money, or allows him interest for forbearance.

ANOTHER member of the house informed the committee, that the foot have annually a new full clothing, except waistcoats, which are made of the old coats of the preceding year.

MR. GUERIN being further examined, said. That the colonel cannot make a valid assignment of the off-reckonings, till the clothier has exhibited to a board of general officers, appointed by his majesty for that purpose, the patterns of each species of clothing he is to provide ; which patterns are left with the secretary to the clothing-board, at the office of the comptroller of the army, and compared with sealed patterns already approved by the king ; and if found conformable thereto, are sealed by the general officers, who compose that board, in testimony of their approbation ; and when the clothier has completed his clothing ready to be delivered, a general officer is appointed to view the said clothing, who certifies in writing, that he has found it conformable to his majesty's instructions in quantity and quality ; which certificate, together with the colonel's assignment of the off-reckonings is produced by the clothier to the board of general officers who pass the assignment ; but that the contract between the colonel and clothier is not laid before any officer whatsoever ; nor is any accompt brought afterwards of the expence of that clothing.

BEING asked, whether the clothier has the whole off-reckonings, if the regiment be not complete ; he said, that the clothier provides a clothing for a complete regiment as upon the establishment, or at least as it is expected : and he added, that there are several other articles of expence defrayed out of the clothing fund, as the charge of package, of carriage by land or water, of insurance when sent abroad, of interest more or less as the off-reckonings are paid, of fees

fees of offices, of clothing lost by desertion, of small accoutrements, colours, drums, and other contingent charges.

BEING examined in relation to the clothing of the third troop of horse guards, and of Sir Robert Rich's and Sir John Cope's regiments of dragoons, to which the witness is agent; he said, that only the off-reckonings of the warrant men are carried to the assignment: that the off-reckonings of each of the said two regiments amount to 4065l. 8s. 2d. but that he (the witness) has no concern in the clothing.

As to the regiments of foot, which the witness is concerned for, he only said, that the subsistence of the men allowed for clothing lost by deserters, is paid to the respective colonels, and that the off-reckonings only are included in the assignment.

MR. HENRY TAYLOR, agent to Sir John Legonier's regiment of horse, being examined in relation to the clothing of the said regiment, said, that the assignments of the off-reckonings for clothing are always made in his name; and that he receives the money at the Pay-office, after the usual deductions are made, and accompts for it to the colonel; but that he does not keep the clothiers account, or pay the tradesmens bills, as part of his office; though he has sometimes paid money upon account, by the colonel's order; and has once or twice, bought hats, and other necessaries, for the whole regiment.

AND he presented to the committee a paper entituled "CLOTHING Sir John Legonier's regiment;" containing an account of the amount of the off-reckonings for the time therein mentioned, and also an estimate of the expence of the clothing; which paper is as followeth, viz.

Two years off-reckonings for Sir John Legonier's	}	l.	s.	d.
regiment of horse, from the 25th of March, 1743,				
to the 24th of March, 1744-5, amount to three				
thousand four hundred and fourteen pounds				
four shillings.		34	4	0
-				
-				
-				
C 2				TO

TO BE FURNISHED EVERY CLOTHING.

	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Coat and waistcoat	3	14	0			
Two hats	1	10	0			
A pair of boots	1	2	6			
Two collars	0	7	4			
A pair of gloves, stitiched the Sweedish fashion	0	7	0			
				7	0	10

EXTRAORDINARIES, ONE THIRD OF
WHICH EVERY CLOTHING.

Saddles	1	8	0			
Houfings and caps	2	2	0			
Small leathers	1	0	0			
Bits and stirrups	0	9	0			
Cloak	2	0	0			
Sword	1	7	0			
Scull caps	0	2	0			
Cross belts. The present cost 4l.	1	15	0			
				10	3	0 $\frac{1}{2}$
				is	3	7
					8	
					10	8
						6

In case of a battle, when the whole clothing and
accoutrements are lost, it will cost 17l. 3s. 10d.
to equip another man.

306 Men at 10l. 8s. 6d. comes to	3190	1	0
13 Trumpeters coats, 10l.	130	0	0
$\frac{1}{3}$ Part of 100l. for standards, banners and kettle drums	33	6	8
Total (interest not included)	3353	7	8
			AND

AND the witness being examined in relation to the said accompt, said, that the computation is made up at an average, as in time of actual service, for two years past, when more clothes are required than in time of peace: that some of the articles mentioned in the said accompt, were paid for by him; and that he computed the expence of the rest from the clothier's charges: that he (the witness) believes, the real expence has exceeded the computation above 100l. since the war, this regiment being always complete, and having, both at present, and the last year, five men more than the compliment expected: that the off-reckoning of the whole number of men upon the establishment, and of the warrant men, allowed the colonel, are included in the assignment; but that clothing is provided only for the effectives, who are 319: that the colonel pays ready money for the goods furnished by the several tradesmen, and has sometimes taken money from interest for that purpose; but that he has not charged any interest in his accompt; nor does the government allow any.

THAT only the trumpeters coats, which are furnished every two years, are charged in the accompt; because no estimate could be made of the extraordinaries, the wear and tear of a trumpeter being less than that of a private man; and that one third of the extraordinaries, which, it is computed, the men should have completely new every six years, is calculated, at an average, to be wanting every two years.

CAPT. ALEXANDER WILSON, agent to the first troop of horse grenadier guards, being examined as to the amount of the off-reckonings, and the charge of the clothing of this troop, said: that the assignment of the off-reckonings from June, 1740, to June, 1743, was for 2823l. 5s. 9d.; and the payments for clothing amounted to 1946l. 2s. 1½d. and that he (the witness) paid the balance to the colonel in money: that in this sum of 1946l. 2s. 1½d. the legal interest was computed, according to the respective times of payment of the off-reckonings, which payments were then certain;

tain; and that several other necessaries, the charge of which the witness did not know, were provided by General Dormer, who then commanded the troop, out of this balance; but that, he believed, the whole charge of the clothing, with all the necessary repairs included, would be within the sum of 2254l. 5s. 9d. That in the second troop of grenadier guards, to which the witness was formerly agent, the assignment preceding that last mentioned, was for the said sum of 2823l. 5s. 9d.; and the payments for clothing and interest amounted to 1872l. os. 2d. and that the witness paid the balance to the colonel: that several other things were provided, which were not included in that account; but that he believed, the whole would come within the sum of 2254l. 5s. 9d. before mentioned.

BEING asked the reason of the differences in the price of the clothing of the two troops, said, he supposed, that either the clothing of the first troop was better than that of the other, or else, that the accoutrements of the second troop were in a better condition than those of the first.

BEING further examined in relation to the off-reckonings, and the method of clothing the army in general, he gave the committee a like account of the precautions taken in regard to the clothing, and the commencement and determination of the off-reckonings for that purpose, as had been before given by Mr. Guerin; and farther said, that the clothing of the horse and grenadier guards is exempted from the inspection of the clothing-board; but that, in all other respects, the said troops are under the same regulations as the rest of the army: that if a colonel gets a troop in the year the clothing is to be delivered, he makes one assignment of the off-reckonings for three years to come, which assignment stands good; though the colonel should die or be removed, in the interval; and that if any repairs are wanting in a troop, when a colonel receives the command of it, he (the witness) apprehends they are to be made good out of the current assignment;

ment: that although he had never known any proceedings to oblige a former colonel to make these deficiencies good, yet it is customary, in the dragoons and foot, for the former colonel to defray the expence of what is wanted; and, if he should refuse, the witness apprehends, from the nature of the service, that the succeeding colonel may put a CAVEAT into the Pay-office, to stop the payment due upon the current assignment, untill those deficiencies are supplied: and that, if the money should be stopped at the Pay-office, the assignee must have recourse to the colonel, who is the original assignor; but that he (the witness) never knew any dispute of this kind happen, which was not amicably adjusted: that during the currency of the assignment made by the late earl of Effingham, in the second troop of grenadier guards, and in the fourth troop of horse guards, several particulars of clothing and accoutrements were wanted, which, by the consent of the present earl of Effingham, were made good, and charged to him; and that, about November last, the witness had an account delivered to him, of repairs wanting in the first troop of grenadier guards, to the amount, as he estimated, of about 100l. which account he gave to the former agent, to be communicated to Lord Cobham, the preceding colonel: that this affair is at present undetermined, but, as the witness believes, will be very soon accomodated.

BEING examined in relation to the clothing of the regiments of dragoons, which he is concerned for, commanded by Lieutenant General Hawley, Lord Rothes, Lord Mark Kerr, Major General Hamilton, and Major General St. George, he said, that the complete new clothing and accoutrements of a serjeant of dragoons cost 30l. 3s. 6d. of a corporal, 16l. 2s. 6d. of a drummer, 18l. 19s. 7d. and of a private dragoon, 15l. 6s. 6d. That when a regiment is new raised, the net off-reckonings generally fall short of the sums, for the clothing of a serjeant, 17l. 9s. 11½d. of a corporal, 2l. 6s. 8d. of a drummer, 5l. 3s. 9d. and of a private dragoon, 6l. 9s. 0½d. and that therefore the government allows a sum of money, to make up
the

the extra clothing; but that when a regiment is raised, and completely clothed and accoutred, several species of that clothing will last two or three clothings; whereby a saving arises, which in time of peace, amounts to a considerable sum, but in time of war is much less.

THAT the off-reckonings of General Hawley's regiment, from June, 1743, to June, 1745, amounted to 4065l. 15s. and the payments for clothing to 3006l. 15s. including interest at 5 per cent. and loss by discount upon tallies, in which the off-reckonings from June, 1744, to June, 1745, are to be paid: that General Hawley, when abroad with the regiment, provided several necessaries, of the amount of which, he (the witness) had no return; but that he accompts for the surplus, as he receives it, to General Hawley.

THAT the current assignment, commencing the 25th of June, 1745, is for 4906l. 15s. and the charge of clothing already paid for and bespoke, including interest, and loss by tallies, amounts to 5286l. 17s. 11d. which exceeds the net off-reckonings, 380l. 2s. 11d. that he is ordered by the paymaster, to take the off-reckonings in tallies, except what is under 50l. which is to be paid in money, and that he computes the loss upon the present assignment as if the payment of the off-reckonings was to continue in tallies for the whole two years.

THAT this regiment has a claim of 1032l. 12s. upon government, for clothing and accoutrements lost during the campaign in 1745, at Fontenoy and Brussels; towards payment of which, 285l. is expected for the accoutrements of 95 horses lost, at 3l. per horse, which sum leaves the claim at 747l. 12s. And the witness added, that, as he has been informed, Lord Stair remembers an instance in the late war, of an allowance made by the publick, for clothes lost in service.

WITH respect to Lord Mark Kerr's regiment of dragoons, the witness said, that the current assignment, commencing the 25th of June, 1745, was for 4059l. 1s. and the clothing amounted to 3875l. 7s. 1d.

7s. 1d. including interest, and loss by tallies: that vacancies were allowed in this regiment by the king's warrant, for a year and a quarter, in order to replace eighty-four horses draughted for other regiments; but that fund diminishing, as horses were bought for new raised men, the regiment has a claim of 3l. per horse (the sum allowed for accoutrements) from the said regiments; which is to be settled amongst themselves, and will produce 252l. and consequently make the ballance to Lord Mark Kerr 436l. 7s. 11d.

THAT the off-reckonings of Major General Hamilton's regiment, are the same as Lord Mark Kerr's, and for the same time; and that the clothing already paid for comes to 3023l. 3s. 2d. and what is to be furnished amounts to 1959l. 3s. 6d. occasioned by the losses at Preston Pans, and Falkirk. That General Hamilton has no fund to supply these deficiencies, except by warrant from the king; and that in all the estimates, he (the witness) has included the half mounting, and the whole clothing for two years complete.

BEING required to give the committee an account of the off-reckonings, and the expences of clothing Lord Mark Kerr's regiment, since he (the witness) has been concerned for it, he said, that the first assignment made to him, commenced in April, 1733, for two years; and amounted to 2895l. 2s. 6d. but that at Christmas, 1733, one corporal and nine private dragoons were added to each troop; the off-reckonings of which additional came to 372l. 5s. 7d. and that 3l. per man was allowed, for these additional, for accoutrements, amounting to 180l. that the whole allowance for clothing, &c. was 3447l. 8s. 1d. and the disbursements amounted to 3512l. 10s. 7d. so that there was a deficiency of 65l. 2s. 6d.

THAT the next assignment commenced in April, 1735, and ended the 24th of June, 1737, and came to 3747l. 15s. 0½d. two months off-reckonings amounting to 293l. 8s. 10d. being allowed by the king to make good the former deficiency; and the disbursements for clothing were 1930l. 13s. 7½d. so that the balance to the colonel was 1817l. 1s. 5d. that in the disbursement stated, he includes

interest for the whole sum disbursed, the tradesmen being paid ready money, but not the interest of the balance in favour of the colonel; and that he lessened the interest, as he received the money half yearly at the pay office.

THAT the next assignment commenced in June, 1737, for two years, and amounted to 3454l. 6s. 2d. and the disbursements were 1953l. 11s. 4d. including interest as before explained; and left a balance to the colonel of 1500l. 14s. 10d.

THAT the next assignment commenced in June, 1739, for two years; and amounted to 3459l. 2s. 5d. this being leap year: that this year by warrant, dated August 17th, one serjeant and ten private men were added to each troop, for which additional 198l. at 3l. per man, was allowed for accoutrements, and a further allowance of 235l. 10s. for horse furniture, besides the off-reckonings upon their pay, for two years, which came to 606l. 5s. 8d. the whole off-reckonings and allowances amounting to 4498l. 18s. 1d. and that the disbursements, including interest, were 3719l. 3s. 9½d. which left a balance to the colonel of 779l. 14s. 3½d.

THAT the assignment in 1741, was for 4059l. 15s. the regiment consisting of the same numbers as in the two preceding years: and the disbursements including interest, were 2342l. 16s. 7d. and left a balance to the colonel of 1716l. 18s. 5d.

THAT the assignment in 1743, was for the same sum as in the former year, and the disbursements, including 234l. 2s. 2d. for interest, and 101l. 9s. 11d. the loss by discount upon tallies, in which the off-reckonings, from June, 1744, to June, 1745, are to be paid, amounted to 2676l. 14s. 6d. which leaves a balance to the colonel of 1383l. 0s. 6d.

THE witness added to this part of his evidence, that all the regiments of dragoons in Great Britain, were augmented in the manner before mentioned, and at the same times; and, as he supposed, had the same allowances.

BEING

BEING required to give the committee an account of the off-reckonings and charge of the clothing of a regiment of foot, of ten companies, consisting of seventy private men, three serjeants, three corporals, and two drummers per company, he said, that the off-reckonings amount to 2173l. 0s. 1d. and he produced an estimate of the charge of the clothing of such a regiment; which estimate is as followeth; viz.

ESTIMATE OF CLOTHING FOR A REGIMENT OF FOOT, CONSISTING OF TEN COMPANIES, AND EACH COMPANY OF THREE SERJEANTS, THREE CORPORALS, TWO DRUMMERS, AND SEVENTY PRIVATE MEN.

SERJEANTS.

	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
A hat - -	0	10	6						
Coat and pair of breeches	3	10	0						
Shirt and roller -	0	5	9						
Pair of hose -	0	3	0						
Shoes - -	0	3	6						
A fash - -	0	5	0						
Package fees and carriage	0	1	0						
Making the preceding year's coats into waist- coats - -	0	2	6						
				5	1	3			
Twenty-nine serjeants more at the same rate - -				146	16	3			
Carried over -							151	17	6

	l.	s.	d.
Brought over	-	151	17 6

CORPORALS.

	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
A hat	0	2	6			
Coat and pair of breeches	1	5	0			
Shirt and roller	0	3	8			
Pair of hose	0	1	2			
Shoes	0	3	6			
Shoulder knot	0	1	6			
Package fees and carriage	0	1	0			
Making the preceding year's coats into waist- coats	0	1	0			
				1	19	4
Twenty-nine corporals more at the same rate				57	0	8
						59 0 0

DRUMMERS.

A hat	0	2	6			
Coat and pair of breeches	2	10	0			
Shirt and roller	0	3	8			
Pair of hose	0	1	2			
Shoes	0	3	6			
Belts and flings	0	10	0			
Package fees and carriage	0	1	0			
Making the preceding year's coats into waist- coats	0	1	0			
				3	12	10
Nineteen drummers more at the same rate				69	3	10
						72 16 8
Carried forward						283 14 2

N. B. The drum major's suit amounts
to the expence of a serjeant's.

PRIVATE

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

29

	l.	s.	d.
Brought forward	283	14	2

PRIVATE MEN.

	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
A hat	0	2	6			
Coat and pair of breeches	1	5	0			
Shirt and roller	0	3	8			
Pair of hose	0	1	2			
Shoes	0	3	6			
Package fees and carriage	0	1	0			
Making the preceding year's coats into waist- coats	0	1	0			
				1	17	10
Six hundred and ninety-nine pri- vate men more at the same rate				1322	5	6
				1324	3	4
Interest eighteen months for the ready money price of the foregoing particulars				120	11	10
Discount of five per cent. on land tax tallies, in which the clothing from 25th of June, 1744, is to be paid				86	8	6
Carried over				1814	17	10

FOR

	l.	s.	d.
Brought over	-	1814	17 10

FOR GRENADIERS CAPS MORE THAN HATS.

	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Three serjeants caps at 20s.	3	0	0			
3 Corporals						
2 Drummers						
70 Centinels						
75 Caps, at 7s. each	-	26	5 0			
		29	5 0			
Fees in passing the assignment	12	0	0			
					41	5 0

EXTRA THINGS IN WAR.

To one hundred waistcoats	}	35	0	0		
at least, wanting every						
year, at 7s.						
To repair of swords and	}	70	0	0		
accoutrements yearly						
					105	0 0
						146 5 0
						1961 2 10
Balance	-					211 17 3
By the off-reckonings of a regiment of foot, of ten	}					
companies, each consisting of three serjeants,						
three corporals, two drummers, and seventy pri-						
vate men, for one year of 365 days						
						2173 0 1

BEING examined in relation to the said estimate, he said, that he calculated the expence of the clothing at an average, by setting down

down the price he paid for clothes, and computing the interest for eighteen months, and the loss by tallies : that in Flanders the grenadiers have generally caps every year, but that at home, they sometimes have not : that when a new colonel is appointed, the regiment is always clothed to the full establishment ; the clothes being either actually delivered, or paid for by the preceding colonel. And the witness added, that the estimate he had delivered in, was made upon a full establishment of seventy private men, besides corporals ; but that, generally speaking, only sixty-seven private men and three corporals, commonly called rank and file men, are clothed.

THAT in time of war, the off-reckonings exceed the expence of clothing 360l. 10s. including interest for eighteen months, and the loss by tallies, upon the whole sum disbursed ; but that from the said balance must be deducted the incidental charges specified in the account delivered in ; that in time of peace he reckoned the disbursements for a complete clothing for seven hundred men, thirty serjeants, thirty corporals and twenty drummers, will amount to 1769l. 14s. 4d. including interest, but no loss by tallies ; and that in cases by new levies or augmentations the government allow for extra-clothing about 30s. or 31s. per man, either in money, or in the off-reckonings of such new men, if their establishment commences before the time of the usual clothing, to the period of the usual clothing, in order to make up that money : that the clothing of a new man amounts to 1l. 17s. 10d. above the usual charge, he having double linen, double stockings, a waistcoat, a sword and leather accoutrements : and that the men have one pair of shoes at every clothing ; but they not being sufficient to serve them the whole year, 6d. per week is stopt out of their pay, which is accounted for to the soldier every two months, by act of parliament : that in time of war, clothes for only six hundred and seventy are usually sent at first ; though the clothes kept back are sometimes sent for ; and that he (the witness) had clothed three regiments full, to
a man ;

a man ; but that in time of peace, clothing in general delivered for the whole number upon the establishment, the companies being constantly kept complete : and the witness added, that corporals are always deemed rank and file men, but are not included in the seventy men per company.

AND in order to state to the committee the real expence of the clothing of a regiment of foot, he produced an accompt of payments made for clothing, provided for Lord Mark Kerr's regiment of foot, in the year 1730 and 1731 ; and also several accompts of payments made for clothing, provided for Major General Bragg's regiment, in the years 1742, 1743, 1744 and 1745 ; which accompts are annexed in the appendix, No. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7.

AND being asked how the payments for the clothing of Bragg's regiment came to be more in 1745 than they were in 1744 ; he said, that seventy men were draughted from the two additional companies to be sent to Flanders in March 1744-5 : which occasioned the want of a complete new clothing for the men raised in their room, there being no old coats to be made into waistcoats ; and that besides the wear and tear of leather accoutrements was very considerable : but he acknowledged, that this regiment has a claim upon the publick for extra-clothing lost in battle.

MR. WILLIAM ADAIR, agent to Sir Philip Honeywood's regiment of horse, and several regiments of foot, being examined in relation to the clothing of the several regiments, said, that the assignments are generally made to him, as a matter of confidence, but that he gives defeazances to be answerable for the money, and has no concern in the clothing, other than by paying bills drawn on him by the colonels : that sometimes the colonels pay ready money for their clothing, in which case they charge interest for the money disbursed ; and that those who pay ready money, are served cheaper than those who do not ; but that he never knew, that the clothiers had interest for the time they were out of their money. That the off-reckonings of Honeywood's regiment amount to 3245l. 13s. 4d. per

per annum; those of the second regiment of foot guards, to which the witness is agent, to 5938l. 13s. 8d. per annum; and those of Major General Howard's regiment of foot, Major General Hulke's, Major General Johnson's, Brigadier Douglas's, and Colonel Graham's (to which regiments the witness is also agent) to 2173l. os. 1d. each, when consisting of ten companies; and to 2607l. 12s. 1d. each, since they have been encreased to twelve companies; that the total for clothing of Hulke's regiment of ten companies, last year, came to 1971l. 13s. 8d. besides interest for two years, at 5l. per cent. and loss by discount upon tallies, in which the off-reckonings are paid; but that he (the witness) believes the clothing would not have cost so much in time of peace; and that there is an additional expence attending this regiment for caps, they being fusiliers.

THAT he has no particular account of money paid by him for clothing, but only keeps a general account of cash, which comes into his hands, and which he pays to the colonel's order, to whom he is in the nature of a cashier: and that no application was ever made to him by any clothier, to be employed in clothing a regiment; nor did he ever know any money given by a clothier for that purpose. (1)

BEING asked, what is, in general, the profit arising to the colonel by the clothing of a regiment of foot? the witness said, that the clothiers are the best judges of that matter.

AND being particularly asked, whether he did not think that the colonel gains 753l. by the clothing of his regiment? he said, he did not believe he does.

(1) IN the mutiny act of the 10th of Queen Ann there was the following clause. "Provided always and be it further enacted, that all clothes, arms and accoutrements of war belonging to the horse, foot and dragoons in her majesty's pay and service, who receive English pay, shall be bought in the kingdom of Great Britain, Dominion of Wales, and town of Berwick upon Tweed, and not elsewhere, and every officer or person who shall offend herein, upon proof made in that behalf shall be cashiered."

CAPTAIN THOMAS LEVETT, agent to the royal regiment of horse guards, and several regiments of foot, being examined, said, that the assignments of the off-reckonings of some of the said regiments have been made to him, as a trustee for the respective colonels; and that he has paid the clothiers by their order: but that he does not know the amount of the disbursements, a great many things being provided besides what are contained in the clothiers bills, which he has no account of, and which are all paid out of the assignment. And he presented to the committee an account of the clothing of Lieutenant General Handasyde's regiment, now Lord Harry Beauclerk's, in the year 1741 (to which regiment the witness was then agent.) Which account is annexed in the appendix, No. 8.

MR. THOMAS FISHER, agent to Lord Harry Beauclerk's late and present regiment, being examined, said, that the assignment for the clothing to be delivered this year was made to him, but that he re-assigned it immediately.

MR. JOHN WINTER, agent to the second troop of horse guards, being examined, said, that the colonel always receives the off-reckonings, and clothes the private gentlemen, but whether he clothes the trumpeters the witness knew not.

WITH respect to the clothing of Lieutenant General Guise's regiment of foot, to which the witness is also agent, he only said, that the agent's two-pences are not included in the computation of the off-reckonings: and that the subsistence of the warrant men allowed for clothing, is issued to the colonel, with his own subsistence, but that the assignment was never made to him (the witness) nor had he ever any account of the off-reckonings.

MR. EDWARD LLOYD, agent to Brigadier-General Fowke's regiment, being examined, said, that the whole allowance upon the establishment for clothing lost by deserters, is not carried to the clothing account, the subsistence of the men allowed being paid to the colonel, and only the off-reckonings being included in the assign-

assignment; but that he (the witness) never had any concern in the clothing of this regiment.

MR. THOMAS PATERSON, agent to Lord Cobham's regiment of dragoons, to the third regiment of foot guards, and to Major General Wolfe's and Colonel Murray's regiments of foot, being examined in relation to the clothing of these regiments, said, that the subsistence of the warrant men, allowed upon the establishment for clothing lost by desertion, is issued to the respective colonels; but that the off-reckonings of these men, as well as the other warrant men for recruiting, are carried to the clothing assignment; and he added, that these warrant men are substituted in the room of a certain number of fictitious names, which were allowed formerly to be borne upon the muster rolls.

THAT in the third regiment of foot guards, the assignment is made to him in trust, and he gives the colonel credit for the money, as he receives it; but that the colonel always paid the clothing bills himself, except last year, when he being in Flanders, the witness paid them: that the off-reckonings amounted to about 5900*l.* but that now they will amount to more, each company being augmented from seventy-one to one hundred men, four serjeants and four corporals: that the establishment of these additional is not yet settled; but that when men are added to a regiment, there is generally an allowance of sixteen or eighteen months off-reckonings to defray the expence of leather accoutrements, double linen, &c. according to an estimate of that charge delivered in.

WITH regard to Major General Wolfe's regiment, the witness said, that a great number of leather accoutrements are wanted in this regiment, occasioned by the losses sustained at Fontenoy, and other places, last year; and that there is no fund to supply these deficiencies: that he believed, if leather accoutrements are wanted, the first clothing after a colonel is promoted to a regiment, the preceding colonel generally makes an allowance towards that expence; and that General Onslow has a demand on Lord Cobham

upon that account; but that, if the affair is not settled among themselves, the usual practice is, to deliver a memorial to the king, who refers it to a board of general officers; and if they think it reasonable, the former colonel makes the deficiencies good. And the witness added, that in time of peace, leather accoutrements will last ten or twelve years.

He also presented to the committee an account of the off-reckonings and clothing of Colonel Murray's regiment before-mentioned, for the year 1744, and also for the year 1745.

CAPTAIN WILLIAM WILKINSON, agent to Lord Stair's regiment of dragoons, the first regiment of foot guards, and to Brigadier Mordaunt's and Lord Loudon's regiments of foot, being examined, in relation to the clothing of the said regiments, said, that the off-reckonings only of the men, allowed for clothing, are carried to the assignment, their subsistence being paid to the respective colonels, as well in regiments of dragoons, as foot; and he presented to the committee a state of the assignments for the royal North British dragoons, for twelve years, from the 25th of June, 1733, to the 24th of June, 1745; which state is annexed in the appendix, No. 11.

With regard to the clothing of the first regiment of foot guards, the witness said, that whatever savings arise under that head, are kept by order, as a stock-purse for the use of the regiment, and distributed in gratuities, benefactions and other expences. And the witness presented to the committee a paper entituled, "Memorandum, as to the assignment of the first regiment of foot guards and state of the colonel's annual income:" which paper is annexed in the appendix, No. 12.

With respect to the clothing of the Earl of Loudon's regiment, the witness said, that only fourteen months off-reckonings were allowed, at the raising of that regiment, amounting by computation, to 2824l. 18s. but that twenty months are usually allowed to other regiments; and he presented to the committee a state of the clothing

clothing of this regiment; and also an accompt of allowance for the said clothing: both which are annexed in the appendix, No. 13, 14.

MAJOR GEORGE SAWYER, agent to Major General Bland's regiment of dragoons and Lieutenant General Handasyde's regiment of foot, being examined as to the clothing of those regiments, said, that the assignments have been made to him, in trust for the colonels; and that he has paid the greatest part of the bills: and he presented to the committee a state of the clothing of Bland's regiment for the years 1745 and 1746, and also a state of the clothing of Handasyde's regiment, from 1739 to 1744, inclusive: which accompts are annexed in the appendix, No. 15, 16.

BEING further examined, he said, that General Bland's regiment had a complete clothing last year: but that more clothes are wanting, since the battle of Fontenoy, which are also to be supplied out of the assignment for 1745; and that he believed, the off-reckonings appointed for the clothings, could not furnish the whole new every two years; and he added, that he gives the colonel credit for the subsistence of the warrant men allowed for clothing, but that the off-reckonings of them, as of all other warrant men, are carried to the assignment.

MR. JOHN RICHARDSON, agent to the first troop of horse guards, being examined, said, that he has no concern in the clothing of this troop, otherwise than as he sometimes pays bills occasionally, by the colonel's order: and that he borrowed 5000l. upon the present assignment, of a person, who is allowed 5l. per cent. for his money, and is to accompt with the colonel for the surplus.

MR. THOMAS WILSON, agent to Lieutenant General St. Clair's regiment, being examined, said, that the off-reckonings of the first battalion amount to upwards of 2600l. and those of the second battalion to 3020l. or thereabouts; but that the colonel pays interest for the clothing for the year 1745, from the time of the delivery, no off-reckonings having been as yet issued.

MR.

MR. ALEXANDER LESLIE, agent to Colonel Lascells's regiment, being examined, said, that he has paid bills for clothing several times ; but that the accompts are kept by the colonel.

MR. EDMUND BURT, agent to Field Marshal Wade's regiment of horse ; Mr. John Wyfeman, agent to the regiment now commanded by Major General Skelton ; and Mr. King Gould, agent to Lieutenant General Philipps's regiment, being severally examined, said, that the assignments had never been made to them, nor had they any concern in the clothing of these regiments.

MR. GALFRIDUS MANN, clothier, being examined in relation to the clothing of the several regiments he is concerned for, said, that he contracts with the colonels themselves, verbally, in the horse, for the coats and waistcoats, they having no breeches provided for them ; in the dragoons for the coats, waistcoats and breeches only ; and in the foot, sometimes for the whole clothing, including the small mounting, viz. shoes, neckcloths, shirts and hats ; and sometimes only for the coats and breeches ; but that he never provides the leather accoutrements, which are only furnished at the raising of a regiment, and afterwards kept in repair, out of the fund for clothing : and that in the contract which he makes, is included the charge of making and all materials.

THAT the price of a coat and waistcoat for a private man, in a regiment of horse, is, to the best of his (the witness's) remembrance, 4l. 5s. but that the corporals have an addition of lace, which he did not remember the charge of.

THAT in a marching regiment of foot, a serjeant's coat and breeches delivered complete, costs 3l. 10s. a laced hat, 10s. a shirt and neckcloth, 5s. 9d. at a medium ; a pair of stockings, 3s. a pair of shoes, 3s. 8d. and a fash, 5s. besides which, half a crown is either paid for turning the old coat into a waistcoat, or else, which is most usual, given to the serjeant, who gets it done himself : and that the difference between the allowance for this last article, to a serjeant and that to a private man, who is allowed only one shilling by the colonel

colonel for turning his coat into a waistcoat, arises, as the witness apprehends, from the workmanship : that sashes are not provided for the serjeants every year, though they are now furnished very frequently ; and that he (the witness) has contracted at the prices above mentioned ; but at the same time, he said, he believed he had made contracts at a less rate.

BEING further examined, he said, that he did not know any marching regiment of ten companies, which does not provide the whole seventy clothes ; but that the assignment, which is made to him for his security, is for seventy-three : that he sends down the clothes to the several regiments, at the charge of the respective colonels ; and makes out an account of the clothing delivered, (in which account is included package, and other incidental expences) in order to be paid : and that in marching regiments, the clothes are always delivered together ; but that in the marine regiments they sometimes are not. That he never gave any consideration for being employed in clothing a regiment, nor ever heard of any person who did either give, or offer to give, any ; but that he has lost the benefit of clothing a great many regiments, because he would not contract at so cheap a rate as other people proposed.

THAT the clothes are inspected by one of the board of general officers appointed for that purpose ; and that a clothing was once rejected, because it was not equal to the patterns delivered into that board.

BEING asked, whether, in general, the colonel of a regiment of foot of ten companies, does not gain upwards of 750*l.* by the clothing of his regiment ; he said, he was certain that he did not.

AND in order to give the committee as clear a light into this matter as possible, the witness presented to the committee, pursuant to their order, an account of the number and species of clothes delivered annually to each regiment which he clothes ; together with an account of the money paid or allowed to him, on account of the

the clothing of such regiments as he provides the whole mounting for.

As to the clothing of the horse guards, the witness said, that he furnishes only the cloth and lining, for the coats and waistcoats, and the cloth for the breeches; which he is generally paid for by the agents; and that he sometimes (but very seldom) provides clokes for the men; but, he believed, that he never furnished a complete set of clokes, at one time, for any regiment.

MR. WILLIAM WILSON, clothier, being examined in relation to the clothing of the several regiments which he is concerned for, gave in substance the same evidence as had been before given by Mr. Mann, as to the manner of contracting with the colonels for the several species of clothes to be delivered, and the additional charge of package, and other expences attending the delivery; and as to the non-payment of any money, or other consideration, by himself, or any other person to his knowledge, for the advantage of clothing a regiment: and added, that the price of a private centinel's coat and breeches, in a regiment of foot, is from 11. 5s. to 11. 8s. 6d. according to the goodness of the cloth, and the quantity of lace and other furniture: that the assignment is only made to him, for his security, and that he re-assigns it to the colonel, or his agent, as soon as he (the witness) is paid.

BEING asked, what is the amount in general of the clothing of a regiment of ten companies, he said, he believed, it was between seventeen and eighteen hundred pounds; but that the clothing of some regiments he is concerned for, comes to above eighteen hundred pounds.

AND the witness presented to the committee, by their direction, a like account to that delivered by Mr. Mann.

MR. WILLIAM RUSH, taylor, being examined, said, that he is employed by Mr. Mann and Mr. Wilson in making clothes for the army; and that he agrees for so much per suit, including the charge of delivering them to the packer in or about London: that when
a regi-

a regiment is completely new clothed, he makes a whole suit: but at other times only a coat and breeches; and that the prices differ considerably, according to the quantity and quality of the workmanship.

AND being required to give the committee a particular account of the said several prices; he said, that the price of making a corporal's and private man's coat and breeches is from 2s. to 3s. 6d. a serjeant's from 8s. to 12s. and a drummer's from 5s. to 10s. or 11s. That when there is a complete new clothing, the making of the waistcoats is a separate article; and that he charges 1s. 2d. for a private man's waistcoat, if laced, and 1s. if plain; and the same for a corporal's and drummer's; and 2s. for a serjeant's; but that he should charge more for turning an old coat into a waistcoat, than for making a new one. That in the horse, the price of making a coat and waistcoat, for a corporal or private man, is from 10s. to 12s. and for a trumpeter the same, unless it be laced in the state fashion, in which case he charges 15s.; and that, in the dragoons, the price of making a suit of clothes, for a serjeant, corporal, or private man, is from 10s. to 13s. 6d. and for a drummer, when laced in an extraordinary manner, 15s. that he never made any clothes for hautboys, under that denomination, but as drummers, and is paid the same for them; and that he makes two suits per troop for musick, and no more.

AND the witness, by the direction of the committee, laid before them an account of the number of clothes made by him for each regiment he has been employed for.

AND being further examined, he said, that the price of cloth, used for marching regiments, is from 4s. 6d. to 5s. 6d. per yard; and the usual quantity for a soldier's coat is two yards three quarters; and that the coat is lined with baize of about 13d. or 14d. per yard, and requires about three yards and a quarter: that the breeches are made of kersey, of about 16d. per yard, and require about a yard and an half; and that the lining costs about 8½d.

THAT the clothes he makes for Mr. Mann, are cut out at Mr. Mann's house; but that those he makes for Mr. Wilson, are cut out at his (the witness's) own house; and that any saving, which there may be in Mr. Wilson's clothing, is his property, and accounted for to him every year. And the witness added, that he gave no consideration for being appointed taylor to a regiment, nor was any thing ever asked of him upon that account.

MR. REEVES, packer, being examined, said, that he had been several years employed to pack clothes for the army; and that in the charge for package, which is according to the largeness of the bales, are included all expences incurred, from the time they are brought to his house till they are delivered out; but that the charge of putting them on board of ship (if carried by sea), or of sending them to the respective quarters, is paid by the persons who employ him. That he enters in his account the number of bales, and the number of suits packed in each bale; but that he is sometimes paid in gross, without distinguishing the number of clothes. And the witness presented to the committee an account of the number of clothes, which he had packed for the several regiments, for whom he is employed, for several years past; distinguishing each year, and the places to which the said clothes were respectively sent.

MR. JOHN FISHER, clothier, being examined, said, that he and Mr. Brice Fisher, his partner, had furnished the clothes to Major General Fuller's regiment for three years past; and had likewise sold the cloth for Colonel Lascells's and Lieutenant General Dalszell's regiments; but had never contracted for the delivery of clothes made up to the two regiments last mentioned; that the cloth of which such clothes are made, is generally called livery cloth, and is now worth about 10l. or 10 guineas per piece, which commonly consists of forty-two yards; but that the same sort of cloth was formerly much cheaper.

AND the witness presented to the committee, an account of clothes sold to Major General Fuller, in the years 1744, 1745, and 1746;

1746; and also an account of cloth delivered to Lieutenant General Dalzell, in the years 1742 and 1743; and also an account of cloth delivered to Colonel Lascells in the year 1744: which accounts are as followeth, viz.

Sold and delivered to the Hon. Major General Fuller,

Per Brice and John Fisher.

			s.	d.	
1744. —	517	Centinels coats and breeches	at	22	0 per suit
	53	Grenadiers ditto	—	26	0 per ditto
	19	Drummers ditto	—	36	0 per ditto
	30	Serjeants ditto	—	57	6 per ditto
	700	Pair of hose for centinels, &c.	—	1	3 per pair
	31	Pair of ditto for serjeants	—	3	0 per pair
1745. —	567	Centinels coats and breeches	—	23	0 per suit
	63	Grenadiers ditto	—	27	0 per ditto
	19	Drummers ditto	—	36	0 per ditto
	1	Drum major's ditto	—	50	0 per ditto
	30	Serjeants ditto	—	57	6 per ditto

1746. *Sold, to be delivered.*

	615	Centinels coats and breeches	—	23	0 per ditto
	65	Grenadiers ditto	—	27	0 per ditto
	19	Drummers ditto	—	36	0 per ditto
	1	Drum major's ditto	—	50	0 per ditto
	30	Serjeants ditto	—	57	6 per ditto

Sold and delivered to the Hon. Lieut. Gen. Dalzell.

Per Brice and John Fisher.

1742. —	17	Red cloths, quantity 42 yds. each, at 8l. 10s. per cloth
1743. —	29	Red cloths, quantity 42 yds. each, at 8l. 10s. per cloth
	2	Yellow ditto, quantity 101 yards, at 4s. 1d. per yard
	2½	Scarlet ditto, quantity 106½ yards, at 10s. per yard

Sold and delivered to the Hon. Col. Peregrine Lascelles,

Per Brice and John Fisher.

1744. — 39½ Red cloths, quantity 1671½ yards, at 4s. 6d. per yard
 38 Red kerseys, quantity 1080 yards, at 1s. 3d. per ditto
 61 White bays, quantity 2478¼ yards, at 10d. per ditto
 4½ White cloths, quantity 208 yards, at 5s. per ditto
 3 Scarlet ditto, quantity 116 yards, at 10s. per ditto
 7 Pieces fine white serge, quantity 166 yards, at 1s. 3d.
 per ditto.
 1 Piece white cloth, quantity 7½ yards, at 7s. per ditto
 1½ Yellow cloth, quantity 50¾ yards, at 7s. per ditto
 1½ Yellow bays, quantity 65 yards, at 10d. per ditto
 2½ Red cloth, quantity 116 yards, at 3s. per ditto

AND the witnesses being examined in relation to the said accounts, said, that it is customary to deliver patterns of the cloth intended to be furnished, for the colonel's approbation: and that the cloth he sold was as good as the patterns: but he acknowledged, that the cloth delivered to Colonel Lascelles, was not so good by about 2d. in the yard, as that of which the clothes for General Fuller's regiment were made (of which a pattern coat was delivered in, and sealed by the board) the reason of which difference was the advance in the price of cloth, betwixt the year 1743, the time when the contract for Fuller's clothing was made, and the year 1744, when the cloth was sold to Colonel Lascelles: and the witnesses likewise acknowledged, that the cloth sold to Colonel Lascelles was better than that sold to General Dalzell by about 2d. in the yard. Being further examined, he said, that he never knew any money or other consideration given or proposed to be given, for the benefit of clothing a regiment.

MR. JOHN ROBERTS, clothier, being examined in relation to the clothing of the army, said, that he never furnished any thing
 but

but the cloth, except in one or two instances; particularly for Colonel Long's regiment, with whom he once contracted to furnish clothes and linen; in which case he had about 21s. for each corporal's and private man's coat and breeches, and 3s. 6d. for each shirt and roller: that he paid 2s. 4d. for the making of each coat and breeches, and 4½d. a piece for the making of the shirts. And that, to the best of his remembrance, he delivered between seven hundred and twenty and seven hundred and thirty of each.

As to the other regiments of foot, which he is concerned in clothing, he said, that a private soldier's coat will require 2¾yards and a grenadier's 2½yards: that the usual quantity provided for the corporals and private men is forty-two cloths, each consisting of about 40 yards; and that the usual price is 10l. per cloth; but that the cloth furnished for the serjeants clothes, is about 10s. per yard: and that the cloth he furnished for the drummers was about 11l. per cloth.

AND he presented to the committee, an account of cloth provided by him for the several regiments, which he clothes: which account is annexed in the appendix, No. 17.

BEING further examined, he said, that he generally delivered cloth for seven hundred men or upwards, in marching regiments of foot, they being commonly near complete; but that for marines, he has delivered the cloth at different times, according to the number of men in the regiment; and that sometimes in the land forces, forty or fifty coats are kept back, and reserved, as a store to supply recruits, who are commonly clothed when they come to quarters; though sometimes the colonel puts them on a frock, which serves them till the usual time of clothing the regiment. And the witness added, that he generally contracts with the colonels themselves, for the cloth to be delivered.

BEING asked the price of the other species of clothing, besides those before mentioned; he said, that a pair of stockings costs 13d; and

and that the price of a pair of shoes was formerly 3s. 6d. but is now 3s. 9d.

BEING further examined, he said, that he never paid any thing to be appointed clothier to a regiment ; but that he once was applied to on the behalf of a colonel of a regiment of marines, which he had clothed before, and for which he had then delivered patterns, to advance at an interest, five hundred pounds on the clothing assignment ; which was offered him for his security : which proposal he refused ; and upon that account, as he imagined, he lost the benefit of clothing the regiment.

As to the price of the cloth furnished to the dragoons, he said, that it is about 12l. per cloth.

MR. JOHN HANKINS, packer, being examined, said, that he had been several years concerned in packing clothes for the army ; and that the usual price is 11s. per bale, if containing less than forty suits ; if more 12s. or 13s. per bale ; but that he generally puts thirty-five or thirty-six into a bale, dividing, as near as he can, the clothes for each company into two bales ; that the shoes and hats are put up in separate casks, and generally take up about ten : but if there are leather accoutrements, more are required ; and that the price is 11s. per cask. That the expence of carriage is an extra charge, the said several sums being paid only for packing and keeping the clothes in the witness's house, where they, especially those for the marines, are sometimes kept a considerable time.

AND for the better information of the committee, he presented an account of the number of clothes which he has pack'd for the several regiments he is concerned for.

MR. NICHOLAS PEARSE, packer, being examined, said, that he had been employed to pack clothes for Lieutenant General Dalzell's and Major General Fuller's regiments ; and that he usually put about fifty suits in each bale ; for which he charged 12s. but if he put more, he charged in proportion : and that the whole expence
of

of package for one of these regiments, including the charge of putting the clothes on board of ship, amounts to 18l. or 20l.

AND he likewise produced an account of the number of clothes, which he had packed for these regiments.

MR. LAUNCELOT CRAVEN, taylor, being examined, said, that he apprehends the cloth of which clothes for the army are made, is worth about 5s. per yard; and that a private man's coat requires two yards 3-8ths; and a grenadier's two yards and a half; that the price allowed for making a soldier's coat and breeches is 2s. 4d; a serjeant's from 7s. to 9s. (which sum the witness said he was paid himself by General Onslow) and a drummer's from 5s. to 7s. 6d. but that the most he (the witness) ever had, was 6s. 6d. and that he has been sometimes paid 1s. for making a waistcoat, and at other times 14d. but that a greater price must be given for the same, upon account of extraordinary workmanship.

AND this witness likewise presented to the committee an account of the number of clothes he had made for the several regiments he is employed for.

MR. JOHN COOPER, taylor, being examined, said, that 2s. 4d. is given for making a foot soldier's coat and breeches: 10s. for a coat and waistcoat for a private man in the horse, and 10s. 6d. for a suit of clothes for a dragoon; but that the price of making a serjeant's or drummer's clothes in the foot, varies according to the workmanship. (m)

As

(m) THE clothing formerly came down to a regiment just stitched together, commonly of three sizes. All the taylor's of the regiment were then assembled in some tent or large room under the inspection of a serjeant as master taylor, and a centry set over them to prevent their leaving their work; the men with their clothes according to their sizes, had them tried on by the taylor's, and separately fitted, they were then in a manner re-made and the lace fresh sewed, for which the usual price was 1s. 4d. per suit, deducting the price of the thread, which 1s. 4d. was stopped from the soldiers pay. Many regiments wetted the clothes

As the clothing in a Highland regiment differs from that of a regiment of infantry, the following particulars are transcribed from the appendix, No. 13, in the said report.

To the Right Honourable Sir William Younge, Baronet, his Majesty's Secretary at War.

The MEMORIAL of the Right Honourable the EARL of LOUDON

SHEWETH,

THAT his majesty has been graciously pleased to grant your memorialist a commission to raise a regiment of foot in the Highlands of Scotland. That the rates or prices of clothing and accoutrements of such a regiment, being in no particular, except one, lower than is generally paid by other regiments; and in several particulars, higher; and cannot, upon the whole be purchased as so easy a rate as for other regiments.

THAT your memorialist, however, is so averse to bring any additional charge upon the government, that he only prays for the allowances usually given upon the like occasions, agreeable, as he is informed, to the computation annexed.

clothes before they were altered; some colonels would not permit it, thinking it greatly injured their appearance; the consequence was, that after the first shower of rain, the soldier found himself pinioned up in a strait waistcoat. The coat of the preceding year's clothing was made into a waistcoat and forrage cap, which was separately paid for; in some regiments the colonel allowed 1s. towards the payment.

Allowance

Allowance claimed for the Extra-clothing and Accoutrements to a Highland Regiment of thirteen Companies, being what is usually granted to other Regiments in Proportion.

		l.	s.	d.		l.	s.	d.
39 Serjeants	-	at	2	12	9	each	-	102 17 3
39 Corporals	-		1	12	0	-		62 8 0
26 Drums	-		1	2	4	-		29 0 8
910 Private men	-		1	12	0	-		1456 0 0
								1650 5 11
Deduct 61 days off-reckonings	-		-					452 3 0
Remains to be paid by warrant	-		-					1198 2 11

Prices of several Species of Clothing a Highlander and a Foot Soldier of other Regiments compared.

Species.	A foot soldier.	A Highlander.	Difference.
	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
A sword	0 5 0	0 8 6	0 3 6
A pair of shoes	0 4 0	0 6 8	0 2 8
Hose	0 1 4	0 3 0	0 1 8
	0 10 4	0 18 2	0 7 10
A hat	0 3 0	0 1 0	0 2 0
	0 13 4	0 19 2	0 5 10

*A State of the Clothing of the Right Honourable the Earl of Loudoun's
Highland Regiment.*

	l.	s.	d.
Twelve months off-reckonings to a private man is -	2	5	11
Allowance by warrant - - -	1	12	0
	3	17	11
To a plaid and coat - - -	1	6	0
To a waistcoat - - -	0	6	6
To a shirt and neckcloth - - -	0	3	8
To nine pair of brogues by the late General Clayton's regulation for the other Highland regiments, at 12d. each, but compounded with the men at -	0	6	8
To four pair of hose by ditto regulated at 9d. each	0	3	0
To a bonnet - - -	0	1	0
To leather accoutrements - - -	0	14	6
To a basket hilt sword - - -	0	8	6
	3	9	10
To another shirt and neckcloth - - -	0	3	8
Savings - - -	3	13	6
	0	4	5
	3	17	11

THE above savings of 4s. 5d. amounting for 910 men to 200l. 19s. 2d. will not be sufficient to answer the discount for interest and fees, and the expence of insurance, freight and carriage.

The usual Allowance by Warrant for extraordinary Clothing, for the additional Men of a Marching Regiment.

			l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
For a serjeant's sword	-	-	0	10	0			
Waist belt	-	-	0	10	0			
Linen	-	-	0	5	9			
Waistcoat	-	-	1	4	0			
Stockings	-	-	0	3	0			
						2	12	9
A drummer's sword	-	-	0	5	0			
Waist belt	-	-	0	4	7			
Waistcoat	-	-	0	7	11			
Shirt and neckcloth	-	-	0	3	8			
Stockings	-	-	0	1	2			
						1	2	4
A corporal and centinel's leather accou- trements	-	-	0	14	0			
Sword at 5s. hanger at 7s. 6d. altogether for each	-	-	0	5	3			
Waistcoat	-	-	0	7	11			
Stockings	-	-	0	1	2			
Shirt and neckcloth	-	-	0	3	8			
						1	12	0

No. XIV.

Allowance made to the Right Honourable the Earl of Loudoun for Clothing and Accoutrements to his new-raised Regiment of Highlanders, 1745.

	l.	s.	d.
By an assignment for 14 months, from 25th April, 1745, to 24th June, 1746	3297	0	5

In aid to the assignment, the following allowance was made for extraordinary clothing and accoutrements, viz.

	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	
For 39 ferjeants, each at	2	12	9	102	17	3	
39 Corporals, at	1	12	0	62	8	0	
26 Drums, at	1	2	4	29	0	8	
910 Private men, at	1	12	0	1456	0	0	
				1650	5	11	
Deduct, stopped for 61 days off- reckonings	-	-	-	452	3	0	}
Remainder paid by warrant	-	-	-				
							1198 2 11
Total allowance							4495 3 4

THE administration of military justice was, in the earlier periods of our history, chiefly under the direction of the high constable and marshall, who presided as judges, and assisted by civilians and officers experienced in military affairs, tried and punished according to the laws and ordnances of war then in force, not only all military offences, but likewise determined all kinds of suits depending between the

the followers of the army. In cases of great import, military delinquents were tried before the parliament. (n)

THE rules and ordonnances of war, which served for the guide of the court, and wherein the martial law for the time being was declared, were either made by the king, with the advice of his peers and other experienced persons, for the expedition then on foot, as were those of King Richard II. and Henry V. or enacted by the commander in chief, the king's authority for that purpose being generally given in their commissions, (o) many of which appear in
Rymer,

(n) HENRY DE ESSEX, standard bearer to King Henry II. was, for cowardice, in Wales, deprived of his lands, shorne, and shut up for life as a monk in the abbey of Reading. See Dan. p. 18. Speed, p. 502. Holingsf. and Stow. An. 2. Hen. II.

IN the rolls of parliament 1st of Richard II. we learn, that William de Weston and John Lord of Gomery were tried in parliament, for delivering up the castle of Outerwyk, and the town and castle of Ardes, in France, and convicted thereof; for which Weston was adjudged to be drawn and hanged; and the Lord of Gomery, on account of his rank and former services, and also not being a liege man, or natural born subject, was sentenced to be beheaded.

THE Bishop of Norwich, in the seventh year of the same reign, for diverse military offences as a general officer, appeared before the same tribunal, and was punished with the seizure of his temporalities and a considerable fine. As these trials are curious pieces of military history, and shew much of the manners of the times, they will be given at large in the appendix.

(o) IN the commission granted by King James I. A. D. 1622, to Sir Horace Vere, appointing him captain general of the army intended to be sent to the Palatinate, he is authorised to make and proclaim ordonnances of war for the government of the army, and to enforce the observation thereof, and to hear, determine, and punish, by himself or deputies, all criminal causes, mutinies, desertions, and all other crimes whatsoever; and to punish by death, loss of member, or any other corporal infliction, according to their crimes and the laws and customs of war; and also to hear and determine in like manner all civil causes, contracts, &c. arising in the said army; also in like manner to judge all persons that may in future join the army; also to fill up all vacancies, and by his order to direct the payment of the said soldiers. All officers are directed to obey the commands of the said Sir Horace Vere. See Rymer in anno.

IN a commission granted by King Charles I. A. D. 1640, to Thomas Earl of Arundel,
to

Rymer, even so low down as the reign of King James I. Rebels were sometimes tried by the martial law, as was the case in the reign of Henry VII.

AFTER the attainder of Edward Duke of Buckingham, in the 13th of Henry VIII. the office of high constable ceased, and was never renewed but for a limited time; since which the commanders of our armies were entitled lieutenant generals, or if peers, lord lieutenants, as being the king's representatives, or deputies.

NOTWITHSTANDING this, the marshal who was commonly second in command, retained the prerogative of sitting as chief judge in all cases, not only respecting the discipline of the army, but also in every other cause, controversy and complaint that might arise therein. For the more regular dispatch of business, to this court belonged diverse civil officers; among whom were a judge martial, an auditor, and clerks, under provosts, gaolers, tipstaves, and executioners. This court, we learn from the following clause in the ordonnances of war of King Henry VIII. was directed to assemble twice a week. "Item, the high marshal must hold two court days in the weke, that is to wit, one Munday and Thursdaie, for them that have anie matters in court, with his officers with him, as it is ordeyned by the chief captain."

As the commissions of most of the commanders in chief contained a clause, authorising them to enact ordonances for the government of the army under their command, and to sit in judgment themselves, or to appoint deputies for that purpose, it seems in some degree imperceptibly to have encroached on the independency of the marshals court, and at length to have taken a new form under the denomination of the court or council of war, which sat

to be captain general of the army to be employed at home, he is authorised to make laws and ordonances for the government thereof, to appoint a provost marshal, which provost marshal shall use and execute the martial law. Rymer in anno,

at

at stated times, or as was ordered by the commander in chief, and at which officers of a certain rank, apparently not under that of a colonel, (p) had a right to set as assessors or members; and instead of the marshal, we hear of an officer stiled president of the high court of war, who, on certain occasions, claimed the privilege of a double vote. (q)

TOWARDS the latter end of the reign of King James I. and in the beginning of that of his successor Charles, a kind of mixed court seems to have been occasionally adopted, composed of both civil and military members. This was when an army was quartered at Portsmouth, Plymouth, Dover or other sea ports, waiting to be embarked for foreign service; in which case, a commission was sent down, appointing commissioners to try all offences committed by

(p) SIR FRANCIS VERE, in his description of the duties of the several officers of a regiment, mentions it as the duty of all colonels once every week to call together all his captains, and to enquire of all offences in his regiment; and examine the nature and quality of such offences, to prepare the causes for a more speedy hearing in a court martial, and to repair to the court martial as often as they shall be warned.

MARKHAM, who wrote shortly after him, that is in the reign of King James I. says, and the lieutenants of colonels are captains in curtesie, and may in a court of warre sit as the puny captaine of that regiment in which he commandeth." *Soldiers Grammar*, p. 123. Possibly it might be about this time that captains first obtained that privilege.

(q) THE next in order I conceive to be the president of the high court of war, whose place requireth him to be a person of honour, integritie, of sound judgment, of ripe knowledge in civil and military lawes, before whom all matters civil and criminal, that have relation to the army, are to be tryed, and therefore he ought to be assisted with a learned fiscal or judge advocate, as also with a well experienced auditor, to audit and keep register of all cases and matters that shall be brought before the court of war.

His office is to assemble the court of war as often as the general shall please for to appoint him; and in the interines he is to prepare all busynes and causes so as that the court of war may have a clear and just information of all things; and when that any busyness shall come into a final sentence, he shall have the priviledge of a double voice, because he represents the general's person.—*A Brief Treatise of Warr, &c. &c. by W. T. in the year of our redemption 1649.* MS. No. 6008, Harl.

the

the soldiers or followers of the army, within certain counties or districts. Many of these commissioners were military men; but with them were joined the earl marshal, lord lieutenant of the county, and the mayors, or chief magistrates, of the principal towns of that district and its environs.

SEVERAL of these commissions may be found in Rymer, about the year 1626 and 1640. (r) In the laws and ordonnances of war, published A. D. 1640, by the earl of Northumberland for the king's forces, and those of the earl of Essex, for the parliamentary forces in 1643; all controversies between souldiers and their captains and all others, were directed to be summarily heard and determined, by the council of warre, except the weightinesse of the cause require further deliberation. No other tribunal or court is mentioned.

AT what time courts martial, according to their present form, were first held, it is not easy to ascertain; they are, however, mentioned, with the distinction of general and regimental, in the ordonances of war of King James II. published by royal authority, A. D. 1686.

AFTER the revolution, the form and powers of courts martial were settled by an act of parliament, with the military laws, called articles of war, made under that authority. This act has gene-

(r) A. D. 1626, an. 2. Charles I. that king grants his commission to Philip Earl of Montgomery, lieutenant of the County of Kent, Sir Nicholas Tufton, Sir Edward Hales, Sir Thomas Smith, with fourteen other knights and gentlemen, together with the mayors of the towns of Dover and Sandwich for the times being, to try in all places within the county of Kent, by martial law, all soldiers, mariners, or others joining with them, guilty of robbery, felony, mutiny or desertion, outrage or misdemeanor, "and to execute them by such summary course of law as is used in armyes in tymes of warres," according to the law martial, for an example of terror to others; for which purpose they are directed to erect such gallows and gibbets, and in such places, as they shall think proper; in which all magistrates and others are commanded to be assisting. See Rymer in anno.

rally (s) been renewed every year under the title of "The mutiny Act:" it consists of two parts, namely, the act of parliament, which is equally binding to all his majesty's subjects civil and military, and the articles of war, enacted by the king, who is, by the aforementioned act, empowered so to do, these concern the soldier only. Both, the act of parliament as well as the articles of war, have been in a constant state of alteration from their first institution, and still require great amendment: where these are silent, there is another guide for courts martial, that is, the custom of war in like cases. (t)

As the ordonances of war and martial regulations of our early kings, so far as they can be recovered, give great insight into our Military History; I shall lay before my readers such as I have been able to procure. Transcribing, or abridging them, as the article seems to merit.

THE first record of this kind is of the time of King John, entitled "Constitutions to be made in the Army of our Lord the King:" these are apparently calculated to facilitate the supply of the army with necessaries, which it seems were to be exposed for sale in the churches and church yards, and to be sold under the eye of the superintendents or chief men of the church, who were to attend for that purpose, and to receive the money for the proprietors; and in case they were not present, or neglected to procure proper provisions, the persons taking them elsewhere, were to deposit the value in the church. A literal translation of this writ is given in the note below. (u) FROM

(s) GENERALLY, though not always, as has before been shewn.

(t) "AND if any doubt shall arise which is not explained by the said articles or act of parliament, according to my conscience, the best of my understanding, and the custom of war in the like cases. See the Oath administered to all the Members of a Court Martial in the Act of Parliament, anno 1785.

(u) OUR Lord the King shall have, for every one of his territories, two marischalls, to wit, for England, Radulphus de Bray and Radulphus de Normanville; for Normandy,

FROM this it seems, as if markets were sometimes held in church yards; or perhaps in times of war or insurrection, on the approach of an army, the country people used to drive their cattle, and convey their goods of different kinds, to the churches and church yards, as places of safety and sanctuary, whence no one would dare to take them by force, as it might be deemed a kind of sacrilege and infringement on the immunities of the church: but as this would cause a want of provisions or necessaries in the army, soldiers might be authorised to take what they stood in need of, on paying the value of the things taken, to the churchwardens, or other superintendants of the churches.

THE next is the charter of King Richard I. made in the first year of his reign A. D. 1189, and chiefly meant to prevent disputes between the soldiers and sailors, in their voyage to the holy land. It is printed in Rymer, whence it was extracted and translated.

Philip de Albinaico and Engylramus de Bown; for his other territories those whom he, our lord the king, shall chuse. These shall swear, that that they will cause the peace of the church to be well and faithfully observed, so that if it should be found necessary to take any thing from the churches or church yards, for the wants of the army, the superintendants of the churches shall remain there, in order that those things which the army may want, shall be exposed to sale, and that before they are removed they may be paid its value. That if by chance the said superintendants of the churches should be absent or have neglected it, the prices of the things taken shall be deposited in the church, for the use of those to whom the said goods belonged.

THE aforesaid persons shall also swear, that they will firmly and faithfully preserve the peace of the army, and to the utmost of their power cause the same to be observed, without exception of persons, laying aside all favor, hatred or fear.

THE same each baron, knight, tenant in capite, and their retinues, shall swear strictly to observe; so that if any one shall be found a transgressor of these constitutions, he shall be delivered over to the marischall to have justice executed on him.

THE like shall be sworn by every constable and every one of their suite.

MOREOVER, if any one is found in the army, not having some call or employment there, he shall be seized and delivered to the marischall, till it shall appear who he is.

LIKEWISE all the forementioned persons, shall swear that the victuals brought to the army shall not be seized by any one, nor carried out of the market, till the sellers have been satisfied. *Claus de anno 15 John, p. 2. m. 8. dorso.*

Charter

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

Charter of King RICHARD I. for the Government of those going by Sea to the Holy Land.

RICHARD, by the grace of God, king of England, duke of Normandy, and earl of, &c. &c. To all his men going by sea to Jerusalem, greeting. Know ye, that by the common council of all good men, we have made the underwritten ordonances. He who kills a man on shipboard, shall be bound to the dead man, and thrown into the sea: if the man is killed on shore, the slayer shall be bound to the dead body, and buried with it. Any one convicted by lawful witnesses of having drawn his knife to strike another, or who shall have drawn blood of him, to lose his hand. If he shall have only struck with the palm of the hand, without drawing blood, he shall be thrice ducked in the sea. Any one who shall reproach, abuse, or curse his companion, shall for every time he is convicted thereof, give him so many ounces of silver. Any one convicted of theft, shall be shorn like a champion, (x) boiling pitch shall be poured on his head, and down of feathers shaken over it, that he may be known; and he shall be set on shore at the first land at which the ship touches,

Witness myself at Chinon.

THE ordonnances of Richard II. are the next in point of chronological order, that I have been able to discover; they are in old French among the Cotton manuscripts, in the British Museum,

(x) CHAMPIONS hired to fight legal duels, in cases of murder or homicide, had their hair clipped or shorn close to their heads, as appears from an ancient manuscript quoted by Upton, p. 37. *Les Chevaliers qui se combatre pour meurtre, ou por homicide, se doivent combatre a pie, et sans coyfe et estre roignes a la reonde.* The circumstance of the party being a knight made no difference, the same regulations being laid down for both. *Champions, Chevaliers & autres.*

marked Nero, D.VI. There is also a copy of them in the library of the college of arms. Both agree minutely, except that the latter has one article more than that in the museum.

These are the Statutes, Ordonnances and Customs to be observed in the Army, ordained and made by good consultation and deliberation of our most Excellent Lord the King Richard, John Duke of Lancaster, Seneschall of England, Thomas Earl of Essex, and Buckingham Constable of England, and Thomas de Mowbray Earl of Nottingham, Mareschall of England, and other Lords, Earls, Barons, Banneretts, and experienced knights, whom they have thought proper to call unto them; then being at Durham the 17th day of the Month of July, in the ninth year of the Reign of our Lord the King Richard II.

I. FIRSTLY. That all manner of persons, of what nation, state or condition they may be, shall be obedient to our lord the king, to his constable and mareschall, under penalty of every thing they can forfeit in body and goods.

II. ITEM, that none be so hardy as to touch the body of our lord, nor the vessel in which it is contained, under pain of being drawn, hanged and beheaded.

III. ITEM, that none be so hardy as to rob and pillage the church, nor to destroy any man belonging to holy church, religious or otherwise, nor any woman, nor to take them prisoners, if not bearing arms; nor to force any woman, upon pain of being hanged.

IV. ITEM, that no one be so hardy to go before, or otherwise than in the battail to which he belongs, under the banner or pennon of his lord or master, except the herbergers, whose names shall be given in by their lords or masters to our constable and mareschall, upon pain of losing their horses.

V. ITEM, that no one take quarters, otherwise than by the assignment of the constable and mareschall and the herbergers;
and

and that after the quarters are assigned and delivered, let no one be so hardy as to remove himself, or quit his quarters, on any account whatsoever, under pain of forfeiture of horse and armour, and his body to be in arrest, and at the king's will.

VI. ITEM, that every one be obedient to his captain, and perform watch and ward, forrage, and all other things belonging to his duty, under penalty of losing his horse and armour, and his body being in arrest to the marischall, till he shall have made his peace with his lord or master, according to the award of the court.

VII. ITEM, that no one be so hardy as to rob or pillage another of money, victuals, provisions, forage or any other thing, on pain of losing his head; nor shall any one take any victuals, merchandise, or any other thing whatsoever, brought for the refreshment of the army, under the same penalty; and any one who shall give the names of such robbers and pillagers to the constable and mareschall, shall have twenty nobles for his labour.

VIII. ITEM, no one shall make a riot or contention in the army for debate of arms, prisoners, lodgings, or any other thing whatsoever, nor cause any party or assembly of persons, under pain (the principals as well as the parties) of losing their horses and armour, and having their bodies in arrest at the king's will, and if it a boy or page he shall lose his left ear. Any person conceiving himself aggrieved, shall make known his grievance to the constable, and mareschall, and right shall be done him.

IX. ITEM, that no one be so hardy as to make a contention or debate in the army on account of any grudge respecting time past or for any thing to come, if in such contest or debate any one shall be slain, those who were the occasion shall be hanged; and if any one shall proclaim his own name, or that of his lord or master, so as to cause a rising of the people, whereby an affray might happen in the army, he who made the proclamation shall be drawn and hanged.

X. ITEM,

X. ITEM, that no one be so hardy as to cry "havok" under pain of losing his head, and that he or they that shall be the beginners of the said cry, shall likewise be beheaded, and their bodies afterwards be hanged up by the arms. (x)

XI. ITEM, that no one make the cry called mounté, or any other whatsoever in the army, on account of the great danger that may thereby happen to the whole army; which God forbid! and that on pain, if he be a man at arms, or archer on horseback, of losing his best horse, and if he be an archer on foot or boy, he shall have his left ear cut off. (y)

XII. ITEM, if in any engagement whatsoever an enemy shall be beat down to the earth, and he who shall have thus thrown him down shall go forwards in the pursuit, and any other shall come afterwards, and shall take the faith or parole of the said enemy, he shall have half of the said prisoner, and he who overthrew him the other half, but he who received his parole shall have the keeping of him, giving security to his partner.

XIII. ITEM, if any one takes a prisoner, and another shall join him, demanding a part, threatening that otherwise he will kill him (the prisoner) he shall have no part, although a share be granted to him; and if he kills the said prisoner, he shall be in arrest to the mareschall, without being delivered till he has satisfied the party, and his horses and armour shall be forfeited to the constable.

(x) HAVOK was the word given as a signal for the troops to disperse and pillage, as we learn from the following item in the droits of the marshall, vol. 1. p. 229. wherein it is declared that in the article of plunder all the sheep and hogs belong to such private soldiers as can take them: and that on the word havok being cried, every one might seize his part; this probably was only a small part of the licence supposed to be given by that word.

(y) Mounté, i. e. montez, to horse; probably this was either a mutinous cry, calling on the cavalry to take horse and leave the army, or might be the method of calling to arms from a supposed approach of the enemy, and was what would now be called, raising a false alarm.

XIV. ITEM

XIV. ITEM, that no man go out on an expedition by night or by day, unless with the knowledge and by the permission of the chieftain of the battail in which he is, so that they may be able to succour him, should occasion require it, on pain of losing horse and armour.

XV. ITEM, that for no news or affray whatsoever, that may happen in the army, any one shall put himself in disarray in his battail, whether on an excursion or in quarters, unless by assignment of his chieftain, under pain of losing horse and armour.

XVI. ITEM, that every one pay to his lord or master, the third of all manner of gains of arms, herein are included those who do not receive pay, but only have the benefit of quarters, under the banner or pennon of arms of a captain.

XVII. ITEM, that no one be so hardy as to raise a banner or penon of St. George or any other, to draw together the people out of the army, to go to any place whatsoever, under pain, that those who thus make themselves captains shall be drawn and hanged, and those who follow them be beheaded, and all their goods and heritages forfeited to the king.

XVIII. ITEM, that every man, of what estate, condition or nation he may be, so that he be of our party, shall bear a large sign of the arms of St. George before, and another behind, upon peril that if he be hurt or slain in default thereof, he who shall hurt or slay him shall suffer no penalty for it: and that no enemy shall bear the said sign of St. George, unless he be a prisoner, upon pain of death.

XIX. ITEM, if any one shall take a prisoner, as soon as he comes to the army, he shall bring him to his captain or master, on pain of losing his part to his said captain or master; and that his said captain or master shall bring him to our lord the king, constable or mareschall as soon as he well can, without taking him elsewhere, in order that they may examine him concerning news and intelligence of the enemy, under pain of losing his third to him who may
first

first make it known to the constable or mareschall ; and that every one shall guard, or cause to be guarded by his soldiers, his said prisoner, that he may not ride about at large in the army, nor shall suffer him to be at large in his quarters, without having a guard over him, lest he espy the secrets of the army, under pain of losing his said prisoner ; reserving to his said lord the third of the whole, if there is not a partner in the offence ; and the second part to him that shall first take him ; and the third part to the constable. On the like pain, and also of his body being in arrest, and at the king's will, he shall not suffer his said prisoner to go out of the army for his ransome, nor for any other cause, without leave of the king, constable and mareschall, or the commander of the battle in which he is.

XX. ITEM, that every one shall well and duly perform his watch in the army, and with the number of men at arms and archers as is assigned him, and that he shall remain the full limited term, unless by the order or permission of him before whom the watch is made, on pain of having his head cut off.

XXI. ITEM, that no one shall give passports or safe conduit to a prisoner nor any other, nor leave to any enemy to come into the army, on pain of forfeiture of all his goods to the king, and his body in arrest and at his will ; except our lord the King, Monsieur de Lancaster, seneschall, the constable and marshall : and that none be so hardy as to violate the safe conduit of our lord the king, upon payne of being drawn and hanged, and his goods and heritage forfeited to the king ; nor to infringe the safe-conducts of our said lord of Lancaster, seneschall, constable and mareschall, upon pain of being beheaded.

XXII. ITEM, if any one takes a prisoner, he shall take his faith, and also his bacinet, or gauntlet, to be a pledge and in sign that he is so taken, or he shall leave him under the guard of some of his soldiers, under pain, that if he takes him, and does not do as is here directed, and another comes afterwards, and takes him from him

him (if not under a guard) as is said, his bacinet or right gauntelet in pledge, he shall have the prisoner, though the first had taken his faith.

ITEM, that no one be so hardy to retain the servant of another, who has covenanted for the expedition, whether soldier, man at arms, archer, page or boy, after he shall have been challenged by his master, under pain that his body shall be in arrest till he shall have made satisfaction to the party complaining, by award of the court, and his horses and armour forfeited to the constable.

XXIV. ITEM, that no one be so hardy to go for forage before the lords or others, whosoever they may be, who mark out or assign the places for the foragers, if it is a man at arms, he shall lose his horses and harness to the constable, and his body shall be arrested by the marischal, and if it is a valet or boy, he shall have his left ear cut off.

XXV. THAT none be so hardy as to quarter himself otherwise than by the assignment of the herbergers, who are authorised to distribute quarters, under like penalty.

XXVI. ITEM that every lord whatsoever cause to be delivered to the constable and marischal, the names of their herbergers, under penalty, that if any one goes forward and takes quarters, and his name is not delivered in to the constable and mareschall, he shall lose his horses and armour.

THE rules and ordonnances of war that next occur are those of King Henry V. made at Mans, of these there are two editions, one, probably the original, being by much the most full and explicit, is in Latin, printed in Upton de Re Militari; the other was till lately only in manuscript, in the English of the time; many copies of it are to be found in different libraries, private as well as publick, as it is printed in the preface to the Antiquities of England and Wales, a literal translation of that in Upton is here given.

Here begin the STATUTES of HENRY V. in time of War.

THE clemency of the great Creator disposes those under him to be modest, peaceable and chaste; nevertheless because unbridled avarice,

ALTHOUGH the rules and ordonnances of war, here given from the Latin, bear a general conformity to those written in English, and are besides, much more explicit, yet the English version contains several articles, which are not to be found in the Latin, those are here annexed in the succeeding notes.

PERSONS plundering any one of what degree soever, county, or lordship, under the king's obeisance, to suffer death, provided that the persons in such obeisance, bear some mark or token of the king's protection.

No one to take any child under the age of fourteen, unless the son of a lord, worshipful gentleman, or captain, in which case, the person taking such youth is to bring him to his lord, master, or captain, upon pain of losing his horse and harness, and his part in the said child, reserving to his master his share thereof; the said master or captain, to bring him within eight days to the king or constable.

No man to go into the chamber of a lying-in-woman to rob or plunder her, or to make any disturbance that might injure her or the child, under pain of losing his goods; half to the accuser, and half to the constable and marshal.

No one to fortifie any place without licence from the king or council, or persons authorized to grant such permission, or to compel any district or country under the king's protection to contribute thereto, under pain of losing horse and harness, making restitution to the county of all costs and damages, and moreover his body to be at the king's will.

No man to take horse, mare, ox, or any other beast belonging to labour, from any person going to plough, harrow, or cart, or to molest any husbandmen, under penalty of imprisonment, until he shall have paid a fine, after the award of the constable and marshal.

No man to reproach another on account of his country, be he French, Welch, Irish, or other nation whatsoever, nor make use of any foul or abusive language that may provoke manslaughter or tumult; all such disturbers to suffer such death as the king shall award.

ANY one taking in arms against the king, an enemy who has given his parole, or a natural born subject, shall immediately deliver him to the constable or marshall, upon pain of suffering the same sort of death that would have been inflicted on him; and any one bringing in such persons shall receive ten shillings each, from the king, marshal, or constable.

No man upon pain of death, to set fire to any buildings, &c. without the king's especial commandment.

ANNEXED

avarice, the enemy of peace, daily generates so many new causes for disturbance and litigation, that unless its efforts are repressed by the force of justice, and the sense and intricacy of its questions resolved, all christian rules for our army would be destroyed, and that common good for which we live and reign, extinguished.

Therefore

ANNEXED to the king's ordonnances, are others, made by the Earl of Salisbury; many of them seem orders issued on particular occasions, the most remarkable of which are.

THAT in the countries under the king's protection, the foragers are not to take any thing except hay, oats, rye, and other necessary provision; that no man cut wheat to give his horse, nor for any use except for bread; that in taking cattle, it be done with discretion, and waste avoided, under pain of loss of horse, harness, and goods, and the body of the offender to be at the king's will.

THAT the foragers shall not slay large oxen, or milch cows, but only small cattle, and that they agree for them with the owners, upon the payne aforesaid.

No one soldier or merchant following the army, to take or purchase any plunder taken within the country under the king's protection, upon pain of death. Any one having goods acquired by plunder of the enemy, which he is desirous of selling, must bring it to the common market, and cause the sale to be publickly proclaimed, either by an officer of the Marshalsea, or market: any one purchasing, unless under this circumstance, to be in arrest to the marshal till he shall have paid such fine as the constable and said marshal shall award, and to lose his purchase-money; the seller to lose his horse and harness, and his body to be at the king's will.

No man to beat down houses for fire wood, nor cut down apple-trees, pear-trees, nut-trees, nor any other tree bearing fruit, nor shall any man turn cattle into vineyards, nor pull up the stakes therein, upon pain of forfeiting the beasts, and himself to remain in confinement, until he shall have paid a fine to the constable and marshal for the default.

ALL superior officers are commanded to cause their servants to bury the offal of beasts slaughtered, and carrion, that may be found within their quarters, in order to prevent infectious disorders in the army, upon pain of making amends at the king's will.

No man to take prisoner, any man or child of the country, under the king's protection, having a billet in his possession, upon pain of losing his horse and arms, and his body being at the king's will.

No soldiers to take any cattle from the army, without leave of the constable and marshal, upon pain of forfeiting such cattle; the taker to be entitled to one half, the other to go to the king; if it is with the constable's and marshal's licence, the owner to have a billet under the signet of the constable, with a certificate of the number of beasts.

Therefore law and constitutions are ordained, that noxious appetites may be confined under the rule of justice, by which mankind are informed how to live honestly, without injuring each other, rendering to every one their right. And that our army, as well in peace as war, may be led in the proper path, and the said common good preserved entire; and also on the other part that the constable and mareschal of our said army may judge and determine the more prudently in the causes daily brought before them. We have with the advice of our peers, lords and nobles, made certain constitu-

EVERY captain to compel each of his yeomen immediately to make himself a good substantial stake of eleven feet in length, on account of certain tidings the lords have heard; (i. e. that the enemy intend an attack;) this to be complied with, under pain of such punishment as the offence or disobedience merits.

ALSO, that every man make a good substantial faggot of thirteen feet in length, without leaves, against — day next coming, upon pain of forfeiting a month's wages; merchants following the army, also to furnish their faggots: every captain to cause the faggots made by his company, to be laid distinct from those of any other, that it may be seen, whether he has his due compliment according to the strength of his company.

THAT no one go alone to search for forage, or otherwise than with a party, which will be sent out twice a week; under pain of being punished at my lord's will.

EVERY seven gentlemen, or men at arms, must provide themselves with a good strong ladder of fifteen rounds; that it be ready between this and — day, upon pain of being chastised at my lord's will.

EVERY two yeomen to make themselves a good pavise of boards, and of xx. in the best manner that they can devise, that one may hold it, whilst the other shoots at the enemy.

IN all excursions for booty the men to be divided into parties of seven or five; that three of the seven, or two of the five are to remain with the standard, upon pain that any one who quits it, shall lose all his share of that plunder of the day; half to the king and half to the informer, and his body to be imprisoned at the king's will; and that every captain give in by noon-day, all the names of his men destined for this party, distinguishing by name, such as are allotted to remain with the standard, and those who are destined to go on the look out for booty.

No man to keep a harlot in his quarters, upon pain of losing a month's pay; and if any man can find any common woman or women in the quarters, my lord commands him to take from her or them, the money found on her or them, and to take a staff and drive her out of the army, and break her arm.

tions,

tions, promulgating the same in our army, by public proclamation, enacting that all and every one of the captains in our said army shall have these our said constitutions in writing, that our publication may be considered as a sufficient warning, and that all those concerned may not pretend ignorance of the said constitutions.

Of Churches, and Preserving the Sacrament of the Eucharist in its proper State.

AND because holiness becomes the house of God, we have ordained, that the church shall universally be maintained in its state, and if any one shall be found to have presumed, without the approbation of the constable of our army, to take away, or remove any goods of the church, such as vestments, chalices, books, trinkets or relicks, found in any churches, chapels or monasteries, he shall on his apprehension and conviction before the constable or marischal of our army, be hanged, and the said goods, as soon as possible, be restored to the churches from whence they were taken: we moreover ordain, that no one, under pain of death, shall dare irreverently to touch the sacrament of the Eucharist, nor the pyx or box in which the said sacrament is contained.

The Persons of Ecclesiastics and Women not to be seized.

PRIESTS daily serving God and ministering to him at the altar, shall always enjoy their privileges, any one laying violent hands on the said priests, or slaying them, shall be capitally punished; which punishment, it is our will, shall be extended to ravishers of women, wheresoever they are found; further directing that no one have the temerity to touch any religious men, or veiled or religious women whatsoever, they wearing, without fraud, the habit of their order, nor shall any one dare to make them prisoners, they not appearing in arms, nor openly nor privately making war, under
penalty

penalty of imprisonment, their body there to remain during our will.

What Persons all are bound to obey.

MOREOVER, we ordain, that all persons remaining with our army, of what state, dignity, nation, order or condition soever, shall in all things lawful and honest, obey our constable and mareschal, as ourselves, under penalty of forfeiture of body and goods. Also we direct, that soldiers, and other persons receiving wages from us, or our kingdom, shall be obedient to their immediate captain or masters, in all things legal and honest, keeping watch and ward imposed on the said soldiers, or reasonably to be imposed. Nor shall they quit the said watch or ward in any manner, without the especial licence of their said captains or master, under pain of arrest of body and goods, until, according to the discretion and disposition of our mareschal, the first captain or master shall be fully satisfied. Also, if a scarcity of victuals, or dearth of forage should happen, and it shall be judged necessary by the captains to send to the neighbouring villages for the said victuals and forage, we direct all soldiers, according to the order of their captains or masters, humbly to be ready to go, either on horseback or on foot, for the said victuals; any one disobeying this order shall incur the penalties mentioned in the preceding statute.

Also merchants, either travelling with the army, or buying and selling in our markets, shall obey our constable and mareschal, and even the clerk of the market, as ourselves. Also all contracts, crimes and suits shall be heard and finally determined in our court, by the judgement of our constable and mareschal; or, in the absence of our constable, in the presence of our mareschal, if one or both of contractors, delinquents or suitors, are belonging to our army, whether soldiers or merchants, or handicrafts, such as shoemakers, taylors, barbers, physicians or washer-women, and also our scouts especially appointed.

Of

Of observing Watches and Guards.

WHEREAS disturbances frequently happen in our army, as well by day as night, which by daily and diligent watches and proper guards are prevented; wherefore we ordain, that our mareschal shall appoint a daily guard, portioned to the number of armed men, of which our army shall consist; and every captain shall in turn assist in performing the said watches and guards. Nor shall any captain, either of horse or foot, being as is premised, duly warned and ordered for guard, dare to be deficient in the number of men of arms or archers, or to quit the said guard or watch in any manner, till the limited time, without the special licence of him by whom the said guard was appointed, under pain of decapitation. We moreover ordain, that all our captains of our army shall keep a sufficient watch in their quarters, as well by night as day, whether on an expedition, or besieging castles, forts or towns, under penalty of arrest of their bodies, to be severely punished at our will.

Of Public Musters.

AND that the said watch may be always duly preserved without fraud, it is our will that every captain of our army, without any fraud or reserve whatsoever, shall make a muster or shew of all his soldiers, as well men of arms as archers, fully and perfectly, according to his assigned number, before us or our commissaries, as often as the said captain shall by us, or our commissaries be duly and legally thereunto required: also, that the captains shall shew only their own soldiers, with whom they have agreed for the expedition, and no others, under pain of perpetual reprobation, and the loss of their wages for the said expedition. We also prohibit any one from retaining in his service any soldier, servant or boy, who was lately in the service of another, without the consent and permission of his prior captain or master: we moreover direct and command,
that

that all our commissaries in the aforefaid musters do diligently enquire after, and see that the soldiers shew their proper arms, without fraud; and this we also would have more especially observed respecting the bows and arrows; and, if necessary, it is our will, that respecting this our commissaries may compel the captain or master to answer upon oath.

Of Disturbances and Public Cries.

MOREOVER, it is our will, that no one, of what condition, nation, degree or dignity soever, shall dare to make any clamour or disturbance, by which we or our army may any ways be disturbed, and especially that clamour we call "mountee;" or that any person or persons shall in future dare to make any other irrational clamour, under pain that the beginner shall be arrested, and with his horse or horses put in custody of the constable or mareschal, to be punished without favour, until he shall have duly satisfied the said constable and mareschal for his offence; and the discoverer, informer, or accuser of the said beginner, shall receive an hundred shillings of Tours, to wit, ten shillings of English money for his labour, from the said constable or mareschal.

ALSO if any one shall proclaim his own name, or that of his lord or master, by which proclamation a gathering or assembly of the people shall be made to the disturbance of the army, any one so offending, and convicted thereof before the constable or mareschal shall be publickly hanged; also if any one shall be found to have in any manner begun the clamour called "havock," without our especial licence, he shall be punished with death, and his followers with arrest of body and goods, and to be diligently kept in the custody of the constable and mareschal, till they have fined with them for the offence.

ALSO, if any alarm or clamour of a coming enemy should suddenly arise in our army, we direct and command, that every captain
with

with his men shall immediately repair to our person, or that of our principal captain, leaving certain persons appointed by the said captains, for the safe keeping of the quarters, those captains only excepted, near whose quarters the said disturbance or alarm has arisen, whom we command to remain with their companies to defend their quarters, which we would have fully to be observed in our absence for this voyage, in the person of every principal captain whatsoever; and also when we ride out on an expedition, we expressly prohibit any one whatsoever, to dare to leave our army without our especial licence, whereby disturbances or clamors might arise in our said army, under pain of forfeiture of goods to be put in custody of the constable or marshal, and arrest of body at our will and favour, and in our absence, at the will of the principal captain of the army by us ordained.]

Of General Equitations.

No one in our army shall dare to cause any assembly or meeting by any means for the purpose of equitating from our said army, to any neighbouring country, town or fortress, without our especial leave, or that of the principal captain of our army, for succour, under pain of arrest of body and goods during our will.

Also, if it should happen that any such general equitation should be made by our especial licence, we then ordain and will, that no one shall dare to recede from the company and society of the captain of the said equitation, without the especial licence of the said captain, under pain of arrest at our will, and loss of booty by him so acquired that day, nevertheless the third part of the said booty to be reserved entire to his immediate master, and two other parts of the said booty being likewise reserved out of the said booty, for the captain of the said equitation. This our statute we direct shall at all times be inviolably observed by all men, as often as such equitation shall be made. We also prohibit any one to dare to erect our

Vol. II. K standard,

standard, that of any lords, or of Saint George, in order to call together any part of our army, to equitate or cross over to any country, town or fortrefs whatsoever, without our especial licence, on pain of hanging and drawing for the captains so presuming, and beheading for every one of their followers, with forfeiture of hereditaments and goods.

WE also ordain, that no captain, of what condition, state or dignity soever, shall make equitations, or dare to grant leave to others so to do, without our special licence, under pain of our perpetual indignation, and arrest of body, to be severely punished at our will.

Also, if we shall have assigned an equitation to be made by any particular persons, we expressly prohibit, under pain of death, any one to dare to burn any building, house or houses, or to put fire to them, without our especial mandate.

Of taking and assigning Quarters.

WE moreover direct, that no one shall go before our army in any manner, our own quarter-master and those of other lords or captains excepted, whose names have first been delivered in to the constable or mareschal, and by him declared in writing, under pain of arrest of body and goods, to be put into the custody of our constable or marshal, until the said delinquent has fined sufficiently for his offence to the said constable or mareschal.

Also, that no person of what state, dignity soever, shall presume to quarter himself, it being our will that, in all matters respecting quarters, all persons should obey our quarter master general as ourselves, under pain of arrest of body and goods; we also direct under the aforesaid penalties, that no one having his quarters assigned him as above directed, shall quit the said quarters without the special licence of his captain or master.

Also should it happen that any one should find any victuals, either in or about his quarters, it is our will that the said finder should

should decently enjoy the said victuals, by using it moderately, and if any should remain, he should bestow the same on others standing in need thereof, without any abuse or destruction whatsoever, under pain of arrest of body and forfeiture of his horses, or horse if he shall have only one, and also of his arms, untill he shall have fined sufficiently to the constable or mareschal.

WE also prohibit any one, of what state, condition or dignity he may be, to presume to dispute about his quarters, or those of his followers, or to dare to make any combination or assembly of his people, in order to cause any dispute within his quarters, or those of any other person, under pain of arrest of body during our pleasure, and of his horses and arms, untill he shall have fined to the constable and mareschal for his offence; and if the delinquent shall be a boy or youth, he shall be punished by the cutting off his left ear; and if the offence shall be greater, the offender shall be more severely punished at the discretion of the constable and mareschal.

WE moreover prohibit any one either within or out of his quarters, to begin any disturbance with any person, on account of any injury, grudge, or quarrel, past or future, by which dispute, the death of either party may be caused or happen, under penalty of forfeiture of body and goods; and if death should really ensue, all so offending shall be hanged.

Of Prisoners.

BECAUSE in battles and other warlike actions, prisoners are frequently taken, and through fear of the enemy rallying, the captor cannot sometimes attend to the care of his prisoner; we have thought it proper to lay down a certain rule in writing, whereby we declare, that he to whom the prisoner has surrendered, shall have the said prisoner, although he shall not have been able to superintend the custody of the said prisoner to the end of the conflict, provided the

saïd prisoner shall not afterwards be found defending himself in the same engagement: also, if any one shall beat down his enemy to the ground, and another shall take his surrender, the prisoner so taken, shall be the joint-property of both, and the person to whom he surrendered shall have the keeping of the saïd prisoner, giving sufficient security to his partner, for his part of the ransom of the before-named prisoner: also, when a prisoner is taken, and another person coming up and demanding a part, a part shall be granted to him, with the consent of the captor; but if by chance the party demanding a share, shall threaten he will otherwise kill the prisoner, he shall have no part in the saïd prisoner, although a part should have before been granted him; and if he should actually kill the afore-said prisoner, he shall be arrested by the constable and mareschal, and remain in prison till he shall have fined to the party aggrieved at the discretion of our constable and mareschal of our army.

WE also direct, that as soon as a prisoner is taken, the taker of the saïd prisoner shall bring him to our army, and present him without delay to his captain or master, under penalty of losing the saïd prisoner, to be adjudged to his immediate master; and if the prisoner so taken shall be his superior in one part of the army, and shall have from his sovereign permission to display his standard; or if the prisoner shall be of the blood royal, a duke, a marquis, earl, or chief captain, then the saïd captive, he be whom he may, shall be the prisoner of the chief captain of that part of our saïd army, unless the taker of such prisoner shall be his equal, or superior in arms or dignity, or such baron or notable soldier, who shall have before displayed his banner; the chief captain in that case, shall agree with the taker, giving him a sufficient reward for the captive.

WE also will, that the captain or master, receiving a prisoner from his lanceman or archer as is afore-said, shall within eight days, faithfully present him to us, our principal captain or constable, or the mareschal of our army, under penalty of losing such part of the saïd prisoner, he would otherwise have been entitled to, which part we give to any one
noti-

notifying to us, the constable or mareschal of our army, the secreting of such prisoner; we farther ordain, that no one shall presume to suffer their prisoner to straggle about, or go at large, or ride about at his liberty, or to remain unguarded in his quarters, under penalty of the loss of the said prisoner; but one third part of the ransom of the prisoner so negligently guarded, to be reserved to the captain or master of the captor, provided the said captain or master shall not be chargeable with any part of the said neglect; the other part of the aforesaid ransom we adjudge to the accuser: we also assign to the constable and mareschal of our army, the third part of the said ransom, as also the body of the delinquent in arrest, as has been before said, to be severely punished at our mercy.

WE also will and ordain, that no one shall suffer his prisoner to leave our army without our safe conduct, or that of the commander of our army, first obtained for the said prisoner, under the penalties of the last statute: we also ordain, that no one shall dare to sell his prisoner, or to take ransom for him, without the licence of his captain, indented with us, under hand and seal for the expedition, under penalty of losing such prisoner, to be adjudged to the said captain, and arrest of the person so offending: we moreover will, that the purchasers shall be punished with the loss of their prisoners so purchased.

Of Thirde.

THE soldiers of every captain, all armed shield-bearers and archers whatsoever, are bound to pay to their captain, or immediate master, without fraud, of what state or condition, or dignity soever, one third part of their acquisitions made by war, under penalty of losing the whole of the principal sum so gotten, and arrest of body, untill he shall fined with his aforesaid master.

IT is also our pleasure, that all persons with us in our army, whether serving under our standard, or following the army, although they

they do not receive wages from us or our kingdom, such as physicians, merchants, barbers, and many like, shall be bound to pay to us, or the principal captain of our army, one third of the goods obtained by them in the war, such as prisoners, and other moveables acquired in like manner.

Against Plundering.

WE farther ordain, that none under pain of death, shall dare to rob or spoil any merchant or merchants, or presume to take away from them, any goods, especially victuals; the same we direct to be observed towards physicians and barbers; nor shall any soldier dare to spoil any provisions or forage whatsoever bought by them, or acquired by any just manner, under pain of death; and we prohibit any soldier, or other, of what state or degree whatsoever, to presume to steal, spoil, or carry away from another, any goods, that he by his just labours may have acquired from the enemy; such as victuals, hay, straw, oats, wheat, wine, oil or the like, under pain of arrest of the body of the delinquent, to be punished at our will.

Of Assaults.

WE also ordain, that no assault shall be made against any castle or fortress whatsoever, by archers, or other common soldiers, without the presence of some captain especially appointed to the same, under pain of imprisonment; and in fact, if any such premised assault is made, and a publick prohibitory proclamation has been issued by us, or the principal captain, or constable, or mareschal of our army, those disobeying shall be punished with imprisonment, and loss of goods there acquired.

Of safe Conduct.

NOR shall any of our inferior captains, the general of our army only excepted, presume to give licence to any enemy or prisoners to come into
our

our army, or pass through, or leave it, without our special licence, and with our safe conduct, or that of the constable of our army, if his commission extend so far, under pain of forfeiture of body and goods: we also prohibit any one, of what state, degree, condition, or dignity soever, to presume to give or grant safe conduct to any one by his own authority, either under his proper seal or that of another, our constable only excepted, if he has received such powers from us: also that none dare to break, or violate in any manner, any safe conduct granted by us or our constable as aforesaid, under pain of hanging and drawing, and confiscation of hereditaments and goods.

Of turning out the common Whores.

MOREOVER we order that publick and common whores, are by no means permitted to remain with the army, and especially during the sieges of towns, castles, or fortresses of any sort, but that they shall be stationed together afar off from the army, at the distance of a league at least, which we will also have observed in all cities, castles, and fortresses, taken by us or our forces, or yielded to us or our forces, or hereafter to be taken or yielded to us, or others in our name, to wit, that no one shall remain in the said castle or fortress, or shall maintain house whether small or great, under pain of fracture of the left arm of the said whore, if after one admonition she be found publickly or privately in the said prohibited place.

THE orders of King Henry V. to the captain of Rouen, or his lieutenant, exhibit a specimen of the garrison regulations of that king; they are printed in Rymer; (a) similar orders were at the same time issued to thirty-six other captains.

THE king to the captain of Rouen or his lieutenant greeting: Whereas many captains of town and fortresses, and their lieutenants

(a) TOM. 10. p. 106, &c.

in the dutchy of Normandy, usurp greater powers than the king has invested them with, or than is proper, oppressing and plundering his subjects, both of money and provisions, and committing divers enormities and excesses, and permitting the same to their soldiers, stipendiaries and servants; wherefore, the following articles are laid down, specifying in what manner they are to regulate themselves, under the penalties therein named, or others at his pleasure.

ALL soldiers and stipendiaries to obey the captain, and to attend to every thing that may conduce to the safety of the garrison; and the said captain and his officers minutely to attend, both day and night, the gates, sally-ports, ditches, walls, and watches of the said place; and to punish all delinquents respecting these or other transgressions, abstaining from all exactions under pretence of neglect of the night-watches, or any other colour.

THE captain to have the determination of all disputes between the garrison, respecting booty arising from excursions made by the said garrison.

THAT both the captain and his soldiers, &c. be in all things humbly obedient and assisting to the king's lieutenant for Normandy, chancellor, treasurer, seneschall, bailiff, &c. and other his officers, assisting him with their arms, if duly required.

No impositions, exactions, &c. to be made by himself or his soldiers, or the inhabitants of any town, village, parish, &c. either in taking grain or cattle, as they will answer to the said king and his subjects.

ITEM; because some of the soldiers of the king's garrisons and their followers, and servants, neither fearing God, nor reverencing men, keep, as the king is informed, women in concubinage, and what is worse, in adultery, or other unlawful connections, and not having means of obtaining their voluptuous allurements, (which require and demand an immoderate expence) they rob and plunder his faithful subjects, thereby provoking the divine wrath, and causing great danger and prejudice to the government and subjects:

HE

HE therefore directs, that no soldier, stipendiary, &c. be permitted to keep a woman in concubinage, nor to have any prohibited or illicit connexion with one; and if any one is found offending in these matters, all favor being set aside, he be imprisoned for a month at least, or longer, according to the nature of his offence; for which month, or other time of imprisonment, he shall lose his wages, nor be released from prison, until he shall have given reasonable security, under a penalty by the said captain to be fixed, that he shall live and converse well and honestly for the future.

AND to the end, that neither captain, soldier, nor stipendiary, may in future plead ignorance of these matters, the king has sent certain inclosed articles, which according to their tenor and form, he would have observed, and besides, ordered to be publicly proclaimed; further directing and commanding, under pain of his indignation, that his captains and lieutenants to whom it is directed, do attend to the premises, and that they do not by any means, usurp or encroach on the ordinary jurisdiction belonging to his bayliffs and other justices. Signed: given at our castle of Rouen, 25th day of April, 1421. In the next month, the following (b) commission of enquiry was issued by the king to Sir John Radcliff, Knight, giving him power and authority to enter and visit, all and every of his towns, castles and fortresses, by which he should happen to pass, and diligently to enquire, or to use other ways and means whereby he might know, or be more fully informed, of the discipline and government of the captains, lieutenants, governors, constables, mareschals, porters, and others officers and soldiers, for, and relative to, the safe keeping and wholesome government of the towns, fortresses, &c. assigned to them.

ALSO, to learn in what manner the said captains, governors, constables, officers, and soldiers behave to all, as well towards the

(b) RYMER, tom. 12. p. 112.

king in the careful keeping and good government of these places, as to the people thereof, and the king's other liege subjects of the parts adjacent.

AND particularly to enquire respecting extortions, pillagings, robberies, impositions, (c) appaticisements, and other undue actions, by them as it is said, done, and perpetrated; and whether the said captains, &c. &c. have done, or attempted any thing, contrary to the king's admonitions, prohibitions, ordonnances, and mandates, so repeatedly directed to them; and also, many times proclaimed by the bailiffs.

And what jurisdiction or authority in criminal cases; and also in transgressions by their soldiers or others, they have exercised contrary to our ordonnances, or more than they are legally entitled to do; and all things respecting the king's advantage and honour, for the preservation of these places; or concerning the king's liege subjects in any manner.

ALSO, of all attempts offered and improperly perpetrated, and the steps taken for amending, correcting, and reforming such abuses, or causing emendations, &c. to be made therein, punishing and imprisoning the attemptors, delinquents, and those who shall disobey and neglect these ordonnances, edicts, &c. of what state and condition soever, without favor, as the cause shall require, or as directed in the said ordonnances.

ALL things necessary respecting these orders to be attended to, although they should require a more especial mandate, to which all are commanded to be attentive; and all and every of the king's captains, and other liege subjects, whom these presents may concern, are directed to obey the said mandate, and assist if neces-

(c) APPATICISEMENTS, contributions, or money paid by the enemy, in compensation for their towns being protected from the ravages of war.

fary in the execution thereof. Dated at the castle of Rouen, 5th May, 1421.

THE following orders for the English army, in the year 1486, in the 2d year of Henry VII. before the battle of Stoke, are found in Leland's Collectanea. (d)

“AND when the king has thus preparat and ordeyned his fowarde he ordeyned by his proclamation, for goode rule of his hooſte, by the adviſe of the Reverend Fader in God, the archbiſhop of Canterbury, the biſhop of Wyncheſter, the biſhop of Exceſter, and all other temporall lordes then preſent, and other his counſellers in manner as enſueth. The king our ſoveraign lord doth ſtraytly charge and command, that no manner of man, of whatſoever ſtate, degre, or condition he bee, rob ne ſpoyle any chyrche, ne take out of the ſame, any ornament theron belonging, or touche, ne ſett hande on the pix, wherin the bleſſed ſacrement is conteyned; nor yet robbe, ne ſpoyle, any manner, man or woman, upon payne of deth: alſo, that no manner of perſon ne perſons whatſoever they bee, make no quarrel to any man, nor ſeaſe, nor vex, ne trouble any man, by body or goods for any offence, or by color of any offence heretofore doon or commytted aganſt the royal majeſtie of the king our ſaide ſoveraigne lord, withoute his auctoritie and eſpeceal comaundement, geven unto hym or theym that ſo doon, in that behalfe, upon payne of deth.

ALſo, that no manner of perſon ne perſones whatſoever they bee, raviſh no religioſ woman, nor mannes wiſſ, daughter, maydene, ne no mannes, ne woman's ſervaunt, or take, ne preſume to take any manner of vytayll, horſe mete, nor mannes mete, without paying therfor the reaſonable pryce thereof, aſſiſed by the clerke of the market, or other the king's officers therefor ordeynede, upon payne of dethe: alſo, that no manner of perſon ne perſones what-

foever they bee, take upon theym to logge theymselves, nor take no manner of loggin ne herbygage, but suche as shal be assignede unto hym or theym by the king's herbygeours, nor to disloge no man, nor change no logging after that be assignede, without advyse and assent of the said harbergeours, uppon peine of imprisonment, and to be punysshede at the wille of our saide soveraigne lorde : also, that no maner of man, whatsoever he be, make no quarrell with any other man for no maner of cause, old ne newe, ne make no manner of fray within the hooſte, ne withoute, upon peyne of imprisonment, and to be punysshede according to their trespass and defaultes, and if ther happen any suche quarrel of affray to be made by any evil-disposede personnes, then no maner of man, for any acquaintance or feliship that they bee of, take no parte with no such misdoers in any such affrayes or quarrells, upon pain of imprisonment, and to be punysshede at the king's wille ; but that every man endeavour hymself to take al suche mysdoers, and brynge them to the marshal's warde, to be punished according to their desertes : alsoe, that no maner of personne whatsoever he bee, hurt, troble, bete, ne lete no maner of personne, man, woman, or child, brynging any vitayle unto the king's hooſte, upon peyne of impryſonment, and his bodye to bee at the king's wille ; and over this, that every man being of the retayne of our saide souveraigne lorde, at the furst founde or blast of the trumpet, to sadil hys hors ; at the second doo brydell ; and at the third, be redy on horsebake to wayt uppon his highnesse, upon peyne of imprisonment : also, that no maner of personne whatsoever he be, make no skryes, showtings, or blowings of hornesse in the king's hooſte, after the wache bee sett, upon peyne of imprisonment, and his body to be at the king's will : also, that no vagabonde nor other followe the king's hoſte, but suche as be reteynede, or have maisters within the same, upon payne of imprisonment, and to be punysshede in example of other ; and that no common woman follow the king's hooſte, upon peyne of imprisonment, and openly to be punysshede in example of al other : also, when-

whensoever it shall please the king our souveraigne lord, to commande any of his officers of armes to charge any thing in his name, by his high comaundement, or the comaundement of his constable or marshall, that it be observed and kept, upon payne of imprisonment, and his bodye to be punyshed at the king's pleasure.

THE military code of Henry VIII. is preserved in manuscript in the College of Arms; (e) it is said in the title page to have been printed, A. D. 1524, by Thomas Bertelet; but I have never been able to discover a printed copy of it. The following was transcribed from the manuscript, in the College of Arms, above-mentioned.

Statutes and Ordinances for the Warre. Londini, Anno, MDXLIIII.
35 HEN. VIII.

FORASMUCH as the due observation of lawes and good orders is a thinge most necessarie, as well in time of warre as off peace, beeinge y^e kings majestie our most dread souveraigne Lorde Henry the eight, by the grace of God kinge of England, France and Ireland, defender of the faith, and of the church of England, and also of Ireland, in earth the supreme head, provoked by the manifold injuries committed by the Frenche kinge, both in his confederation with the Turke, and by his private displeasures and wronges done to his highnes, against the common weale of Christendome, to invade the realme of France this somer in his most royall pson, his majestie mindinge due order to be observed and kepte amonges all sortes of men of his highnes most royall and puissant armie, as well captaynes, souldiers as others, in such wise as apperteyneth both towards God and the world, hath devised and commanded to be sett fourth certayne ordinances and statutes for the warre, as hereafter ensueth, not doubtinge but all his majesties most lovinge and

(e) IN a book marked W. S.

obedient subjects for the discharge of their most bounden duties towards his highnes, will embrace and obey the same accordingly.

.I. FYRST, that all manner of men, of the same armie, of what nation, estate or condition soever they bee, bee obeisant to the sayde lieutenant general, upon payne of drawing, hanginge and quarteringe, or other punishment, at the discretion of the lieutenant. And alsoe, that every man aforesayd, the lord lieutenant only except, bee obeysant unto the marshall of the armie, for the tyme beeing, upon such paynes as shall bee limited by the lieutenant; and also that every of them obey and dulle keepe all such proclamations, ordinances and statutes as now bee, and hereafter shall bee, on the behalf of our sayd souveraigne lord, made and proclaimed, upon the paynes within the sayde proclamations, ordinances and statutes, or anie of them comprehended.

For Holy Church,

II. ALSOE, that noe man bee soe hardie irreverently to touch either the holie sacrement of Godde's bodie, or the boxe, or the vessell which the same is in, upon payne to bee drawne and hanged therefore: and alsoe, that noe man be soe hardie to burne or cutte anie images: alsoe, that noe manner of man, without sufficient autoritie or commandement, take of anie place, person, towne or countrey, havinge saufe-guard of the sayd lieutenant, anie manner goods or victualls, without the agreement and will of the wardens of the same places or persons, upon payne to bee imprisoned, and his life att the sayd lieutenant's will.

For Herbergage.

III. ALSOE, that noe man presume to goe before the battayle, but that every man keepe himselfe in due order under the banner or pennon of his lorde, master or captayne, except harbingers, the
names

names of whom shall be delivered and taken to the marshall by their sayde lords, masters or captaynes, upon the payne that hee that foe offendeth shall be put from his horse and harneys, both to be committed to the warde of the marshall, unto the tyme the offender hath made his fyne withe saide marshall, and found suretie that he shall noe more offend in y^e like.

IV. ALSOE, that noe lorde, ne capteyne, ne lordes, ne capteynes herberger, take anie lodginge, without deliverance of the marshall of the lodgings, or his deputie or deputies having his authoritie; and that noe foldier take anie lodgings without it bee delivered by his lords or capteynes herbinge, upon peyne of imprisonment, and to make fyne at the kynge's pleasure; and that after the tyme that the herbergage or lodginge is appoynted and delivered, that noe man be foe hardie himself to dislodge, ne to disaray, for any thing that may fall, without commaundement of him that is authorised thereunto, upon peyne of horse and harneys to be putt in arrest of the marshall, till the tyme he hath made fine with him, and their bodies to bee att the king's pleasure.

For Musters.

V. ALSOE, when it shall please the king's majestie, his lieutenant or lieutenants to commande muster to be taken of his host; it is ordeined, that no capteyne presume, or attempt to have, or to shew other men in his musters than those that bee with himselve retayned, and attendant in and for the same voyage, without fraude, gyle, or dissimulation, upon payne to bee holden false and reprov'd, and his bodie to be imprisoned and punished at the king's pleasure; and if anie person be twise, or twoo tymes thereof convicted, and found faultie, then to die for it; and that in like wise, noe man come, ne appeare in or att anie muster, under any capteyne, except he bee, (as afore is sayd) retayned with him for that voyage, upon peyne of imprisonment at the king's will.

VI. ALSOE,

VI. ALSOE, the commissioners when they shall take the musters, shall cause the captaynes or pety captaynes with their retinues to be sworne, that they shall be good and true to the kinge, our soveraigne lord; and that they shall to their powers, keepe his cries and ordinances, and serve him truly against all his enemies, noe person reserved: alsoe they shall sweare, whether that the horse and harness that they have at that season, bee their own propre, or their masters or captaynes, and that they shall not without licence of their captaynes depart the companie.

ALSOE, the sayd commissioners shall diligently enquire and see, that every man cominge unto the musters, have all his harnesse necessary as apperteyneth for him, without any gile; and in especiall at the fyrst muster, that every archer have his bow and arrowes hole; that is to witte, yn arrowes xxx, or xxviii, headed and whole in a shefe att the leste; and for the more suretie in this case, the sayd commissioners to cause every souldier to swear, that his harneys, bow and arrowes bee his own, or his master's, or captaine's; and alsoe, that noe man, that ones mustred, and was admitted for an archer, alter or change himselfe into any other condicion, without the kinge's speciall licence, upon payne of imprisonment at the king's pleasure.

That the Capteynes make Payment to their Souldiors of their Wages.

VII. ALSO, it is ordeined, that every captaine, pety captaine, and all other havinge under them retinue of anie souldior or souldiors at the king's wages, shall pay to their retinue of souldior or souldiors the wages rateably, as is allowed unto them by the kinge our soveraigne lord, or the treasurer of his warres, without diminishinge or defalkeing any part thereof, duringe the tyme that they shall receove wages for them; this payment to bee made unto the said retinues, by their captaynes, or petit captaynes of souldior or souldiors, within vi. dayes next; and immediately after, the sayd captaynes, pety capitaines,

itaines or others shall have received their wages of the king, or of the treasurer of the warres, or of their lordes and masters, upon the penaltie, that he which offendeth therein, shall forfayte to the kinge, all his goodes and chattalles, and his bodie to prison at the king's pleasure, except hee be reasonable letted in that behalfe; wherof, he shall within the same vi. dayes, duly certifie the said treasurer of the warres; and also, it shall be lawfull for every man fynding him grieved in this behalf, to complayne him unto the treasurer of the warres, where as, he shall finde his sufficient remedy in this case.

VIII. ALSOE, that noe man departe from the stale, without leave or licence of his lord or master, upon the peyne, that hee that so departeth to be arrested, and to be put in warde of the marshall, and his life to be att the king's pleasure; and alsoe, to lose all his profitt and gayne of that day, reserved to his lord or master, the thyrdes of his profitt, and to the lordes of the stale, the surplus of the same profitts of the same day; and alsoe, that noe lord nor captaine licence anie servant or souldior of his to depart from the stale, without knowledge and licence of the chiefe capteynes of the stale.

For them that make themselves Capitanes to withdraw Men from the Host.

IX. ALSO, that noe man by reysinge a banner or pennon of anie armes, image, or other token, or by anie other means, assemble people, to withdraw them out of the host, to goe to any other place, without the king's authoritie, upon payne to be drawn, hanged, and quartered; and that noe man follow ne ensue any such person out of the host, upon payne to bee hanged, and as well the reysors of the sayd banner or penon, and assemblair of people, as the followers, to be reputed traytors, and to forfayte unto the kinge, all their landes, goodes and chattailes foresaid.

Unlawful Assemblies.

X. ALSOE, that noe man make anie unlawfull assemblies of the kinge's people, or make any bandes, conspiracies, routes, or conventicles, or reyse, or engender murmeyrours, or grudginges against the king, or anie other person of his hoast, whereby might ensue murder, division, dissention, sedition, stirring, or commocyon of the people in the host, two parties takings, or bandes makinge, upon like paynes.

For keeping of Watch and Wards.

XI. ALSOE, that every man bee obeyfant to his capteyne, and pety capteyne, and trulie keep his wach and his warde, stale and forrey, and do all that belongeth to a fouldcor to doe, upon payne that his horse and harneys shall be putt in the warde of the marshall, unto the tyme that hee that soe offendeth, shall agree with his captaine accordinge to the order of the courte.

That no Man disaray himselfe in the Battaile for any Scrie that shall come.

XII. ALSOE, that every capitaine keepe duly his watche, stale, and forres, with as many men of armes and archers, as to him shall be assigned, onles hee shall have cause reasonable, allowed by the marshall; and to abide upon his warde, watch and stale, the terme and tyme to him limited, without departinge from it anie way, onles it be by the assignment or licence of him by whom the sayd watch, ward and stale shall be made and appointed, upon payne that his bodie shall be imprisoned, and his person and goodes to stande att the king's pleasure; and that every capitaine have day and night, watch within his lodgings, upon payne of losinge foure dayes wages.

XIII. ALSOE, it is ordeyned, that for or upon anie tydings, rumours, uproars, or for any scrie, that shall or may come, rise, or
growe

growe in the hoste, noe man shall disarray or move himselfe out of order of the battayle that he shall sett in, or departe out of array, without leave or licence of his chieftayne, upon payne that he soe offendinge, shall bee put from his horse and harneys, into warde of the marshall, their to remayne untill he shall have made fine with the marshall, and finde suretie that hee shall not offend hereafter in the like, which if he shall doe, then his bodie is to be at y^e king's pleasure.

For unlawful Escries.

XIV. ALSO, that noe person presume or attempt to make, or cause, or procure to be made, any outrageous escry in the host, either by day or by night, upon payne that hee that shall bee found the beginner thereof, to loose his goods and life, and the rest to bee ymprisoned, and their bodies to bee punished att the kinge's pleasure; and hee that certifieth who is the beginner, shall have XLs. for his labour of the marshall.

XV. ALSO, that every capitayne keepinge the host, that shall fortune to have fouldiours of his retinue to be discharged, or to depart out of his companie, or to bee dead, be it naturally, or by murder, or slaughter, within x. days next, and ymediately ensueing his sayd discharginge, departinge, or death, shall certifie by bill, his name, with the day of his dischargeinge, departinge, or death, unto the treasourer of the warres; and if the same capitaine bee with any retinue or garrison, or elsewhere out of the host by the king's commandement, that then he shall make the sayd certificate in all goodly haste, upon peyne to forfayte unto the king, all his goodes and chattails, and his bodie to prison att the king's pleasure; and that noe capteyne, nor petit capteyne, into the place of anie of his souldours or souldours, (as above said) discharged, departed, or dead, in anie wise take another, except it be by the sight and allowance of the

treasouror of the warres, upon payne of ymprisonment of his bodie, and further punishment at the king's pleasure.

Robbynge of Merchants cominge to the Markett, and ravishinge of Women, and alsoe Murderinge.

XVI. ALSOE, that noe man robbe no wittayler, ne merchant, ne none other person cominge unto the markett with vittayle or other merchandise, for the refreshinge of the hofte, or retourninge from the same, upon the payne of death; and that noe man of the king's hoast robbe anie other of the same, of horse meat or mans meate, upon payne of imprisonment, and his body to bee punished att the king's pleasure, ne of anie other goodes upon payne of deathe. Alsoe that noe man murder or robbe anie person, except he bee the king's enemy, ne ravishe anie woman, upon payne of death.

For Escryes made by Enimies in the Hofte.

XVII. ALSOE, if anie escrie fall in the hofte by enemies, after the armie bee lodged, that every captayne of the king's warde, drawe him to the kinge, and capteynes of the other warde draw them to the chieftayne of the warde where he is lodged, levyng his lodgings sufficiently kept, except the enemies fall in that side, where he is lodged, and then, in this case the sayde captayne shall abide there himselfe and all his men, and to send word to the chieftayne of the ward, upon payne of imprisonment, and further to bee punished att the king's pleasure.

For resisting of Justice.

XVIII. ALSOE, if anie man bee adjudged to ye death by the king's majestie's marshall or any other judge ordinarie, or anie other officer lawfull, that noe man presume or attempt by any means colour or pretence, to resist the execution of the judgement, upon payne

payne that if the condemne bee a traytor, hee that is the chief resistant, shall have like payne of death as the condemned was adjudged unto, and all the resistants, adherents, fautors and abettours, to bee beheaded; and if it bee any other crime or offence capitall then treason, that then the resistour in such case shall suffer like paynes and punishments, as the principall adjudged should have susteyned, and suffred, and all other, the resistours, adherents, fautors and aydors, to bee punished at the king's pleasure.

For them that breake the King's Arreste.

XIX. ALSOE, that every man shall obey the kinge's serjantes, porters of places, and all other officers havigne authoritie to arrest, assigned by the king's majestie or the marshall, or by anie other officers of authoritie. And that noe man presume to break their arrests, upon payne of ymprisonment, and his bodie to be at the king's pleasure, his grace's lieutenant or lieutenants; and if the prisoner disobeyinge the saide arrest, mayme anie of the sayde officers, then hee foe offendinge to suffer paynes of death, and if hee greivousslie wound or hurt anie of them, then to be imprisoned and punished at the king's pleasure.

For good Rule to be kept.

XX. ALSOE, that every lord capitayne and petit capitayne, having any retinue, great or small, forsee good rule and guidinge of his people, at his perill and charge, as he will answer for them to the kinge for the contrarie: and that every souldiour obey his captayne and pety captayne, and likewise every captayne and pety captayne obey his superior capteyn or ruler, upon payne as shall bee limited by the sayd superior captaine or ruler.

XXI. ALSOE, that after the watch shall be sett, unto the tyme it be discharged in the morninge, noe manner of man make anie showtinge,

showtinge, or blowinge of hornes, or whistlinge, or great noyse, but if it bee trumpett's by a speciall commandement, upon payne of ymprisonment, and further to be punished at the discretion of y^e marshal.

XXII. ALSOE, that noe man take upon him to bear anie newe armes, other than hee is borne too, of blood; without the advise of the officers of armes, where through strife and contention might fall in the host, upon payne to bee punished at the king's pleasure, and to be reproched for the same.

XXIII. ALSOE, that noe captayn havinge anie carriage appoynted to him, shall have anie mo souldiers of, and in the king's wages, to attend upon his carriage, then for every cart two souldours, and for every horse charged a parte with carriage, one souldour, upon payne, y^e captayne to loose his monthes wages, and the souldour to be imprisoned at the king's pleasure.

XXIV. ALSOE, every horseman, att the first blast of the trumpett, shall saddle, or cause to be saddled, his horse, att the second to bridle, att the thirde to leape on his horseback to wayt on the king, or his lorde, or capitayne: and that every man waite upon the standart of his owne lorde and capitayne, and not to depart therefro, ne to meddle with none other companies in rydinge nor goeing, but such as bee commanded as harbargers or other carriars, as is above rehearsed in the article of herbergage, upon payne of imprisonment, and further to be punished at the king's pleasure.

For Diseinge, Cardinge, and all Manner of Games.

XXV. ALSOE, that noe man play at dise, cardes, tables, closhe, hands out, or anie other game, whereby they shall wast their money, or cause debates to arise by the same, except such as shall bee licenced by the kinge's majestie, or his lieutenant, by byll assigned; and if anie foe be, bee found or convicted of playinge att anie of these games, that for the first tyme, he or they shall bee committed
to

to warde, there to remain viii. dayes, and to loose all such money as hee or they play for, the one half to the provost of the marshall, and the other halfe to him that foe findeth them playinge: and if anie of y^e sayd armie be found twise playinge, he shall be committed to the provost's warde, there to remayne one monthe, and to forsaite one monethes wages; the one halfe to the kinge, and the other halfe to the finder; provided allway, that hee that foe findeth anie of them, warne the treasourer of the warres, incontinent after he hath foe found them, or as soon as hee may, or els to take no profit of that part of y^e wages; and if any be so found the 3d tyme playinge, hee to be committed to warde, there to abide the kinge's pleasure, and to have further punishment, as shall please the kinge.

For Bordell keepinge in the Hoste.

XXVI. ALSOE, that noe man bringe with him any woman over the sea, upon peyne of forfeiture of their goods to the marshall, and their bodies to be imprisoned, there to remayne att the king's pleasure; and that noe man holde any woman within his lodging beyonde the sea, upon peyne of imprisonment, and losse of a monthe's wages; and that noe common woman presume to come within the king's hoste, or nigh the same, by the space of iii. miles, uppon payne if anie so be taken, to be brent upon the right check at the first, and if anie bee taken within the host, or within iii. miles of the same, after shee or they have beene foe brent, then she or they to bee put into warde of the provost marshall, there to remayne in prison as long as shall please the marshall, and to have further punishment, as by him shall be thought convenient.

For Debate makinge.

XXVII. ALSOE, that noe man make debate, striffe, or contention for anie hatred or malice of tyme passed, ne for tyme to come, whereby

whereby anie man bee flayne, upon peyne of him or them that be causers, or partners of y^e murder, to be hanged therefore; and if it happen, anie man escrie his own name, or his capteyne's, lord or master, to make a risinge of the people, by the which anie affray might fall in the hoste; he that in such wise escrieth, shall be drawne and hanged therefore to the death.

For Barritours.

XXVIII. ALSOE, that noe man debate, strive or contend for armes, prisoners, lodgings, or for any other cause, malice or quarrell, or other thinge, whereby any ryott, contention, or debete may growe in the hoste, upon peyne of imprisonment, and further punishment at the king's pleasure; and that no man take part in any affray, but utterly apply him to appeace the same, uppon peyne aforesayde: and that if anie man finde him grieved for any matter or cause, old or new, lett him shew his grievance to his capteyne, and his capteyne to the marshall, and right shall be ministred to him accordingly.

For theym that give Men reproach.

XXIX. ALSOE, that no man give reproch to none other, because of the country that he is of, that is to say, be he Frenchman, Englyshman, or Welchman, Irishman, or any other country, whense so ever he be of; nor that no man say no villanie to others for any cause, through the which villanie sayings may fall sudder manslaughter, reyfinge of people, dissention, debate or division in the host, upon peyne all such barrettours to be imprisoned for as longe as it shall please the kinge.

For them that crie Havocke.

XXX. ALSOE, that no man presume to cry havocke, upon peyne of death to the beginner thereof, and all the rest followers
or

or partakers thereof, to be imprisoned, and their bodies to be punished at the king's pleasures.

For Brennenge.

XXXI. THAT noe man without commaundement speciall of the kinge, or of his head officer, burne wilfully, anye towne or house, uppon payne of death, except the king's ennemies be within it, and cannot bee noe otherwise taken.

For burying of Carrion.

XXXII. ALSOE, the king's majestie straightly commandeth and chargeth, that if it happen that his hoste tarry by the space of three dayes, or above, in one place or ground, bee it at siege or otherwise; that then every man shall keepe clene his lodgings, not sufferinge any carrayn, filthe, or other unwholesome or infective stinkinge thinge, to be in or neare the same his lodginge, but forthwith to bury the same deepe in the earthe, uppon peyne to be punished at the direction of the marshall.

For wasting of Vitayle.

XXXIII. ALSOE, if any man finde or take any wine or other vittayle, hee that doe findeth or taketh, may reserve for himselfe and his, as moche thereof as hym needeth; and that he shall save the remnant to other of the said hoste, without any waste or destruction, upon peyne to bee imprisoned for as longe as it shall please y^e king; and that noe man of the hoste use forstallinge or regraytinge of any vitayle wthin the hoste, or brought towards the same, upon peyne of forfayture of all his goods and chattalles, and his bodie to bee imprisoned, and further punished at the king's pleasure.

For them yt take Horſe or Oxen from Men going to Plough in Countreys wonne and pacified.

XXXIV. ALSOE that noe man take any horſe or horſes, oxe or oxen in any country wonne and pacified, from anie man goinge to plough, or anie other labourer, but it bee the provost and his companie, the purveyor of the ordinance, which ſhall have ſufficient commiſſion in that behalfe, upon payne of death; and that the ſayd provost and company, and purveyors of the ſaid ordinance, ſee true contentation accordinge to the ſeſſynge of the provost marſhall had in that behalfe, upon payne for his or their firſt defalte, to be committed to warde, and forfayte to the king, his or their moneth's wages, and the ſecond tyme to forfayte to the king his other moveable goods, and their bodies to bee in priſon duringe the king's pleaſure; if the default bee found in any other perſon y^t owe to pay and diſcharge the ſaid provost companie, and purveyors, againſt the ſaid countreys, and people ſoe wonne and pacified, then they that ſoe offend to have like puniſhment, that the provost's companie, or purveyors of ordinance ſhoulde have had in that behalfe; and that it be lawfull to the maſter of the ordinance to ſend for pyoners into anie country won or pacified, where hee ſhall thinke neceſſarie; and that the purveyor certifie the provost marſhall, what number of horſe and oxen wolle ſerve him, and that by his advice, the ſayd purveyor drawe to ſuch quarters as ſhall bee thought moſt neceſſarie by the ſayd provost, takinge of him his bill, to the intent that hee ſends none other men into the quarter, that the ſayd purveyor ſhall take his horſe or oxen in.

For keeping of ye Country.

XXXV. ALSOE, if any countrey or lordſheppe bee wonne, either by free will offered unto the king's obeyſance, or otherwiſe,
that

that noe man presume to robbe nor pill, or to take them prisoners, or after the peace is proclaimed, upon payne of death; and if anie man of what degree soever he be, come unto the king's obeyfance, that noe man take him, rob him, or pill him, upon the same payne, soe that hee or they that thus wyll obey, beare a crosse of Saynt George.

For Justice within the retinue of the Ordinance.

XXXVI. ALSOE, if any of the retinue of the ordinance, rob or slea any of their owne company, or make any debate or affray, or have any demaunde or question among themselfe, that than it be reformed, judged and punished by the m^r of the ordinance, and suche as he shall call to him; always provided, if any man finde himselfe greived after any finall sentence, that hee be at his appele before the marshall at all seasons: and for all causes made betweene any of them, and any other person of the army, that there, they, or any of them, abyde the judgement of the marshall and his court.

For taking of Prisoners.

XXXVII. ALSOE, it is ordeyned and enacted that all kings, and kings sonnes, dukes, and dukes eldest sonnes, lieutenants generall, great constable, or any of the chief marshalls of France, or of anie other regions or provinces, or anie of the blood royall, bearinge armes royall, that shall happen to be taken by any person of the king's army, shall stand onely prisoner to the kinge our soveraigne lord; and that noe man take upon him to deliver, or put to raunsom anie suche kinge, prince, or anie other personage in this act before rehearsed, upon payne of death; and that the taker of anie suche person, shall bringe him immediately to the kinge, and shall have for his takinge such sufficient rewarde, as shall accord with reason.

XXXVIII. ALSO, be it at battayle, dede of armes, or other places where prisoners may lawfully be taken; he that first may have his faith shall have him for his prisoner, soo that hee take from him all his weapons, and shall not need to abide upon him to the end of the journey, and none other man shall take him for his prisoner; but if soe bee that the sayd prisoner be found with weapon readie to inbarde, in which case, his ransom shall be equally divided betweene them, the keepinge of the prisoner alwais reserved to the last, tother findinge suerty for the safe keepinge of the same prisoner.

XXXIX. ALSO, if any manner dede of armes be done, whereby anie enemy be borne to the earth, he that fyrste hath so borne him to the earth, shall have him to prisoner; but if it bee so, that after hee bee releved and found standinge at his defence, another cometh and taketh the faith of the sayd prisoner, then the smiter down shall have the one halfe, and the taker of the faythe the tother halfe, with the keepinge of the sayd prisoner, makinge suretie to his partner for the other halfe.

XL. ALSO, if anie man hath taken a prisoner, and the victorie had upon their enemies in batil or skyrnish, chase, or any other wise; any other man, for any cause kill the sayd persone, hee that soe doth slay the prisoner shall die for it.

For them that raunsome their Prisoners, and sell them without Leave of their Lords or Captaynes.

XLI. ALSO, that no man presume to raunsome, or sell his prisoner without speciall licence of his capteyne that indenteth with the kinge, under his letter and seale, upon payne to forfayte his part in the prisoner unto his capteyne, and he to be under the arrest of the marshall untill the time he hath agreede with his capteyne; in likewise, that no capitayne ransom or sell his prisoner without speciall licence of the king or his treasourer of the warres, upon payne of for-

forfayture of the fame prifoner unnto the kinge; and that no man buy noe fuch prifoner, upon peyne to loofe the money that he fhall pay for him, and the prifoner to be arrested to the captayne aforefayd, who upon notice had of the fayd prifoner, and licence asked by his fouldeors, fhall not without caufe reasonable fhewed unto the marfhall, let the fayd fouldeour to take his beft advantage of the fayd prifoner, howe be it that if the capiteyne will give as much for the fayd prifoner as an other, he fhall have the prifoner and preferment.

XLII. ALSOE, if any man take any prifoner the which hath been fworne and had billet, or any man which oweth liegeaunce unto our leige lord the kinge, that is to wit, Englifh, Welche, Irifh, or any other of fuch condicion, that than as foone as he is commyn into the hoft, or els where, he fo be brought into the warde of the marfhall, upon peyne to have the fame dethe, that the fame traytor or enimie fhall have; and hee that any fuch bringeth in, fhall have an hundred fhillings of the kinge or of the marfhall for his travaile.

XLIII. ALSOE, if any man take any prifoner, forthwith as he cometh unto the hoft, hee fhall bringe his prifoner unto his captayne or mafter, upon paine of loofinge of his part to his foresayd capitaine or mafter, and then his fayd capitaine, if he be within the hoft, fhall certifie the marfhall within two dayes, and if he bee without the hoft, in garrifon or elfwhere, hee fhall certifie the fayd marfhall as foone as he convenientlye may, and declare his name and haviour in writinge as much as he can, after his knowledge, fo that he be not led or conveyed any other waye, upon peyne to loofe his part to him that fhall do fyrfte, the marfhall to have witting thereof, and his bodie to bee imprifoned and punifhed at the king's pleafure; and that every man do keepe, or do be kept his prifoner, that he goe not, nor ride not at large in the hoft, ne in lodgings, but if warde be had upon him, upon peyne of loofinge of the fame prifoner, refervinge to his lord or mafter his thirds of
the

the hole, if hee bee not partie of the defaulte; and the second part to him that fyrst shall accuse him; and the third part to the marshall; and alsoe, moreover his bodye in arrest at the king's pleasure; alsoe, that he suffer not his prisoner to goe out of the king's hoste for his raunsome, ne for none other cause, without salve conduct of the kinge, or of the marshall, upon the payne afore-sayd; alsoe, that every capitayne in likewise bringe his prisoner unto the sayd treasurer of the warres, uppon the payne of forfeiture of the same prisoner unto the king's use.

XLIV. ALSOE, that the marshall from viii. dayes, to viii. dayes duringe the king's army, do certifie the treasurer of the warres of all such certificates as shall be brought in by the captaines or any other unto him, as well as his owne as of others; all manner of prisoners taken by any man in the hoste certified unto him, upon payne of incurringe the king's indignation, and to forfayte the double of the value to the king of the said prisoner or prisoners soe concealed; and like as every captayne and souldour is bounde to bringe in and certifie his prisoner under forme above rehearsed, so in the same wise, and under semblable penalties, they and every of them, shall bring in and certifie all other prayes, goodes and cattalles by them wonne by the warre.

For paying of Thirdes.

XLV. ALSOE, that every man pay his thirde to his capitayne, lord and master of all manner of winnings by warre, and that as well as those that be not in wages, but lodginge or hostinge under the banner or pennon of their capitayne, upon payne to lose his part of his foresayd winnings, to his capitayne, and his bodye to bee in warde of the marshall, unto the tyme hee hath agreed with his foresayd maister: and alsoe that every captayne pay unto the king, as well the thirde parte of his owne winnings of the warre, as the thirds of the thirds, whereof eche of his retinue shall bee answer-
inge

inge unto him, of which thirds and thirds of thirds every captayne shall be accomptable before the treasourer of the kings warres, upon pain of forfeiture of the sayd winnings unto the kinge.

For giving of Safe Conduite or Conquiese for breaking of them.

XLVI. ALSOE, that no man give no salve conduct to prisoner, ne to none other, nor licence none enemy to come nor to goe out of the hoste, ne in the hoste, upon pain of forfeiture of all his goodes to the kinge, and his body to be imprisoned at the king's will, excepte the kinge, his lieutenant or lieutenants, or the marshall, if hee have speciall commission foe to doe: and that no man presume to breake the kinge's salve conduct, his lieutenants or his sayd marshall, having such auctoritie, upon payne to be hanged and drawne, and his goodes and inheritaunces to be forfeited to the kinge.

For giving of Safeguard.

XLVII. ALSOE, that noe man graunt no salve-guard by writinge nor otherwise, to no noble person, ne for the apatishinge of any countrey, except the kinge, upon payne of imprisonment, and his body to be punished at the king's pleasure; nor that no man graunt no salve-guard to none vittaylers, ne to none other manner of person, except the marshall and provost of the king's hoste, upon payne abovesayd.

For them that bear not a Band or a Crosse of St. George.

XLVIII. ALSO, that every man goinge in hostinge or batayll, of what estate, condicion or nation hee bee, of the king's partie and host, except he bee a bishop or officer of armes, beare a crosse of Saynt George sufficient and large, upon the payne that if hee bee wounded or slayne in the default thereof, he that foe woundeth
or

or sleeth him shall bare no payne therefore; and if hee for anie cause passe the bondes of the field, that then he beare openly a crosse of Saynt George, upon payne to be imprisoned and punished at the king's pleasure; and that no souldour bear no cognifance but the king's and his capteyne's, upon peyne of death; and that none enemy beare the sayde signe of Saynt George, but if hee bee a prisoner and in warde of his master, upon payne of death.

For making of Rodes. (a)

XLIX. ALSOE, that no man make any roodes by day or by night, but by licence and knowledge of the kinge, or of the cheif-taynes of the warde, soe that the cheiftaynes may know what way they draw them, to intent they may have socour and helpe, if nede be, upon payne of them that herein offend, their body and goodes to be at the king's pleasure.

For Assault-makinge without Licence.

L. ALSOE, that none assaulte bee made to castell, towne, strength, or fortresse by archers, or by any of the commoners without the will and presence of a captayne thereunto appoynted by the kinge, upon peyne of impresonment; and if any assaulte bee made by chance or adventure, then as soone as the kinge or the marshall shall sende for to cease the sayd assaulte, that then no man presume to continue it, after mention given to the contrary, and the offender to be punished by imprisonment of his bodie, and losse of all his goodes gotten at the sayd assaulte.

(a) RODES; inroads into the enemies country for plunder.

For withdrawing of Mens Servants from their Masters.

LI. ALSOE, that noe man presume to take or withdraw any servant from any other that which is in covenant with him for the voyage, as well fouldour as man of armes, archer, grome, or page, after tyme hee is knowne or chalenged by his master, upon payne his bodie to be imprisoned to the time he hath agreed with the partie complainant, after the order of the corte.

For Women that lie on Cheildbedde.

LII. ALSOE, that noe man presume to go into the chamber or lodginge where any woman lieth in childbead, her to robbe or pyll of any goodes the which longethe unto her refreschinge, or for to make any affraye where through she and her child might be in any disease or disspayre, upon payne of forfayture of all his goodes; the one halfe to him that accuseth him, and the other halfe to the marshall, and himself to suffer payne of death, unless the king's majestie pardon him.

For Children within the Age of 14 Years.

LIII. ALSOE, that noe man presume to take any children within the age of 14 yeres; but if hee bee a lorde's sonne, or else a worshipfull gentleman's, or a rich man's sonne, or a capitayne's; and that as soone as he hath brought him into the hoste, or into the garrison where he is abydinge, he bring him to his lord, master, or captayne, upon payne of losinge his horse, harneys, and his part of the same childe, reservinge to his lord, master, or capitayne his dutie, so that they bee not consentant unto the said defaulte; and alsoe that the said lord, master, or capitayne, bring him unto the kinge within eight days.

LIV. ALSOE, for so moeche as our sayd souveraigne lord for the inward love, tender zeale, and enteir affection which he beareth naturally to all his subjects beeinge of his said host and armie, would be loatheft and most displeasent to heare or understand any of them to do that offence, whereby he should deserve the least punishments by the said ordinances provided: his highness therefore desireth and tenderly prayethe his sayd subjects to confider and understand that his good speed in his sayd journey, the honour of his realme, and the weale and surety of the same, his subjects, standeth upon the observation of the sayd statutes, wherefore, though it bee to the greatest heaviness and displeasure, yet must hee of necessitie when the case it requireth, see the sayd statutes executed, and the offendours punished; in consideration whereof, he willeth and straightly chargeth his said subjects to have themselves in so good awayte that in no wise they offend the said statutes; and to the entent they have no cause to excuse them of their offences by pretence of ignoraunce of the said ordinances; his highness hath over and above the open proclamation of the sayde statutes commaunded and ordeyned by way of emprent, divers and many severall bookes, conteyneinge the same statutes, to be made and delivered unto the capitaynes of his hoste, charging them, as they will abyde his great displeasure, to cause the same twise or ones at the least in every weeke, holly to be redde in the presence of their retinue. (a)

THE laws and ordinances of warre established by the Earl of Northumberland for the army of King Charles I. A. D. 1640, (b) is the next authentic military code that has occurred to my researches; this was shortly after followed, namely, in 1643, by

(a) IMPRINTED at London, in Flete-strete, by Thomas Barthelet, printer to the king's highness the xx. day of June, the year of our lord MDXLIII.

Cum privilegio ad imprimendum solum.

(b) LONDON: printed by Robert Barker, printer to the king's most excellent majestie, and by the assignes of John Bill, 1640.

that of the Earl of Essex for the government of the parliamentary forces, (c) in most articles they are literally the same, every material difference is pointed out in the notes, and as the articles and ordinances of war for the Scots army of the same year, though not immediately pertaining to my subject, serve to elucidate the military history of those times; they are also laid before the reader.

LAWES and ordonnances of warre established for the better conduct of the service in the Northern parts, by his excellence the earl of Northumberland, Lord General of his Majestie's armie and fleete.

ALGERNOUN, earl of Northumberland, lord of the honors of Cockermouth and Petworth, Lord Percy, Lucie, Poynnyngs, Fitzpain; Brian, and Latimer, lord high admirall of England, knight of the most noble order of the garter, one of his majestie's most honourable privie counsell, and captain generall of his majestie's armie and fleete employed in this present expedition.

To all officers of the armie, colonels, lieutenant colonels, serjeant majors, captains, other officers and souldiers of horse and foot; and all his majestie's subjects and others whom these laws and ordinances ensuing shall concern; which laws and ordinances hereby published, all the said persons respectively and severally are

(c) ENTITLED; "Laws and Ordinances of Warre established for the better conduct of the armie by his excellency the earl of Essex, lord general of the forces raised by the authoritie of the parliament for the defence of king and kingdom, and now enlarged by command of his excellency, and printed by his authoritie, London, for Luke Fawne 1643. Another copy, for the year 1642, was printed at Dublin, in the year 1652, by Bladen. Robert earl of Essex, Viscount Hereford, Lord Ferrers of Chertly, Bouchaier and Louvain, captain general of the army raised by the authoritie of parliament for the defence of king and kingdom; to all the officers of the army, colonels, lieutenant-colonels, serjeant-majors, captains, other officers and souldiers of horse and foot, and all others whom these laws and ordinances shall concern, which laws and ordinances hereby published to all, the said persons respectively and severally, are required and commanded to observe and keep on the pains and penalties therein expressed.

required and commanded to swear unto, and observe and keep, on the pains and penalties therein expressed.

OF DUTIES TO GOD.

I. *Blasphemy.*

FIRST, let no man presume to blaspheme the holy and blessed Trinitie, God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost, nor the known articles of Christian faith, upon pain to have his tongue boared with a red hot iron.

II. *Cursing.*

UNLAWFUL oaths and execrations and scandalous acts in derogation of God's honour, shall be punished with losse of pay and other punishments at discretion.

III. *Profaning of Churches.*

IN the same manner shall be punished, all those who abuse and profane places and utensils dedicated to God's public worship, or wrong his ministers. (d)

IV. *Neglecting Divine Service.*

ALL those who often and wilfully absent themselves from sermons, and morning and evening prayer, shall be proceeded against at discretion. (e)

(d) THIS article omitted, but partly included in No. III.

(e) III. ALL those who often and wilfully absent themselves from sermons and public prayer, shall be proceeded against at discretion: and all such who shall violate places of public worship, shall undergo severe censure.

OF DUTIES TO THE KING AND STATE. (f)

I. *Traiterous Words.*

No man shall use any traiterous words against his majesty's sacred person, or royall authority, upon paine of death.

II. *Intelligence with the Enemy.*

ALL such as shall practise and entertain intelligence with the enemy, by any manner of means or flights, or have any communication with them, without direction from my lord generall, shall be punished as traitours and rebels.

III. *Relief of the Enemy.*

No man shall relieve the enemy with money, victuall, ammunition; neither harbour, or receive any such, upon pain of death.

(f) OF duties in generall. I. The same as art. II. above. Art. II. as III. Article III. If any town, castle, or fort be yielded up, without the utmost necessity, the governour thereof shall be punished with death. IV. But if so be that the officers and souldiers of the garrison constrain the governour to yield it up: in such a case, shall all the officers be punished with death, and the common souldiers who have been active or have given their consent in constraining the governour, shall cast lots for the hanging of the tenth man amongst them. V. And withall to know in what case and circumstances, a governour and the militia of the garrison may be blameless for the surrendering of a town, castle or fort, it is hereby expressly signified: that first they are to prove the extremity of want within the place, insomuch that no eatable provision was left them for the sustenance of their lives. Secondly, That no succour or relief in any probable wise could be hoped for. Thirdly, That nothing else could be expected, but that within a short time, the town, castle or fort with all the garrison and arms, ammunition, magazines and appurtenances to it, must of necessity fall into the hands of the enemy, upon proof of which forementioned circumstance, they may be acquitted in a counsell of warre, else to be liable to the punishment above expressed.

IV. *Yield-*

IV. *Yielding up of Forts.*

WHOSOEVER yieldeth up any town, fort, magazine, victuals, armes, ammunition, or that motioneth any such thing, but upon extremity, and that to the governor, or in councell, shall be executed as a traitor.

V. *Careless Service.*

WHOSOEVER shall be convicted to do his majesty's service negligently and carelessly shall be punished at discretion.

VI. *Violating of Safeguard.*

WHOSOEVER shall presume to violate his majesty's safeguard, shall die without mercy.

OF DUTIES TOWARDS SUPERIORS AND COMMANDERS.

I. *Violating of the Lord General.*

WHOSOEVER shall use any words tending to the life or dishonour of the lord generall, shall be punished with death.

II. *Quarrelling with Officers.*

No man shall presume to quarrel with his superior officer, upon pain of casseering (g) and arbitrary punishment, nor to strike any such, upon pain of death.

I. (g) Of duties towards superiors and commanders. Whosoever shall use any word tending to the death of the lord generall shall be punished with death.

(h) CASSEERING, discharging with infamy, from the French word *casser*.

III. *De-*

III. *Departing from Captains and Masters.*

No souldier shall depart from his captain, nor servant from his master, without licence, though he serve still in the army, upon payne of death.

IV. *Silence in the Army.*

EVERY private man and souldier, upon pain of imprisonment, shall keep silence when the army is to take lodging, or when it is marching or embattayling, so as the officers may be heard, and their commandements executed.

V. *Resisting against Correction.*

No man shall resist, draw, lift, or offer to draw or lift, his weapon against an officer correcting him orderly for his offence, upon pain of death.

VI. *Unlawful Assemblies.*

No persons shall make any unlawfull assembly, or be present, or assisting thereunto, or in or by them demand their pay, upon pain of death.

VII. *Resisting of the Provost Marshall.*

No man shall resist the provost marshall, or any other officer, in the execution of his office, or break prison, upon pain of death.

VIII. *Seditious Words.*

NONE shall utter any words tending to sedition and uprore, or mutinie, upon paine of death.

IX. *Con-*

IX. *Concealing of mutinous Speeches.*

THE same punishment shall be inflicted upon them, who after they have heard mutinous speeches, acquaint not their commanders with them.

X. *Revenging of Injuries.*

WHOSOEVER shall receive an injurie, and shall take his own satisfaction, shall be punished by imprisonment, and as it shall be thought fit by the marshall court: but he that is injured shall be bound, if he do not forgive the injury, to seek reparation by complaint to his captain or colonell, or other superior officer, and it shall be given him in ample manner.

OF DUTIES MORALL.

I. *Drunkenness.*

DRUNKENNESSE in an officer shall be punished with losse of place. In a common souldier, with such penalties as a court marshall shall think fit.

II. *Unnatural Abuses.*

RAPES, ravishments, unnaturall abuses, shall be punished with death.

III. *Adultery.*

ADULTERY, fornication, and dissolute lasciviousnesse, shall be punished at discretion, according to the quality of the offence.

IV. *Theft.*

THEFT and robbery, exceeding the value of 12d. shall be punished with death.

V. *Pro-*

V. *Provocation.*

NONE man shall use reproachfull or provoking words or acts to any, upon pain of imprisonment, and such further punishment as shall be thought fit to be inflicted upon enemies of discipline and service.

VI. *Seizing on dead Men's Goods.*

No man shall take or spoile the goods of him that dieth or is killed in service, upon pain of restoring double the value, and arbitrarie punishment.

VII. *Murther.*

MURDER shall be expiated with the death of the murtherer.

OF A SOULDIERS DUTY TOUCHING HIS ARMES.

I. *Full Armour.*

ALL souldiers coming to their colours, to watch, or to be exercised, shall come fully armed, upon pain of severe correction.

II. *Slovenly Armour.*

NONE shall presume to appear with their armes un-fix or undecently kept, upon paine of arbitrarie correction.

III. *Loosing of Horses or Armes.*

IF a trooper shall loose his horse or hackney; or a footman any part of his armes by negligence or lewdnesse, by dice or cards; he or they shall remaine in qualitie of pioners and scavengers, till they be furnished with as good as were lost, at their own charge.

IV. *Pawning of Armes.*

No town or countreyman shall presume to buy or take to pawn, an horse, or armes, or furniture of tents and hutts, of any souldier,

upon pain of forfeiting the double value thereof, and to be punished at discretion : and the souldier giving them to pawn shall suffer a severe punishment. (i)

V. *Wilful Spoiling of Horses.*

IF a trooper shall spoile his horse willingly, of purpose to be rid of the service, he shall lose his horse, and remain in the camp for a pioner.

VI. *Borrowed Arms.*

IF one borrows arms of another to pass the muster withall : the borrower shall be rigorously punished, and the lender shall forfeit his goods.

VII. *Imbezeling of Ammunition.*

NONE shall presume to spoil, sell or carry away, any ammunition delivered unto him upon pain of death.

OF DUTIE IN MARCHING.

I. *Waste and Extortion.*

NONE on their march thorow the countreys, under his majestie's obedience, shall waste, spoil, or extort any victuals, money, or pawn from any subject, upon no pretence of want whatsoever : but shall pay for their meat and drink the usuall rates, upon pain of death.

II. *Taking Horses out of the Plough.*

No souldier shall presume, upon no occasion whatsoever, to take an horse out of the plough, or to wrong the husbandmen in their persons or cattell, or goods, upon pain of death.

(i) IV. No souldier shall give to pawn, or sell his armour, upon pain of imprisonment, and punishment at discretion ; and wheresoever any armour shall be found so sold or pawned, they shall be brought again into the army.

III. *Straggling*

III. *Straggling from the Colours.*

No souldier either horse or foot, shall presume in marching to straggle from his troop or company, or to march out of his rank upon pain of death.

IV. *Spoiling of Trees.*

No souldier shall presume in marching or lodging to cut down any fruit trees, or to deface or spoil walks of trees, upon pain of severe punishment.

OF DUTIES IN CAMP AND GARRISON.

I. *Swarving from the Camp.*

No man shall depart a mile out of the army or camp without licence, upon pain of death.

II. *Going in or out by by-ways.*

No man shall enter or go out of the army but by ordinary wayes, upon pain of death.

III. *Drawing of Swords after Setting of the Watch.*

No man shall presume to draw his sword without order after the watch is set, upon pain of death.

IV. *Giving a false Alarm.*

No man shall give a false alarm, or discharge a peece in the night, or make any noise without a lawfull cause, upon pain of death.

V. *Drawing of Swords in a Quarrel.*

No man shall draw any sword in private quarrel within the camp, upon pain of death.

VI. *Revealing the Watch Word.*

HE that makes known the watch word without order, or gives any other word but what is given by the officer, shall die for it.

VII. *Offering Violence to Victuallers.*

No man shall do violence to any that bring victuals to the camp, upon pain of death.

VIII. *Speaking with the Enemies Messengers.*

NONE shall speak with a drum or trumpet, or any other sent by the enemy, without order, upon pain of punishment at discretion.

IX. *A Sentinell asleep or drunk.*

A SENTINELL or perdue found asleep, or drunk, or forsaking their place before they be drawn off, shall die for the offence without mercy.

X. *Failing at the Rendezvous.*

No man shall faile wilfully to come to the rendezvous or garrison appointed him by the lord generall, upon pain of death.

XI. *Remaining unrolled in the Army.*

No man that carrieth armes and pretends to be a souldier, shall remain three days in the army without being enrolled in some company, upon pain of death.

XII. *Departing without Leave.*

No man that is enrolled shall depart from the army or garrison, or from his colours, without licence, upon pain of death.

Outstaying

XIII. *Outstaying a Passe.*

No private souldier shall outstay his passe without a certificate of the occasion under the hand of a magistrate, at the next muster, upon pain of losing his pay during all the time of his absence.

XIV. *Absenting from the Watch.*

HE that absents himself when the sign is given to set the watch, shall be punished at discretion, either with bread and water in prison, or with the wooden horse.

XV. *Discontented with their Quarters.*

WHOSOEVER shall expresse his discontent with the quarter given him in camp or garrison, shall be punished as a mutineer.

XVI. *Lying or Supping out of the Quarter.*

No officer of what quality soever, shall go out of the quarter to dinner or supper, or lie out all night, without making his superiour officer acquainted, upon pain of cashiering.

XVII. *Keeping the Quarters clean.*

ALL officers whose charge it is, shall see the quarters kept clean and sweet, upon pain of severe punishment. (k)

(k) The parliamentary ordinnances have the two following articles.

XVIII. NONE shall presume to let their horses feed in sown grounds whatsoever, or to endamage the husbandmen any way, upon severest punishment. XIX. Whosoever shall in his quarter, abuse, beat, fright his landlord, or any person else in the family, or shall extort money or victual by violence from them, shall be proceeded against as a mutineer and an enemy to discipline.

OF DUTIES IN ACTION.

I. *Repairing to the Colours upon an Alarme.*

No man shall faile immediately to repair unto his colours, (except upon evident necessity) when an alarme is given, upon paine of death.

II. *Flying.*

No man shall abandon his colours or flie away in any battell, upon pain of death.

III. *Flinging away defensive Arms.*

If a pikeman throw away his pike, or a muskettier his musket or bandalier, he or they shall be punished with death.

IV. *Burning and wasteing.*

No man shall burn any house or barn, or spoile any corn, hay, or straw in stacks in the fields, or any ship, boat, carriage, or any thing that may serve for provision of the army, neither at home nor in the enemies countrey, without order, upon pain of death.

V. *Killing an enemy who yeelds.*

NONE shall kill an enemy who yeelds and throws down his arms, upon pain of death.

VI. *Saving Men armed with offensive Arms.*

NONE shall save a man that hath his offensive arms in his hand, upon pain of losse of his prisoner.

VII. *Flinging away Powder.*

WHOSOEVER in skirmish shall fling away his powder out of his bandeleers, that he may the sooner come off, shall be punished with death.

VIII. *Im-*

VIII. *Imbezelling of the Prey.*

No souldier shall imbezell any parte of the preye, till it be disposed of by the Lord Generall, or others authorized, upon pain of death.

IX. *Concealing of Prisoners.*

No officer or souldier shall ransom or conceal a prisoner, but within twelve hours, shall make the same known to the Lord Generall, or others authorized, upon pain of death. (1)

X. *Pillaging without Licence.*

No man upon any good successe shall fall a pillaging before licence, or a sign given, upon pain of death.

XI. *Retreating before handy Blowes.*

A REGIMENT or company of horse or foot that chargeth the enemy, and retreats before they come to handy strokes, shall answer it before a council of warr, and if the fault be found in the officers, they shall be banished the camp; if in the souldiers, then every tenth man shall be punished at discretion, and the rest serve for pioners and scavengers, till a worthy exploit take off that blot.

OF THE DUTIES OF COMMANDERS AND OFFICERS
IN PARTICULAR.I. *Commanders must see God duly served.*

ALL commanders are straitly charged to see Almighty God reverently served, and sermons and prayers duly frequented.

(1) FROM this and the 6th article, it seems as if soldiers had at this time the benefit of ranfome for prisoners of war taken by them.

II. *Commanders must acquaint my Lord General with dangerous Humours.*

ALL commanders and officers that finde discontented humours, apt to mutinies, or any swarving from directions given, or from the policy of the army set down, shall straightway acquaint the lord Generall therewith, or others authorized, as they will answer their neglect.

III. *Defrauding of Souldiers Pay.*

ANY officer that shall presume to defraud the souldiers of their pay, or any part of it, shall be cashiered.

IV. *Stopping of Duellers.*

No corporall or other officer commanding the watch, shall wittingly suffer a souldier to go forth to a duell or private fight, upon paine of death.

V. *Drunken and Quarrelsome Officers.*

WHAT officer soever shall come drunk to his guard, or shall quarrel in the quarter, or commit any disorder, shall be cashiered without mercy; and the next officer under him shall have his place, which he may pretend to as his right, and it shall not be refused to him.

VI. *Careless Captains.*

A CAPTAIN that is carelesse in the training and governing of his company, shall be displaced of his charge.

VII. *Officers outstaying their Passe.*

ALL captains or officers that shall out-stay their passe, shall be punished at the Lord Generall his discretion.

VIII. *All*

VIII. *All Officers bound to part Quarrels.*

ALL officers of what condition soever, shall have power to part quarrels and fraies, or sudden disorders betwixt the souldiers, though it be in any other regiment or company, and to commit the disordered to prison for the present, untill such officers as they belong unto are acquainted with it; and what souldier soever shall resist, disobey, or draw his sword against such an officer, although he be no officer of his regiment or company, shall be punished with death.

IX. *Officers non-residents in Garrison.*

A CAPTAIN or officer non-resident in the place assigned him for garrison without licence, shall have one moneth's pay defaulted for the first offence; and two moneths for the second; upon the third offence he shall be discharged of his command.

X. *Casseering of Souldiers.*

AFTER the armie is come to the general rendezvous, no captain shall casseere any souldier that is inrolled, without special warrant of the Lord Generall.

XI. *Mustering of false and counterfeit Troopers.*

No captaine of a troope shall present in the musters, any but reall troopers, such as are bound by their oath and pay to follow the troope, upon pain of death without mercy: and if any towns or countrey-men, victualler, freebooter, enterloper or souldier whatsoever, of any other troop or company, shall present himself or his horse in the muster, to mislead the muster-master, to defraud his majestie, and to betray the service, the same shall be punished with death.

XII. *Inhabitants of Garrisons must not be Souldiers there.*

No captain of a troop or company, shall take into his troop or company, any inhabitant of that place where the troop or company is in garrison, upon pain of severe punishment. (m)

XIII. *Commissaries of Victuals and Ammunition must be true.*

No provider, keeper, or officer of his majestie's victual or ammunition, shall embeazel or spoil any part thereof, or give any false account to the Lord Generall, upon pain of death.

OF THE DUTY OF THE MUSTER-MASTERS.

I. *Muste-master conniving at Counterfeits.*

No muste-master shall wittingly let any passe in the musters, but such as are really of the troop or company presented, upon pain of death.

II. *Captains must send a Roll of their Men to the Lord Generall.*

ALL captains shall cause their troops and companies to be full and compleat; and two days after the general mustering, they shall send to the Lord Generall a perfect list or roll of all the officers of their troops and companies, and likewise of all the troopers and souldiers that are in actual service, putting down distinctly on the head of each man his monethly pay.

III. *Every Pay-day.*

THE like roll or list shall the captains send to the Lord General, and to the treasurer of the armie, upon every pay-day during the

(m) THIS article is not among those of the earl of Essex.

service,

service, with a punctual expression at the bottom of the said roll, what new troopers or souldiers have been entertained since the last pay-day, in lieu of such as are either deceased or cashiered, and likewise the day whereon they were so cashier'd and entertain'd.

IV. *Subscribed by all the Officers of the Troop or Company.*

WHICH said list or roll shall be subscribed, not onely by the captain, his lieutenant and cornet, or ensign, but also by the sergeants and corporals respectively, who shall declare upon their oaths, that the troopers and soldiers enrolled in the said list, are reall and actual troopers and soldiers of the respective troopes and companies; and whosoever shall be convicted of falshood in any of the premises, shall be punished with death. (m)

V. *Muste-Masters must use no other Rolls.*

No muste-master shall presume to receive or accept of any roll to make the musters by but the fore-mentioned rolls, upon paine of the losse of his place, and other punishment at discretion.

VI. *Counterfeit Names in the Rolls.*

No man shall presume to present himself to muster, or to be enrolled in the muster-rolls, by a counterfeit name, or surname, or place of birth, upon paine of death.

OF VICTUALLERS.

I. *Victuallers issuing neughtie Viçtuals.*

No victualler shall presume to issue or sell unto any of the army, unsound, unfavorie, or unwholesome victuals, upon paine of imprisonment, and further arbitrary punishment.

(m) IN my Lord Essex's code, persons convicted of falshood in this article, were to be cashiered, i. e. cashiered; the adoption of the term *cash*, has caused many persons to suppose this punishment had some relation to cash or money, and was a suspension of pay; whereas, it is only a corruption of the word, *casé*, broken or turned out.

II. *No Souldier must be a Viētualler.*

No souldier shall be a viētualler without the consent of the Lord Generall, or others authorized, upon pain of punishment at discretion.

III. *Unseasonable Hours kept by Viētuallers.*

No viētualler shall entertain any souldiers in his house, tent, or hutt, after the warning-piece at night, or before the beating of the ravalee in the morning.

OF ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE.

I. *Summarie Proceedings.*

ALL controversies between souldiers and their captains, and all others, shall be summarily heard and determined by the councill of warre, except the weightinesse of the cause require further deliberation.

II. *The Provost Marshall must look to his Prisoners.*

No provost marshall shall refuse to keep a prisoner committed to his charge, nor dismisse him being once received, upon paine of being liable to the same punishment which should have been inflicted upon the partie dismissed. (n)

(n) ALL officers and others, who shall send up any prisoners unto the marshall generall of the army, shall likewise deliver unto the marshall, the cause and reason of the imprisonment; and without such cause and reason shewn, the marshall is expressly forbid to take charge of the prisoner. III. When a prisoner is committed to the charge of the marshall generall, the information of the crime which he stands committed for, is to be given in to the advocate of the army within forty-eight hours after the commitment, or else for default thereof, the prisoner to be released, except good cause be shewn, wherefore the information cannot be ready within that time. *Essex's Ordinances.*

III. *Goods*

III. *Goods of the Defunct.*

THE goods of such as die in the armie or garrison, or be slain in the service, if they make any will by word or writing, shall be disposed of according to their will: if they make no will, then shall go to their wives or next of kinde: if no wife nor kindred appear within one year after, shall be disposed of by the appointment of the lord generall, according to the laws civill and militarie.

IV. *Civil Magistrates imprisoning of Souldiers.*

No magistrate of town or countrey shall presume without licence to imprison any souldier, unlesse for capitall offences.

V. *For Debt and small Offences.*

IN matters of debt, or trespasse, or other inferior causes, the magistrate shall not lay hands upon the souldier, but shall acquaint his captain, or other chief officer therewith: who is to end the matter, with the consent of the complainant, or to leave the partie grieved, to take his remedie by due course of law; and if the officer faile of his dutie herein, the lord generall upon complaint of the partie grieved, will not onely see him righted, but the officer punished for his neglect in this behalfe.

VI. *Braving the Court of Justice.*

No man shall presume to use any braving or menacing words, signes or gestures, while the court of justice is sitting, upon paine of death.

VII. *Receiving of Runaways.*

No inhabitant of citie, towne or countrey, shall presume to receive any souldier into his service; or conceale or use means to
conveigh

conveigh such run-aways ; but shall apprehend all such, and deliver them over to the provost marshall, upon pain of punishment at the discretion of the lord generall.

VIII. *Detecting of Offenders.*

ALL captains, officers, and souldiers, shall do their endeavours to detect, apprehend and bring to punishment all offenders, and shall assist the officers of the army for that purpose, as they will answer their slacknesse in the marshal's court.

IX. *Offences whatsoever punished by the Laws of Warre.*

ALL other faults, disorders and offences, not mentioned in these articles, shall be punished according to the generall customes and laws of warre. (p)

OF THE SOULDIERS OATH.

ALL souldiers that are really and actually in his majestie's service, shall take this ensuing oath.

"I PROMISE and swear to be true and faithfull to my Sovereigne Lord King Charles. To obey my lord generall, and the commanders and officers under him. To observe the lawes and ordinances of warre established by him. To watch and ward, and work in the service. To wait on my colours, and to follow them. To endure, suffer, and fight to the last, as God shall help me."

AND to the end that these lawes and ordinances be made more publike and known as well to the officers, as to the common souldiers : every colonell and captain is to provide one of these books.

(p) X. If the marshall shall dismisse without authority any prisoner committed unto his charge, or suffer him to make an escape, he shall be lyable to the same punishment due unto the dismissed or escaped offendour. *Essex.*

And within a short time after that the army shall come to the general rendezvous, these laws in every severall regiment, in the presence of all the officers, are plainly and distinctly to be read by the marshals of the severall regiments, assisted by the marshall generall. In the horse quarters, by sound of trumpet, and amongst the foot by beat of drum. And weekly afterwards, upon the pay-day every captain is to cause the same to be read to his own company, in presence of his officers. And also upon every main-guard, the captain is to do the like, that none may be ignorant of the duties required, and thereafter govern themselves. (q)

Articles and Ordinances of War for the present Expedition of the Army of the Kingdom of Scotland, by the Committee of Estates, and his Excellency the Lord General of the Army. Edinburgh: Printed by Evan Tyler, Printer to the King's most excellent Majesty, 1643. Quarto. Containing 16 pages.

THAT no man pretend ignorance, and that every one may know the duty of his place, that he may do it: the articles and ordinances following, are to be published at the general rendezvous in every regiment, apart, by the majors of the severall regiments, and in the presence of all the officers. The same shall afterwards be openly read to every company of horse and foot, and at such times as shall be thought most convenient by the lord general: and in like man-

(q) To the parliamentary ordonances there is annexed the following exclusive permission for printing them. These are to authorise you to print for the use of the army, the laws and ordinances of warre, by me established, and of late enlarged by my command for the better conduct of the service. And likewise by these presents to forbid all others to print the same, at their perills on the contrary.

Given under my hand the 25th of Novemb. 1643. *Essex.*

TO LUKE FAWN, stationer.

ANOTHER edition was printed at Dublin, for W. Bladen, in the year 1652; this is exactly similar to that of 1643.

ner shall be made known to so many as join themselves to be professed soldiers in the army. For this end every colonel and captain shall provide one of those books, that he may have it in readiness at all occasions, and every soldier shall solemnly swear the following oath :

“ I, N. N. promise and swear to be true and faithful in this service, according to the heads sworn by me, in the solemn league and covenant of the three kingdoms : to honour and obey my lord general, and all my superior officers and commanders, and by all means to hinder their dishonour and hurt : to observe carefully all the articles of war and camp discipline ; never to leave the defence of this cause, nor flee from my colours so long as I can follow them : to be ready to watching, warding, and working, so far as I have strength ; to endure and suffer all distresses ; and to fight manfully to the uttermost, as I shall answer to God, and as God shall help me.”

I.

KIRK discipline shall be exercised, and the sick cared for in every regiment, by the particular eldership, or kirk session to be appointed, even as useth to be done in every parish in the time of peace : and that there may be an uniformity throughout the whole army, in all matters ecclesiastical, there shall be a general eldership, or common ecclesiastick judicatory, made up of all the ministers of the camp, and of one elder direct from every particular regiment, who shall also judge of appellations made unto them from the particular sessions or elderships.

II.

FOR deciding of all questions, debates, and quarrellings that shall arise betwixt captains and their soldiers, or any others of the army, and for the better observing of camp-discipline, two courts of justice, the one higher and the other lower, are appointed, wherein all
judges

judges are sworn to do justice equally; the higher also to judge of appellations to be made for the lower courts; and if any man shall by word or gesture, shew his contempt or misregard, or shall fall out in boasting or braving while courts are sitting, he shall be punished by death; and both these judicatures, as well of the kirk matters as of war, shall be subject to the general assembly and committee of estates respectively.

III.

WHOSOEVER shall willingly or carelessly absent himself from morning and evening prayers, or from preaching before and after noon on the Lord's day, or other extraordinary times appointed for the worship of God, when the sign is given by sound of trumpet or drum, he shall be censured, and punished for his neglect or contempt, by penalty, imprisonment, or other punishment, as his fault deserveth.

AFTER the warning given, there shall be no market, nor selling of any commodities whatsoever, till the prayers or preaching be ended, upon the pain of forfeiting the things so sold, and of the imprisoning of the offenders.

IV.

COMMON and ordinary swearing and cursing, open profaning of the Lord's day, wronging of his ministers, and other acts of that kind, shall not only be punished with loss of pay and imprisonment, but the transgressors shall make their publick repentance in the midst of the congregation; and if they will not be reclaimed, they shall with disgrace be openly cashiered, and discharged as unworthy of the meanest place in the army.

V.

IF any shall speak irreverently against the king's majesty and his authority, or shall presume to offer violence to his majesty's person,

he shall be punished as a traitor: he that shall speak evil of the cause which we defend, or of the kingdoms, the parliaments, convention of the estates, or their committees in the defence thereof, or shall use any words to the dishonour of the lord general, he shall be punished with death.

No man shall at his own hand, without warrant of the committee or of my lord general, have, or keep intelligence with the enemy, by speech, letters, signs, or any other way, under the pain to be punished as a traitor. No man shall give over any strength, magazine, victuals, &c. or make any such motion, but upon extremity, under the same pain. No man shall give, supply, or furnish money, victuals, or any commodities to the enemy, upon pain of death.

WHOSOEVER shall be found to do violence against the lord general, his safe-guard, or safe-conduct, shall die for it. Whosoever shall be found guilty of carelessness and negligence in his service, although he be free of treachery and double dealing, shall bear his own punishment.

VI.

ALL commanders and officers shall be careful both by their authority and example, that all under their charge live in godliness, soberness, and righteousness; and if they themselves shall be common swearers, cursers, drunkards, or any of them at any time shall come drunk to his guard, or by quarrelling, or any other way, shall commit any notable disorder in his quarter, loss of place shall be his punishment; and further, according to the sentence of the court of war.

THE captains that shall be negligent in training their companies, or that shall be found to withhold from their soldiers any part of their pay, shall be discharged of their place, and further censured by the court of war.

No commander or officer shall conceal dangerous and discontented humours inclined to mutinies, or grudging at the orders given

given them, but shall make them known to the prime leaders of the army, upon the pain to be accounted guilty of mutiny.

No commander or officer shall authorize, or wittingly permit any soldier to go forth to a singular combate, under pain of death; but, on the contrary, all officers shall be careful by all means to part quarrellings amongst soldiers, although they be of other regiments or companies, and shall have power to command them to prison, which if the soldiers shall disobey or resist, by using any weapon, they shall die for it.

No captain shall presume at his own hand without warrant of the lord general, to cashier, or give a pass to any enrolled soldier or officer, who hath appeared at the place of the general rendezvous; nor shall any commander, officer, or soldier, depart without a pass, or stay behind the time appointed him in his pass; and whosoever transgresseth the one way or the other, shall be punished at the discretion of the court of war.

VII.

ALL soldiers shall remember, that it is their part to honour and obey their commanders, and therefore shall receive their commands with reverence, and shall make no noise, but be silent when the officers are commanding, or giving their directions, that they may be heard by all, and the better obeyed; he that faileth against this shall be imprisoned.

No soldier shall leave his captain, nor servant forsake his master, whether he abide in the army or not, but upon licence granted, and in an orderly way.

WHOSOEVER shall presume to discredit any of the great officers of the army by writ, word, or any other way, and be not able to make it good, and whosoever shall lift his weapon against any of them, shall be punished by death; and whosoever shall lift his hand against any of them, shall lose his hand.

No soldier nor inferior officer shall quarrell with, or offer any injury to his superior, nor refuse any duty commanded him, upon pain of cashiering, and to be further censured by the court of war; and if any shall presume to strike his superior, he shall be punished with death; but if it shall happen, that any officer shall command any thing to the evident and known prejudice of the publick, then shall he who is commanded, modestly refuse to obey, and presently give notice thereof to the lord general.

If any man shall use any words or ways, tending to mutiny or sedition, whether for demanding his pay, or upon any other cause, or if any man shall be privy to such mutinous speeches or ways, and shall conceal them, both shall be punished with death.

ALL must shew their valour against the enemy, and not by revenging private injuries; which, upon their complaints to their superior officers, shall be repaired to the full. And if any man presume to take his own satisfaction, or challenge a combate, he shall be imprisoned, and have his punishment decerned by the martial court.

THE provost-marshal must not be resisted or hindered, in apprehending or putting delinquents in prison, and all officers must assist him to this end. And if any man shall resist, or break prison, he shall be censured by the court of war.

VIII.

MURDER is no less unlawful and intollerable in the time of war, than in time of peace, and is to be punished with death.

WHOSOEVER shall be found to have forced any woman, whether he be the commander or soldier, shall die for it without mercy. And whosoever shall be found guilty of adultery, or fornication, shall be no less severely censured and punished than in the time of peace.

If any common whores shall be found following the army; if they be married women, and run away from their husbands, they shall

be put to death without mercy ; and if they be unmarried, they shall be first marked by the hangman, and thereafter by him scourged out of the army.

THIEVES and robbers shall be punished with the like severity ; if any shall spoil, or take any part of their goods that die in the army, or are killed in service, he shall restore the double, and be further punished at discretion. It is provided, that all their goods be forth-coming, and be disposed of according to their testament and will, declared by word, or writ before witnesses ; or, if they have made no testament, to their wives, children, or nearest kindred, according to the laws of the kingdom.

ALL shall live together as friends and brethren, abstaining from words of disgrace, contempt, reproach, giving of lyes, and all provocation by word or gesture. He that faileth shall be imprisoned for the first fault, and if he be incorrigible, he shall be with shame punished, and put out of the army.

IX.

ALL soldiers shall come to their colours, to watch, to be exercised, or to muster, with their own arms, and if any soldier shall come with another man's arms, he shall be punished with rigour, and the lender shall lose his arms. All shall come with compleat and tight arms, in a decent manner, otherwise to be severely punished.

If any man shall sell or give in pawn his horse, his arms, or any part of the ammunition committed to him, or any instruments, as spades, shovels, picks, used in the field, he shall for the first and second time be beaten through the quarter, and for the third time be punished as for other theft : and he that buyeth them, or taketh them to pawn, be he soldier or victualler, shall pay the double of the money, besides the want of the things bought or impawned, and be further punished at discretion.

WHOSOEVER

WHOSOEVER in a debauched and lewd manner, by cards or dice, or by sloth and inexcusable neglect, shall lose his horse and arms, in whole or in part, to the hinderance of the service; and whosoever shall wilfully spoil or break his arms, or any instrument of war, committed to him, by cutting down of trees, or any other way, he shall serve as a pioneer, till the loss be made up, and he furnished upon his own charges.

X.

No man on his march, or at his lodgings within or without the country, upon whatsoever pretext, shall take by violence, either horse, cattle, goods, money, or any other thing, less or more, but shall pay the usual prices for his meat and drink, or be furnished in an orderly way upon account, at the sight of the commissary, according to the order given by the committee, upon pain of death without mercy.

IF any man shall presume to pull down, or set on fire, any dwelling-house, though a cottage, or hew down any fruit trees, or to waste or deface any part of the beauty of the country, he shall be punished most severely, according to the importance of the fault.

IN marching, no man shall stay behind without leave: no man shall straggle from his troop or company: no man shall march out of his rank, and put others out of order, under all highest pains.

XI.

IF any colonel of horse or foot, shall keep back his soldiers from the appointed musters, or shall lend his soldiers to make a false muster; upon trial in a court-martial, he shall be punished as a deceiver. And if any muster-master shall use any false rolls, shall have any hand in false musters, or by connivance, or any other way be tried to be accessory to them, he shall suffer like punishment.

XII.

XII.

No man shall presume to do the smallest injury to any that bring necessaries to the leager, whether by stealing from them, or deceiving them, or by violence in taking their horse or goods, under the pain to be accounted and punished as enemies. No victuallers shall sell rotten victuals, upon pain of imprisonment and confiscation, and further as they shall be judged to deserve.

No soldier shall provide and sell victuals, unless he be authorised, nor shall any, that selleth victuals, keep in his tent or hut, any soldier at unseasonable hours, and forbidden times, under pain at discretion: likewise all the prices thereof shall be set down by the general commisser, and be given to the quarter-master of the several regiments.

XIII.

No man enrolled, professing himself, or pretending to be a soldier, shall abide in the army, unless he enter into some company: nor shall he, that hath entered, depart without licence, upon pain of death. No man, having licence, shall stay beyond the time appointed him, upon pain of loss of his pay, during the time of his absence, and further punishment at discretion. If any man in a mutinous way, shew himself discontented with the quarters assigned him, he shall be punished as a mutineer. And if any man shall stay out of his quarters, or go without shot of cannon, being intrenched, but one night, without leave of his superior officer, he shall be cashiered.

ALL that are absent from the watch, after the sign is given for the setting thereof, shall be severely punished. He that revealeth or falsifieth the watch-word given by the officer, within the trenches, or before the colours; he that is taken sleeping or drunk upon his watch; he that cometh off the watch before the time; every one of those shall be punished with death.

WHOSOEVER

WHOSOEVER shall assemble themselves together for taking mutinous council, upon whatsoever pretext; they all, whether officers or soldiers shall suffer death.

XIV.

EVERY man, when the alarm is given, shall repair speedily to his colours; no man shall forsake or flee from his colours. No man, in the country, shall reset them that flee. No man in the battle, shall throw away his musket, pike, or bandelier; all under the pain of death:

WHATSOEVER regiment of horse or foot, having charged the enemy, shall draw back or flee, before they come to stroke of sword, shall answer for it before a council of war: and whosoever officer or soldier shall be found to be in the default, they shall be punished by death or some shameful punishment, as the council of war shall find their cowardice to deserve.

XV.

IF it shall come to pass, that the enemy shall force us to battle, and the lord shall give us victory, none shall kill a yielding enemy, nor save him that pursueth, upon pain of death. Neither shall there be any ransoming of persons, spoiling, pillaging, parting of pray, or wasting, or burning by fire, or disbanding from their charges, or officers, but as the lord general shall give order, upon the same pain of death.

XVI.

EVERY man's carriage shall be diligently observed, and he, according to his merit, rewarded or punished: and whatsoever officer or soldier shall take commanders, or the colours of the enemy, or in the siege of towns shall first enter a breach, or scale the walls, and shall carry himself dutifully in his station, and doth his part valiantly, in skirmish or battle, shall after the laudable
example

example of the wisest and worthiest kingdoms and estates, have his honour and reward, according to his worth and deserving, whether hereafter we have peace or war.

MATTERS, that are clear by the light and law of nature, are presupposed; things unnecessary are passed over in silence; and other things may be judged by the common customs and constitutions of war; or may upon new emergents, be expressed afterward.

THE forms of proceeding in councils of war or courts martial, in the reign of King James II. are thus laid down, in an abridgment of the English Military Discipline, printed by especial command for the use of his majesty's forces, A. D. 1686.

Of Councils of War or Courts Martial.

IN an army the council of war is always to meet at the general's quarters or tent, and none are to be called to it, but the lieutenant generals, the major generals, the brigadiers and the colonels or commanders of bodies, when the matters concern their regiments.

PRIVATE councils of war or courts martial in a garrison are either held at the governor's house, at the main guard, or where the governor orders; in a camp at the colonel's tent, who causes notice to be given to the captains to be present.

WHEN all are met, the governour or colonel, or he who is to sit as president, takes his place at the head of the table, the captains sit about according to their seniority, (that is to say) the first captain on the right hand of him that presides, the second on the left and so of the rest. And the town major or the aid major or quarter master of the regiment, who in the absence of the judge advocate discharges his office, is to sit in his place, at the lower end of the table; the lieutenants, sub lieutenants and ensigns, have a right to enter into the room where the council of war (or court martial) is held, but they are to stand at the captains backs, with their hats off, and have no vote.

IF the council be called to deliberate on some matter of consequence, the president having opened it to the court, asks their opinions.

THE youngest officer gives his opinion first and the rest in order, till it come to the president, who speaks last. The opinions of every one being set down in writing, the result is drawn conformable to the plurality of votes, which is signed by the president onely.

IF the council of war, or court martial be held to judge a criminal, the president and captains having taken their places, and the prisoner being brought before them, and the informations read, the president interrogates the prisoner about all the facts, whereof he is accused; and having heard his defence, and the proof made or alledged against him, he is ordered to withdraw, being remitted to the care of the marshal or jaylor; then every one judges according to his conscience, and the ordinances or articles of war. The sentence is framed according to the plurality of votes, and the criminal being brought in again, the sentence is pronounced to him in the name of the council of war, or court martial.

WHEN a criminal is condemned to any punishment, the provost martial causes the sentence to be put in execution: and if it be a publick punishment, the regiment ought to be drawn together to see it, that thereby the soldiers may be deterred from offending. Before a soldier be punished for any infamous crime, he is to be publicly degraded from his arms, and his coat stript over his ears.

A COUNCIL of war, or court martial, is to consist of seven at least with the president, when so many officers can be brought together; and if it so happen that there be not captains enough to make up that number, the inferiour officers may be called in.

THE rules and articles of war are thus prefaced: James R. Our will and pleasure is, that the several rules and articles made by us

us for the better government of our land forces, be duly observed, under the pains and penalties therein expressed.

Rules and Articles, for the better Government of his Majesties Land Forces, in Pay.

ART. I.

ALL officers and soldiers (not having just impediment) shall diligently frequent divine service and sermon, in all such places as shall be appointed for the regiment, troop or company, wherein they serve; and such as either wilfully or negligently absent themselves from divine service or sermon, or else, being present, do behave themselves undecently or irreverently during the same; if they be officers they shall be severely reprehended at a court martial; but if private soldiers, they shall for every such first offence, forfeit each man twelve pence, to be deducted out of their next pay; and for the second offence, shall forfeit twelve pence, and be laid in irons for twelve hours; and for every like offence afterwards, shall suffer and pay in like manner.

Divine service and sermon to be frequented.

The penalty of absenting from divine service, or irreverent behaviour during the same.

1. If officers.

2. If soldiers.

ART. II.

IF any sutler or seller of ale, beer, wine, or any sort of drinks, bread, victuals, or other commodities, or merchandize whatsoever, attending his majestie's forces, shall during the time of divine service, or sermon, set any such thing to sale, he shall forfeit the full value thereof for the use of the poor.

No commodity to be put to sale in time of divine service, or sermon.

The penalty.

ART. III.

WHOSOEVER shall use any unlawfull oath or execration (whether officer or soldier) shall incur the penalties exprest in the first article.

The penalty of swearing or cursing.

ART. IV.

The penalty of blaspheming the persons of the Holy Trinity, or speaking against any known article of the Christian faith.

If any officer or soldier shall presume to blaspheme the holy and undivided Trinity, or the persons of God the Father, God the Son, or God the Holy Ghost, or shall presume to speak against any known article of the Christian faith, he shall have his tongue bored through with a red hot iron.

ART. V.

The penalty of prophaning churches, or offering violence to chaplains or ministers.

If any officer or soldier shall abuse or profane any place dedicated to the worship of God, or shall offer violence to any chaplain of the army, or any other minister of God's word, he shall suffer such punishment as shall be inflicted on him by a court martial.

Penalty of robbing or plundering churches or chapels.

AND whosoever shall take any of the utensils or ornaments belonging or dedicated to God's worship, in any church or chapel, shall suffer death for the fact.

ART. VI.

All officers and soldiers are to take the oath of fidelity.

To be administered as the king or commander in chief shall appoint.

ALL officers, of what quality or condition soever, shall take the following oath, which shall be administered to them by such person or persons, and in such places, as his majesty, his general, lieutenant-general, or commander in chief of the forces for the time being, shall appoint.

THE oath of fidelity to be taken by every officer and soldier in the army.

The oath of fidelity to be taken by all officers and soldiers.

"I, A. B. do swear to be true and faithful to my sovereign lord, King James, and to his heirs and lawful successors, and to be obedient in all things to his general, lieutenant-general, or commander in chief of his forces for the time being, and will behave myself obediently towards my superiour officers, in all they shall command me for his majesty's service; and I do further swear, that I will be a true, faithful, and obedient servant and soldier, every way performing my best endeavours for his majesty's service, obeying all

all orders, and submitting to all such rules and articles of war, as are or shall be established by his majesty; and I do likewise swear, that I believe that it is not lawful, upon any pretence whatsoever, to take up arms against the king; and that I do abhor that traitorous position of taking arms by his authority, against his person, or against those that are commissioned by him."

So help me God.

ART. VII.

No officer or soldier shall use any traitorous words against the sacred person of the king's most excellent majesty, upon pain of death.

The penalty of traitorous words against the king.

ART. VIII.

WHOSOEVER shall hold correspondence with any rebel or enemy of his majesty, or shall give them advice or intelligence, either by letters, messages, signs, or tokens, or any manner of way whatsoever, shall suffer death; and whatever regiment, troop or company shall treat with such rebels, or enemies, or enter into any condition with them, without his majesty's leave, or leave of the general, lieutenant-general, or of the chief commander in his absence; and the officers of such regiment, troop, or company who are found guilty, shall die for it; and of the soldiers who shall consent thereunto, every tenth man by lot shall be hanged, and the rest punished at the discretion of the general court-martial; but whatsoever officers or soldiers can prove that they did their utmost to resist and avoid such a treaty, and were no partakers of the crime, they shall not only go free, but shall also be rewarded for their constancy and fidelity.

The penalty of corresponding with rebels or enemies.

The penalty of treating or entering into any condition with them.

ART. IX.

WHOSOEVER shall go about to entice or persuade either officer or soldier to join or engage in any traitorous or rebellious act, either against

The penalty on the concealers and contrivers of any traitorous conspiracy.

against the royal person of the king, or kingly governments, shall suffer death for it; and whosoever shall not reveal to his superior officer such a conspiracy, so soon as ever it shall come to his knowledge, shall be judged equally guilty with the contrivers of such a plot or conspiracy, and consequently shall suffer the same penalty.

ART. X.

The penalty of disrespectful behaviour, or dishonourable words against the general, lieutenant-general, or other chief commander.

IF any officer or soldier shall behave himself disrespectfully towards the general, lieutenant-general, or other chief commander of the army, or speak words tending to his hurt or dishonour, he shall be punished according to the nature and quality of the offence, by the judgement of the general court-martial.

ART. XI.

The penalty of drawing a sword in the presence of the general, lieutenant-general, or commander in chief.

WHOSOEVER shall presume, in the presence of the general, lieutenant-general, or other commander in chief, to draw his sword with a purpose to do any officer, or any of his fellow-soldiers mischief, shall suffer such punishment as a court-martial shall think fit to inflict upon him for the said offence.

ART. XII.

The penalty of violating a safe conduct or protection given by his majesty, the general, lieutenant-general, or other chief commander.

WHOEVER shall presume to violate any safe conduct or protection given by his majesty, the general, lieutenant-general, or other commander in chief, (knowing the same) shall suffer death, or such other punishment as shall be inflicted on him by the general court-martial.

ART. XIII.

Penalty of mutiny.

No man shall presume so far as to raise, or cause the least mutiny or sedition in the army, upon pain of death, or such other punishment as a court-martial shall think fit; and if any number of soldiers shall presume to assemble to take counsel amongst themselves

selves for the demanding of their pay, any inferior officers accessory thereunto, shall suffer death for it, as the heads and ring-leaders of such mutinous and seditious meeting, and the soldiers shall be punished either with death or otherwise, at the discretion of the general court-martial; and if any captain being privy thereunto, shall not suppress the same, or complain of it, he shall likewise be punished with death, or such other punishment as the general court-martial shall think fit.

Of soldiers in mutinies.

Of captains not suppressing or complaining of mutinies to which they are privy.

ART. XIV.

No officer or soldier shall utter any words tending to sedition or mutiny, upon pain of suffering such punishment as shall be inflicted on him by a court-martial.

Penalty of speaking mutinous and seditious words.

AND whosoever shall hear any mutinous or seditious words spoken, and shall not with all possible speed reveal the same to his superior officers, shall be punished as a court-martial shall think fit.

The penalty of not revealing mutinous words.

ART. XV.

IF any inferior officer or soldier shall refuse to obey his superior officer, or shall quarrel with him, he shall be cashiered, or suffer such punishment as a court-martial shall think fit.

The penalty of inferior officer or soldiers resisting their superior officers.

BUT if any officer or soldier shall presume to resist any officer in the execution of his office, or shall strike, or lift up his hand to strike, or shall draw or offer to draw, or lift up any weapon against his superior officer, upon any pretence whatsoever, he shall suffer death, or such other punishment as the general court-martial shall think fit.

The penalty of drawing upon them, or striking them, or offering to draw or strike them.

ART. XVI.

EVERY soldier shall keep silence when the army is marching, embattling, or taking up their quarters, to the end that their officers may be heard and their orders executed,) upon pain of imprisonment, or such other punishment as a court-martial

Silence to be kept by all soldiers whilst the army is marching, embattling, or taking up their quarters.

martial shall think fit, according to the circumstances and aggravation of the fact.

ART. XVII.

ALL murders and wilful killing of any person, shall be punished with death.

ART. XVIII.

ALL robbery and theft, committed by any person in or belonging to the army, shall be punished with death, or otherwise as the court martial upon consideration of the circumstances shall think fit.

ART. XIX.

The penalty of any man's drawing a sword, but against the enemy, whilst his colours are flying.

WHOSOEVER shall in anger draw his sword whilst his colours are flying, either in battel or upon the march, unless it be against the enemy, shall suffer such punishment as a court martial shall think fit.

ART. XX.

The penalty if any one stays behind his colours.

WHEN any march is to be made, every man who is sworn shall follow his colours; and whosoever shall without leave stay behind, or depart above a mile from the camp, or out of the army without licence, shall suffer such punishment as shall be inflicted on him by a court martial.

ART. XXI.

The penalty if any one extort free quarter, commit any spoil or waste, &c. in a march.

No person shall extort free quarter, or shall commit any waste, or spoil or deface walks of trees, parks, warrens, fish-ponds, houses or gardens, tread down or otherwise destroy standing corn in the ear, or shall put their horses into meadows without leave from their superior officer, upon pain of severe punishment; but if any officer or soldier shall exact money, or wilfully burn any house, barn, stack of corn, hay or straw, or any ship, boat or carriage, or any thing which may serve for the provision of the army, without order from the commander in chief, he shall suffer death for it.

The penalty of burning houses, spoiling corn, hay, &c.

ART. XXII.

ART. XXII.

WHOSOEVER shall run from his colours, or doth not defend them to the utmost of his power, shall suffer death.

The penalty if one run from his colours.

ART. XXIII.

IF any officers or soldiers, regiment, troop or company, or commanded party, shall not behave themselves, in fight against an enemy, as they ought to do, they shall suffer such punishment as the general court martial shall inflict.

The penalty if a regiment, &c. shall not behave themselves as they ought to do.

ART. XXIV.

WHEN it shall please God that his majestie's forces shall beat the rebels, or enemy, every man shall follow his officer in the chase; but whosoever shall presume to pillage or plunder till the rebels or enemy be entirely beaten, he shall suffer death, or such other punishment as shall be pronounced against him by the general court martial; and the pillage so gotten shall be forfeited to the use of the sick and maimed soldiers.

The penalty of plundering before the enemy be entirely beaten.

ART. XXV.

IN what place soever it shall please God that the rebels or enemy shall be subdued or overcome, all the ordnance, ammunition and victuals that shall be there found, shall be secured for his majestie's use, and for the better relief of the army; and one tenth part of the spoil shall be laid apart towards the relief of the sick and maimed soldiers.

The enemies ammunition and victuals that shall be taken, shall be for his majestie's use, and a tenth of the spoil to be laid apart for the sick and maimed soldiers.

ART. XXVI.

ALL officers whose charge it is, shall see the quarters kept clean and neat, upon pain of the severest punishment.

The penalty of not keeping the quarters clean.

ART. XXVII.

The penalty of lying all night out of the camp or garrison.

No officer shall lie out all night from the camp or garrison without his superior officer's leave, upon pain of being punished for it as a court martial shall think fit; nor shall any soldier or officer go any by way to the camp, or other than the common way laid out for all, upon pain of being punished as aforesaid.

ART. XXVIII.

The penalty of shooting a musket in the night, after the watch is set, unless at an enemy.

No soldier shall presume to make any alarm in the quarters, by shooting off his musket in the night, after the watch is set, unless it be at an enemy, upon pain of suffering such punishment as a court martial shall inflict.

ART. XXIX.

The penalty of drawing a sword in camp or garrison.

No soldier shall in anger draw his sword in any camp, post or garrison, upon pain of suffering such punishment as a court martial shall inflict upon him for the same.

ART. XXX.

The penalty if a soldier absent himself from the watch, when warning is given.

WHEN warning is given for the fitting the watch, by beat of drum, or sound of trumpet, if any soldier shall absent himself without reasonable cause, he shall be punished by riding the wooden horse, or otherwise at the discretion of the commander.

The penalty if a soldier do not at the beat of drum, or sound of trumpet, or an alarm, repair to his colours.

AND whosoever shall fail at the beating of a drum, or sound of a trumpet, or upon an alarm given, to repair to his colours, with his arms decently kept and well fixed (unless there be an evident necessity to hinder him from the same) he shall either be put in irons for it, or suffer such other punishment as a court martial shall think fit.

ART. XXXI.

The penalty of making known the watch word or giving a false one.

WHOSOEVER makes known the watch word without order, or gives any other word, but what is given by the officer, shall suffer death,

death, or such other punishment as the general court martial shall think fit.

ART. XXXII.

A CENTINELL who shall be found sleeping in any post, garrison, trench, or the like (while he should be upon his duty) shall suffer death, or such other punishment as the general court martial shall inflict for the same.

The penalty of a centinel sleeping, when he should be upon duty.

AND if a centinell or perdue shall forsake his place, before he be relieved or drawn off; or upon discovery of an enemy, shall not give warning to his quarters, according to direction, he shall suffer death, or such other punishment as the general court martial shall think fit.

The penalty if a centinel or perdue forsake his place before he be relieved or drawn off.

AND if any soldier employed as a scout, shall not go upon that service so far as he is commanded, or having discovered an ambush, or approach of the enemy, shall not return forthwith to give notice or warning to his quarters, or if he enter into any house, and there or elsewhere be found sleeping or drunk, whilst he should have been upon service, he shall suffer death, or such other punishment as shall be inflicted upon him by the general court martial.

The penalty of a scouts neglecting his duty.

ART. XXXIII.

WHOSOEVER shall do violence to any who shall bring victuals to the camp or garrison, or shall take his horse or goods, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as the general court martial shall inflict.

The penalty of robbing or abusing any who bring provisions into the camp or garrison.

IF any shall presume to beat or abuse his host, or the wife, child, or servant of his host, where he is quartered, he shall be put into irons for it: and if he do it a second time, he shall be further punished; and the party wronged shall in both cases have amends made him.

The penalty if any soldier abuse or beat his host, his host's wife, child or servant.

AND whosoever shall force a woman to abuse her (whether she belong to the enemy or not) and the fact be sufficiently proved, shall suffer death for it.

Penalty of ravishing.

ART. XXXIV.

The penalty of reproach,
ful or provoking speech
or act.

The penalty of sending
or accepting a challenge.

Either for officers.

Or private soldiers.

The penalty if any officer
knowingly, suffer any to
go out to fight a duel.

All officers shall have
power to part or quell
all frays, &c.

Penalty of resisting an
officer.

The penalty of going
into the field and there
drawing of swords,
though no death ensue.

No soldier or officer shall use any reproachful or provoking speech or act to another, upon pain of imprisonment, and such further punishment as a court martial shall think fit.

NOR shall any officer or soldier presume to send a challenge to any other officer or soldier to fight a duel; neither shall any soldier or officer upbraid another for refusing a challenge; and we do acquit and discharge all men that have quarrels offered, or challenges made to them, of all disgrace or opinion of disadvantage, since they but do the duties of soldiers, who ought to subject themselves to discipline; and they that provoke them, shall be proceeded against as breakers of discipline and enemies to our service: and whosoever shall offend in either of these cases, if he be an officer, he shall be cashiered: and if a private soldier, he shall ride the wooden horse, and be further punished as a court martial shall think fit. And if any corporal or other officer commanding a guard, shall willingly or knowingly suffer either soldiers or officers to go forth to a duel, he shall be punished for it by the sentence of a court martial.

AND all officers of what condition soever, have power to part and quell all quarrels, frays, or sudden disorders between soldiers and officers, though of another company, troop or regiment, and to commit the disorderly persons to prison, untill their proper officers be acquainted therewith.

WHOEVER shall resist such an officer (though of another company, troop or regiment) or draw his sword upon him, shall be severely punished as the general court martial shall appoint.

AND if two or more go into the field to fight a duel, shall draw their swords or other weapons and fight, though neither of them fall upon the spot, nor die afterwards of any wound there received; yet if they be officers, they shall be cashiered; and if common soldiers, they shall be punished with riding the wooden horse, or suffer such other punishment as a court martial shall direct.

AND

AND lastly, in all cases of duels the seconds and carriers of challenges shall be taken as principals, and punished accordingly.

The seconds and carriers of challenges in all duels shall be reputed as principals.

ART. XXXV.

ALL passes and licences for being absent shall be brought to the muster-master, who is required to enter the same in a book fairly written to prevent confusion, and whoever is absent longer than the time limited in his pass for his absence, shall be respited, and not allowed the muster, without order from his majesty, the general, or other commander in chief of his majesty's forces.

Those who have passes, and shall exceed the time, shall not receive their pay.

ART XXXVI.

IF any soldier be sick, wounded, or maimed in his majesty's service, he shall be sent out of the camp to some fit place for his recovery, where he shall be provided for by the officer appointed to take care of sick and wounded soldiers, and his wages or pay shall go on, and be duly paid, till it does appear that he can be no longer serviceable in the army, and then he shall be sent by pass to his countrey, with money to bear his charges in his travel, or such other provision as his majesty shall direct shall be made for him.

Sick soldiers are to have care taken of them.

ART. XXXVII.

ALL commissions granted by his majesty, the general, or commander in chief of his majesty's forces, to any officer in pay, shall be brought to the commissary of the musters and secretary at war, who are to receive and enter the same in a book fairly written; and no commission officer shall be allowed in muster, without a commission from his majesty, or the commander in chief for the time being, and the same entered with the commissary general of the musters, or his deputies, and secretary at war.

All commissions to be entered.

ART. XXXVIII.

No commission officer after enrollment and being mustered, shall be dismissed or cashiered without order from his majesty, the general

No commission officer to be cashiered but by order from his majesty or the

general, or a general court martial.

But non-commission officers and foldiers may be dismiss.

ral or commander in chief for the time being, or a general court martial. But the captains, with the approbation of their colonels, or of the governour of the garison where they are, may discharge any non-commission officer, or private foldier when they find cause, taking other non-commission officers or foldiers in their places; provided that such colonel or governour shall forthwith certifie the commissary general of the musters, that (by their approbation) such non-commission officers or foldiers are discharged, and others taken in their places respectively; and in quarters and garrisons where they are only single troops or companies, the captain's certificates are forthwith to be sent, and accepted by the commissary general, expressing the day of each non-commission officer's or foldier's discharge or death, and who has been entertained in his place.

ART. XXXIX.

Captains to keep their troops and companies full. No foldier's duty to be done by another.

ALL captains shall use their utmost endeavours to have their troops and companies compleat and full, and no foldier's duty, either of horse or foot, shall be done by any other than the foldier himself; but in case of sickness or disability, or other necessary cause, his captain may dispence with his absence, without obliging him to find another in his stead.

ART. XL.

The penalty of pawning, selling, or spoiling of arms.

IF any trooper or dragoon shall lose or spoil his horse, or any foot foldier his arms, or any part thereof, by negligence or gaming, he shall remain in the quality of a pioneer or scavenger, till he be furnished at his own charge, with as good as were lost; and if he be not otherwise able, the one half of his pay shall be deducted and set apart for the providing of it, till he be refurnished.

The penalty of selling, or breaking arms, &c.

NOR shall any foldier sell, or negligently or wilfully break his arms, or any part thereof, or any hatchets, spades, shovels, pick-axes, or other necessaries of war, upon pain of severe punishment, at the discretion of the general court-martial; and where arms or other necessaries afore-

aforesaid shall be pawned, they are to be forfeited and seized on for his majestie's use.

ART. XLI.

ALL officers and foldiers, and also the muster-master, not duly observing these orders and instructions, and every of them respectively, shall be cashiered, or liable to such other punishments as his majesty, or commander in chief of the forces, or a court-martial shall appoint.

The penalty of officers and foldiers not obeying these orders.

ART. XLII.

NONE shall presume to spoil, sell, or convey away, any ammunition delivered unto him, upon pain of suffering death, or such other punishment as the general court-martial shall think fit.

Penalty of felling or conveying away any ammunition or victuals.

ART. XLIII.

No officer, provider, or keeper of the victuals or ammunition for his majestie's forces, shall embezel, or willingly spoil, or give a false account of any part thereof, to whom he is to make his account, upon pain of suffering death, or such other punishment as the general court-martial shall think fit.

The penalty of embezzling victuals or ammunition.

ART. XLIV.

No commissary or victualler shall bring or furnish into the camp, any unsound or unfavory victuals of what kind soever, whereby sickness may grow in the army, or the service be hindered; and if upon examination before the general court-martial, he shall be found guilty, he shall suffer such punishment as they shall direct.

The penalty of providing unsound or unfavory victuals for the army.

ART. XLV.

No officer or foldier shall be a victualler in the army, upon pain of being punished at discretion.

No officer or foldier to be a victualler.

ART. XLIX.

ART. XLVI.

The penalty of entertaining soldiers after the tattoo, or before the reveilles in the morning.

No victualler, or seller of beer, ale, or wine, belonging to the army, shall entertain any soldier in his house, booth, tent, or hut after the warning-piece, tattoo, or beat of the drum at night, or before the beating of the reveilles in the morning; nor shall any soldier within that time be any where but upon his duty, or in his quarters, upon pain of punishment, both to the soldier and entertainer, at the discretion of a court-martial.

ART. XLVII.

Every regiment may have a court-martial and a provost-marshal, and other officers necessary for a court.

THE commission-officers of every regiment may hold a court-martial for that regiment upon all necessary occasions; the provost-martial of every regiment shall have the same privilege in his own regiment, as the provost-marshal-general hath in the army or camp, and such fees also as the court-martial shall allow.

ART. XLVIII.

The duty of judges.

SUCH who are judges in a general court-martial or in a regimental court-martial, shall hold the same rank in those courts as they do in the army for order's sake, and they shall take an oath for the due administration of justice according to these articles, or (where these articles do not assign any special punishment) according to their consciences, the best of their understanding, and the custom of war in the like cases, and shall demean themselves orderly in the hearing of causes; and before giving of sentence, every judge shall deliver his vote or opinion distinctly, and the sentence is to be according to the plurality of votes, and if there happen to be an equality of votes, the president is to have a casting voice.

The president must pronounce sentence.

AND when sentence is to be given, the president shall pronounce it; and after that the sentence is pronounced, the provost-martial shall have warrant to cause execution to be done according to sentence.

ART. XLIX.

ART. XLIX.

AT a general court-martial there shall be a clerk who is to be sworn to make true and faithful record of all the proceedings of that court, and there shall be also such other officers appointed both for that, and also for the regimental court-martial as shall be necessary, and the general court-martial may appoint and limit the fees of the provost-marshal-general as they shall think fit.

A sworn clerk to attend the general court-martial.

ART. L.

ALL controversies, either between soldiers and their captains, or other officers, or between soldier and soldier relating to their military capacities, shall be summarily heard and determined at the next court-martial of the regiment.

Courts-martial to decide military controversies.

ART. LI.

IF in any matter which shall be judged in any of the aforesaid regimental courts-martial, either of the parties shall find himself aggrieved, he may appeal to the general court-martial, who are to take care that if the party appealing make not good his suggestion, recompence be made to the other for the trouble and charge of such an appeal.

There may be appeal made from the regimental courts-martial to the general court-martial.

ART. LII.

IN all criminal causes which concern the crown, his majesty's advocate-general, or judge-advocate of the army, shall inform the court, and prosecute on his majesty's behalf.

In all criminal causes which concern his majesty, his advocate-general is to inform and prosecute.

ART. LIII.

No officers or soldiers shall presume to hinder the provost-marshal, his lieutenant or servant, in the execution of their office, upon pain of death, or such other punishment as a court-martial shall think fit; and all captains, officers and soldiers, shall do their

The penalty of hindering the provost-martial in the execution of his office.

The penalty of not assisting him.

utmost to apprehend and bring to punishment all offenders, and shall assist the officers of his majestie's army, or forces therein, especially the said provost-martial, his lieutenant and servants; and if the provost-martial or his officers require the assistance of any officer or soldier in apprehending any person, declaring to them, that it is for a capital crime, and the party escape for want of aid and assistance, the party or parties refusing to aid or assist, shall suffer such punishment as a court-martial shall inflict.

ART. LIV.

The penalty of drawing a sword in the place of judicature while they are sitting.

IF any officer or soldier shall presume to draw his sword in any court of judicature while the court is sitting, he shall suffer such punishment as shall be inflicted on him by a court-martial, and the provost-marshal of his majestie's army is hereby empowered and directed by his own authority to apprehend such offenders.

ART. LV.

The penalty of breaking prison.

IF any soldier being committed for any offence shall break prison, the said provost-marshal-general shall by his own authority apprehend him, and the offender shall suffer death.

ART. LVI.

In case of a fray, the officers of the regiment are to enquire into it and see it punished.

IF any fray shall happen within the camp or place of garison in any of the soldier's lodgings, or where they meet, it shall be enquired into by the officers of the regiment, and the beginners and pursuers thereof punished, according to the quality of the offence.

ART. LVII.

What an inferior officer must do if he be wronged.

IF any inferior officer, either of horse or foot, be wronged by his officer, he may complain to his colonel, or other superior officer of the regiment, who is to redress the same, upon due proof made of the wrong done him; but if he fail therein, the party grieved is to apply to the general officer for redress, and if the accusation be

be false, the complainant is to be punished at the discretion of a court-martial.

ART. LVIII.

IF any colonel or captain shall force or take any thing away from a private soldier, such colonel or captain shall be punished according to the quality of the offence, by the judgement of a general court-martial.

The penalty of an officer forcing any thing from a soldier.

AND if a soldier shall be wronged, and shall not appeal to the court, or his superior commander, but take his own satisfaction for it, he shall be punished by the judgement of a court-martial.

The penalty if a soldier who is wronged, goes about to help himself.

ART. LIX.

IF any soldier die, no other shall take or spoil his goods, upon pain of restoring double the value to him to whom they belong, and of such further punishment as a court-martial shall think fit; but the captain of the company of which such a soldier was, shall take the said goods into his custody, and dispose of them for paying his quarters, and to keep the overplus (if any be) for the use of those to whom they belong, and who shall claim the same within three months after his death.

The captain is to take care of any soldier's goods when he dies.

AND if any captain or officer die, the chief commander shall take care of reserving his estate in like manner.

And the chief commander of any superior officer's estate.

ART. LX.

No provost-martial shall refuse to receive or keep a prisoner, committed to his charge by authority, or shall dismiss him without order, upon pain of such punishment as a court martial shall think fit.

Penalty if a provost-martial refuse to take a prisoner into custody.

AND if the offence for which the prisoner was apprehended, deserved death, the provost-martial failing to receive and keep him as aforesaid, shall be liable to the same punishment.

ART. LXI.

If a person be committed by the provost-martial's own authority the commander must be acquainted with it.

IF any person be committed by the provost martial's own authority without other command, he shall acquaint the general or other chief commander with the cause, within twenty-four hours, and the provost-martial shall thereupon dismiss him, unless he have order to the contrary.

ART. LXII.

The penalty of using menacing words, signs, or actions in a place of judicature.

No man shall presume to use any braving or menacing words, signs or gestures where any of the aforesaid courts of justice are sitting, upon pain of suffering such punishment as the court-martial shall think fit.

ART. LXIII.

All things are to be made known by beat of drum, or the sound of trumpet, and then obeyed.

WHATEVER is to be published or generally made known, shall be done by beat of drum, or the sound of trumpet, that no man may pretend ignorance thereof: and if afterwards any one shall be found disobedient; or transgressing what is so published, he shall be punished according to these articles, or the quality of the fact.

ART. LXIV.

ALL other faults, misdemeanors and disorders not mentioned in these articles, shall be punished according to the laws and customs of war, and discretion of the court-martial; provided that no punishment amounting to the loss of life or limb, be inflicted on any offenders in time of peace; although the same be allotted for the said offence by these articles, and the laws and customs of war.

F I N I S.

AFTER

AFTER the abdication of King James II. and the accession of King William III. the military code as has before been said, obtained the sanction of Parliament, tho' passed only from year to year, under the denomination of the mutiny act; the following is the first that passed, it took place the 12th of April, 1689, and was to continue in force to the 10th of November in the same year.

An Act for punishing Officers or Souldiers who shall Mutiny, or desert their Majesties Service.

WHEREAS the raising or keeping a standing army within this kingdom in time of peace, unless it be with consent of parliament, is against law; and whereas, it is judged necessary by their majesties and this present parliament, that during this time of danger, severall of the forces which are now on foot should be continued, and others raised for the safety of the kingdom, for the common defence of the protestant religion, and for the reducing of Ireland.

AND whereas, no man may be forejudged of life or limb, or subjected to any kind of punishment by martial law, or in any other manner than by the judgment of his peers, and according to the known and established laws of this realm; yet, nevertheless, it being requisite for retaining such forces as are, or shall be raised during this exigence of affairs, in their duty, an exact discipline be observed; and that souldiers who shall mutiny or stir up sedition, or shall desert their majesties service, be brought to a more exemplary punishment than the usual forms of law will allow.

BE it therefore enacted by the king and queen's most excellent majesties, by and with the advice of the lords spiritual and temporal, and commons in this present parliament assembled, and by authority of the same; that from and after the twelfth day of April, in the year of our Lord, one thousand six hundred eighty-nine, every person being in their majesties service in the army, and being mustered and in pay as an officer or soldier, who shall at
any

any time before the tenth day of November, in the year of our Lord, one thousand six hundred eighty-nine, excite, cause, or join in any mutiny or sedition in the army, or shall desert their majesties service in the army, shall suffer death, or such other punishment as by a court-martial shall be inflicted.

AND it is hereby further enacted and declared, that their majesties, or the general of their army for the time being, may, by virtue of this act, have full power and authority to grant commissions to any lieutenants-general, or other officers, not under the degree of colonels, from time to time to call and assemble court-martials for punishing such offences as aforesaid.

AND it is hereby further enacted and declared, that no court-martial which shall have power to inflict any punishment by virtue of this act for the offences aforesaid, shall consist of fewer than thirteen, whereof none to be under the degree of captains; provided always, that no field officer be tryed by other then field-officers; and that such court-martial shall have power and authority to administer an oath to any witness, in order to the examination or tryal of the offences aforesaid.

PROVIDED always, that nothing in this act contained shall extend, or be construed to exempt any officer or soldier whatsoever from the ordinary process of law.

PROVIDED always, that this act, or any thing therein contained shall not extend, or be any ways construed to extend to, or concern any of the militia forces of this kingdom.

PROVIDED also, that this act shall continue and be in force until the said tenth day of November, in the said year of our Lord one thousand six hundred eighty-nine, and no longer.

PROVIDED always, and be it enacted, that in all tryals of offenders by courts-martial, to be held by virtue of this act, where the offence may be punished by death; every officer present at such tryal, before any proceeding be had thereupon, shall take an oath upon the Evangelists before the court (and the judge-advocate or

his

his deputy shall, and are hereby respectively authorized to administer the same) in these words, that is to say :

You shall well and truly try and determine according to your evidence the matter now before you, between our sovereign lord and lady, the king and queen's majesties, and the prisoner to be tried.

So help you God.

AND no sentence of death shall be given against any offender in such case, by any court-martial, unless nine of thirteen officers present shall concur therein ; and if there be a greater number of officers present, then the judgment shall pass by the concurrence of the greater part of them so sworn, and not otherwise ; and no proceedings, tryal, or sentence of death shall be had or given against any offender but between the hours of eight in the morning and one in the afternoon.

THIS act seems to have been passed in a hurry, merely to give some kind of law to the army, which, as we learn from diverse relations, was then in a very unsettled state, having large arrears of pay due to them, and being consequently under little or no discipline ; by gradual additions, to the articles of war, and the mutiny act, they have grown to their present size, and yet in many parts, require explanation and amendment, being in diverse instances vague and disputable ; the act on which I found this assertion, is that of the year 1785.

ONE material deficiency in that part of the act which concerns the quartering of officers and soldiers is, that it does not ascertain what kind of accommodation is to be given to the former ; for want of any discrimination, it has of late been asserted, that no distinction was required or intended by law to be made between the quarters of an officer and a private soldier ; it would therefore prevent all disputes on that subject, if it were directed, that every commission officer should have such kind of lodging, bedding and furniture, as would be proper for a guest of the rank of a gen-

gentleman, of which the chief magistrate of the place should be the judge; and that no more than one officer should be put in a bed, and no more than two, and those under the rank of a captain, in one room: in the article directing the application of the penalty levied on publicans, for refusing to provide quarters and the necessaries directed by the act, satisfaction for the expence arising to the party from want of quarters, is confined to the soldier only, altho' a subaltern having no other income than his pay, is perhaps, particularly after a long march, as little able to pay for a lodging as a private soldier.

THE great difficulty (a) found by most regiments in procuring an hospital for their sick, renders a clause in the mutiny act for that purpose much wanted; it would be a very considerable benefit to the service, if the magistrates of every district wherein troops should be quartered, were obliged to provide a convenient barn, stable, or other building, at a reasonable rent; for want of some such regulation, the most exorbitant demands are usually made for the most wretched hovels, though the slender allowance to a regimental surgeon enables him to afford very little, particularly where the regiment is in scattered quarters, as in that case, he must have two or more hospitals; the consequence is, that many a

(a) ALL these, with many more inconveniences, might be obviated by the erection of barracks, at the expence of the persons liable to have soldiers quartered on them, an expedient, which it is credibly reported, has been offered more than once; nothing can be more ill-founded, than the supposition, that barracks would divide the soldier from the citizen; the real consequence would be, the uniting them in the bonds of friendship; at present, the soldier and the landlord, or publican, having opposite interests, live in a state of inveterate enmity, and the contempt and insult the small pay of the military subjects them to from the canaille of every sort, tends to make them in general at variance with the citizens; but, if the troops were lodged in barracks, the chief causes of disagreement would cease, and the soldiery would be considered as a benefit, instead of a burthen on the country wherein they were stationed; the men would besides be happier, more moral, and better disciplined.

life is lost, which, with proper accommodation might have been saved; in villages, parish officers might be obliged to take sick soldiers into the parish poor-houses, assigning them one or more rooms according to their numbers.

As it sometimes happens, that in bad or cross-roads, waggons break down, and the soldiers of the baggage-guard, are prevented from arriving at their destined quarters by the time limited in their route, which is thereby rendered void, and of no effect; some precautions should be taken against such accidents, and the commanding officer in that case expressly authorised to oblige the constable of the district where it happens, to impress fresh carriages.

A SEVERE penalty should also be laid on any farmer or his driver, who should give in a false weight of his waggon, a fraud constantly attempted, and often practised on the troops; the weighing of each waggon before loaded, being attended with much trouble and delay.

ALTHOUGH the duty of a soldier to labour in constructing of fortifications and other military works, without any additional pay, if ordered so to do by his officers, is implied in the vth article of the 2d section of the articles of war, which section, with the vith is directed to be read to all recruits at the time of their enlisting; yet, a contrary opinion has long subsisted among the soldiers in general; wherefore, if a clause was inserted in the oath of fidelity, similar to that in the ordinances of war, enacted by the earl of Northumberland, it might prevent much uneasiness, and if done some time ago, would probably have saved the lives of several soldiers shot for mutiny on that subject. (b)

THE right of a soldier to appeal from the sentence of a regimental to a general court-martial, is now pretty universally denied,

(b) "To watch and ward, and work in the service."

yet an idea of that right is still strongly rooted in the opinions of many old soldiers: it would be much better if this matter was positively ascertained and declared; the following words in the tenth article of the act of parliament, rather appearing to imply the legality of such appeal; "provided always, and be it hereby declared and enacted, that no officer or soldier, being acquitted of any offence, shall be liable to be tried a second time, by the same, or any other court-martial, for the same offence, unless in the case of an appeal from a regimental to a general court-martial."

THE authority exercised by the naval officers over the land-forces, when embarked on board the king's ships, either for service, or to be transported to foreign garrisons, requires some regulation; as the law is now supposed to stand, a soldier finds himself subjected to two different codes; namely, the military articles of war, and those of the navy; whereas at his enlisting, he was informed, he thereby became liable to the former only, and that he could not be punished otherwise than by the sentence of a court-martial; but, according to the naval discipline, the captain, or in his absence, the commanding officer of the vessel, may, by his own authority, order any one on board his ship, as many dozen lashes as he thinks proper, by dividing the offence into so many different heads; respecting which, he is both accuser and judge: although the nature of the service, the character of the people to be governed, with diverse other considerations, require summary proceedings; and that the captain should have power over every person on board his ship, in the same manner as a governor of a fortress has over every individual of his garrison; and allowing that nothing but confusion could arise from two distinct powers, imperium in imperio being an acknowledged solecism in government; but this power would not be at all invaded or diminished, were there an article of war, authorizing and directing a captain or commanding officer of a ship of war, to order ship courts-martial for the trial of all offenders belonging to the land forces, to consist of a certain number of commission officers, either all
be-

belonging to the troop, or half naval, and half land officers, reserving to himself, the approbation of the sentence, as governor of the garrison; soldiers being thus tried, wholly or in part by their own officers, would still preserve that respect for them, which the present practice is very apt to make them lose; they would besides be judged by those articles to which they had sworn obedience; it would likewise prevent a great deal of ill blood between the two services, which, in the end, will always prove detrimental to the service.

THE present mode of proceeding at a general court-martial is as follows:

THIS court in England must consist of a president, and not less than twelve members, all commission officers; and if they are to try an officer, if possible, none should be of a rank inferior to the prisoner; the president at least a field officer.

THE president and members being assembled and seated according to their rank or seniority, the commission or warrant for holding the court is read, as also the appointment of the president and deputy judge-advocate, if the judge-advocate himself does not officiate; should the court be held within any garrison, by virtue of the governor's commission, that commission is read, as also, the governor's order for holding the court, and his appointment of the president.

THE judge-advocate next swears the president singly, as a token of respect; and afterwards, all the members, as many together as can conveniently hold the book; the form of the oath is given in the articles of war; the president is then to administer to the judge-advocate, the oath prescribed in the said articles; he being sworn, takes his seat at the bottom of the table, opposite to the president.

THE prisoner is now brought in, but previous to the charge being exhibited against him, he is asked, whether he acknowledges himself to be an officer, or soldier (as the case may happen) in the — regiment? Should he deny it; if an officer, his commission

is read, or the paymaster deposes he has received pay as such, or evidence is brought to prove he has been mustered.

If a private soldier or non-commission officer, his attestation is produced, or proof that he has regularly received pay as such.

THE prisoner being thus proved amenable to the court, the names of the members are read to him, that he may challenge any of them, giving his reasons for such challenge; should they appear sufficient, another member is appointed; otherwise, the objection is over-ruled by the court: the charge is next read, and the prisoner required to plead, guilty, or not guilty; if he pleads guilty, the judge-advocate enters such plea, and proceeds to collect from the different members, the punishment allotted to the crime; if the person pleads not guilty, the judge-advocate proceeds to call evidence in support of the charge, which he, as official prosecutor, examines, taking down the substance of the deposition of each witness, except where the words contribute to the offence, in which case, he takes it down verbatim, as spoken by the evidence; having finished the examination of a witness, and taken it down, he reads it aloud, asking, first the evidence, then the prisoner and the court, whether they are satisfied with it, as expressing the meaning of the deponent.

THE judge-advocate having asked such questions as he thinks sufficient, next enquires of the court, whether they would ask the evidence any further questions; the same is to be repeated to the prisoner, who has a right to cross question every evidence produced in support of the prosecution. The prosecution being closed, the prisoner is put upon his defence, and where many evidences have been examined, or the charge contains many articles, is frequently indulged with a day to prepare it, the court adjourning for that time.

THE court having met, the prisoner states his defence, and calls his evidence to prove the facts there alledged, these he may if he thinks proper examine himself, after which the judge advocate and court may cross question them.

THE

THE judge-advocate, if he chuses, here makes a reply to any objections made to the evidence for the prosecution, but no new matter must be adduced, in this case the prisoner has a right to a rejoinder.

ALL the evidence for the prisoner must be taken down by the judge-advocate, with the same care and precautions as were observed in the depositions supporting the prosecution.

THE defence being closed, the judge-advocate collects the opinions of the members, whether the prisoner is guilty or not guilty, beginning with the youngest, the majority constituting the opinion of the court.

IF the prisoner is found guilty, the next consideration is, what punishment he shall receive, it being a maxim that when a prisoner is found guilty, some punishment must be allotted. For this purpose the court considers under what article or articles of war, the offence or offences immediately fall, many having specific punishments allotted unto them, such as scandalous and infamous behaviour, breaking an arrest, &c. if under these, the punishment is already settled by his majesty; but if the crime is adjudged to come under any article where the court have a discretionary power of punishment, the judge-advocate collects the opinions, beginning as before with the youngest member, and takes down the decision of the majority, as the opinion of the court; observing that in a sentence of death, there must be at least the concurrence of two thirds of the members.

IN cases of corporal punishment, it is doubted whether those members who have voted the prisoner not guilty, can with propriety afterwards vote as to the number of lashes he is to receive, as it seems *prima facie* assigning punishment to an innocent man; but to this it is answered, that by voting for a very small number of lashes, they may effectually operate towards mitigating a sentence, that by their preceding opinions they must esteem unjust.

BEFORE I conclude this head, I cannot avoid mentioning a singular

gular circumstance recorded in the report of the committee of the house of commons, in 1746, before quoted; this was to oblige an officer who had been tried by a court-martial to pay the expences of the prosecutor, amounting to 54l. 1s. 6d. which sum was by the commanding officer of the regiment (who was also the prosecutor) ordered to be stopped by the agent, out of a balance due to the said officer; upon his filing a bill in chancery, the demand was dropped; the propriety of this demand being investigated by the committee, it was by the judge-advocate and a variety of competent witnesses, declared totally unprecedented.

THE ancient mode of quartering our troops, may in a great measure be gathered from the ordinances of war, and seems to have differed very little from that now in use, except that they were indiscriminately quartered on all householders, as was practised in England so late as the rebellion in the year 1745.

THE king, or some officer authorised by him, having directed the march of the army or any part of it, issued out his mandate to the chief civil magistrate of that district to which it was destined, requiring him to provide quarters and provisions for the occasion. (c) On the approach of the army, the marshal, who acted as quarter-master general, attended by the chief harbinger, those belonging to the different corps, and the harbingers of the great officers, went forwards, when the general quarters being assigned to the marshal, were by him divided and delivered out to the regimental and other herbergers, whose names had been previously given in to the constable and marshal by their respective offi-

(c) IN order to provide victuals for the army, it was sometimes ordered that no market should be held in a number of the neighbouring counties: many proclamations of this kind, temp. Edward III. are extant, and one of the 13th of Richard II. wherein it was directed that no markets should be held in these seven shires, to wit, Berks, Surry, Suffex, Southampton, Wilts, Dorset and Somersetshire, but that all victuals should be brought to Portsmouth to the army where it lay waiting for transportation. *Indors. Claus. anno 13. b. 3. m. 4.*

cers or lords ; whether the present form of billeting was then used, is not certain, though it is most likely that it was.

RAPIN says, that William the conqueror quartered almost all his troops upon the monasteries, and obliged the monks to find them in necessaries ; by which means, he maintained his army without any charge, and had spies in all the religious houses, who watched the actions of the monks : these houses were long after, charged with finding carts and horses for the carrying of the baggage of the army ; and there are still extant, many of the original returns from different monasteries, stating the number of each they were able to furnish for that purpose ; copies of some of them will be given in the appendix.

IN the 9th of Richard II. anno 1385, an order was sent from the king and council to all mayors, &c. reciting, that having retained William Drayton and Hugh Spenser, with a certain number of men at arms and archers, to set out for the town of Gaunt with all possible speed ; they the said mayors, &c. were commanded to be assistant to certain servants appointed by the said William and Hugh to secure decent and sufficient quarters, at Dover, Sandwich, and the ports adjacent, such as to them shall seem most proper and convenient for obtaining victuals and necessaries. (d)

IN the 10th of the said king, there is an order to the mayor of London, acquainting him, that his majesty being informed, that Charles king of France, meditated an invasion of this kingdom ; he had ordered his army to assemble as soon as possible, at London ; and that he, being desirous that his army and liege men may be lodged in the said city, and that they may be accommodated with victuals for their money ; had directed the herbergers of the different leaders, to meet the marshall at a street, called the Ropery, there to receive quarters from him : it

(d) RYMER in anno.

was also ordered, that no herberger to any leader should quarter any one by his own authority, without the warrant of the marshal, under pain of forfeiting his armour and harness.

THE soldiers were forbidden (under pain of forfeiting all they could forfeit) to molest any victualler, or to take any provision without payment.

No one to rob or pillage his quarters, on pain of life and members, and every other possible forfeiture.

No victualler, armourer, or dealer in horses, to take greater prices for their goods, than before this time was usually given, under pain of forfeiting the said goods. These ordinances were directed to be publickly proclaimed at all expedient places. A proclamation was also issued, forbidding the raising the prices of horses, armour, &c. persons disobeying this order, to be arrested and imprisoned till the king should order their enlargement. (e)

IT appears that the great officers of state attending our kings, had particular quarters assigned them and their retinue for life, as is instanced in Thomas earl of Dorset, to whom Henry V. A.D. 1414, the 2d year of his reign, assigned the town of Stratford Langthorn, with the parish of Ham, in Essex, for life, for the herbergage of his men servants and horses, whilst attending the king at Westminster; insomuch, that the king's herbergeours could not assign it to any other, nor take from thence grafs, hay, horse, cart, carriages, nor other necessaries during his stay there; always provided that the said earl should justly pay for all sorts of hay, horses, carts, &c. taken for his use; in like manner, Canford and Pool, in Dorsetshire, were granted for the herbergage of the earl of Salisbury, whilst attending the king in those parts. (f)

IN the year 1415, the third of King Henry V. that king issued his commission to John Merston and William Enger, di-

(e) RYMER, vol. 7, p. 584. || (f) SEE Rymer in Anno.

recting them to provide quarters at Plymouth and places adjacent, for John Tiptoft, Knight, seneschal of the dutchy of Aquitaine, his men at arms, soldiers and their horses, who were to embark from thence for the said dutchy; and also to take and provide victuals and other necessities for them during their stay, to be promptly paid for with the money of the said John; in this purveyance, the fees of the church to be excepted; the civil magistrates were herein directed to be assisting. (g)

ABOUT the time of Henry VII. we meet with a regulation that somewhat respects quarters, this is a coat and conduct-money; the first was, as has before been observed, a species of clothing, probably for recruits; the money for which was advanced by the county wherein they were raised, or such other as was directed by the king or his privy council; conduct-money was an allowance for subsistence, to and from the army, according to the number of days the soldiers had to march; a day's march was sometimes estimated at twelve and sometimes at fifteen miles; both the coat and conduct money was occasionally advanced by the different counties wherein the troops were quartered, under the promise of being repaid by government. (h)

TOWARDS the latter end of the reign of King James II. and even after the accession of King William III. soldiers used to

(g) SEE Rymer in anno.

(h) 1280l. is charged for coote and conduyt money in Cardinal Woolsey's warrant, anno 14 Hen. VIII. by Thomas Magnus Clerk, for the king's army going to Scotland. See book marked W. S. in Coll. Arm.

IN the paper-office, there are divers letters from the deputy-lieutenants of counties, respecting the marching, quartering, and paying new levied troops in the year 1627: in one from the deputy lieutenants of the county of Surry, coat money appears to have been settled at 12s. 6d. Six hundred men were, it is there said, coated at that rate; the conduct-money was 8d. per diem, accounting twelve miles for a day's march.

ANNO 1640, conduct-money was settled by K. Charles I. at 8d. per diem, and a day's march at not less than fifteen miles. See Rymer.

oblige the inhabitants of the towns wherein they were quartered, not only to furnish them with diet and lodging, but also to advance them their daily subsistence; the Journals of the House of Commons furnish many instances wherein this is complained of.

AFTER the revolution, by the mutiny act passed the 23d day of December, anno 1689, the following laws and regulations respecting quarters were enacted:

AND whereas, by the petition of right in the third of Charles I. it is enacted and declared, that the people of this land are not by the laws to be burthened with the sojourning of soldiers against their wills; and by a clause in an act of parliament, made 31st of Charles II. for granting his majesty 206,462l. 17s. 3d. for paying and disbanding his forces: it is declared and enacted, that no officers, military or civil, nor any other person whatsoever, shall from henceforth, presume to place, quarter or billet, any soldier or soldiers, upon any subject or inhabitant of this realm, of any degree, quality, or profession whatsoever, without their consent; and that it may be lawful for any such subject and inhabitant to refuse to sojourn or quarter any soldier or soldiers, notwithstanding any command, order, warrant, &c. &c. But forasmuch as at this present time there is a rebellion in Ireland, and a war in France, whereby there is occasion for the marching of many regiments, troops, and companies in several parts of this kingdom towards the sea coast and otherwise; be it enacted, &c. that during the continuance of this act, and no longer, it shall be lawful for constables, &c. to billet officers and soldiers on inns, livery stables, ale-houses, victualling-houses, and all houses selling brandy, strong waters, fider, or metheglin, by retail, to be drank in their houses, and no other, and in no private houses whatsoever; any constable, &c. presuming to quarter officers or soldiers on private houses, the owner to have his remedy at law.

THE officers and soldiers so quartered, to pay such reasonable rates as shall from time to time be settled by the justices at the quarter-

quarter-sessions; which said justices are required to appoint for all necessary provisions for such officers and soldiers, for one or more nights in their marching through the cities, towns, villages, &c. and for the first night only, in such places as shall be appointed for their residence or quarters, provided the price so set by the said justices, be within the subsistence money paid to the soldiers, which is,

			l.	s.	d.	
Each trooper	-	-	0	2	0	} per diem.
Each dragoon	-	-	0	1	2	
Each foot soldier	-	-	0	0	6	

AND after the said first night in their quarters, the owners and occupiers of the inns, alehouses, and other publick-houses as aforesaid, are hereby required to furnish such officers and soldiers so quartered and billeted as aforesaid with dry lodgings, (i) stable room for horses, and with fire, and water, and necessary utensils to dress their meat, and not otherwise, without the said officers or soldiers shall make a contract or agreement for their provisions with the said owners or occupiers: provided also, and be it enacted, that if any officer or soldier shall take any money of any person for excusing the quartering of officers or soldiers on any of them, in any house allowed by this act; every such officer or soldier shall be cashiered and made incapable of serving in any military employment whatsoever.

IN the act of 12th Anne, to take place June 5th, 1714, was the following clause: provided also, and it is hereby enacted,

(i) GREAT disputes have at all times arisen, between the officers and landlords of the houses wherein they are billeted, respecting the quality of the room to be furnished for them: an opinion has long prevailed in the army, that the superior commission officer quartered in any publick-house, has a right to the second best apartment in the house; this we find affirmed by Edward Davis, who wrote in the year 1619; his words are; "note, that a souldier in garrison being furried in a house, is allowed the best bed and chamber, save one, faire sheetes, boardclothes, plates, napkins, towels, dressing of his meate, service at the table, oil, vinegar, mustard, candle-light, fire, &c.

that nothing in this act contained shall be construed to extend to compel the quartering of any officer or soldier of the regiments of foot within that part of Great Britain, called England, the dominion of Wales, and town of Berwick upon Tweed, unless it be within ten miles of the palace or place of her majesty's usual residence, or within ten miles of the place where her majesty shall be present, or in some garrison or garrisons where sufficient barracks are not provided for them; and unless it be in the marches of such officers and soldiers: and that in such marches, no person shall be obliged to quarter them more than six days at a time; any thing in this act to the contrary notwithstanding.

OFFICERS, &c. were to be quartered in Scotland, as by the laws in force there at the union.

THE present mode of quartering our troops is according to the form following:

WHEN a regiment is to change its quarters, an order, styled a route, is sent from the secretary of war or his deputy, signifying, that it is his majesty's pleasure, that the —— regiment shall march from its present quarters on a day specified, to the place or places destined, there to be quartered, and to remain till further orders: Routes are either particular or discretionary; in the first, the number of divisions in which the regiment is to march, the places through which they are to pass, and where they are to rest, with the days and places at which they are to halt on their way, are all specified in the margin; a discretionary route simply directs the corps to march from its present quarters to those destined for it, in such divisions, and by such routes, as shall be found shortest and most convenient, halting as there shall be occasion, or as is more frequent, on Sundays and Thursdays; both routes contain an order for all civil magistrates to be assisting in impressing carriages, and providing quarters, as is by the act of parliament directed: the power of granting routes, is confined to the commander in chief, the master-general, and lieutenant-general of the ordnance, or the king, signified by the
secre-

secretary of war: the difference of the routes abovementioned are very material; for, should any accident delay or prevent the corps arriving at the place directed in the first at the day therein directed, the remainder of the route would be made void, and the magistrates not authorised to furnish quarters or carriages.

ON the receipt of the route, several copies attested by the commanding-officer, the quarter-master or adjutant are made out, and the original, or one of them, is shewn to the chief magistrate or neighbouring justice; who, thereupon grants his warrant to the constable, to impress as many carriages as are required to carry the regimental baggage, which he, under the penalty of forty and not less than twenty shillings, is obliged to execute: the hire of these carriages is to be paid into the hands of the constable at the following rates; for a waggon with five horses, one shilling per mile; and a cart with four horses, nine-pence per mile; the first, to carry thirty hundred, and the second in proportion, the over-weight (if any) to be paid for; the common price for a day's march, is one shilling per hundred: officers are forbidden to take the waggon further than it can return in the same day; to force the waggoner to carry their women, children, servants, any other than the sick or lame soldiers, or to beat or abuse the driver; the treasurer of the county to pay the persons to whom the carriages belong such additional sums as the justices at the quarter sessions shall direct.

IN case the waggon should break down on the march, or the horses become unable to draw it, it has been the custom to demand other waggons of the constable of the place where the accident happens, and even without a constable to impress waggons or horses, as the case required.

THE carriages being provided, which is commonly done the day before the march, the quarter-master or some other commissioned or non-commission officer goes forward with the route to the first stage or day's march, to provide billets; for which purpose he applies for

for them with a copy of the route, to the chief magistrate, as well as for carriages for the next day's march; the billets being made out, the constable meets the regiment in the place where they draw up, and delivers them their billets; before the regiment quits these quarters, it is the duty of the commanding officer to see that all the landlords are paid according to the rates laid down in the mutiny act; these are, for a commission officer of horse, under the degree of a captain, for his diet and small beer, 2s. per diem, for that of an officer of dragoons of the same rank, or one of foot, 1s. each, and for their horses for their hay and straw, 6d. per diem each, for the diet and small beer of a non-commission officer or private trooper or dragoon, 6d. per diem, and 6d. per diem for the hay and straw for their horses; for every non-commission officer or private foot soldier, 4d.

THE common method practised by the publicans, is to give the soldiers their dinner and small beer gratis, to avoid further trouble.

THESE forms are repeated at every day's march. On the arrival of the regiment at its quarters, the commanding officer sends a drum and serjeant round the quarters, to give public notice to the publicans not to credit the soldiers for above two days diet, they being paid twice a week, should this be neglected, the commanding officer is liable by the articles of war, to pay all the soldiers debts, this is called crying down credit.

Two or three days after the arrival of the regiment in their quarters, a list, called a comptroll of quarters, is given to the constable, to enable him to correct any error made in distributing the men, at the first billeting.

FOR the sums above mentioned the publicans may at their option either board the non-commission officers and soldiers, or find them fire, candle, vinegar, salt, and five pints of either small beer or cyder, with utensils for dressing their victuals gratis; of this they are to give notice; but recruiting parties and the recruits by them raised, or troops on a march, they are obliged to board.

THE commanding officer may, for the benefit of the service, exchange

change one man for another at any of the quarters in the same place; which man so exchanged, the constable is obliged to billet.

ANY officer taking, or suffering any one to take money to excuse quartering soldiers in any house liable by the act, is to be cashiered and rendered incapable of holding any military employment. No justice holding a military office, can be concerned in billeting soldiers.

NOTE, the houses subject to the quartering of soldiers, are, livery stables, alehouses, victuallers, and the houses of persons selling wine by retail, to be drunk in their own houses, or places thereunto belonging, except tavern keepers being freemen of the company of vintners in London, admitted before the year 1757, or such as have, and shall be afterwards admitted in right of patrimony or apprenticeship.

THE military rewards of ancient times were generally donations of land, according to the rank of the person to be rewarded; the estates so granted were held by military services: William the Conqueror, soon after his accession to the crown, was extremely profuse in his grants of lordships and manors to most of his Norman followers, dividing among them great part of the possessions of those English Barons, who had sided with Harold against him.

THE unsettled and turbulent reigns of many of the succeeding kings, with the broils between them and their barons, both furnished employment for soldiers, and a sufficient number of forfeitures wherewith amply to gratify them.

IN process of time, as the value of lands became better known, and government more settled, military rewards of lands were neither so great nor common, but then they were eked out by honors; such as being made a banneret, or having additions to their armorial bearings; a matter in those days of no small estimation; and although the long and bloody dispute between the houses of York and Lancaster, caused many of the great estates of this kingdom

dom frequently to change their proprietors, yet the guerdons of that time seem to have been either annuities, or presents of small sums of money.

IN the reign of King Edward IV. we find two grants to private soldiers for their good behaviour and sufferings; the first, one John Sclatter, to whom that king granted an annuity of four marks for the loss of his hand at the battle of Wakefield, payable out of the rent of a mill, called Lownes Mill; the other to Rauf Vestynden, of an annuity of ten pounds per annum, by letters patent under the great seal, till rewarded with an office, "for the good and agreeable service which he did unto us, (says the patent) in beryng and holdyng of our standard of the black bull, at the batayl of Sherborne, in Elmett. (k)

By the statute of the 43d of Queen Elizabeth, the majority of the justices of the peace in their Easter sessions had power to charge every parish toward a weekly relief of maimed soldiers and mariners, so that no parish paid weekly above ten-pence, nor under two-pence; nor any county, which consisted of above fifty parishes, to pay above 6d. one parish with another; which sums so taxed, were to be assessed in every parish by the parishioners, or (in default) by the church-wardens and constables, or (in their default) by the next justice or justices of peace.

THE constables and church-wardens of every parish, had power to levy the tax of every person refusing to pay it, by distress and sale; and (on their default) the said justice or justices next adjoining.

THE tax being thus levied, the constables and church-wardens to deliver it quarterly, (ten days before every quarter-session) to the high-constable of their division, who were to deliver it over to the treasurers of the county at the same quarter-sessions.

(k) ROTT. Parl. in ann.

THE treasurers to be subsidy-men, viz. of 10*l.* in land, or fifteen pounds in goods, and not to continue in their office above one year, rendering up their accounts yearly at Easter sessions, or within ten days after to their successors.

THE officer, his executors, &c. that fails in payment of the sums levied, to forfeit, viz. the church-wardens or constables, 20*s.* and the high constable, 40*s.* which the treasurers had power to levy (by distress and sale) in augmentation of their stock.

THE treasurer, (or his executor, &c.) that had been negligent to execute his office, or to render an account within the time above limited, to be fined by the justices of the peace in their session, 5*l.* at least.

THE maimed soldier or mariner who was prest, to repair, (if he was able to travel) to the treasurer of the county where he was prest; if he were not prest, then to the treasurer of the county where he was born, or where he last dwelt by the space of three years, at his election; but if he was not able to travel, then to the treasurer of the county where he landed.

HE was to bring to any of the treasurers aforesaid, a certificate under the hand and seal of the chief commander, or of the captain under whom he had served, containing the particulars of his hurts and services; which certificate was to be also allowed by the muster-master, or the receiver-general of the muster-rolls, under one of their hands.

UPON such a certificate, the treasurers aforesaid might allow him relief to maintain him until the next quarter-session, at which the more part of the justices might allow him a pension, which the treasurers were to pay him quarterly, until it was revoked or altered by the said justices; and this allowance to him that had not borne offices, might not exceed 10*l.* to an officer under a lieutenant 15*l.* to a lieutenant 20*l.*

WHEN souldiers or mariners arrived far from the place where they were to receive relief; the treasurers to give them relief and testimonial, whereby they might pass from treasurer to trea-

surer, until they came to the place required. And this to be done upon the bare certificate of the commander and captain, although they had not as yet obtained any allowance thereof from the said muster-master, or receiver-general of the muster-rolls.

THE treasurers to register the receipts and disbursements, and enter the names of the parties relieved, and also the certificate, by warrant whereof the disbursements were made; the muster-master also, or receiver aforesaid, to register the names of the parties, and the certificates by him allowed; and the treasurer returning, or not allowing the muster-master's certificates, thereupon to subscribe or endorse the cause of his non-allowance.

JUSTICES of peace in session have power to fine a treasurer that wilfully refuseth to give relief, which any two of them (appointed by the rest) may levy by distress and sale of goods.

A SOULDIER or mariner that begs, or counterfeits a certificate, to suffer punishment as a common rogue, and to lose his pension if he had any.

THE surplusage of this contribution to be employed by the more part of justices in sessions upon charitable uses, according to the statutes made for the relief of the poor, and punishment of rogues.

IN corporations, the justices there to put this act in execution, and not the justices of the county, and were liable to fines as well as other justices, if they misused their power therein, and might appoint a collector of this tax, who should have the power, and be subject to the penalties limited by this act, to high constables of the counties.

THE forfeitures accruing by this act, to be employed as the surplusage abovesaid, or otherwise kept in augmentation of the stock, as the major part of the justices in session should direct.

WHEN out of the county where the party was prest, a fit pension could not be satisfied; it was to be supplied by the counties where

where he was born, or where he last dwelt by the space of three years.

THIS act not to prohibit the city of London to make a tax, (if need require) differing from that above limited; so that no parish paid above 3s. weekly, nor above nor under 12d. weekly one parish with another. This act, (l) according to Blackstone is still in force.

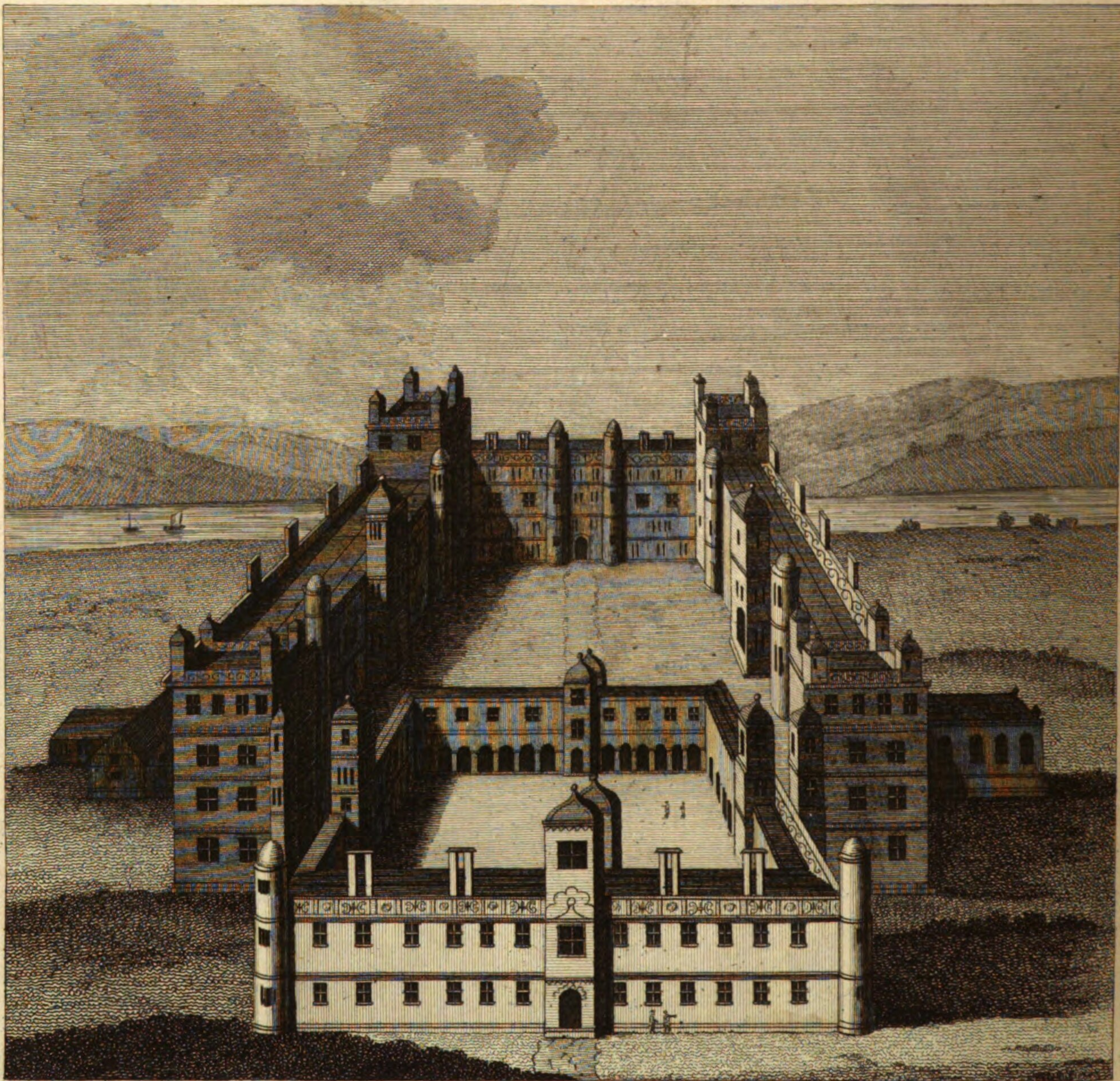
DURING the troubles in the reign of Charles I. this ordinance was made by the parliament for the relief of their maimed soldiers, &c. (m)

MONDAY, March, 6th 1643. Whereas diverse well affected persons have gone forth in the army raised by the parliament, for the defence of the parliament, religion, lives and liberties of the subjects of England, and in fight have received diverse wounds and maims in their bodies, whereby they are disabled to relieve themselves by their usual labours, and diverse others have lost their lives in the said service, whereby they have left their wives and children destitute of relief to support and sustain them; the lords and commons assembled in parliament, taking the same into their pious and charitable consideration, and having relieved diverse of them here at London, with some small relief for their present subsistence; but finding that that course cannot be held for any continuance of time without many inconveniences, they have thought fit, and do hereby ordain, that every parish within the kingdom of England, wherein any such persons, either maimed or slain, did last inhabit before their going forth into the said service, shall raise a competent stock of money, by way of assessment upon the inhabitants of the several parishes, for the relief of the said maimed soldiers, widows and fatherlesse children of the slain persons; and that the church-

(l) WINGATE'S Abridgement of the Statutes. || (m) SEE RUSHWORTH.

wardens, collectors for the poor, constables, tything men, or any two of them, within any of the said severall parishes, shall hereby have power and authority to asseſſe, levie and collect, so much upon the severall inhabitants of their severall parishes, as they in their discretions shall think fit and necessary, for the relief of the said maimed souldiers, widows, and fatherlesse children, and to distribute the same, according to the severall necessities of the said poor people; and shall once every year, at the severall quarter sessions, holden for the county or for any borrough or town corporate, that hold any sessions, wherein such asseſſment or collection is to be made, and in their particular accounts, both of their asseſſments, collections, and disbursements, there to be recorded. And if any shall refuse to pay according to the said asseſſment, the said asseſſors shall hereby have power to distrain the goods or chattels of all such persons as shall so refuse, for the satisfaction of the said asseſſment, and shall and may certifie the names to the committee of the house of commons for examinations, who shall have power to send for them as delinquents; and to the end that the deceit which may be endeavoured in the due prosecution of this ordinance may be prevented, it is further hereby ordained that all such soldiers, who have been maimed in the service of the parliament aforesaid, as also all such widdows and fatherless children, whose husbands and fathers have been slain in the said service, or shall die of any hurt received in the said service, shall bring unto the said asseſſors a certificate under the hand of the colonell, or under the hand of some other commander, or clerk of the band of that regiment, wherein the said souldiers, or slain persons, did formerly serve, of the truth of their being maimed or slain in the said service, which shall be a sufficient warrant for the said asseſſors to make and levie such asseſſments as aforesaid.

By the statute of the 12th of King Charles II. chap. 16, all officers and soldiers who were under the command of the captain general of the king's forces, on the 25th of April, 1660, and had not since
deserted



Published June 27. 1788. by J. Hopper.

Chelsea College as Originally intended.

deserted the service, or refused to take the oaths of supremacy and allegiance, might exercise any handicraft or trade connected with manufactures, in manner following; viz. such as had been apprentices might exercise such trades as they were bound to, though they served not out their time, with like immunities as if they had, and all others, such trades as they were apt and able for, in the towns and places within the several counties where they were born; and if impleaded or indicted for the same, they might plead the general issue, and should have double costs, if a verdict passed against the prosecutor; or if he was nonsuited or discontinued. Judges and jurors were to take notice of this act.

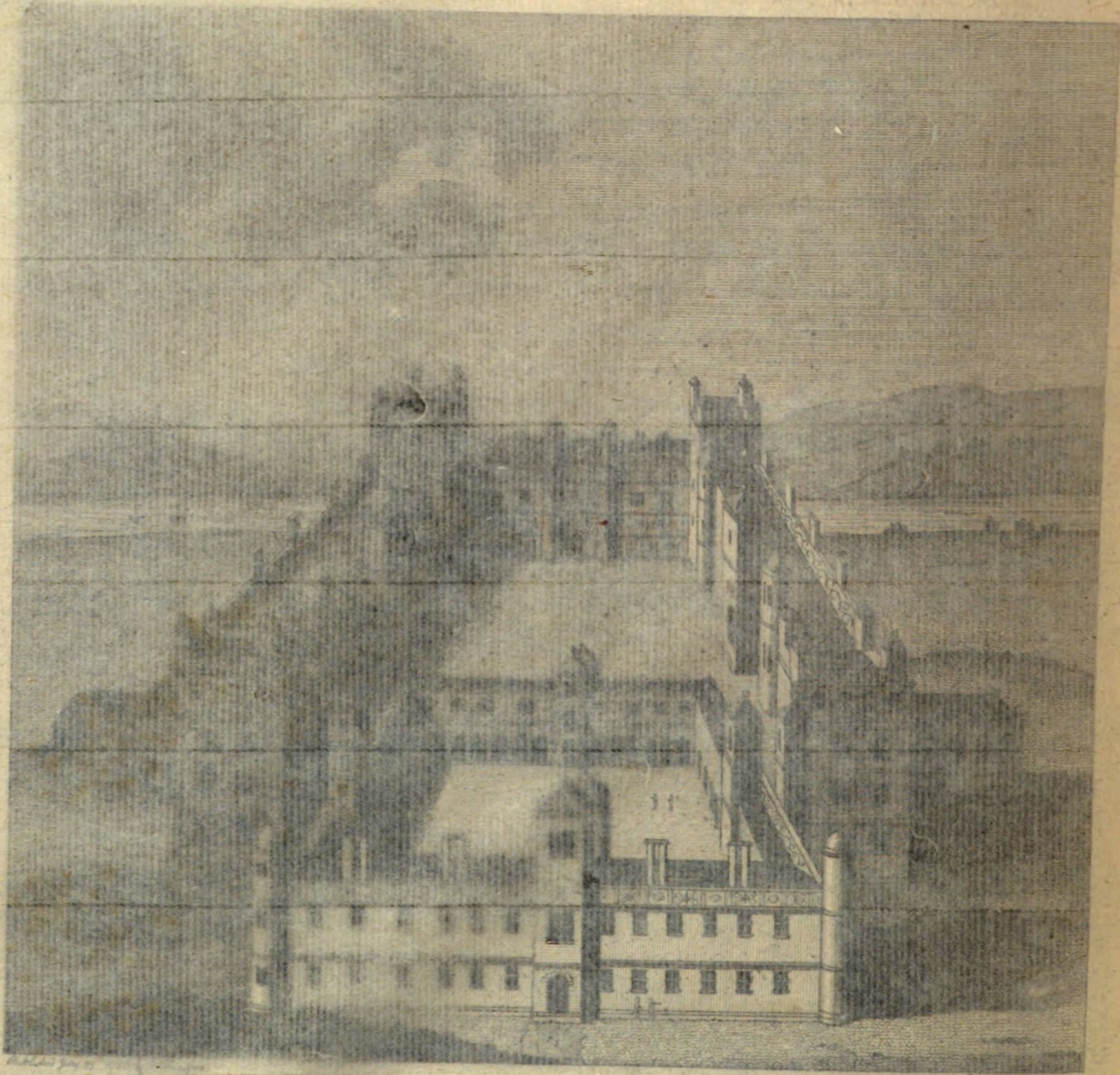
THE service aforesaid was to be proved by a certificate under the hand and seal of some field-officer, and two commission-officers of the regiment where the party served, or some general officer of the army, certifying his knowledge of such service; the said certificate to be proved by one witness, or for default of such certificate, the service to be proved by the oaths of two witnesses.

IF any person produced a false certificate, he was to suffer imprisonment, not exceeding six months, and to lose the benefit of this act. Another act was passed in the 13th year of this reign, for the relief of such maimed soldiers and officers as had served King Charles I. in his wars.

FOREMOST among the military rewards of modern times stands Chelsea College or Hospital, and the out-pensions from that establishment; institutions that do honor to the founder, and to the nation, and by holding out to our soldiery the prospect of a comfortable retirement in their old age, encourage them to encounter death, wounds, hardships, fatigues, and the ravages of unwholesome climates, for the service of their king and country.

THIS building stands on the northern bank of the river Thames, and was originally begun by King James I. in the fifth year of his reign, for a college, to consist of a number of learned divines,

who



Delva College as Originally intended.

deserted the service, or refused to take the oaths of supremacy and allegiance, might exercise any handicraft or trade exercised about manufactures, in manner following; viz. such as had been apprentices might exercise such trades as they were bound to, though they served not out their time, with like immunities as if they had; and all others, such trades as they were apt and able for, in the towns and places within the several counties where they were born; and if impleaded or indicted for the same, they might plead the general issue, and should have double costs, if a verdict passed against the prosecutor; or if he was nonsuited or discontinued. Judges and jurors were to take notice of this act.

THE service aforesaid was to be proved by a certificate under the hand and seal of some field-officer, and two commission-officers of the regiment where the party served, or some general officer of the army, certifying his knowledge of such service; the said certificate to be proved by one witness, or for default of such certificate, the service to be proved by the oaths of two witnesses.

IF any person produced a false certificate, he was to suffer imprisonment, not exceeding six months, and to lose the benefit of this act. Another act was passed in the 13th year of this reign, for the relief of such maimed soldiers and officers as had served King Charles I. in his wars.

FOREMOST among the military rewards of modern times stands Chelsea College or Hospital, and the out-pensions from that establishment; institutions that do honor to the founder, and to the nation, and by holding out to our soldiery the prospect of a comfortable retirement in their old age, encourage them to encounter death, wounds, hardships, fatigues, and the ravages of unwholesome climates, for the service of their king and country.

THIS building stands on the northern bank of the river Thames. and was originally begun by King James I. in the fifth year of his reign, for a college, to consist of a number of learned divines, who

who being amply furnished with books, and all other necessaries and conveniencies of life, and exempt from all worldly cares, might devote their whole time and abilities to the study and teaching of controversial divinity, especially those points in dispute between the churches of England and Rome; and be able, not only to convince the deceived, but also to establish the timorous and doubting in the principles held by the protestant churches; for this purpose, the king appointed and incorporated the following provost and fellows, by the title of King James's College, in Chelsea:

Mathew Sutcliff, Dean of Exeter, Provost.

John Overal, Dean of St. Paul's.

Thomas Norton, Dean of Winchester.

Richard Field, Dean of Gloucester.

Robert Abbot

John Spenser

Miles Smith

William Covitt

John Howson

John Layfield

Benjamin Charriort

Martin Fotherby

John Boys

Richard Bret

Peter Lilly

Francis Burley

Doctors of Divinity.

William Hellier, Archdeacon of Barnstable.

John White, Fellow of Manchester College.

William Camden Clarencieux,

John Haywood, Doctor of Law,

Historians.

THIS corporation he endowed by his letters patent, with the reversion of certain lands in Chelsea, then under lease to Charles earl

earl of Nottingham, in which was thirty years to come, and authorized them to receive of his loving subjects, lands not exceeding in the whole, the yearly value of 3000*l.* and it being thought by many judicious persons, that to bring water into London would produce a great and lasting revenue; his majesty likewise procured an act of parliament, authorizing the corporation of the provost and fellows of Chelsea College, to bring water from the river Lea, to the city of London, by cutting through any man's land they might find necessary, on paying to the proprietor a reasonable compensation for the damage.

THE corporation having agreed with the earl of Nottingham for the term of his lease, at the rent of seven pounds ten shillings per annum; King James himself laid the first stone of the intended College in a piece of ground of six acres, called, Thames Shot, and gave them a licence to take from Windsor Forest, the timber necessary to complete it: the building, however, for want of money, went on slowly; and before an eighth part of the model was executed, it stood still, the whole of their ready money, to the amount of 3000*l.* being expended.

IT remained in this state for some years; but at length, the king to advance so good a work, sent his letters, dated A. D. 1616, to the archbishop of Canterbury, requiring him to stir up all the clergy of his province to contribute towards it; in consequence of which, collections were made in parishes of England, but their produce being but small, was swallowed up by the fees and collectors, so that very little came to the hands of the provost, the building therefore was stopped, and the project of the water-works came to nothing.

ABOUT this time, Dr. Sutcliff the first proctor dying, he as an example to others, bequeathed towards the finishing this work, four considerable farms, viz. Kingston, in Stavarton; Hazard, in Harberton; Appleton, in Churchton; and Kramerland, in Stoke Rivers; all in the county of Devon; besides the benefit of an extent
on

on a statute of 4000*l.* acknowledged by Sir Lewis Stewkley, &c. but his example not being followed, nor any other bequests or donations accruing, the building stopped for the present, and after some time, was laid aside as impracticable, and the estates bequeathed by Dr. Sutcliffe, except the farm called Krameland, were returned to his heirs; the corporation was nevertheless kept up during the life of King James, and three provosts and diverse fellows successively appointed to fill up the vacancies that happened in that time: it continued thus, in a languishing state, till the troubles under King Charles I. when all thoughts of its completion were laid aside: the foundation being represented by the fanaticks as intended for the promotion, rather than the extermination, of the Roman Catholick religion.

AFTER the restoration, King Charles II. wanting a convenient hospital for the reception of sick, maimed, and superannuated soldiers, converted the unfinished buildings of this college to that use; whence it has still occasionally retained the title of "the College:" he accordingly began to erect his royal hospital on this spot, but did not complete it; it was carried on during the short reign of his successor King James II. and finished in the reign of King William and Queen Mary, by that celebrated architect, Sir Christopher Wren.

THE whole structure forms a prodigious range of buildings; the front towards the North, opens into a space planted with trees, and laid out in walks for the pensioners; the South front into a square, beyond which are gardens that extend to the Thames, affording not only a view of that fine river, but also of the county of Surry beyond it; in the centre of this edifice, is a pediment supported by four columns, over which is a handsome turret, and underneath it an opening, which leads through the building; on one side of this entrance is a chapel, which has an altar-piece of the resurrection, painted by Sebastian Ricci: on the other side of the entrance is the hall, where all the pensioners dine in common;

mon; the officers by themselves; in this hall is the picture of King Charles II. on horseback, with several other pieces as large as the life, designed by Verrio, and finished by Cook: the wings which extend East and West join the chapel and hall to the North, and are open towards the Thames on the South: these are near three hundred and sixty feet in length, and about eighty feet in breadth; they are three stories high, and the rooms so well disposed, that nothing can be more perfect: on the front of the inner square is a colonade, extending along the side of the chapel and hall; over which, upon the cornice is the following inscription:

IN SUBSIDIUM ET LEVAMEN EMERITORUM SENIO BEL-
LOQUE FRACTORUM, CONDIDIT CAROLUS II. AUXIT JACO-
BUS II. PERFECERE GULIELMUS ET MARIA, REX ET REGINA,
MDCXC.

IN the midst of the quadrangle is a statue of King Charles II. in the ancient Roman dress standing on a marble pedestal: there are several buildings adjoining, that form two other large squares, and consist of apartments for the officers and servants of the house, for old and wounded officers of horse and foot, and the infirmary for the sick; an air of neatness and elegance appears in all these buildings; they are of brick and stone, and on which side soever they are viewed, there seems a disposition of the parts, perfectly suited to the purposes of its construction, that is, for the reception of a great number of men, and their accommodation, with all necessary conveniencies; the expence of erecting this structure, as it is said, to 150,000*l.* and the extent of the ground is above forty acres.

IN the wings are sixteen wards, having in each ward, twenty-six beds; these afford accommodations for above four hundred men, besides those contained in the other buildings: the pensioners consist of superannuated or disabled soldiers, who have been more than twenty years in the service, or have lost some limb in

an engagement; they are clothed every two years; their uniform is red lined with blue; they are also provided with all other necessaries, diet, washing and lodging; the salary of the governor is 500*l.* per annum, that of the lieutenant-governor 250*l.* the major 150*l.* and the adjutant 100*l.* there are also many other civil and military officers, clerks, domestics and tradesmen; (n) the number of pensioners in the house is in general estimated at about four hundred; these have a weekly allowance of eight-pence for their pocket-money.

As the house is considered as a garrison, a regular guard is mounted every day, and they have prayers morning and evening in the chapel performed by two chaplains, each of whom has a salary of 100*l.* per annum: the physician, comptroller, secretary, deputy, treasurer, steward and surgeon have also 100*l.* a year each, and many other officers have considerable incomes by perquisites; indeed, these serve to swell the expence to its present enormous sum, which is said to amount to near thirty pounds per man for every invalid subsisted there; besides these, there are a great number of out-pensioners, who are allowed 7*l.* 12*s.* 6*d.* a year each; (o) these expences

(n) It is a melancholy consideration that among the many superannuated quarter-masters, serjeant-majors, and serjeants in and about that hospital, none can be found worthy and able to fill up the inferior offices of the house, or to be employed as artificers to it; were there any properly qualified to be found among them, it is not to be credited, that these appointments would be bestowed on gentlemens valet de chambres, or other discharged domestics, which is said to be sometimes the case; as the persons who have the disposal of those places, must well know how few rewards are in store for the inferior ranks of military men, particularly those above-mentioned, and yet it is they who are in a great measure the nerves and sinews of our armies, who bear the brunt of the battle and fatigues of the day; to rob them of their right in this charity is peculiarly cruel, as it is in part the produce of their own money; several of the places, though of humble denomination and small nominal salary, would be considered by many married subalterns, as a noble provision for themselves and families.

(o) THE out-pension was for a long time a very great assistance to recruiting; it being considered,

expences are defrayed by a poundage, deducted out of the pay of the army, with one day's pay stopped from every officer and soldier in the service, and in case of a deficiency, it is supplied by parliament.

THE half-pay is another military reward, seemingly of modern date, as we do not meet with it till after the revolution.

IT was a long contested point, whether the half pay was to be considered as a retaining fee or a reward for past services; a question involving greater consequences than are at first apparent; if it is a retaining fee, it may at any time be withdrawn, and whilst received, would render the receiver subject to military commands, and the articles of war; indeed, so it was interpreted in the year 1715, when some half-pay officers who had engaged in the rebellion of that year, being taken, were tried by a general court-martial for desertion, convicted and executed; this was meant as an example to half-pay officers, and a proof of their being liable to martial law; as

considered, particularly in the North, as a comfortable provision for old age, which every man might obtain by twenty years faithful service; but an injudicious piece of œconomy put in practice about the year 1777, has taken away much of its attractions; this was a general call of all out-pensioners whatsoever, without any exception to want of limbs, or extreme old age: they were indeed, ordered to assemble at the chief towns of their respective counties; but nevertheless, many hundreds of them came thirty and even forty miles from their homes; by which they were obliged to anticipate their pensions, and become beggars the remainder of their lives: such as could not walk, or had no legs, came in carts, wheelbarrows, and upon jack-asses, begging through every village they passed; when arrived at their rendezvous, no subsistence was given them, nor lodgings or quarters provided for them; they were therefore literally dying for want in the streets: after being examined by field-officers appointed for that purpose, a very few were found any way fit for service, and indeed most of those were discharged by the commanding-officers of the regiments to which they were sent; the remainder were dismissed to get home as they could, without subsistence, or quarters by the way, exhibiting such a picture of military misery as cannot be described, but which gave a wound to recruiting that will not soon be healed; application was made by several officers for some allowance to these miserable wretches, but none could be allowed. No reflection is here meant on the parties who promoted or ordered this expedient; it is only mentioned to prevent a like error in future.

otherwise, those gentlemen might with undoubted propriety have been tried by the common law as rebels : (p) on the other hand, if half-pay is a reward for past services, it is by many persons doubted, whether it can with justice be taken away or withheld, any more than the day's wages of a husbandman who has performed the service for which he was hired ; in diverse new regiments, it was stipulated previous to the raising them at the expence of the officers, that they, the officers, on the reduction of their corps, should be entitled to half-pay ; whence it has been supposed, that these gentlemen hold their half-pay by virtue of a contract with the crown, in which they have performed their part : a late determination respecting half-pay officers, by which they are declared not amenable to a court-martial, seems rather to favor the opinion of its being a reward for past services.

THE regulation prohibiting a half-pay officer to hold that allowance with any other employment under government, seems somewhat extraordinary, as an officer on full pay, at the time when his services are likely to be wanted, may hold as many offices as he has interest to obtain.

THE first time we meet with the allowance of half pay is in a vote of the house of commons, Tuesday, 18th day of January, 1697 ; wherein it is resolved, that it is the opinion of a committee

(p) WITH regard to the prisoners taken at Preston, some half-pay officers being found among them, a court-martial was held at Preston, on the 28th of November, to try the following persons as deserters : the Lord Charles Murray, a younger son of the Duke of Athol ; Major Nairn and Captain Lockhart, brother to Lockhart of Cornworth, the author of the *Memoirs of Scotland* ; Nairne and Lockhart had belonged to Lord Mark Kerr's regiment ; Captain Shaftoe to Colonel Frank's ; Ensign Erskine to Preston's ; and Ensign Dalzel to Lord Orkney's : the five first were found guilty, and sentenced to be shot ; but Dalzel was acquitted as to the crime of desertion, upon his proving that he had resigned his commission some time before he engaged in the rebellion ; the Lord Charles Murray was respited till further orders ; but the others were on the 8th of December executed." *Tindal's Continuation of Rapin, vol. 17, page 484. Octavo ed.*

of the whole house, that provision be made for giving half-pay to the commission-officers, his majesty's natural-born subjects of England, of horse, dragoons, and foot, disbanded, and to be disbanded, till the officers shall be fully paid off and cleared, and be otherwise provided for; and it was ordered, that a list be laid before that house of the names of the commission-officers, his majesty's natural-born subjects of this kingdom, who are to have half-pay, in pursuance of the said resolution. (q)

As the officer when disbanded is rewarded with half-pay, so the private soldier in the cavalry has his horse, and an allowance for his sword given him, with fourteen days pay to carry him home; the infantry have likewise the fourteen days pay, and had also when they wore swords, an allowance for them, but swords were in general left off in the battalion companies, ever since the year 1745, and about the year 1762, by the grenadiers; when the militia were first raised, swords were issued to them from the Tower.

THE pensions granted by his majesty to the indigent widows of officers killed, or dying in the service is another military reward: the fund for it arises from the pay of two fictitious men, born on the muster-roll of every troop or company in the army on the British establishment; his majesty's regulations will best describe the particulars of this bounty.

GEORGE R.

Orders and Instructions to be observed in the Payment of our Royal Bounty to the Widows of Officers, who have, or shall be killed, or die in our Service; and likewise in the Payment of the Pension that hath been made, or shall hereafter be made by Parliament, to the Widows of such reduced Officers, who have or shall die on our British Establishment of Half-pay.

I. WE do hereby declare it to be our intention, that the pensions which we are pleased to allow to the said widows, shall be according to

(q) THE half-pay to the different officers is given in the appendix.

the following regulations, by virtue of the commission, by which their respective husbands did receive pay, and not by brevets, except we shall think fit in any case expressly to direct otherwise.

R E G U L A T I O N .

	1.	
To a colonel's widow	50	} per annum.
Lieutenant-colonel's	40	
Major's	30	
Captain's	26	
Lieutenant's	20	
Cornet's or ensign's	16	
Chaplain's	16	
Adjutant's	16	
Quarter-master's	16	
Surgeon's	16	

II. THAT such widows shall be entitled to receive our bounty, intended for widows whose husbands have been killed, or died in our service, as shall be named in a list or lists under our royal sign manual; containing the names and qualitie of all such widows whom we shall think fit objects for this our bounty; with the respective pensions or allowances, which it is our pleasure you shall pay them from time to time as the same shall grow due.

III. THAT every widow who shall hereafter claim our bounty, shall within convenient time, produce to our secretary at war for the time being, a certificate signed by the colonel, or in his absence, by the commanding officer and agent of the respective regiment in which her husband served, certifying to the best of their knowledge, that such widow was the real wife of the officer for whom they certify; in which certificate shall likewise be expressed the time when such officer was killed, or died, and where, in our service, as well as the manner of his death; which, together with the condition and circumstances of the said widow, we

we do hereby require to be laid before us, by our said secretary at war, in order to our signifying to you our directions under our sign-manual.

IV. THAT no other widow shall be hereafter intitled to receive our bounty, until her pretensions have been duly laid before us by our secretary at war, as aforesaid, and we have signified to you our royal approbation thereof, under our royal sign-manual, which shall be your sufficient authority to pay such pension or allowance as shall be hereby directed.

V. THAT you shall not make any payment of this our royal bounty, to any other persons or uses whatsoever, without our particular warrant, authorizing you so to do.

VI. THAT every widow before she receives her pension, shall deliver you an affidavit, sworn to by her before a justice of the peace, or other magistrate, that she is a widow, and hath no other pension or allowance from us, either in Great Britain or Ireland.

VII. THAT as any regiment which contributes towards the fund for this bounty, shall be transferred to our kingdom of Ireland; the widows of any officers, who did belong to such regiment, shall cease to be paid, otherwise than in Ireland.

VIII. AND we do hereby further declare it to be our intention, that the provision which hath been made, or shall hereafter be allowed by parliament, to the widows of such reduced officers, who have, or shall die on our British establishment of half-pay, shall be according to the before-mentioned regulations, in respect to the quality in which their respective husbands did receive pay on our establishment of half-pay at the day of such death.

IX. THAT every widow who shall hereafter claim to be put on the estimate, annually delivered into parliament for widows of such reduced officers of our land forces and marines, who have died upon the establishment of half-pay in Great Britain, shall bring and deliver to our secretary at war for the time being, a certificate, signed by two or more credible persons, that she is the widow
of

of such officer; that he did serve as an officer of the land forces, before the 25th of December, 1716, and that she was married to him before that time; in which certificate shall likewise be expressed, in what quality her said husband died upon the establishment of half-pay, and the time when such officer died; and that to the best of their belief, she has ever since continued the widow of the said officer, without any provision from the government, either in Great Britain or Ireland; and every widow shall likewise make oath before one or more justice or justices of the peace, to the truth of the said certificate.

X. THAT every widow of a reduced officer, before she receives her pension, shall deliver you an affidavit, sworn to by her before a justice of the peace or other magistrate, that her husband did serve as an officer of the land forces, before the 25th of December, 1716; and, that she was married to him before that time; and that she still continues the widow of the said officer, without any provision from the government, either in Great Britain or Ireland.

XI. THAT such widows shall be entitled to receive the pension intended for widows, whose husbands have died on our establishment of half pay, as shall be named in a list or lists under our royal sign manual, containing the names and qualities of all such widows for whom provision hath been made, or shall hereafter be made by parliament; which respective provision it is our pleasure you shall pay them, according to such list or lists as aforesaid.

XII. That timely application be made to the paymaster-general of our guard, garrisons, and land-forces in Great Britain, and forces abroad, to have money sufficient to discharge the ensuing four months payment of the respective pensions, or provisions, directed by us as aforesaid.

XIII. THAT once every four months, (if you should have in your hands a sufficient sum for this use) you shall make payment of the respective pension, or provisions, directed by us as aforesaid,

aforesaid, without any deduction whatsoever; taking a receipt for the same, attested by one witness.

XIV. That in case any widow shall not appear in person to receive her pension or provision, her attorney, shall before payment, produce the like affidavits, sworn to by the said widow, with a certificate under the hand of the minister and churchwardens of the parish where such widow inhabits or resides, that she is living, and to the best of their knowledge still a widow.

XV. THAT as any of the said widows shall die or marry again, their pension or provision shall cease and determine from the time of such death or marriage.

XVI. THAT you carefully observe and follow all such orders, instructions and directions, as we shall at any time give you under our sign manual.

XVII. AND we do hereby declare our further pleasure to be, that 12d. for every 20s. which you shall receive and pay by virtue hereof, or any of our special warrants in that behalf, shall be allowed you for your expences, care and pains in this service, which shall not be deducted out of the pensions or provisions paid by you, but the auditors of our imprests are hereby required and authorised to allow you in your accounts in part of your discharge of the money by you, without any further or other warrant from us in this behalf, or your being subject to render any account for the same.

XVIII. AND for your regular discharge of and from all sums that shall be received and paid by you for this use; we hereby direct and order, that annual accounts be kept by you, of all your receipts and payments for the said service, and rendered upon oath to our auditors of our imprests, or one of them, who are hereby required and authorised to certify and allow the same, upon producing to them, or one of them, our orders or warrants for the payments made by you, in pursuance of these our orders and instructions and receipts for the same, under the hands of the parties, or

their attorneys or assigns, whose state or certificate of your accounts, we declare shall be, and be deemed from time to time, a full, sufficient, and final discharge and quietus unto you, for all your receipts and payments, without your making or passing any other or further account to us, in our exchequer, or otherwise, for the same; to all which orders and instructions you are hereby to conform and behave yourself accordingly; and, for so doing, this shall be your sufficient warrant. Given at our court at Hampton-court, this 26th day of July, 1737, in the eleventh year of our reign.

By his Majesty's command,

WILLIAM YOUNGE.

To our trusty and well-beloved

Edward Sainthill, Esq.

BESIDES the national provisions for officers and foldiers before-mentioned, there is, in the city of Hereford, an hospital of private endowment, for superannuated non-commission officers and private foldiers, and ancient servants of good character. It was founded about the year 1614, by Sir Thomas Coningsby, of Hampton Court, in the county of Hereford, on the site and out of the ruins of the convent of Black Friars.

THIS fraternity consists of a corporal, chaplain and ten servitors. Their weekly subsistence four shillings and tenpence in money, besides bread and beer. The corporals and servitors ought to be resident in the hospital, and when regularly admitted, cannot be displaced but for some crime. The vicar of Bodenham for the time being, is always chaplain; his stipend is 30l. per annum.

THE qualifications of the persons to be admitted as servitors are many, and relate to the county, service and profession. As to the first, they must be natives of Shropshire, Herefordshire or Worcesterhire: their profession military, either by sea or land, for three years at least; their service seven years in one family.

OTHER

OTHER qualifications are necessary for their continuance after admission, these chiefly relate to good morals. If any person be guilty of immorality, he is first to be admonished by the corporal and chaplain; for the second offence his provisions are withdrawn, and for the third he is expelled.

THE visitatory power is vested in the commander, owner in fee of Hampton Court, who has the power of removing offenders after such previous course taken as is before directed, and not otherwise, and to nominate others in their room.

THERE is likewise a visitatory power vested in the Bishop of Hereford for the time being, and of the justices of assize in their circuit, which takes place when the commander neglects to remove by virtue of his own power, such members as are guilty of immorality, proved by two lawful witnesses before the chief magistrate of the city of Hereford: they have also authority to see that the intentions of the founder are complied with by the trustees or possessors of the lands; but, to the honour of the commanders, these last-named visitors have not been troubled for a long series of years; the rules and institutions established by the founder having been invariably observed.

IT is somewhat remarkable, that this is almost the only private endowment by which the soldier is benefited; whilst there is scarce any other profession or trade, but some successful member of their vocation has provided a comfortable retreat for a few of his ancient and indigent brethren. No reflection is hereby meant to the military gentlemen, who have every essential disposition requisite for doing the like, except the means; the profession of arms being so far from enabling even those of high rank to found hospitals, that it requires great œconomy to prevent their families becoming candidates for admission into them.

MILITARY punishments are divided into capital, loss of member, corporal, pecuniary, degradatory, cashiering, imprisonment, suspension and reprimand: of these some affect commissioned officers

ficers alone; some commissioned and non-commissioned officers and soldiers; and others the non-commissioned officers and soldiers only.

OF ancient capital punishments I find only three; these were, beheading, hanging and drowning: two of them, namely beheading and hanging, occur in several of the ordonnances of war; we meet with drowning in the charter of King Richard I. only. (r)

IN many instances, where a corps or a considerable body of men were guilty of a crime for which the established punishment was death, to prevent too great a weakening of the army, the delinquents were decimated, that is, only every tenth man was taken; the common mode of decimation was this, a number of billets equal to that of the body to be decimated, were put into a helmet, every tenth billet being marked with the letter D. or some other character signifying death. The helmet was then shaken, in order to mix them, and the soldiers filing off singly from the right, passed by the commanding officer, before whom, on a table, stood the helmet: as they passed each drew a billet and presented it to an officer placed to receive them. If the billet had the fatal mark, the soldier was seized and marched into the rear, if it proved a saving one, he continued his march, and fell in with the other men that had passed before him.

SOMETIMES corps were decimated by ranks, the right hand man of each rank being from his post devoted to suffer; the reason given for this determination, which, indeed, is not a very good one, was this; "that as the right of every rank was a post of honour, it became the peculiar duty of the occupiers thereof, to shew a good example." An officer deputed for this duty, went along each rank to the left, counting and turning out every tenth man; so that in fact, this might as well be called decimating by files, as by ranks.

(r) SEE page 59, vol. ii.

IN cases where the number of offenders was smaller, or where only a few were condemned to suffer for examples sake, the whole were ordered to cast dice on the drum head, and their names and the number they threw were noted by the provost-martial, as many as it was settled should suffer, were then taken from among those who had thrown the lowest numbers, if any two happened to throw the same number, they threw again to settle the precedency between them. From a manuscript in the British Museum it appears, that this method of casting dice was practised in Ireland in the reign of King William III.

AT present, and for at least forty years last past, the only capital punishments in use in the British Army in Europe (s) have been shooting and hanging, the manner of performing the first of these executions is generally as follows.

THE royal approbation of the court-martial being notified to the commanding officer of the corps to which the criminal belongs, and the time when it is to be put in execution being specified, an execution party is named, composed of pardoned deserters or persons guilty of the same offence for which the party is to suffer, or if there are no men under these predicaments, the party is taken from the men next for duty, as they stand on the common roster, and a steady non-commission officer is chosen to command them. The prisoner is then brought from the provosts, with his hands tied behind him, attended by the chaplain of the regiment, and followed by the execution party, in this manner he is led along the line guarded by a detachment of the regiment to which he belongs, or by one from the pickets of the army. Sometimes when there

(s) IN the East Indies, the company's troops frequently inflict the sentence of death, by shooting the criminal from the mouth of a field piece to which he is bound, his breast opposite the muzzle; this is both a military and a merciful death: I think, but am not certain, that it was adopted by Sir Eyre Coote, and used by him on some of the king's troops.

are only a few regiments in the camp, barracks, or quarters, they form a semi-circle at the place of execution, to which the prisoner is brought immediately without form.

ON his arrival at the place of execution, after some short prayers a cap or handkerchief being drawn or tied over his eyes, he kneels down, and the execution party make ready, moving up within about six or seven yards of him, and on a signal given by him, two thirds of them present and fire; if he should not be killed, as has sometimes been the case, the reserve step up close to him and put him out of his misery. All the troops then march by the body, that by the example they may be deterred from a like offence. The recruits in particular are generally made to file off singly close to it.

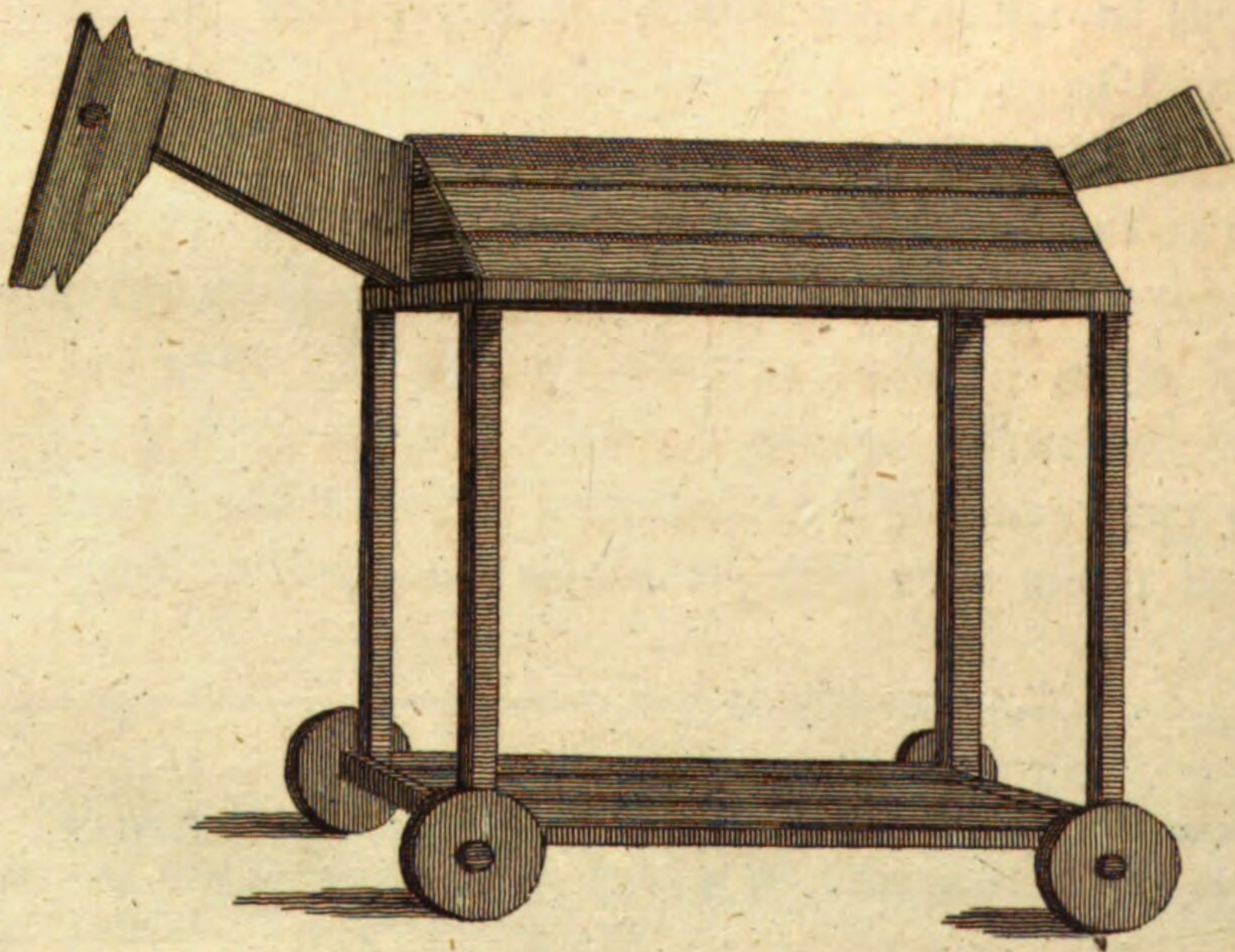
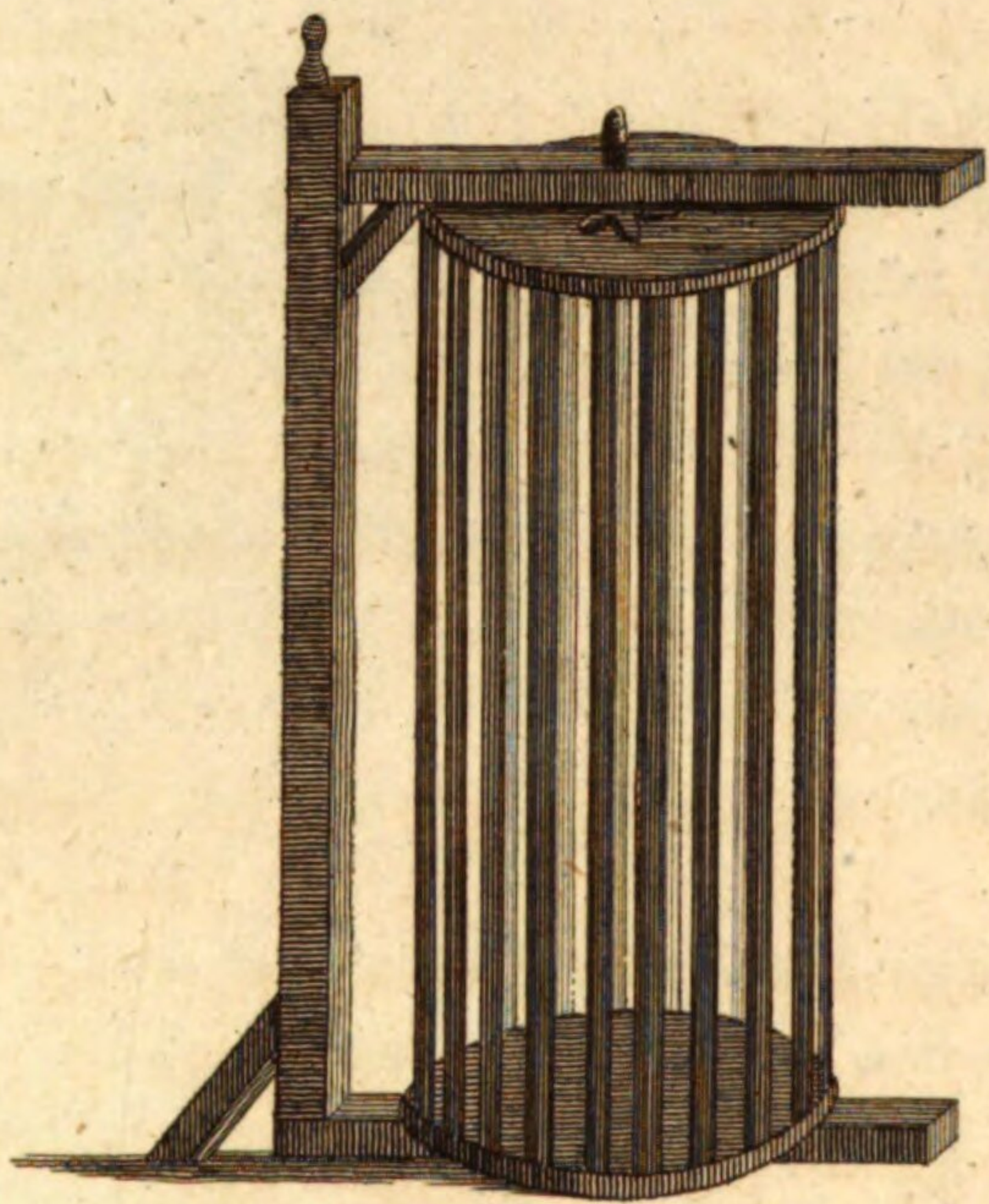
HANGING is generally performed on a kind of portable gallows, which is set up for the occasion, and a spike driven into it, so that the sufferer hangs with his feet very near the ground; a small stool being set he stands on it till the cord is fixed by a noose over the spike, and the stool being pulled away he is turned off. In one of the expeditions to the coast of France, the provost's man took his measure so ill, that a grenadier of the 72d regiment who was to suffer for a rape on a woman of seventy, on being turned off just touched the ground with his toes, and was actually after hanging some time in that state taken down, till the spike was driven some inches higher, and then re-hanged. (t)

HANGING is the punishment inflicted upon spies, generally after a short enquiry before a general officer, by whose mandate I have known several executed in Flanders; they were generally hanged on trees on eminences, that they might be seen at a dis-

(t) IN diverse of the ancient ordinances of war particular crimes are punished with drawing and hanging, this was drawing the criminal on a hurdle or sledge, to the place of execution.

血

血



James Sparrow Sc.

Published May 31st 1788 by J. Hooper

MILITARY PUNISHMENTS.

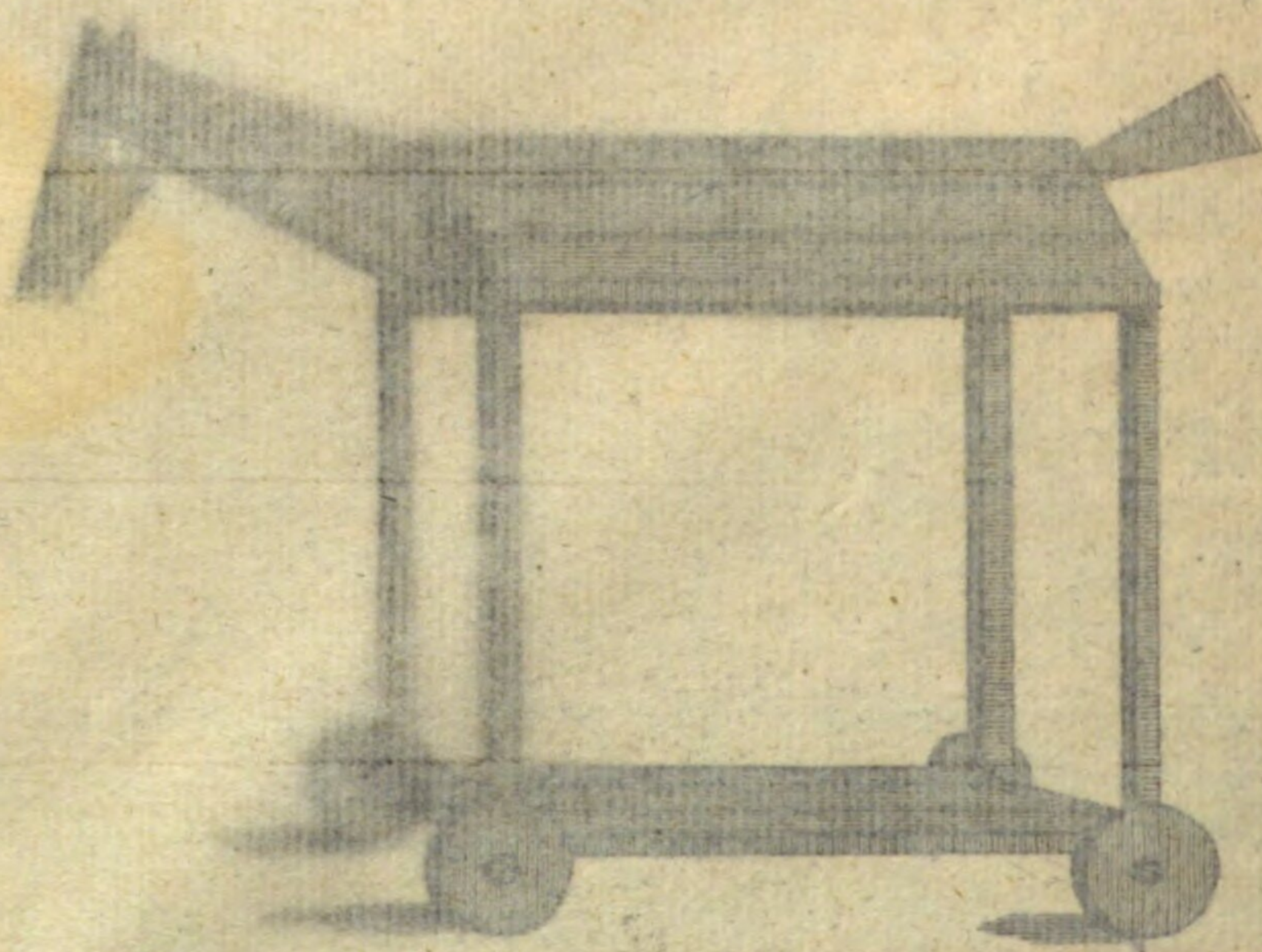
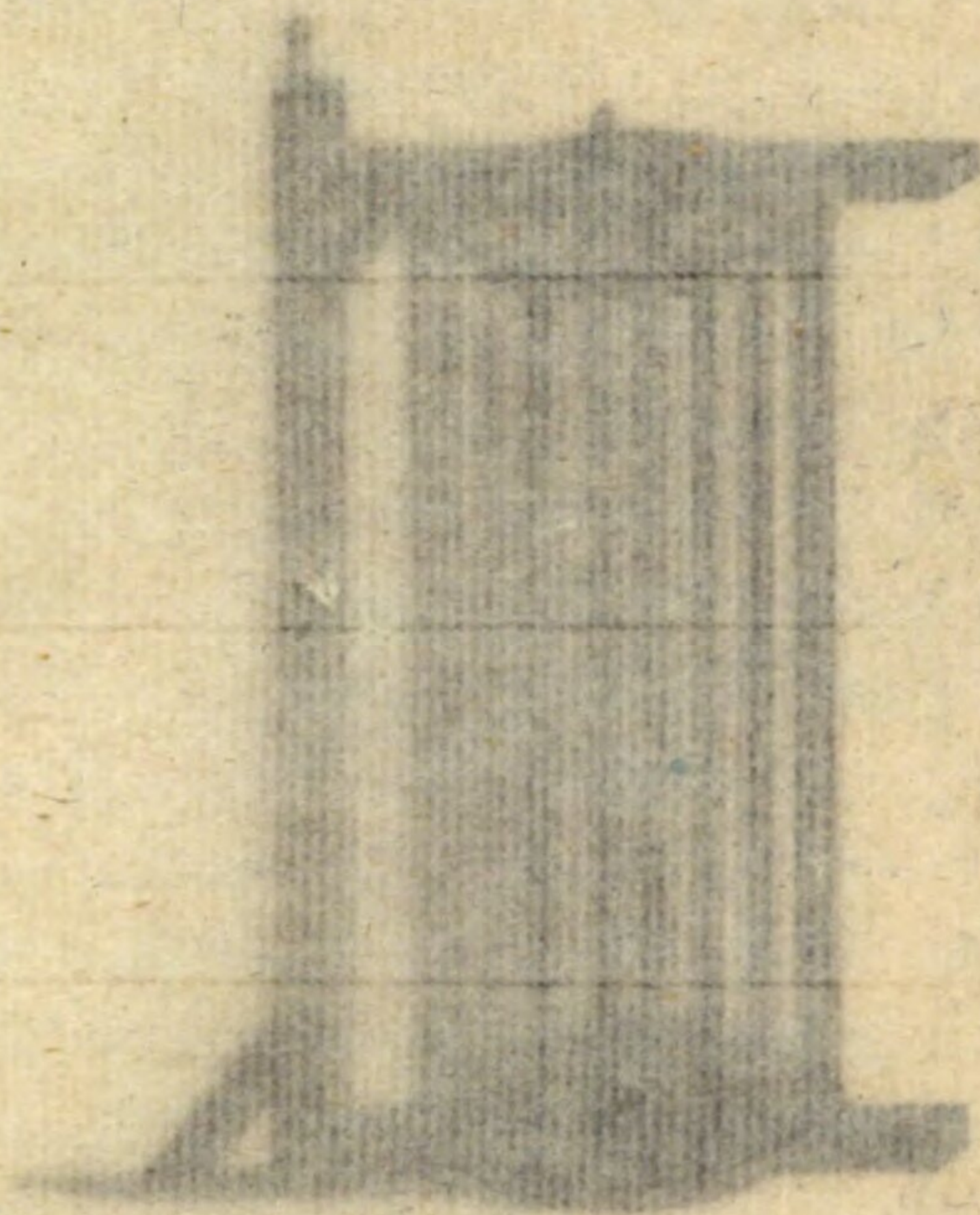
tance, but for the sake of the camp, it was to be allowed, and the bodies were usually left hanging.

The loss of life in war was a military punishment and been long out of use, and is now only known in the military ordinances of war. It is never mentioned by Mong, Khalkha, or in whose character it is treated, that any one was executed by the witnesses of having drawn his knife on his fellow soldier, or of having drawn blood of him, though it is said, the tail of the left ear was a punishment inflicted on soldiers who were guilty of the slightest disturbance in camp or quarters.

RESPECTING corporal punishments it may be mentioned to observe, that they were not in use in the present generation, as at present; private soldiers of the Mong, Khalkha, or other tribes, were punished by beating with a stick, and in the present times having nothing but their hands and feet to be punished corporally. Of corporal punishments there are a great number, but of these only one would be mentioned as an example, that of boring the tongue with a hot iron, for which a punishment that remained in force till the death of the offender.

RIDING the wooden horse was a punishment, and was in use, in different forms. It was made of planks nailed together, and was about eight or nine feet long, and about four feet high. The back of the horse, it was supported by two posts, or staves, about six or seven feet long, placed in a fork, which was made of wood, to complete the resemblance, a head and tail were added. The annexed plate will give a much better idea of it, than can be conveyed by words.

WHEN a soldier or soldiers were sentenced by a military court, or ordered by the commanding officer of the camp, to ride the horse, for both were practised, they were placed on the back with their hands tied behind them, and frequently, to increase the



Published May 31 1888 by J. Harper

MILITARY PUNISHMENTS.

tance, but so far out of the camp, as not to be offensive; their bodies were usually left hanging.

THE loss of limb or member as a military punishment has been long out of use, nor is it frequently found in the ancient ordinances of war. It is indeed mentioned by King Richard I. in whose charter it is enacted, that any one convicted by lawful witnesses of having drawn his knife to strike his fellow soldier, or of having drawn blood of him, should lose his hand; the loss of the left ear was a punishment allotted to archers on foot, boys, servants to the soldiers; and other followers of the army, for riots or disturbances in camp or quarters.

RESPECTING corporal punishments it may be necessary to observe, that they were not so common in our ancient armies, as at present; private soldiers in those days having some property, were punished by forfeitures and fines. Soldiers of the present times having nothing but their bodies, can only be punished corporally. Of corporal punishments, there are a great variety, but of these only one could be inflicted on an officer, this was boring the tongue with a hot iron, for blasphemy, a punishment that remained in force till the reign of Queen Anne.

RIDING the wooden horse was a punishment formerly much in use, in different services. The wooden horse was formed of planks nailed together, so as to form a sharp ridge or angle about eight or nine feet long, this ridge represented the back of the horse, it was supported by four posts or legs, about six or seven feet long, placed on a stand made moveable by trucks; to complete the resemblance, a head and tail were added. The annexed plate will give a much better idea of it, than can be conveyed by words.

WHEN a soldier or soldiers were sentenced by a court-martial, or ordered by the commanding officer of the corps, to ride this horse, for both were practised, they were placed on the back with their hands tied behind them, and frequently, to increase the

the punishment, had muskets tied to their legs, to prevent, as it was jocularly said, their horse from kicking them off; this punishment being chiefly inflicted on the infantry, who were supposed unused to ride. At length riding the wooden horse having been found to injure the men materially, and sometimes to rupture them, it was left off. The remains of a wooden horse was standing on the parade at Portsmouth, about the year 1760.

THE picket was another corporal punishment chiefly used by the cavalry, and artillery, and in the former often inflicted by the order of the commanding officer, without the sentence of a court martial. The mode of inflicting it was thus: a long post being driven into the ground, the delinquent was ordered to mount a stool near it, when his right hand was fastened to a hook in the post by a noose round his wrist, drawn up as high up as it could be stretched; a stump, the height of the stool, with its end cut to a round and blunt point, was then driven into the ground near the post before mentioned, and the stool being taken away, the bare heel of the sufferer was made to rest on this stump, which though it did not break the skin, put him to great torture; the only means of mitigation, was by resting his weight on his wrist, the pain of which soon became intolerable. Soldiers were frequently sentenced to stand on the picket for a quarter of an hour. This, like riding of the wooden horse, has been for some time left off, it having lamed and ruptured many soldiers.

WHIPPING is almost the only corporal punishment now in use, this was formerly inflicted with switches, but for these thirty years at least, except in running the gantelope, with what is called a cat of nine tails, being a whip with nine lashes, of whip cord, each lash notted with nine nots. This punishment is inflicted either by the soldiers or drummers of the regiment, according to the sentence of the court-martial.

THE gantelope was in cases of theft, or some offence that affected the character or interest of the corps, and was practised two ways:
in

in one called running the gantelope, the regiment was formed six deep, and the ranks opened and faced inwards; each man being furnished with a switch, the offender, naked to the waist, was led through the ranks, preceded by a serjeant, the point of whose reversed halbert was presented to his breast, to prevent his running too fast: as he thus passed through the ranks, every soldier gave him a stroke. But this method being found inconvenient, and in many points objectionable, the offender was tied to four halberts in the ordinary way, three being placed in a triangle, and the fourth cross two of them, to keep him on the outside: in this situation the regiment filed off from the right and marched by, when they came near the halberts, a cat was given to the first man, who having given a stroke to the culprit, threw down the cat, and passed on; this was repeated by the whole regiment, each man giving him a lash; this likewise being found objectionable, as degrading soldiers to executioners, has been likewise in a great measure left off, and the infliction of this punishment put into the hands of the drummers, under the inspection of the drum-major, surgeon and adjutant; the first to see the halberts are properly fixed, the cats in order, that each drummer does his duty and is properly relieved after having given twenty-five lashes: the surgeon is to take care that the prisoner does not receive more lashes than he is able to bear, without endangering of his life, or injuring his constitution; and the adjutant to cause the sentence of the court-martial to be properly inflicted, and to oblige the drum-major to make his drummers do their duty.

IMPRISONMENT may in some measure be considered as a corporal punishment, and was formerly inflicted on officers and private men for different crimes and misdemeanors, as may be seen in the different ordonances of war. But since the revolution it has in a great measure, if not totally, been left off with respect to officers; but soldiers are sometimes by the sentence of a court-martial confined for a short time in the black hole, or locked up in a bread

and water house, that is, a place of confinement where they have no other nourishment but bread and water.

PECUNIARY punishments were frequently allotted in our ancient military codes, but at present occur in a very few instances; certain offences are, by the mutiny act, made punishable with fines, but these are mostly of a civil nature, and in addition to some other penalty; as in the instance of an officer convicted of making or procuring false musters, who besides the punishment of cashiering, and being incapacitated to serve his majesty, is also to be fined fifty pounds; an officer embezzling military stores is to be cashiered, and to forfeit an hundred pounds; and any pay-master, &c. detaining in his hands the pay of an officer or soldier for a month, is to be fined an hundred pounds, and discharged from his office; the poverty of the non-commission officer and soldier make fines or other pecuniary punishments in a great measure impossible, there are however one or two instances where they are directed, particularly in cases of a soldier's selling or spoiling any of his arms, clothing or accoutrements, in which cases he may by the sentence of a court-martial be put under stoppages for the replacing them, not exceeding half his pay.

CASHEERING, or as it is now generally spelt, cashiering, mentioned as a punishment, signifies a dishonourable dismissal of an officer or soldier, and in the former admits of three degrees; the first is simply a dismissal of an officer from his employment, by a letter from the secretary of war to him signifying that his majesty has no farther occasion for his services, or by the sentence of a court-martial whereby he is sentenced to be cashiered.

THE second is dismissing an officer from the service, and rendering him incapable of serving for the future in any military capacity; a sentence which seems rather an infringement on the royal prerogative; perhaps a declaration that the court deem him unworthy for the future to hold any such office, might be a more unexceptionable mode of expressing their opinion.

THE

THE third is dismissal with infamy, and degradation from the rank of a soldier and a gentleman; the execution of this sentence is attended with many ignominious circumstances, more terrible to a man of feeling than death itself. A sentence of this kind for cowardice was inflicted in the following manner on an officer of artillery, after the battle of Falkirk, in the rebellion of the year 1745. The line being ordered out under arms, the prisoner was brought to the head of the eldest brigade, completely accoutred, when his sentence being read, his commission was cancelled, his sword broken over his head, his sash cut in pieces and thrown into his face, and lastly the provost-martial's servant giving him a kick on the posteriors, turned him out of the line. Somewhat similar to this is the ceremony of dismissing a soldier sentenced to be drummed out of the regiment with a halter about his neck. The corporal punishment commonly accompanying this sentence being over, and the regiment turned out, with or without arms, the prisoner is brought to the right of it, under an escort of a corporal and six men, with bayonets fixed: the halter is then put round his neck, and frequently a label on his back signifying his crime, a drummer then takes hold of the end of the rope, and leads him along the front, the drums following and beating the rogues march; when they have passed the left, the procession moves to the rear, if in camp, or if in quarters, to the end of the town, where the drummer giving him a kick on the breech dismisses him with the halter for his perquisite.

IN ancient military authors we frequently meet with the term *casheering* applied to private soldiers; this simply meant as has been before observed, a dishonourable dismissal.

DEGRADATION is a sentence inflicted on non-commissioned officers only, who before they can receive any corporal punishment except imprisonment, must be degraded to the ranks, or station of a private soldier. In former times, so late as the reign

of King Charles I. private soldiers for misbehaviour in action were degraded to pioneers.

SUSPENSION for a stated time, is another punishment inflicted on both commission and non-commission officers; during its continuation, commission-officers are generally mulcted of their pay, and the non-commission-officers receive only that of private men; the remainder being given to the hospital.

A REPRIMAND at the head of the regiment, is sometimes ordered by a court-martial, and sometimes only in the presence of the officers of the corps; this is generally given by one of the field officers; the usual terms in which it is given, are something like these: captain, or lieutenant A. B. you have been tried for ———, and are by the sentence of a general court-martial found guilty thereof, and sentenced to be reprimanded at the head of the regiment; the disagreeable task of doing it is assigned to me: I therefore do hereby reprimand you, and hope that it may prevent your falling again into the like error. Non-commission-officers are sometimes though not frequently, ordered to be reprimanded.

IN garrisons where martial-law prevails, the followers of an army are liable to military punishments; one formerly very common, for trifling offences, committed by petit fustlers, Jews, brawling-women, and such like persons, was the whirligig; this was a kind of circular wooden cage, which turn'd on a pivot; and when set in motion, whirled round with such an amazing velocity, that the delinquent became extremely sick, and commonly emptied his or her body through every aperture: the print of it will thoroughly explain its structure.

THE ancient mode of encamping was undoubtedly under tents, which were in use from the most remote antiquity; the camp of King Edward II. in his expedition to Scotland, A. D. 1301, is described in the ancient French poem, entitled, the Siege of Caerleverok, before-mentioned in this work; from it, we have a good idea of an ancient camp; “and the army (says the poet) being drawn

drawn up, and the mareschal having marked out the ground, and assigned to every one his proportion, then might be seen to arise houses of various fashions, built without the assistance of carpenters or masons, and composed of white and dyed linen; there many a cord was stretched, and many a pin driven into the earth, and many a large tree felled to build huts, whose floors within were strewed with leaves, herbs, and flowers, gathered in the woods." From this, we learn that the tents were of different forms, as well as colours, but, whether from inattention to uniformity, or as a distinction of the ranks of their owners, is not certain; we however find, that each officer had his place and proportion of ground; so, that in all probability, some regular form of encampment was observed; it also appears, that besides the tents, there were many wooden huts erected; these probably were for the use of the private soldiers. (u)

FROM several drawings in the British Museum, of tents used by King Henry VIII. it is evident that the encampments of those times were extremely magnificent, (x) and this is farther confirmed by a curious manuscript in the Library of the College of Arms; wherein is given, the dimensions of the royal houses of timber, royal hales, tents and pavillions used by the same king, A. D. 1513, at the sieges of Terwyn and Torney, with those of the chief officers and followers of the court, and the number of carriages

(u) ETANT com fumes rengie
Mareschal orent herbergie
Etout par tout places livreés
Lors veist on maisons ouvrees
Sans charpentiers et sans masons
De mult de diverses facons
De toile blanche et toile-teinte
La et tendue corde meinte

Meinte poisson en terre fichie
Meinte grant arbre a terre trenchie
Por faire loges et feullies
Herbes et flours es bois ceuillies
Dont furent jonchies dedenz.
E lors descendirent nos genz.

(x) SEE the plate of royal tents.

allotted

allotted for transporting them; from whence it appears that barracks or huts were then used as well as tents. (y)

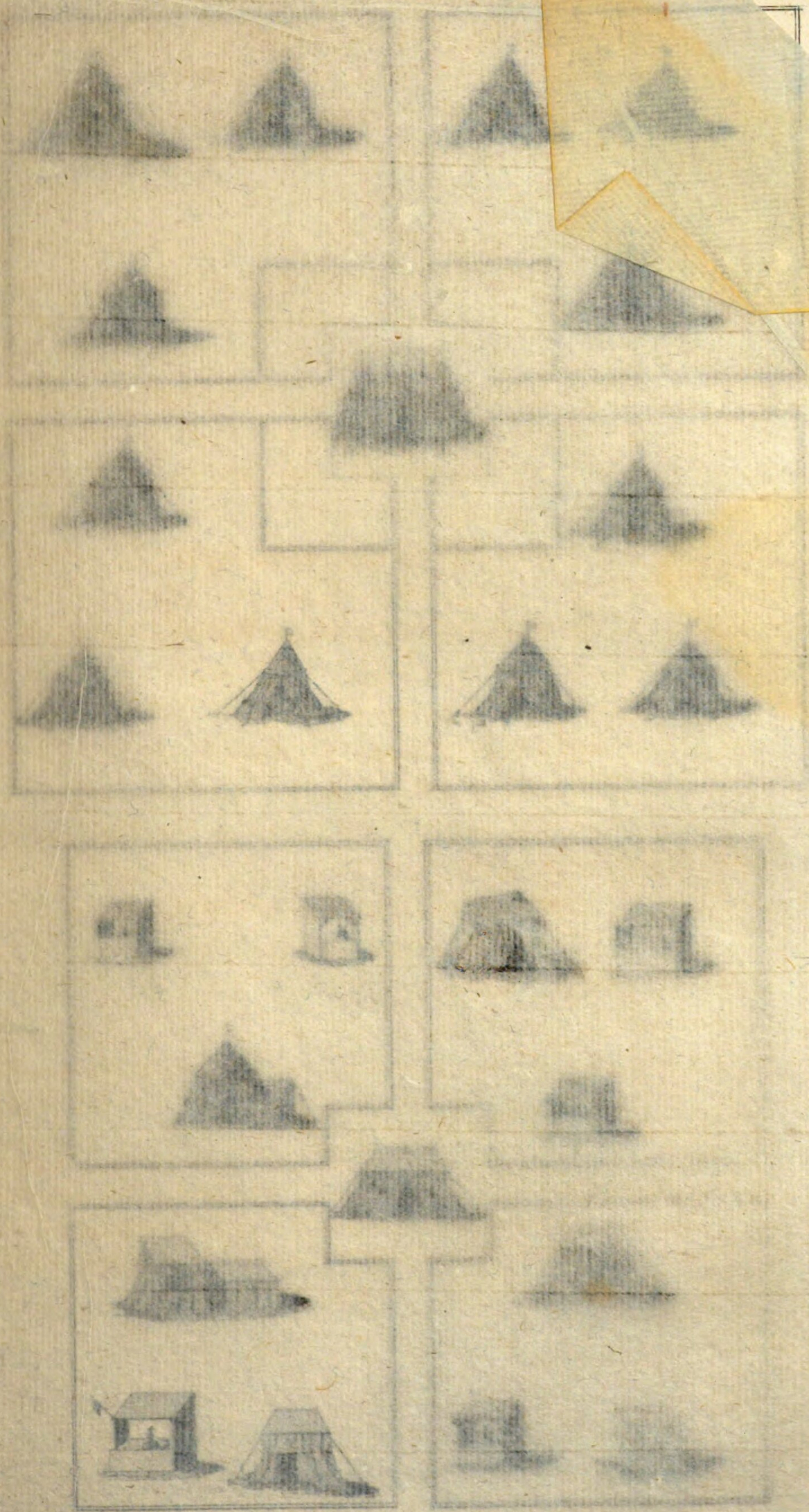
As this manuscript is a great curiosity; I conceive a transcript of it will be agreeable to my readers.

The King's Hales and Tents, in order, with the Lengethe and Bredthe as they wear the Vth Yere of his Grace most noble Reigne, at the Sege of Terwyn and Torney.

For the king's majestie.	{	The house of tymber for the kinge, 12 carryages.	
		The king's lodgeinge - - - 2 carryages.	
		The gallery into the hale, xxx fote longe, x fote brode.	
		The hale xvi fote brode; the stole in the hale, v fote longe, v fote brode.	
		The crosse gallery into the tents, x fote long, and vii fote brode.	
The lord cham- berlin.	{	The tents xx fote a-piece.	
		A hale w ^t a gallery into a tente.	
		The hale xxx fote longe, xv fote wide.	
		The gallery into the tente, xii fote long, vii fote wyde.	
		The tente xxiii fote w ^t the stole in yt. }	A car- riage.
		The lord chamberlain and Mr. Au- miner. (z)	

(y) THIS MS. is marked 2d M. 16. fol. 74.

(z) A HALE or heal, signifies a covering, from the Saxon; and the term to heal, is still used in divers parts of England, for to cover; the bed-clothes are also called healings or hillings; the hale was probably the cover over head of a gallery or passage; a pavillion was of a conical form, supported by a central pole somewhat like a bell tent; the stole was a recess like a boot, for holding a bed, or stowing away baggage.



ANCIENT TENTS, and HUTS.

...from whence it appears that bar-
...as well as tents. (y)

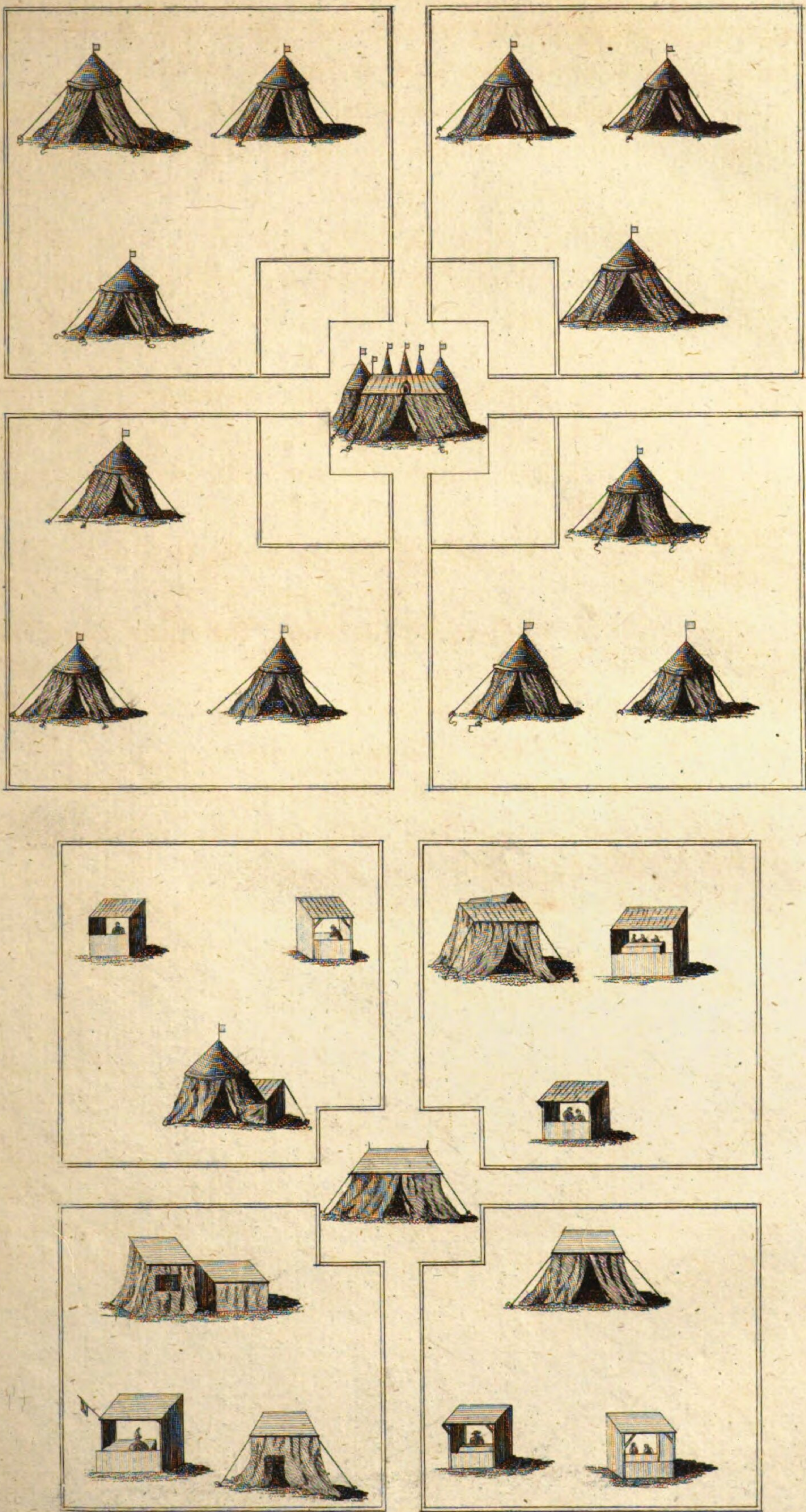
...is a great curiosity; I conceive a tran-
...to my readers.

...and Tents, in order, with the *Lengethe* and *Bredike* as
...the *Grace* most noble Reigne, at the Sege of

	The length of ymber for the kinge, 12 carryages.
	The long lodgeinge - - - 2 carryages.
	The gallery into the hale, xxx fote longe, x fote broad.
	The hale xvi fote brode; the stole in the hale, v fote longe, v fote brode.
	The crosse gallery into the tents, x fote long, and vii fote brode.
	The tents xx fote a-piece.
	A hale w ^t a gallery into a tente.
	The hale xxx fote longe, xv fote wide.
	The gallery into the tente, xii fote long, vii fote wyde.
The lord cham- berlain.	The tente xxiii fote w ^t the stole in yt. } A car-
	The lord chamberlain and Mr. Au- } riage.
	... (z)

(y) This MS. is marked 2d M. 16. fol. 74.

(z) A HALE or heal, signifies a covering, from the Saxon; and the term to heal, is still
used in divers parts of England, for to cover; the bed-clothes are also called healings or
fallings; the hale was probably the cover over head of a gallery or passage; a pavillion was
of a conical form, supported by a central pole somewhat like a bell tent; the stole was a
recess like a niche, holding a bed, or stowing away baggage.



ANCIENT TENTS, and HUTS.

The captain of the gard.	{	A hale with a gallery into a tente.	
		The hale xxx foote longe, xiv fote wyde.	
		The gallery into the tente, ix fote long, vi fote brode.	
		The tente xviii fote w ^t the stole in yt.	
		The captaine of the garde, and the treasurer of the warres.	A carriage.
The aummener.	{	An hale w ^t gallery into a tente.	
		The hale xxx fote long, xv fote wyd.	
		The gallery into the tente xii fote long, viii fote wyde.	
		The tente xxi fote wyde w ^t the stole, in yt his carriage as afore.	
The tresorer of the warrs.	{	An hale w ^t a gallery into a tente.	
		The hale xxx fote longe, xv fote wide.	
		The gallery into the tente, xii fote long, viii fote wyde.	
		The tente xviii fote wyd, w ^t the stole in y ^t his carriage as afore.	
Ffor straunge ambassadors.	{	A hale without a gallery into a tente.	
		The hale xxx fote long, xv fote wide.	
		The gallery into the tente, xii fote longe, viii fote brode.	
		The tent xxi fote wide.	
For the master of the horse.	{	Ffor straunge ambassadors and the garde, a carriage.	
		A galery goinge into two tents.	
		The oon tent xxii fote.	
		The other tente xviii fote w ^t the stole in yt.	
Master of the king's armour w ^t his stufte.	{	The master of the horse, the master of the armourers, a carriage.	
		A galery going into two tents.	
		The oone tente xxii foote.	
		The other tente xviii foote.	
		His carriage as afore.	

For

For the king's gard.	{	Two great hales, xli fote long, xv fote wyde. A storehouse, lx fote longe, xvi fote wide.	
For master of the henge men, and for the king's henge- men.	{	A hale of xxx fote longe, xiv fote wyde. W ^t partitions w ^t in for sundry romes.	
For the clerk of the kychin.	{	A hale of xxx fote long, xiv fote wyde. The clerk of a kychen, The king of armes, The phyficans and furgeons,	} A carriage.
For the kings of armes he- rals and pur- fuivents.	{	A hale of xxx fote long, xiv fote wyde.	
For the phyfi- cians and fer- jeant of the confeffory.	{	A hale of xxiv fote long, xii fote wyde.	
For the fur- geons and their stuffe.	{	A hale of xxx fote longe, xiv fote wyde.	
For the king's trumpet.	{	A hale of xxx foote longe, xiv fote wyde. The trumpeter, Wardrobe of robes, Wardrobe of beddes.	} A carriage.
The ward of robes for the kinge.	{	A hale of xlv fote long, xv fote wyde.	
The king's wardrobe of beddes.	{	A hale of xiv fote long, xv fote wynd.	

For

For the king's ladders. } A hale of xxx fote longe, xv fote wyde.

For the kitchen. A hale.

For the cellars and botteree. } A hale of xxxviii fote longe, xiv fote wyde.

The celler,
The bottre, The house of
The kechen, relafe,
The larder. } A carriage.

For the jewel house an hale, with a pavilion. {
A hale w^t a gallery goinge into a tente.
The hale xxxiii fote longe, xvi fote wyde.
The gallery goinge into the tente xii fote longe,
and seven fote wide.
The tente xviii foote.

The jewell house,
The master of ordennence, } A greate carriage.

For the master of the ordennance an hale with a pavilion, into another hale for ordennance stuff. }
A hale w^t a gallery goinge into a tente.
The hale xxxiii fote longe, xvi fote wyde.
The tente xviii fote.

Ffor the ordennance, a hale of xlv fote long, xv fote brode.

For the pantre, a hale of xxiv fote long, xii fote brode.

The pantry,
The squelery,
The channrie,
The ewere,
The percherhouse, } The confessor,
The cawcery, } A carriage.

For the squ-
lery w^t their
provisions. } A hale of xxiv fote long, xii fote brode.

For the chan-
nery and ewry. } A hale of xxiv fote long, xii fote brode.

The pecher
house. }

The confecf-
torie. } A hale of xxiv fote long, xii fote brode.

The sawcere. }

For the bakehouse, a hale of xxiv fote longe, xii fote wide.

The bakehouse,

The pastry,

The wood yarde,

The landrie,

The secreteries. }

A carriage.

For the officers
of the wood-
yarde. }

For the laun-
dre. }

A hale of xxiv fote long, xii fote wyde.

For the pastre, a hale of xxiv fote long, xii fote wyde.

For the chaplains, a hale of xxx fote long, xiv fote wyde.

The chaplains,

The chapell,

The gentlemen-ushers,

The henchman, }

A carriage.

For the gentlemen-ushers, tents of xx foote.

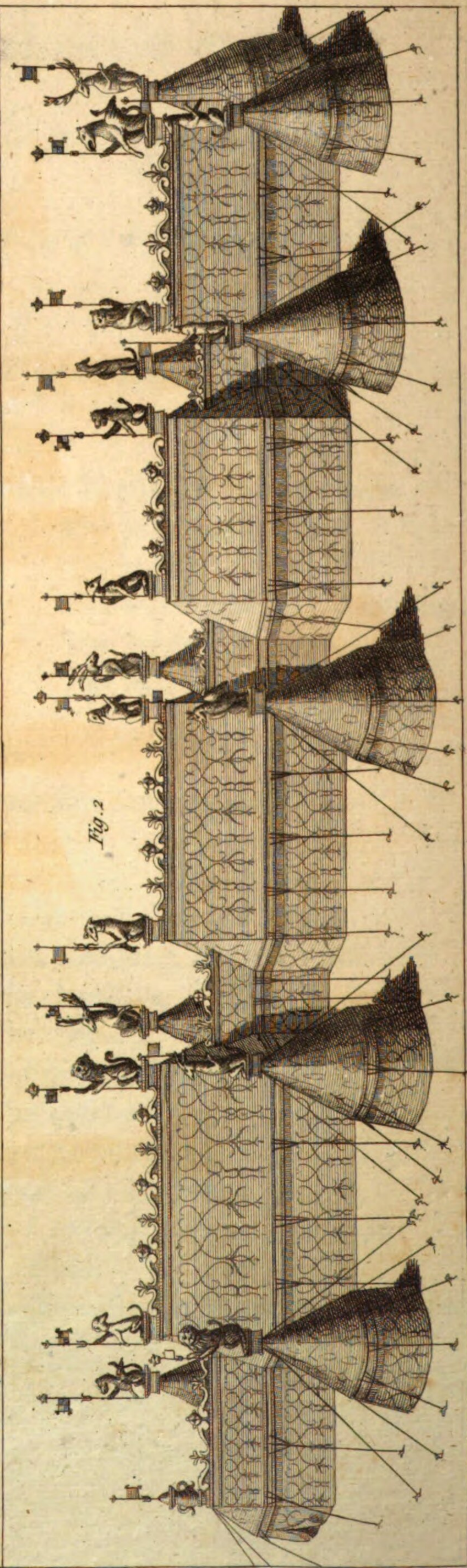
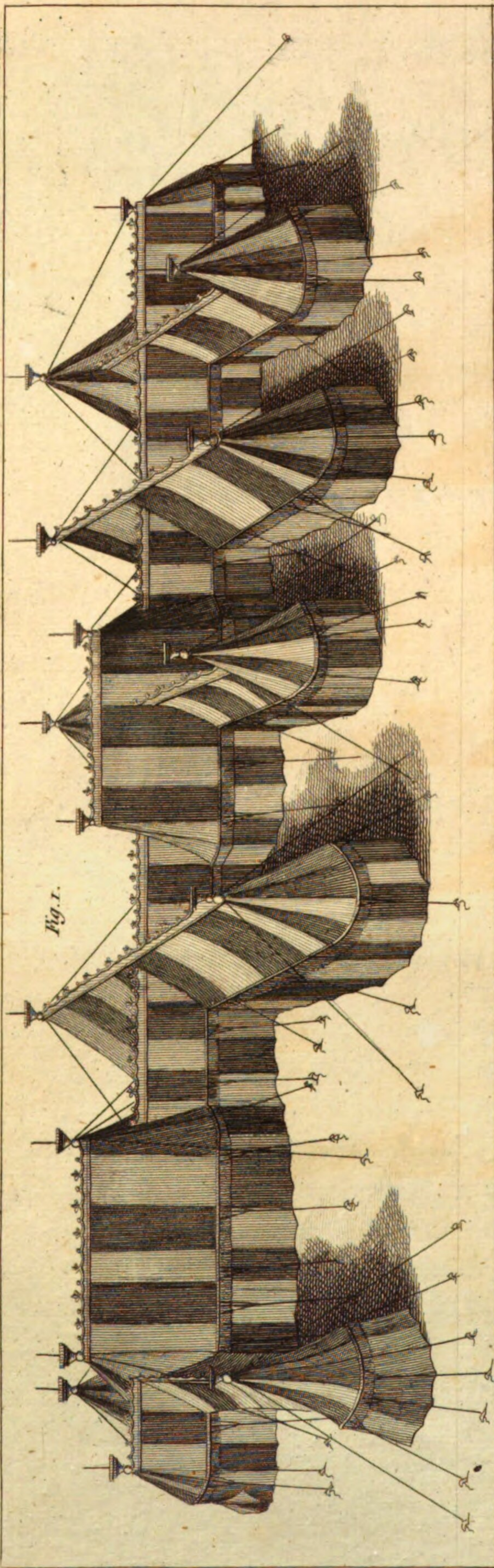
For the groome-porters, a tente of xviii foote.

For secreteries, a hale of xxx fote long, and xv fote wyde.

The stable not yet knowen. Finis.

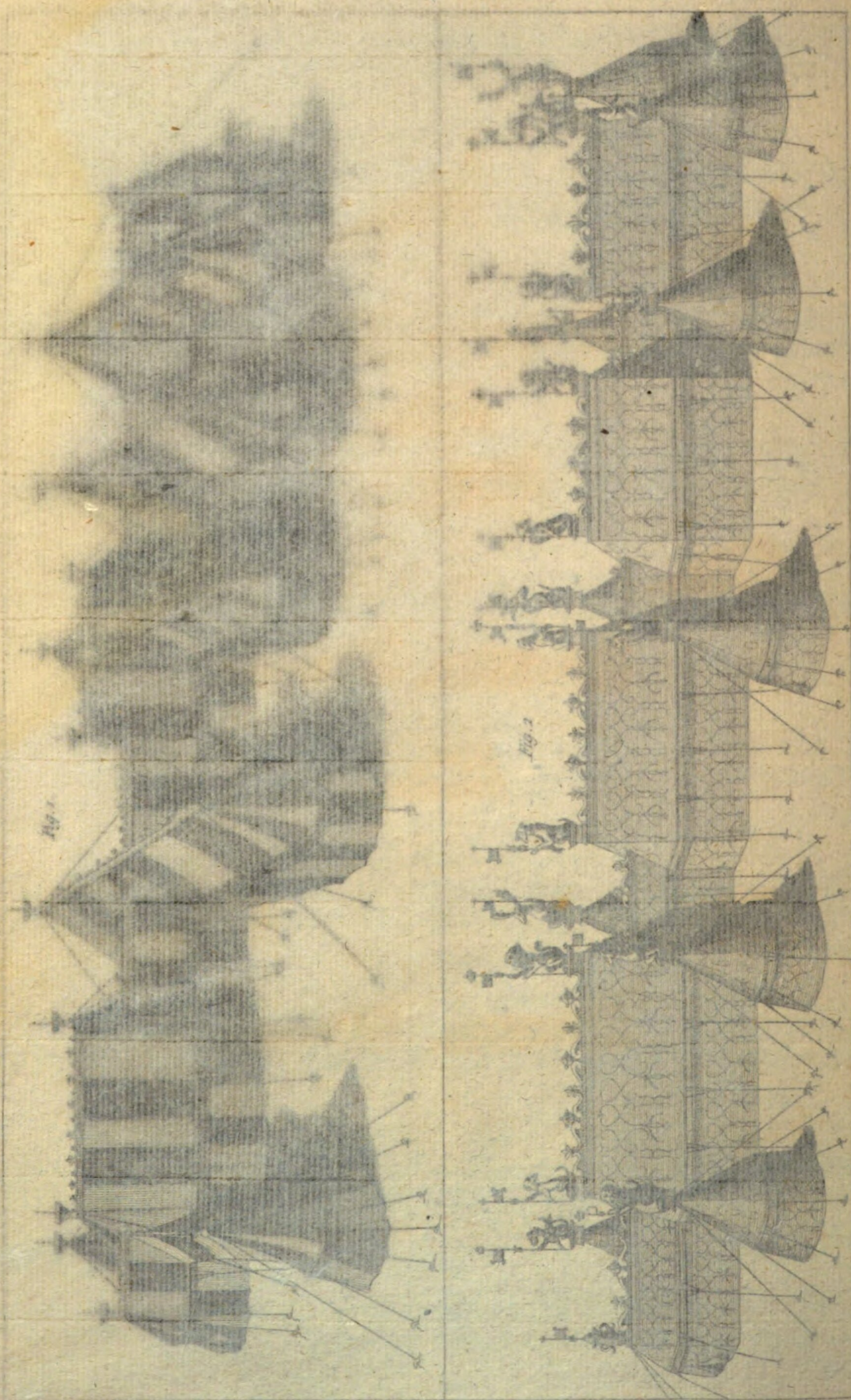
ITEM, iii haies and iii pavillions for the maystrees of the wy-
thell, two carriages.

ITEM,

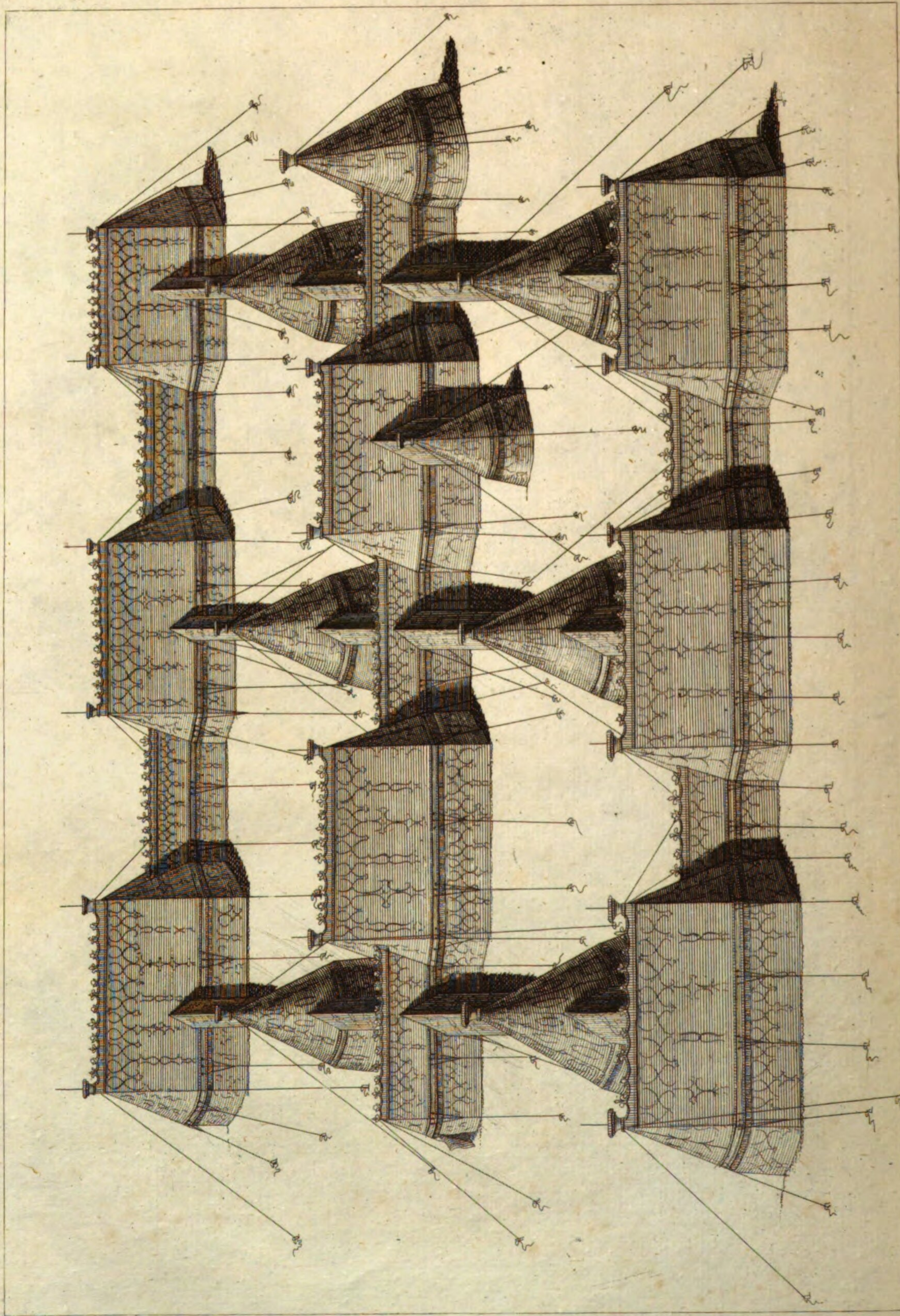


ROYAL TENTS. Pl. 1.

Engraved by J. Thompson July 18. 1738



ROYAL TENTS. PLI.



ROYAL TENTS. Pl. 2.

Designed by J. G. 1787. by S. H. Cooper.

ITEM, the tent of clothe of golde, a carriage.

ITEM, a carriage for the king's stores, as malle, rapier, flint, hopes of yron, pynnes of yron, nayles, scowes, shovels, for the paracyon of caswell hurts."

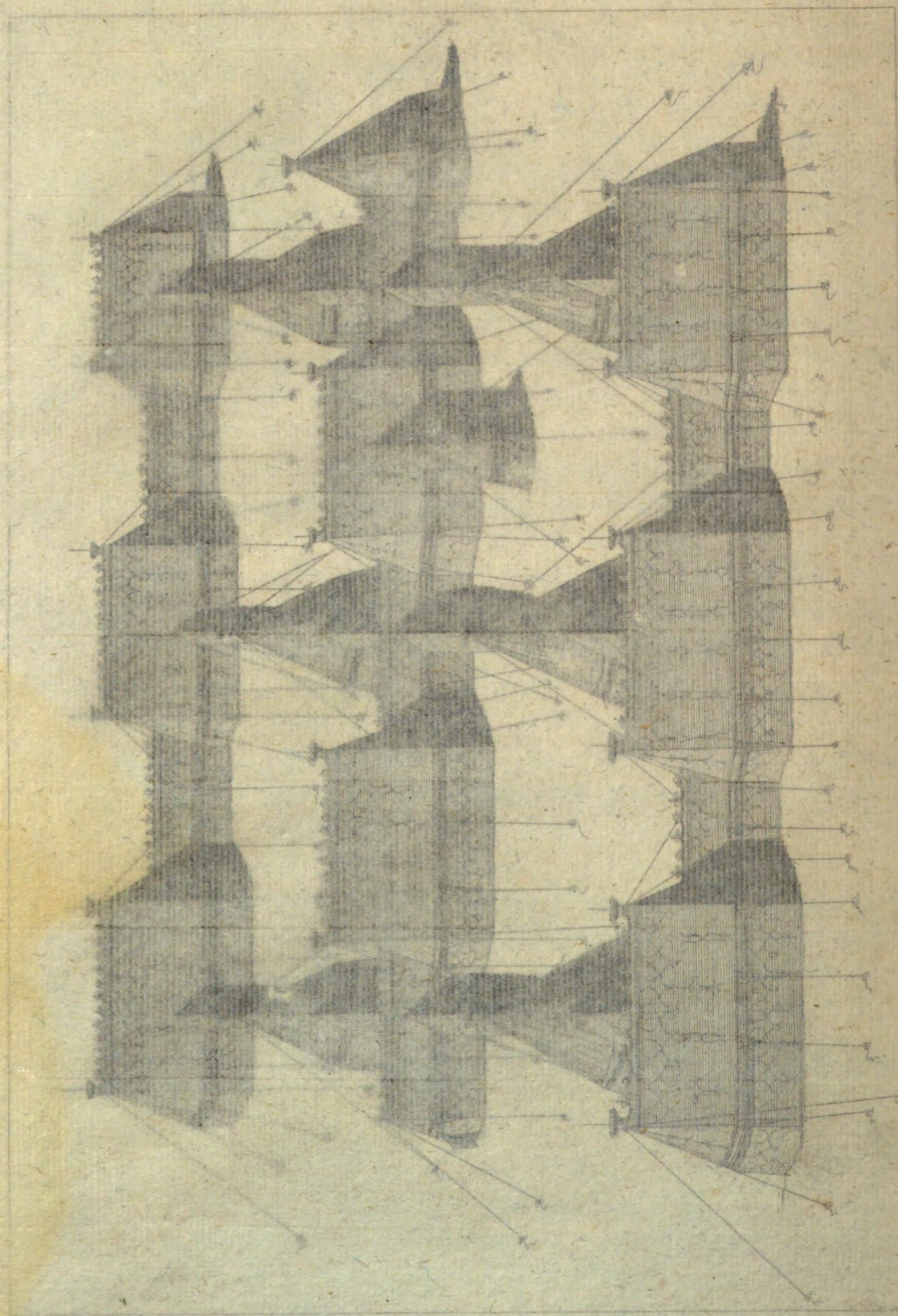
A MANUSCRIPT in the Cotton library, has the plan of one of King Henry VIII.'s camps, here engraved, (a) and under it the following directions referring to it.

"THE mening of the plat, (or plan) is such, that the men's tents shall be sett within 200 fote of the kynge's tentes; that is to saye, the uttermost part of the cordes shall not come nere the uttermost parte of the cordds of the kynge's tentes, both for air, and to have space about yt.

ITEM, that the foure quarters be so appoynted, that the kynge's grounde and tentts may be in the myddes, and to be betwene the corddes of every quarter a hundred fote broad, so that every such space bytwene the quarters may come right to the grounde of the kynge's tente, according as it is drawn in the plat. Also, if the kynge's highnes will have his tent in the place, that then the way through the markett-place, as it is drawn in the plat, and the same markett-place to be in the myddes, two hundred fote square, with foure quarters, and between every quarter, a litle 50 fote between corddes and corddes; and the way to come every one to the myddes of the ground of the camp.

ITEM, for the good ordering of the camp, according to the platt, there must be two or three men, to appoynte the ground wher the said tenttes shall stand, to digge the grounde as nere as they can to be upon drye grounde, and specciallye the place where the kynge's highnes tenttes shall stand; and also, to see that there may be good water as nigh as may be.

(a) Addit. 3. MS. Bib. Cotton; for the plan, see plate entitled, "A Royal Encampment, temp. Hen. VIII."



ROYAL. TENTS. PL2.

Designed by J. H. B. 1772

ITEM, the tent of clothe of golde, a carriage.

ITEM, a carriage for the king's stores, as malls, ropes, stoke, hopes of yron, pynnes of yron, nayles, canvas, threde for the reparacyon of caswell hurts."

A MANUSCRIPT in the Cotton library, has the plan of one of King Henry VIII.'s camps, here engraved, (a) and under it the following directions referring to it.

"THE mening of the plat, (or plan) ys fyrst, that no man's tent shall be sett within 200 foote of the kynge's tentes, that is to saye, the uttermost part of the cordds shall not come nere the uttermost parte of the cordds of the kynge's tenttes, both for air, and to have space about yt.

ITEM, that the fowre quarters be so appoynted, that the kynge's grounde and tentts may be in the midds, and to be betweene corddes, and corddes of every quarter a hundred fote brode, so that every such space bytwene the quarters, may come right to the grownde of the kynge's tente, according as it is drawn in the plat:—also, yf the kynge's highnes will have the market-place, that then the way through the markett-place, to be made as yt is in the platt, and the same markett-place to be in the midds, two hundred fote square, with fowre quarters, and between every quarter, a lane 50 fote between corddes and corddes; and the said lanes to come every one to the myddes of the ground of the market-place.

ITEM, for the good orderynge of the said tenttes, accordyng to the platt, there must be two as marshalls, and they to appoynte the ground wher the said tenttes shall stand, to chose the grounde as nere as they can to be upon drye grounde, and specyallye the place where the kynge's highnes tenttes shall stande; and also, to see that there may be good water as nigh as can be.

(a) AUGUSTUS 3. MS. Bib. Cotton; for the plan, see plate entitled, "A Royal Encampment, temp. Hen. VIII."

ITEM, these marshalls shall appoynte, first, the grownde for the kynge's tenttes, and for the space about them, according to the platt: which ground, the said marshalls shall delyver unto suche as shall be appoynted to receyve the same; and they to see the kynge's tenttes to be set in order, and appoynte the ground for the same.

ITEM, that the said marshalls shall also appoynte the grownde for the fowre quarters, accordyng to the platt, to such as shall be appoynted to receive the same, and they to appoynte ground, and place in these quarters to every man, as they be appoynted, and after their degrees; and one marshal to lye there, and to have yrons for punysshment of suche as shall offende.

ITEM, that they that shall lodge, and apoynte the quarters, have a bill of the names of them that are appoynted to have tenttes in any of the said quarters, which boke must be made by the kinge's highnesse, or his counsell, and to be delyvered to them that shall have the charge.

ITEM, yf the kynge's highnesse pleasure be to have a market-place according to the platt; for the good orderyng of the same, first, one marshal must lye in the said markett in his tentte, and the clerk of the market allsoe, to see good rule and order; and the said marshal must have withynne, bothe yrons and stokys for punysshment of such as do offende: also, there must be made a proclamation, suche as shall be thought mete by the kynge's highness and hys counsell for good order and quyetnes, and punysshment for them that shall offend contrary to the same."

AND in another manuscript written in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, is the following article on this subject. (b)

"THE order how a camp ought to be pytched; videlicet, first of all, after that the high marshal hath appointed the ground, both mete

(b) MS. in Bib. Harl. infig. 847.

and convenient for the campe, havinge both woode and water, and forrage sufficient for the armie; then must the provost-marshall divide the ground into six severall quarters; i. e. 3 for the footmen, and 3 for the horsemen, and betwixt the quarters, he must appoynte a strete, which must be 80 foot broade at the least; then must he also appoint a large place of assemblie, and a market-place, where he must place the rerewarde on the left hand of the place of assemblie, and the battaile in the nether part of the sayde assemblie, reserving the street into it between the two battailes; and to place the rereward upon the right hand of the same place of assemblie; reserving also another roome for another streete, to goe between the rereward and the battaile, and that all the tent doors open into the said place of assemblie; also, the place of the general's tentte is in the quarter of the battaile, directly in the mydde of the said battaile, and the door of his tent must open into the place of assemblie, a little before the other tents; and in the same quarter, must he appointe the marshall's tente on the right hand of the treasurers, or the left hand of the said general's tente: also, he must appointe the ordinaunce before the place of assemblie, within the ringe of the said camp, and carriages to impale the same as much as is needful; for in this campe, the horse campe is nor environed with carriages; for that it hath both woode, and a great river running by it for the guard thereof, that it needeth no impalement:—the horse campe is also divided into three quarters; first, the horsemen of the war-ward, are appointed in the quarter of the war-ward; the horse and horsemen of the battaile, directly under the battaile; and like wyse the horsemen of the rereward, under the rereward; there must also be appointed within the market-place of the campe, a place for the munition of ordinaunce, that must be trenched aboute; and a place for the master of the ordinaunce, with the office of ordinaunce near unto the artillorie, on the right hande, and the victuelles on the left hand; and for the order of setting of watches, both of fotemen and horsemen, shall
be

be declared; also, commandement must be given, that no man pitche anye tente near the ringe of the campe, by seven score foote, at the least."

A MANUSCRIPT in the Harleian collection, marked No. 7364, contains the following system of castrametation, wherein every particular then in use seems to have been noticed; its date seems much about that of the preceding.

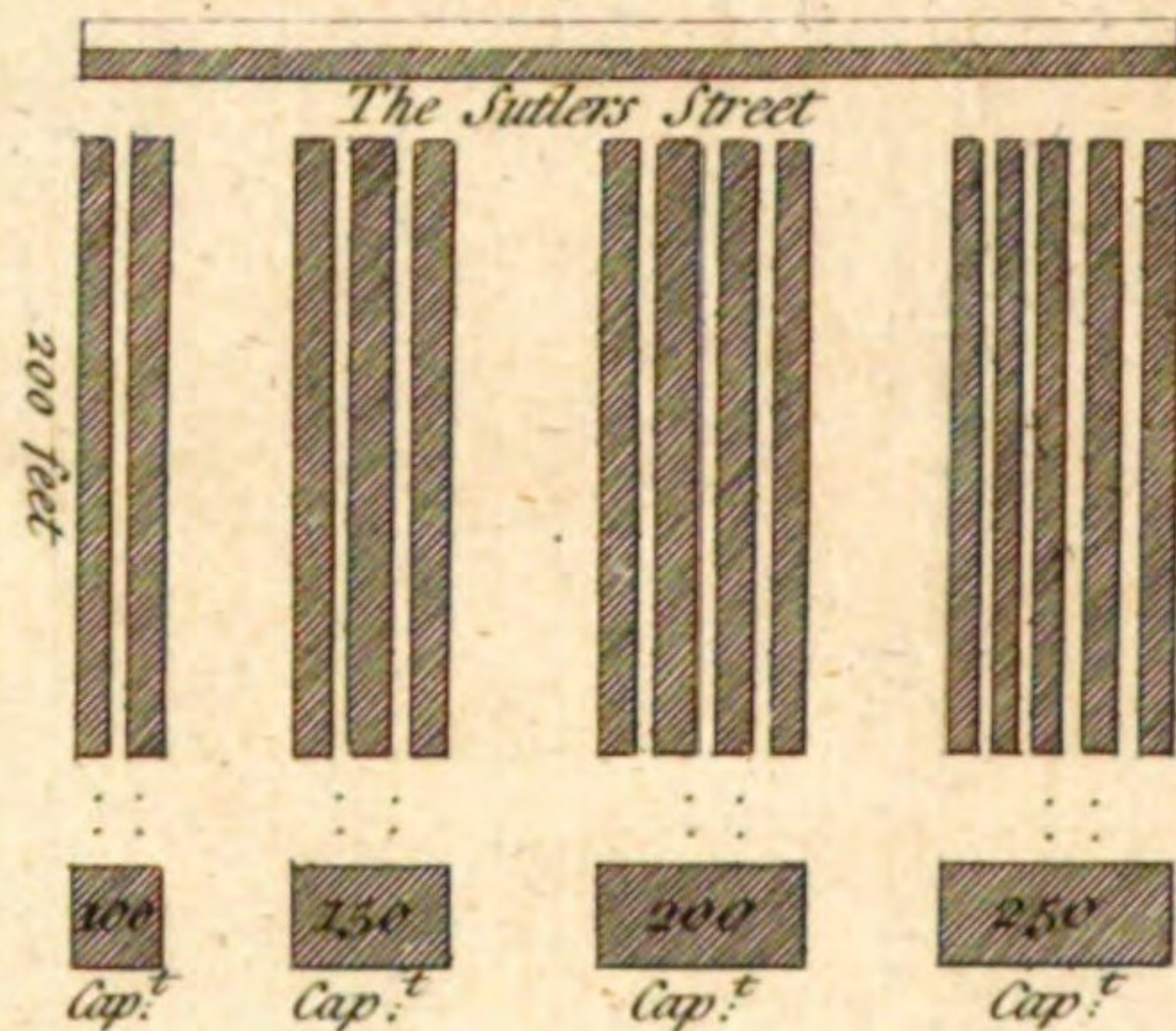
"To everie footman is allowed eight foote in square, in which they are to lodge and build their cabbins.

THE captaine hath allowed him in front as much ground as the front of his quarter doth take up; that is, in a companie of 100, 24 foote; of 150, 40 foote; and of 200, 56 foote; in depth, his allowance is allwaies 36 foote; betweene the captain's lodgings and the soldiers cabbins, an overthwart streete is to be left of 24 foote broad: in the midst whereof, right before the ensigne's lodgings, a garde of eight foote square is to be built; wherein the soldiers arms are to be kept from wet and spoyle; soe, that by this reckoning, there will be eight foote left between the ensigne's lodginge and the aforefaide garde, and as much between the same garde and the captaine's lodginge, which is to be kept open, and free for passage to and fro.

IN a companie of 100, the souldiers are lodged in two rowes of cabbans, with a street of eight foote running betweene; which row of cabbans containe each of them five and twenty cabbans of eight foote square, which makes in depth, two hundred foote; in a company of 150, there be three rowes of cabbans and two streetes; in a company of 200, fower rowes of cabbans and three streetes; and soe, if your company be stronge, you may add to every 50 men, a streete and rowe of cabbans more; for every rowe contains 25 cabbans, and every caban, two men, which makes 50; but the depth of the soldiers cabans must never exceede 200 foote.

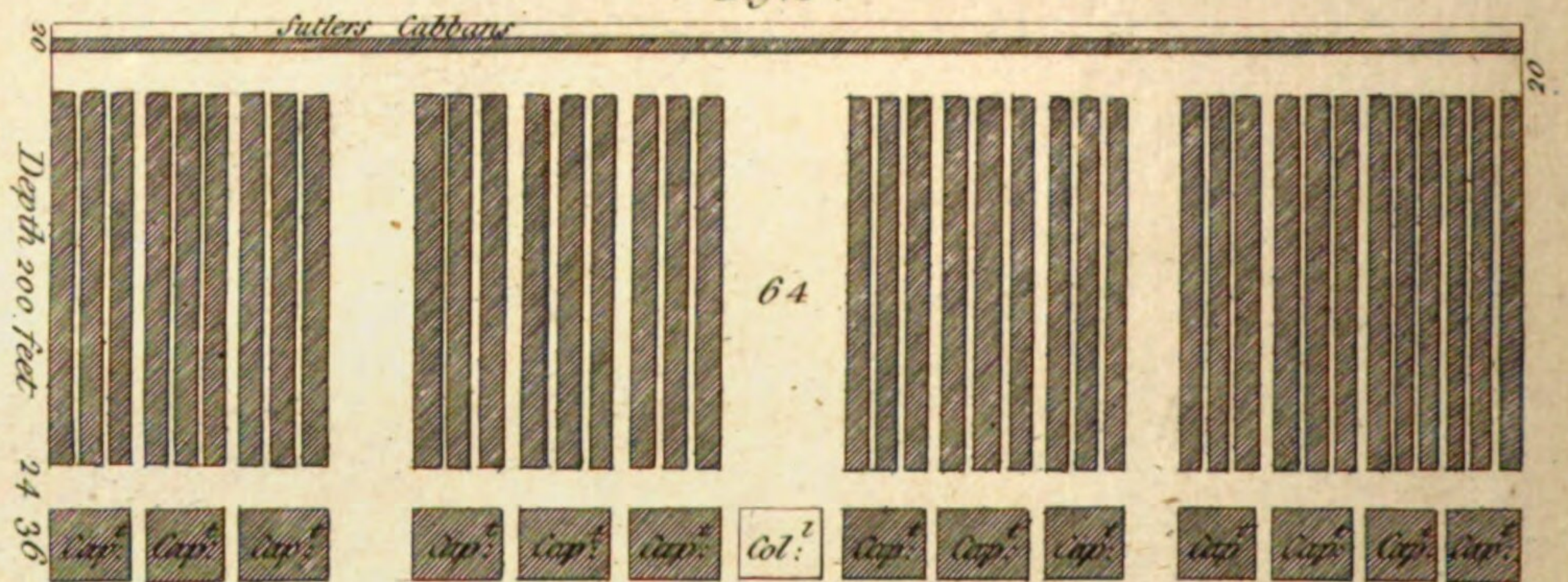
IN the heade of the rowe of cabans to the right hand, the lieutenant of the companie is to build; and at the head of the rowe, on the left

Fig. 1.



Encampment of 4 Companies of foot of different numbers viz: 100, 150, 200, & 250. Each row consists of 25 Cabbans. 2 Soldiers are lodged in every Cabban, the 4 dots shew the Guards in the front of each Company

Fig. 2.



The Front of a Regiment of Foot of 13 Companies, each of 150 Men.

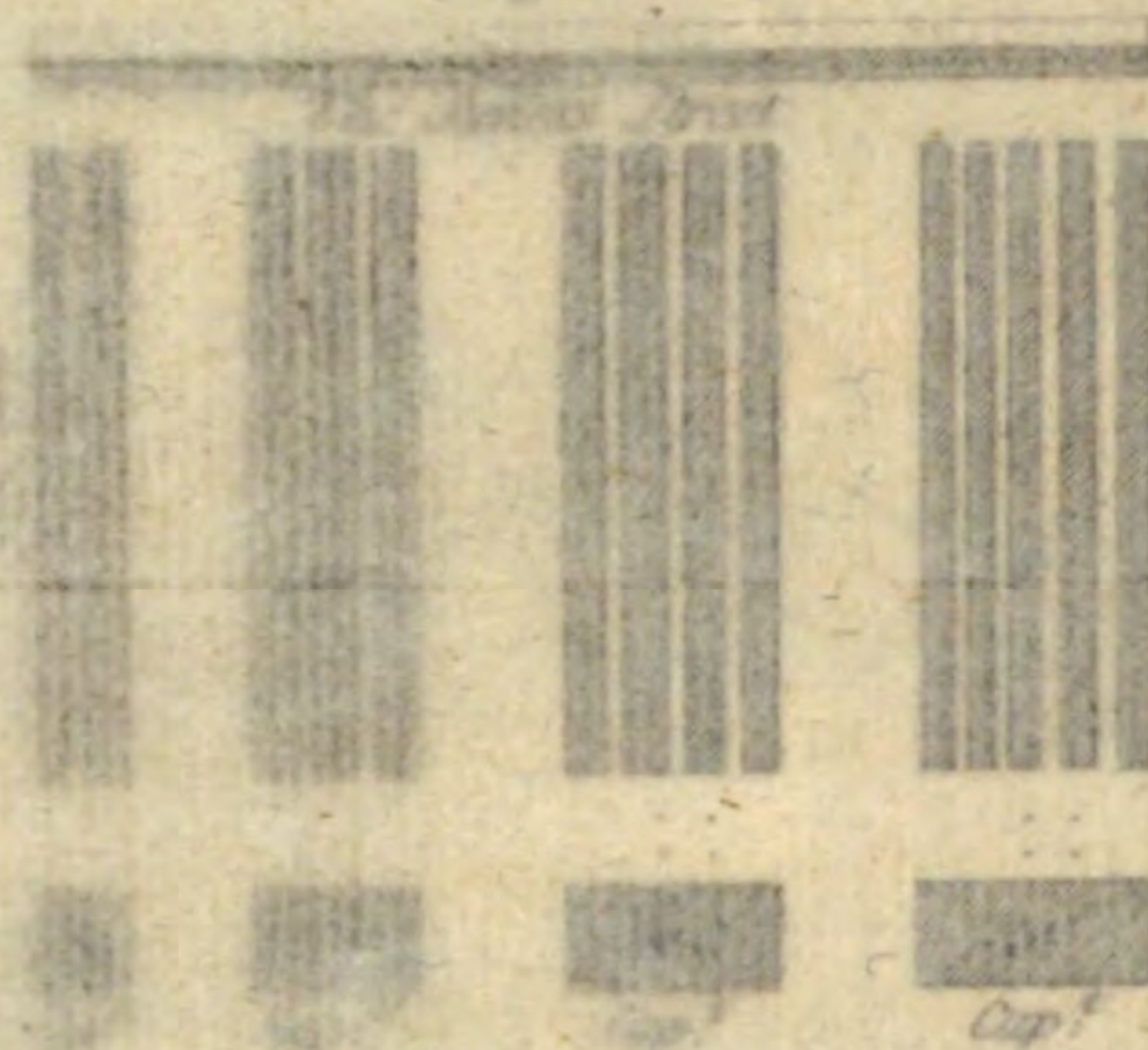
left hand the ensign, their banners standing near the soldiers cabbans, towards the captains lodgings, near the middle of the foote; and as the lieutenant and ensigns lodge in the middle, the two serjeants doe in the rear, with one of which one of the drummers may lodge, and the other drummer with the ensigns from the serjeants lodgings: In this manner, in distance of 20 foote, serving for a close company, which march in order of victuallers streete, and into their quarters, and the ensigns of the serjeants cabbans look, that they may not forget to keep order in the disorders which usually happen in such places.

ALONG this streete, at the head of the company, the soldiers doe build their doores, looking both the wayes, standing all round them ten foote in depth, which they erect the most orderly, as well as in front or breadth, they are all the same, but the height more or less, according to convenience, and the direction of the quarter-master; but usually, there is one hundred and twenty allowed for a companie, and now and then, by the custom, or by connivance of officers, private soldiers and their wives doe play the part of soldiers, and doe neglect their duties; and in the end, spoyle of the quarter.

FROM the sutlers cabbans ten foote backward is the place appointed for the souldiers and sutlers to make their fires for the dressinge of their meate, nearer then which they must not be suffered to approach, which the quarter master must diligently look to, for the preventing the casualties of fire.

THUS the whole depth of the companies, with the captains, souldiers and sutlers lodgings, together with the cross streetes, will be three hundred feete, which depth is ever and precisely to be observed in lodging both the foote and the horse alike.

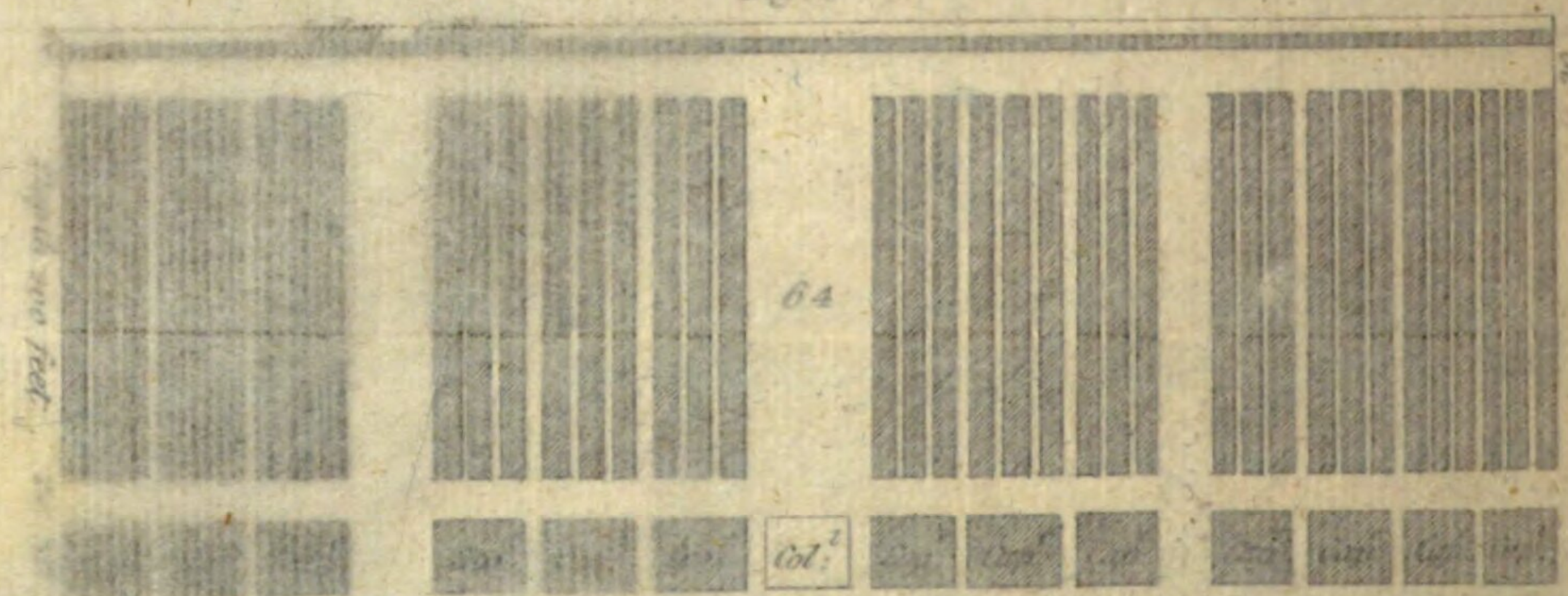
THUS you have seen particularlie how a companie of foote is lodged; we will now goe forward to shew how a regiment of foote is to be lodged, with the officers belonging to it; wherein for examples,



Scale of 200 feet

Diagram of a company of foot of different numbers
 100, 150, 200 & 250. Each row consists of 25 cubans.
 2 positions are marked in every cuban, the 4 dots show the
 square in the front of each company

Fig. 2



The Front of a Regiment of Foot of 13 Companies, each of 150 Men.

left hand the ensign, their doores opening from the soldiers cabbans, towards the captains lodgings, into the crosse streete of 24 foote; and as the lieutenant and ensigne lodge in the front, soe must the two serjeants doe in the reere, with one of which, one of the drummers may lodge, and the other drummer with the ensigne: from the serjeants lodgings in the reere, is drawn a paralell of 20 foote, serving for a crosse streete; which streete is called, the victuallers streete, and into this streete, doe the doores of the serjeants cabbans look, that they may the better see, and redusse the disorders which usuallly happen in that place.

ALONG this streete, at the further side thereof, the sutlers doe build their doores, lookeing into the quarter, haveing allowed them ten foote in depth, which they must not exceede, to build on; in front or breadth, they are not so stinted, but they may take more or less, accordinge to convenience, and their numbers, by direction from the quarter-master; but usuallly, there is but one sutler allowed for a companie, and noe more; though, through an ill custome, or by connivance of officers, some of the souldiers and their wives doe play the parts of sutlers, to the neglect of their duties; and in the end, spoyle of the souldier.

FROM the sutlers cabbans ten foote backward is the place appointed for the souldiers and sutlers to make their fires for the dressinge of their meate, nearer then which they must not be suffered to approach, which the quarter master must diligently looke to, for the preventing the casualties of fire.

THUS the whole depth of the companies, with the captaine, souldiers and sutlers lodgings, together with the crosse streates, will be three hundred feete, which depth is ever and precisely to be observed in lodgeing both the foote and the horse alsoe.

THUS you have seen particularlie how a companie of foote is lodged; we will now goe forward to shew how a regiment of foote is to be lodged, with the officers belonging to it; wherein for
examples,

examples, we will take the regiment at thirteen companies, as they are now to march with in this employment.

THESE thirteene companies to make four divisions, and lodge separated afunder by streetes, two whereof, (to witt) the right and left streetes, are four and twenty foote broade, and the middle space in the regiment sixty-four foote, wherein the officers of the regiment, to the depth of one hundred and fifty foote, are to build their lodgeing; the other, one hundred and fifty foot is left for the waggons to stande in; on each side of this sixty-four foote, a streete of eight foote broade is left betweene it and the companie next adjoining to it.

BETWEENE companie and companie, as they lye in their divisions, shall be left a streete of eight foote, the colonel himself shall lodge right before this section of eighty foote, even in front with the captaine's lodgings; his allowance beinge sixty-foure foote in breadth, and thirty-six in depth; when the colonel is lodged, leavinge the streete of 24 foote open, which streete runnes cross-ways, afront the soldiers cabbans; the officers of the regiment, as the quartermaster and the provost, and also the preacher and the surgeon, are to build in the space of sixty-four foote, which divides the regiment in the midst.

WHEN many regiments are lodged together, there must be a streete of one hundred foote left betweene every regiment.

The Lodginge of a Companie of Horse, consistinge of 70 Heads.

THE front of the lodgings of a companie of seventy horse, with the streets and rowes is seventy foot, the depth as that of the foote companies, (to witt) 300.

THE souldiers cabbans are distinguished by a space of fiftie foote into two rowes, each rowe containing eightene cabbans or lodgings, and every lodgeinge two souldiers; who for their own persons have allowed unto them ten foote square to build a cabban upon; which

which cabbans they are to frame in such manner, as that there maye be a convenient space between cabban and cabban for the water to rune of from them ; as also, the better to avoide the harme that may come by casualty of fire.

THE space of ffifty foote, which I said before was left between the souldiers cabbans of tenn foote square ; the proportion allowed for the persons of two soldiers, is thus divided ; five foote thereof, on each side inward of those cabbans, is allotted for a street, between the cabbans and the stables ; and ten foote more inward, on each side from these streets, of five foote, for the standings and stables of the horses, which are to stand with their heads towards the doors of the souldiers cabbans, which shall open into the forementioned streete of five foote ; the other twenty foote remayninge of the fifty foote, is to serve for a streete runninge long-ways downe through the quarter betweene the stables.

THE eightene lodgings of the souldiers forementioned on each side, and their horses, with the two streetes of tenn foote a peece, that runne crosse or athwart the rowes, and divide every six cabbans of the rowes from the other six, take up two hundred foote in depth, which is just as much as the lodgings of the footmen : then, from the reere of the souldiers lodgeings, there is twenty foote allowed backward for a streete running crosse the quarter, which is called, the sutlers streete ; along the further side whereoff the sutlers doe builde, who have tenn foote in depth allowed them to build upon, and noe more ; in front, they maye exceede tenn foote, accordinge to their numbers or commoditie : then measuring tenn foote more backward from the sutlers lodgings, that is the place allotted out, for making of their fires to dresse their meate.

THE captaine of the companie is to quarter before the front of the souldiers cabbans, leaving a crosse streete of twenty foote broad betweene the lower end of his lodgeinge, and the rowes of cabbans ; which lodging of the captaines shall containe seaventy foote in
Vol. II. E e breadth,

breadth, and forty in depth; this proportion allowed him for his own person; his servants, his kitchinge, his stable for his horses, and other necessarie provisions.

THE lieutenants and cornett's lodgings, are the first cabbans at the head of each rowe; the lieutenant quartering in the head of the right hand rowe, and the cornett in the head of the left hand rowe.

AND thus, in this manner is a company of seaventy horse lodged in the fiede, and if the companie be of more numbers, you are to add a rowe of eightene cabbans more to every thirty-fix horsemen proportionably.

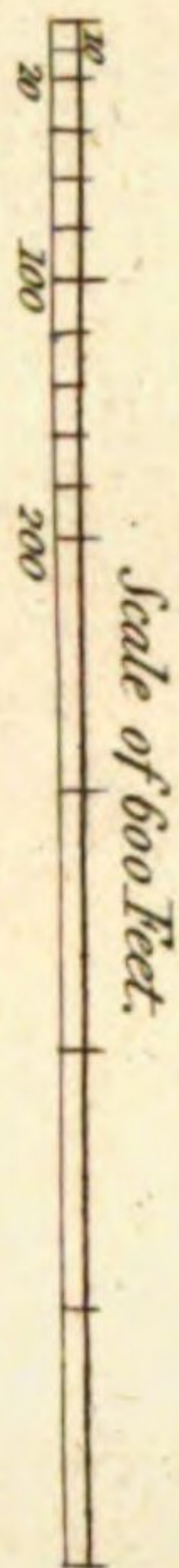
FURTHERMORE, it is to be noted, that in the lodgeinge of the troope, the fix cabbans on each side, in the first divisions, is lodged the captaine's squadron; in the second, the cornett's; and in the third, the lieutenant's squadron.

A COMPANIE of horse beinge to be lodged as you have seene; let us now lodge a regiment; which regiment of horse consisteth, accordinge to the manner used now a-dayes; of three troopes of cuirassiers, and one of harquebusiers, who, in an embattleinge, foe in lodgeinge is alwaies to hold the right hande place of the regiment, as the colonell the left.

IT hath been already shewed how a companie is lodged, foe as there needes nothings more to be said of a regiment, than that betweene troope and troope, there must be lefte a space of twenty foote broade, where the horsemen may lay their provisions of hay and straw; every one at the back-side of his owne cabban; as alsoe this, that betweene regiment and regiment, there must be a streete left of one hundred foote broad.

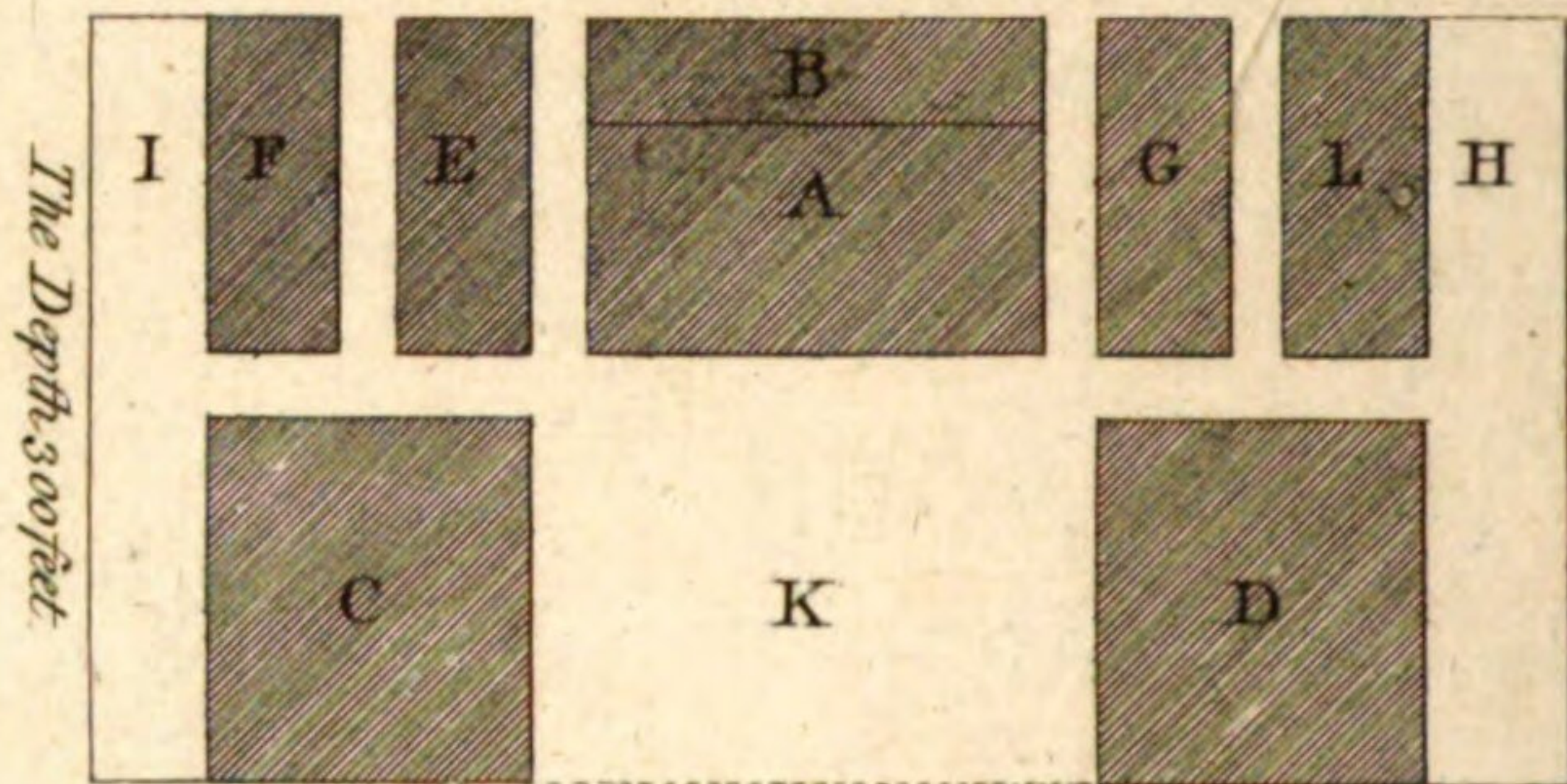
HAVINGE declared by writinge, and demonstrated by figures, howe the horse and foote are to be lodged, both particularly in the companies, and together in regiment; I will now proceed to the settinge downe the quarters of the high officers, before I proceede anie further; and first, of the generall.

For



Form of the Quarter of the General of the Artillery.

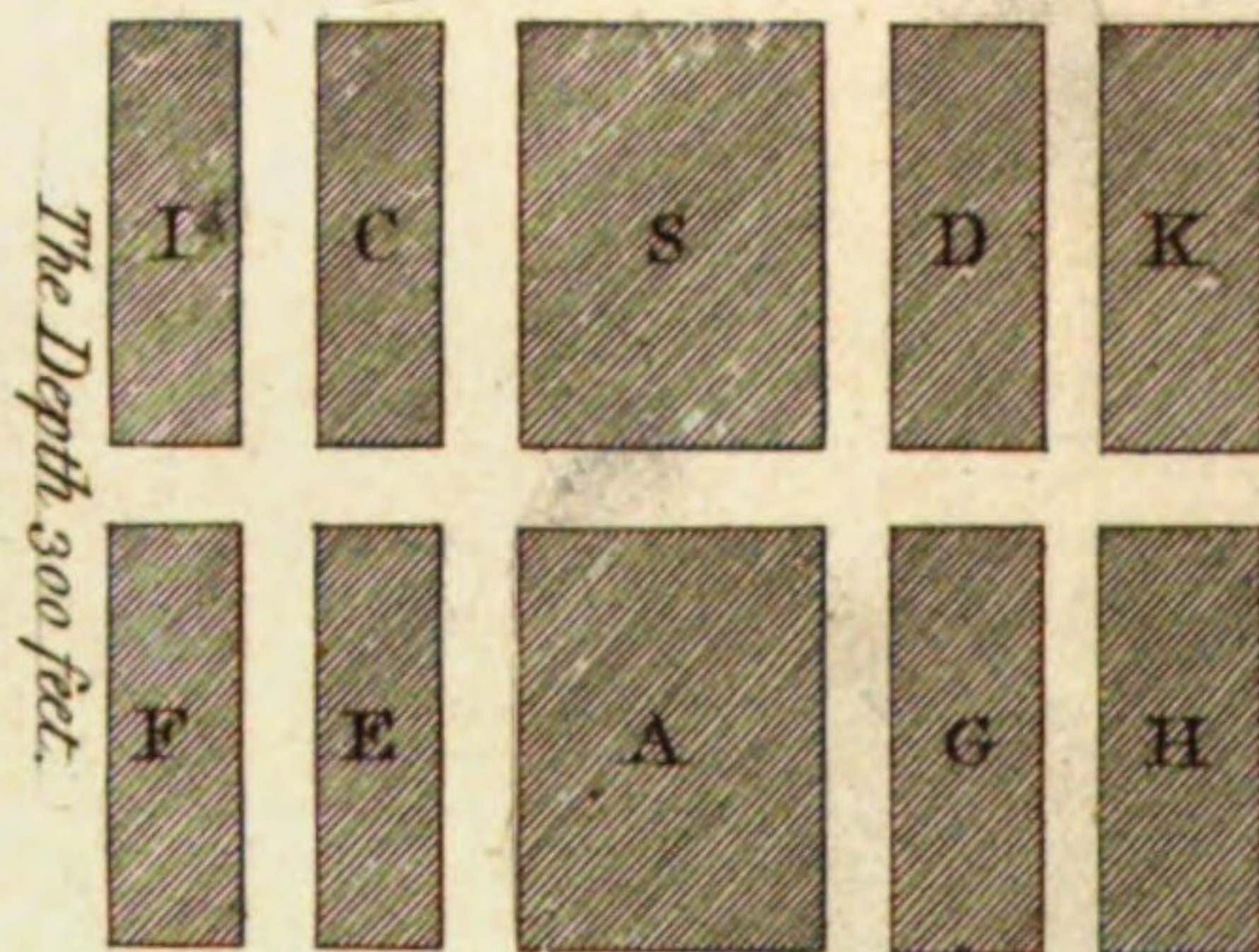
Fig. 1.



The whole front or breast 480 Feet

The Form of Lodging of those General Officers that are Quartered together in the Camp.

Fig. 2.



THE ENGLISH ARMY.

For this purpose, as you may see by the figure, we take a square as the other quarters of 300 foot in depth, and the breadth or front of four hundred and eighty foote: the signification of the lesser squares within his great square, (by which may be perceived, the disposition of the lodgings of the officers) belonging to the artillery, with their streets, are as followes:

A. For the general of the artillerie.

B. For the lieutenant with the gentlemen of the artillerie.

C. The magazine of the artillerie, with the commissarie, controller and conductours.

D. The magazine of the munitions of warre, with their commissarie, controllers, and conductours.

E. The inginiers, with their conductours, controllers of the fortifications, with their conductours, commissaries, and clerke.

F. The master gunners with their cannons, master of the fire-workes, with his conductours, powderers, and master of the batteries.

G. The maister-carpenter, his apprentices, with his carpenters, wheelwrighte, smith, maister of the gunnes, armourer, cooper, provost of the artillerie, with his servants, and the chirurgurgeon of the artillerie.

H. The boatsmen to drawe and handle the cannon.

I. The pyoners and miners.

K. A common place where the men and waggons do assemble upon anie occasion. Now between all these lodgings there are streetes of twenty foote broade left, that every man may easily and commodiously goe from his lodgings, or come to it, both on foote and on horseback, and by waggon.

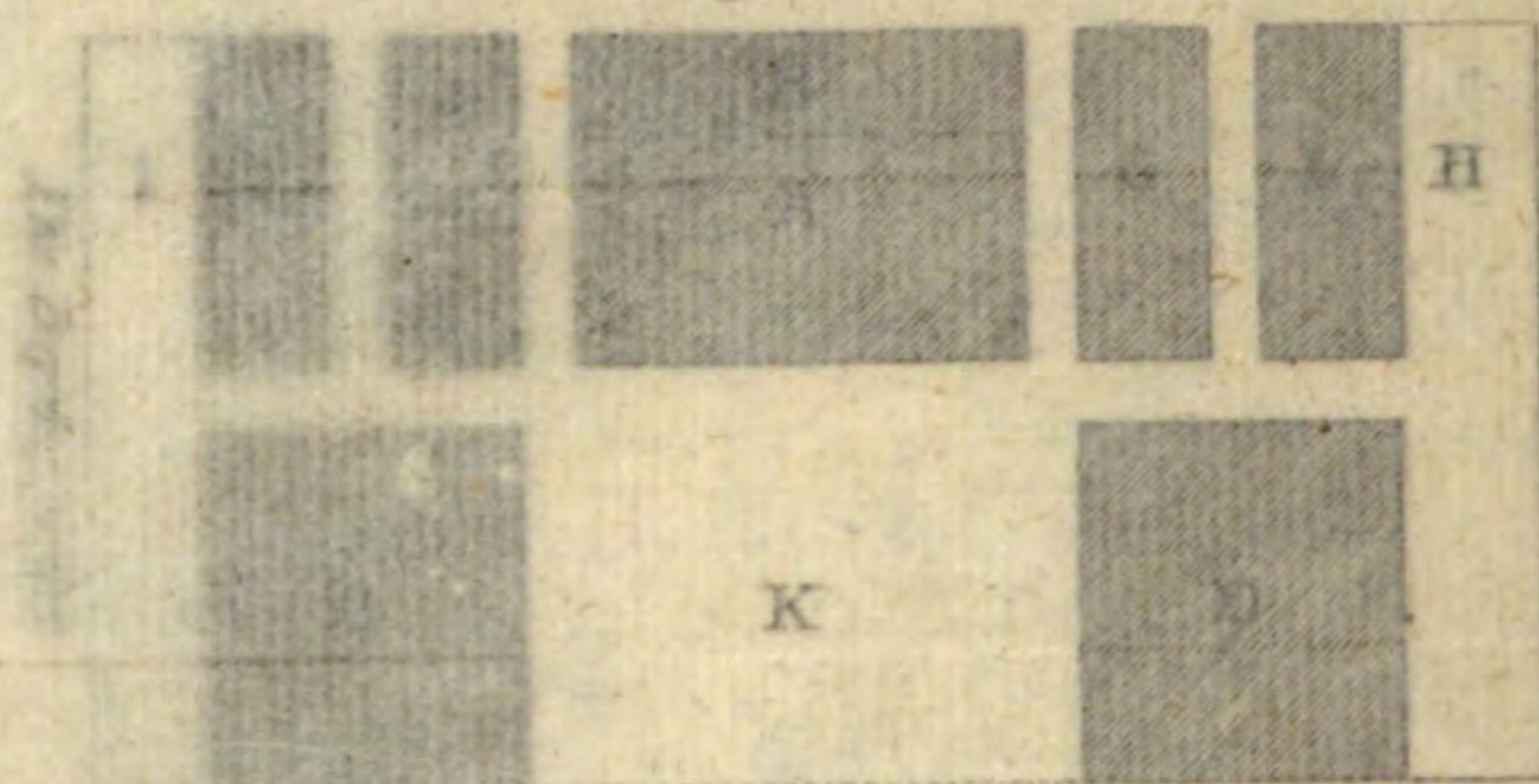
L. A void place reserved for the unthought of provisions.

The forme of lodging of those generall officers that are quarter'd together in the campe.

For this quarter, as you may perceive by the figure above, we take a square of 300 foote in depth, as in the other quarters; and

Plans of the Quarter of the General of the Artillery.

Fig. 1.



The whole front or breast 480 Feet

*The Form of Lodging of those General Officers that are
quartered together in the Camp.*

Fig. 2.



FOR this purpose, as you may see by the figure, we take a square as the other quarters of 300 foot in depth, and the breadth or front of four hundred and eighty foote: the signification of the lesser squares within his great square, (by which may be perceived, the disposition of the lodgings of the officers) belonging to the artillery, with their streets, are as followes :

A. FOR the general of the artillerie.

B. FOR the lieutenant with the gentlemen of the artillerie.

C. THE magazine of the artillerie, with the commissarie, controller and conductours.

D. THE magazine of the munitions of warre, with their commissarie, controllers, and conductours.

E. THE inginiers, with their conductours, controllers of the fortifications, with their conductours, commissaries, and clerke.

F. THE master gunners with their canoniers, maister of the fire-workes, with his conductours, petardiers, and maister of the batteries.

G. THE maister-carpenter, his lieutenant, with his carpenters, wheelwrighte, smith, maister of the gabions, armourer, cooper, provost of the artillerie, with his servants, and the chirurgion of the artillerie.

H. THE boatsmen to drawe and handle the cannon.

I. THE pyoners and miners.

K. A COMMON place where the men and waggons do assemble upon anie occasion. Now between all these lodgings there are streetes of twenty foote broade left, that every man may easily and commodiously goe from his lodgings, or come to it, both on foote and on horseback, and by waggon.

L. A VOIDE place reserved for the unthought of provisions.

THE forme of lodging of those generall officers that are quarter'd together in the campe.

FOR this quarter, as you may perceive by the figure above ; we take a square of 300 foote in depth, as in the other quarters ; and

in breadth or front 380 foote; which square is disposed to the generall officers in manner followinge.

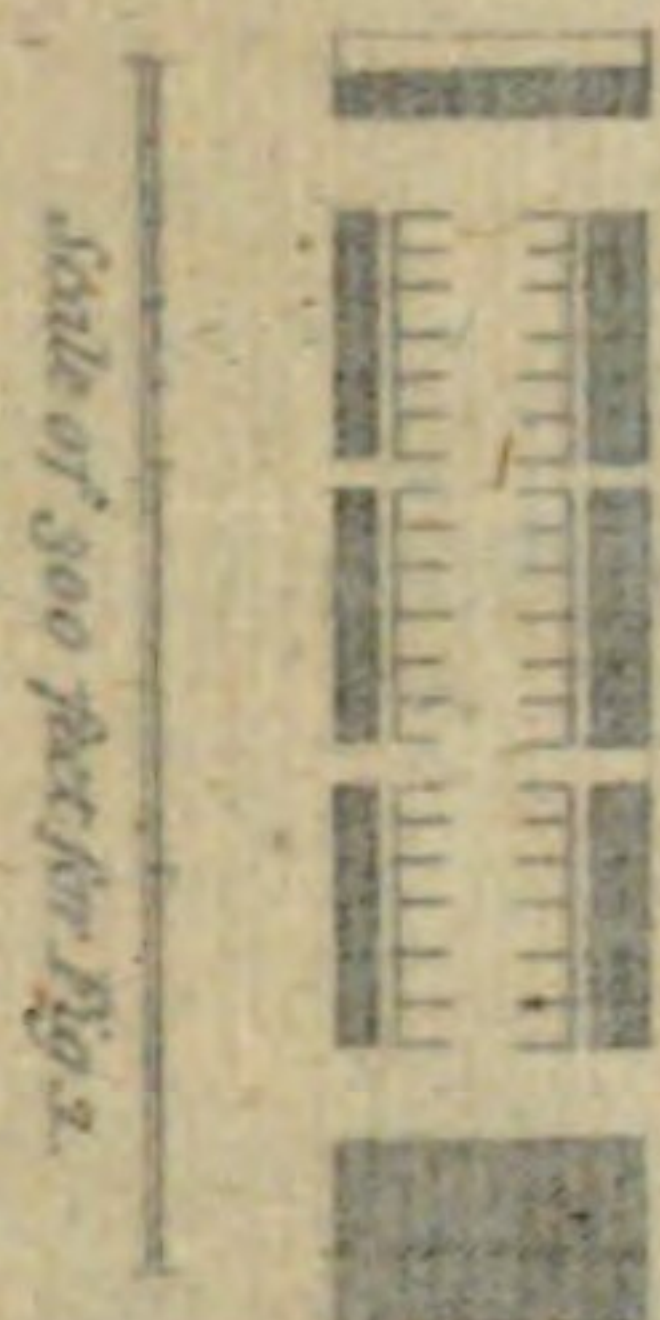
- A. THE general of the cavallerie.
- B. THE generall of the infanterie.
- C. THE lieutenant-generall of y^e cavallerie.
- D. THE commiffarie and quarter-master of y^e cavallerie.
- E. THE prefident, fiscall, and greffier of the counsell of warre.
- F.
- G. THE provost-generall, and ferjeant-major-generall.
- H. THE quarter-maister, and paymaster-generall.
- I. THE commiffarie of the musters.
- K. THE fervants, the phyfician, and chirurgeon of the court.

Now betweene these lodgings or squares, are streetes of twenty foote, as in the others, for passage either on foote, or on horseback, or by waggon.

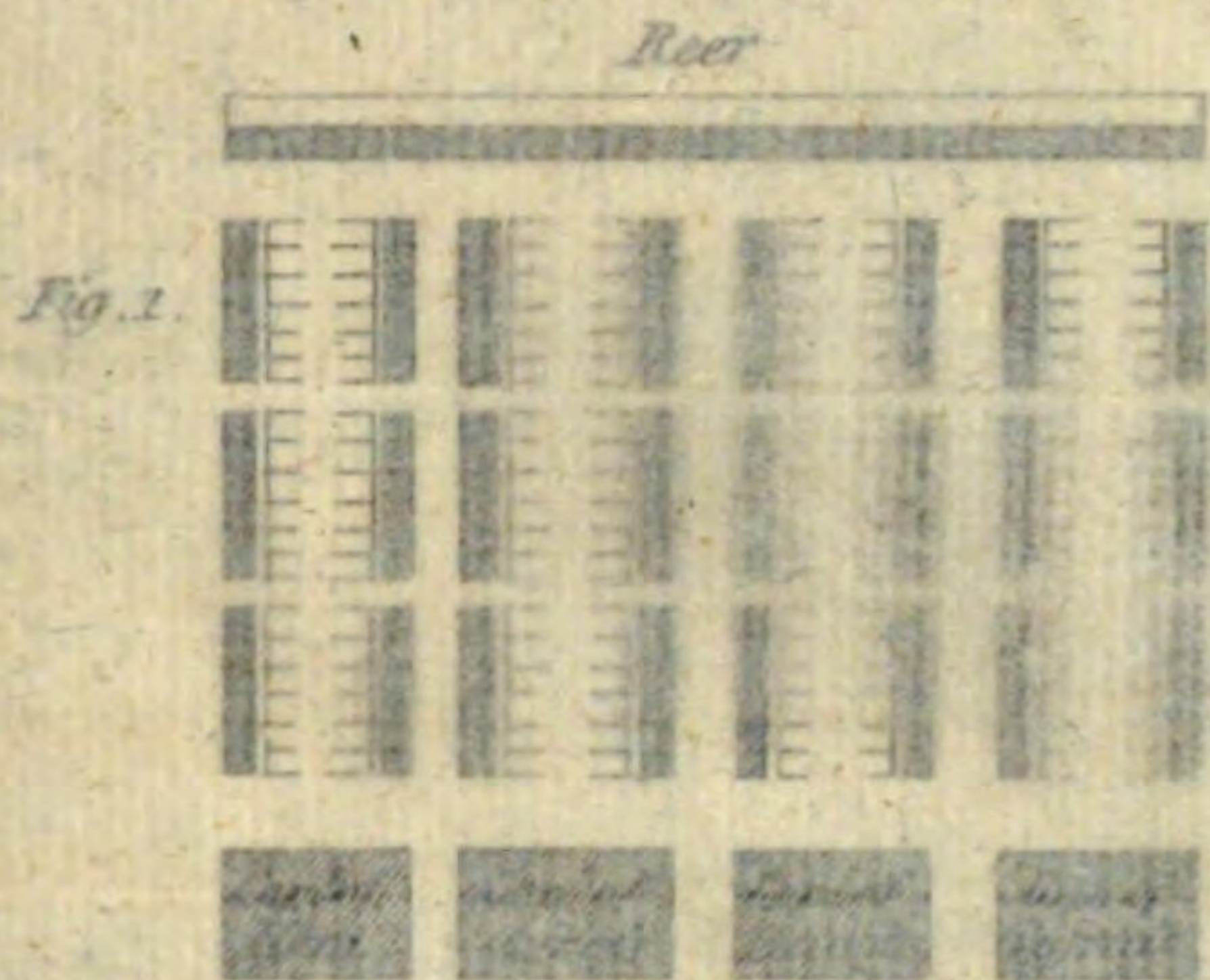
To be observed, that because these generall officers of the horse, and of the foote, command not over any particular regiment, but over the whole, (to wit) the horse officers over the horse, and the foote officers over the foote, it is not necessarie that they should be lodged near any particular regiment; but the horse officers in some quarter near the middle of the horse; as the foote officers neare the middle of the foote, as it were, equidistant from both the extreames; which would be, in my opinion better than this other way here sett downe, though y^e seate of the camp may be such, as that this figure may serve both the horse, and the foot officers, and yet be equidistant from the extreames of both, as is already mentioned; the other generall officers of the artillerie are lodged already by their magazines.

The Forme of the Quarter of the Waggon.

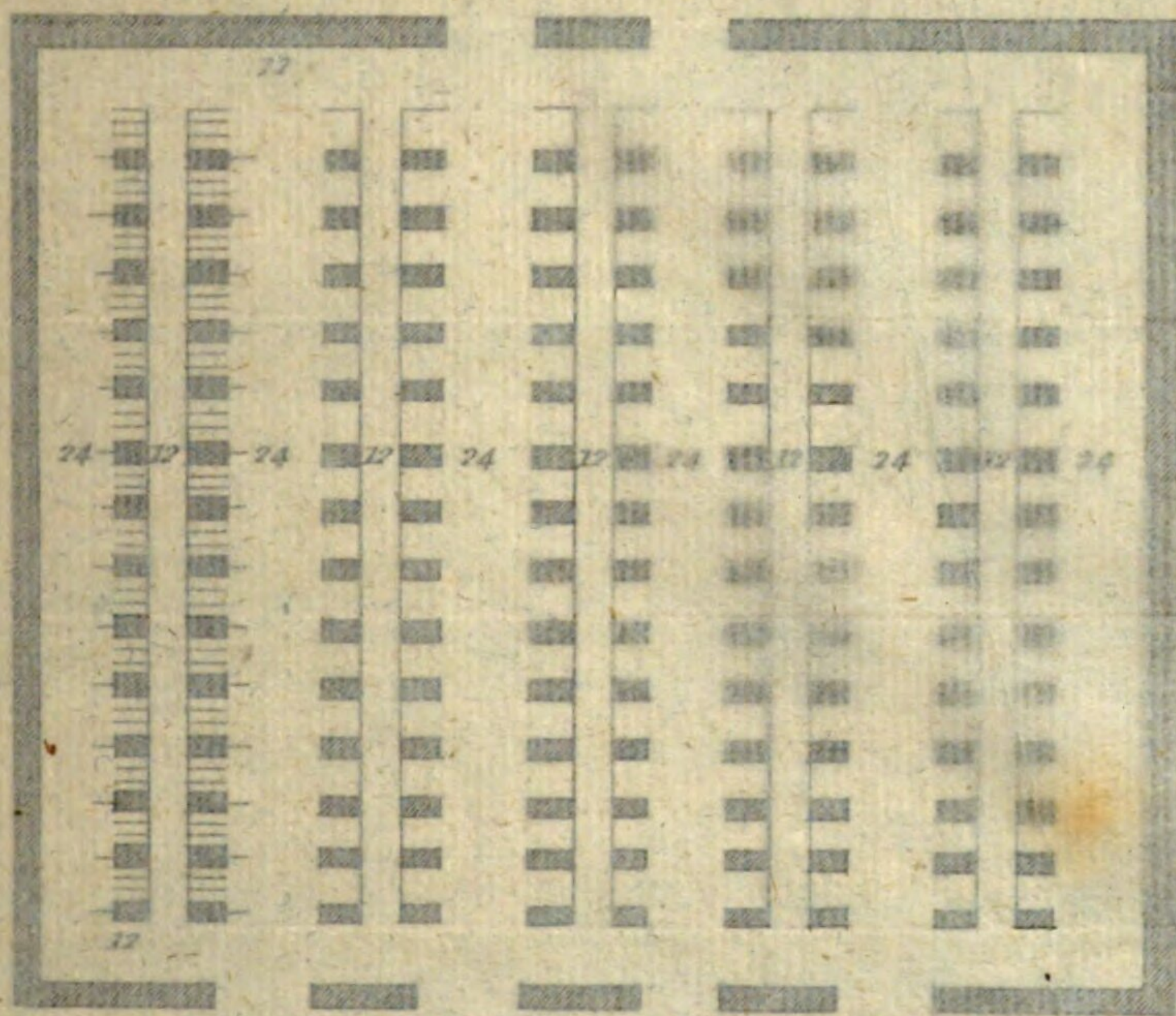
FOR the quarter of the waggon, we take likewise a square of three hundred foote in depth, as in the other figures, and soe large,
or



*The Manner how a
Company of Horse
is Lodged.*



*The Manner of Lodging a Regiment in the field consisting
of 3 Companies of Cavalry and one of Harquebusiers.*



The Front 346 feet

The forme of the Quarter of the Waggon.

HISTORY OF

in breadth at front 180 foote; which square is disposed to the general officers in manner followinge.

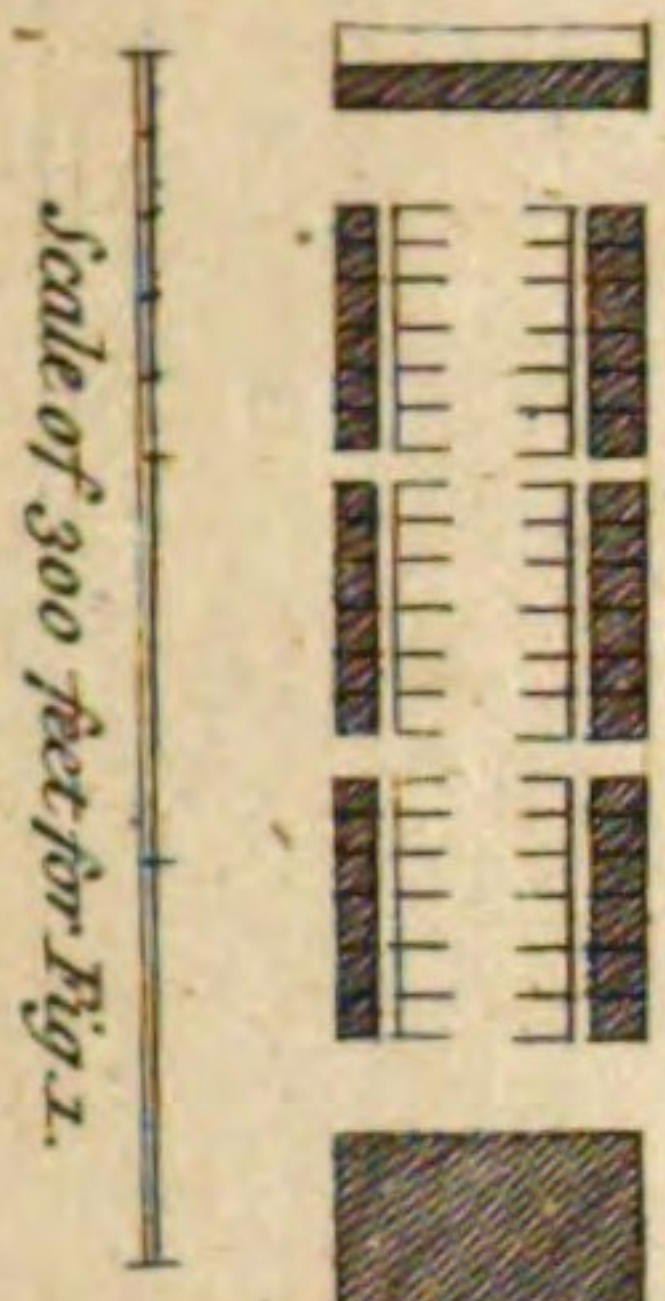
- A. The general of the cavallerie.
- B. The generall of the infanterie.
- C. The lieutenant-generall of y^e cavallerie.
- D. The commissarie and quarter-master of y^e cavallerie.
- E. The president, fiscall, and greffier of the counsell of warre.
- F.
- G. The provost-generall, and serjeant-major-generall.
- H. The quarter-master, and paymaster-generall.
- I. The commander of the musters.
- K. The physician, and chirurgeon of the court.

Now betweene these lodgings or squares, are streetes of twenty foote, as in the figure, for passage either on foote, or on horseback, or by waggon.

To be observed, that because these generall officers of the horse, and of the foote, command not over any particular regiment, but over the whole, (to wit) the horse officers over the horse, and the foot officers over the foote, it is not necessarie that they should be lodged near any particular regiment; but the horse officers in some quarter near the middle of the horse; as the foote officers neare the middle of the foote, as it were, equidistant from both the extreames; which would be, in my opinion better than this other way here sett downe, though y^e seate of the camp may be such, as that this figure may serve both the horse, and the foot officers, and yet be equidistant from the extreames of both, as is already mentioned; the other generall officers of the artillerie are lodged already by their magazines.

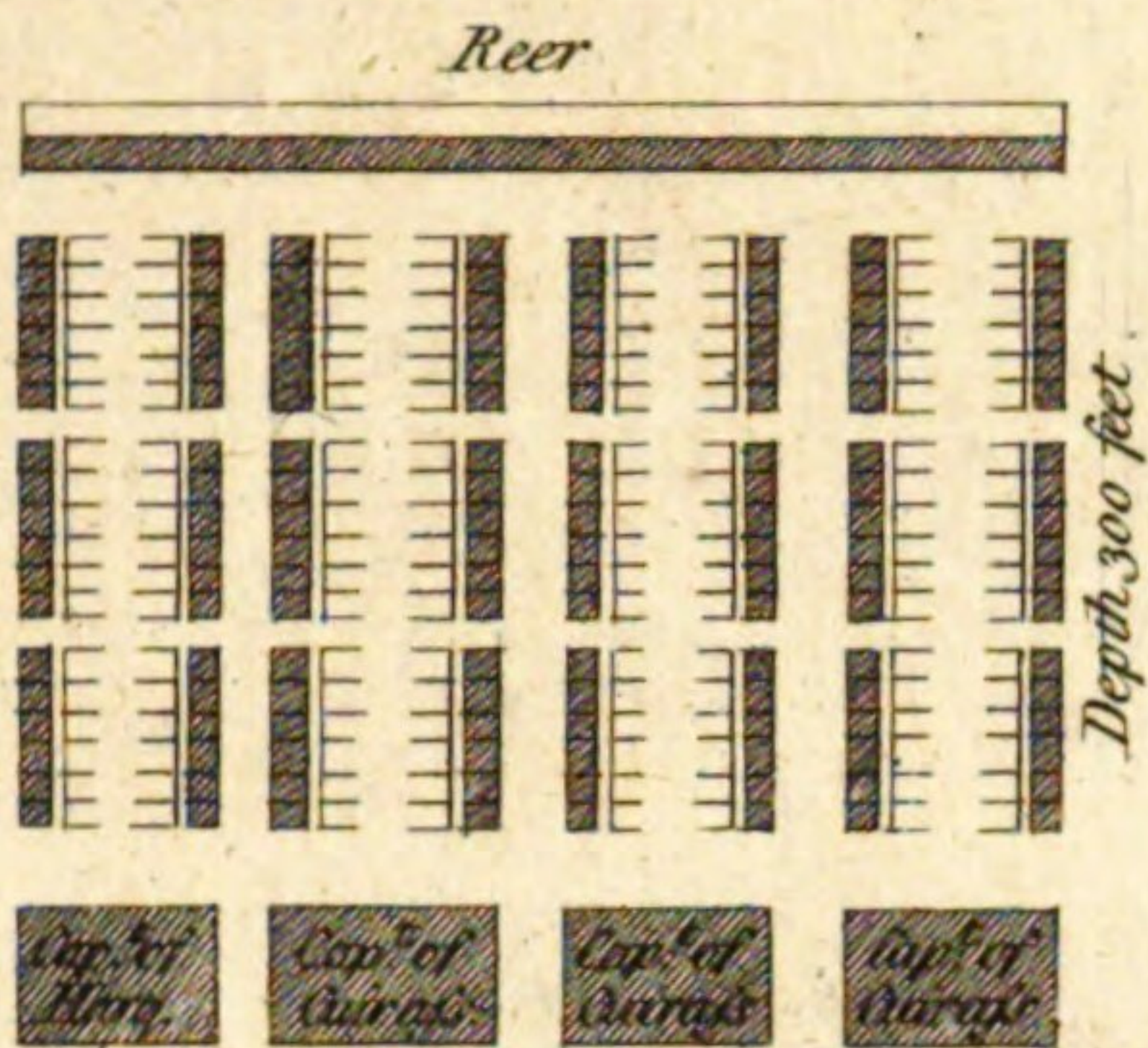
The Forme of the Quarter of the Waggon.

For the quarter of the waggon, we take likewise a square of three hundred foote in depth, as in the other figures, and soe large,
or

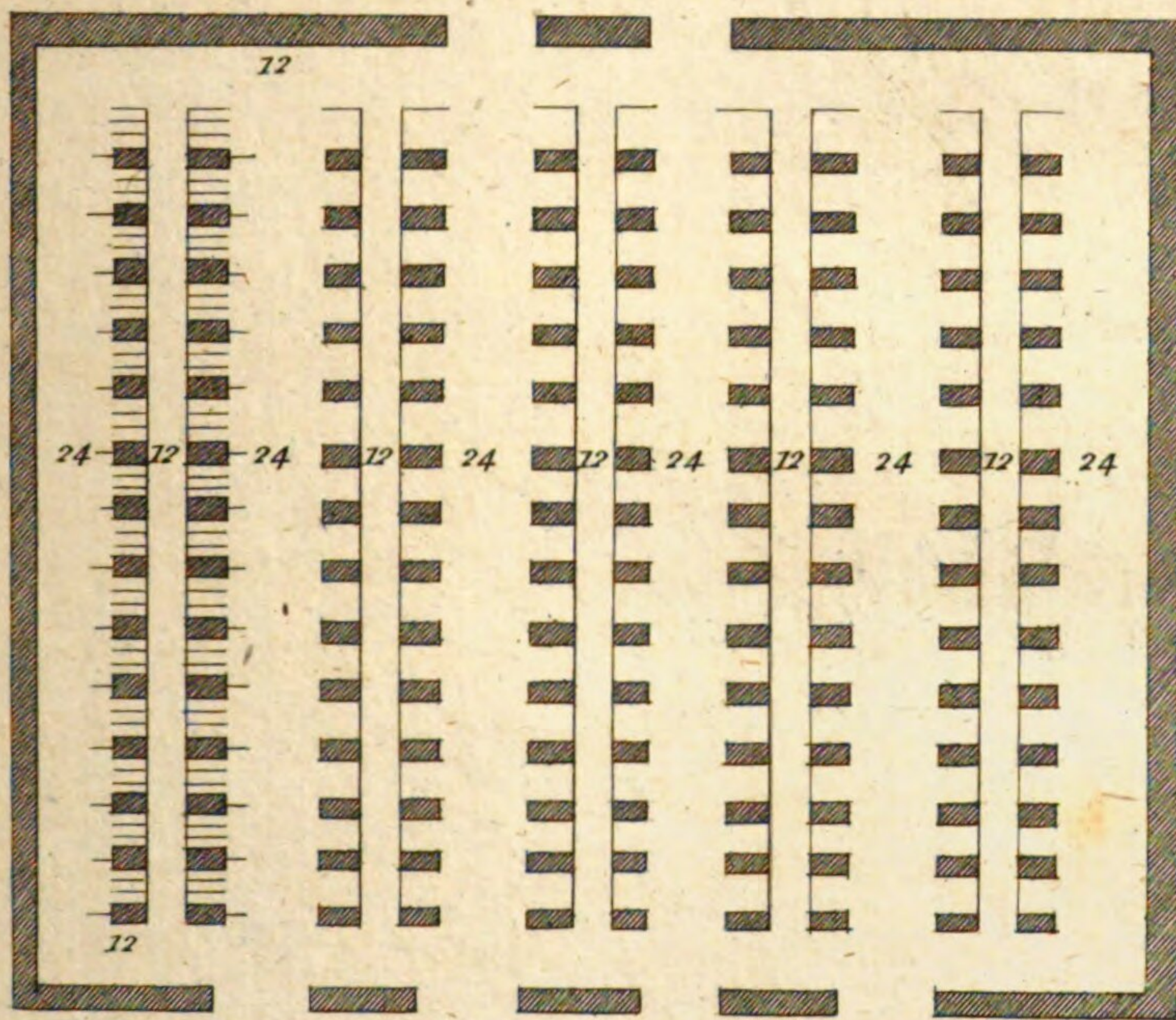


The Manner how a Company of Horse is Lodged.

Fig. 1.

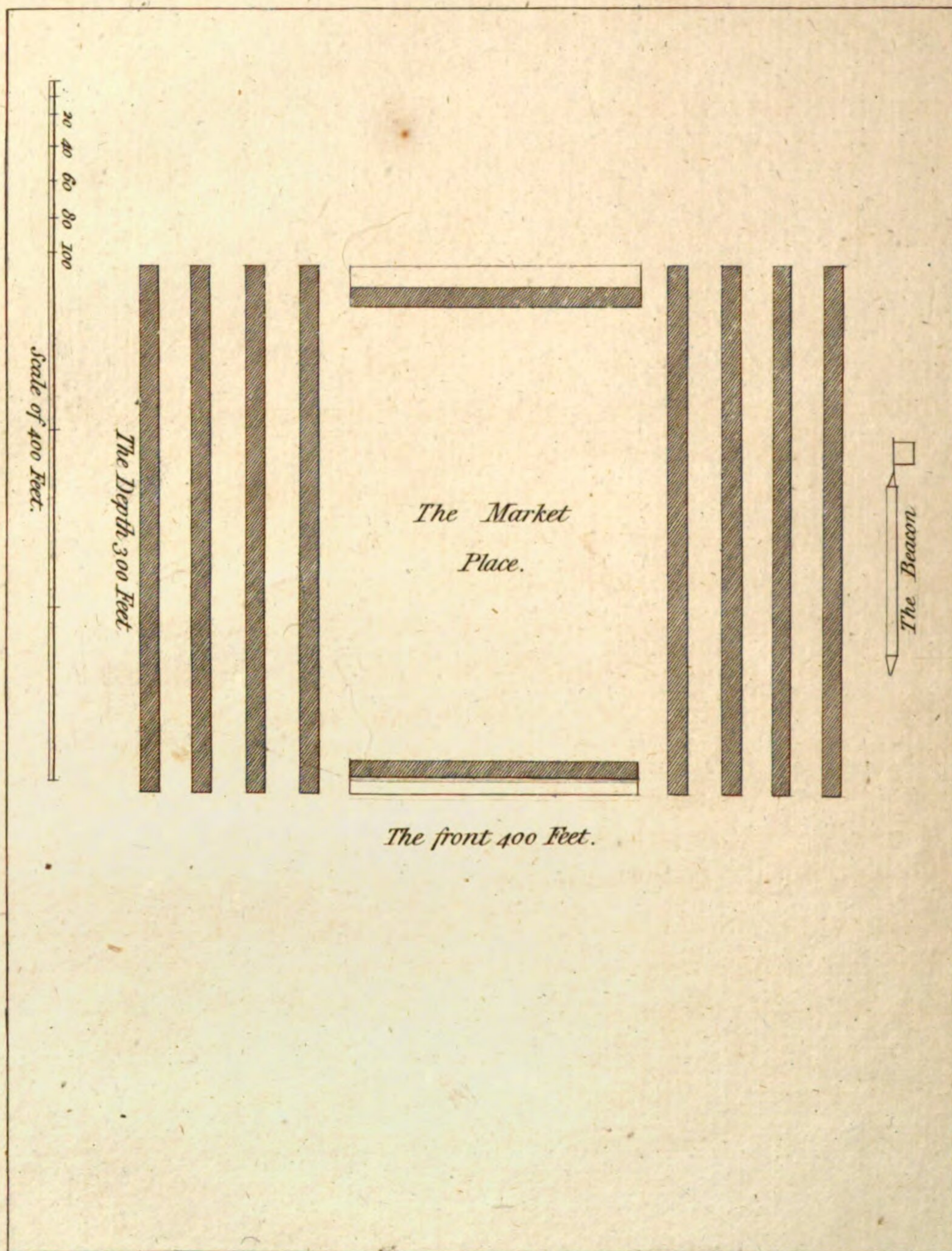


The Manner of Lodging a Regiment in the field consisting of 3 Companies of Cuirassiers and one of Harquebusiers.



The Front 348 feet

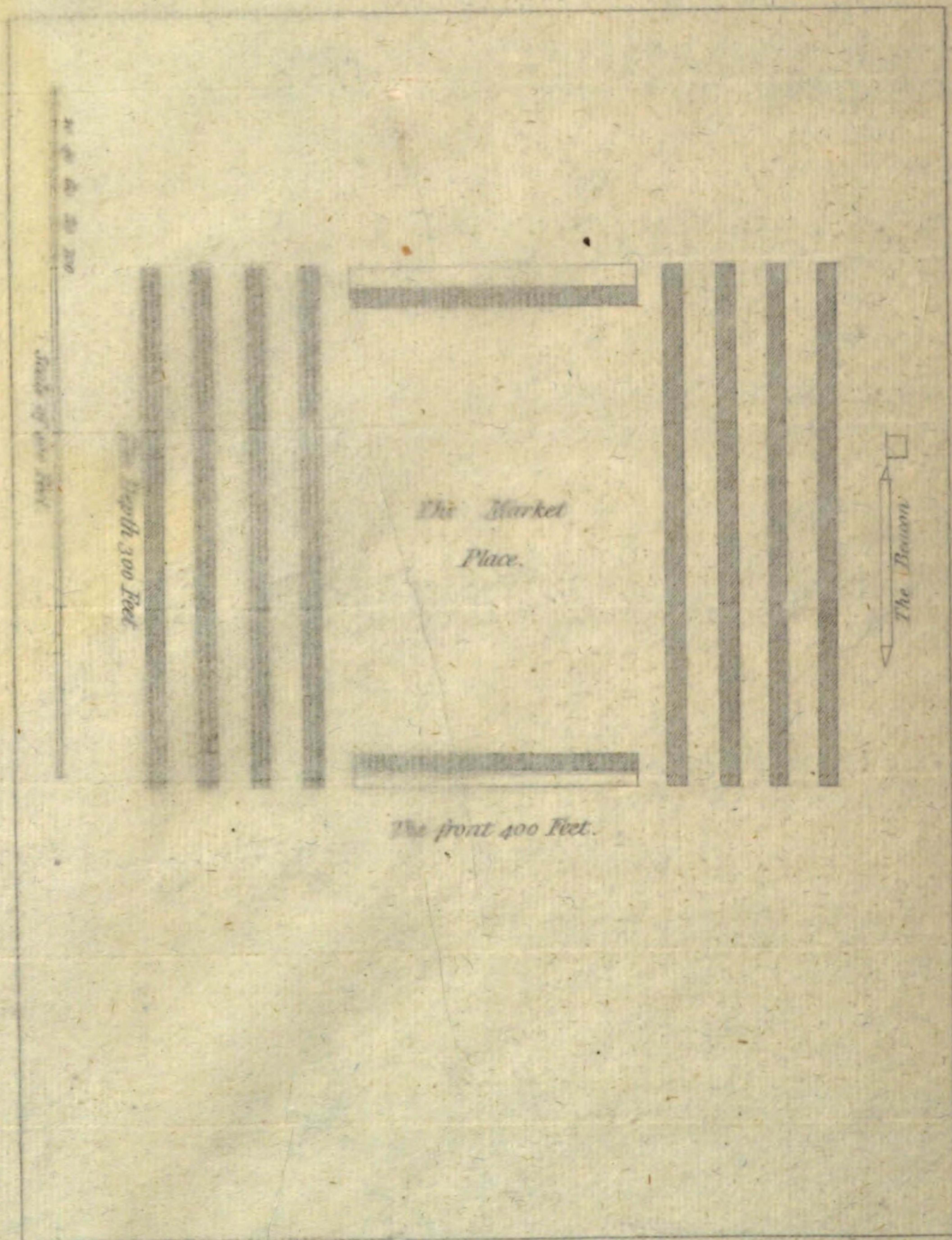
The forme of the Quarter of the Waggons.



CASTRAMETATION Pl:4.

or broad, as the number of the waggons proposed for the campe shall require; which breadth, notwithstanding for example's sake, we will, at this time, take at 348 foot; within which square, the waggons shall be placed in their files; their backs opposed one to another, and their files seperated asunder by a streete of twelve foote runninge betweene them; in which streete, the waggon drivers may lay up their provisions of fourrage; then between every couple of files, shall be left a street of 24 foote broad, which shall be for passage out and into the quarters: every waggon having three horses, is allowed twelve foot in length, which is the length of his waggon, and eighteen foote in breadth; six whereof is allowed for the breadth of the waggon, (for the axeltree is 5 foote and halfe) and the other twelve foote for the three horses; this must also be noted; that ordinarily the waggoners make no cabbans, but either lye upon, or under their waggons; but those that desire to have one, may builde behind their waggons in the street of twelve foote broad; now, according to the fore-mentioned computation, in this manner, there may lodge in a square of 348 foote broade, and 300 foote deepe; ten files of waggons, and every file consisting of fourteen waggons, which makes the whole summe of the waggons one hundred and forty; and though there be many more in ~~the~~ ^{the} quarter, yet they are not to be mentioned, because they lodge by those to whose service they are appointed; upon the four sides of the quarter, lodge the vivandiers, or sutlers, which follow the waggons, who builde 12 foote deepe; were the number of waggons be greater, you must enlarge your ground proportionally.

For the market-place in depth, we take three hundred foote, as we do in the other quarters; and in breadth or front, 400 foote; in which square, in forme diverse double rowes of cabbans three hundred foot long, and tenn foote broad, and leave between every two rowes, a space of twenty foote; towards which space inward, the backs of the cabbans are opposed one against another, through
this



or broad, as the number of the waggons proposed for the campe shall require; which breadth, notwithstanding for example's sake, we will, at this time, take at 348 foot; within which square, the waggons shall be placed in their files; their backs opposed one to another, and their files separated asunder by a streete of twelve foote runninge betweene them; in which streete, the waggon drivers may lay up their provisions of fourrage; then between every couple of files, shall be left a street of 24 foote broad, which shall be for passage out and into the quarters: every waggon having three horses, is allowed twelve foot in length, which is the length of his waggon, and eighteen foote in breadth; six whereof is allowed for the breadth of the waggon, (for the axeltree is 5 foote and halfe) and the other twelve foote for the three horses; this must also be noted; that ordinarily the waggoners make no cabbans, but either lye upon, or under their waggons; but those that desire to have one, may builde behind their waggons in the street of twelve foote broad; now, according to the fore-mentioned computation, in this manner, there may lodge in a square of 348 foote broad, and 300 foote deepe; ten files of waggons, and every file consisting of fourteen waggons, which makes the whole summe of the waggons one hundred and forty; and though there be many more in service, yet they are not to be mentioned, because they lodge by those to whose service they are appointed; upon the four sides of the quarter, lodge the vivandiers, or sutlers, which follow the waggons, who builde 12 foote deepe; were the number of waggons be greater, you must enlarge your ground proportionally.

For the market-place in depth, we take three hundred foote, as we do in the other quarters; and in breadth or front, 400 foote; in which square, in forme diverse double rowes of cabbans three hundred foot long, and tenn foote broad, and leave between every two rowes, a space of twenty foote; towards which space inward, the backs of the cabbans are opposed one against another; through
this

this space, is noe passage, for it serves only for places of firing to dress their meate, and for other uses: in the midst betweene these rowes, in the market-place, 200 foot broad, as the followinge figure will shew you.

FURTHERMORE, it is to be understood, that the people that are lodged about the market-place, and shopkeepers, chandlers, butchers, and taverners, every kinde of which are to lodge or quarter in severall rowes apart by themselves; the richest shopps nearest the greate markett, as haberdashers, sellers of small wares, silkmen, and the rest; in giving to the taverners their quarter, respect and care must be had also, to seperate the honest sorte of them from the reste.

THERE are yet remayning to be described two quarters more; the one of noblemen strangers, and the other the magazines of the vivres; the former of which I set not down in this place, because we give unto noblemen strangers, a square of 300 foot in depth, as the other squares are; and soe manie foot in front, as necessity shall require; wherein they dispose of their tents, cabans, and provisions accordingly, as they themselves shall think fittest.

SOE likewise doe wee of the general of the vivres, the which, with all the waggons belonging to him, are placed in such order as wee have sett down in that place, were wee speak of the waggons: and soe alsoe, the waggons of the generall of the artillery.

NOTE, that if the regiments both of horse and foote, consisted all of one certaine number of companies, and those companies all of like heads, they might be all lodged in like squares with much more ease and beautie; but this happens not in our age, as it did among the Romans, whose cohortes were all of like numbers.

Now, ere you proceede to the measureing out of the quarters, it is first necessarie you know, what provisions, and how manie men are to be lodged in each quarter; to which purpose, there shall

shall be a state of the whole armie, and an exact list given of every particular regiment, both of horse and of foot; as also, of all things else belonging to the armie, to their quarter-master generall, that hee may governe himself thereby.

THIS beinge thus performed; yet, consideringe, that in the layinge downe of a campe, we are to join divers quarters together, both of horse and foot, with the other quarters alsoe pertaininge unto it; it would be a difficult thinge, to marke and remarke them down in haste, and in order, upon paper; if some good rule were not sett downe before hand for the performance of the same; for it happens oftentimes, that presently after the viewinge of the place, the camp is to be lodged; the rule invented for this is thus; wee score out every one of the aforesaid quarters in little squares, uppon cartes, or thin pasteboard, which afterward we clip or cutt, in such sorte, that they containe the common depth of the quarters of three hundred foote; and the breadth or front accordinge to the liste, which is given up of them; as for example; imagine that in the list, one regiment had 300 foote in depthe, and 708 in front; we cutt a carte or pasteboard by a certain and sett schale of that breadth and depth; uppon which we write the colonel's name, and soe we doe with all the regiments of horse and foote; these small cartes demonstratinge the quarters of the severall regiments; as alsoe, the quarters of the high officers, and all the other parts of the campe; beinge all thus cutt and pared; we place and displace soe long together, till we find them fitted to our desire; and to doe it yet with more ease and commoditie; wee drawe diverse parrallel lines upon a sheete of paper; betweene which parallels are comprised, the common depth of 300 foote, with the streets of 50 foote: upon which, we place the aforesaid quarters in their order.

THIS alsoe is to be noted, that in layinge downe and ordayninge the quarters, we may perceave diverse times, that if some of them, were more large, or more strait, than the measures marked uppon
the

the said cartes doe containe, the order of the camp might be more fitly framed.

IN such a case, a man may take some quarters of those that may suffer alteration, somewhat more large or strait; as that of the waggons of the markett, of the artillery, vivres, noblemen strangers, and void place before the generall's quarter, for they are not so precisely calculated, but they may be drawn either more large, or more straight; but the regiments of the foote, and of the horse; as alsoe, the quarters of the generalls, and of the generall of the artillery, must remaine upon their sett measure.

FURTHERMORE, you must note; that seeinge this manner of settinge downe a quarter is easie and present; it will be good to have diverse figures in a readines continually with him; as one, with all the cavallerie, and the rest of the armie, as it were within one entrenchment; another without the cavallerie, or any other of their quarter; soe that a man may be provided for all occasions, according to the resolution that shall be taken; of which figures, I might here sett downe some, if it were needful; for by that which is already sett downe, this may be well and easily understood.

IT being once knowne by the precedent plott upon paper, what figure the campe shall beare; the quarter-master-generall must first beginne to marke out the squares or regiments of the infanterie; to which purpose, he is to have carried along with him, some one hundred and fifty beacons, or as many as he knows will be necessarie; which beacons are painted staves, about nine foote longe, havinge a smale square flagg at the top, and serving to stick downe upon the angles of the quarters.

IT must be forbidden by sounde of drumme, upon paine of corporall punishment, any man to pluck them up; in like sorte, all men must be forbidden to come into the place, whilst the quarters are markinge out, but only those that are appointed for that worke; and to avoide confusion, one certaine and common measure must alsoe be observed throughoute the whole campe, to witt, a
rodd,

rodd, divided by feete and inches, which shall be called, the campe measure.

ALL the under quarter-masters of regiments, must follow the quarter-master-generall; to the end, that assoone as the quarters are marked out, he may shew and deliver unto each one, the ground that belongs unto him; who is to looke unto it, and to marke out the lodgings of the companies of his regiment, and the files of the cabbans, togeather with the streetes of the regiment, for it is not possible for the quarter-master-generall to performe that worke alone soe speedily, and in soe smale time as is requisite.

THESE things beinge thus understood, we are to sticke downe the foure beakons appointed, to note out the quarters of every regiment in the field; which quarters doe containe right angled squares, 200 foote deepe; in which depth, the souldiers are to build their lodgings, and this to be performed by the helpe of the surveyinge-crosse, and after the manner of measuringe of land by the ordinary way of surveyours, which being sufficiently known to every ingineur, it would be needlesse here to give anie particular instruction thereof, onlie there may be this short advertisement added; (to witt) that of the four sides of the squares, it is not necessaric to measure out above one or two; and that, where the sides of the camp doe beginne, for the other sides are made more commodiously by the beacons, and helpe of the surveyinge-crosse, as they knowe sufficiently enough.

FURTHERMORE, it is to be noted, that every foure beacons belonginge to the regiments, are marked with figures, graven in the staves, as with the figure of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c. (to witt) the foure beacons of the first regiment, everie one with the figure 1; of the second, with the figure 2: and soe of the rest in order, which is observed for the avoydinge of some difficulties; partly, because the quarter-maisters themselves in respect of the great multitude of beacons, fall sometimes in dispute about their particular quarters,

partly because the quarter-master-generall, (who hath a note of the same figures as they are noted upon the beacons, or anie others, beinge asked concerninge anie of the quarters, may presently shewe where they are, without goinge to the place.

THE quarter-master-generall haveinge accomplished his worke of measureinge and markeinge out the campe as before said; then followes presently, every quarter-master's worke, of measureinge and markeinge out the quarters, and particularities thereof of his own regiment, which he is to observe in manner followinge:

HEE is to keepe about him continually, a ground platt of his regiment, accordinge to the forme already sett downe, that hee may readily find out all the necessarie measures thereof, though his memory should fail him; he must alsoe have a field measure of eight foote long, which, for his more ready use, shall be a long smale line, marked with some light colour'd tape, stuck into the line at every eight foote end: beinge thus provided in the place of his quarter, which lyes betweene the foure beacons, signifyinge the square of the souldiers lodgings; hee divides by the helpe of his line, the breadth or front of his quarter, from eight foote to eight foote, according as his ground shewes him, stickinge downe at every tape, a bough or sprigg of a tree, or some stick or pinne; the same division he makes alsoe in the reere of the quarter, betweene the hindermost two beacons, alwaies to be remembred; the space in the middle of the regiment without pinnes, and noted by some other remarkable distinction.

HAVINGE proceeded thus farre, rests now the makinge of the partition of the souldiers cabbans by the serjeants, whilst the quarter-master make out the captaine's lodgings, before the souldiers quarters, and the futlers cabbans also in the reere of the souldiers cabbans, which is before specified sufficiently, in its particular figure.

THE serjeants ought to know (in which the quarter-master is to give them his assistance) how many cabbans are requisite for the company;

company; which, because it is already sett downe in its proper figure, we will not mention in this place; and this once known by him, hee must take care that the streetes and rowes of cabbans be built by the souldiers precisely upon their measures; and that the forme of the lodginge of the companie, as of the regiment, be ever a right angled square; and that the streetes betweene the rowes bee alike wide, and runne even.

THE serjeants understandinge thus what they are to observe; the marking out of the cabbans is to be performed after this manner followinge: every serjeant, that hath two rowes of cabbans, layes downe four lines, from the head of the souldiers cabbans, to the reere, stretched out from the boughs or pinns, stuck downe by the quarter-maister; betweene which lines the cabbans are to be built, as alsoe a streete left in the middle; as the figure before in the particular companie doth demonstrate; and for the settinge forth of every cabban, hee sticks downe foure smale pinnes, signifying the four corners thereof; which being performed, the serjeant hath done his worke; soe that briefly to collect what hath beene sett downe concerninge this busincis, every serjeant is to take care and oversee the souldiers of the companie, that they build not out of the limits prescribed them; every quarter-master is to see that the serjeants doe their duty, every captaine that his company be well and regularly lodged, and everie collonel, that his regiment may be an example to the rest; for by this meanes, the encampinge will be dispatched orderly in all her parts.

OUT of this order observed in the lodginge the regiment of foote, already declared, may be easily understood the rules to be held in lodging the cavallerie, the difference being little or nothings, but in the vedature, which is sufficiently exprest in the figure where I handle the lodgeing of the horse.

TOUCHINGE the order to be held in makeinge out the quarters of the higher officers, the waggons and the market-place, the figure formerly declared may suffice; and seeinge that for every one of

them, there is to be marked out but one figure of smale labour, their parts beinge already sett downe, they may be dispatched at the same instant that the souldiers lodgeings are, by some particular men apppointed for the purpose, after the quarter-master-generall hath sett out their places by the same rules, and therefore is not necessarie to speak anie further of them.

THE quarters of the lodgeings of the armie being thus performed and perfected, every regiment is to enter into the place of quarteringe, in the same order they kept in marchinge.

THE markinge out of the alarm place, with the tracinge of the trench, is performed by an ingenier and his conductors, beinge accompanied for that service, with fifty or fixty pioners that digg, directed by a match or line laide straite along upon the ground, smale gutters, makinge two right parallel lines six foote asunder for the breadth of the ditch, whereof the innermost is 206 foote, removed every way from the captaine's lodgings, so as 200 rests for the allarm place, and six foote for the thickness of the parapett, or breast.

HERE is to be noted, that though the soldiers of the campe were before commanded to goe each to their place of quarteringe, yet it is no special hinderance to this worke; because, it consists of nothinge else but two right parallel lines, far enough off from the soldiers.

THESE lines being thus marked out by small gutters, you must cast up how many foot of entrenchment will fall to every regiment's share, allottinge by the rule of fellowship, every regiment his proportion, beginning at the first regiment, and ending with the last; which parts or shares, must be likewise distinguished by beacons, or some other apparent marke, soe as every one may knowe his parte; soe likewise are the colonells, either by whole regiments or by partes, accordinge to the order given, or as necessity shall require, to distribute their portion among y^e companies equally; and

and soe likewise the captaines their companies partes equally among the souldiers.

THE colonel must likewise appointe some of the captaines and other officers to be his overseers of the souldiers labour, that they do their dutie, and he, or his lieutenant, is to oversee the whole parte of his regiment.

HAVINGE discoursed fully of encamping, and the order to be helde in performinge it; it will not be amisse to sett downe some necessarie admonitions, concerninge such things as the quarter-masters of regiments are to have care of, each one in his quarter; that that which hath beene well worked forth and built, may be kept in good and decent order.

FIRST, he shall suffer no souldier, his wife or children, or anie other in their behalf, to draw anie beer, sell anie goods, or futtle within the regiment: for to this end, there are futlers ordained and allowed, and their cabbans appointed behind the regiment. 2dly. Hee shall not permitt any places for the dressinge of meate, or dicinge tables, or any holes for what purpose soever to be digged, neither before nor behind, nor neare the quarter, beinge dangerous in the night-tyme both for man and horse to passe such wayes, especially uppon anie occation of alarme, which may breede great inconveynience and disorder; for behind the futlers cabbans, there is a fireing-place appointed to dresse their victuals, aside from all other passages. 3dly. Hee shall not suffer any building of cabbans, placing of tents or shops, felling of goods upon waggons or carrs, or anie thinge else within the foresaid allarm-place, or wayes before, behind, within, or about his regiment; but command all such to repaire to the markett-place. 4thly. Considering that the butchers are permitted to lodge here in the cabans behind the regiment, and that there proceeds much filth and stinke from the beasts that are killed, causinge great sicknes and infection; the quarter-master shall cause the marshall to take care that a pitt may be digged of a convenient depth and largenes in the grounde behinde the quarter,
which

which shall be covered with strong sparres, and planks layde over those sparres to cover it close; in the midst of which planks shall be a doore to shut and open of one foot and a half square; these pitts shall be made at the charge of the butcher or butchers that shall quarter with the regiment.

It were necessarie alsoe, that every colonel, or great officer that keepes a table, should have such made near their lodgings, that the whole quarter might be kepte sweete and holesome, as well as their owne lodgings, which otherwise in smale time, must needs growe very nasty and noisome. 5thly. He shall cause the pioners to digg a ditch of two foote broade, and two foote deepe, at the end of the ten foote allowed behind the sutlers to fire in, that they may be held within that precinct; otherwise, you shall have them make their fireinge places some more further out then others, even upon the great common streete with the discommodities before spoken of, besides the unseemlines of makeing the streetes crooked, all which may be prevented by the aforesaid ditch: 6thly. It is to be noted, that there are some who give themselves out for merchants and sutlers, and are none; who, at the beginninge, when the quarters are marked out, bespeak the best places, keepinge them emptie, and excusing themselves that they expect their provisions from hower to hower, which they doe of purpose, to sell them at a deere rate to other merchants that come late; to prevent this inconvenyence, we divide out the places with such proviso, that if any other come that desires them, and hath his provisions ready at hand, we deliver them to those; and the buildings of the cabbans, which to cover their intents, the others may have begunne, or made up, shall be forfeited, without havinge any thinge for their paines, or for the stufte that went to those buildings; for, being provided, and fetcht out of the countrie, they pertaine not to them; the emptie tents or bouthes they bringe, because they are theirs, they may take away with them.

THUS

THUS have I ended the order and rules for incampinge, with the ordinances thereof, for keepinge the campe regular, neate, and sweet: I will now proceede accordinge to my purpose, to speake of the guardes, and watches, and roundes to be held, both without, and within the campe, and the discipline thereof."

By these regulations, it appears, that the captain, lieutenant and ensign, pitched in the front of their company; Sir James Turner, says; Henry of Nassau, Prince of Orange, altered the custom, and ordered them all three to pitch their tents in the rear, or at least, the captain, for two reasons; first, that the soldiers might have an easy communication with the parade or place of arms, unincumbered by the huts of their officers, or the cords of their tents; and next, that the officers being lodged in the rear near the futers, might prevent all brawls and disorders occasioned by drunkenness, which commonly originates there.

RESPECTING huts, Lord Orrery observes, that "in ancient times they used tents instead of hutts, for that the way of making war was in the field, and armies were daily in motion; and in such cases, straw, rushes, or flages to cover, and wood to make stakes and roofs, were not always at hand, nor to frome the roofs easie; but now, that for the most part, war is made in the besieging of strong places, or in standing camps; both officers and soldiers use hutts."

IN the abridgement of the English military discipline, published by authority, A. D. 1686; there are the following regulations respecting encamping:

THE major-general for the day, having with him such of the guards of horse as shall be thought fit, and ordered by the general for the security of the camp, is to march before the army, that he may have time to view the ground, and to settle the camp, not far from water, if it may be with convenience; which being done, he is to order the quarter-master-general to set out the

the ground to the majors of the brigades, who thereupon set it out to the adjutants of each regiment, who divide it for each troop or company; the major-general in the mean while is to ride about the camp, to post the main guards as he finds best for the safety of the army, and is to order the quarter-master-general what ground or village he is to take up for the king's quarters; as also some commodious place for the park of artillery, and another for the bread carts, which is commonly near the centre of the army with the hospital.

WHEN every thing has been done as abovementioned, and the camp all marked out, then the major-general is to send an aid-de-camp, to give notice to the general that all is ready; and at the intring into the camp, the major-general is to meet the general to give him a full account of every particular; the adjutant's general of horse and foot attending always on the general, that they may be ready to execute his orders, and make detatchments without delay.

IT is the usual practice to camp an army in two lines; the second distinct from the first three hundred paces; that is, from the head of the first line to the head of the second, whereof one hundred and twenty are for the encamping of the first line; so that there remains one hundred and eighty paces, for the distance between the last tents of the first line, and the head of the second; and if the army encamp with a reserve, then the same distance is to be observed by them.

THE horse are to be posted on the wings, and the foot in the middle in such a manner, that the lines of the camp look towards the enemy, and be covered behind by a brook, or marsh, if it may be with convenience.

EVERY squadron consisting of three troops, and fifty men in each troop, must be allowed fifty paces; and every battalion consisting of sixteen companies, and fifty men in each company, must have one hundred paces allowed for their encamping.

ALL

ALL troops or companies of horse or foot consisting but of fifty men, are to be encamped on one row of baragues, or hutts; but when troops or companies consist of more men, there must be two files of baragues or hutts.

IT is to be observed, that in each squadron or battalion, the colonel's company be always upon the right or left, and there make their row of hutts; behind them must be left the space for the street; then the second company make their row of hutts; near to which, the third makes theirs, leaving the space of two foot only between their hutts, which is called the by-street; and the same thing is to be observed by the horse.

THE hutts of the foot always open toward the street; the baragues of the cavalry always toward the horses heads.

THE hutts of the quarter-master and serjeants are always to be at the head of the troopers and soldiers, and the officers tents behind.

THE camp of the first brigade of the army is on the right hand of the first line; that of the second, on the left; the third is posted on the right of the second line; the fourth, on the left, and the rest in the centre according to their seniority: this is to be observed among the horse, as well as foot.

THE dragoons are never to be encamped in the body of the army, but have their camp at the head, or on the wings on that side where the greatest danger is, serving always as an out-guard for the army.

EVERY regiment is to have a guard at the head of their camp, and the major-general for the day takes care to place the great guard in a proper place and distance from the army towards the enemy, choosing for that effect a place where all the avenues may be discovered; there it is to continue during the day; and at night is to draw off near the army, at the head of the foot.

THE colonel or officer of the horse who mounts the guard, is to

send off an out-guard, or advance-guard, consisting of twenty-four troopers, commanded by a lieutenant, whom he posts where he sees most convenient, in a place, from whence the country about may be easily discovered.

THE duty of him who commands the guard, is to let no person whatsoever pass without an order, to look every where about, and to send notice to the general, whenever he discovers any troop or forces.

It is to be observed, that the measure of the ground before-mentioned, is meant only for the encampment of an army, for if it were to be ranged in battel in case of service, the distances between the battalions and squadrons are to be greater than in a camp; it must be endeavoured as much as may be, that the second line be equal to the first, keeping the same distance upon the right and left.

The Particulars of Encamping a Battalion.

WHEN the quarter-master hath his ground allotted to him for encamping a battalion, (which is commonly one hundred paces) he is to divide it in the manner following; viz. he must allow seven foote square to each hutt, two foot to the by-streets, and fifteen foot to the great streets: every companie consisting of fifty men, ought to have ten hutts; and there must be the distance of two foot between the hutts; the kitchens must be marked out at twelve foot distance from the last rowe of hutts, and are to be placed just over against them, so that the streets may be open quite through for the officers to pass easily to the head of the camp, as there shall be occasion: the length of the kitchens is to be nine foot and the breadth six foot; there must be thirty paces distant, between the soldiers kitchens, and the front of the captains tents; forty paces distant between the captains tents, and the front of the tents of the subaltern officers; and the remaining ground is for the

the encamping of the field-officers, and the captain's equipage; the sutlers are to encamp behind the officers tents; the colonels and field-officers, and staff-officers tents, are to be in the centre of the battalion behind the tents of the captains.

THERE must be twenty or thirty paces between one battalion and another; the serjeants hutts are to be at the head of the soldiers, to open the contrary way; that is, to the front.

THE pikes, (whether they are placed against a cross or in a stand) must be allowed at eighteen foot distance from the hutts; the muskets at eighteen foot distant from the pikes, that is before them.

THE colours and drums are to be set within the hollow of the pikes; the holberts of the serjeants that march with the shot should be placed with the muskets, and those of the serjeants that march with the pikes, with the pikes.

The Particulars of Encamping a Squadron.

WHEN a quarter-master of horse hath his ground allotted to him for a squadron, which is commonly fifty paces, he is to divide it in the following manner; viz. he must allow three paces for the length of a baraque, and two paces distant from the opening of the baragues, to the stakes to which the horses are fastened, and three paces for each horse's standing, and ten paces for the street.

To the second troop is to be allowed two paces distance, three paces for their baragues, and one pace distance for the by-streets.

THE third troop must have two paces distance, three paces for the baragues, and three paces for the horses; after which, there will remain fifteen paces, which makes the distance from one squadron to another.

IF the squadron be stronger, they must have more ground, this being only for a squadron of one hundred and fifty men in three troops; each troop making but one row of baragues.

THE colours are to be placed at eighteen foot distance from the front baragues in the same line with the pikes; there are commonly ten or twelve baragues on a row for every troop of fifty men; and there must be at least two paces distance from one baraque to another.

FOR the kitchens belonging to the troops, the officers tents, and the sutlers which attend upon the troops, the same measures are to be observed in proportion, as they are used for encamping of foot; by a pace is meant three foot.

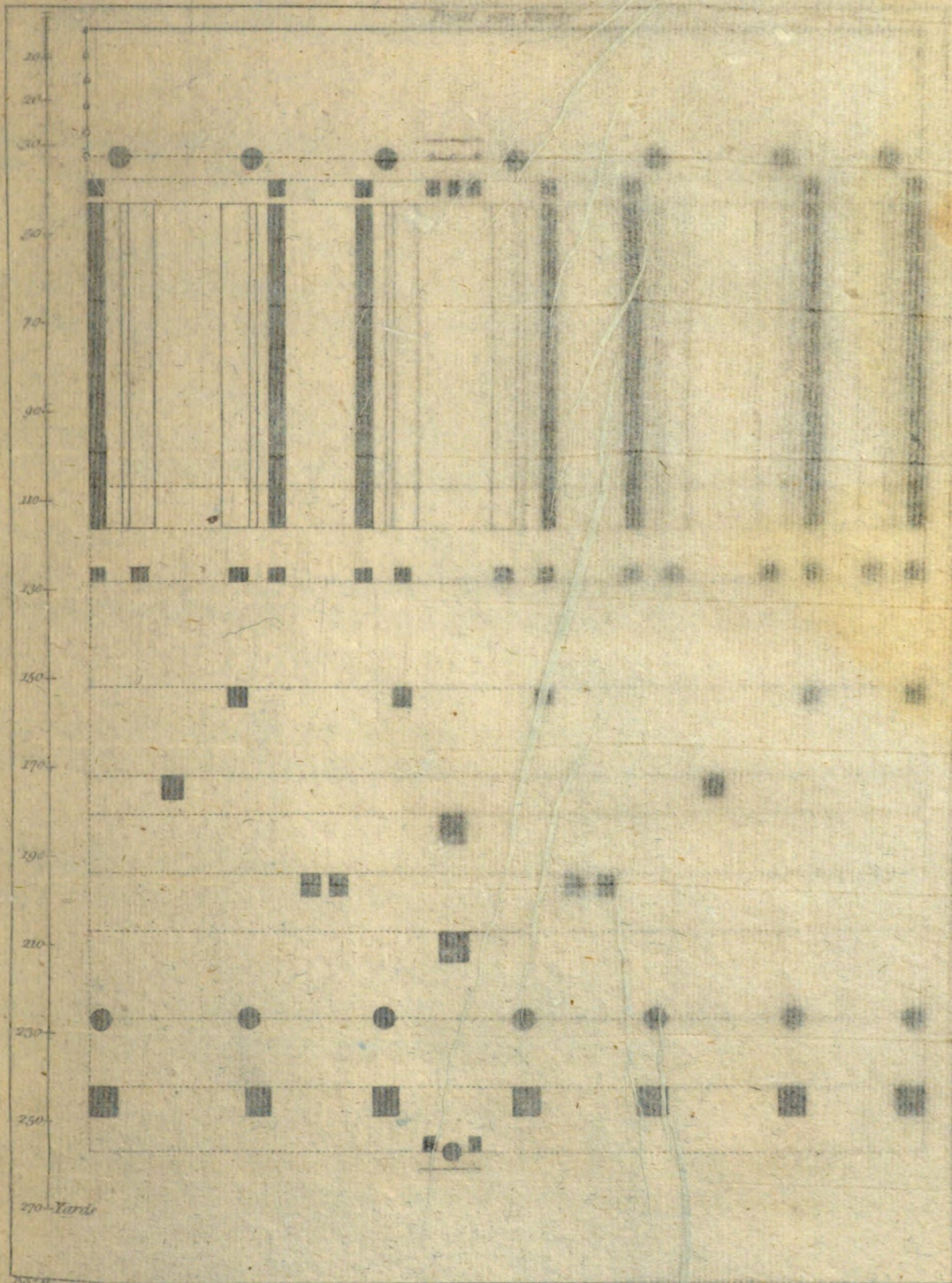
THE following are the general rules and proportions for encamping of an army, with the particulars for the encamping of a regiment of horse, and a battalion of foot, as laid down in Bland's Military Discipline, and which are much the same as now in use, allowing for the difference of the establishment of the regiment, excepting that the quarter and rear guards instead of facing to the regiment, now front outwards.

ARTICLE I.

Proportions to be observed in Encamping a Regiment of Dragoons of Six Troops, forming Three Squadrons, with the light Troop.

Front two hundred yards divided as follows:

	Yards.
FOR pitching six rows of tents, with the intervals between the tents and the pickets, length for the standing of the horses, and space for laying up the dung at fourteen yards each	84
For the breadth of three streetes, between the horses of each squadron, at seventeen yards each	51
For the breadth of two back streets, at twenty yards each	40
For the breadth of one street between the first squadron, and the light troop	9
	For



Drawn May 20 1844 by J. Cooper.

PLAN of the Encampment of a Regiment of Dragoons with 100 of a Batta forming
3 Squadrons with the light Troop on the right

The columns are to be placed at eighteen foot distance from the camp, measured by the same line with the pikes; there are to be pitched one at twelve paces on a row for every troop of the regiment, and the pikes are to be at least two paces distance from one another in a column.

When the columns belonging to the troops, the officers tents, and the baggage which attend upon the troops, the same measures are to be observed as proportioned, as they are used for encamping of foot; and a pace is meant three foot.

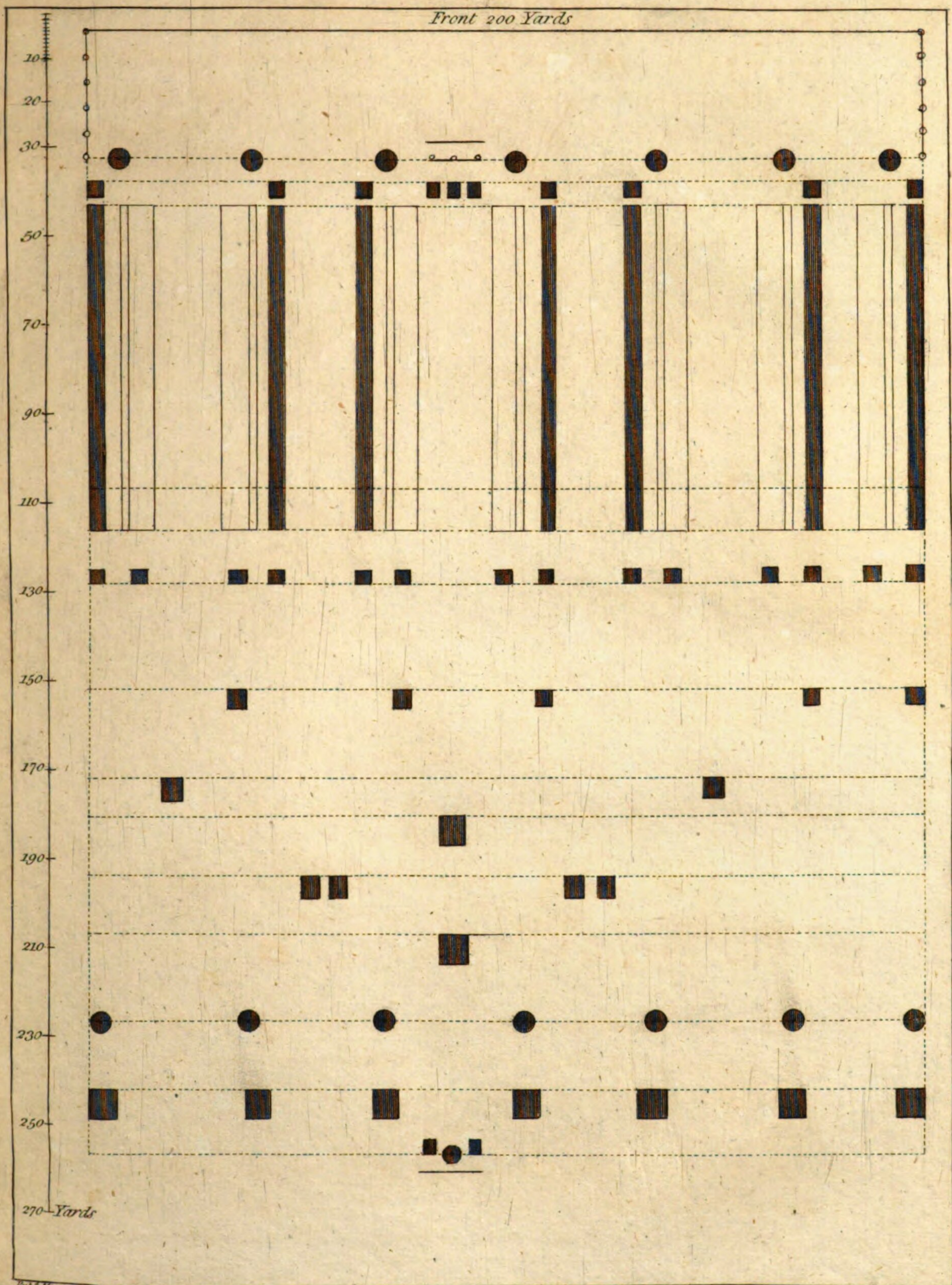
The following are the general rules and proportions for encamping of the army, with the particulars for the encamping of a regiment of horse, and a battalion of foot, as laid down in Bland's Military Discipline, and which are much the same as now in use, allowing for the difference in the establishment of the regiment, excepting that the quarter and rear guards instead of facing to the regiment, face front and flank.

ARTICLE I.

Proportions to be observed in Encamping a Regiment of Dragoons of Six Troops, forming Three Squadrons, with the light Troop.

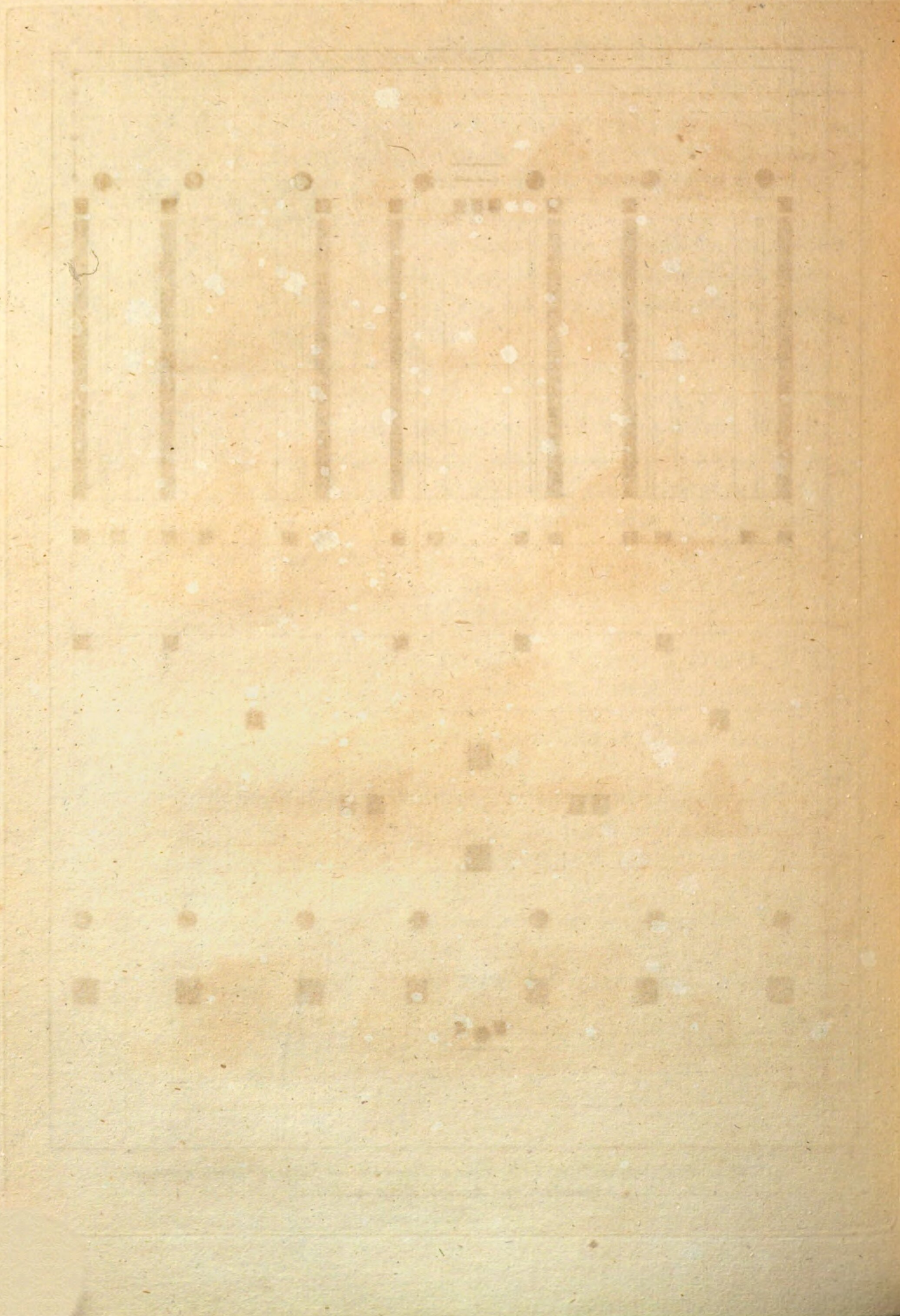
Front two hundred yards divided as follows:

	Yards.
For pitching six rows of tents, with the intervals between the tents and the pickets, length for the standing of the horses, and space for laying up the dung at fourteen yards each	84
For the breadth of three streets, between the horses of the first squadron, at seventeen yards each	51
For the breadth of two back streets, at twenty yards each	40
For the breadth of one street between the first squadron, and the light troop	9
	For



Pub. May 20, 1788 by J. Hooper.

*PLAN of the Encampment of a Regiment of Dragoons consisting of 6 Troops, forming
3 Squadrons with the light Troop on the right.*





MODERN TENTS. Pl. 1.

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

473

For pitching the tents, &c. of the light troops as above

Yards

10

Total front

Yards

200

The fourteen yards allowed for the front of each troop is divided as follows:

For pitching a horseman's tent

Yards

1

From front pole of the tents to the pickets

3

From the pickets to the edge of the dung

6

Breadth of the dung

4

14

N. B. The sixteen yards allowed for the front of the light troop, are divided in the same manner, the two additional yards being allowed for pitching their tents, which are larger than those of the other troops.

The interval between two regiments of dragoons, is

Yards

60

Total front and interval

Yards

200

Depth 258 yards divided as follows:

From the first line of parade, to the bells of arms

Yards

30

From the bells of arms to the front poles of the quarter-master's tents

5

From the front poles of the quarter-masters tents, to the first picket

5

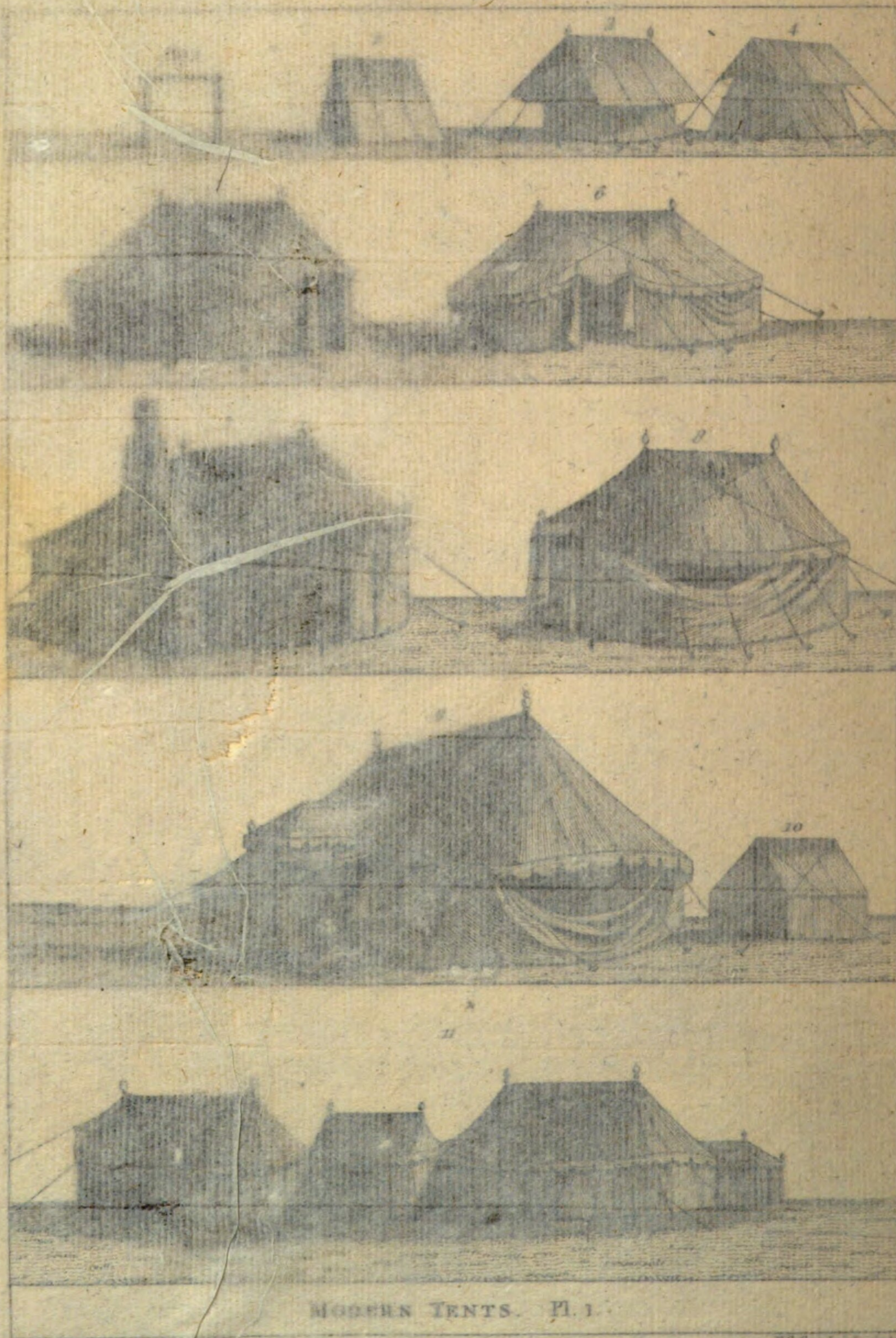
Allowed for the standing of sixty-six horses

66

For the standing of the subalterns horses, which are in a line with the troop

10

From



MODERN TENTS. Pl. 1

HC Gooding sculp

For pitching the tents, &c. of the light troop as	Yards.
above	16
Total front	200

The fourteen yards allowed for the front of each troop,
is divided as follows :

For pitching a horseman's tent	Yards.
	3
From front pole of the tents to the pickets	3
From the pickets to the edge of the dung	6
Breadth of the dung	2
	14

N. B. The sixteen yards allowed for the front of the light troop, are divided in the same manner; the two additional yards being allowed for pitching their tents, which are larger than those of the other troops.

The interval between two regiments of dragoons, is	Yards.
	60
Total front and interval	260

Depth 258 yards divided as follows :

	Yards.	
From the first line of parade, to the bells of arms	30	
From the bells of arms to the front poles of the quarter-	}	5
master's tents		
From the front poles of the quarter-masters tents, to the	}	5
first picket		
Allowed for the standing of sixty-six horses		66
For the standing of the subalterns horses, which are in a line	}	10
with the troop		
		From

	Yards.
From the rear of the subalterns horses, to the front of the subalterns tents - - - - -	12
From the front of the subalterns tents, to the front of the captains - - - - -	24
From the front of the captains, to the front of the field-officers - - - - -	20
From the front of the field-officers, to the front of the colonel's - - - - -	8
From the front of the colonel's to the front of the staff-officers - - - - -	14
From the front of the staff-officers, to the front of the grand sutler - - - - -	14
From the front of the grand sutler, to the centre of the kitchens - - - - -	20
From the centre of the kitchens, to the front of the petty sutlers - - - - -	15
From the front of the petty-sutlers, to the center of the bell of arms of the rear guard - - - - -	15
Total depth	258

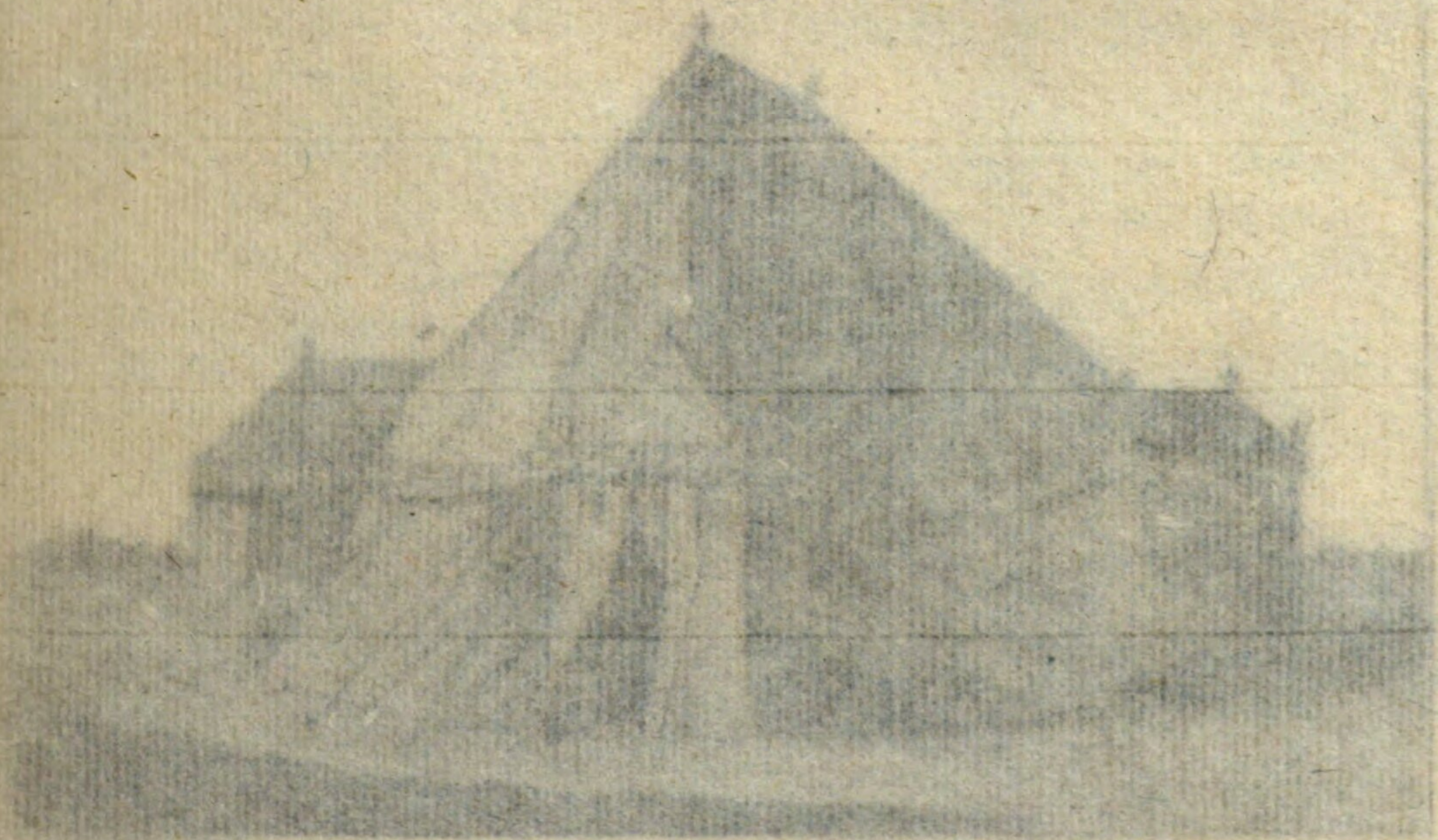
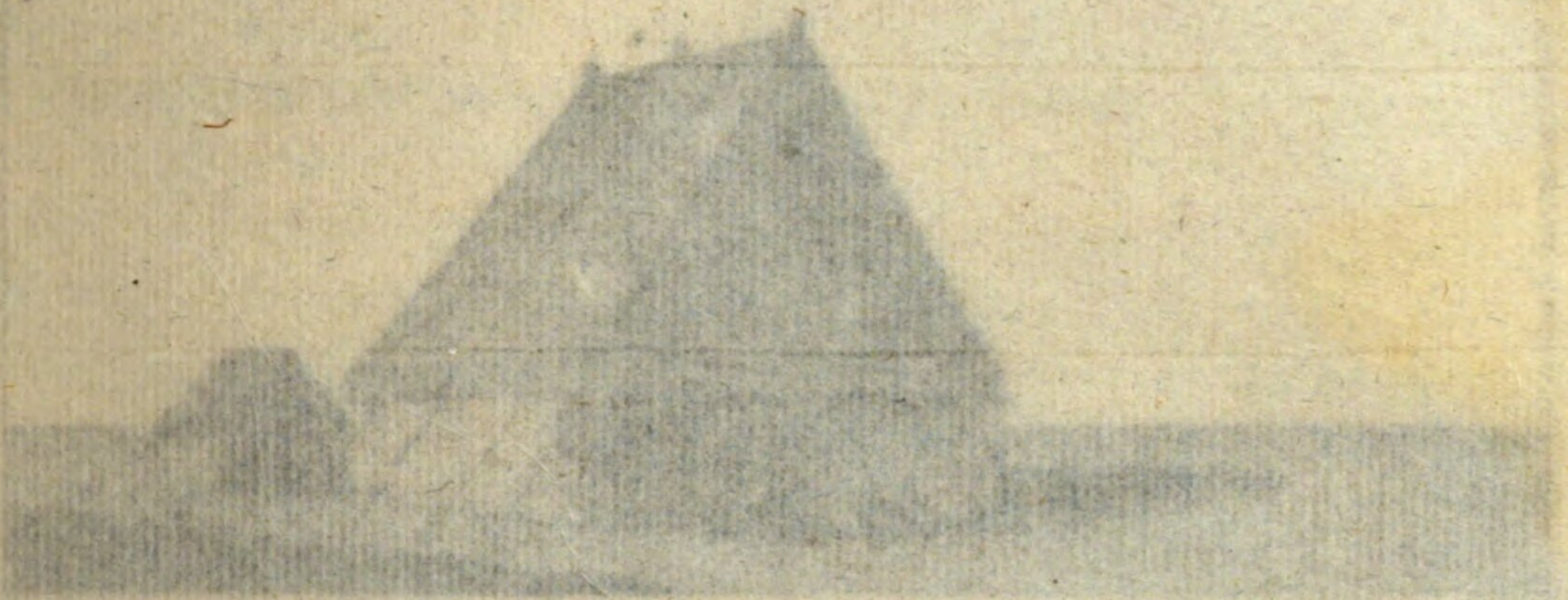
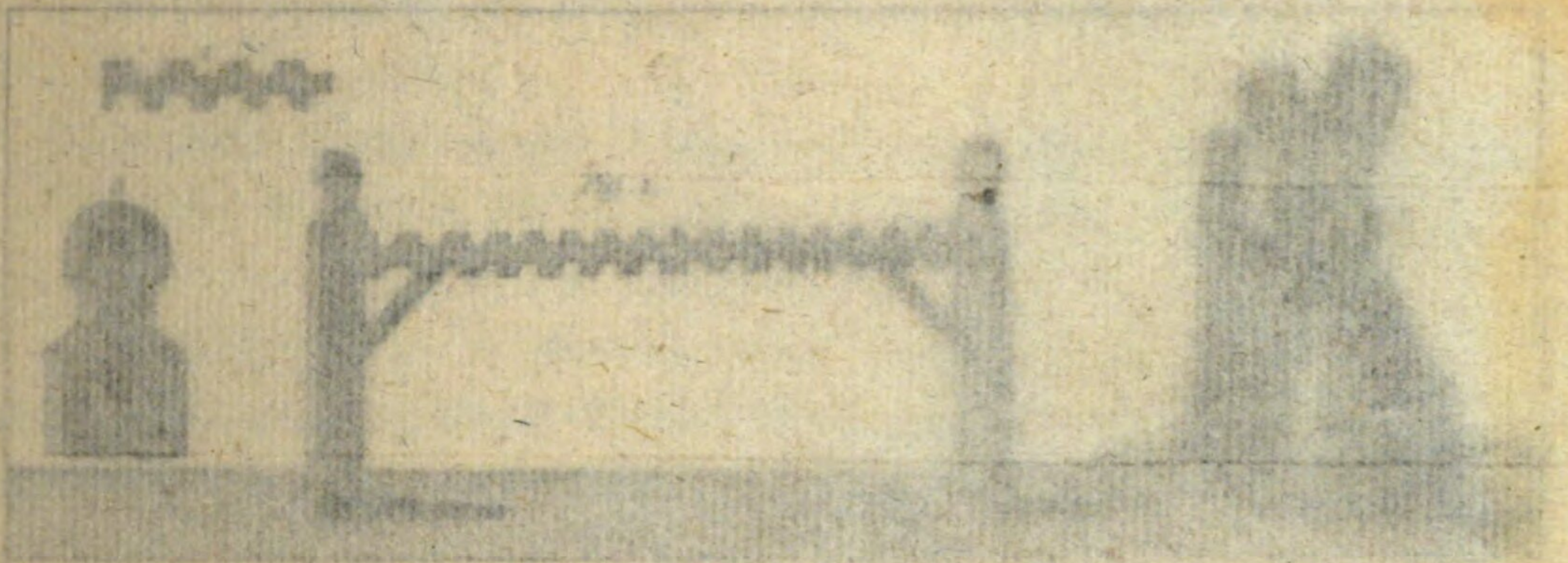
The parade of the standard-guard is four yards advanced before the center of the bell of arms.

The bells of arms are in a line with the pickets.

The standard-guard tents are pitched in the center of the third squadron, in a line with the fronts of the quarter-masters tents, and are three yards distant from center to center.

Eleven tents are pitched for the men of each troop; the center of the first and last are three yards distant from the ends of the pickets; the others are six yards distant from center to center.

Seven tents are pitched for the light troop; the center of the first and last are fourteen feet, one inch and a half, from the ends



HISTORY OF

	Yards.
From the rear of the tubalamin horses, to the front of the	12
From the front of the tubalamin tents, to the front of the	24
From the front of the captains, to the front of the field-	20
From the front of the field-officers, to the front of the	8
From the front of the adjutant's to the front of the staff-	14
From the front of the staff-officers, to the front of the	14
From the front of the grand sutler, to the centre of the	20
From the front of the kitchens, to the front of the petty	15
From the front of the petty-sutlers, to the center of the bell	15
of the rear guard	
Total depth	258

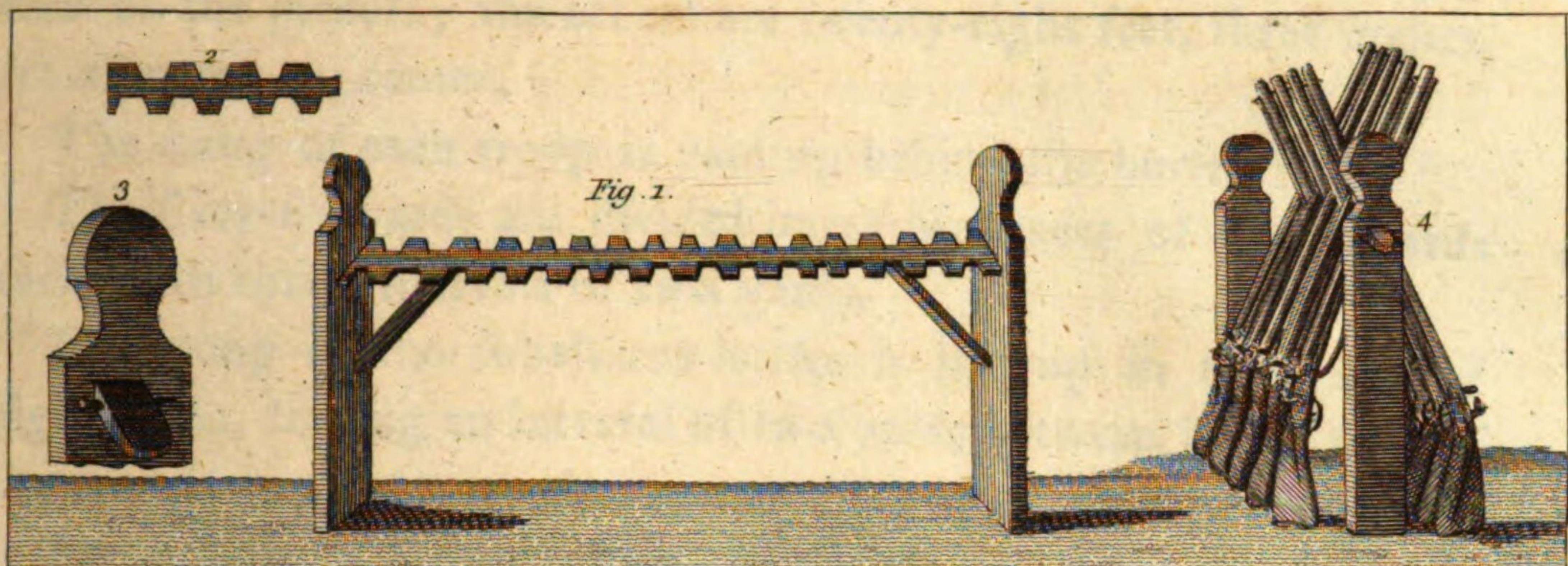
The parade of the standard-guard is four yards advanced before the center of the bell of arms.

The bells of arms are in a line with the pickets.

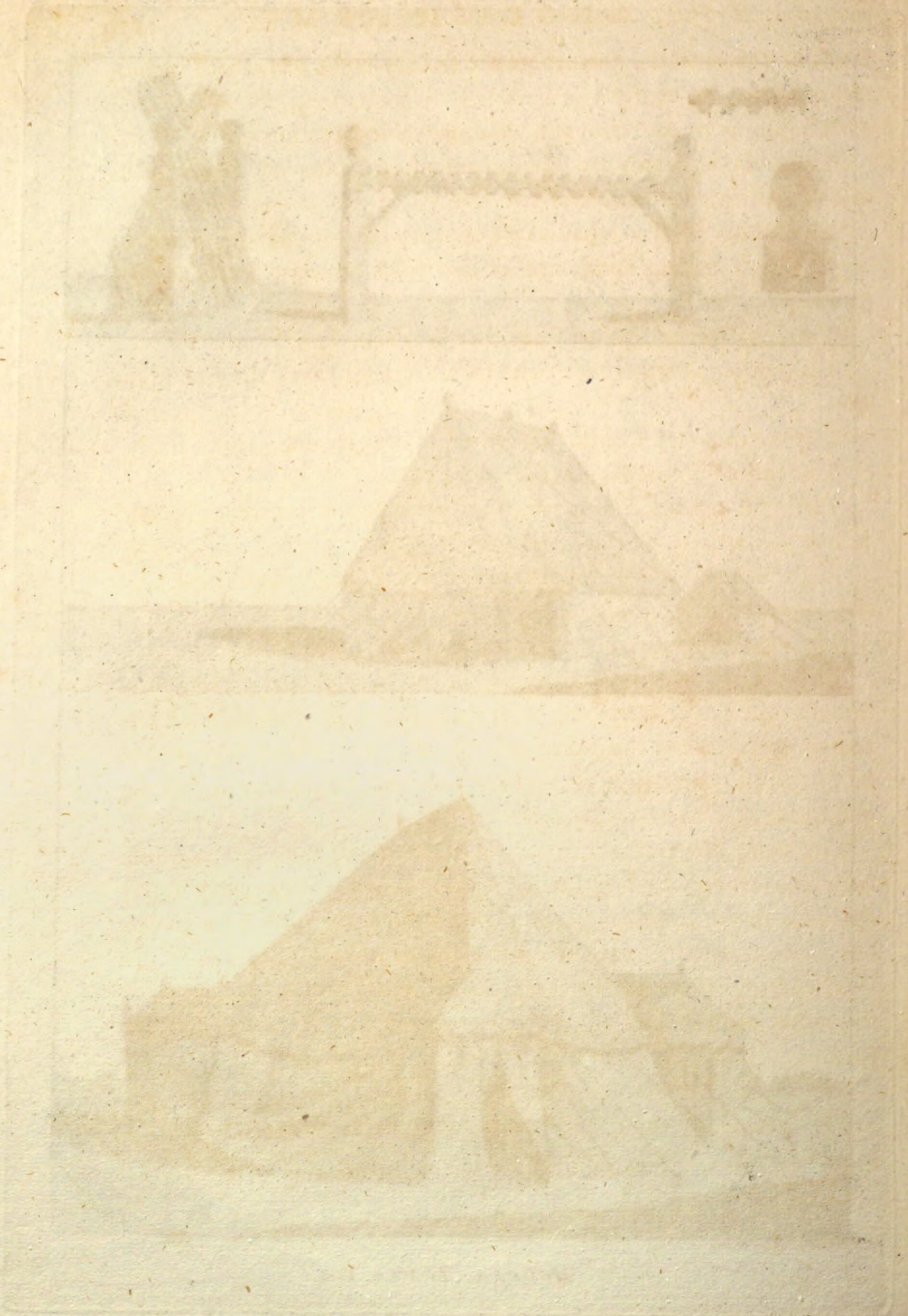
The standard guard tents are pitched in the center of the third squadron, in a line with the fronts of the quarter-masters tents, and are thirty yards distant from center to center.

Eleven tents are pitched for the men of each troop; the center of the first and last are three yards distant from the ends of the position; the others are six yards distant from center to center.

are pitched for the light troop; the center of the first and last are fourteen feet, one inch and a half, from the ends



Pub. 20 May 1788 by S. Hooper



ends of the pickets ; the others are twenty-eight feet, three inches, from center to center.

The dung of each troop is laid up behind the horses.

The sixty-six yards are divided into four spaces of fifteen yards each, with three intervals of two yards.

The dung of the subalterns horses is laid up in the space of eight yards, leaving an interval of two yards between it and that of the troop.

The subalterns servants from their horses.

The lieutenants-colonels tents fronts the center of the first squadron.

The major's tent fronts the center of the second.

The colonel's tent fronts the standards.

The staff-officers fronts the two back streets on the right and left of the center, or third squadron.

All the officers, the subalterns excepted, have their horses in the rear of their tents.

The grand sutler is placed in the rear of the colonel.

The centers of the kitchens are in the lines of the pickets produced ; the inner diameter is sixteen feet ; the breadth of the trench surrounding them is three feet, the seat is one foot and a half, and the breadth of the outside wall two feet, which makes the outer diameter twenty-nine feet.

The front poles of the petty-sutlers tents or huts are in a line with the centers of the kitchens, allowing to each petty sutler six yards in front and eight in depth, to be enclosed by a trench one foot in breadth, and the earth thrown inward.

The front poles of the rear guard tents, are in a line with the center of their bell of arms, and distant from each other six yards.

The rear guard fronts outwards.

The parade of the rear-guard is four yards distant from their bell of arms.

As

As it is usual for the subalterns of horse to have a tent each, I have therefore placed two in the rear of each troop; and though by the former method of encamping, they were generally pitched in a line with the troopers tents, and faced towards the streets as they did; yet, in this plan, I have placed them according to the manner of the foot, by facing them towards the captains tents, with a street of twenty-four paces between them.

The dimensions of the captains and subalterns tents are as follows:

		Feet.	Inch.
Length of the ridge pole	-	7	8
Height of the standard-poles	-	8	
Length from foot to rear between the half walls of the marquise	-	14	
Breadth of marquise between the half walls	-	10	6
Height of the half walls of a marquise	-	4	

The lieutenant-colonel's and majors tents about a foot larger.

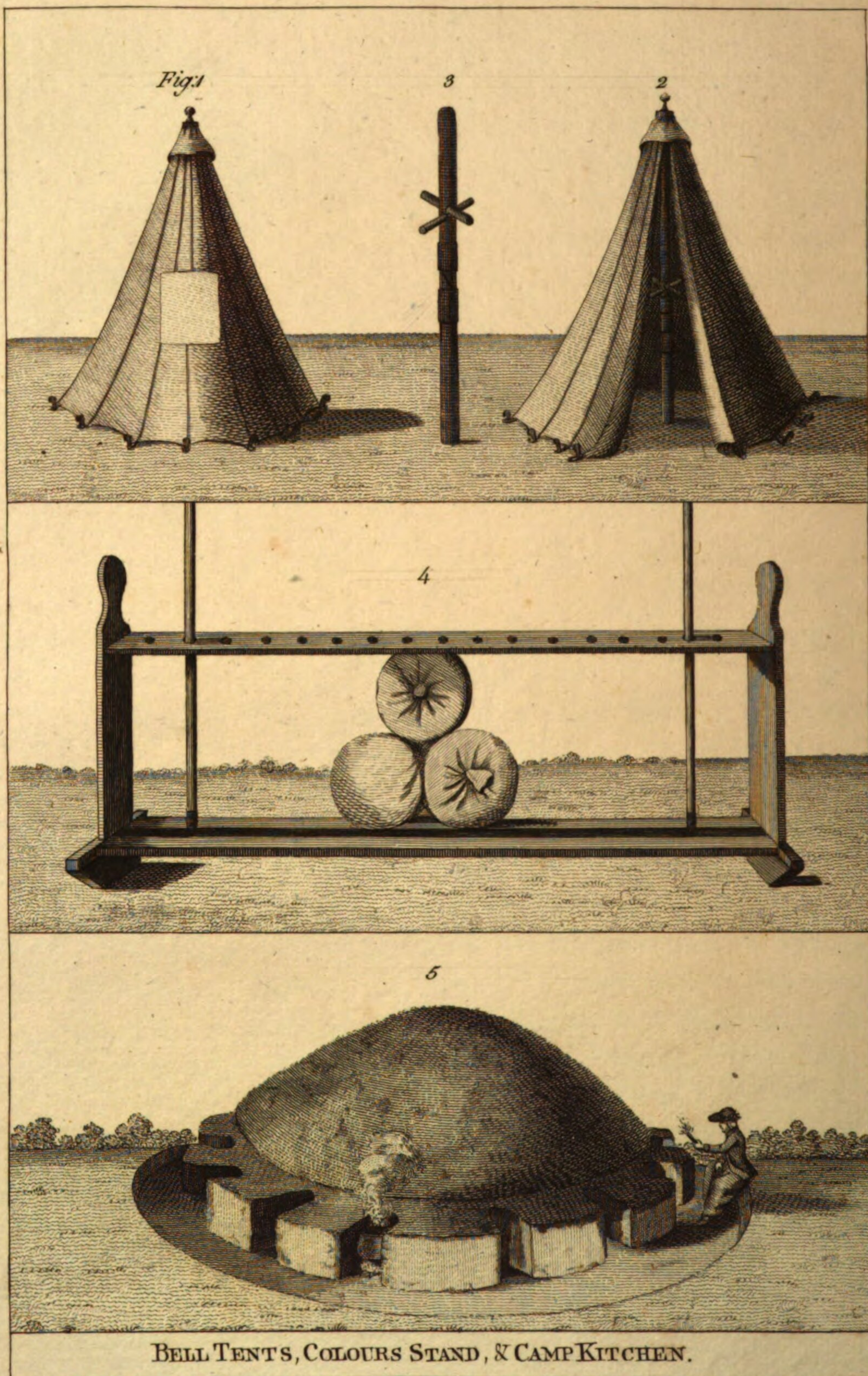
The ornaments of all officers tents to be uniform, and answerable to the facings of the regiment they belong to.

The size of the troop tents is sufficient for those of the quartermasters, only that they are allowed to have them a little higher, with a small marquise to throw off the rain.

The dimensions here given for the officers tents, may be thought by some too small; and if they were to encamp in Hide-Park, I should be of the same opinion; but let those gentlemen who think so, only make one real campaign, and I am convinced that they will wish them rather of a less than a greater.

The circles which are drawn in the plan between the grand and petty sutlers, are marked for the kitchens, or places where the private men are to dress their victuals; they are made in the following manner:

First, you draw a circle or a square on the ground of the dimension above limited; after that, you dig a trench or ditch round it,



BELL TENTS, COLOURS STAND, & CAMP KITCHEN.

Pub: 26th Feb'y. 1788 by S. Hooper.

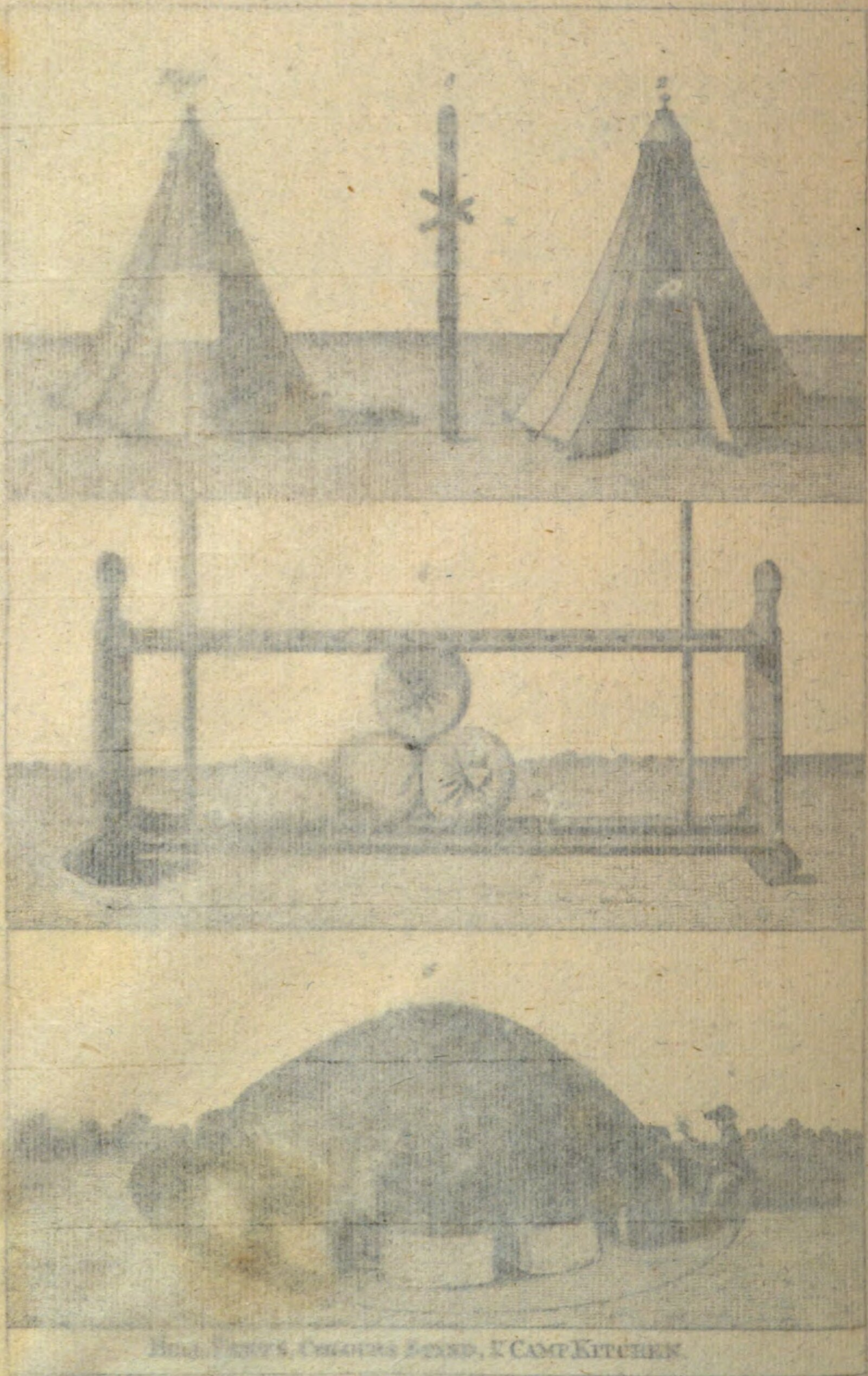
it, of three feet broad and two deep, by which it will resemble the bottom of a cockpit; when this is done, you are then to cut holes or niches in the side of the circle or square of earth which is left standing within the ditch: the holes may be about a foot square, the upper part of which should be within three or four inches of the surface, from whence they are to cut until they are four inches diameter down to the great oven, in which the fire is to be made, and the heat conveyed through those small holes to the bottom of the kettles, which are placed on the top of them; these fire-places may be made within three or four feet of one another, quite round the said circle or square; and if you erect one of these kitchens, (by which I mean an entire circle or square) for each troop or company, they need not be larger than what will contain as many fire-places as what you have tents pitched for your troop or company; for as all the men who lie in a tent are of one mess, every mess must therefore have a fire-place, that they may have no excuse for their not boiling the pot every day.

THERE are several advantages by making of the kitchen as here directed.

FIRST, a very little fuel will serve to dress their victuals, for as the fire-places are open at the sides like the mouth of an oven, the air which enters there forces all the heat up the small hole to the bottom of the kettle, and consequently boils it very soon; and as the kettle covers the said hole, the rain cannot come to extinguish it, or create men any trouble in keeping of it in.

SECONDLY, they are not in great danger of accidents by the fires being blown amongst the tents or forage; for if the men only lay a sod or turf on the top of the hole when they take off the kettle, it cannot be dispersed by the wind; which, without this consideration they ought to do, in order to keep the fire-places dry.

THIRDLY, the cutting of a ditch round the kitchens, does not only enable them to make the fire-places; but likewise prevents the fire from catching hold of the stubble or grass, which, in very



HEAD QUARTERS, CHIEF'S TENT, & CAMP KITCHEN

Painted by J. H. H. H.

it, of three feet broad and two deep, by which it will resemble the bottom of a cockpit; when this is done, you are then to cut holes or niches in the side of the circle or square of earth which is left standing within the ditch: the holes may be about a foot square, the upper part of which should be within three or four inches of the surface, from whence they are to cut small holes of four inches diameter down to the great ones, in which the fire is to be made, and the heat conveyed through those small holes to the bottom of the kettles, which are placed on the top of them; these fire-places may be made within three or four feet of one another, quite round the said circle or square; and if you erect one of these kitchens, (by which I mean an entire circle or square) for each troop or company, they need not be larger than what will contain as many fire-places as what you have tents pitched for your troop or company; for as all the men who lie in a tent are of one mess, every mess must therefore have a fire-place, that they may have no excuse for their not boiling the pot every day.

THERE are several advantages by making of the kitchen as here directed.

FIRST, a very little fuel will serve to dress their victuals, for as the fire-places are open at the sides like the mouth of an oven, the air which enters there forces all the heat up the small hole to the bottom of the kettle, and consequently boils it very soon; and as the kettle covers the said hole, the rain cannot come to extinguish it, or create men any trouble in keeping of it in.

SECONDLY, they are not in great danger of accidents by the fires being blown amongst the tents or forage; for if the men only lay a sod or turf on the top of the hole when they take off the kettle, it cannot be dispersed by the wind; which, without this consideration they ought to do, in order to keep the fire-places dry.

THIRDLY, the cutting of a ditch round the kitchens, does not only enable them to make the fire-places; but likewise prevents the fire from catching hold of the stubble or grass, which, in very

dry or hot weather it is apt to do, and endanger the burning of your camp, which I have often seen for the want of this precaution. Besides, the opposite bank of the ditch serves as a seat for the men who are employed in dressing the victuals.

FOURTHLY and lastly, by having of kitchens made in this manner, the officers can with a great deal of ease look into the conduct and œconomy of their men, and oblige the several messes to boil the pot every day for the reasons already mentioned in article iii. chapter xiii.

I SHALL in the following article proceed to the particulars for the encamping of a battalion of foot of nine companies of seventy-three men each rank and file, with a plan of the same.

ARTICLE II.

	Yards.
For pitching three double rows of tents, at six yards each	18
For pitching three single rows, at three yards each	9
For the breadth of the grand street	25
For the breadth of four lesser streets, at seventeen yards each	68

Total front 120

	Yards.
From the side of the serjeant's tent, to the center of the first gun	4
From the center of the first gun, to the center of the second	6
From the center of the second gun, to the left of the next regiment	20
Total interval	30

Total front interval 150

Depth

PLAN of the Fortification of a Garrison of 1000 Men

[illegible]

dry or best weather it is apt to do, and endanger the burning of your camp, which I have often seen for the want of this precaution. Besides, the opposite bank of the ditch serves as a seat for the men who are employed in dressing the victuals.

Fourthly and lastly, by having of kitchens made in this manner, the officers can with a great deal of ease look into the conduct and economy of their men, and oblige the several messes to boil the pot every day for the reasons already mentioned in article iii. chapter viii.

I shall in the following article proceed to the particulars for the encamping of a battalion of foot of nine companies of seventy-three men each, with a plan of the same.

ARTICLE II.

	Yards.
For pitching three double rows of tents, at six yards each	18
For pitching three single rows, at three yards each	9
For the breadth of the grand street	25
For the breadth of four lesser streets, at seventeen yards each	68

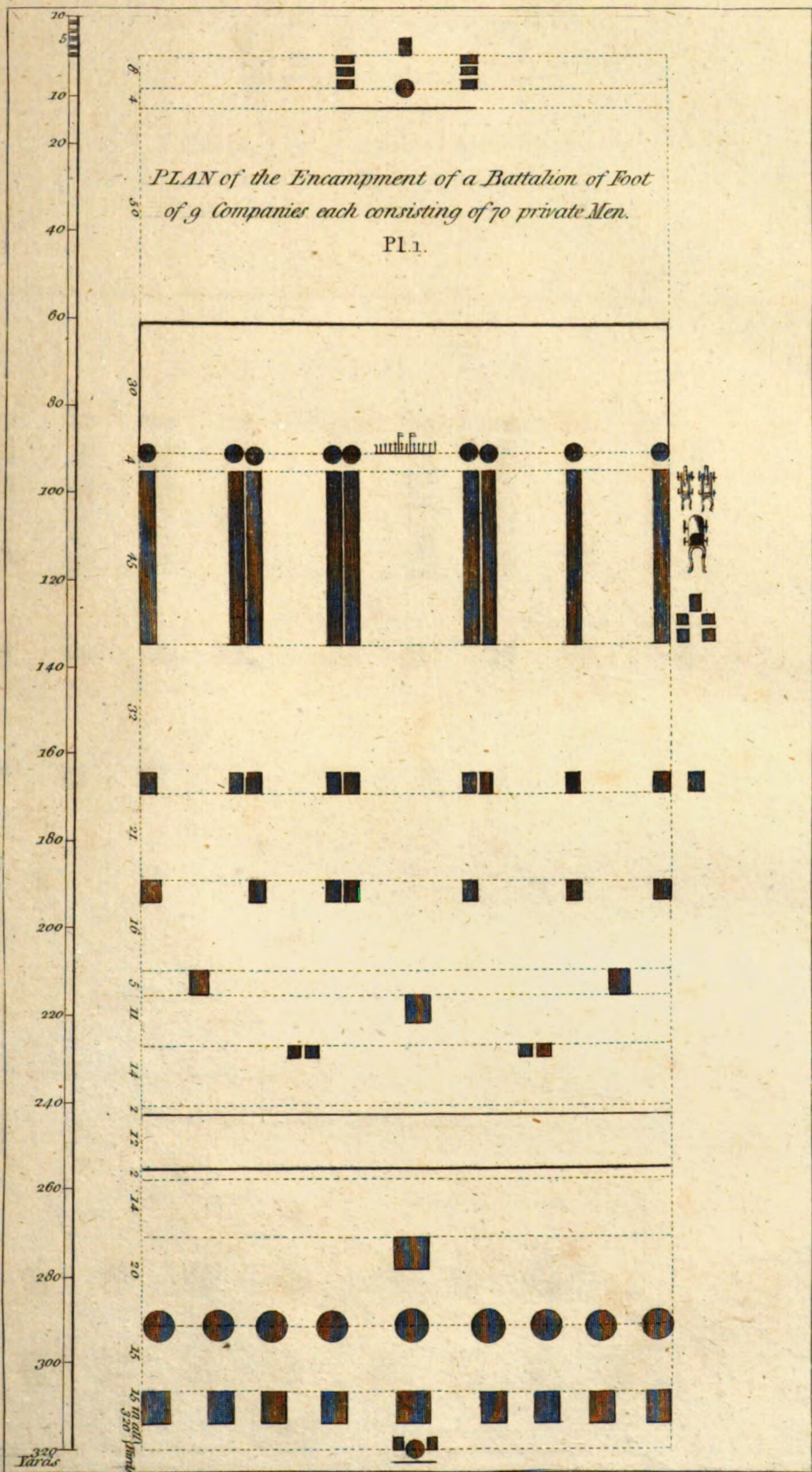
Total front 120

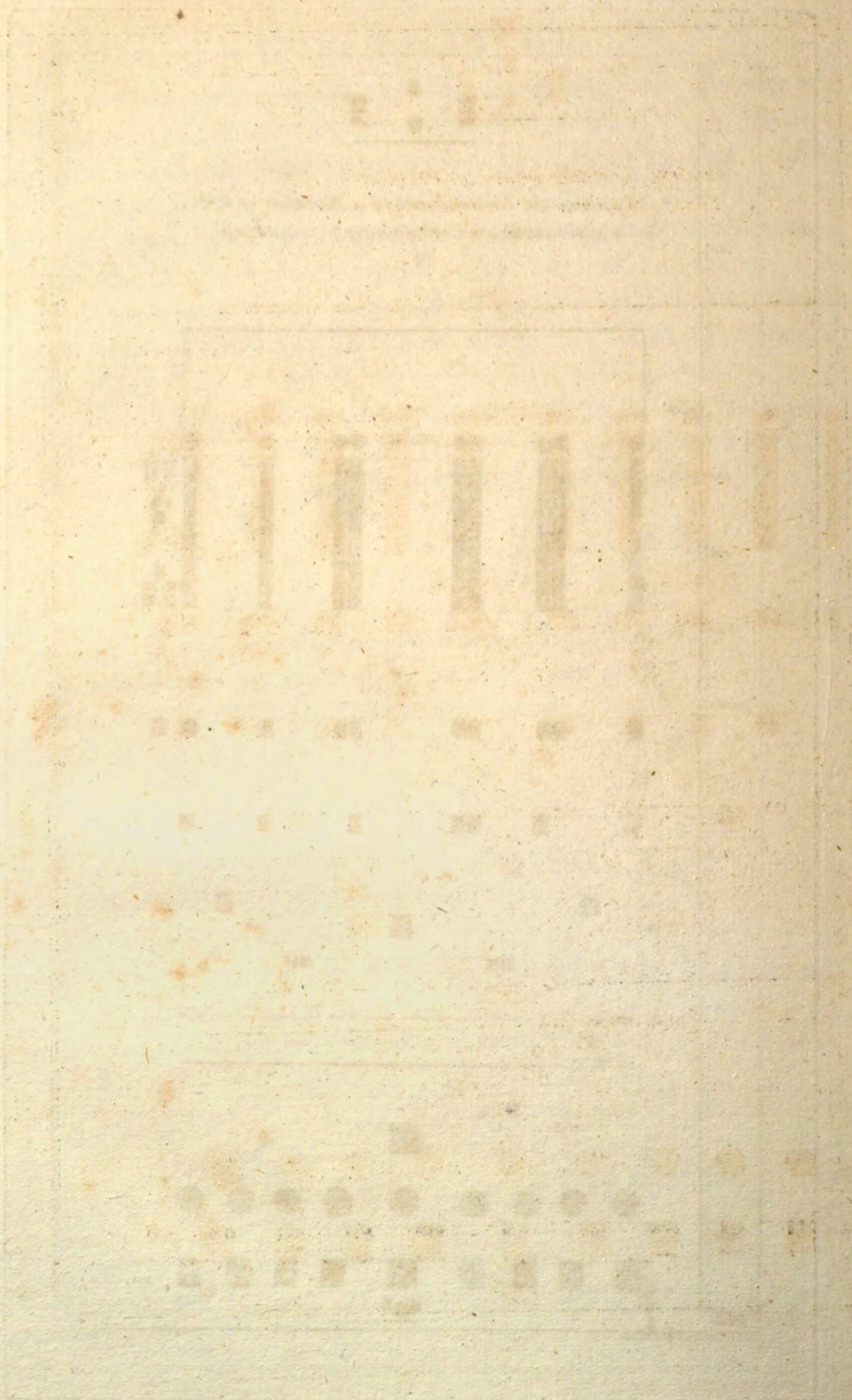
	Yards.
From the side of the serjeant's tent, to the center of the first gun	4
From the center of the first gun, to the center of the second	6
From the center of the second gun, to the left of the next regiment	20

Total interval 30

Total front interval 150

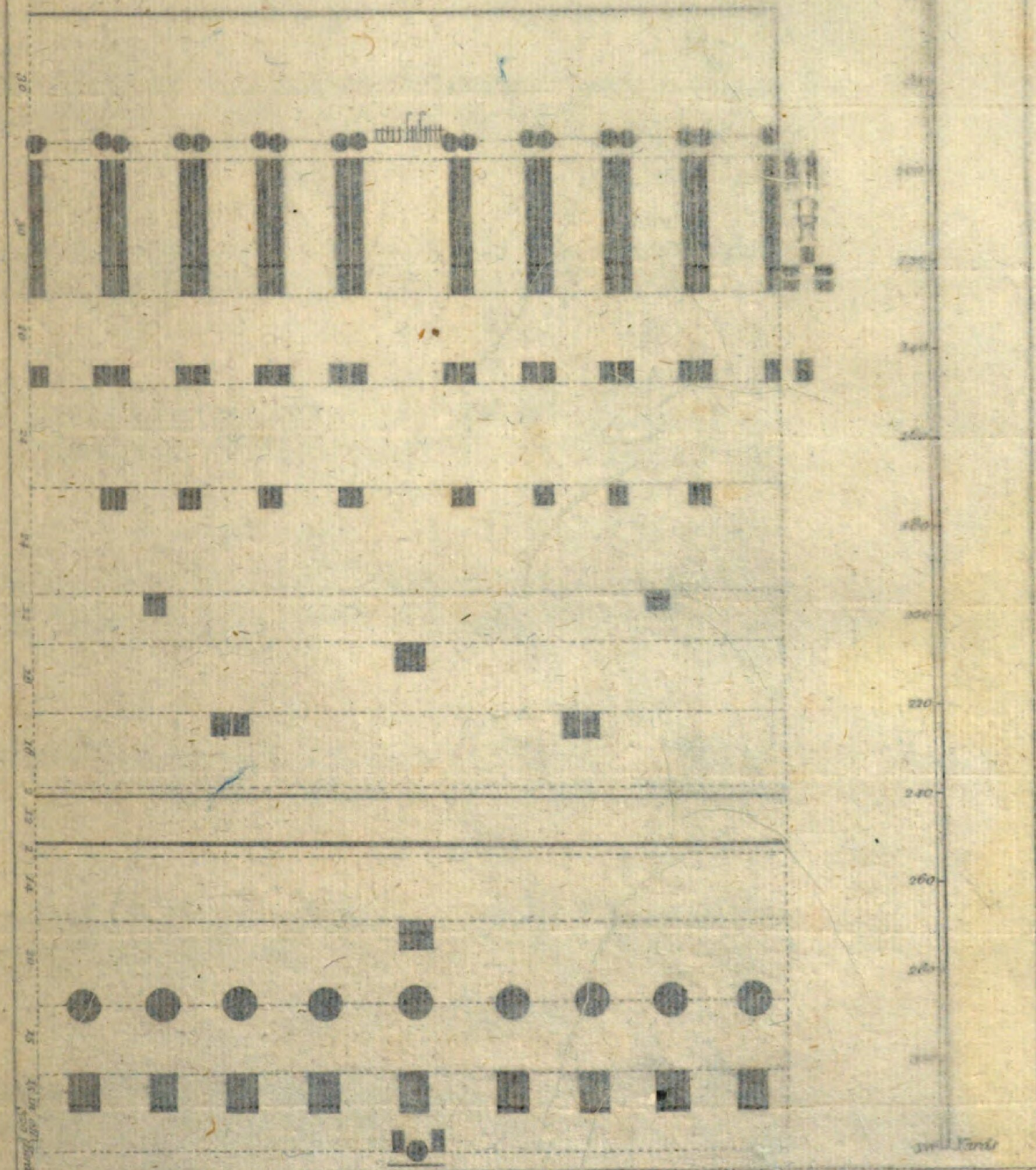
Depth

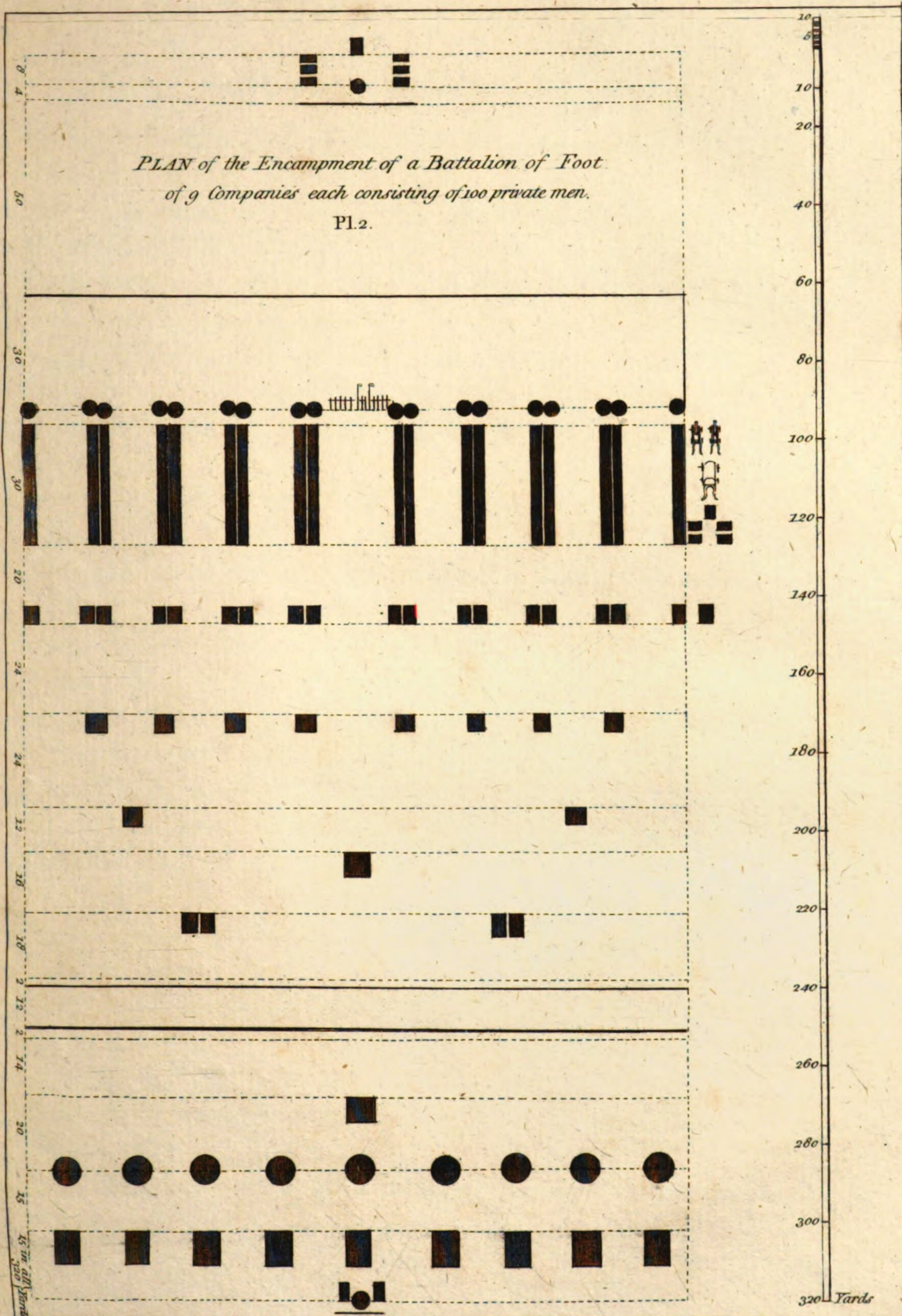


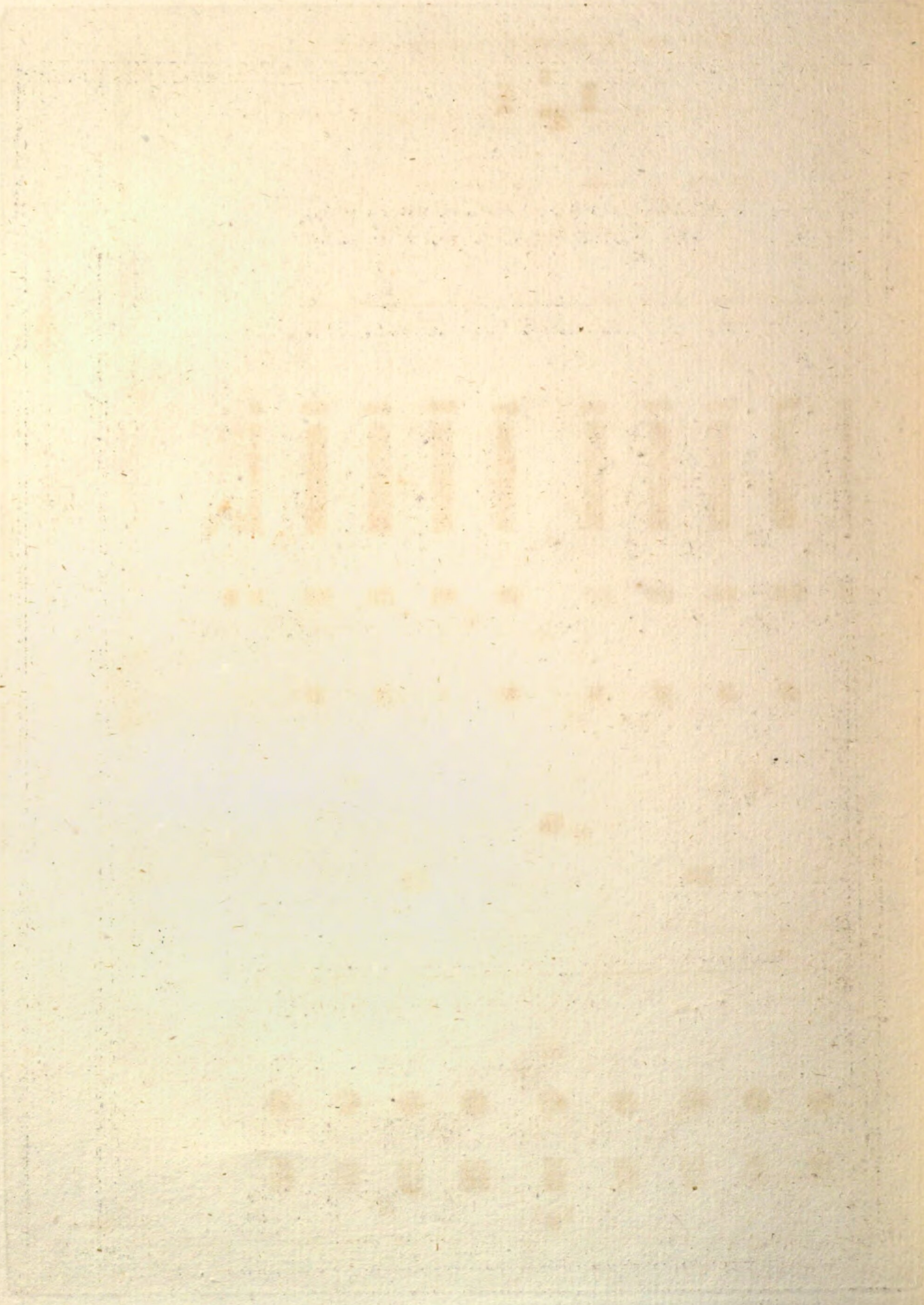


*Plan of the Encampment of a Battalion of Foot
of 9 Companies each consisting of 100 private men.*

Pl 2







Depth 320 yards divided as follows :

	Yards.
From the front pole of officers tent of quarter-guard, to the center of the bell of arms of ditto - - - - -	8
From the center of the bell of arms, to the parade of the quarter-guard - - - - -	4
From the parade of the quarter-guard, to the first line of the parade of the battalion - - - - -	50
From the first line of the parade, to the center of the bells of arms - - - - -	30
From the center of the bells of arms, to the front of sergeants tents - - - - -	4
For pitching fifteen tents with their intervals, at three yards each - - - - -	45
From the rear of the battalion tents, to the front of the subalterns - - - - -	32
From the front of the subalterns, to the front of the captain's - - - - -	21
From the front of the captain's, to the front of the lieutenant-colonel's and major's - - - - -	16
From the front of the lieutenant-colonel's and major's, to the front of the colonel's - - - - -	5
From the front of the colonel's, to the front of the staff-officers - - - - -	11
From the front of the staff-officers, to the front of the first row of batmen's tents - - - - -	14
From the first row of batmen's tents, to the first row of pickets - - - - -	2
From the first row of pickets to the second - - - - -	12
From the second row of pickets, to the second row of batmen's tents - - - - -	2
From the second row of batmen's tents, to the front of the grand sutler - - - - -	14
H h 2	From

	Yards.
From the front of the grand futler, to the center of the kitchens - - - - -	} 20
From the center of the kitchens, to the front of ordinary futlers - - - - -	} 15
From the front of ordinary futlers, to the center of the bell of arms of the rear-guard - - - - -	} 15
Total depth	320

THE muzzles of the battalion-guns are in a line with the front of the serjeants tents.

THE rearmost of the gunners tents are in a line with the rear of the battalion tents.

THE subaltern of the artillery is in a line with the subalterns of the battalion.

THE front poles of the quarter-guard tents are in a line with the front poles of the center companies, and in a line with the center of their bell of arms.

THE bells of arms front the poles of the serjeants tents.

THE colours and drums are to be placed at the head of the grand or center street of the battalion, and in a line with the bells of arms.

THE two companies on the right, and the company on the left, form the three single rows; the other companies form the double rows.

THE lieutenant-colonel's and major's tents front the center of the streets on the right and left of the battallion.

THE colonel's tent is in the line of the grand street facing the colours.

THE staff-officers front the centers of the streets on the right and left of the grand street.

THE batmen's tents front towards their horses.

THE

THE grand futler is in the rear of the colonel.

THE inner diameter of the kitchen is sixteen feet, surrounded with a trench three feet broad, and the earth thrown inwards; the two kitchens on the flanks, touch the outside line of the encampment; the center kitchen is in the center of the encampment, and distant sixteen yards and a half from those on the right and left of it; the other kitchens are thirteen yards from center to center.

THE front poles of the ordinary futlers tents or huts are in a line with the centers of the kitchens, allowing to each ordinary futler, six yards in front, and eight in depth, enclosed with a trench one foot broad, and the earth thrown inwards.

THE rear guard fronts outwards.

THE front poles are in a line with the center of their bell of arms, and distant from each other six yards.

THE parade of the rear guard is four yards from the bell of arms.

THE houses of office for the front line must be advanced beyond the quarter guard, at least fifty yards, and those for the rear line about the same distance in the rear of the petty futlers and butchers.

THIS plan being only calculated for the encampment of a battalion, whose companies are composed of no more than seventy-three rank and file, according to their usual strength in time of peace; I shall add another, to shew the method of encampment made use of during the present war, while they remain augmented to a hundred each; and as the difference between them consists only in the quantity and division of the ground, it will be seen very plainly in the said plans, without any repetition of the preceding explanation, which in all other respects will answer for both.

MILITARY musick, before the introduction of fire arms served to animate the soldiers in battles and assaults of places, as well as for the purpose of signals for the different manœuvres and duties in camp and garrison; wherefore it cannot be doubted but it was used in our ancient armies.

IN

IN an old manuscript chronicle (a) is a balad made on the victory of King Edward III. over the Scots at Hallidowne Hille, in which there are these lines:

This was do with merry fowne,
With pipes trumpes and tabers thereto,
And loud clariones thei blew also.

AND in the prose account of the same battle in the same MS. "then the Englishe mynstrelles beaten their tabers and blewen their trompes, and pipers pipedene loude and made a great schowte upon the Skottes." Notwithstanding this, neither drummers, trumpetters nor any other minstrells occur in the wardrobe accounts of either Edward I. II. or III. possibly they were part of the royal household, paid under some other department.

THE common military instruments of musick were the trumpet, drum, fife, and horns of different kinds.

THE trumpet is of the most remote antiquity, and frequently occurs in the scriptures, as being used by the Israelites. The Romans had both the streight and crooked trumpet; and trumpets of both kinds have been found in different parts of England, generally supposed to have been Danish.

THE drum was probably introduced into Europe from the East by the Crusaders; (b) a kind of kettle drum, called the naccaire, is mentioned by Joinville in the Life of St. Louis, as being used by the Saracens.

(a) IN Bib. Harl. No. 4690.

(b) THE timbrel so frequently mentioned in the scriptures, is supposed to have been a kind of drum: drums were also used by the Indians as is testified by Curtius, Lib. 8. "Indi tympana suo more pulsantes." And Suidas says: "Tubis non utuntur, sed pro iis sunt flagella quæ excutunt in aerem, et tympana item horribilem quendam bombum emittentia." Isidorus describes another sort of drum under the name of Symphonia: "Symphonia vulgo appellatur lignum cavum, ex utraque parte pelle extensa, quam virgulis hinc et inde musici feriunt."



INSTRUMENTS OF MILITARY MUSIC.

HISTORY OF

... manuscript chronicle (a) is a balad made on the victory of Edward III. over the Scots at Hallidowne Hille, in which there are these lines:

There was do with merry fowne,
With pipe, trumpes and tabers thereto,
And loud clarinetes thei blew also.

... account of the same battle in the same MS. ... beaten their tabers and blewen ... pipe ... loude and made a great schowte ... Nevertheless this, neither drummers, trumpet ... occur in the wardrobe accounts of ... possibly they were part of the royal ... some other department.

The commonest instruments of musick were the trumpet, drum, &c. and horns of different kinds.

The trumpet is of the most remote antiquity, and frequently occurs in the scriptures, as being used by the Israelites. The Romans had both the straight and crooked trumpet; and trumpets of both kinds have been found in different parts of England, generally supposed to have been Danish.

The drum is probably introduced into Europe from the East by the Crusaders; (b) a kind of kettle drum, called the naccaire, is mentioned by Joinville in the Life of St. Louis, as being used by the Saracens.

(a) In Bib. Harl. No. 4890.

(b) The *tabour* is frequently mentioned in the scriptures, is supposed to have been a kind of drum. Drums were also used by the Indians as is testified by Curtius, Lib. 8. "Indi tympana sua more pulsantes." And Suidas says: "Tubis non utuntur, sed pro iis sunt tympana que excutiunt in aerem, et tympana item horribilem quendam bombum emittunt." Isidorus describes another sort of drum under the name of Symphonia: "Symphonia vulgo appellatur lignum cavum, ex utraque parte pelle extensa, quam virgulis hinc et inde musici feriunt."

Scale of Two Feet.

Fig. 1.



Fig. 3.



Fig. 2.

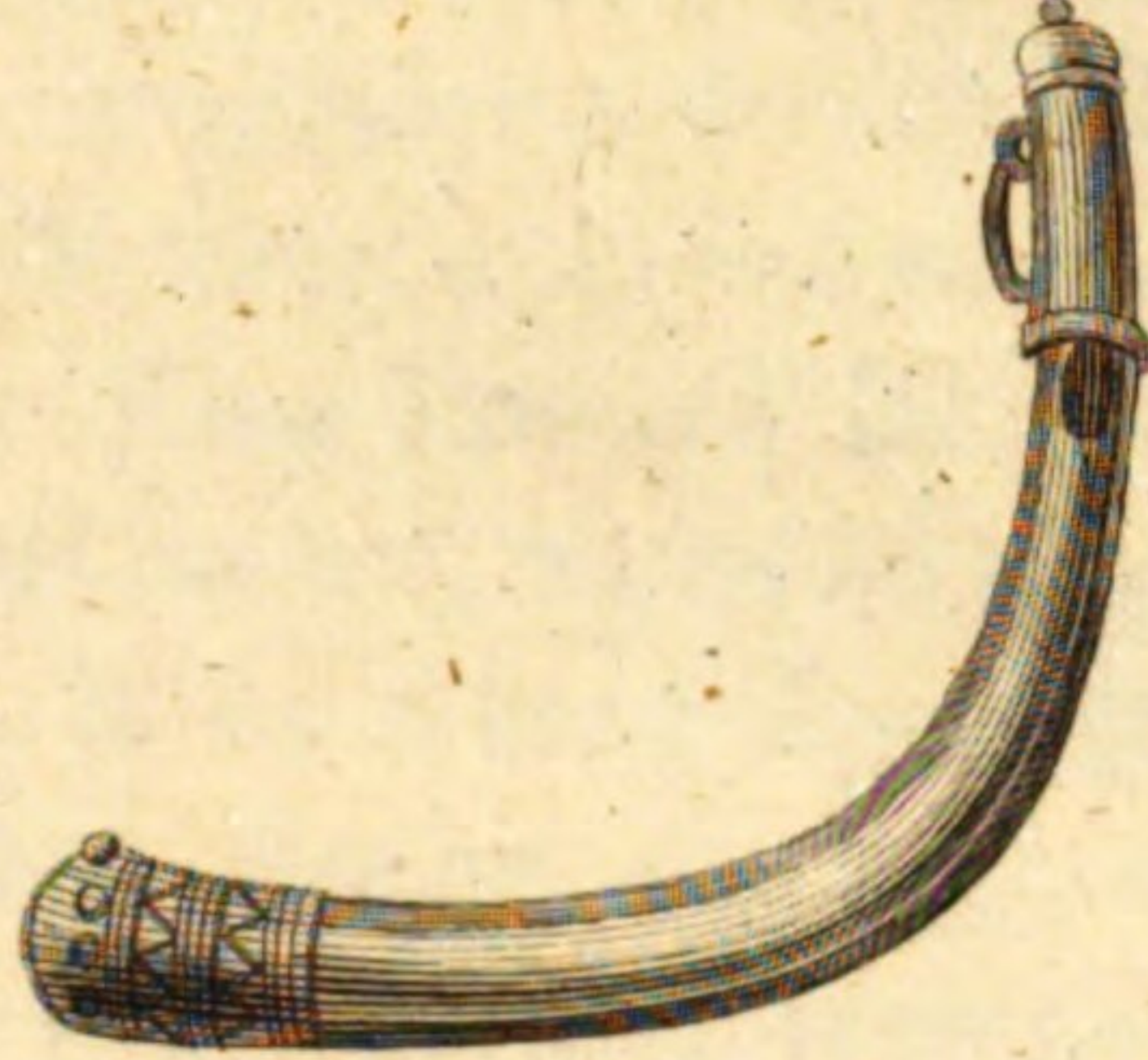


Fig. 4.



Fig. 5.

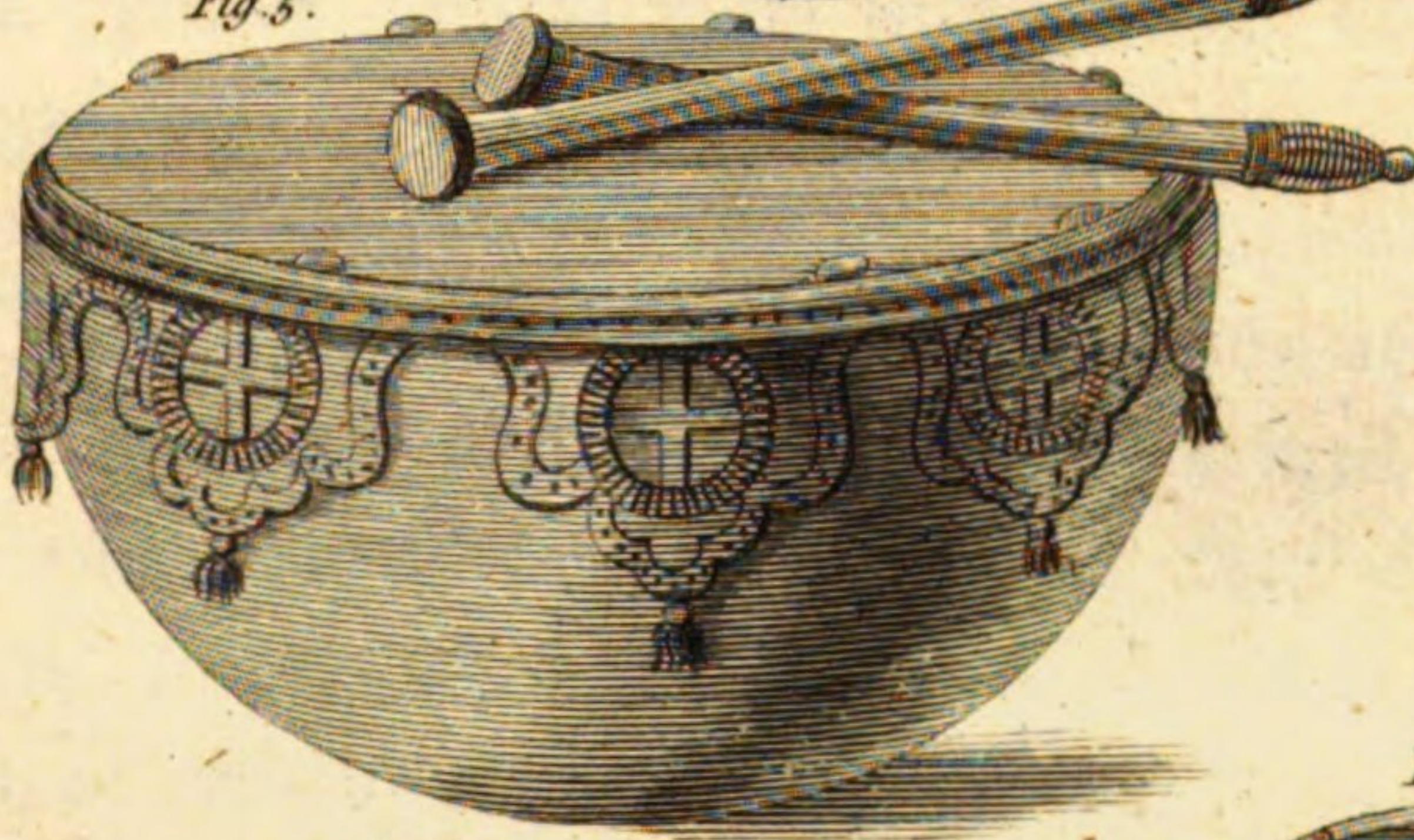


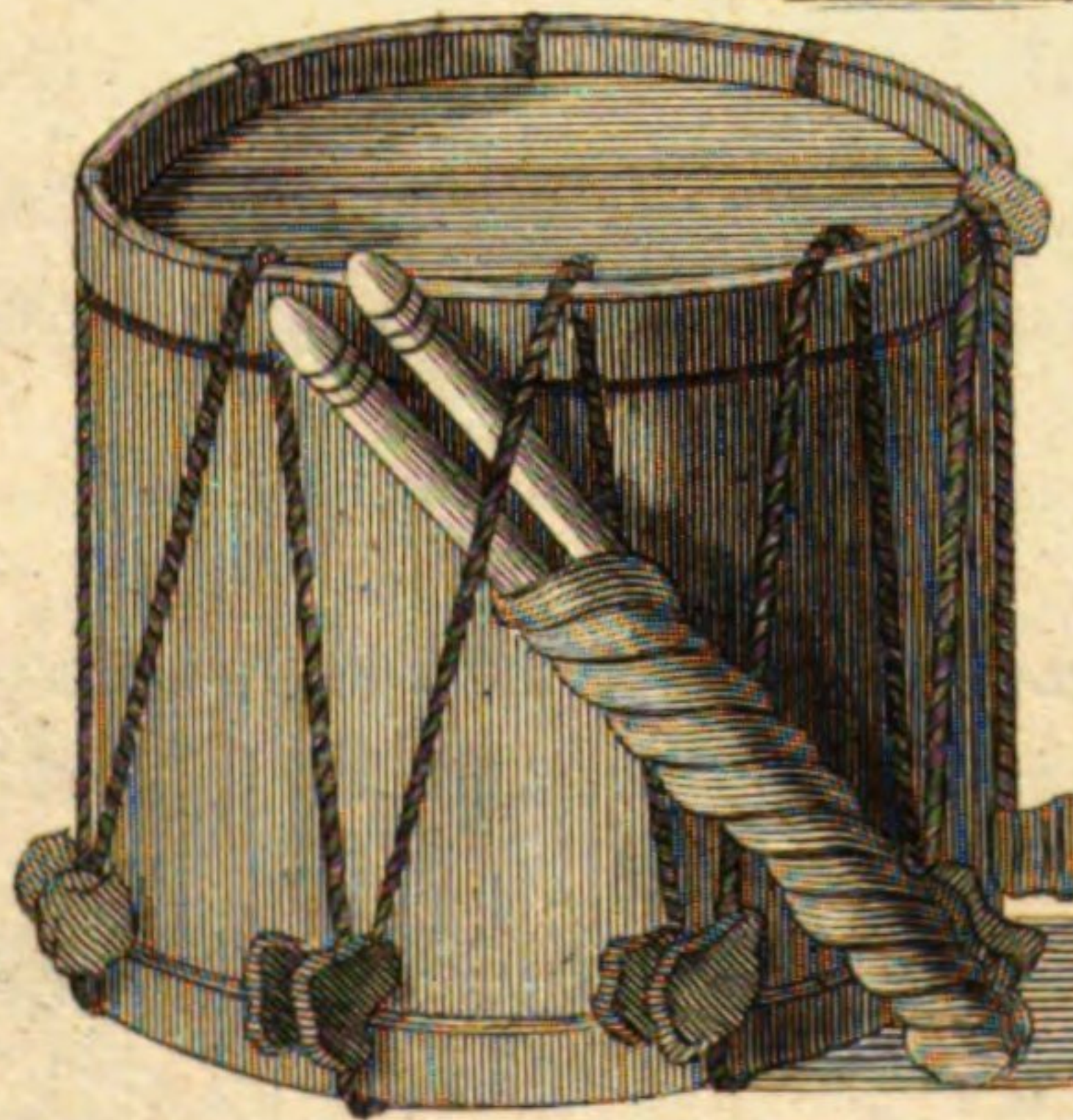
Fig. 6.

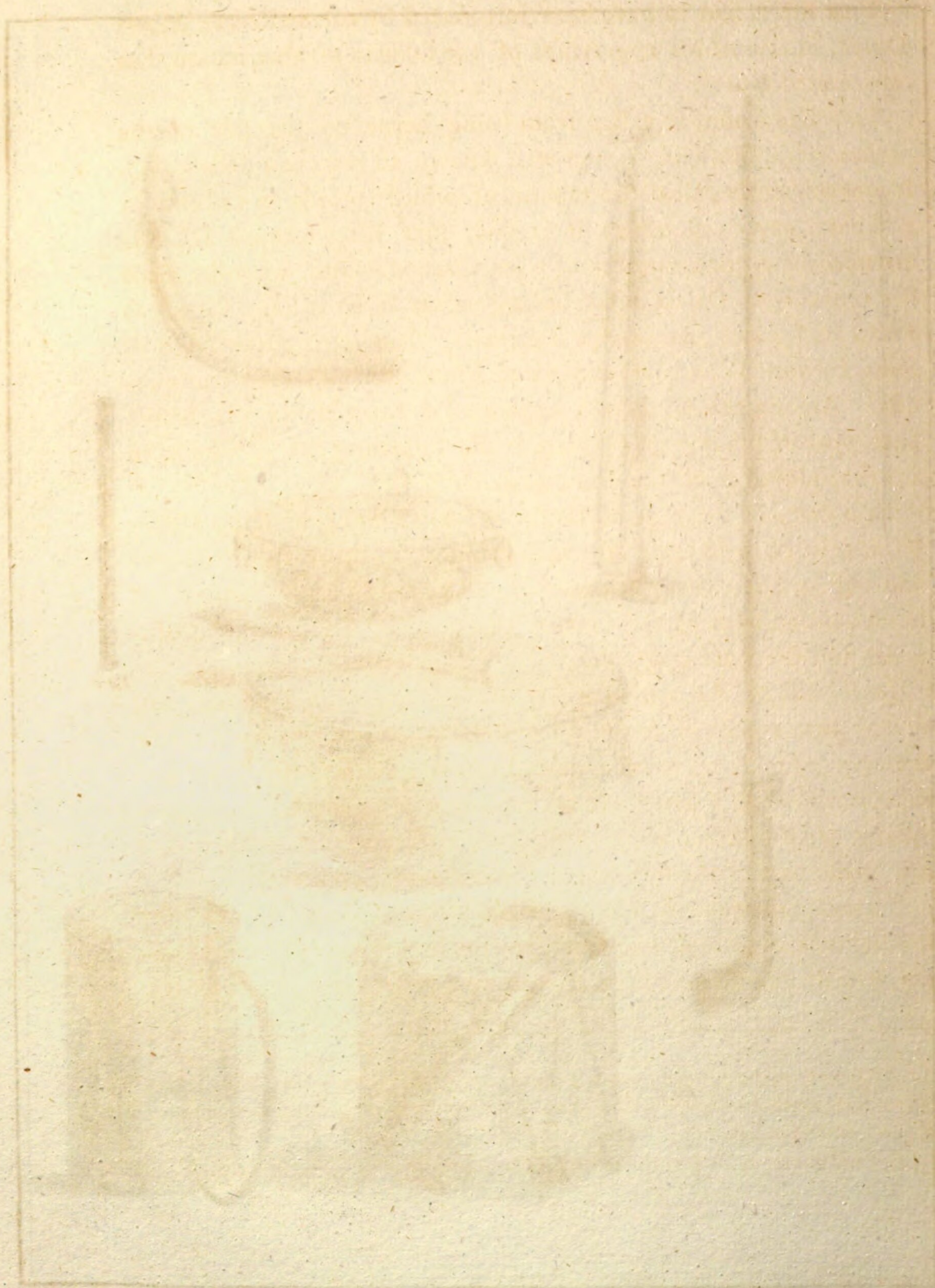


Fig. 8.



Fig. 7.





THE fife is said to have been introduced by the Switzers; Albert Durer, in one of his engravings of the soldiers of that nation, has represented a fifer.

THE side drum, so called from being borne on the side of the person who beats it, is too well known to require a description. It was anciently called the tabour, of which there is an instance in Froissart, cap. 147, where it is said, that King Edward III. was attended by a great number of trumpets and drums, when he made his entry into Calais after having taken it by a long siege. (c) From an ancient manuscript it appears, that during the reign of King Edward IV. a royal order was issued for impressing trumpeters. Among the household expences of King Henry VII. in the 19th year of his reign, (d) there is the following entry: "Item, to on that played upon the droome, 6s. 8d."

IN a diary of the siege of Boulogne, A. D. 1544, by King Henry VIII. printed in Rymer, there is mention made of the drummers and viffleurs, marching at the head of the king's army; and in the household account of the 34th of that king by Brian Tuke, drum-flades and fifers are charged.

IN the list of the army employed at St. Quintin's, trumpets and drums were appointed to the different corps, in the proportion of one trumpet to each troop of an hundred men, both heavy armed and light horse; and a drum and a fife to each company of foot consisting of an hundred men. Besides these trumpets, a drum and a fife made part of the suite or retinue of the great officers.

THE captain general had two trumpets, one drum and one fife; the lieutenant general, one trumpet; the high mareschal, one trumpet, one drum and one fife; the captain general of the infantry,

(c) QUAND ce fut fait le roi monta a cheval et fit monter la royne, les barons et chevaliers, si chevancherent devers Calais, et entrèrent dedans la ville a foison de trompettes, tabours, nacaires et buccines.

(d) PRESERVED in the Remembrancer's Office, Exchequer.

six wyfflers, one drum and one fife; and the master of the ordnance, one drum and one fife; from the appointment of wyfflers as distinct from the fife, it seems as if there was some difference between those instruments, which are generally conceived to be one and the same.

IN the succeeding reign drums and fifes seem to have been part of the military establishment. The ear piercing fife, and spirit stirring drum, are mentioned by Shakespear among the circumstances of war. And in Ralph Smith's Military Collection the qualifications and duties of drummers and fifers are thus laid down: "all captains must have dromes and phiphes and men to use the same, who should be faithfull, secret, yngenious, of able personage to use their instruments and office, of fundrie language, for often tymes they are sent to parlie with their enemies, to summon their forts and towns, to reddeme and conducte prisoners, and diverse other messages, which of necessitie require languages; if such dromes or phiphers should fortune to fall into the hands of their enemies, no gifte or force should cause them to disclose any secrete that they know; they must often practise their instruments, teache the company their sound of the march, allarme, approche, assalte, battell, retreat, skirmish, or any other calling that of necessity should be known."

THE fife was for a long time laid aside, and was not restored till about the year 1745, when the Duke of Cumberland introduced it into the guards; it was not however adopted in the marching regiments, till the year 1747: the first regiment that had it was the 19th, then called Green Howards, in which I had the honor to serve, and well remember a Hanoverian lad, an excellent fifer, being given by his colonel to Lieutenant Colonel Williams then commanding that regiment at Bois le Duc in Flanders. Fifes afterwards, particularly since the practice of marching in cadence, have been much multiplied, for tho' only two fifers were allowed on the muster-rolls of each regiment,
and

and those to the grenadier company, yet in most corps the drummers of the battalion companies were taught to blow the fife as well as to beat the drum.

IN modern times, that is since the revolution, kettle drums and trumpets have been chiefly appropriated to the horse. The dragoons long had the hautbois and fide drum, (e) but about the year 1759 charged them for the trumpet; the infantry had only the drum, till the introduction of the fifes, as above mentioned, except the Highland regiment, who are allowed a bag piper to the colonel's company. Since the introduction of light infantry many of those companies have the beugle horn, (f)

SIR John Hawkins in his History of Musick has preserved some curious anecdotes respecting the old English march, which I have here transcribed: it seems (says he) that the old English march of the foot was formerly in high estimation, as well abroad as with us; it's characteristic is dignity and gravity, in which respect it differs greatly from the French, which, as it is given by Merfennus, is brisk and alert. Sir Roger Williams, a gallant low country foldier of Queen Elizabeth's time, and who has therefore a place among the worthies of Lloyd and Winstanley, had once a conversation on this subject with Marshal Biron, a French general; the marshal observed that the English march, being beaten by the drum, was slow, heavy and sluggish. "That may be true, answered Sir Roger," but slow as it is, it has traversed your master's country from one end to the other. This bon mot is recorded in one of

(e) Two hautbois, it is said, are allowed to each regiment of dragoons, but I do not recollect ever seeing them under arms, though I was several years in a regiment of dragoons. A story was current among some of the old standers in that service, that the king (whether George I. or II. I know not) at a review, asking General Churchill what was become of his hautbois, the general struck his hand on his breeches pocket, so as to make his money rattle; and answered, "here they are, please your majesty, don't you hear them?" Churchill being a favorite, the king laughed and made no farther enquiry.

(f) IN the year 1761, some troops of light dragoons had horns like those of the post boys.

those little entertaining books, written by Crouch, the bookseller, in the Poultry, and published about the end of the last century, under the fictitious name of Robert Burton; the book here referred to is entitled, *Admirable Curiosities, Rarities and Wonders in England, Scotland and Ireland*; the story is to be met with in page 5 of it, but where else is not said. Notwithstanding the many late alterations in the discipline and exercise of our troops and the introduction of fifes and other instruments in our martial music, it is said that the old English march is still in use with the foot. Mr. Walpole has been very happy in discovering a manuscript in parchment purporting to be a warrant of Charles I. directing the revival of the march, agreeable to the form thereto subjoined in musical notes, signed by his majesty, and countersigned by the Earl of Arundel and Surry, the then earl marshal; this curious manuscript was found by the present Earl of Huntingdon in an old chest, and as the parchment has at one corner the arms of his lordship's predecessor, then living; Mr. Walpole thinks it probable that the order was sent to all lords lieutenants of counties.

THE following is a copy of the warrant, and of the musical notes of the march, taken from the catalogue of royal and noble authors, vol. I. page 201.

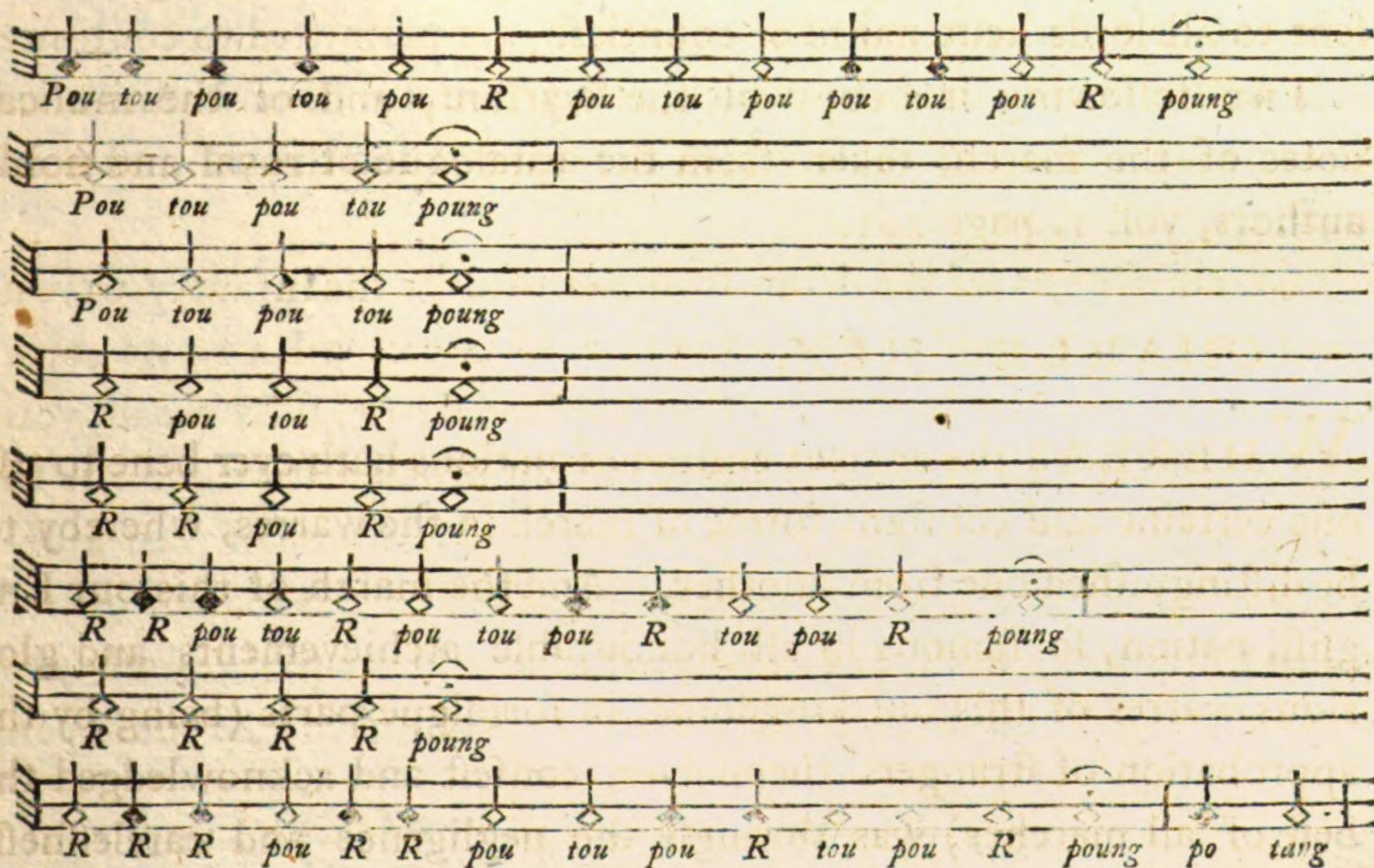
CHARLES REX.

WHEREAS the ancient custom of nations hath ever bene to use one certaine and constant forme of march in the warres, whereby to be distinguished one from another. And the march of this our English nation, so famous in all honourable atchievements and glorious warres of this our kingdome, in forraigne parts (being by the approbation of strangers themselves, confest and acknowledged the best of all marches) was through the negligence and carelesse of drummers, and by long discontinuance, so altered and changed from the antient gravitie and majestie thereof, as it was in danger utterly to have been lost and forgotten.

It

IT pleased our late deare brother Prince Henry to revive and rectifie the same by ordayning an establishment of an certaine measure, which was beaten in his presence at Greenwich, anno 1610. In confirmation whereof we are graciously pleased at the instance and humble sute of our right trusty and right well beloved cousin and counsellor Edward Viscount Wimbleton, to set down and ordaine the present establishment hereunder expressed, willing and commanding all drummers within our kingdom of England and principallitie of Wales, exactly and precisely to observe the same, as well in this our kingdom as abroad in the service of any forraigne prince or state, without any addition or alteration whatsoever. To the end that so ancient, famous and commendable a custome may be preserved as a patterne and precedent to all posteritie. Given at our pallace of Westminster, the seventh day of February in the 7th yeare of our raigne of England, Scotland, France and Ireland.

VOLUNTARY before the MARCH.



Subscribed Arundel and Surrey

This is a true copie of the original signed by his majestie

E. D. NORGATE; Windsor.

THE kettle-drums and trumpets of the horse are adorned with banners; respecting these and the trumpets, his majesty has made the following regulations:

Banners of the Regiment of Horse.

THE banners of the kettle-drums and trumpets to be of the colour of the facing of the regiment; the badge of the regiment or its rank to be in the centre of the banner of the kettle-drums, as on the second standard; the king's cypher and crown to be on the banner of the trumpets, with the rank of the regiment in cyphers underneath; the depth of the kettle-drum banners to be 3 feet, 6 inches; the length, 4 feet 8 inches, exclusive of the fringe; those of the trumpets to be 12 inches in depth, and 18 inches in length.

THE trumpets to be of brass; the cords to be crimson, mixed with the colour of the facing of the regiment; the king's own regiment of dragoons, and the royal Irish, are permitted to continue their kettle-drums, and to which, they are to have banners of the same dimensions as those which are ordered for the regiments of horse.

THE chief beats of the drum formerly used by the infantry were a CALL, a TROOP, a PREPARATIVE, a MARCH, a BATTAILE, a RETREAT, these by Bariffe are thus explained; (g) "By a call, you must understand to prepare to heare present proclamation, or else to repaire to your ensigne: by a troop, understand to shoulder your muskets, to advance your pikes, to close your ranks and files to their order, and to troop along with, or follow your officer to the place of rendezvous, or elsewhere: by a march, you are to understand to take your open

(g) MILITARIE Discipline, or the Young Artillery-man, by lieutenant colonel William Bariffe. 2d edit. London, 1643.

order in rank, to shoulder both muskets and pikes, and to direct your march, either quicker or slower, according to the beat of the drum: by a preparative, you are to understand to close to your due distance for skirmish, both in ranke and file, and to make ready, that you may execute upon the first command: by the battaile or charge understand the continuation or pressing forward in order of battaile without laggin behinde, rather boldly stepping forward in the place of him that falls dead, or wounded before thee.

By a retreat, understanding an orderly retireing backward, either for relief, for advantage of ground, or for some othe politicall end; as to draw the enemy into some ambushment, or such like. Much more might be written concerning the drum, but this may suffice for the present.

The present different Beats of the Drum for the Infantry, are these:

THE GENERAL; this is beat instead of the reveille, when the whole camp or garrison are to march.

REVEILLE; beat at day-break, to awaken the camp or garrison; after which the centinels cease challenging.

ASSEMBLY, or TROOP; at this beat, the troops fall in, the roll is called, and baggage loaded.

FOOT-MARCH; to march. (d)

GRENADIERS MARCH; beat only to that company.

RETREAT; this is beat at sun-set in garrisons, and at gun-firing in camp; at which time the pickets are formed; in fortified

(i) THERE was formerly another beat, called, the Long March; on the beating of which, the men clubbed their firelocks, and claimed and used the liberty of talking all kind of ribaldry respecting their amours and those of their officers; this has for some time been very properly abolished.

places,

places, it is a signal for the inhabitants to come in before the gates are shut.

TAPTOO; the signal for souldiers to retire to their quarters or barracks, and to the futlers to draw no more liquor, from whence it derives its name; the taptoo is seldom beat in camp.

TO ARMS; a signal to summons the soldiers to their alarm posts on some sudden occasion.

THE CHURCH CALL; called also, **BEATING THE BANK**; a beat to summons the soldiers of a regiment or garrison to church.

THE PIONEERS CALL; known by the appellation of **Round Heads and Cuckolds, come dig**; this is beaten in camp to summon the pioneers to work.

THE SERJEANT'S CALL; a beat for calling the serjeants together, to the orderly room, or in camp, the head of the colours.

THE DRUMMER'S CALL; beat to assemble the drummers at the head of the colours, or in quarters at the place where it is beaten.

THE PREPARATIVE; a signal to make ready for firing.

THE CHAMMADE; a signal to desire a parley with the enemy.

THE ROGUES, OR, WHORES MARCH, this is beaten and played by the fifes when a soldier is drummed out of the regiment, or common prostitutes are drummed out of the camp or garrison.

THERE are also several other beats used in different corps for particular signals; such as the **Long Roll** for turning out the regiment in camp or garrison; the doubling of the troop to break from grand to sub-divisions, but these are rather particular than general.

THERE is in the king's household, an officer, stiled, drum-major-general of England, without whose licence, no one could, except the king's troops, formerly beat a drum. (k)

THE regimental drum-majors have no extra pay from govern-

(k) SEE his commission, vol. I. p. n.

ment, but receive some addition by stoppage from the pay of the young drummers, and contributions of the captains.

MANY of the drums of the infantry were formerly of brass, with the arms of the colonel painted on them, but by his majesty's late regulation, no colonel is to put his arms, crest, device, or livery on any part of the appointment of the regiment under his command, and the drums are to be of wood, the front painted with the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the king's cypher and crown, and the number of the regiment under it.

THE different sounds or signals given by the trumpet, were according to Markham, in his *Soldiers Accidence*, as follows:

THE first is BUTTE SELLA, or put on your saddles, which as soone as the soldier heareth, (in the morning, or other times) he shall presently make ready his horse and his own person, trusse up his sack of necessaries, and make all things fitting for his journey.

THE second is, MOUNTE CAVALLO; or, mount on horsebacke; at which summons, the souldier shall bridle up his horse, bring him forth, and mount his backe.

THE third is, A LA STANDARDE; goe to your colours, or standard, whether it bee standard, cornet, or guidon; upon which sound, the soldier with those of his fellowship, shall trot forth to the place where the cornet is lodged, and there attend till it is dislodged: also, this sound in the field and in service, when men are disbanded is a retreat for the horsemen, and brings him off being engaged, for as oft as he heares it, he must retire and goe backe to his colour.

THE fourth is, TUCQUET, or march; which beinge hearde simply of itselpe, without addition, commands nothing but marching after the leader.

THE fifth is, CARGA, CARGA, or an alarm, charge! charge! which founded, every man (like lightning) flyes upon his enemy, and gives prooffe of his valour.

THE sixth and last is, AUQUET, or the watch, which founded at night, commands all that are out of duty to their rest; and founded

founded in the morning, commands those to rest that have done duty, and those that have rested, to awake, and doe duty; and in these sounds you shall make the souldier so perfect, that as a song, he may lanquet or sing them, and know when they are founded unto him.

OTHER foundings there are; as TENDE HOE, for listening, a CALL for summons; a SENET, for state and the like, but they have reference to the greater officers, and those have no need of instructions.

FLAGS, banners, penciles, and other ensignes, are of great antiquity; their use was in large armies, to distinguish the troops of different nations or provinces; and in smaller bodies, those of different leaders, and even particular persons; in order that the prince and commander in chief might be able to discriminate the behaviour of each corps, or person; they also served to direct broken battalions or squadrons where to rally, and pointed out the station of the king, or those of the different great officers, each of whom had his particular guidon or banner; by which means, they might be found at all times, and the commander in chief enabled from time to time, to send such orders as he might find necessary to his different generals.

THE ancient ensigns were of different kinds, some were to be fixed or planted, being too heavy to be carried by one man; others were attached to different corps or persons, and carried about with them: carrying a banner or standard in the day of battle, was always considered as a post of honor, and in our histories, we frequently meet with several instances of persons rewarded with pensions for valiantly (1) performing that duty; the office of the royal standard-bearer was usually granted for life, with a very large

(1) A. D. 1350. 24 Ed. III. there is in Rymer, that king's writ to the treasurer of the Exchequer, directing the payment of 200 marks for life to Guido de Bryan, for his gallant

large fallery; (m) an entry in the wardrobe account gives a description of some of the ensigns of King Edward I. which were thus charged; two with the arms of England, one with those of St. George, one with the arms of St. Edmond, and one with the arms of St. Edward; they were all fixed in lances. (n)

THE different kinds of ensigns anciently in use, were standards, banners, guidons, pennons, pencils, and bandcrolls, or camp colours.

THE standards was originally large flags fixed on the tops of towers, or other elevated places, and from their being stationary, were called standards, tho' this term was afterwards given to moveable ensigns, as at present to those born by the cavalry.

BANNERS were small, and of a square figure, somewhat about the make and size of the standards now born by the horse or dragoons; banners were born before knights bannerets, whose arms were embroider'd on them.

PENNONS were born before knights, batchelors, who brought a certain number of followers into the field; there are some instances of pennons being carried before esquires, but it was only

gallant behaviour in the last battle against the French, near Calais, and for his prudent bearing of the standard there against the said enemies, and there strenuously, powerfully, and erectly sustaining it.

RAUFE VESTYNDEN held 10l. per annum by letters patent under the great seal till rewarded with an office; this was granted to him by Ed. IV. for the good and agreeable service, which (says the record) he did unto us, in beryng and holdyng of oure standard of the black bull, at the batayl of Sherborne in Elmet. Rot. Parl.

(m) A. D. 1514. 5 Hen. 8. Henry de Egerton, Knt. held the office of standard-bearer, with a fallery of one hundred pounds per annum, with all accustomed perquisites.

(n) DOMINO Willmo de Felton pro quinque lanceis empti pro quinque vexellis regis, portandis in guerra Scocie anno presenti, videlt. duobus vexillis de armis Anglie, tercio vexillo de armis Sancti Jeorgii, quarto de armis Sancti Edmundi, et quinque de armis Sancti Edwardi, pro quolibet lancea 2s. per manus Willmi de Etchewiche valetti sui apud Tynewold, octavo die Julii, 10s.

those possessed of certain estates or fiefs; the penon was in figure and size like a banner, with the addition of a triangular point; they were charged with armorial bearings of their owner; on the performance of any gallant action by the knight and his followers, the pennon was converted into a banner by the king, or commander in chief, cutting off the point, whereby the knight was raised to the degree of a banneret. Both knights and bannerets were bound to appear in the field at the head of a certain number of men, whence ancient historians frequently express the strength of an army, by the number of banners and pennons of which it consisted.

THE guidon according to Markham, is inferior to the standard, being the first colour any commander of horse can let flie in the field. It was generally of damask fringed, and usually three feet in breadth near the staff, lessening by degrees towards the bottom, where it was by a slit divided into two peaks. It was originally born by the dragoons, and might be charged with the armorial bearings of the owner. The pencil was a small streamer fixed to the end of a lance, and was adorned with the coat armour of the esquire, by whom it was carried, and served to point him out in the day of battle.

HOLY or sacred banners were frequently carried into the field by monks or other ecclesiastics, in order to inspire a confidence in the troops, who were taught to believe, that the Saint, whose banner was then displayed, would interest himself in their behalf: thus, the standard of St. Cuthbert was carried with the army of King Edward I. into Scotland, (o) and with that of the earl of Surry, to the battle of Flodden-field, and several of the standards

(o) DOMINO Willmo de Gretham, monacho Dunolm, sequenti regem cum vexillo Sancti Cuthberti in guerra Scocie anno presenti pro expensis suis, a 3 die Julii, usque 24 diem Augusti, utroque computato, per 35 dies morando in exercitu regis ac etiam per expensis suis per 4 dies sequentes redeundo versus Dunolm, de licentia regis. See Wardrobe account of Ed. I. p. 67.

there taken from the Scots, were placed round the tomb of that Saint.

THE colours of the foot, frequently by the old writers stiled ensigns, are square, but larger than the banners or standards of the horse, they are fixed on a spear; formerly there was a stand of colours to every company; they were in time of action guarded by two ranks of halbardiers.

BANDCROLES are used to mark out the limits of a camp; at present, they are small square pieces of thin woollen cloth, of scarlet, quarter'd with the colour of the facing of the regiment, and are commonly called camp colours.

IN the College of Arms, there is the following curious manuscript respecting the sizes of flags, &c.

A^o. predict. (sc R. Hen. VIII. 36to.)

AN order for the flagges by the councell as hereafter follows:

A FLAGG to be in lengthe iii yards and half a quarter.

THE breadth, 2 yards, three quarters and a nayle, with the best or crest and wourde poudred with crosses of St. George.

SET forth by the Duke of Norfolk.

FOR his Grace, iiii.

FOR the Duke of Suffolk, ii.

FOR the Erle of Oxford, i.

FOR the Lord Latymere, i.

FOR the Lord Montjoy, i.

FOR the Lord Ferris, iii. (p)

THE discomodities that may come into an army for lake of ensignes and banners, standards, pennons and guydonnes, which of necessity must be had in battayle.

FIRST, for conduite and for men to resorte unto, a hundreth men under a standart, and for their cappetaynes to be knowen

thereby where to have them, when nede shall require, as knights, barones, and banneretts.

ALSOE, under a banner of armes, a hundrethe men to be conducted and none to have them but baronetts, knights of the garter, baronnes, vyfcountes, marquesses, dukes and princes for the conduicte; under eche of these a hundreth men, and under their standarts as afoursaide.

ALSO, pennons of armes, and gwydonns for conduiste, under eache of them L men, for an esquire, gentyllman, or cappetayne to be knowen thereby to all his men, to follow him in there order in musters and battayles.

ALSOE, wthout standartes, pennons, and gwydons the kinge's majestie in tymes of battell cannot make banneretts, as yt hath been accustomed in tyme out of mynd in this noble realme of England.

ALSOE officers of armes cannot be judges to judge noblemen according to their meryttes in these valyante actes, without the knowledge of these ensignes and tokens, nor yet to have knowledge where to find the cappetaines, (yf they be sent for in time of needs) and other discomcedyties may come thereof, and that our men cannot know their cappetaynes from their enemyes in tyme of foragynge or battayle.

ALSOE, yt hathe allwayes ben the custome of thys noble realme of England, yt every cappetayne wolde rather dye in the felde, than to loose any of these foresaide signes, as standarts, banner, pennon, or guydown token of his armes of nobylitie, and alwayes and unto this day they have, in any battell wheare they have gone and proceeded, had the victory of and againste the generall flages of there enemyes, which ys not hyer then a man may holde a lyttle over hys heade, and wavers nothings in the winde, but by force of his armes, and standarts, pennons, and gwydonnes waver in the wynde, and be sene fare of, and maketh enemyes afferde, and comforteth the friende to followe them.

AND yf there be nothings borne but flaggs for ensignes, as
strangers

strangers doe, you shall not knowe the bandes of nobilitie of the realme from straungers, nor gentellmen from knights, nor a knight from a baronne, nor no degree from another of nobilitie, but every man in like goode, and bastards as legettemate.

The Scyffe of Standarts, Banners, Pennons, and Gwydonnes.

THE great standart to be sett afore the king's pavylyon or tente, not to be borne in battell, to be of the lengthe of xi yards.

THE king's standart to be borne, to be of the length of viii yard or ix.

THE duke's standart to be borne, to be of the lengthe of vii yards.

THE earl's standart to be of the length of vi yards.

THE barron's standart to be of the length of v yards.

THE bannerett's standart to be of the length of iv yards.

THE knight's standart to be of the length of iv yards.

EVERY standart and gwydon to have in the cheffe, the crosse of St. George, y^e best or creste with his devise, and wourde and flytte at the ende.

THE penon of their armes rounde at the ende, and to be ii yards and a half longe.

THE gwydon to be in length ii dy. or iii yards.

THE banner of armes an elle longe, yard brode.

UNDER a standart, C men.

UNDER a banner, C men.

UNDER a pennon, L men.

UNDER a gwydon, L men.

A BANNER of a knight of the garter, a barronett, a barrone, a vyfcount, an erle, a marquis, duke or prince, C.

THE standart for the same personage aforesaid, and for a knight being cappetayne of men.

A PEN-

A PENNON of armes, and a gwydon for the conduicte under eche of them L. men, for a gentleman or squier.

FLAGGS for horsemen, a yarde and di. longe wth the crofs of St. George, the crest and worde.

WHEN the kinge or any other prince furst displayeth their banner, y^t oulde be donne by stade and discreet counsellors, some of them hored of age, shewing them the lawful cause why, to the entente that there should be founde no wyfulness in the said prince, but that he doeth yt uppon a just cause of quarrell, w^{ch} done to commande the chiefe of the herralds to unroll yt, and the prince to make hym knight that beareth the saide banner, yf he be not so before, and to ryde forth in the name of God.

THE sizes of banners of the knights of the garter in the time of Q. Elizabeth.

THE queene's banner is 2 yards di. long, and 2 yards broad besides the fringe.

THE banner of each kn^t. of the garter is 2 yardes quart. long and broad, besides the fringe.

AT present there are in general only two colours to a battalion of foot, and one standard to a squadron of horse. (p)

SEVERAL regiments from particular circumstances, bear badges

(p) THE 2d regiment of foot had three colours as a distinguishing mark of honour; his majesty's arms were in the centre of the first, the queen's cypher in the centre of the second, both of which were in other respects unions; the third was sea-green, (the original facing of the corps,) and to the best of my recollection, the colonel's arms or crest was in the centre; on our marching over Island bridge into Dublin duty, in 1750, this last mentioned colour, (I being then the third ensign) was, by order of general Foroke, taken out of my hands, furled, and never flew since; the men grumbled exceedingly; I felt myself hurt at being deprived of an honour no other corps then enjoyed, and which this had carried since its creation, in 1661.

WHENEVER the king reviews it, as soon as the colonel presents the return, his majesty most graciously hands it to his royal consort (if there), it being the queen's own royal regiment of foot, of which his majesty is colonel. *Donkin's Military Collections.*

or devices on their colours ; a list of them as settled by royal authority here follows.

Devices and Badge of the Royal Regiments, and of the Sixth old Corps.

“ FIRST, or royal regiment ; in the centre of their colours, the king’s cypher within the circle of St. Andrew, and crown over it. In the three corners of the second colour, the thistle and crown. The distinction of the colours of the second battalion, is a flaming ray of gold descending from the upper corner of each colour towards the centre.

“ ON the grenadiers caps, the king’s crest ; also the king’s cypher within the circle of St. Andrew, and crown over it, as in the colours.

“ THE drums, and bells of arms, to have the same device painted on them, with the number or rank of the regiment under it.

“ SECOND, or queen’s royal regiment. In the centre of each colour, the queen’s cypher on a red ground within the garter, and crown over it. In the three corners of the second colour, the lamb, being the ancient badge of the regiment.

“ ON the grenadiers caps, the king’s crest ; also the king’s cypher and crown, as in the colours.

“ THE drums and bells of arms, to have the queen’s cypher painted on them in the same manner, and the rank of the regiment underneath.

“ THIRD, or buffs. In the centre of their colours, the dragon, being their ancient badge ; and the rose and crown in the three corners of their second colour.

“ ON the grenadiers caps, the king’s crest ; also the dragon.

“ THE same badge of the dragon to be painted on their drums, and bells of arms, with the rank of the regiment underneath. (q)

“ FOURTH,

(q) THE third regiment of foot raised in 1665, known by the ancient title of the Old Buffs,

“FOURTH, or king's own royal regiment. In the centre of their colours, the king's cypher on a red ground within the garter, and crown over it. In the three corners of their second colour, the lion of England, being their ancient badge.

“ON the grenadiers caps, the king's crest; also the king's cypher and crown as in the colours.

“THE drums and bells of arms to have the king's cypher painted on them, in the same manner, and the rank of the regiment underneath.

“FIFTH, in the centre of their colours, St. George killing the dragon, being their ancient badge; and in the three corners of their second colour, the rose and crown.

“ON the grenadiers caps, the king's crest; also, St. George killing the dragon.

“THE same badge of St. George and the dragon to be painted on the drums, and bells drums, with the rank of the regiment underneath.

“SIXTH, in the centre of their colours, the antelope, being their ancient badge, and in the three corners of their second colour, the rose and crown.

“ON the grenadiers caps the king's crest; also the antelope.

“THE same badge of the antelope to be painted on their drums, and bells of arms, with the rank of the regiment underneath.

SEVENTH, or royal fuzileers; in the centre of their colours, the rose within the garter and the crown over it; the white horse in the corners of the second colour.

“ON the grenadiers caps, the king's crest; also, the rose within the garter and crown, as in the colours.

Bufs, have the privilege of marching through London, with drums beating, and colours flying, which the city disputes, not only with all other corps, but even with the king's guards going on duty to the Tower. *Major Donkin's Military Collections, &c.*

“THE

“THE same devise of the rose, within the garter and crown, on their drums and bells of arms; rank of the regiment underneath.

“XVIIIth, or royal Irish; in the centre of their colours, the harp in a blue field, and the crown over it; and in the three corners of their second colour, the lion of Nassau, King William the Third's arms.

“ON the grenadiers caps, the king's crest; also, the harp and crown, as in the colours.

“THE harp and crown to be painted in the same, on their drums, and bells of arms, with the rank of the regiment underneath.

XXIst. OR royal North British fuzileers. In the centre of their colours, the thistle within the circle of St. Andrew, and crown over it; and in the three corners of the second colour, the king's cypher and crown.

“ON the grenadiers caps, the king's crest: also, the thistle, as in the colours.

“ON the drums, and bells of arms, the thistle and crown; to be painted as in the colours. Rank of the regiment underneath.

“XXIIId. OR royal Welch fuzileers. In the centre of their colours, the device of the prince of Wales; viz. Three feathers issuing out of the prince's coronet. In the three corners of the second colour, the badges of Edward, the Black Prince; viz. Rising sun, red dragon, and the three feathers in the coronet. Motto, “Ich dien.” (r)

“ON

(r) THE royal regiment of Welch fuzileers, has a privilegeous honour of passing in review, preceded by a goat with gilded horns, and adorned with ringlets of flowers; and although this may not come immediately under the denomination of a reward for merit, yet the corps values itself much on the ancientness of the custom.

EVERY 1st of March, being the anniversary of their tutelar Saint, David, the officers give a splendid entertainment to all their Welch brethren, and after the cloth is taken

" ON the grenadiers caps, the king's crest: also, the feathers, as in the colours.

" THE same badge of the three feathers, and motto, Ich dien, on the drums, and bells of arms; rank of the regiment underneath.

XXVIIth. OR Inniskilling regiment; allowed to wear in the centre of their colours, a castle, with three turrets; St. George's colours flying in a blue field, and the name of Inniskilling over it.

" ON the grenadiers caps the king's crest: also, the castle and name, as in the colours.

" THE same badge of the castle and name, on the drums and bells of arms. Rank of the regiment underneath.

" XLth. OR, invalid. In the centre of their colours, the rose and thistle, on a red ground, within the garter, and crown over it. In the three corners of their second colour, the king's cypher and crown.

" ON the grenadiers caps, the king's crest: also, the rose and thistle, as in the colours.

" ON the drums, and bells of arms, the same device of the rose and thistle conjoined, within the garter and crown, as in the colours.

XLId. OR, royal highlanders. In the centre of their colours, the king's cypher within the garter, and crown over it; under it, St. Andrew, with the motto, "nemo me impune lacessit." In the three corners of the second colour, the king's cypher and crown.

away, a bumper is filled round to his Royal Highness, the Prince of Wales, (whose health is always drank to first that day) the band playing the old tune of "the Noble Race of Shenkin," when an handsome drum-boy, elegantly dressed, mounted on the goat, richly caparisoned for the occasion, is led thrice round the table in procession by the drum-major. It happened in 1775, at Boston, that the animal gave such a spring from the floor, that he dropped his rider upon the table, and then bouncing over the heads of some officers, he ran to the barracks with all his trappings, to the no small joy of the garrison and populace. *Donkin.*

" ON

“ ON the grenadiers caps, the king's crest : also, St. Andrew, as in the colours.

“ ON the drums, and bells of arms, the same device, with the rank of the regiment underneath.

“ LXth. OR royal Americans. In the centre of their colours, the king's cypher within the garter and crown over it. In the three corners of the second colour, the king's cypher and crown. The colours of the second battalion to be distinguished by a flaming ray of gold, descending from the upper corner of each colour, towards the centre.

“ ON the grenadiers caps, the king's crest : also, the king's cypher and crown, as in the colours.

“ ON the drums, and bells of arms, the king's cypher painted in the same manner, and the rank of the regiment underneath.

N. B. Since these regulations were issued, a light company has been added to each corps of infantry ; these at their first raising had the following appointments :

JACKETS, black leather caps, with three chains round them, and a piece of plate upon the centre of the crown ; in the front, G. R. a crown, and the number of the regiment ; small cartouch-boxes, powder-horns, and bags for ball ; short pieces and hatchets.

WHAT was the particular form of exercise used by the infantry in our ancient armies, is uncertain, nor is it mentioned in any books I have been able to find ; probably it was somewhat like that handed down to us by Ælian, in which was practised the facings, opening, closing and doubling the ranks and files, counter-marching and wheeling ; indeed, it would be an absurdity to suppose, that an army could ever have been led to the field uninstructed in some uniform principles of movement, and handling their arms ; and it is also certain, as has I believe been before observed, that the great number of various troops assembled at the crusades, would tend to assimilate the tactics of the whole, as every nation would

undoubtedly adopt the form of discipline most approved of in the army. (s)

By Camden's letter printed in the first volume of this work, we learn, that an innovation in our national military discipline then took place towards the latter end of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, introduced by the officers who had served in the low countries; this, it appears, was disapproved of by many ancient commanders and soldiers, a circumstance extremely natural, since they were thereby reduced from the rank of masters or teachers, to that of scholars or learners, a degradation to which it requires great philosophy to submit; this innovation in part consisted of a more general introduction of fire arms, and a consequent decrease of archers.

Soon after this era, a number of military treatises were written; from these, we learn, that the infantry was drawn up ten deep; one reason for which was, that the first rank having fired, would be able

(s) THE French Military History is as barren on this matter as our own; from father Daniel, it appears, that the oldest form of military exercise, he has found, is of the year 1473, being a manuscript in the king's library, containing the ordinances of Charles the bold, Duke of Burgundy, for the corps of gendarmerie, formed on the model of those of France, and composed of men of arms, archers, coustilliers and pages; but the infantry, the Genoese cross-bow-men and archers excepted, being long after held in small estimation, no great attention was paid to their discipline; the free archers only assembled on holidays in their villages, to practice shooting, and the game of the popenjay, which was A. D. 1721, when father Daniel wrote, still in use; a military writer (Montegon,) who had served under Charles IX. and Henry III. contemporaries with Queen Elizabeth, complains, (says father Daniel,) that in his time, no soldiers were made to perform an exercise, except the regiment of guards; this fact, incredible as it may appear, is in some measure confirmed by the testimony of Monsieur de Montgomeri de Corboson, who lived at the same time; for that gentleman in his Treatise on the French militia, speaking of the exercise of the Greek Soldiers, as described by Ælian, compares it with that used in Holland, under Prince Maurice, and not with that practised in France, which marks, that the military exercise was not at that time so accurately or frequently performed there.

to march into the rear, **form**, and reload, by the time that the other nine ranks had severally done the same; a company then generally consisted of an hundred men, which being a square number, presented an equal face every way; a matter then considered as of great importance: a company contained four escadrons or squares of twenty-five men each, five in each face.

BOTH ranks and files had three different distances at which they stood; they were distinguished by the terms; 1st. open order; 2d. order; and 3d. close order: the first was six feet; the second three feet; and the third only one foot and a half.

THE measure of open order, or six feet between the ranks, was judged by observing, that the but end of a soldier's pike when sloped, almost reached the heels of his file leader; the distance of order, or three feet, was found by closing up, till every man almost touched the chape or point of the sword of his file-leader.

THE distance of files were regulated by the following rule, for open order, a distance of six feet was taken by each file, standing so far from their right and left hand men, that their arms being mutually extended, their finger ends would just meet.

FOR order, the soldiers putting their hands on their hip bones, with their arms (as the term is) set a kimbow, the elbows just met or touched those of their right or left hand men.

CLOSE order was commanded by the word close; it was one foot and a half distance between the files, and three feet between the ranks; it was for pikes only, and was never to be used but in standing to receive the charge of an enemy; musketeers were never to be closer than the second distance, or order, three feet square, that they might have a free use of their arms.

IN exercising or performing the motions of the pike, musket, and caliver, or manual, as it is now called; the ranks and files were at open order, each man being allowed a space of six feet square.

THE second distance or order was used when the regiment was embattled or marched in the face of an enemy, to halt or to wheel, in marching through a countrey; the files were at order, and the ranks at open order.

EVERY corps consisted of pikes and musketteers; the pikes were drawn up in the centre, the musketteers on the flanks.

IT does not appear from any book I have seen, that at first the musketteers ever attempted to fire more than one rank at a time; all their fireings by ranks were conducted somewhat in the manner of the modern street firings.

THE postures or motions of the manual exercise for the musket and pike, are represented in the annexed plates; the words of command for these exercises are engraved beneath each figure, as are also those for the halbert; besides the musket, there was a lighter kind of fire-arm, called a caliver, used without a rest, the exercise differed in some small matters from that of the musket.

THE evolutions were facing, wheeling, countermarching, and doubling their ranks and files; exhibiting a variety of methods of changing the front, encreasing either the breadth or depth of the corps, or changing the situation of the ranks and files with respect to front and rear, and right or left; the manœuvres of this time were forming wings, wedges, rhombs, squares, triangles, the sheers, the saw, and a variety of other whimsical figures. (t)

IT

(t) TOWARDS the latter end of the last century, military manœuvres were, particularly in France, so multiplied and complicated, as to exhibit as many ridiculous conceits, as a Dutch parterre; an instance of this occurs in Mr. Guiber's Essay on Tactics; who says, when I entered into the service, this puerile exercise still prevailed; tho' mens minds began to be enlightened for twenty years before; they manœuvred with open ranks, and pass their time in countermarching by rank and file, in grounding their firelocks, and taking



Order your Pike



*Advance your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.*



The 2^d motion.



The 3^d motion being advanced.



*Shoulder your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.*



The 2^d motion.



The 3^d motion being ordered.



*Shoulder your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.*



The 2^d motion.

That distant distance or order was used when the regiment was ordered to march in the face of an enemy, to halt or to wheel, in marching through a country; the files were at order, and the ranks at order.

The army consisted of pikes and musketeers; the pikes were drawn up in the centre, the musketeers on the flanks.

It does not appear from any book I have seen, that at first the musketeers ever attempted to fire more than one rank at a time; all their firings by ranks were conducted somewhat in the manner of the modern street firings.

The postures or motions of the manual exercise for the musket and pike, are represented in the annexed plates; the words of command for these exercises are engraved beneath each figure, as are also those for the halbert; besides the musket, there was a lighter kind of fire-arm, called a caliver, used without a rest, the exercise differed in some small matters from that of the musket.

The evolutions were facing, wheeling, countermarching, and doubling their ranks and files; exhibiting a variety of methods of changing the front, increasing either the breadth or depth of the corps, or changing the situation of the ranks and files with respect to front and rear, and right or left; the manœuvres of this time were forming wings, wedges, rhombs, squares, triangles, the sheers, the bow, and a variety of other whimsical figures. (t)

It

(t) TOWARDS the latter end of the last century, military manœuvres were, particularly in France, so multiplied and complicated, as to exhibit as many ridiculous conceits, as a Dutch parterre; an instance of this occurs in Mr. Guiber's Essay on Tactics; who says, when I entered into the service, this puerile exercise still prevailed; tho' mens minds began to be enlightened for twenty years before; they manœuvred with open ranks, and pass their time in countermarching by rank and file, in grounding their firelocks, and taking



Order your Pike.

*Advance your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.*

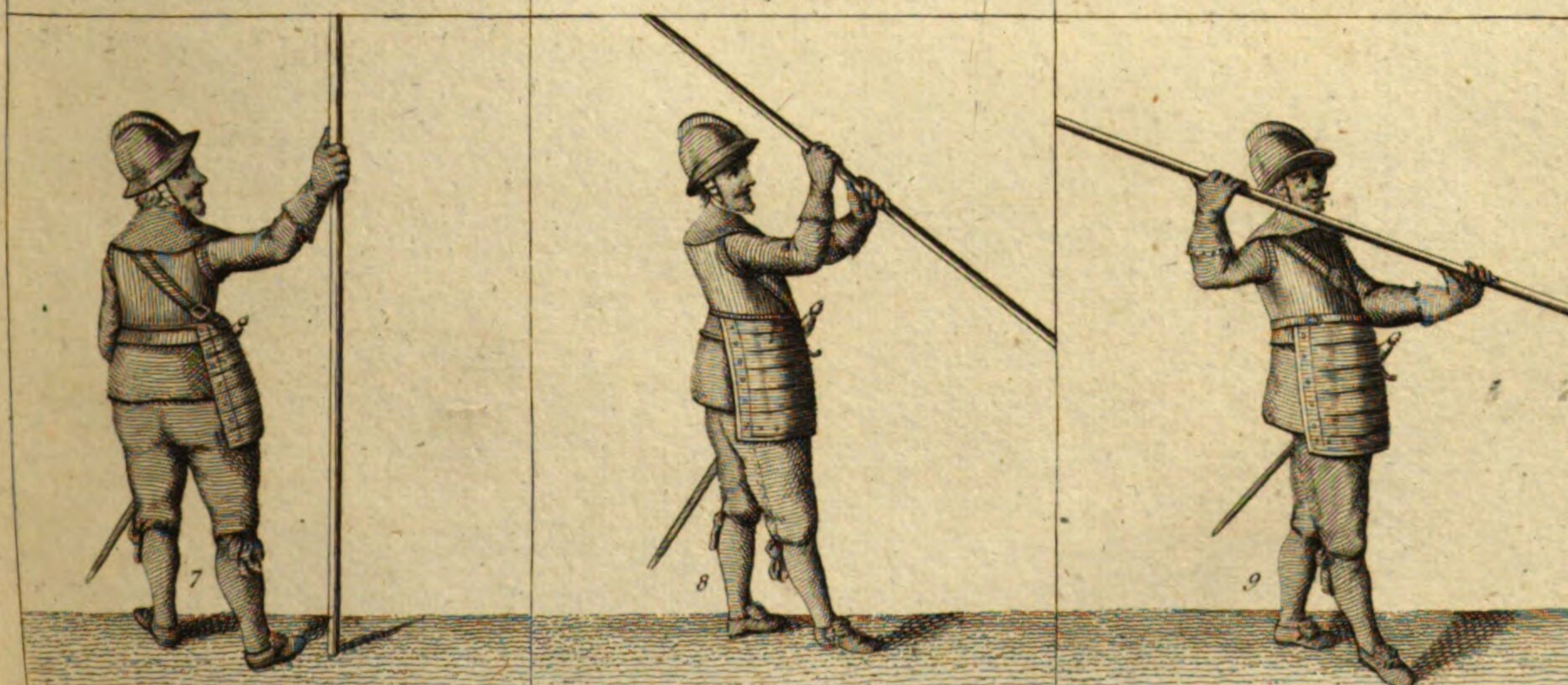
The 2^d motion.



The 3^d motion being advanced.

*Order your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion*

The 2^d motion.



The 3^d motion being ordered.

*Shoulder your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.*

The 2^d motion.

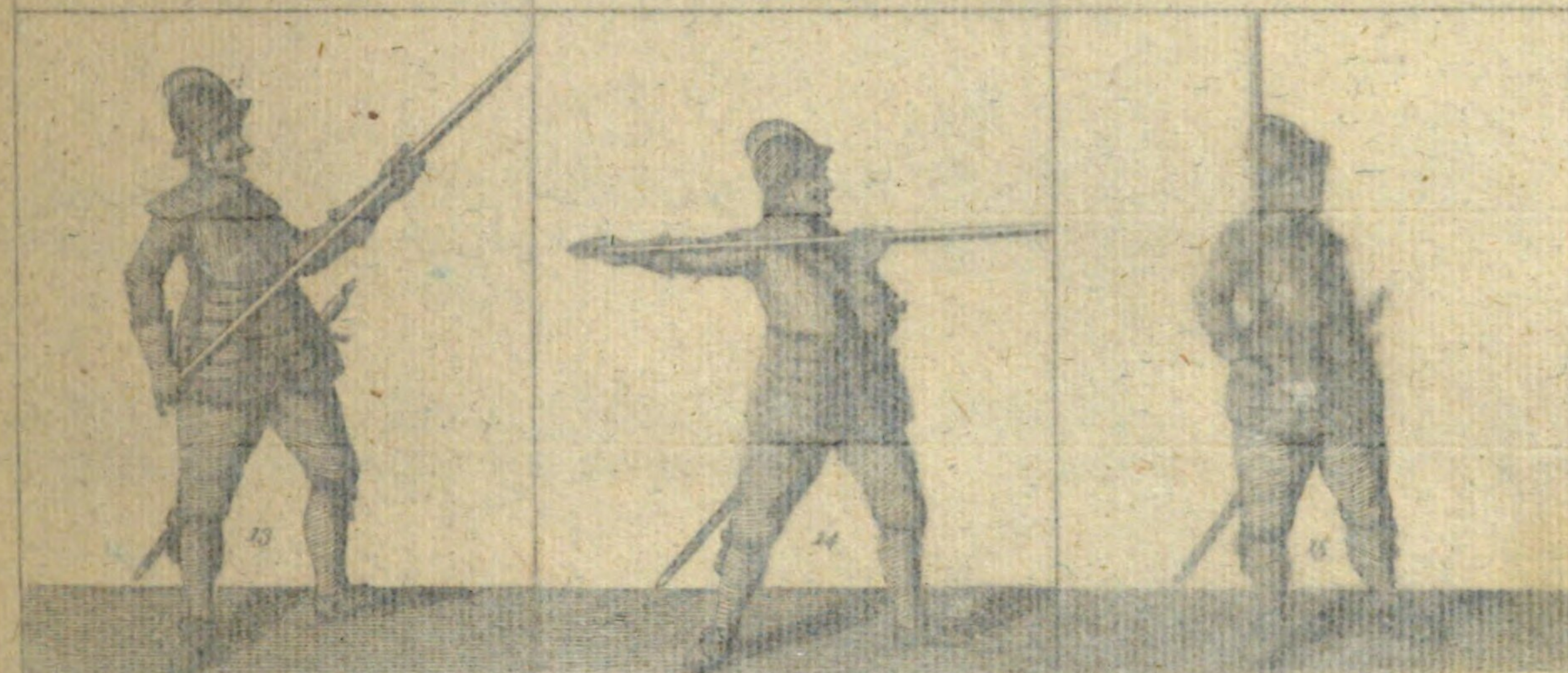
N.C. Goodrighte sculp.



The 3^d motion being Shouldered.

*Port your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.*

The 2^d motion.



The 3^d motion being Ported.

Charge your Pike.

Advance your Pike.



*Shoulder your Pike in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.*

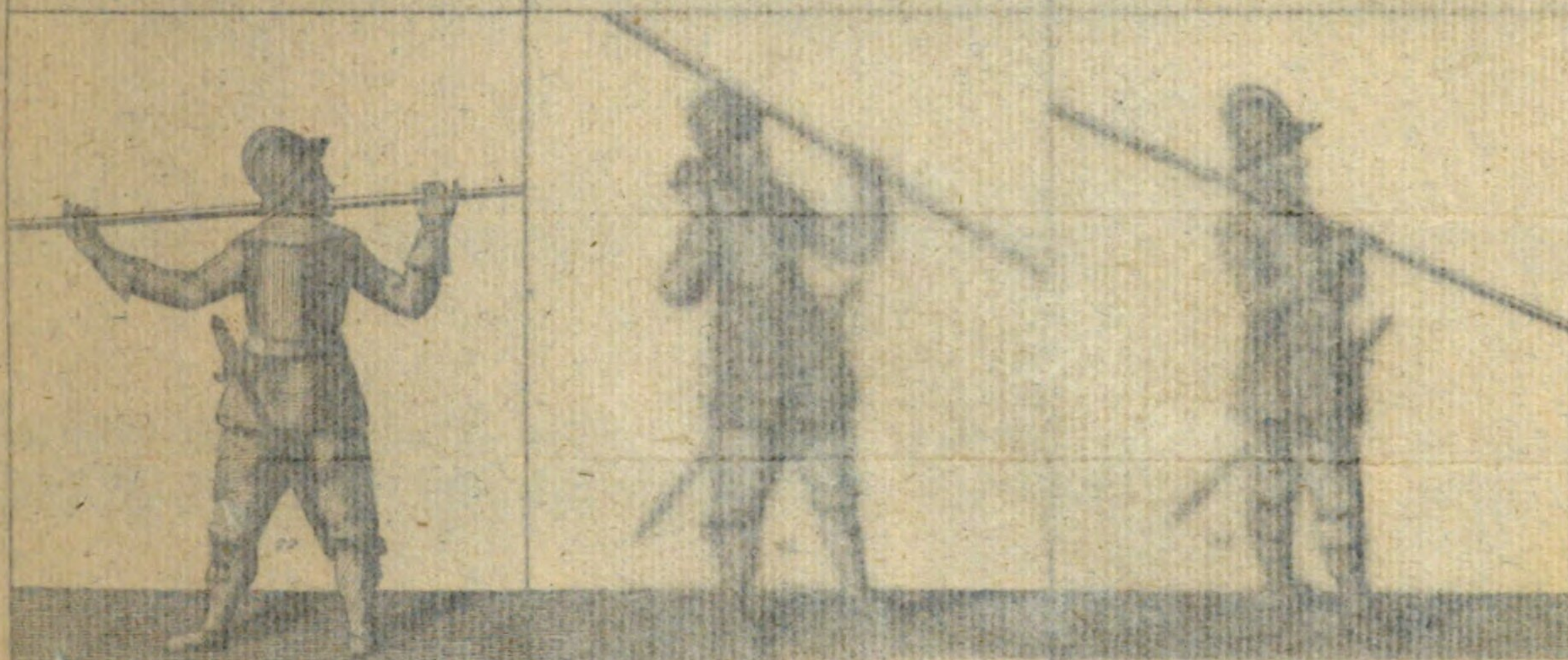
The 2^d motion.

The 3^d motion being Shouldered.





*Charge to the Rear in 3 motions.
The 1.st motion.*



*Recover your Pike & Shoulder in 3 motions.
The 1.st motion.*



Order your Pike

*Check your Pike.
The 1.st motion*

The 2.nd motion to be checked.

St. George's only



*Charge to the Rear in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.*



The 2^d motion.



The 3^d motion being charged.



*Recover your Pike & Shoulder in 3 motions.
The 1st motion.*



The 2^d motion.



The 3^d motion being Shoulder'd.



Order your Pike.



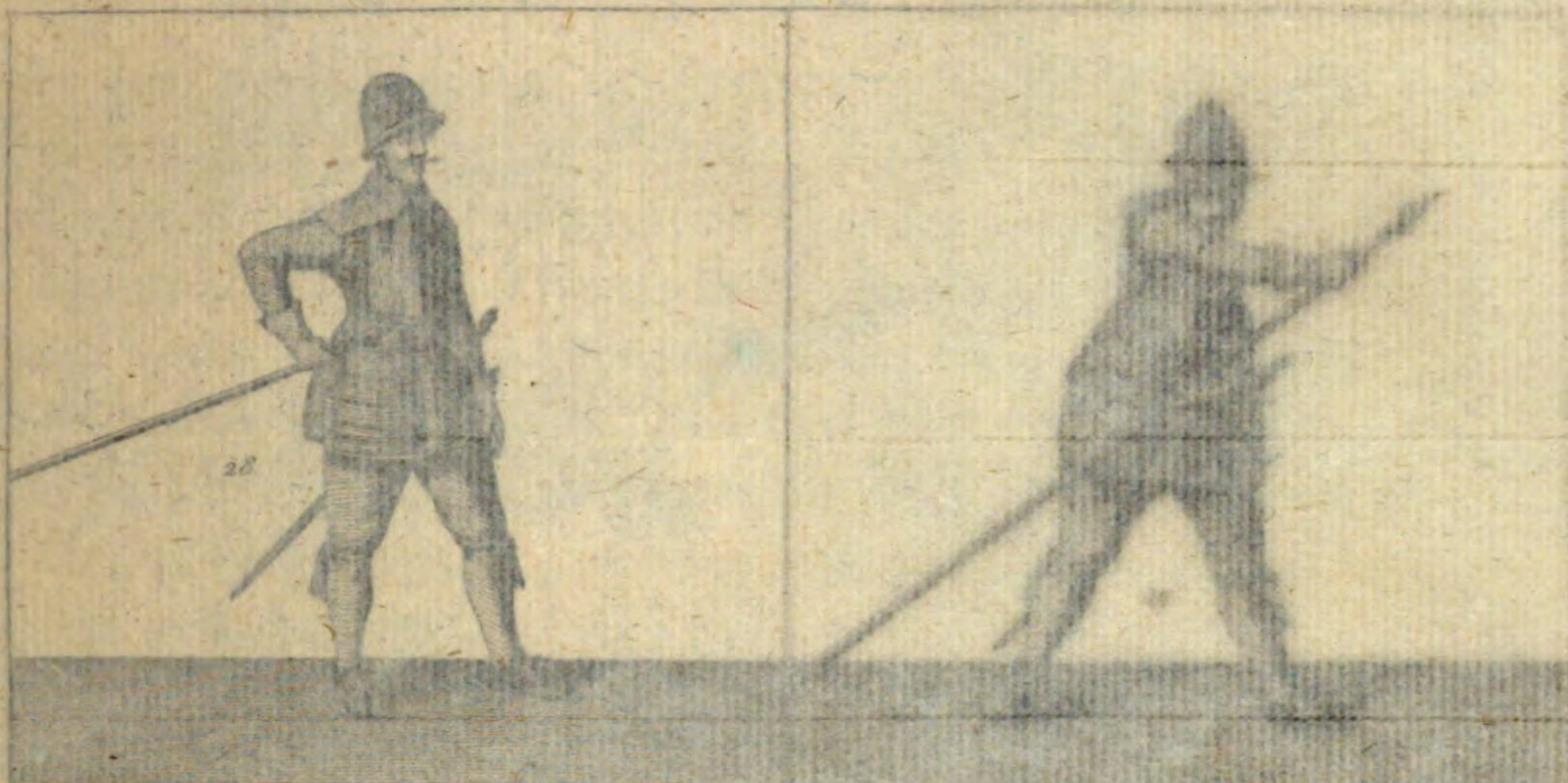
*Cheek your Pike.
The 1st motion.*



The 2^d motion being Cheek'd.

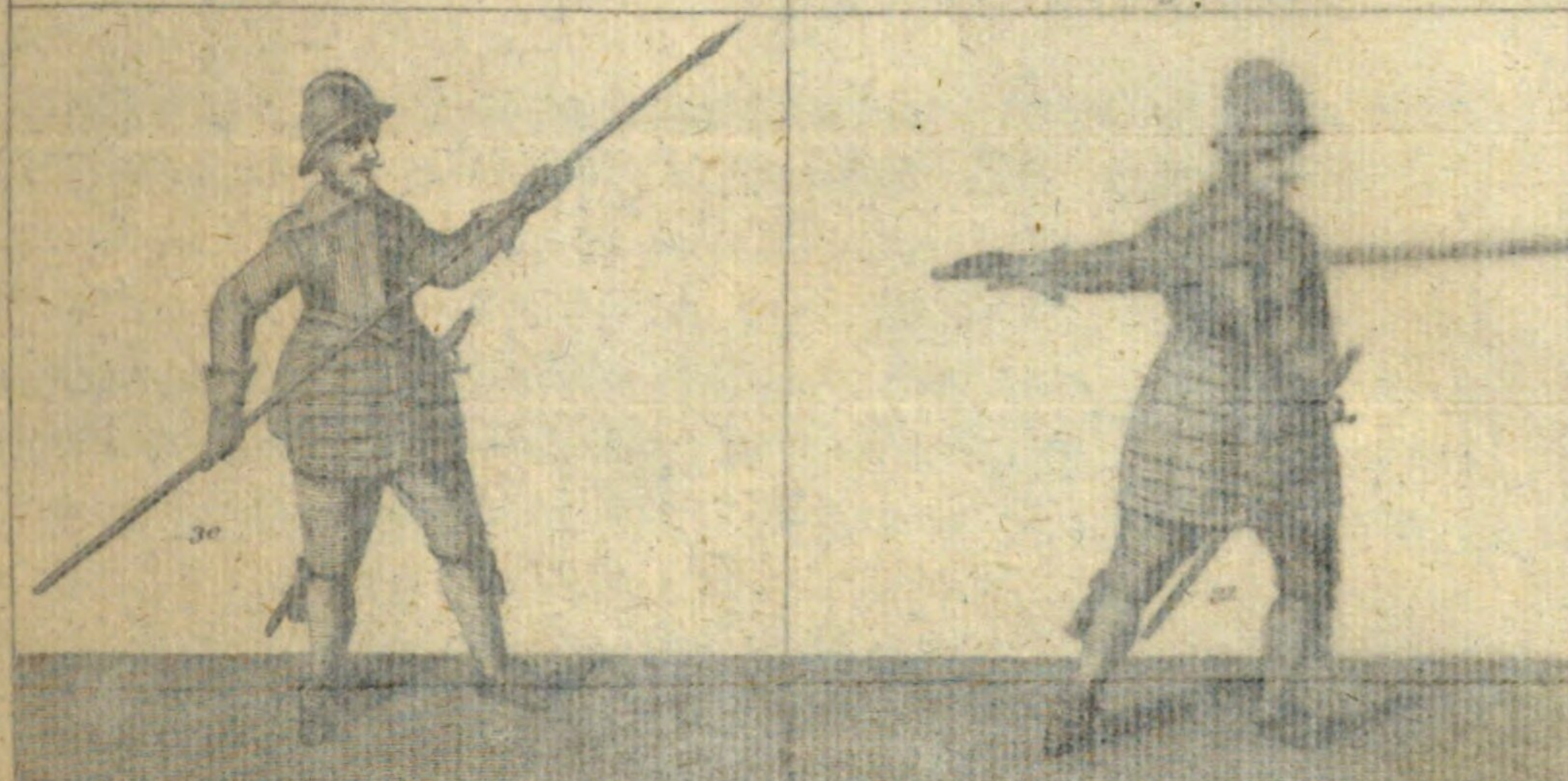
N.C. Goodnight sculpsit.





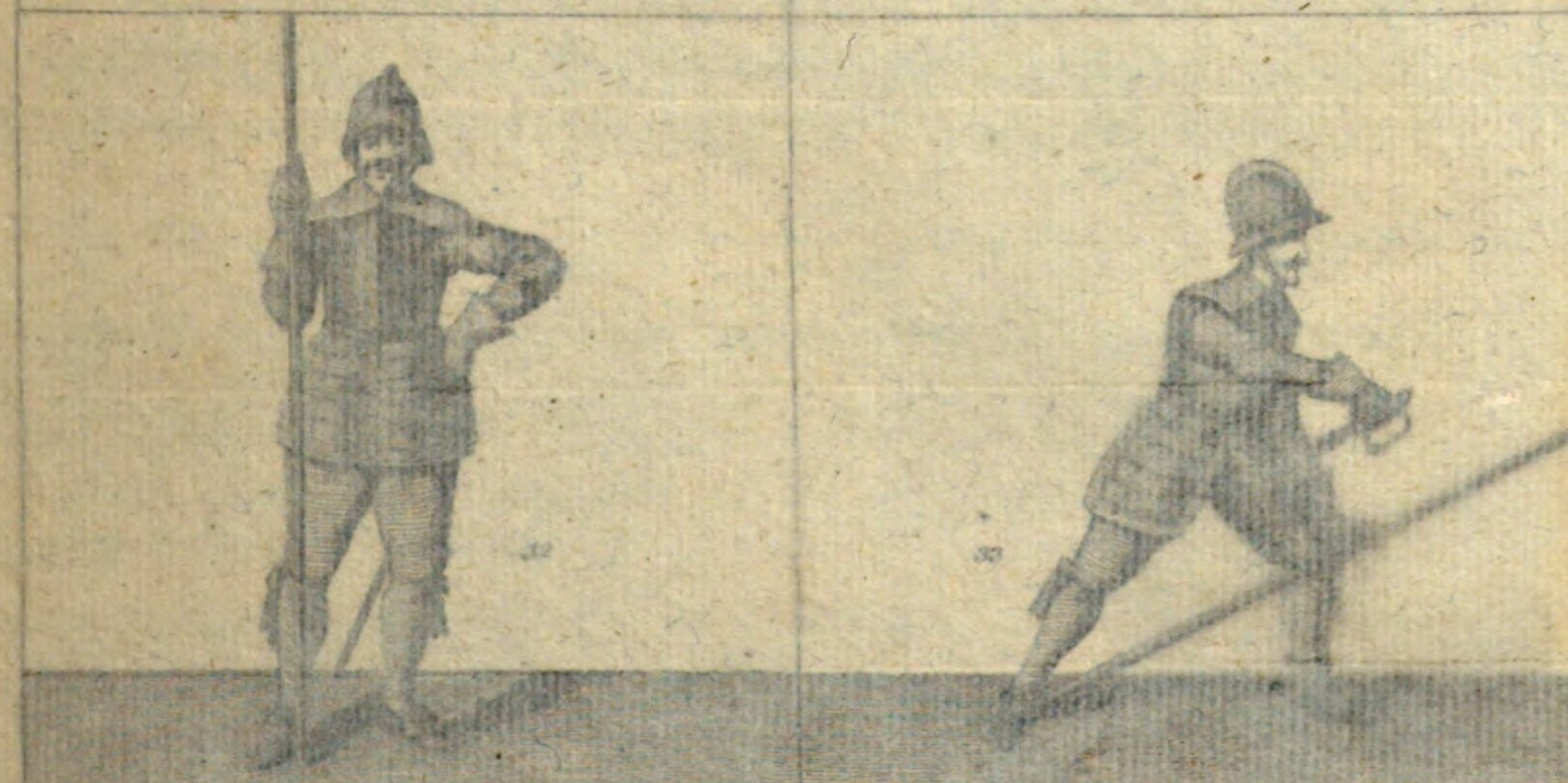
Trayle your Pike.

*Swave your Pike and Charge.
The 1st Palming move.*



The 2^d Palming motion.

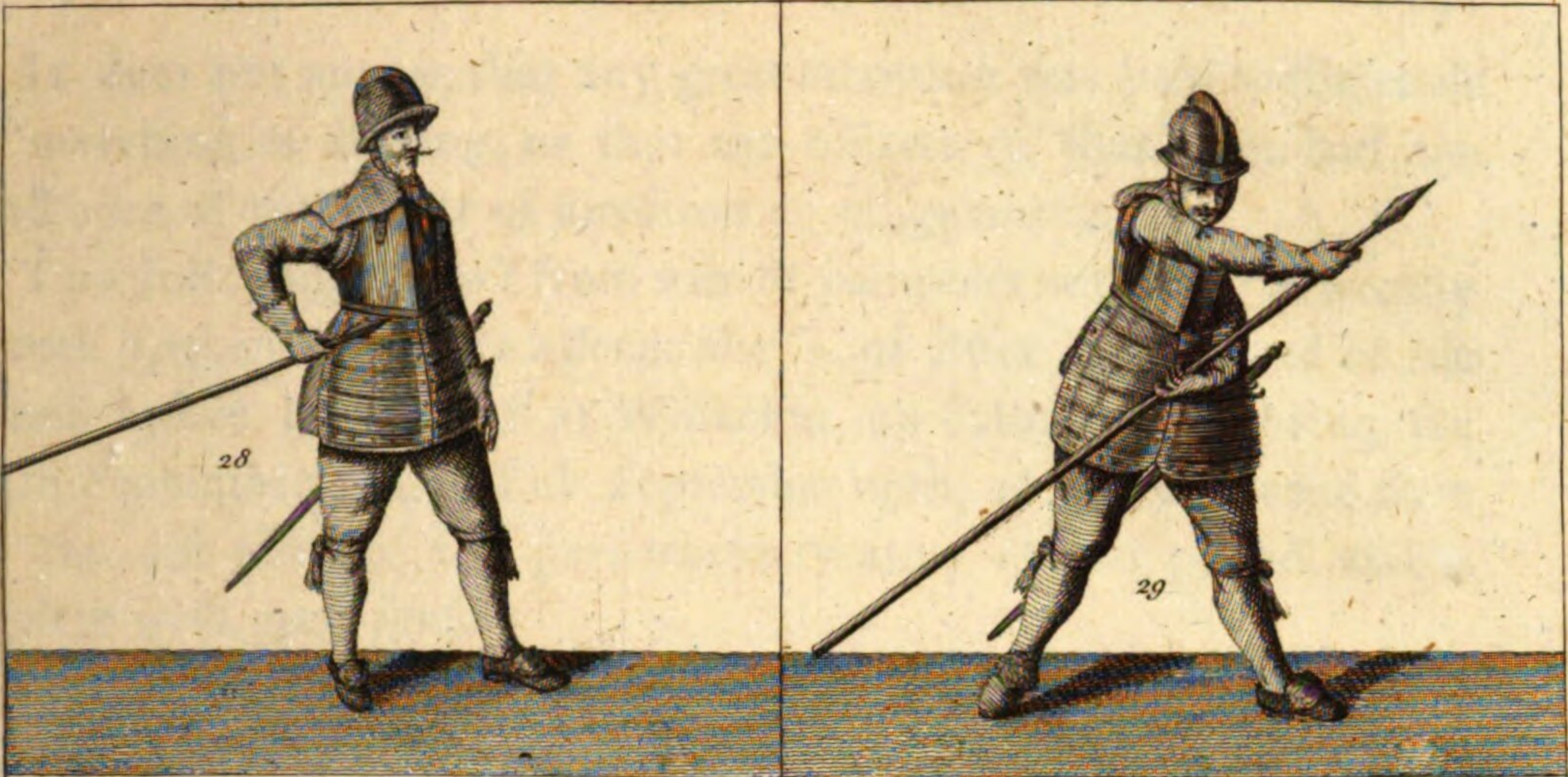
Charge your Pike.



Order at close order.

Put up your sword & order your Pike.

Not by right hand charge



Trayle your Pike.



*Recover your Pike and Charge.
The 1st Palming motion.*



The 2^d Palming motion.



Charge your Pike.



Order at close order.



Put up your Sword & order your Pike.



It does not appear that any great attention was paid to the mode of marching or dressing, or that the officers of that time had the least idea of the points of direction or allignement.

THE following extract from a small pamphlet entitled "A worthy speech spoken by his excellence the E. of Essex in the head of his armie before his arrivall at Worcester, on Saturday last, being the 24th September, 1642. Pub. September 29th, 1642," shews the state of the discipline of the parliamentary army at that period, and is replete with good sense.

1. I SHALL desire all and every officer to endeavour by love and affable carriage to command his souldiers, since what is done for fear is done unwillingly, and what is unwillingly attempted can never prosper.

LIKEWISE 'tis my request that you be very carefull in the exercising of your men, and bring them to use their armes readily and expertly, and not to busy them in practizing the ceremonious formes of military discipline, onely let them be well instructed in the necessary rudiments of warre, that they may know to fall on with discretion, and retreat with care, how to maintaine their order and make good their ground: also I do expect that all those which voluntarily engaged themselves in this service, should answer my expectation in the performance of these ensuing articles.

1. THAT you willingly and chearfully obey such as (by your owne election) you have made commanders over you.

2. THAT you take speciall care to keepe your armes at all times fit for service, that upon all occasions you may be ready when the signal shall be given by the sound of the drumme or trumpet to re-

taking them up without bending the knees; they formed battalions into circles, triangles, squares, and bastions; M. de Chevert related, that when adjutant to the regiment of Beauce, he was much admired for having at the end of a field day, he conducted before the inspector, delineated with the regiment, the words, "Vive le Roy," and caused this living alphabet to fire a feu de joye.

paire to your colours, and so to march upon any service, where and when occasion shall require.

3. THAT you beare yourselves like soldiers without doing any spoile to the inhabitants of the country, so doing you shall gain love and friendship, where otherwise you will be hated and complained off, and I that should protect you, shall be forced to punish you according to the severity of law.

4. THAT you accept and rest satisfied with such quarters as shall fall to your lot, or be appointed you by your quarter-master.

5. THAT you shall (if appointed for centries or per-dues) faithfully discharge that duty, for upon failure hereof, you are to undergo a very severe censure.

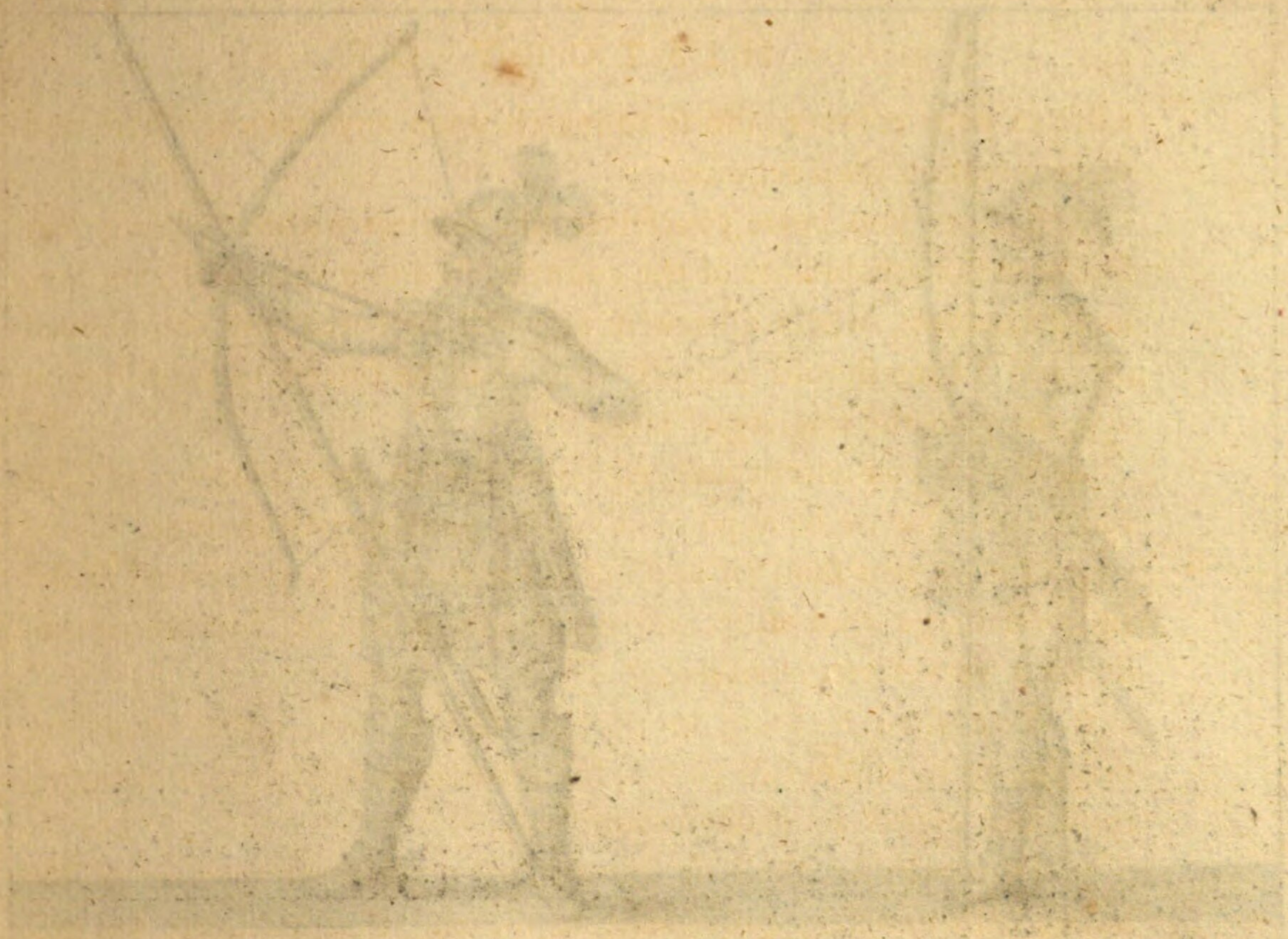
6. You shall forbear to profane the Saboth, either by being drunke, or by unlawfull games, for whosoever shall be found faulty must not expect to passe unpunished.

7. WHOSOEVER shall be knowne to neglect the feeding of his horse, with necessary provender, to the end that his horse be disabled or unfit for service, the party for the said default shall suffer a month's imprisonment, and afterwards be cashiered as unworthy the name of a souldier.

8. THAT that no trooper or other of our souldiers shall suffer his PADDEE (u) to feed his horse in the corne, or to steale mens hay, but shall pay every man for hay 6d. day and night, and for oats 2s. the bushell.

LASTLY; that you avoid cruelty, for it is my desire rather to save the life of thousands, than to kill one, so that it may be done without prejudice.

(u) THE meaning of this word I have not been able to ascertain, it is by some supposed to mean Irish boys; many of them were then, it is said, serving as grooms to the troopers: Paddee according to this idea, originated from the vulgar appellation of paddy, given by the English to the Irishmen of all denominations.





Pub. 20; June 1786 by S. Hooper

N.C. Goodnight sculp.

The double arm'd Man.

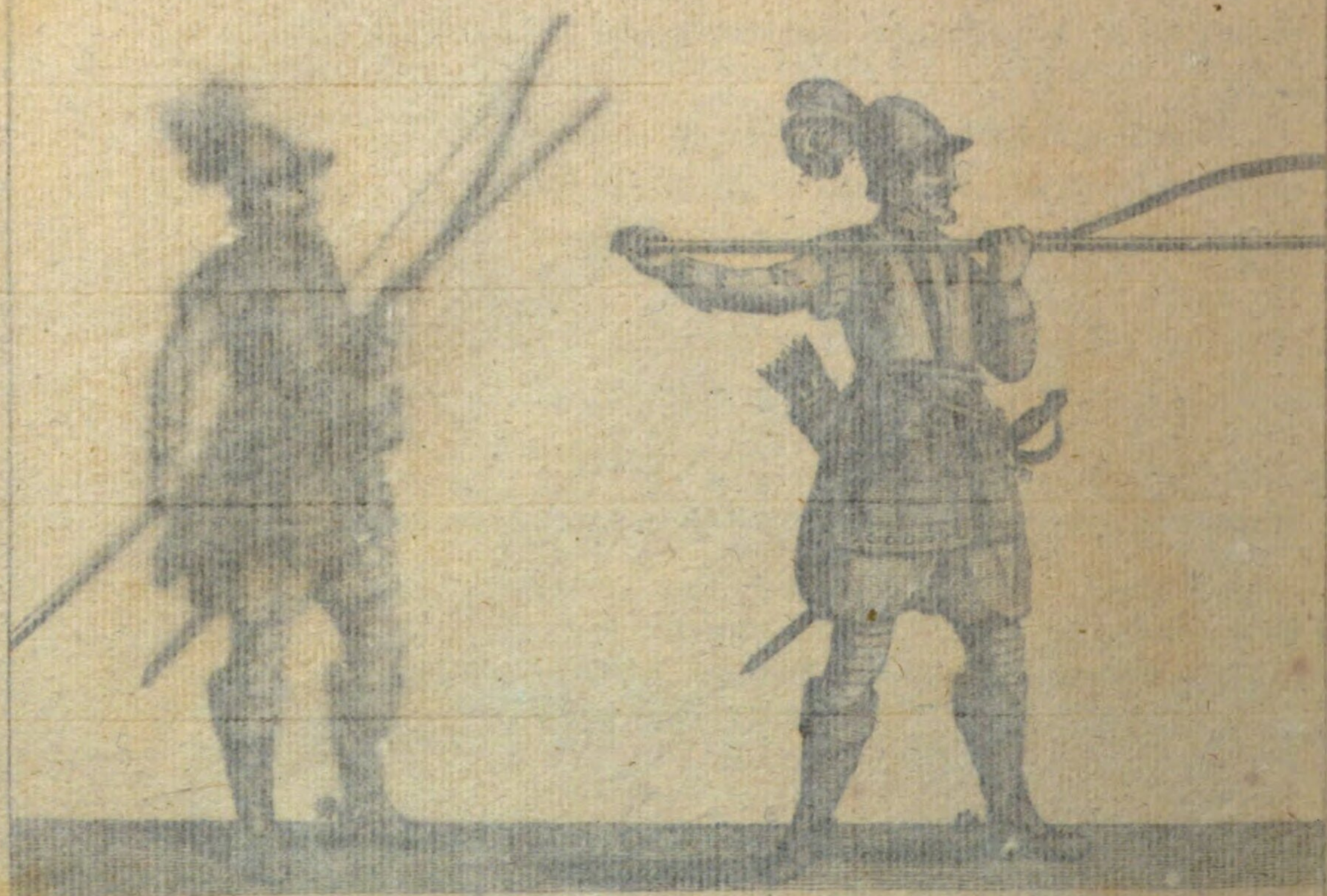


Fig. 21. Armado by J. B. Moore

Alfred Hughes del.

The double armed Man.



Double armed Man. Pl.2.

N.C. Goodnight sculp



Soldier arm'd with a Target.

Pikeman armed with a Roundel.

these things faithfully performed, and the justice of our cause truly considered, let us advance with a religious courage, and willingly adventure our lives in the defence of our king and parliament.

THE exercise adopted in the attempt to re-introduce the long bow into our armies, by connecting it with the pike, comes next under consideration.

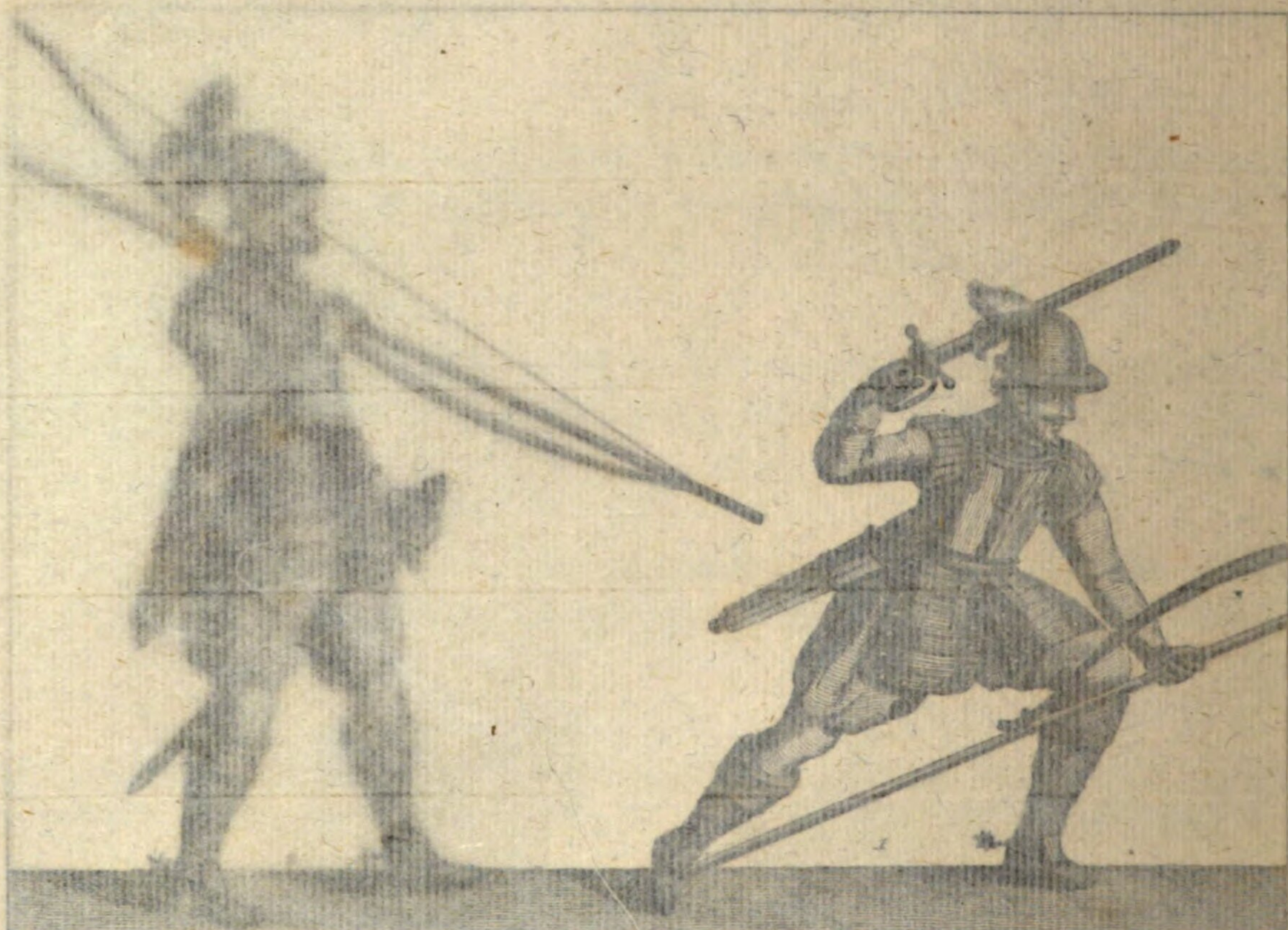
THE following are the directions given by Need in his treatise, entitled, *The Double armed Man*. (x)

Now the perfection of this exercise, if they have been busied, may be attained unto by practice without any great difficulty, and thereby he is a double armed man; and for the order and postures belonging to the pike and bow, for the true use thereof is as followeth.

FIRST, the whole body of pikes must keep their fyles of pikes streight by line, for in so doing, they may all shoot, as well the middle and the rear, as the front, without offending one another.

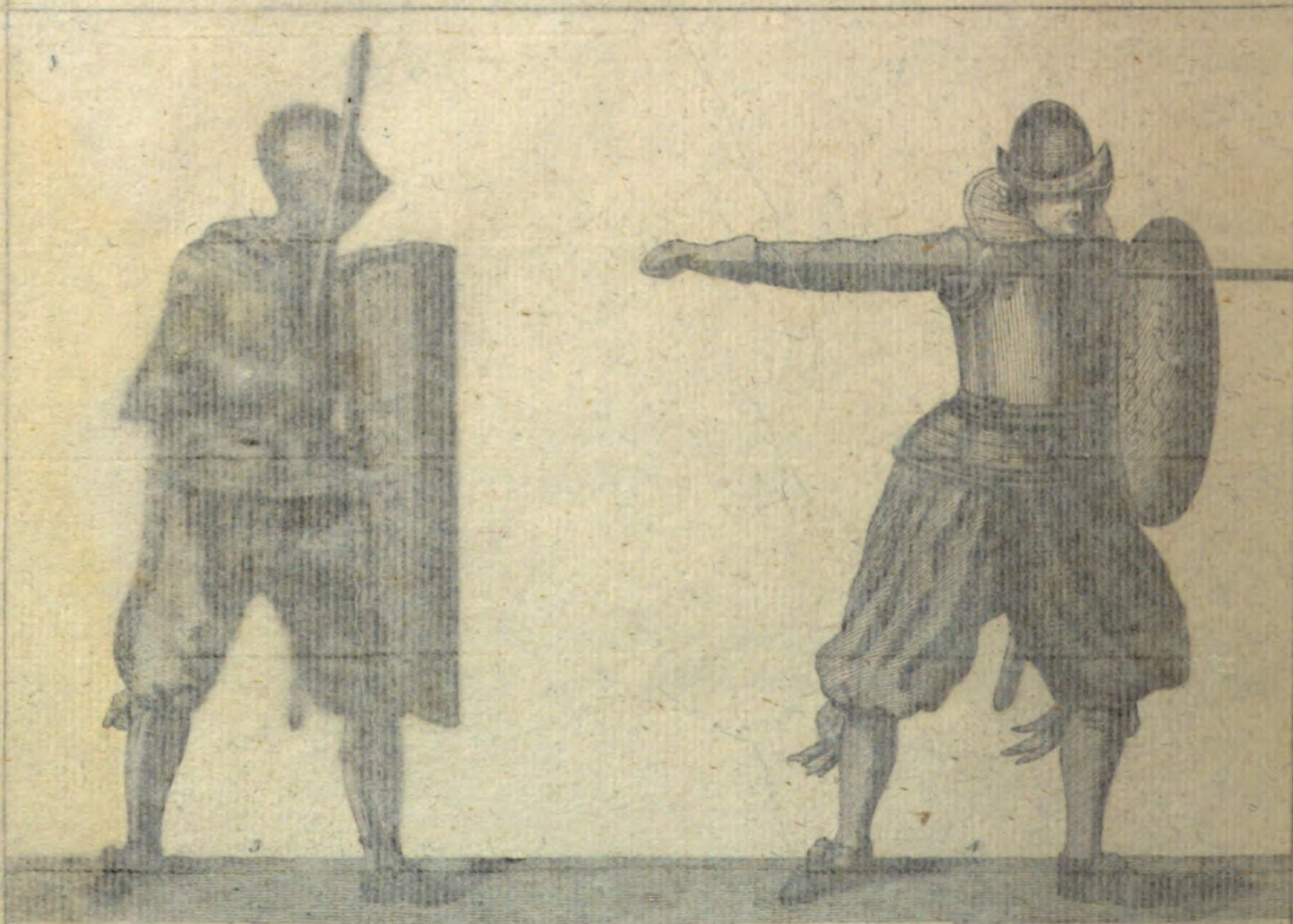
SECONDLY, every follower must shoot right over his leader's

(x) PRINTED A. D. 1625. It appears by the preface, that the Author, William Need, caused a foldier to perform this exercise before K. Charles I. in St. James's Park, and that he by petition solicited the king to give orders for its being practised in the artillery gardens of London and Westminster; to which the king answered, that it were meet for them to practice it of their own accord: he also sheweth complaints of having neither supportation, nor countenance from any, (but God alone;) he, however, at length obtained a commission, about the year 1633, for himself and son, also named William; wherein, he (the father) is stiled an ancient archer, who had presented to the king, a warlike invention for uniting the use of the pike and bow, seen and approved by him and his counsellors of war; wherefore his majesty had granted him a commission to teach and exercise his loving subjects in the said invention, which he particularly recommended the chief officers of his train-band to learn and practise; and the justices, and other chief magistrates throughout England, are therein enjoined to use every means in their power to assist Neade, his son, and all persons authorised by them in the furtherance, propagation, and practice of this useful invention; this commission is printed at large in the Appendix.



Double armed Man. Pl. 2.

J. C. G. del. sculp.



Soldier arm'd with a Target.

Pikeman armed with a Roundel.

these things faithfully performed, and the justice of our cause truly considered, let us advance with a religious courage, and willingly adventure our lives in the defence of our king and parliament.

THE exercise adopted in the attempt to re-introduce the long bow into our armies, by connecting it with the pike, comes next under consideration.

THE following are the directions given by Nead in his treatise, entitled, *The Double armed Man*. (x)

Now the perfection of this exercise, if they have been bowmen, may be attained unto by practice without any great difficultie, and thereby he is a double armed man; and for the order and postures belonging to the pike and bow, for the true use thereof is as followeth.

FIRST, the whole body of pikes must keep their fyles of pikes streight by line, for in so doing, they may all shoot, as well the middle and the rear, as the front, without offending one another.

SECONDLY, every follower must shoot right over his leader's

(x) PRINTED A. D. 1625. It appears by the preface, that the Author, William Nead, caused a soldier to perform this exercise before K. Charles I. in St. James's Park, and that he by petition solicited the king to give orders for its being practised in the artillery gardens of London and Westminster; to which the king answered, that it were meet for them to practice it of their own accord: he also there complains of having neither supportation, nor countenance from any, (but God alone;) he, however, at length obtained a commission, about the year 1633, for himself and son, also named William; wherein, he (the father) is stiled an ancient archer, who had presented to the king, a warlike invention for uniting the use of the pike and bow, seen and approved by him and his counsel of war; wherefore his majesty had granted him a commission to teach and exercise his loving subjects in the said invention, which he particularly recommended the chief officers of his train-band to learn and practise; and the justices, and other chief magistrates throughout England, are therein enjoined to use every means in their power to assist Neade, his son, and all persons authorised by them in the furtherence, propagation, and practice of this useful invention; this commission is printed at large in the Appendix.

head, and so shoot thorow his own fyle of pikes, for that must be his true direction to make his shoot.

THIRDLY, after the enemy comes on, and that the leaders do shoot breast high, then are the followers to bear their bowe hand even with the top of his leader's head, for that is the lowest and shortest distance that they can shoot, standing in their order and square body.

FOURTHLY, after your last shoot, which is about fixe score yards, you must fasten your bowe and come up to your close order for the charge; and if it be for horse, while the five or six first ranges stand charged with their pikes, rested at the foot, and their swordes drawne; the middle of the reare may shoot their voley of arrowes, and doe good service; whereas, without their bowes they can doe nothing but stand with their pikes floapt or ported.

THESE observations for the practice of this exercise, I have here set downe for the instruction unto all those that hereafter shall endeavour to practise the same.

HERE followeth the proper words of command belonging to this exercise for the pike and bow, accordinge as it hath been practised by the worthy societie in the Artillerie-garden, London.

THE proper words of command for this exercise are as followeth:

Order your pike.	Fasten your bow.
Slope your pike.	Recover your pike.
Unfasten your bow.	Advance your pike.
Draw out your arrow.	Come up to your close order.
Nock your arrow.	Charge your pike.
Shoot wholly together.	Recover your pike.
Port your pike and march.	Shoulder your pike and march.
Port your pike and retire.	Comport your pike and march.

HERE followeth also, fixe severall portraitures most proper for this exercise, with the pike and bow, by this invention with the observations



March with your rest in your hand.



March, and with your Musket carry your rest.



Unshoulder your Musket.



Poize your Musket



Join your rest to your Musket.



Take forth your Match.



Blow off your Coal.



Lock your Match.



Try your Match.

shall not suffer within his own fyle of pikes, for that must be
by order and discipline in the first.

When the enemy comes on, and that the leaders do
stand high, then are the followers to bear their bowe hand
near the breast, as the beast's head, for that is the lowest and
safest defence that they can shoot, standing in their order and
square only.

After your last shoot, which is about fixe score
yards, you must retire your bowe and come up to your close order
for the charge, and it is to be for horse, while the five or six first
rank stand with their pikes, rested at the foot, and their
fellowes behind the middle of the reare may shoot their voley
es of arrows, and do good service; whereas, without their bowes
they can do nothing but stand with their pikes floapt or ported.

For the observations for the practice of this exercise, I have here
set downe for the instruction unto all those that hereafter shall en-
deavour to practise the same.

Here followeth the proper words of command belonging to
this exercise for the pike and bow, accordinge as it hath been prac-
tised by the worthy Societie in the Artillerie-garden, London.

THE proper words of command for this exercise are as
followeth:

Order your pike.	Fasten your bow.
Slope your pike.	Recover your pike.
Unfasten your bow.	Advance your pike.
Draw out your arrow.	Come up to your close order.
Noek your arrow.	Charge your pike.
Shoot wholly together.	Recover your pike.
Port your pike and march.	Shoulder your pike and march.
Port your pike and retire.	Comport your pike and march.

Here followeth also, fixe severall portraitures most proper for
this exercise, with the pike and bow, by this invention with the
observations



March with your rest in your hand.



March, and with your Musket carry your rest.



Unshoulder your Musket.



Poize your Musket



Join your rest to your Musket.



Take forth your Match.



Blow off your Coal.



Cock your Match.



Try your Match.



Guard, blow and open your pan.



Discharge



Load your pan.



Discharge your musket.



Charge your pan.



Prime your match.



Clear your pan.



Prime your pan.



Load your pan.



Guard, blow and open your pan.



Present.



Give Fire.



Dismount your musket.



Uncock your match.



Return your match



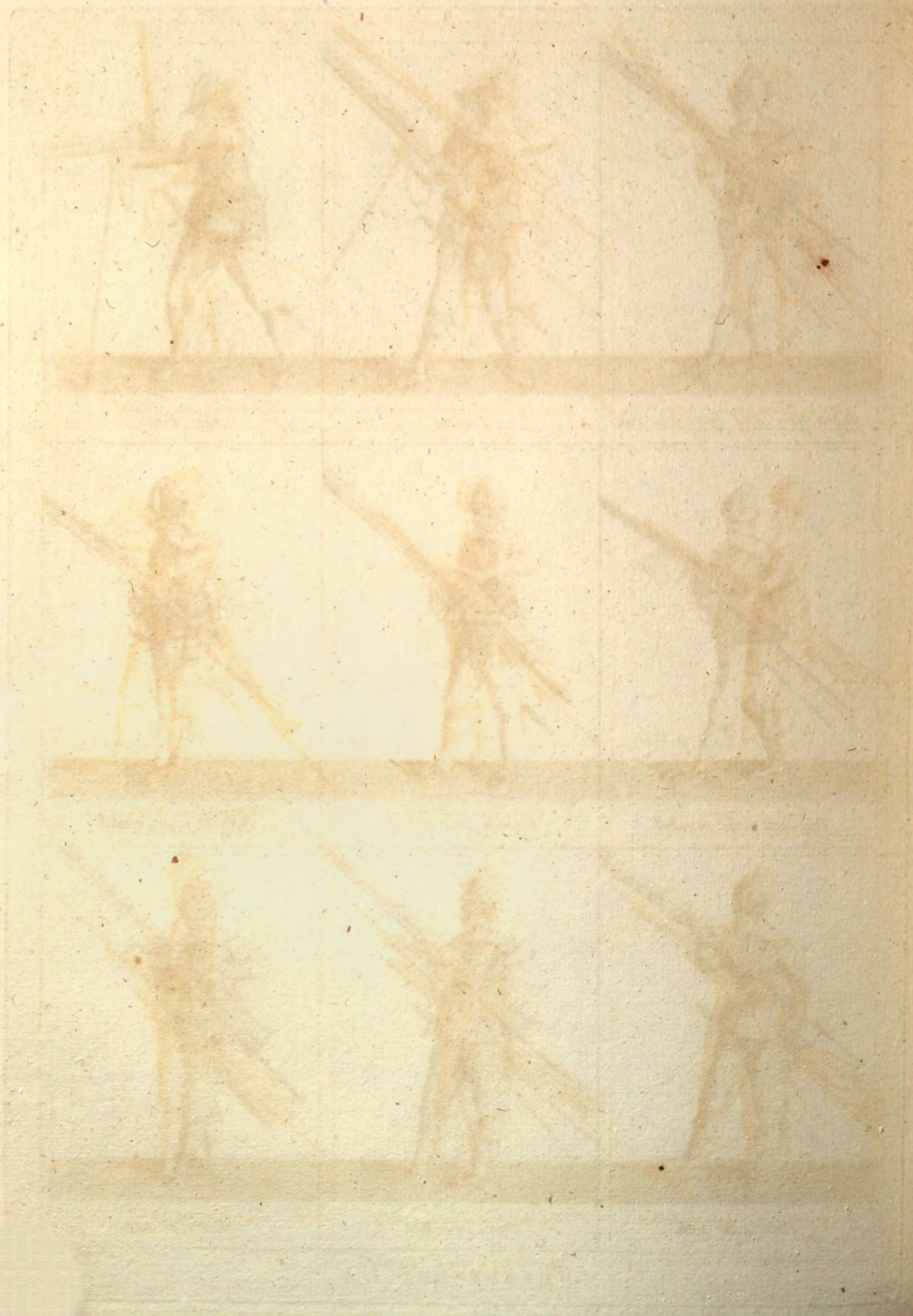
Clear your pan.



Prime your pan.



Shut your pan.





Case of your loose powder.



Blow of your loose powder.



Cast about your Musket.



Trail your rest.



Open your Charge.



Charge your Musket.



Draw forth your scouring Stick.



Shorten your scouring Stick.



Put in your Bullet & Ram home.



Cast of your loose powder.



Blow of your loose powder.



Cast about your Musket.



Trail your rest.



Open your Charge.



Charge your Musket.



Draw forth your scouring Stick.



Shorten your scouring Stick



Put in your Bullet & Ram home.



Withdraw your scouring stick.

Shorten your scouring stick.

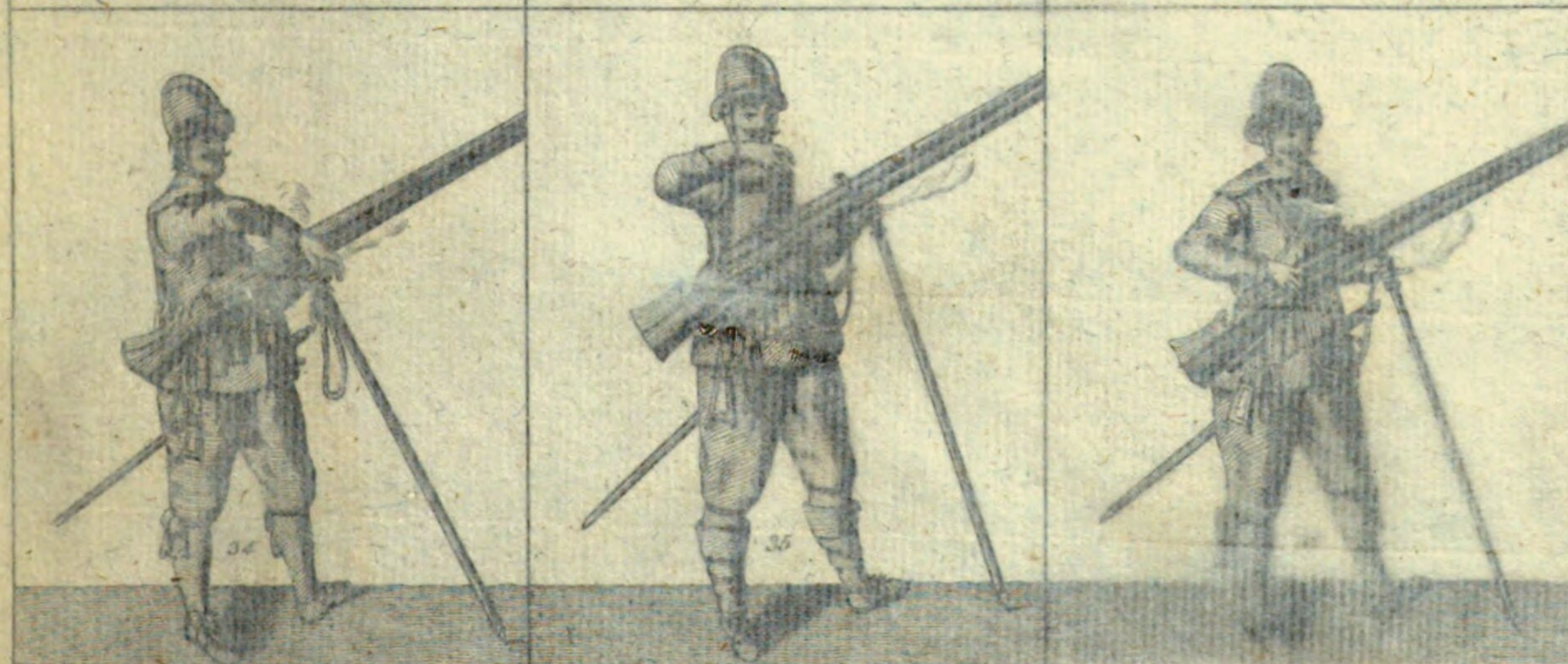
Return your scouring stick.



Recover your Musket.

Poize your Musket and recover your Rest.

Rest your Musket.



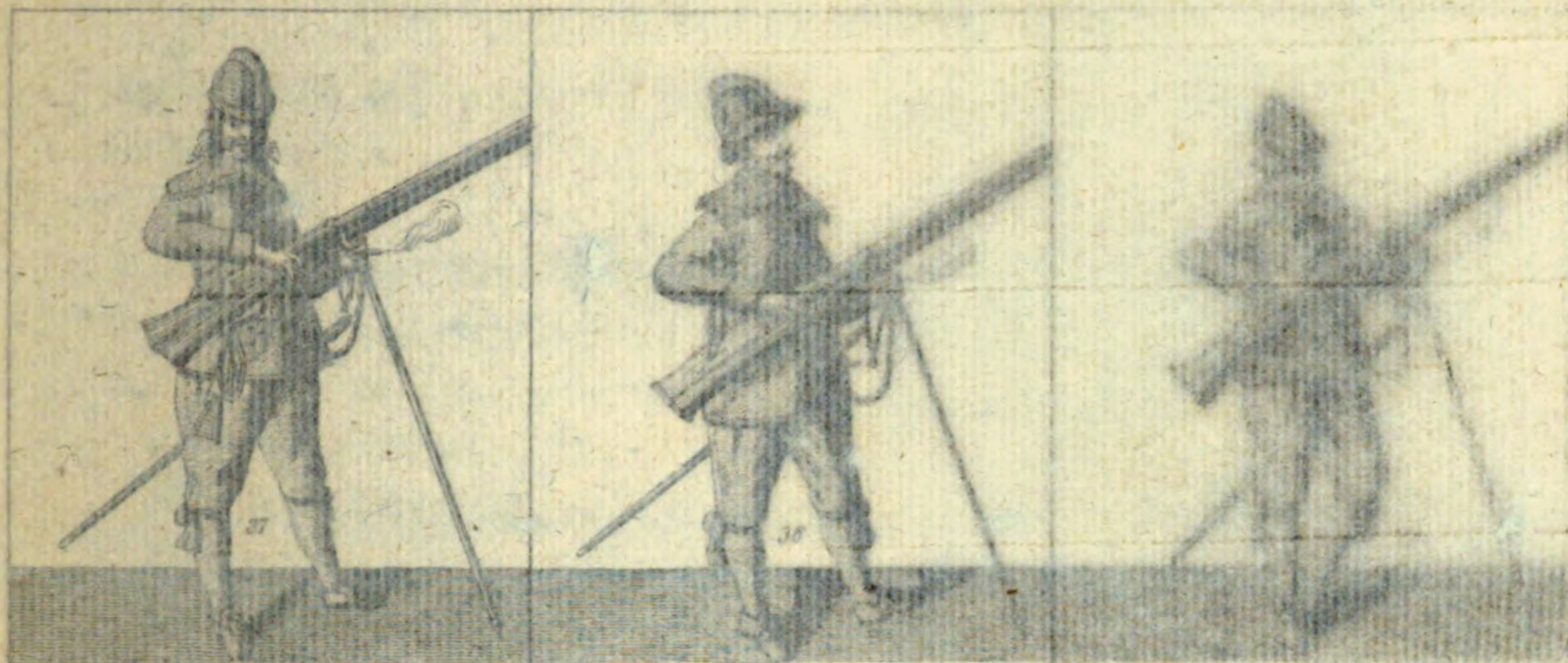
Draw out your match.

Blow your match.

Cock your match.



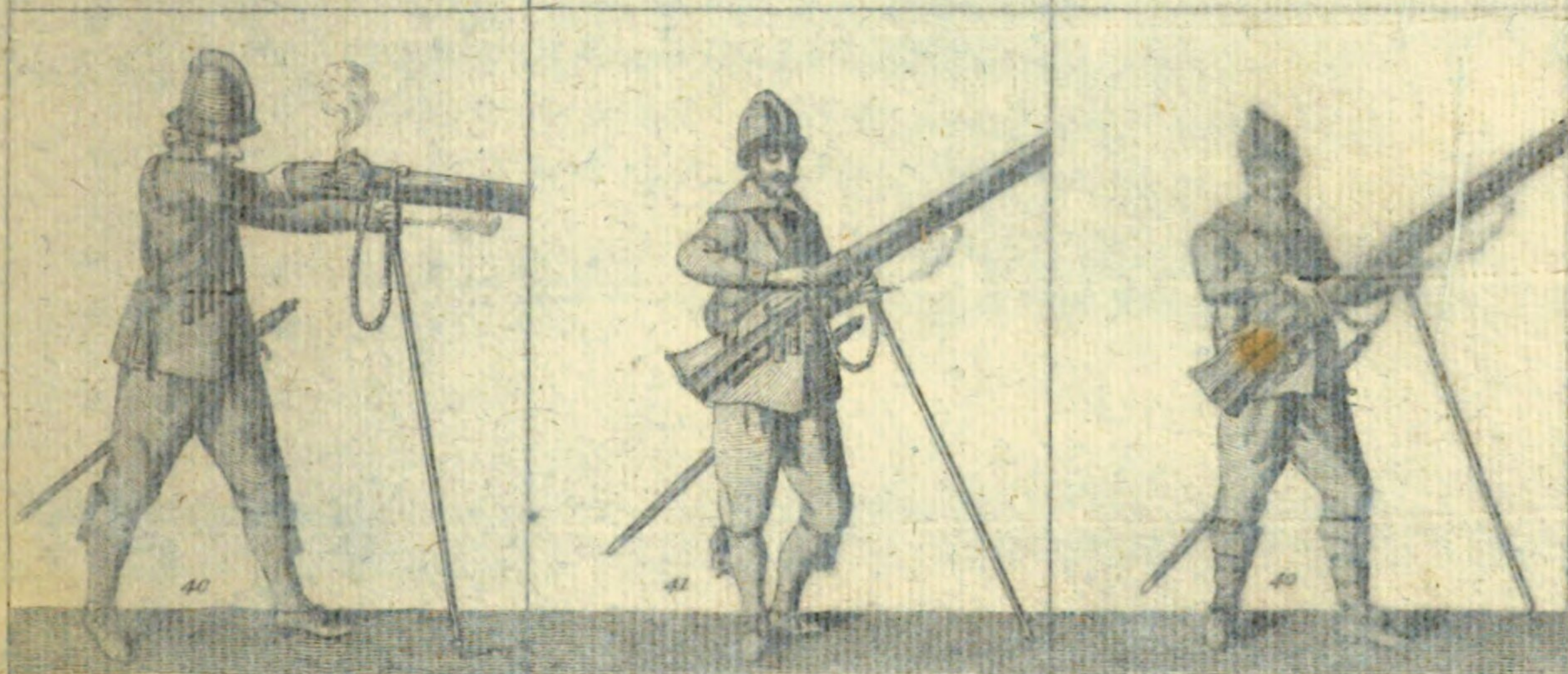




Try your match.

Guard your pan.

Present.



Give Fire.

Come up to your Musket.

Return your match.

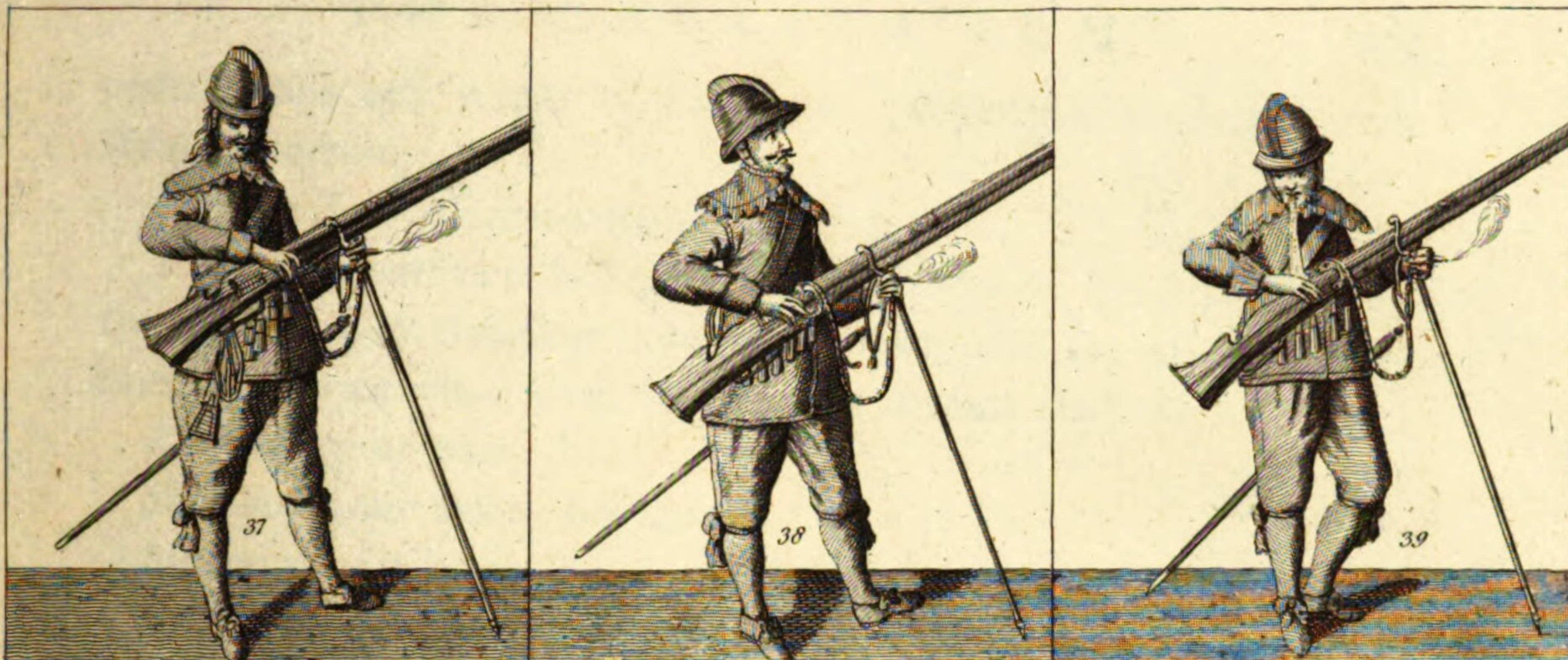


Take up your rest.

*Blow of your loose Powder and
cast about your Musket.*

Trail your rest & open your charge.

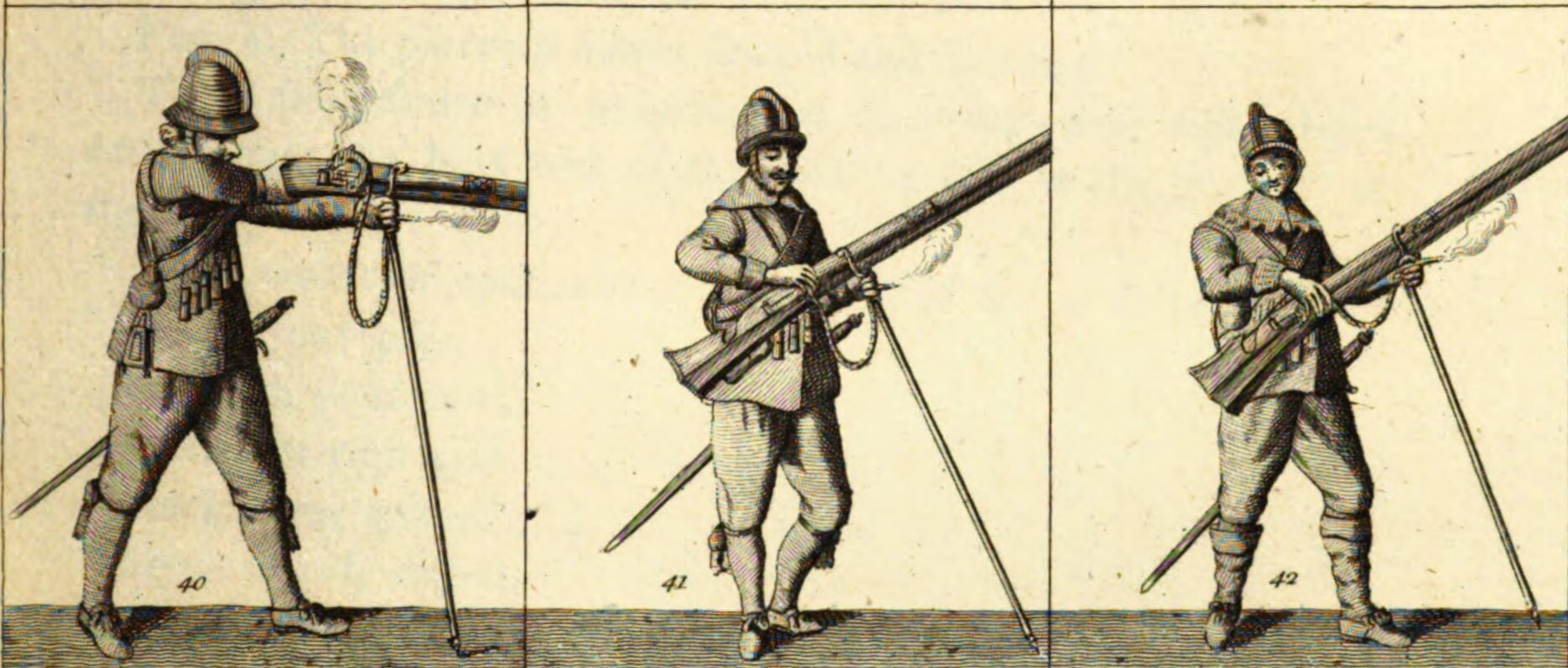
Pub. 15 Jan. 1787 by J. Hooper



Try your match.

Guard your pan.

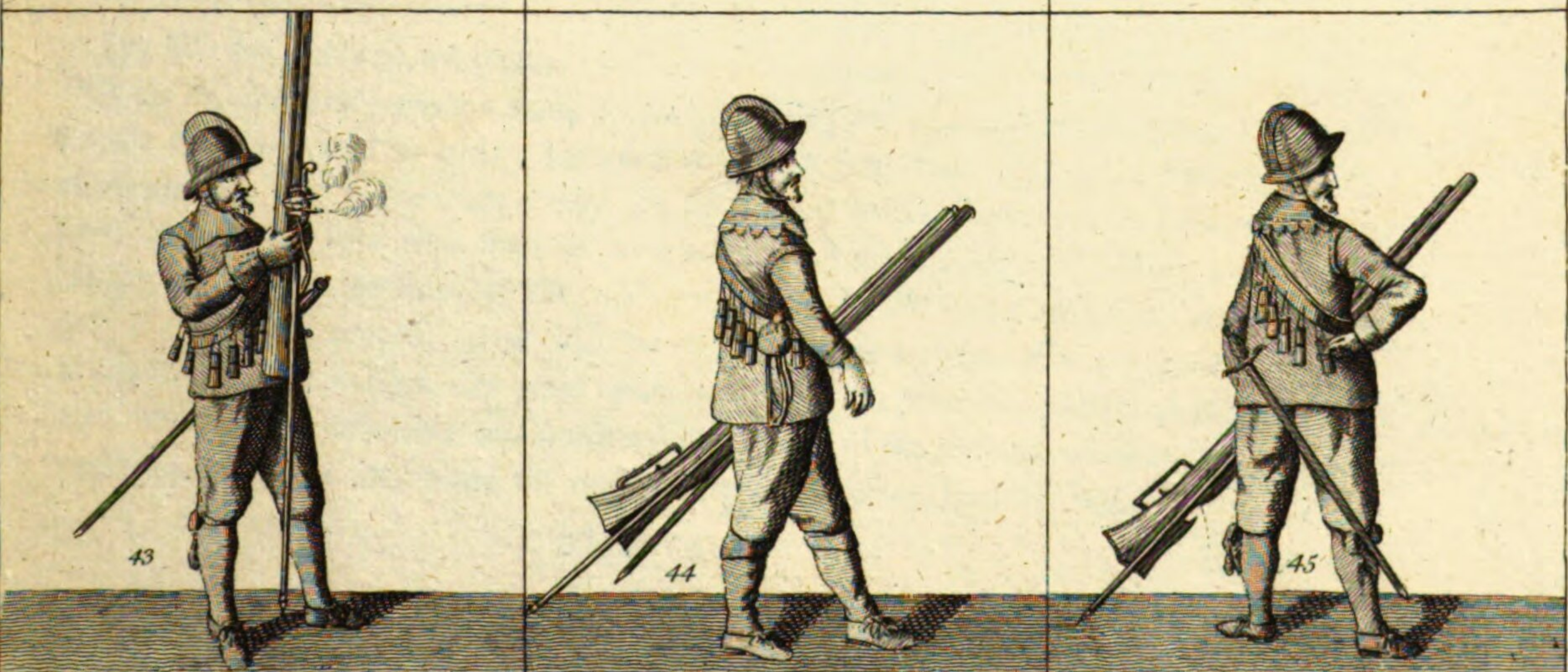
Present.



Give Fire.

Come up to your Musket.

Return your match.



Take up your rest.

*Blow of your loose Powder and
cast about your Musket.*

Trail your rest & open your charge.

observations and words of command, properly belonging to each severall posture.

FIG. 1. THE pikeman stands ordered.

THIS portraiture is first placed, being properly the first posture; for the pikeman standing ordered, is ready also for all other postures or service whatsoever he shall be commanded, as

Advance your pike, &c.

Shoulder your pike, march.

Sloape your pike.

Unfasten your bow and shoot.

Port your pike and march.

Port your pike and retire, &c.

FIG. 2. The pikeman stands sloaped and shooting.

THIS portraiture is properly for shooting with this observation, that the butt end of the pike be fast in the ground, at the right foot.

THE words of command for this posture are as followeth;

Sloape your pike.

Unfasten your bow.

Draw out your arrow.

Nocke your arrow.

Shoot wholly together.

FIG. 3. The pikeman stands ported, to march or retire.

THIS portraiture is most proper for the third place; for after

(y) WARD in his animadversions of Warre, mentions this invention with approbation, "This invention of joyning a bowe to the pike, may bee of excellent use in the warres, to impale the flanks of an army; for when the horse shall charge eyther in flank or reare, those arrowes will gaule them; they are very good to be drawn out to safeguard some small troopes of shot that shall be sent out to discharge upon the horse; but for the placing of these in the front of the maine batalia's, I hold it not so good, unlesse it be only the two first rankes, for it will be very troublesome when the troopes shall joyne at push of pike; besides, the pikes heads will soon cut their bow-strings in sunder, and make them of no validitie; and questionlesse in time of stormie wet weather, these bowes would doe great service, when the musquet cannot be discharged for wet.

shooting the first volley of arrowes at the farthest distance, if any fall short, you are ready, so ported, to march ten paces, or more or lesse, as you shall be commanded, to shoot your second volley of arrowes, &c.

AFTER which, the words of command are ;

Fasten your bowe,

Recover your pike.

FIG. 4. The pikeman stands charged.

THIS portraiture is placed next after the former ; for when the souldier hath shot his volleys of arrows, and fastened his bow, if the enemy will come to the push, then is he readyly a pike-man, and so to receive his enemy at the push.

THE words of command for this posture are as followeth :

Advance your pike.

Come up to your close order.

Charge your pike.

FIG. 5. The pikeman stands coucht and charged for the horse, with his sword drawne.

THIS portraiture of charging for horse, is to shew, that the bow is very material for this service ; for the five or six first rankes standing coucht at the charge, the middle and the reare may shoot their volleys of arrowes, and therewith both gaule, wound, disorder, and kill the enemy, both man and horse.

THE words of command are :

FIVE first ranks, draw your swordes close to your pouldrons, charge at the foot and couch low ; middle and reare, port and come up to your order, and shoot your arrowes.

FIG. 6. The pikeman shoulders and marches.

THIS portraiture of shouldering and marching, is placed to shew with what ease the bow is carried with the pike, and without incumbrance unto the pikeman, either for carriage or service.

THE words of command for this posture are ;

SHOULDER your pike and march.

LIKE-

LIKEWISE comporting is very proper upon some occasion for the pike and bow ; the words are,

COMPORT your pike and march.

By an abridgement of the English military discipline, published by royal authority, A.D. 1686 ; it appears, that great improvements had been made in that science in a very few years ; the troops were many of them armed with firelocks instead of matchlocks ; the idea of the bayonet began to be adopted, and the musketeers fired three deep, the front rank kneeling, the center stooping, and the rear standing upright : in this firing, the platoon division or regiment having prepared themselves as here mentioned, the center and rear ranks fired, and recovered their arms ; and lastly, the front rank did the same ; the whole then clubbed their muskets at the word given for that purpose, and on the word, fall on ! rushed forward with a huzza !

THE grenadiers likewise practised the grenade exercise ; in which, after flinging their firelocks, they lighted, and threw their grenades by ranks, and at the same time seizing their hatchets, which made part of their appointments, at the word of command, " fall on ! " rushed forwards hatchet in hand, as at an attack of the covert way, the hatchets being intended to cut down the palisades.

WHEN a regiment was drawn up for exercise or a review, the files were six deep, the ranks at open order, the companies posted according to their seniority, the eldest on the right, the next on the left, till the youngest came into the center : the battalion was then formed by the musketeers facing to the right and left, outwards, and the pikes to the right and left inwards ; at the word, march, they interchanged their ground, the front rank of the pikes passing before the front rank of musketeers, and the remainder between the ranks, in the same manner as was lately practised by the grenadiers in covering the flanks of the battallion ; by this movement

movement the pikes were all in the centre flanked by the musketeers.

THE serjeants were posted, part on the flanks to the right and left of each rank, and the remainder in a rank in the rear, three paces from the rear rank of the regiment; the drummers on the flanks of the serjeants, dressing with the front, or with the front and second ranks; the musick was on the right of the drummers of the right wing, and dressing with them.

THE officers were thus placed; the lieutenants were divided equally, half at the head of the right wing of musketeers, and the other at the left; the ensigns at the head of the pikes upon the same line with the lieutenants, and each of them two paces from the body; the captains were divided equally, and placed on each wing, two paces before the lieutenants; none were to stand before the ensigns, but he only who commanded in chief, who was to be two paces before the the captains, (that is) six paces from the pikes, unless when a regiment made but one battalion, and the colonel and lieutenant-colonel were both present; then the lieutenant-colonel was to be posted on the left hand of the colonel; the major (who always was to be on horseback,) in a direct line before the serjeants on the right angle, a little advanced before the line of captains; and the adjutant on the left angle in like manner on horseback.

To receive the king or queen, the pikes were advanced, and the muskets shouldered; but to all others, the pikes were ordered.

If there was a company of grenadiers, it was drawn up on the right of the battalion three deep, about two or three paces distance between the drums of the battalion, and that of the grenadiers.

THE files were now opened to the right or left, and the officers took their posts of exercise in the rear, forming two ranks, the subalterns and colours eleven paces, and the captain thirteen paces, to the rear of the rear rank of the battalion.

THE

THE serjeants at the same time moved through the intervals opposite to them, into the front, forty-six paces beyond the front rank; that is, six paces beyond the exercising officer, and then divided themselves at equal distances along the front, in a line parallel to the battalion.

THE regiment then went through the manual exercise of the musket and pike; this being done, both the pikemen and musketteers were ordered to ground their arms, and to go to the right about, and march to the rear, and as soon as they were clear of the officers to disperse; on the beating of the preparative, the soldiers all drew their swords, and carrying their points upwards, ran to their arms with a loud huzza, and stood beside them, their swords poised before them: they then, on the word of command, returned their swords, took up their arms, and the officers resumed their posts in the front.

THE evolutions and manœuvres were opening, closing, and doubling the ranks and files, wheeling forwards and backwards by sub-divisions, passing a defile, forming and reducing the hollow square; in this manœuvre, the colours, one to each company, were in the center, and the grenadiers covered the angles.

THE firings were to the front, the rear, and the flanks, the street firing, volley, and running fire, or firing by files.

FIREING to the front was thus performed; the files being six deep, the front, second, third, fourth and fifth ranks all kneeled; the sixth or rear made ready and fired; the fifth then rose, and did the same, and so on successively till the front had fired; this firing was also performed by two or three ranks at a time; in the last case, the first and second ranks stooped, and the third stood upright.

THIS firing was likewise performed advancing and retreating, much in the same manner as was lately practised in the street fireings.

FIREING.

FIREING to the rear differed only in the battalion going to the right about, and the front rank beginning instead of the rear; firing to the flanks was performed by leaving an interval of six feet on the right and left, between the division of musketteers and pikemen: the battalion having faced to the right and left outwards, the right and left hand files made ready, presented, and fired; after which they faced outwards, divided, and marched into the intervals prepared for them, where they joined, formed and reloaded; this was successively repeated till the whole had fired; the officers after every fire taking care to make their men move forward a few paces, in order to keep these intervals open.

THE volley and running fire require no explanation, as they were performed in the same manner as at present. (z)

THE street firing differed very little from the present mode of performing it, that except for that purpose the muskettiers occupied the center, and the pikemen the flanks of the divisions.

THE following regulations are given for marching past the king or any person to be saluted.

IF the battalion be to march in three divisions, the captains are to be divided, one half at the head of the first division of shot, and the other half in the rear of the last division; one half of the lieutenants in the rear of the first division of shot, and the other half at the head of the last division of shot.

THE colours are to march at the head of the pikes, which are to be advanced: the colonel, or lieutenant-colonel, or (in their absence) the officer in chief, is to march two paces before the

(z) It may not perhaps be improper here to correct an error, into which many military writers have fallen; this is confounding a general discharge with a volley; the volley is a feu de joy, always fired with the ranks at half distance without bayonets, and with the muzzles elevated, whence it derives its appellation of vollé, or flight, borrowed from a flight of rockets; a general discharge is always fired with fixed bayonets and well level'd arms.

rank of captains, at the head of the first division of shot; the captains and all the officers keeping at the same distance from the soldiers as they were posted at, at the head of the battalion, when drawn up, and taking great care that they keep that distance exactly, and no more; viz. the captains four paces from the soldiers, and the lieutenants and ensigns two, or at least at a proper distance to salute.

THE officers that are to march in the rere of the division are to fall after them as they march off, and not before, and the sergeants that were posted in the rere, are to take care of the pikes in their marching.

THE drums are to be divided equally to the divisions, and to march between the second and third rank.

THE grenadiers are to march about twenty yards before the battalion.

THE equipage of the colonels and officers of the front, is to march a little on the left hand, between the grenadiers and the battalion; the ho-boys are to march at the middle distance between the commander in chief and the grenadiers.

WHNEEVER a division is commanded to march, they are to step together at once, both front and rere with their left feet, and to march slowly.

IN marching, both colonel, lieutenant-colonel, and all officers, are to march with their pikes under hand comported, taking care not to droop the spear too much, nor to swing their hands in marching, but to keep them steady.

ASOON as they come near the king or person whom they are to salute, they are to shoulder their pikes, and to take care to doe it together, that is, every rank of officers as they approach the king, to shoulder their pikes together, and to carry them level upon their shoulders, and when they come to salute, to be very exact in doing it together, that it may seem as if but one man saluted.

THE first rank of captains are not to begin to salute till the

colonel or commander in chief has done saluting, and the officers must take care above all things, that they neither stand still when they salute, nor mend their pace so as to get too far from the men, and to take care in the salute not to do the motions too quick. (a)

THE ensigns are to take care to bring their colours down altogether directly before them, without waving them to either hand, and to take them up altogether without standing still, or mending their pace.

AS SOON as the officers have saluted, they must pull off their hats, and keep them off till they are past by the person they salute, without bowing, and when they are past at a convenient distance, they are to bring their pikes again underhand.

THE serjeants are to march with their halberts shouldered, the but ends upwards, and are always to march with their hats off when they pass by the person that comes to view the battalion, whether the officers salute or no.

NONE is to salute the same person but once standing, and once marching.

THE major and aid-major have no fixed post for marching, but are always to attend the colonel or officers in chief, to receive his orders.

No serjeant or corporal is at any time to carry or hold the colours in the absence of the ensign, but onely a pikeman.

BESIDES the figures representing the exercise of the pike and musket, that of the halbert is likewise given, copied from the engravings of Hogarth, made for the artillery company.

SINCE these regulations, the national exercise has been frequently changed by authority, three different systems having been practised within the space of about forty years; among other im-

(a) THE motions of the salute, both standing and marching, were the same as lately used,



Pub. by J. Stanger.

colonel or commander in chief has done saluting, and the officers must take care above all things, that they neither stand still when they salute, nor mend their pace so as to get too far from the men, and to take care in the salute not to do the motions too quick. (a)

The ensigns are to take care to bring their colours down altogether directly before them, without waving them to either hand, and to take them up altogether without standing still, or mending their pace.

As soon as the officers have saluted, they must pull off their hats, and keep them off till they are past by the person they salute, without bowing, and when they are past at a convenient distance, they are to bring their pikes again underhand.

The musketeers are to march with their halberts shouldered, the butt ends upwards, and are always to march with their hats off when they pass by the person that comes to view the battalion, whether the officers salute or no.

None is to salute the same person but once standing, and once marching.

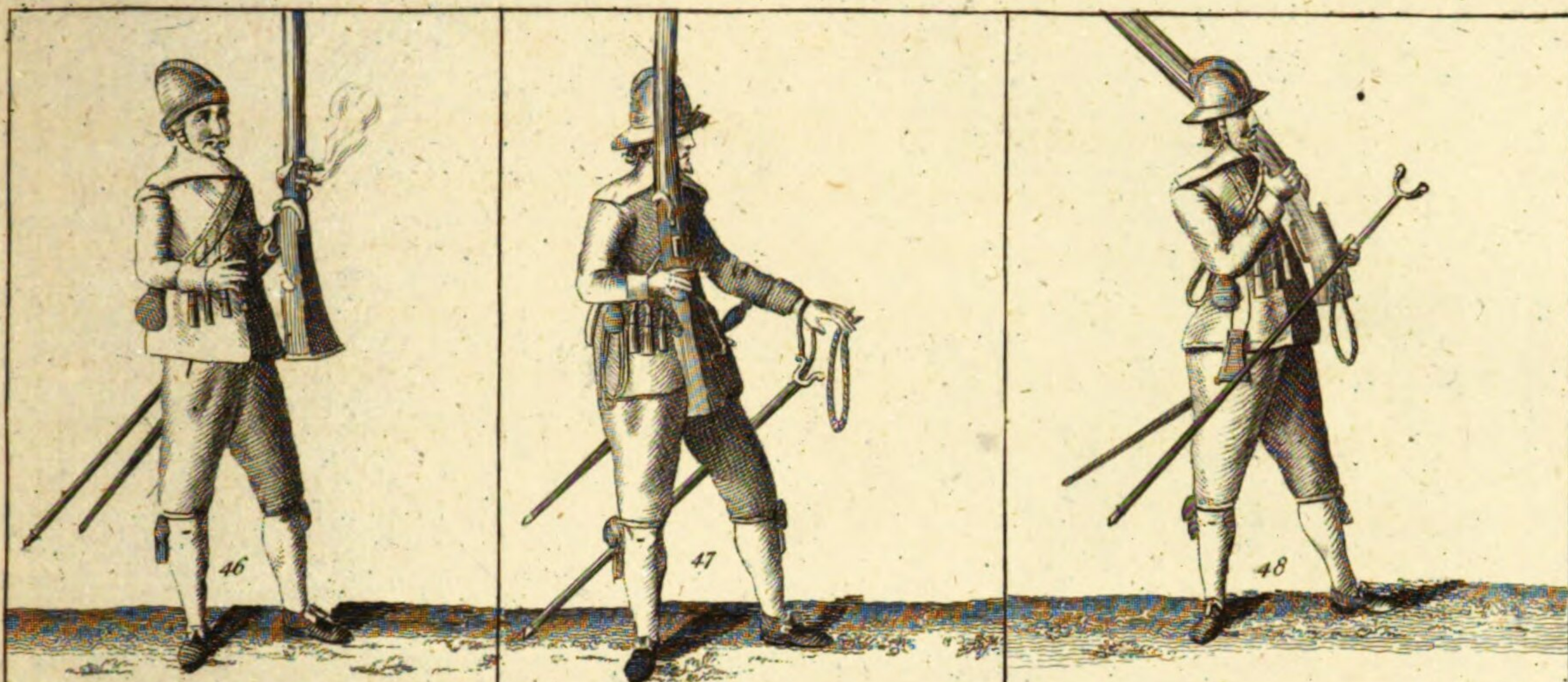
The major and aid-major have no fixed post for marching, but are always to attend the colonel or officers in chief, to receive his orders.

No serjeant or corporal is at any time to carry or hold the colours in the absence of the ensign, but onely a pikeman.

BESIDES the figures representing the exercise of the pike and musket, that of the halbert is likewise given, copied from the engravings of Hogarth, made for the artillery company.

SINCE these regulations, the national exercise has been frequently changed by authority, three different systems having been practised within the space of about forty years; among other im-

(a) THE motions of the salute, both standing and marching, were the same as lately used.



Bring up your Musket.

Poize your Musket & recover your Rest.

Shoulder your Musket.



Serjeant.

Drummer.

Fifer.



Recover your Halbert.

Advance your Halbert.

Shoulder your Halbert.

Pub. 25 Jan. 1767 by J. Hooper



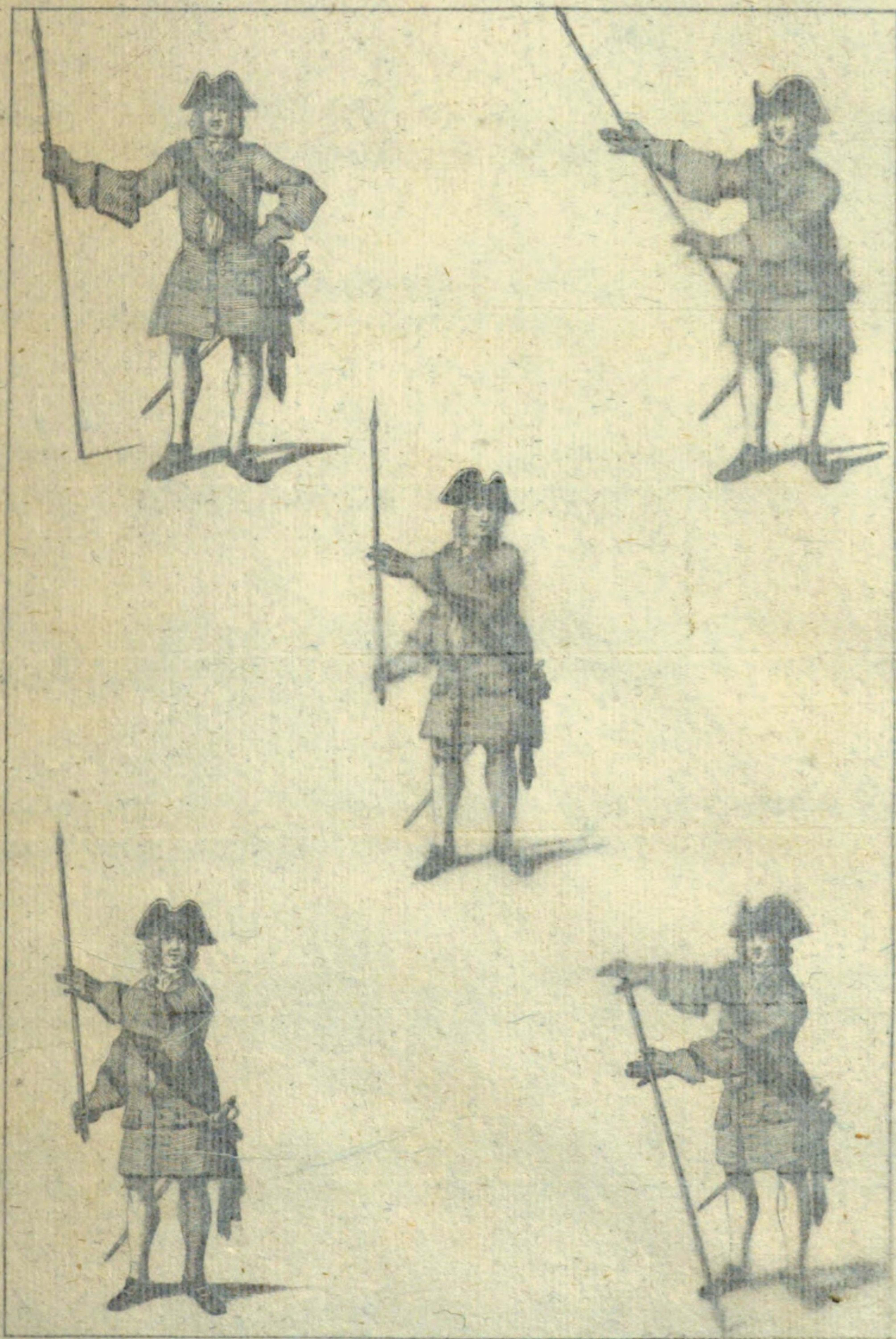
Pub. at N. York by J. Hooper

THE HALBERT EXERCISE. 117



Pub: 28 March 1787 by J. Hooper





THE STANDING SALUTE.



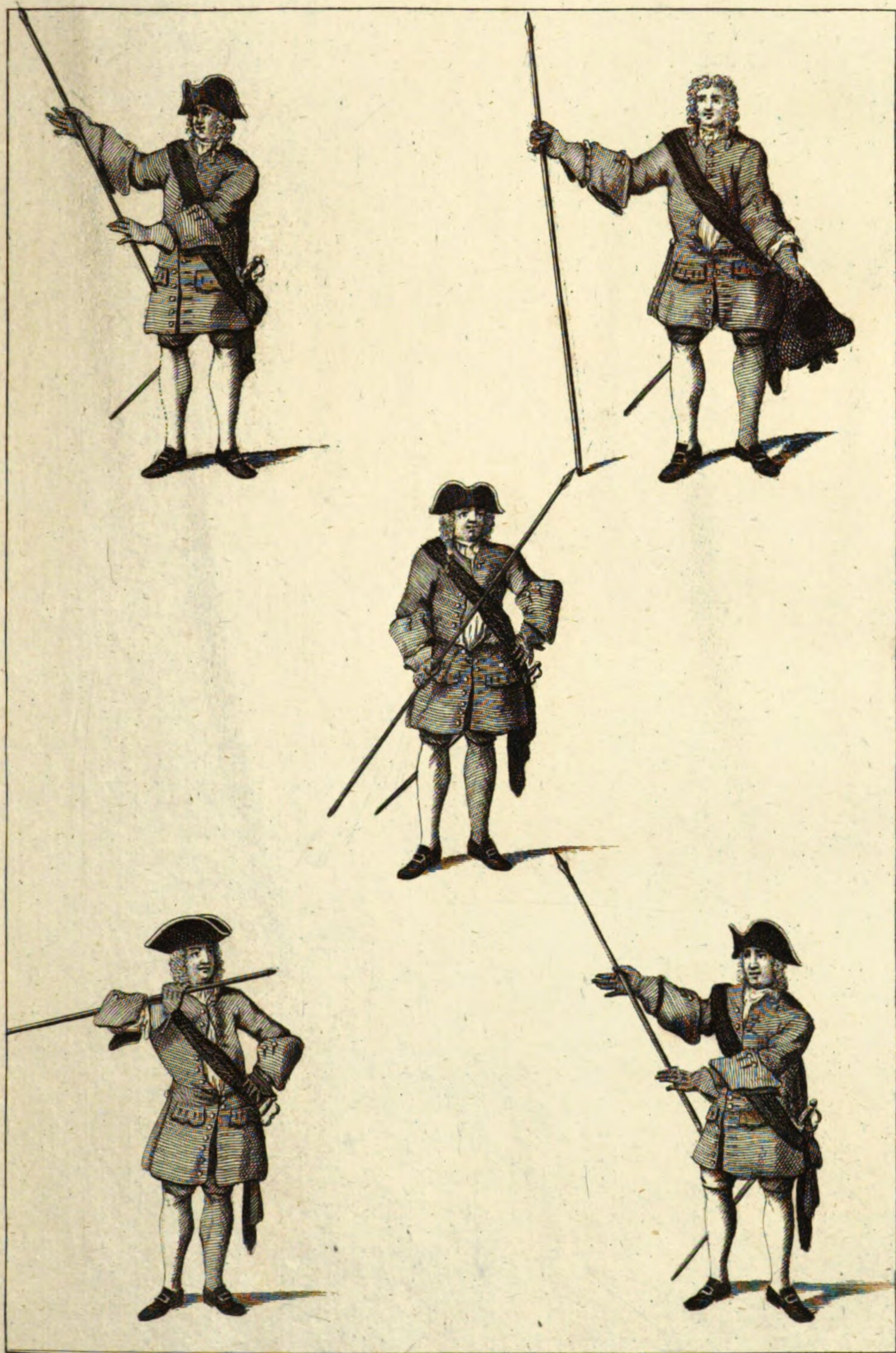
THE STANDING SALUTE.



STANDING & MARCHING SALUTES. PL. 2.



STANDING & SEATED FIGURES



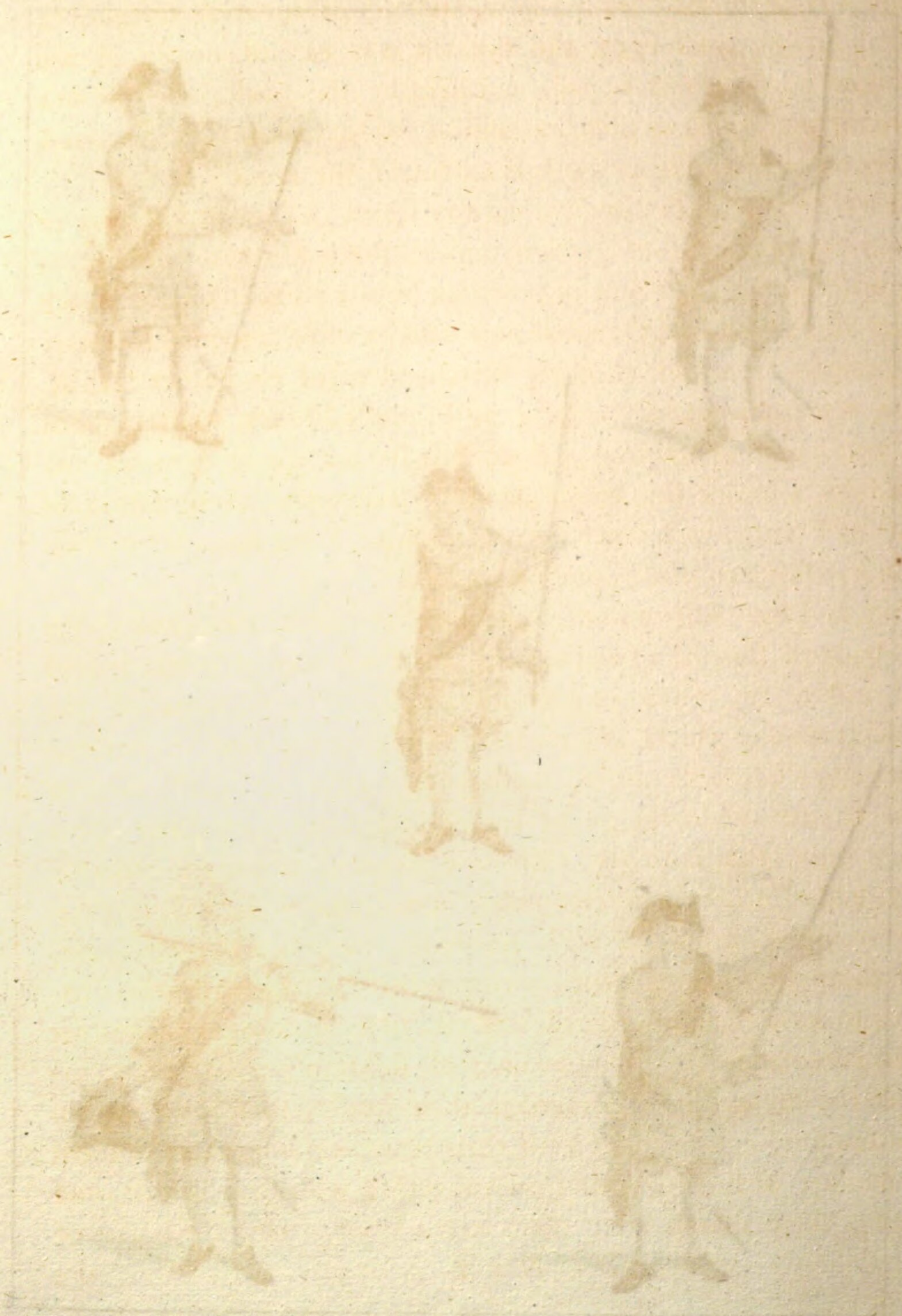
STANDING & MARCHING SALUTES. PL.2.



STANDING & MARCHING SALUTES Pl. 3.



STANDING & MARCHING SALUTES. Pl.3.



provements, the introduction of the quick step in marching and manœuvring, is not the least important; before that, every movement was performed with a slow, and almost funereal solemnity; till about the year 1750, the firelock was carried nearly in the position now termed sloped, and held by the swell; the motions were all performed as slow as possible, wide, and in the poize, and divers other motions, at the full extent of the arm.

THE exercise of the ancient cavalry seems in a great measure to have resembled that of modern times; the methods of dismounting and linking their horses practised by the archers on horseback being very much like the mode now used by our dragoons; this may be gathered from the following sketch extracted by Father Daniel, from a manuscript in the king of France's library, written about the year 1473, containing instructions for a corps of gens d'armes raised by Charles the bold, Duke of Burgundy, in imitation of those of France; each lance, or man at arms, being attended by two archers, with a coustillier and page.

My said lord also ordains, that for the better accustoming the said body to the use of arms; and that they may be better taught and instructed, when opportunity offers, the captains of the gensdarmes and chiefs of squadrons being in garrison, or havinge time and leisure to do it, shall take parties of their men at arms to exercise in the fields, armed sometimes with their upper pieces only, that is to say, with head pieces or casks, and cuirasses only, and at other times, completely armed, and shall practice them in running at each other with the lance, keeping themselves close and compact, teaching them to charge briskly, to keep to their ensigns, to leave them if ordered, and to rally, succouring each other when commanded, and the manner of sustaining a charge: to instruct the archers how to manage their horses, to accustom them to dismount, and to shoot with their bows, causing them to learn the manner of linking their horses together with their bridles, and making them march after them to the front, fixing the horses of

the archers by their bridles to the cornets of the hinder part of the saddle of the page to the men at arms to whom they belong: moreover to march briskly to the front, to shoot without breaking their ranks, and to make the piquenaires or pikemen march with a close and even front before the said archers, and on a signal, to kneel on one knee, keeping their pikes lowered to the height of a saddle bowe, in order that the archers may shoot over the said pikemen, as over a wall; and that the said pikemen seeing their enemies fall into disorder, may be ready to fall forth upon them, and also to set themselves back to back upon a double defence, or in a square or round order, the pikemen being always in close order before the archers, to sustain the charge of the enemy's horse, enclosing within their centre the pages and horses of the archers; and the said conductors or captains may in the beginning introduce these operations, by small companies, and as soon as one of them is accomplished, they shall teach another.

IN the reign of King James I. the cavalry, according to Markham, was formed six deep; the horses being set on their haunches were taught to run the circle in the lunge, to turn, passage, and rein back.

ONLY two sorts of distance were then observed, in both ranks and files; namely, close and open order; close order in files was, cuisse to cuisse, or knee to knee; open order was six feet, in both files and ranks; close order in ranks was close to the croop, or in other words, the head of each horse was close to the tail of his file-leader, leaving no interval between.

THE evolutions on horseback were opening and closing the ranks and files to the right and left, and to both hands by divisions.

DOUBLING the ranks and files to the right and left, and to both hands by divisions; middle-men and bringers up doubling the front to the right, to the left, and to both by divisions, turning to the right and right about, the left and left about by conversion, counter-



To Horse.



Uncap your Pistol



Draw your Pistol.



Order your Pistol.



To Horse.

Uncap your Pistol



Draw your Pistol.

Order your Pistol.





Span your Pistol



Prime your Pistol



Shut your Pan.



Cast about your Pistol.



Span your Pistol



Prime your Pistol



Shut your Pan.



Cast about your Pistol.





Gage your Flask.



Load your Pistol.



Draw your Rammer.



Load with Bullet & ram home.



Gage your Flask.



Load your Pistol.



Draw your Rammer.



Load with Bullet & run home.

W. B. Rogers Dec. 21 1767.



Return your Rammer.



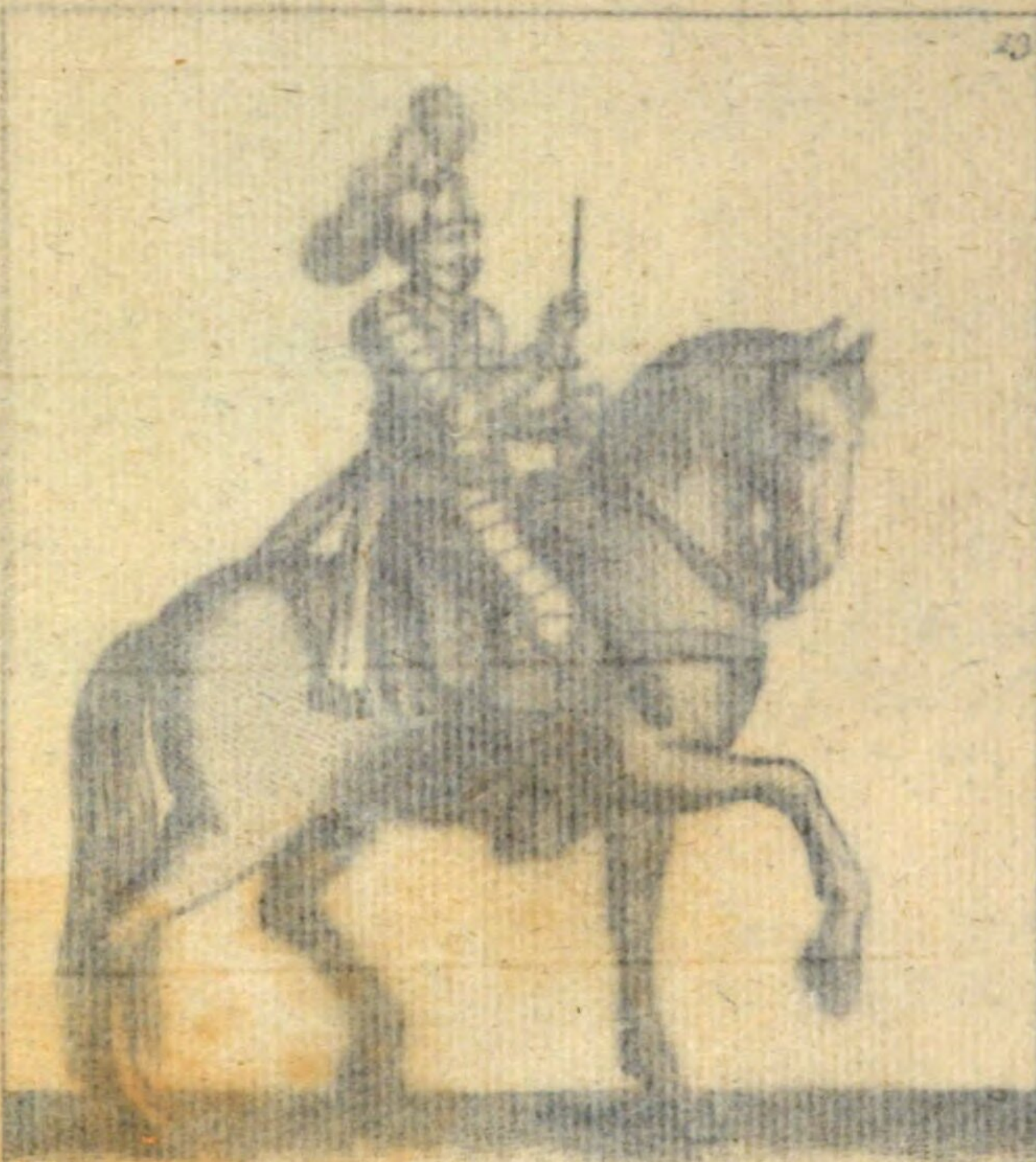
Pull down your Cock.



Recover your Pistol.



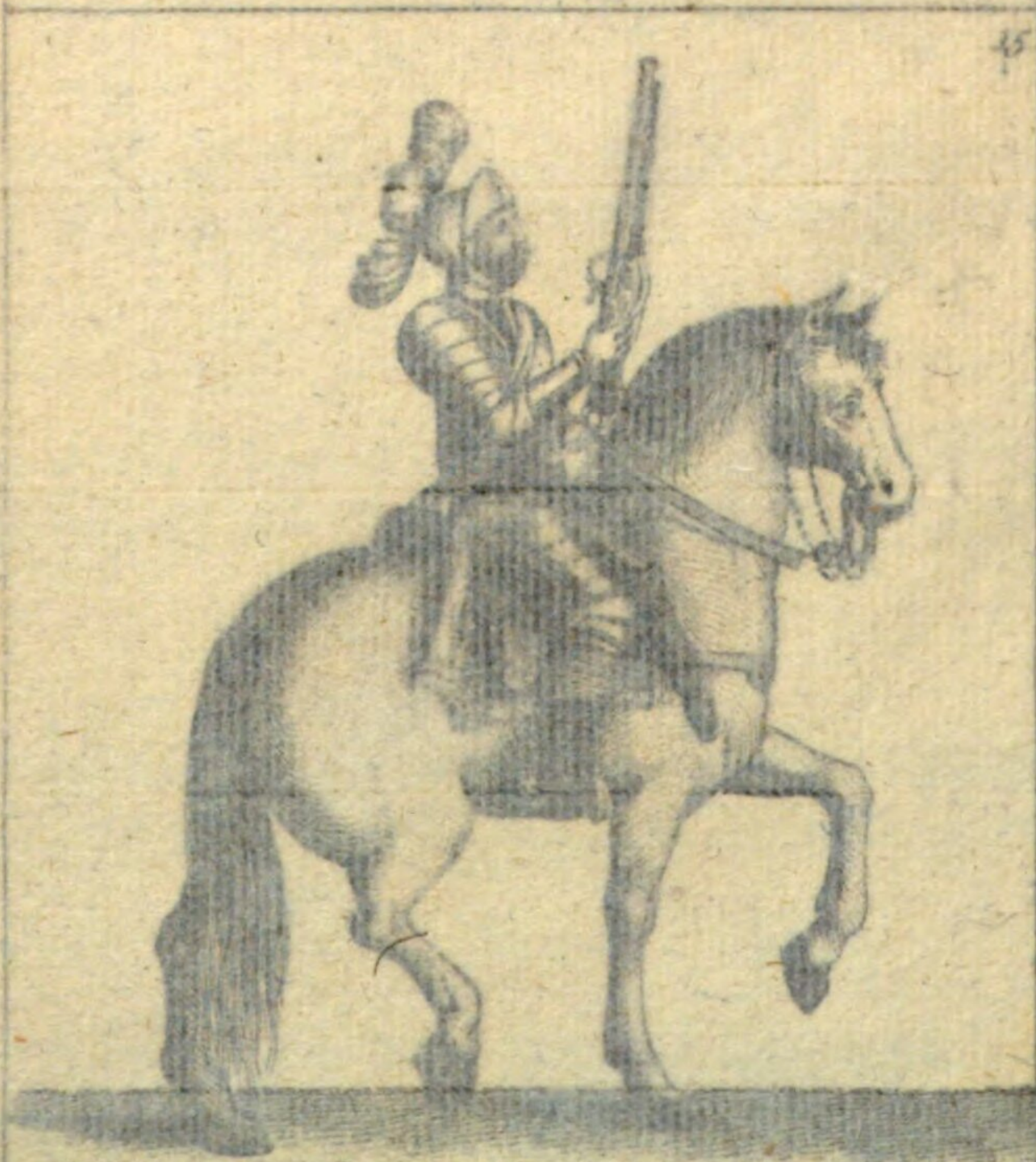
Present & give Fire



Return your Rammer.



Pull down your Cock.



Recover your Pistol.



Present & give Fire.

Pub. by J. Hooper, 1807.

17



Return your Pistol.

18



Bend your Cock.

19



Guard your Cock

20



Order your Hammer



Return your Pistol.



Bend your Cock.



Guard your Cock



Order your Hammer



Free your Cock.



The Marching Postures



Of the Harquebusiers.

countermarching to the right and left, countermarching to both by conversion, wheeling to the right and left and in front.

THE manual exercise of the pistol was also practised; the motions and words of command are exhibited in the plates appended from those of Captain Cruse, published at Cambridge, A. D. 1694.

THE cavalry occasionally formed, what was called, the square battle, the wedge, and the rhombe, with diverse other figures then in fashion.

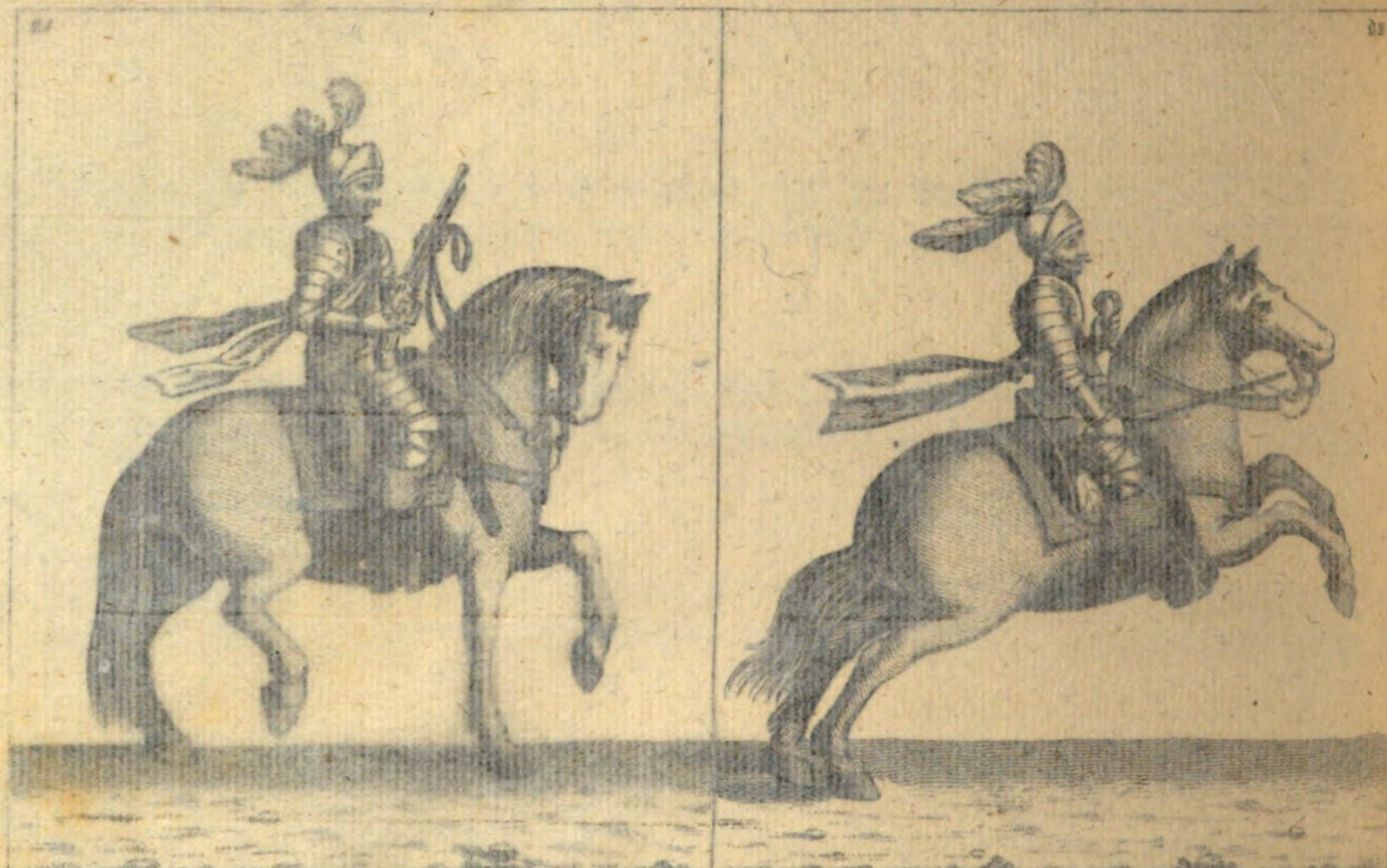
TOWARDS the latter end of the reign of King James II. the cavalry were armed with carabines which they fired on horseback.

THE horse-grenadiers then acted like a company of grenadiers to a battalion, and were armed with muskets and grenades, linked their horses, dismounted, fired, screwed their daggers into the muzzles of their muskets, charged, returned their daggers, fired, and threw their grenades by ranks, the center and rear ranks advancing in succession through the intervals between their file-leaders; they then grounded their arms, went to the right about, dispersed, and at the preparative or beating to arms, drew their swords, and stood by their arms, falling in with a huzza! they then returned their swords, shouldered and slung their muskets, marched to their horses, unlinked and mounted; after which, they fired their pistols and muskets on horseback.

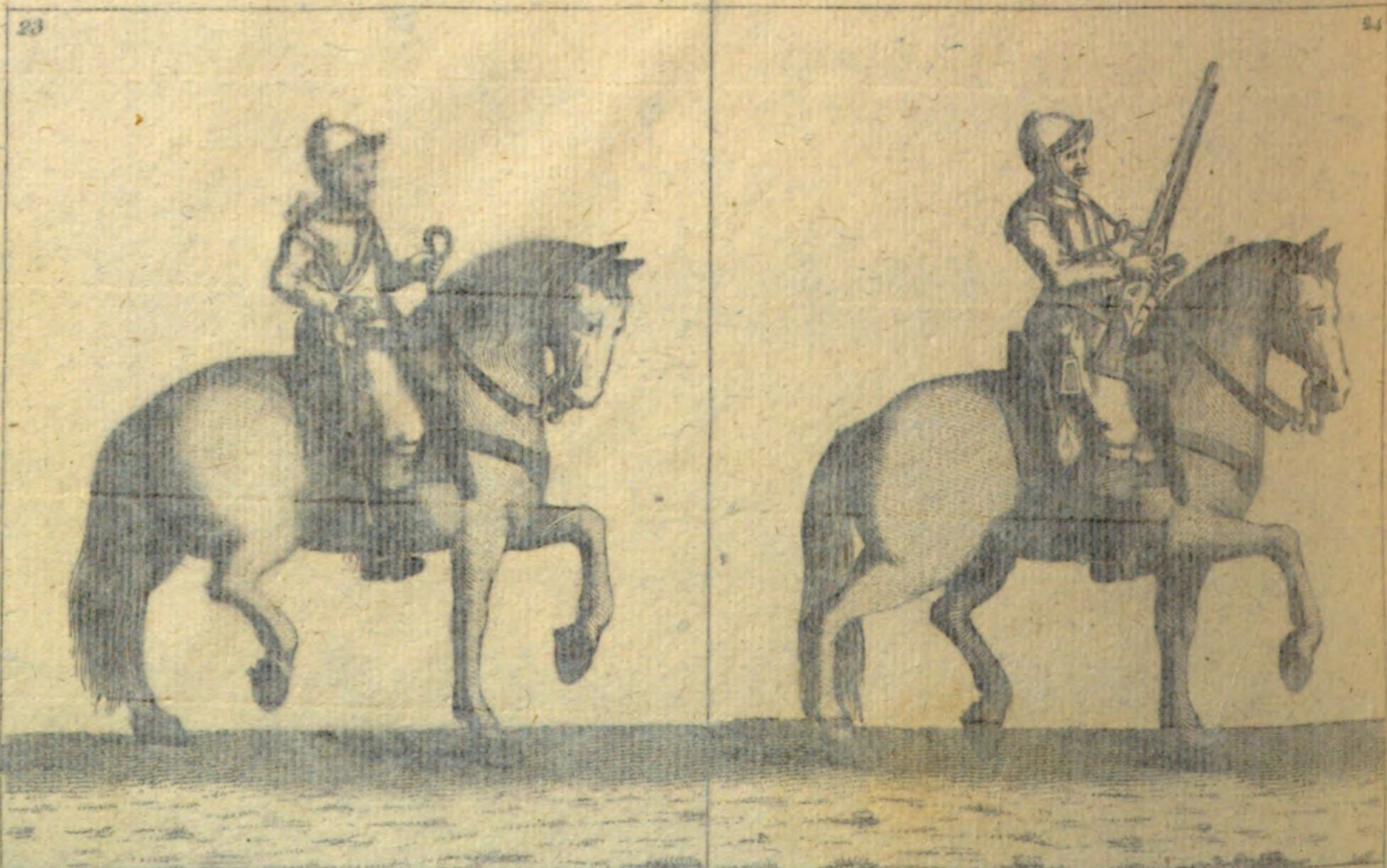
THE exercise of the dragoon differed very little from that of the horse-grenadier, except in that part relative to the grenade.

THE projectile machines, or ancient artillery, used by our ancestors, about the time of the Norman invasion, were the scorpion, catapulta, balista, and onager of the Romans, with diverse other species of the same machines, under a variety of different appellations.

THESE machines, their proportions and properties, are described in the works of Vitruvius, Amianus, Marcellinus, and many other writers, but for want of illustrative delineations the descriptions



Free your Cock.



The Marching Postures

Of the Harquebusiers.

countermarching to the right and left, countermarching to both by conversion, wheeling to the right and left and to both.

THE manual exercise of the pistol was also practised; the motions and words of command are exhibited in the plates engraved from those of Captain Cruse, published at Cambridge, A. D. 1632.

THE cavalry occasionally formed, what was called, the square battle, the wedge, and the rhombe, with divers other figures then in fashion.

TOWARDS the latter end of the reign of King James II. the cavalry were armed with carabines which they fired on horseback.

THE horse-grenadiers then acted like a company of grenadiers to a battalion, and were armed with muskets and grenades, linked their horses, dismounted, fired, screwed their daggers into the muzzles of their muskets, charged, returned their daggers, fired, and threw their grenades by ranks, the center and rear ranks advancing in succession through the intervals between their file-leaders; they then grounded their arms, went to the right about, dispersed, and at the preparative or beating to arms, drew their swords, and stood by their arms, falling in with a huzza! they then returned their swords, shouldered and slung their muskets, marched to their horses, unlinked and mounted; after which, they fired their pistols and muskets on horseback.

THE exercise of the dragoon differed very little from that of the horse-grenadier, except in that part relative to the grenade.

THE projectile machines, or ancient artillery, used by our ancestors, about the time of the Norman invasion, were the scorpion, catapult, balista, and onager of the Romans, with diverse other species of the same machines, under a variety of different appellations.

THESE machines, their proportions and properties, are described in the works of Vitruvius, Amianus, Marcellinus, and many other writers, but for want of illustrative delineations the descriptions

scriptions are in general extremely obscure, and in some parts unintelligible.

MANY mathematicians and engineers have at different times taken great pains to investigate this subject; among them, Mr. Newton, an ingenious architect, who, meaning to favor the world with a new edition of Vitruvius, has been particularly attentive to the part which treats of these machines, and not only examined and compared the different authors who have written on that matter, but also by models and experiments, has endeavoured to ascertain the theory of the different constructions; the drawings and descriptions here given, are the result of his labours, which he has generously permitted me to copy, and insert in this work; I have been the more particular in the consideration of this article, as the moving powers of most of the different machines so variously named, the scorpion excepted, (b) depended on the same principles as those of the balista, catapulta, and onager; namely, the elasticity of twisted cords formed of the bowels of animals, sinews, human hair, flax and hemp.

THE scorpion was the smallest machine of its kind, and of the least effect; it was so called, because its form was thought to have some resemblance to that of the insect so named; it consisted of a bow AA. fig. 1. made of steel, or of some elastic wood, having a cord made of the bowels of animals, stretched from one end to the other, and fixed through holes made for that purpose at its extremities; in the middle was placed the REGULA BB. which had in its upper surface a channel cut in the shape of a swallow's tail, the lower part being the broadest; this REGULA was called the SYRINX, it was made of wood, and of such size as was thought

(b) THE scorpion was only a large cross-bow; the balista was at first chiefly used for throwing stones, and the catapulta for lancing darts or arrows, but by degrees they were confounded, and indifferently appropriated to both.



Fig. II.



Fig. III.

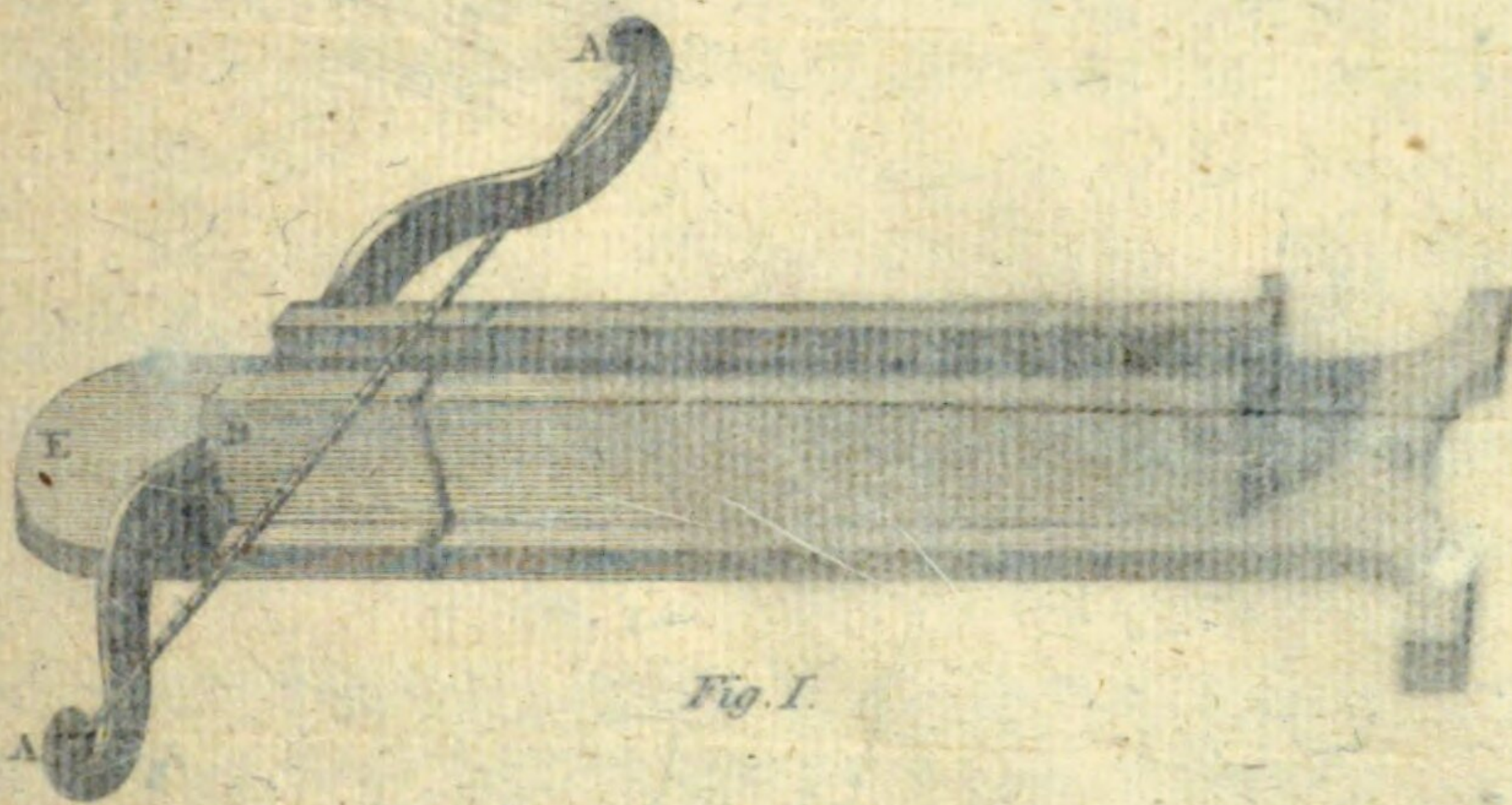


Fig. I.

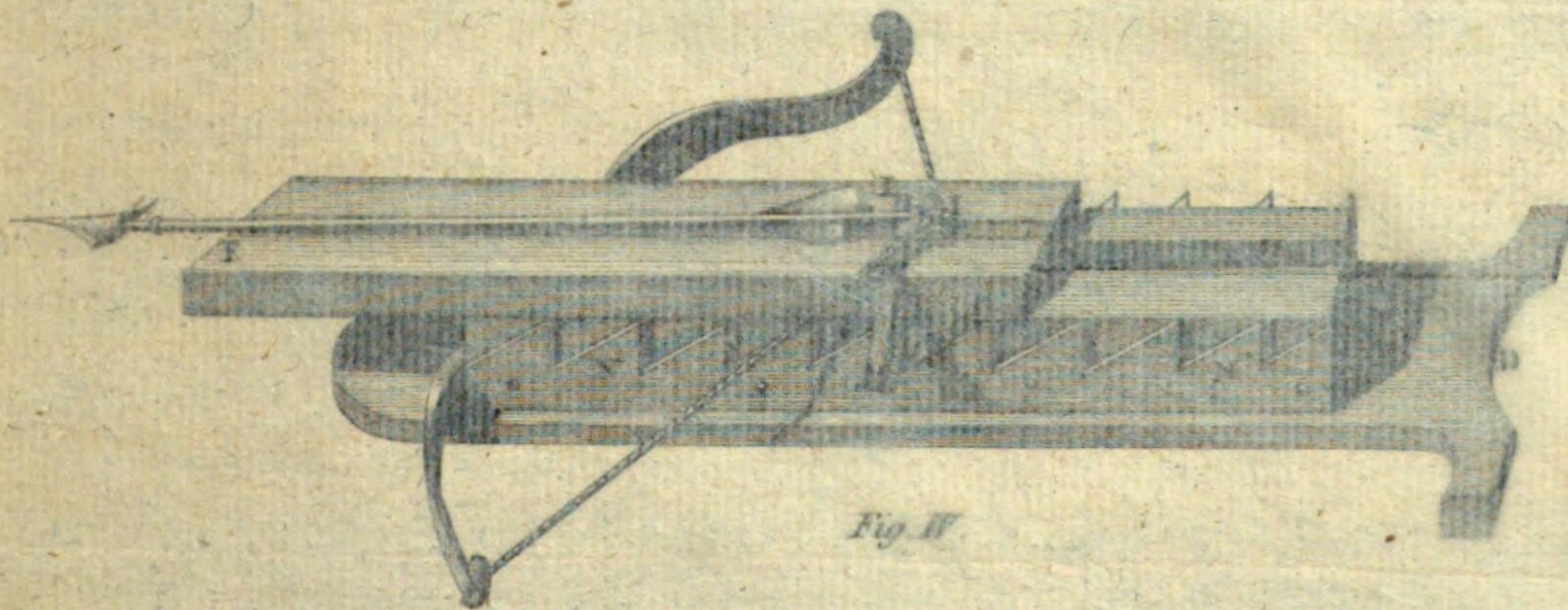


Fig. IV.

descriptions are in general extremely obscure, and in some parts unintelligible.

MANY mathematicians and engineers have at different times taken great pains to investigate this subject; among them, Mr. Newton, an ingenious architect, who, meaning to favor the world with a new edition of Vitruvius, has been particularly attentive to the part which treats of these machines, and not only examined and compared the different authors who have written on that matter, but also by models and experiments, has endeavoured to ascertain the theory of the different constructions; the drawings and descriptions here given, are the result of his labours, which he has generously permitted me to copy, and insert in this work; I have been the more particular in the consideration of this article, as the moving powers of most of the different machines so variously named, the scorpion excepted, (b) depended on the same principles as those of the balista, catapulta, and onager; namely, the elasticity of twisted cords formed of the bowels of animals, sinews, human hair, flax and hemp.

THE scorpion was the smallest machine of its kind, and of the least effect; it was so called, because its form was thought to have some resemblance to that of the insect so named; it consisted of a bow AA. fig. 1. made of steel, or of some elastic wood, having a cord made of the bowels of animals, stretched from one end to the other, and fixed through holes made for that purpose at its extremities; in the middle was placed the REGULA BB. which had in its upper surface a channel cut in the shape of a swallow's tail, the lower part being the broadest; this REGULA was called the SYRINX, it was made of wood, and of such size as was thought

(b) THE scorpion was only a large cross-bow; the balista was at first chiefly used for throwing stones, and the catapulta for lancing darts or arrows, but by degrees they were confounded, and indifferently appropriated to both.

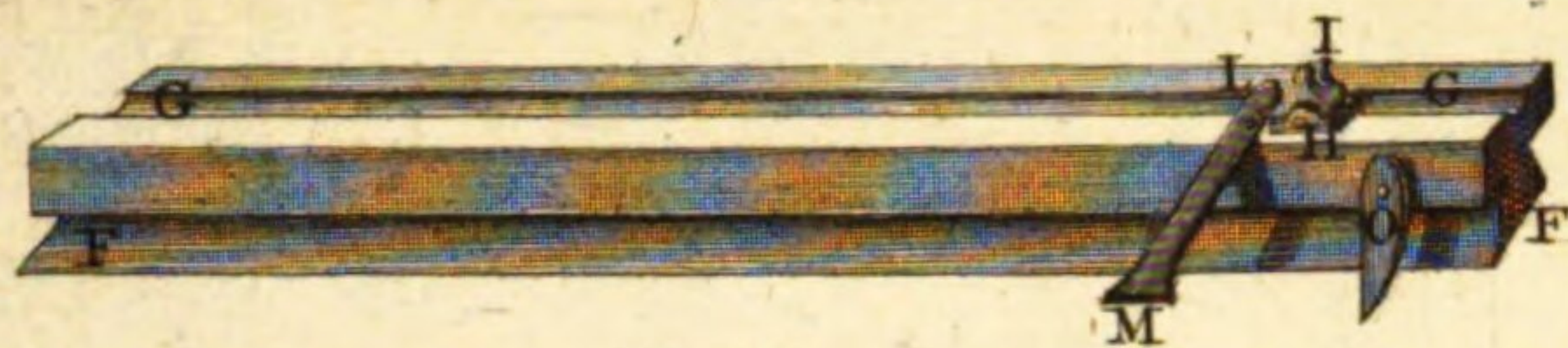


Fig. II.

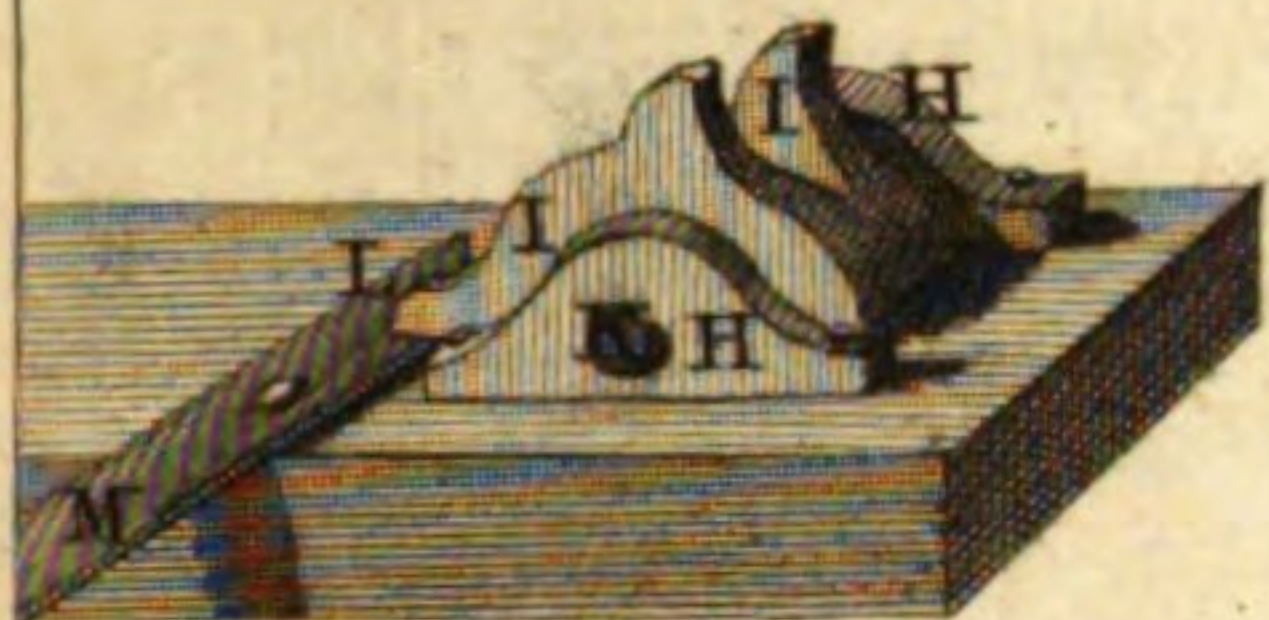


Fig. III.

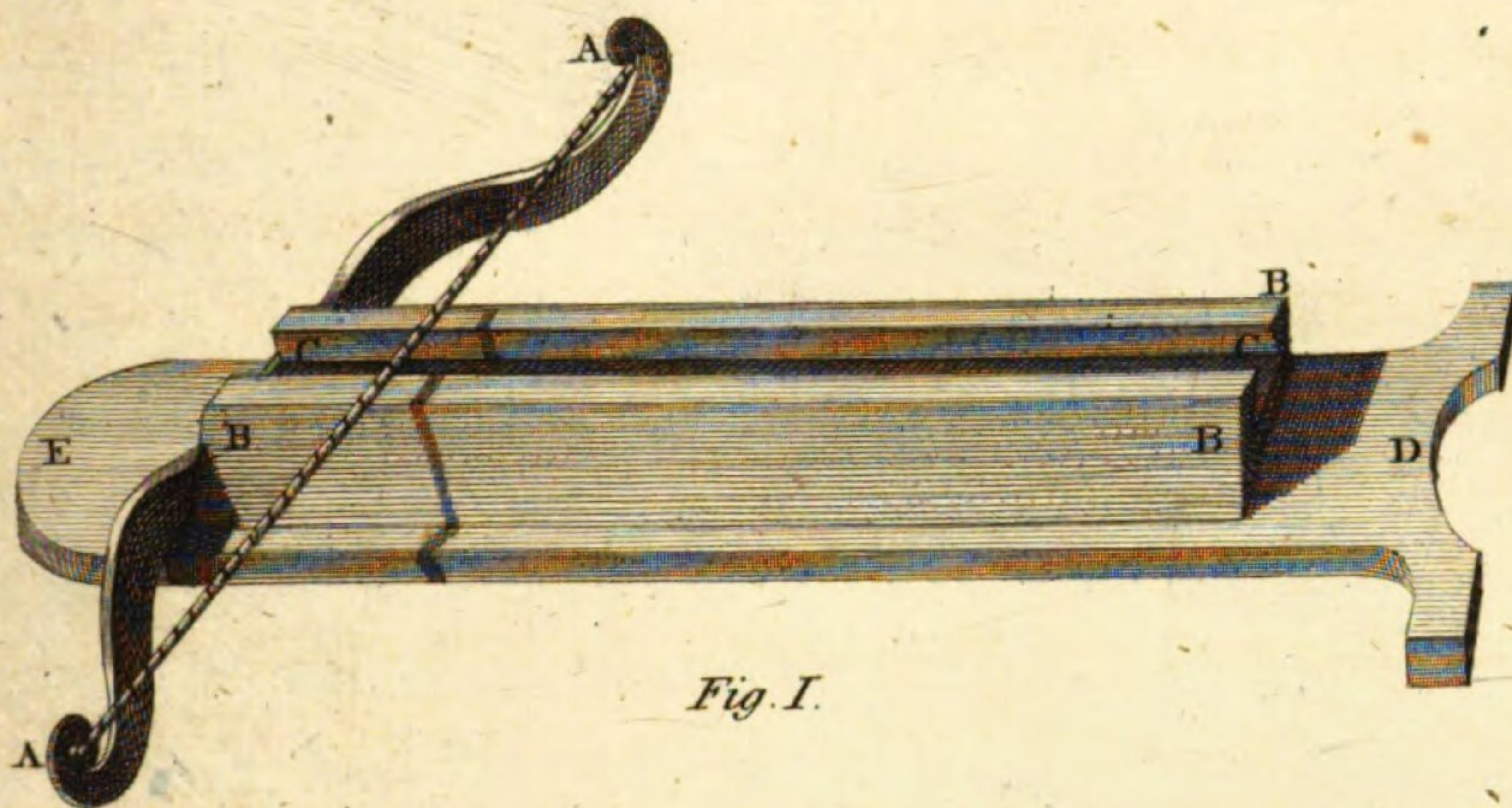


Fig. I.

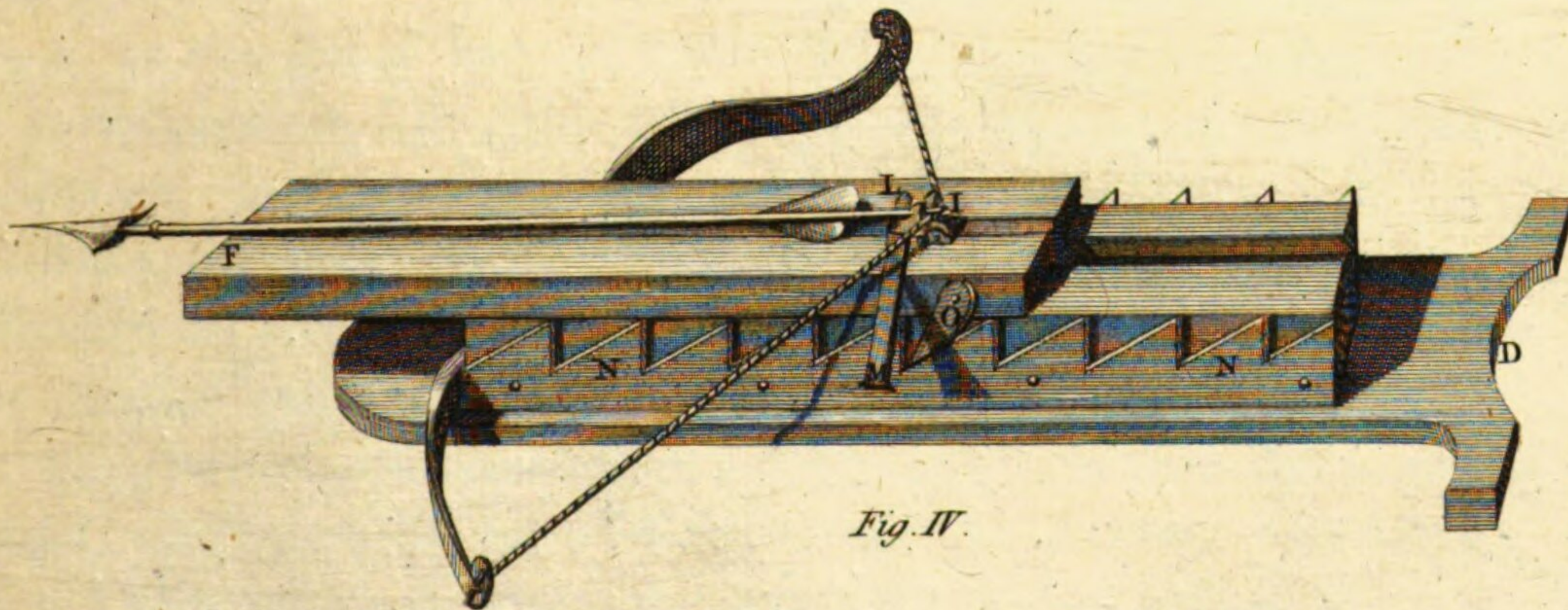


Fig. IV.

suitable; it was fixed on a board DE. somewhat exceeding it in length and breadth, called CATAGOGIS; upon the fyrinx was placed another regula fig. 2. equal to it in length and breadth, having a MASCULUS FF. swallow tailed, fitting exactly for form and size to the swallow-tailed channel or grove, cut on the SYRINX, and which was joined to it in its lower part; this last regula was called the DIOSTRA, and being placed on the SYRINX with its MASCULUS F. inserted into the swallow-tail'd grove C. it might be made to slide backward and forward, without risk of separation.

IN the upper surface of this DIOSTRA there was a semi-circular channel G. of its whole length called EPITOXIS, in which the arrow was placed, and at the end of the said EPITOXIS, which was farthest from the bow, there were two perpendicular plates of iron HH. fig. 3. called CATOCHAS, fixed on the diostra, at a small distance one from the other; between them was placed a hook, or hand of iron I. called CHIRA, and MANUCLA; one of these extremities was bent back like a hook and was slit, so as to be able to receive the thickness of the arrow between its two parts, its other extremity L. terminated in a point; afterwards, cross the sides of the CATOCHOS, and of the chira was placed an iron axis K. so that the chira could turn vertically about; under the pointed extremity L. of the CHIRA, was the end of a thin bar of iron LM. which was fixed upon the upper surface of the DIOSTRA, to the left of the EPITOXIS, by an axis of iron, on which it turned horizontally; this bar was called the SCHASTERIA, and whilst its extremity L. rested under the end of the CHIRA, it hindered the latter from turning on its axis; but when it was displaced by pulling forward the other extremity M. it permitted the hooked end I. of the CHIRA to turn over and to put itself in the place of the pointed end L. which consequently turned under, and put itself in the place of the hooked end, there being an opening cut in the DIOSTRA, purposely to let it pass.

THE

THE points AA. of the bow were bent upwards, so that the string or cord could pass freely over the upper surface of the DIOSTRA, although the middle of the bow was lower than the MASCULUS F. which was under the DIOSTRA; the CATAGOGIS was rounded off at its extremity E. near the bow, and was hollowed out at its other extremity D. the archer leant his body against the hollow, and then pushed the DIOSTRA forward, until the CHIRA I. fig. 4. came to the cord of the bow, which he then put upon the hooks of the CHIRA, and to prevent it from turning, and consequently letting go the cord, he put the SHASTERIA under its extremity, which ended in a point L. he then pushed with all his force the end F. of the DIOSTRA against some wall, or against the earth, keeping his body in the cavity D. of the CATAGOGIS; in this manner he drew to him by force the DIOSTRA and the CHIRA; the chira having seized the string or cord of the bow, this last was in like manner drawn forwards towards his body, and the bow thereby bent: the following mechanism was made use of to hinder the bow from drawing the DIOSTRA backwards: there was a rule with teeth N. fixed on both sides the SYRINX their whole length, and a hook of iron O. called CATACLIDA, which turned vertically, on an iron axis, on both sides of the DIOSTRA; when the diostra was pushed forwards, the CATACLIDA fell successively between the teeth of the rule, which hindered the DIOSTRA from going backwards.

WHEN the bow was bent as much as was thought necessary, and retained in that state by the CATACLIDAS, the archer placed the arrow in the EPETOXIS, inserting its extremity where it is feathered between the parts of the CHIRA, quite to the string of the bow, which entered into a cut made purposely at that end of the arrow; he then raised the machine and took his aim by looking along the arrow, and taking the end M. of the SCEASTERIA, drew it towards him, and consequently drew the other
end

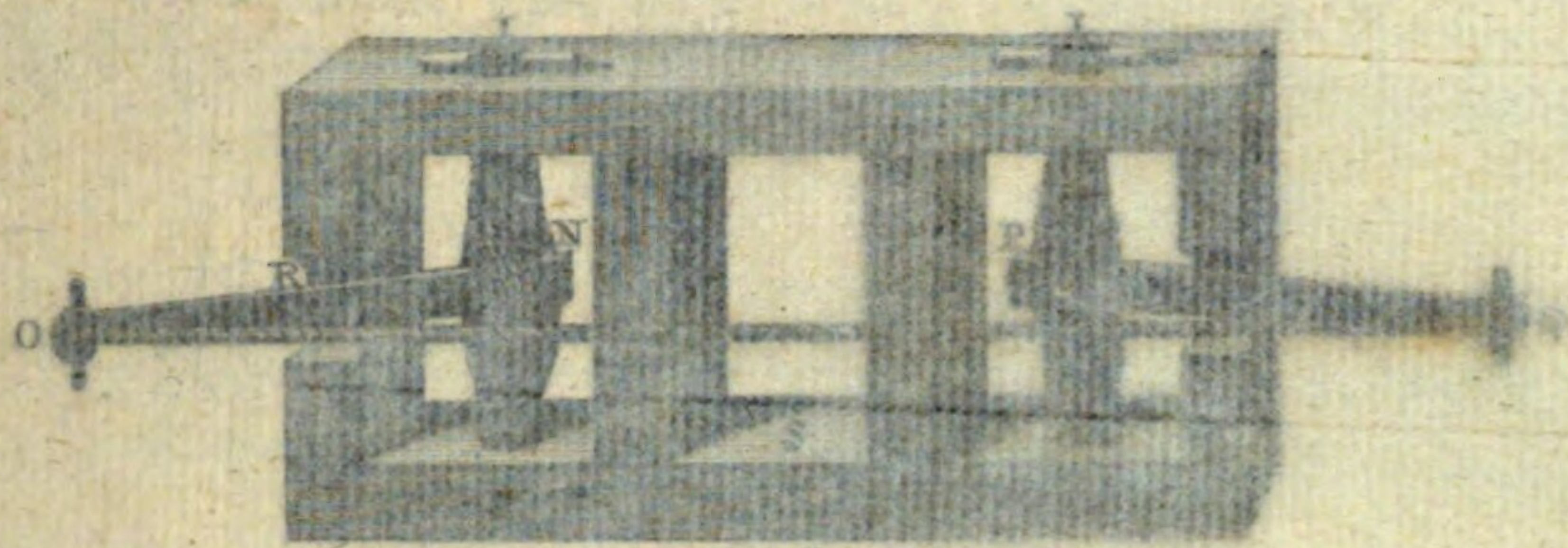


Fig. I.



Fig. II.

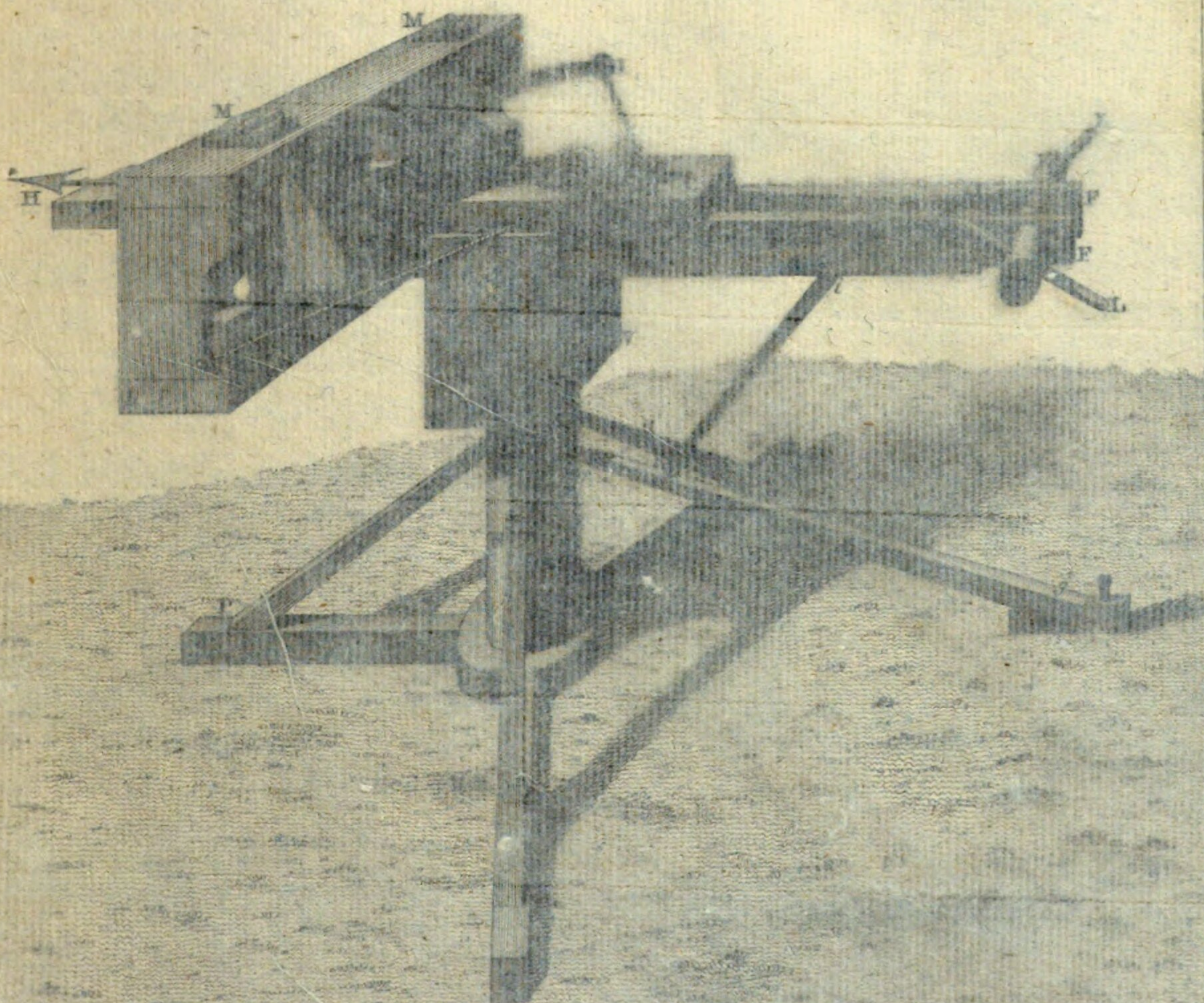


Fig. III.

The points A A. of the bow were bent upwards, so that the string or cord could pass freely over the upper surface of the DIOSTRA, although the middle of the bow was lower than the MASCULUS F. which was under the DIOSTRA; the CATAGOGIS was rounded off at its extremity E. near the bow, and was hollowed out at its other extremity D. the archer leant his body against the hollow, and then pushed the DIOSTRA forward, until the CHIRA I. fig. 4. came to the cord of the bow, which he then put upon the hooks of the CHIRA, and to prevent it from turning, and consequently letting go the cord, he put the SHASTERIA under its extremity, which ended in a point L. he then pushed with all his force the end F. of the DIOSTRA against some wall, or against the earth, keeping his body in the cavity D. of the CATAGOGIS; in this manner he drew to him by force the DIOSTRA and the CHIRA; the chira having seized the string or cord of the bow, this last was in like manner drawn forwards towards his body, and the bow thereby bent: the following mechanism was made use of to hinder the bow from drawing the DIOSTRA backwards: there was a rule with teeth N. fixed on both sides the SYRINX their whole length, and a hook of iron O. called CATACLIDA, which turned vertically, on an iron axis, on both sides of the DIOSTRA; when the diostra was pushed forwards, the CATACLIDA fell successively between the teeth of the rule, which hindered the DIOSTRA from going backwards.

When the bow was bent as much as was thought necessary, and retained in that state by the CATACLIDAS, the archer placed the arrow in the EPETOXIS, inserting its extremity where it is feathered between the parts of the CHIRA, quite to the string of the bow, which entered into a cut made purposely at that end of the arrow; he then raised the machine and took his aim by looking along the arrow, and taking the end M. of the SCEASTERIA, drew it towards him, and consequently drew the other
end

end of the *SCHASTERIA* from under the *CHIRA*, which by the tension of the string of the bow, instantly turned on its axis, thereby disengaging the string, the arrow was discharged with a great force; this machine was called *GASTRAPHETEN*, because the bow was bent by the action of pushing with the belly.

THE catapulta was a machine which served for the same use, but which acted with a greater force; to encrease its force in a great degree without much augmenting its magnitude, which would have rendered the machine too heavy and difficult to make use of; it was necessary to make some alteration in its construction, and above all in that part which was the first cause of its force; that is to say, in the bowe; but in encreasing the force of the bow or the arms, it was also necessary to augment the force which acted on the bow or arms; instead of producing that effect by joining the force of many men, it was more conveniently and efficaciously done by the application of some mechanic power, which occasioned some other difference in the machine; these differences consisted in that which follows:

INSTEAD of a bow, as in the scorpion, the catapulta had a rectangular frame of wood, *ABCD*, pl. 2, fig. 1, consisting of four uprights, placed at a convenient distance, and two horizontal traverses; one *AC* above, and the other *BD* beneath the four uprights, with which they were strongly joined by tenons and plates of iron; the horizontal traverses were called *SCUTULÆ* by the Romans, and *PERITRETÆ* by the Greeks, because they had perforations on all sides.

THE two outside uprights, *AB* & *CD* were called *parastæ* and the two others on the inside *EF* & *GH* *mesostæ*.

VITRUVIUS gives to all the frames the name of *CAPITULE*, and Hero of *PLINTHE*: the holes *IKLM* were pierced perpendicularly through the two *peritretæ*; in the middle between the *PARASTA* and the *MESOSTA*, on the right and left sides of the *CAPITULE* oppo-

sited to the holes of the PERITRETE, were placed two strong bars of iron, IL, and two others, KM, were applied in the same manner, opposite in the holes under the lower peritreta; these bars of iron were called, EPIZYGIS.

THEY then tied to the upper epizygis, I, one of the ends of a cord made of the bowels of an animal; the other end was passed through the holes of the two PERITRETÆ to the lower epizygis, K, it was stretched round it, and passed again through the same holes to the upper epizygis, I, about which it was stretched, and again in like manner to the lower EPIZYGIS; the same operation was repeated till the holes were filled, and that the cord could no longer pass there; they afterwards inserted in the middle, N, of this assemblage of cords, the end, N, of an arm of steel, or elastic wood; the other end, O. projected out beyond the face of the PARASTA, AB, near it; the two epizyges, I & K, were afterwards turned, so that the cords were extremely twisted; by this means, they kept the arm, NO, quite firmly, and caused it to press backwards with force, against the face of the parasta, AB, where a semi-circular cavity was cut purposely to receive it; the same manœuvre was repeated exactly at the other extremity of the capitule with the epizyges, L & M, at the arm, PQ, and the two arms being thus retained by the assemblages of twisted cords, made of bowels, will acquire a great degree of elastic force, and produced exactly the same effect as the bow of the scorpion before described; the cord, OQ, made of the strongest sinews of animals was passed through the extremities of the arms, and fixed; it was of such a length, as to retain the arms at a small distance from the PARASTÆ, so that in the discharge, they should not strike against, and endanger them; these arms were called BRACHIÆ, and likewise, ANCONES: the assemblage or column, IK, of twisted cords, which retained the arms, was called, TONUS, and the frame, ABEF about it, was called HEMITONUS, and sometimes UNITO-

TONUS,

TONUS; the interval, FH, which was between the two HEMI-TONES; was left for the SYRINX, and the DIOSTRA; the end of the syrinx being strongly fixed upon the upper surface S, of the SCUTULA, or lower PERITRETA.

HERO gives a description of another capitule, differing, though not essentially, from this: the SCUTULA having the form of a demi-octagon, ABCDEF, fig. 2. so that it was broader in the middle than at its extremities; and the two MESOSTÆ, GEHD, were consequently broader than the two PARASTÆ, AFBC, their breadth being determined by the intersection of the interior sides of the PARASTÆ, IK. and of the exterior sides ED, of the MESOSTÆ, with the semi-circle, AIEDKB, as may be seen by the figure.

WHEN the capitule AM, fig. 3. was finished, there was fixed to it, (as has been before said) one of the ends B of the SYRINX, which as also the diostra CH, the CHIRA and SCHASTERIA, D, and CATACLIDA, O, were similar in all things to those which are described in speaking of the scorpion; but it had no CATAGOGIS; instead of which it had a SUCULA, or AXIS, E, placed at the other end of the SYRINX, its sides, F, projecting properly to receive it.

IN the middle of this SUCULA, or axis, between the two sides of the SYRINX, was fixed a cord, GC, which extended from thence to the end C, of the DIOSTRA, where it was fastened to a hook; when the machine was prepared, as was said, speaking of the scorpion, that is to say, when the diostra was pushed forwards, until the chira reached the string of the bow, IKI, and was hooked to it, the DIOSTRA was drawn backward by means of the fucula, which was turned by two men, with the assistance of the levers L, which passed through its two extremities; by this means, the arms, II, were drawn and bent, and when they were bent sufficiently, the arrow, KH, was placed in the epitoxis, and discharged in the manner before described.

THE large machines of this species, whose forces were very considerable, were worked by different combinations of pullies, or pullies combined with the *SUCULÆ*, instead of simple *SUCULAS*; and instead of simple bars of iron, or *EPIZYGES*, which sustained the *TONUS*; the machines, *M*, called by Vitruvius, *Modiols*, and by Hero *CHOENICES* were used; they shall be explained in the description of the balista.

BUT as this machine of war was infinitely too large and too weighty to be managed by hand, and as it was required to turn and elevate it in different directions, it became necessary to support it upon a base which should procure it those different movements; that base was thus constructed:

A *PILLAR*, *M*, or *COLUMELLA*, (as Vitruvius calls it) in height two feet and a quarter, was fixed upright upon a foot with three branches, *PQR*, and sustained by three props, *SSS*, placed thereon; on the top of the *COLUMELLA*, there was a cylindric tenon, *T*, upon which the *CHALCHESIUM*, *UV*, turned, which was thus made: upon a horizontal and rectangular plane, *UV*. two perpendicular and rectangular sides, *Ua* & *Vb*. were fixed on the right and left, and between these was fixed another similar horizontal plane, *b, c, d*, a little above the first.

IN the middle of these two horizontal planes, were holes capable of receiving the tenon, *T*, of the *COLUMELLA*; the two perpendicular sides were at such a distance one from the other, that they could receive between them the breadth of the *fyrinx*, which being placed there, an iron axis, *E*, was passed horizontally cross the two sides of the *chalchesium* and of the *fyrinx*, binding them altogether, and permitting the *fyrinx* to revolve vertically about that axis, in such a manner, that the whole catapulta could be inclined in all possible positions, and by means of the *chalchesium* which turned upon the tenon of the *columella*, it might be moved horizontally on all sides, and in this manner it might be pointed towards any object whatsoever.

To

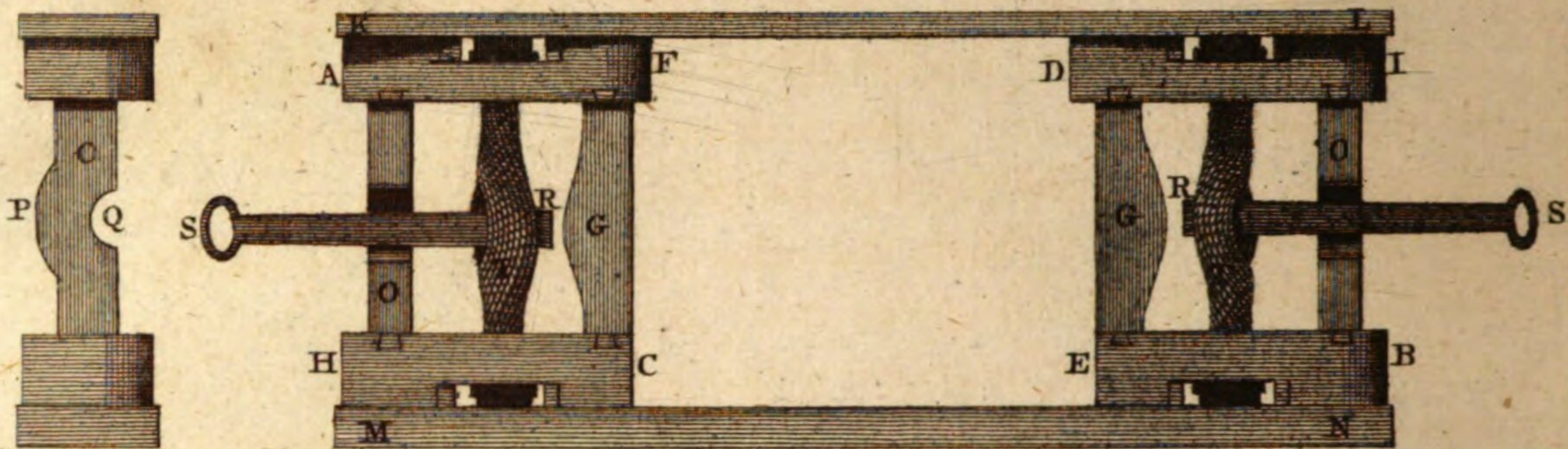


Fig. 1.

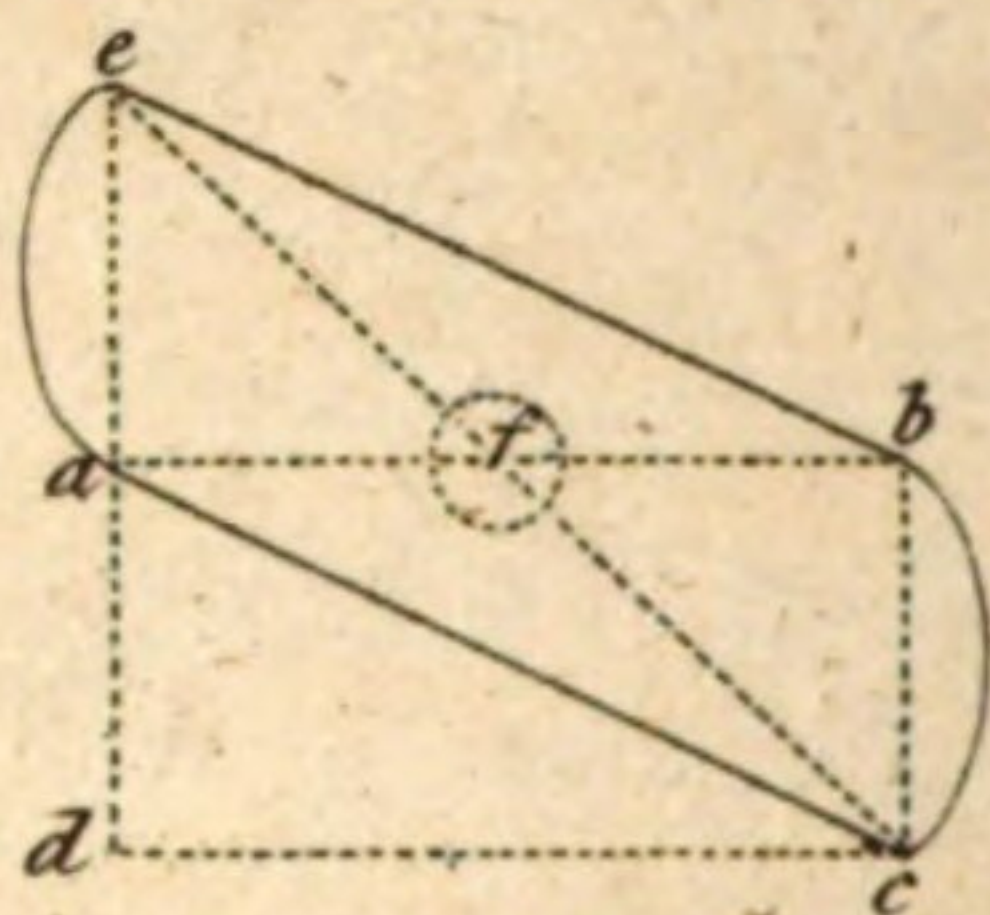


Fig. 2.

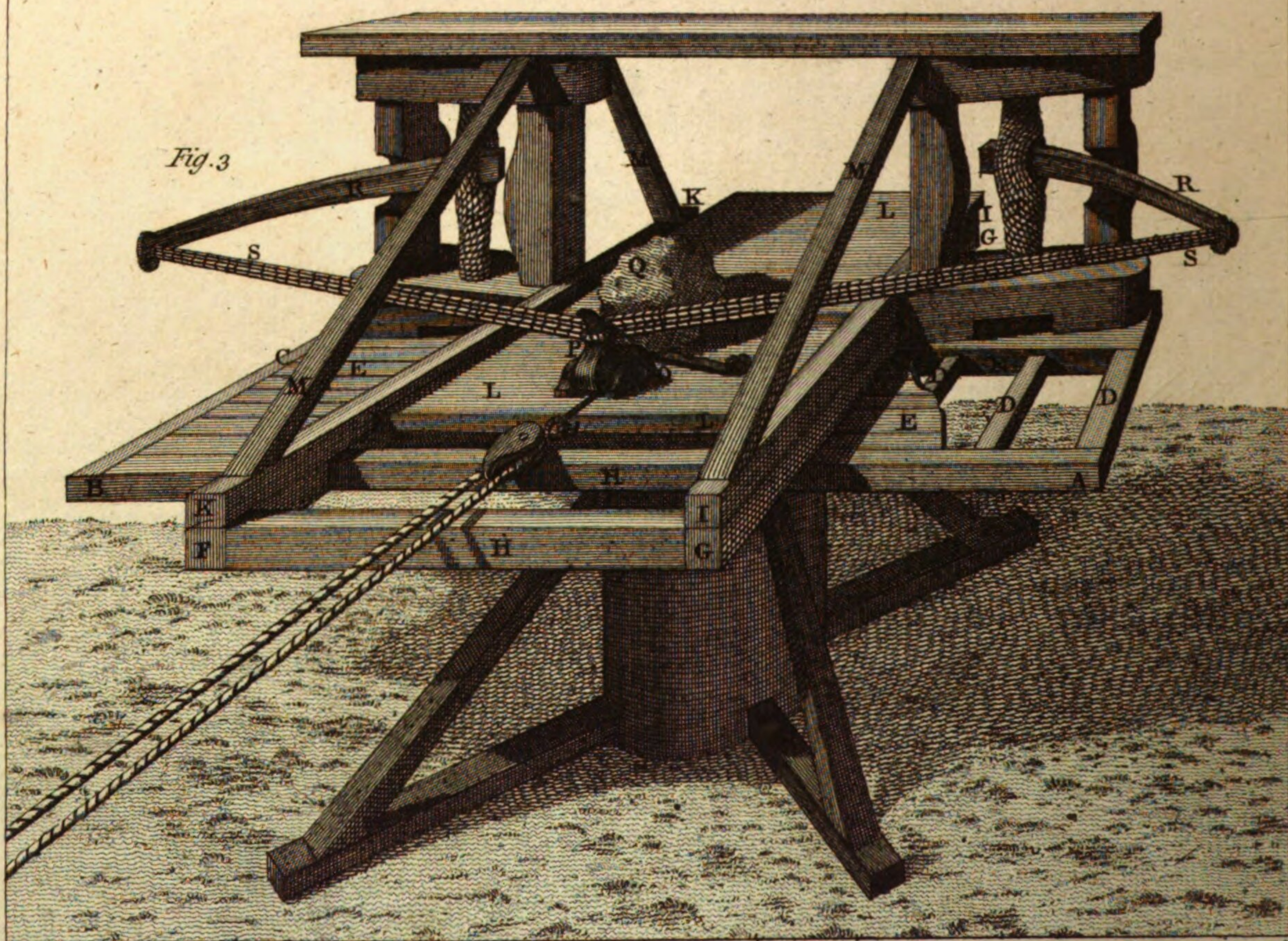


Fig. 3.

To keep it fixed and immoveable in the direction desired, it was thus managed; one end *f*, of a piece of wood, *f, g*, was joined to the top of the COLUMELLA by a hinge or joint, which permitted it to turn vertically, so that the other end which rested on the earth, might be placed in different situations; this piece was called ANTERIDIUM, near its upper extremity, the ANAPAUSTERIA, *h, i*, was joined to it by a joint, which permitted it to turn vertically. When the SYRINX was placed in the proposed direction, the lower end *g*, of the ANTERIDIUM was moved and fixed it on the earth, so that the ANAPAUSTERIA rested perpendicularly under the syrx, the end *i*, of the ANAPAUSTERIA was then raised and fixed under the syrx in the holes purposely made: by this means the SYRINX was rendered immoveable in its position, and then the archer discharged the arrow in the same manner as is said in the description of the Scorpion; Catapulta's were made of different sizes, but there were only two generally in use: the smallest was called TRISPATIUM, because it threw arrows of three spans long: the largest was called TRICUBITAL, because it shot arrows of three cubits or six spans long.

VITRUVIUS gives here the proportions of their different parts, but they are so altered and corrupted by the copyists, that they are not to be relied on. Hero says, that they can only be fixed after the experience of several trials. Philo mentions of several of their proportions, and differs much from Vitruvius; they however all agree in this, that is, that the proportions are regulated by the size of the holes in the SCUTULA, and that the diameters of these holes were always made equal to the ninth part of the length of the arrow that the catapulta was made to throw.

THE capitule, pl. 3, AB, fig. 1. of the balista was similar to that of the catapulta, except that the two hemitones, AE and BD, were placed at a greater distance one from the other, leaving a larger interval, CE, between the two mesostæ, G, G, which in the balista were called ANTISTÆ.

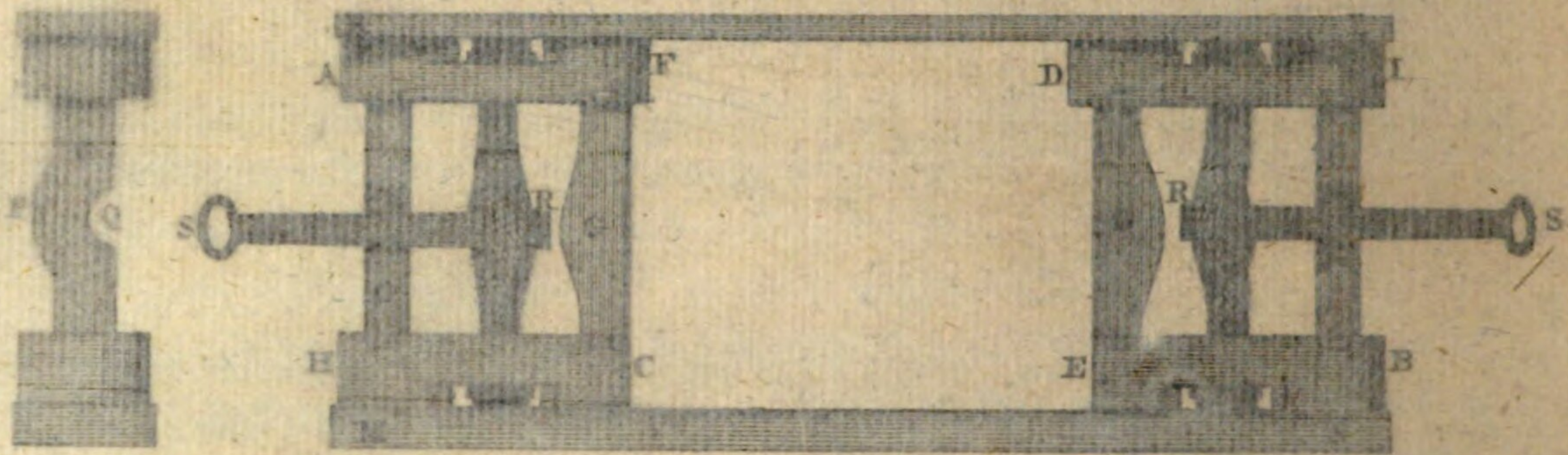


Fig. 1.

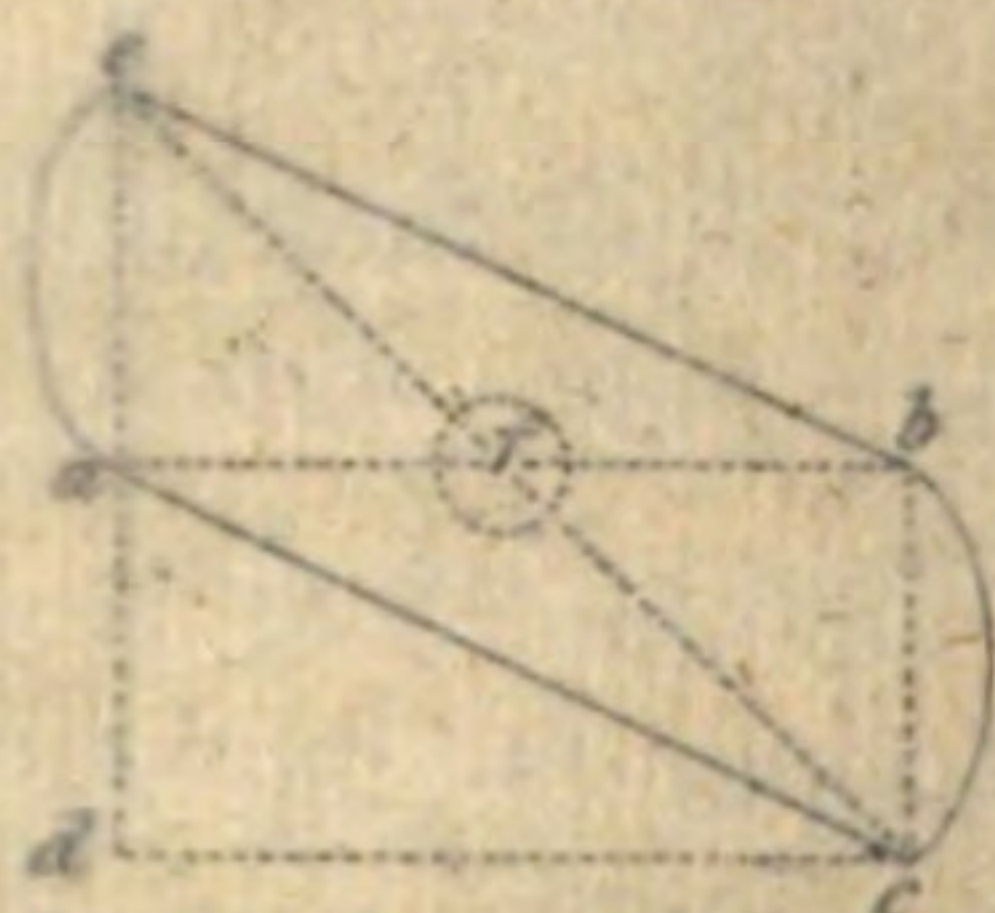


Fig. 2.

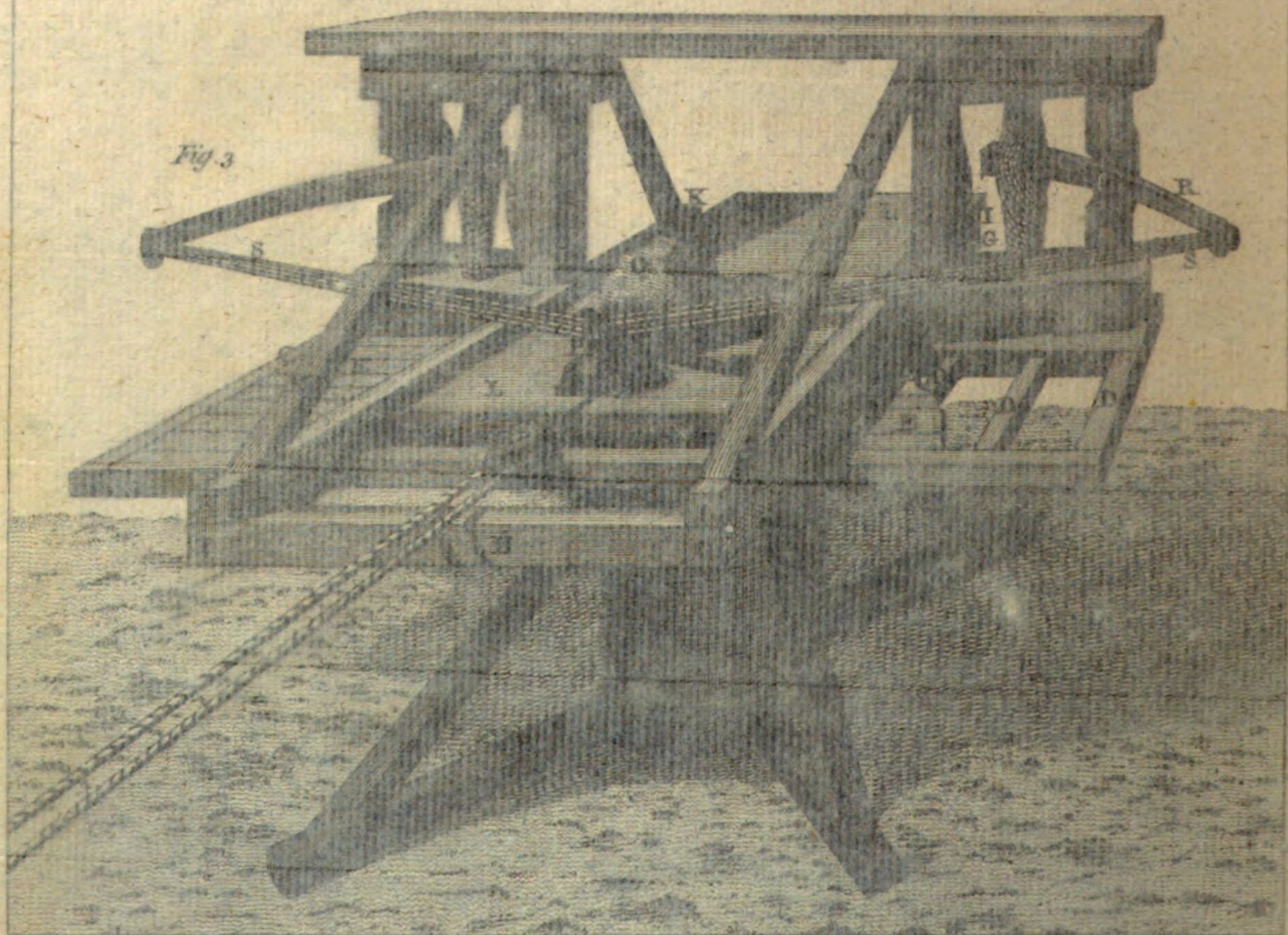


Fig. 3.

Pub. in April 1767 by J. Hooper

N. C. Goodnight sculp.

To keep it fixed and immoveable in the direction desired, it was thus managed; one end *f*, of a piece of wood, *f, g*, was joined to the top of the COLUMELLA by a hinge or joint, which permitted it to turn vertically, so that the other end which rested on the earth, might be placed in different situations; this piece was called ANTERIDIUM, near its upper extremity, the ANAPAUSTERIA, *b, i*, was joined to it by a joint, which permitted it to turn vertically. When the SYRINX was placed in the proposed direction, the lower end *g*, of the ANTERIDIUM was moved and fixed it on the earth, so that the ANAPAUSTERIA rested perpendicularly under the syrinx, the end *i*, of the ANAPAUSTERIA was then raised and fixed under the syrinx in the holes purposely made: by this means the SYRINX was rendered immoveable in its position, and then the archer discharged the arrow in the same manner as is said in the description of the Scorpion; Catapulta's were made of different sizes, but there were only two generally in use: the smallest was called TRISPITHAMAL, because it threw arrows of three spans long: the largest was called TRICUBITAL, because it shot arrows of three cubits or six spans long.

VITRUVIUS gives here the proportions of their different parts, but they are so altered and corrupted by the copyists, that they are not to be relied on. Hero says, that they can only be fixed after the experience of several tryals. Philo makes mention of several of their proportions, and differs much from Vitruvius; they however all agree in this, that is, that the proportions are regulated by the size of the holes in the SCUTULA, and that the diameters of these holes were always made equal to the ninth part of the length of the arrow that the catapulta was made to throw.

THE capitule, pl. 3, AB, fig. 1. of the balista was similar to that of the catapulta, except that the two hemitones, AE and BD, were placed at a greater distance one from the other, leaving a larger interval, CE, between the two mesostæ, G, G, which in the balista were called ANTISTÆ.

As this machine was designed for throwing large stones, it was necessary to have this large interval, which, according to Hero, ought to be a little less than double the length of the arm RS; there was besides another difference, namely, that the SCUTULÆ or PERITRETÆ AF and DI (which in the catapulta extended in piece over the two hemitones) were separated in the balista, and extended only over one hemitone, AF.

THE lower peritretæ, HC and EB, were also separated in the same manner, so that the two hemitones were not united by their peritretæ, but by two other pieces of wood, KL and MN, one of which, KL, extended over the two upper PERITRETÆ, and the other, MN, under the two bottom PERITRETÆ, being fastened to the same by tenons. The parastæ, O, were made like those of the catapulta, but had on their back part a curvilinear projection, P, opposed to the circular cavity, Q, in which was the arm, in order to strengthen it: The ANTISTÆ, G, had also a curved projection, R, called HYPOPTERNA, on the side next the arm, R, S, against which the root, R, of the arm called PTERNA rested. The grain of the wood in the PARASTÆ and ANTISTÆ was perpendicular, they had both tenons placed at their upper and under extremities, which entered into the peritretæ, and there joined them strongly, and all the angles and the joints of the capitule were strengthened with plates of iron; the peritretæ in this machine had the figure of a rhombe, in order to permit the arms to diverge so much the more; Hero thus describes them.—“In a rectangular parallelogram *a, b, c, d*, fig. 2. whose breadth is one half its length, a diagonal line being drawn *a, c*; parallel to the same draw *b e*, and *d, a*, continued to *e*: then will *a, e, b, c*, shew the figure of the PERITRETÆ the extremities *ae*, and *bc*, are enlarged in giving them a curved figure to strengthen them. Drawing afterwards, *c, e*, the intersection, *f*, of that line, with the line, *ab*, shews the middle of the peritretæ where the whole of the tonus is bored.”

PHILO

PHILO gives another rule for determining the obliquity of the rhomboidal figure of the PERITRETA; "divide," says he, "a semi-circle in eleven parts, and draw a line from the fourth division to the center, that line will show the obliquity sought." Vitruvius differs from these two authors; he says that the oblique form ought to be a sixth part of the length and a fourth of the breadth.

THE capitule of the balista being finished the other parts were added, which answered to the syrinx, diostra, &c. of the catapulta, as here after.

To the piece of wood, MN, fig. 1. under the lower PERITRETA, was joined the horizontal frame of wood, NABC, fig. 3. it consisted of divers pieces of wood, DDD, placed at equal distances cross-ways at the whole length of the capitule, they projected forwards, and were bound at their saliant extremity by a piece of transverse wood, AB; this frame was called MENSA, the Greeks called it TRAPEZA; over it was a covering of boards, EE, called, TABULA, of which the upper surface was on a level with the bottoms of the lower peritretæ: on the TABULA was placed the CLIMAX, or as Vitruvius calls it, the CLIMACICLOS, FGG, which was an horizontal frame of wood resembling a ladder, from whence it derived its name; it was composed of two long pieces, GG, & FF, joined together by many transverse pieces, H H, placed among themselves at suitable distances.

THE breadth FG, of the CLIMAX, according to Hero, was equal to the interval between the antistæ, and its length was of nineteen holes according to Philo, although it was but thirteen according to Vitruvius.

THE climax answered to the syrinx of the catapulta; it was placed on the tabula, so that it projected from it on every side; upon two long parallel pieces were placed two others, called ALÆ, II, & KK, equal in breadth and length; between the said ALÆ, and

and over the transverse pieces, HH, of the climax, was placed the diostra, LLL, which was of the same length as the climax; the climax was strongly fastened to the mensa, and strengthened by the antérides, or stays, MM, extending from the extremities of the alæ, to the upper peritretas.

THE chira, (or manucla) schasteria, &c. OP, were fixed on the diostra, in the same manner as in the catapulta, but here the crooked extremity, P, of the chira was not split into a fork, but was made like a finger, and was raised high enough above the diostra, that the cord of the bow when disengaged might seize the stone to be thrown, Q, towards the middle of its height, in order that it might act on it with more certainty and strength; with the same intention the arms, RR, were disposed in that manner, that the cord of the bow in going backwards might be moved at that height above the diostra; moreover, the cord of the bow, SS, was made broad like a girdle, and not round as in the catapulta, and had a loop, P, in the middle, which hooked upon the finger of the chira.

THESE machines were made with very strong and hard wood, and as light as could accord with these two qualities, in order that they might the more easily be transported from one place to another; for the same reason, the different pieces of which these machines were composed, might be separated one from the other, except the hemitones, which were always entire, on account of the difficulty and time necessary for preparing the tonus; the manner of doing it is described in a chapter following.

IN balistas and large catapultas, they made use of machines, that Hero calls, choenices, and Virtuvius modiolis, pl. 4, fig. 1, 2, instead of simple bars of iron, or epizyges before-mentioned; if they were small, they were made of brass, but if they were great, of some hard wood: the upper part, *a, a*, was square, and was placed on the peritreta, *c, c*, above the hole of the tonus; the upper
part

part was circular. In the middle of the circle was pierced a hole *d*, through the CHOENICIS, equal in diameter to the hole *e*, in the peritreta; joined to the inferior surface of the square part were four tenons or teeth, called ANTITORMI, *f, f*, which entred into a circular excavation, cut in the surface of the peritreta, in order to hold the CHOENICIS firmly in its place: and in the said excavation under the teeth was a plate of iron, to prevent them from penetrating into the wood, upon the upper surface of the CHOENICIS was cut a groove *g*, passing exactly through the diameter, and in that groove was placed the EPIZYGIS, *b b*; one of these CHOENICIS was put in every hole of the PERITRETA through which the TONUS was stretched, the teeth entred into the upper surface of the upper PERITRETA, and the lower surface of the lower PERITRETA; then was put about the EPIZYGES (as has before been described) the cords, *i i*, which form the TONUS. That being done, the cords were twisted by turning the choenicis, with a key of iron fig. 3, having a square collet, *a b c d*, exactly fitting the square part of the CHOENICIS. When the CHOENICIS was made of wood, the grain ought to be disposed perpendicularly, but the EPIZYGIS was made of the strongest iron, as having all the effort of the tonus to sustain.

THE proportions of the parts of a balista, are mentioned by Vitruvius, I refer the reader to him, with the advice before given in the explication of the catapult, some information might be there obtained; but as Hero remarks, it is only after experience and trials that they ought to be fixed.

THE balista was mounted on a base; Vitruvius and Hero both mention it, without describing it; Vitruvius gives to many of its parts the same names which he made use of in speaking of the base of the catapult; nevertheless that base could not be exactly like that of the catapult, for the different figure of that machine, and the different manner of making it act, will not permit it.

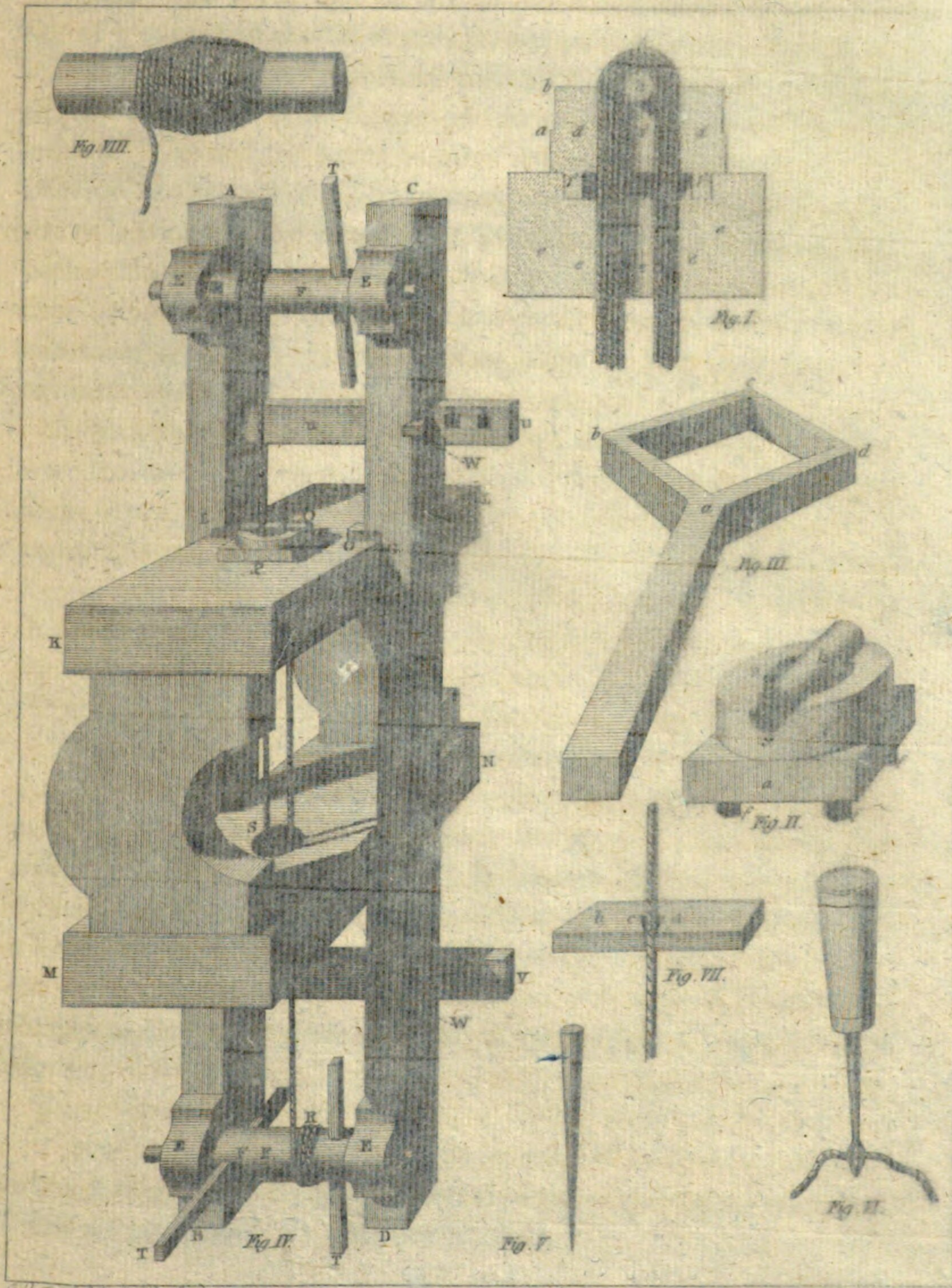
FOR the balista was not made to act by means of the SUCULA,

or any other power joined to it, as was the case in the catapulta; but detached powers of diverse constructions were used, differing among themselves according as the force of the machine or other circumstances required. Vitruvius remarks, that some were put in action with the *SUCULA* and levers; others by means of the pulley, and others by combinations of wheels and cogs, placed at proper distances and convenient situations.

THE diameter of the hole of the *TONUS*, pierced in the *PERITRETA*, was proportional to the weight of the stone to be thrown by the balista, when that was determined, all its members and parts were regulated by the diameter of that hole, as was practised in the catapulta. Several authors make mention of the sizes of the holes corresponding with different weights, but they differ greatly in their calculations.

THE following method was observed in preparing the *TONUS*, that is to say, the combination of twisted cords, from the elasticity of which was derived the force of these military machines.

FOR this purpose the machine, plate 4, fig. 4, was made use of, it was called *ENTONIUM*. It consisted of two parallel posts, *AB*, and *CD*, so joined by the two traverses *UU*, and *VV*, as to form a rectangular frame, capable of receiving into its cavity either the capitule of the catapulta, or the hemitone, *KLMN*, of the balista to which it was applied. The extremities of these two traverses passed through the posts, and had holes, *X*, in which, when the hemitone was inserted in the frame, wedges, *W*, were driven in, and by these means the hemitone was held firmly fixed in the frame; there was also cut a notch, *GH*, at the inner side of each post, to receive the hemitone, which was fixed in it with wedges, *OO*, so that it could not move; at each extremity of the two posts, there was an axis, *FF*, the ends of which turned in the cheeks *E*, which were fixed to the posts. The said capitule or hemitone, *KLMN*, being thus placed between the posts with the two *PERITRETÆ* towards the two axels, and the
chose-



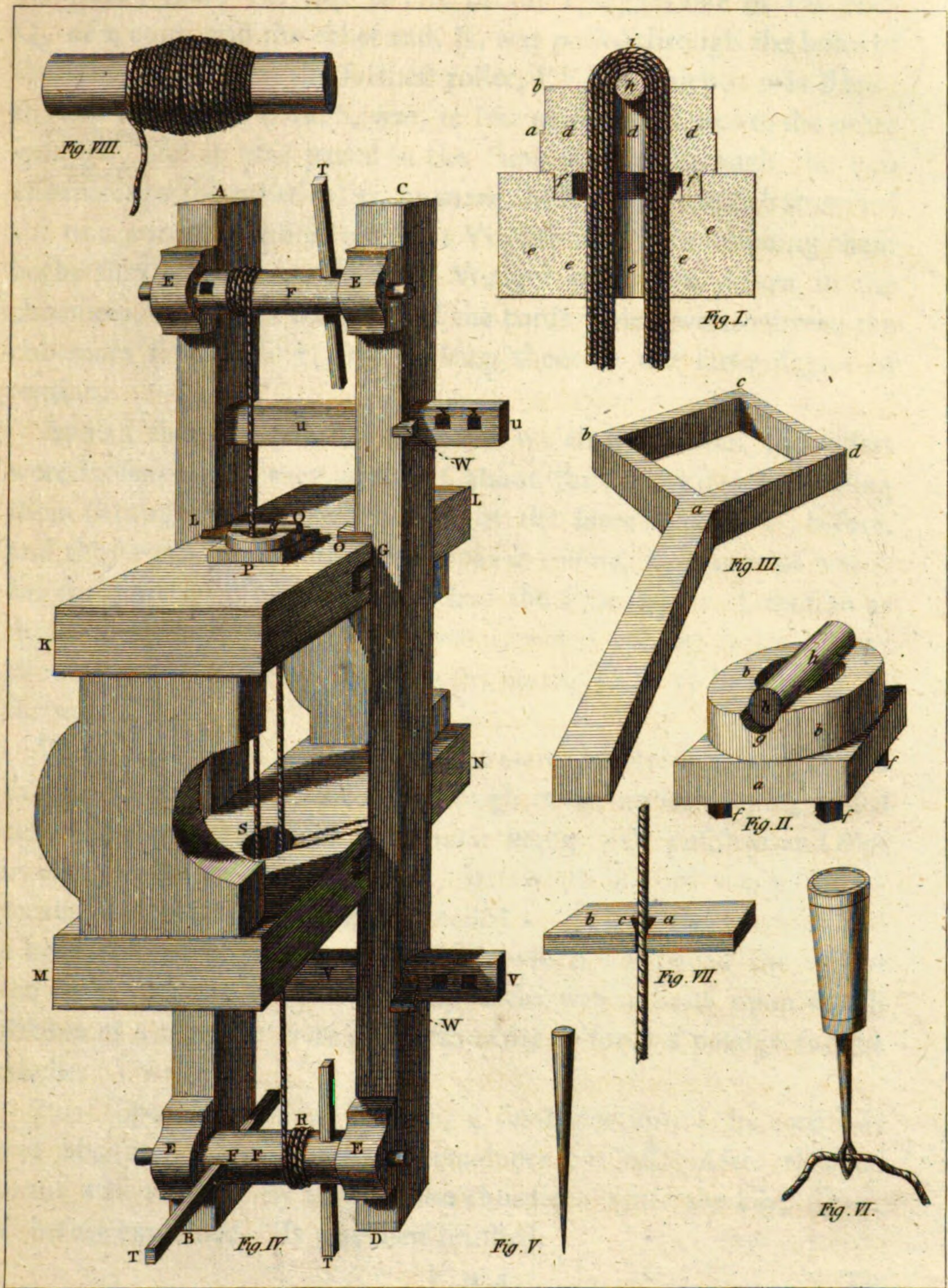
ANCIENT ARTILLERY. PLIV.

or any other power joined to it, as was the case in the catapulta; but detached powers of diverse constructions were used, differing among themselves according as the force of the machine or other circumstances required. Vitruvius remarks, that some were put in action with the *SUCULA* and levers; others by means of the pulley, and others by combinations of wheels and cogs, placed at proper distances and convenient situations.

THE diameter of the hole of the *TONUS*, pierced in the *PERITRETA*, was proportional to the weight of the stone to be thrown by the balista, when that was determined, all its members and parts were regulated by the diameter of that hole, as was practised in the catapulta. Several authors make mention of the sizes of the holes corresponding with different weights, but they differ greatly in their calculations.

THE following method was observed in preparing the *TONUS*, that is to say, the combination of twisted cords, from the elasticity of which was derived the force of these military machines.

FOR this purpose the machine, plate 4, fig. 4, was made use of, it was called *ENTONIUM*. It consisted of two parallel posts, *AB*, and *CD*, so joined by the two traverses *UU*, and *VV*, as to form a rectangular frame, capable of receiving into its cavity either the capitule of the catapulta, or the hemitone, *KLMN*, of the balista to which it was applied. The extremities of these two traverses passed through the posts, and had holes, *X*, in which, when the hemitone was inserted in the frame, wedges, *W*, were driven in, and by these means the hemitone was held firmly fixed in the frame; there was also cut a notch, *GH*, at the inner side of each post, to receive the hemitone, which was fixed in it with wedges, *OO*, so that it could not move; at each extremity of the two posts, there was an axis, *FF*, the ends of which turned in the cheeks *E*, which were fixed to the posts. The said capitule or hemitone, *KLMN*, being thus placed between the posts with the two *PERITRETÆ* towards the two axels, and the
chose-



Collected by P. Hooper July 29th 1732.

or any other power joined to it, as was the case in the catapulta; but detached powers of diverse constructions were used, differing among themselves according as the force of the machine or other circumstances required. Vitruvius remarks, that some were put in action with the *SUCULA* and levers; others by means of the pulley, and others by combinations of wheels and cogs, placed at proper distances and convenient situations.

THE diameter of the hole of the *TONUS*, pierced in the *PERTRETA*, was proportional to the weight of the stone to be thrown by the balista, when that was determined, all its members and parts were regulated by the diameter of that hole, as was practised in the catapulta. Several authors make mention of the sizes of the holes corresponding with different weights, but they differ greatly in their calculations.

THE following method was observed in preparing the *TONUS*, that is to say, the combination of twisted cords, from the strength of which was derived the force of these military machines.

For this purpose the machine, plate 4, fig. 4, was made, which was called *ENTONTIUM*. It consisted of two parallel posts, *CD*, so joined by the two traverses *UU*, and *VV*, as to form a rectangular frame, capable of receiving into its cavity the capitule of the catapulta, or the hemitone, *KLMN*, to which it was applied. The extremities of these posts, passing through the posts, and had holes, *X*, in which, when it was inserted in the frame, wedges, *W*, were driven, by which means the hemitone was held firmly fixed. The frame also cut a notch, *GH*, at the inner side, into which the hemitone, which was fixed in it with a pin, was made to move; at each extremity of the frame, there were two wheels, the ends of which turned in the circle of the frame. The said capitule or hemitone was applied to the frame, and the posts with the two traverses, by means of which it was

...e been
...ends
...oles of
...fixed ;
...e other
...he two
...tretched
...ng them
...n in the
...etween the
...degree of

...the rollers
...s by passing
...er as before,
...eans of which
...e of tension as
...he holes of the
...to have no room

...ly full, and it be-
...an iron point, called
...well polished and dipt
...ds a cord was passed by
...AMPHIS, fig. 6, which had
...which was passed the end of
...there was a head upon which
..., in order to force a passage for the

...nished, a small portion of the cord was
...nd the remainder cut off. After this the
...y turning the choenices with the key, fig. 3,
...It was then finished.

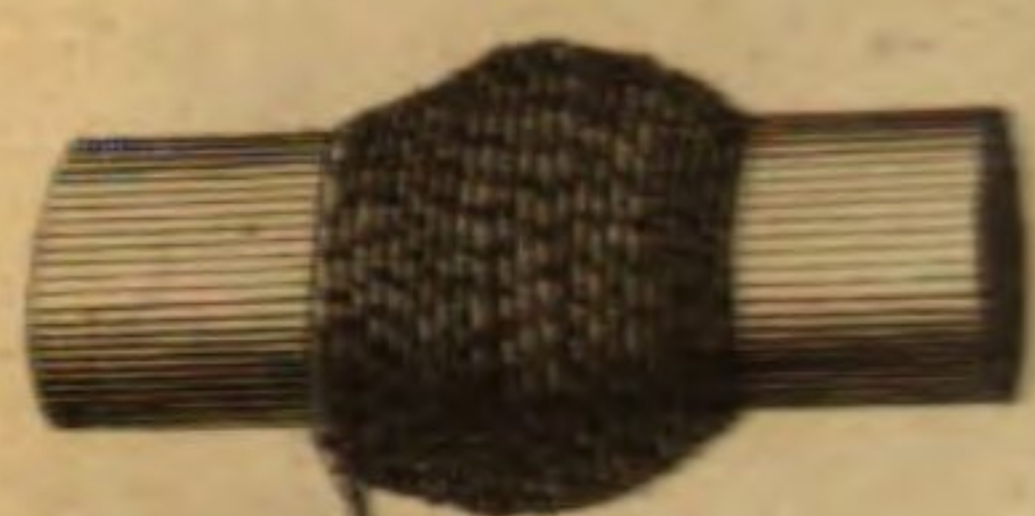


Fig. III.

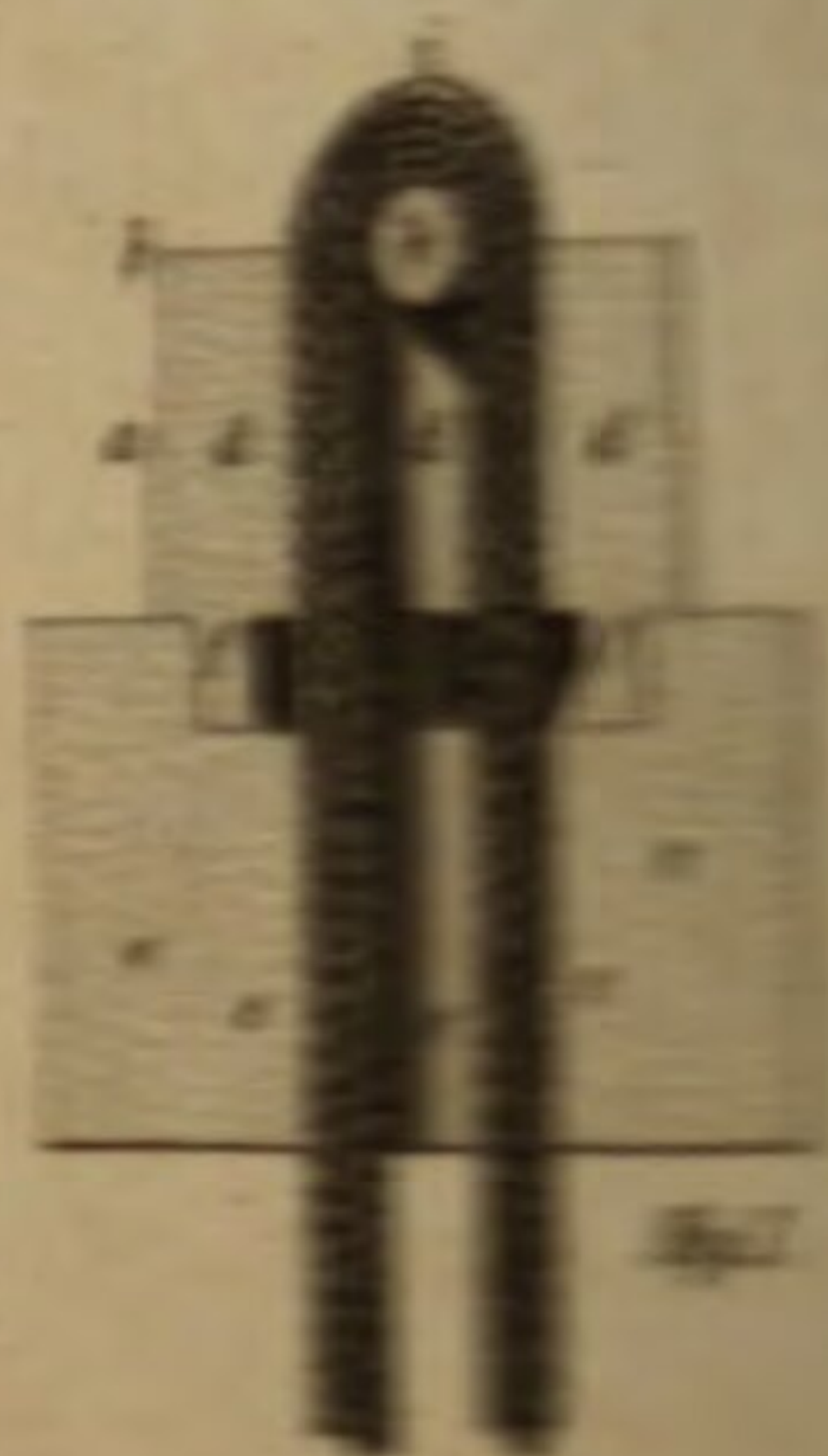


Fig. IV.

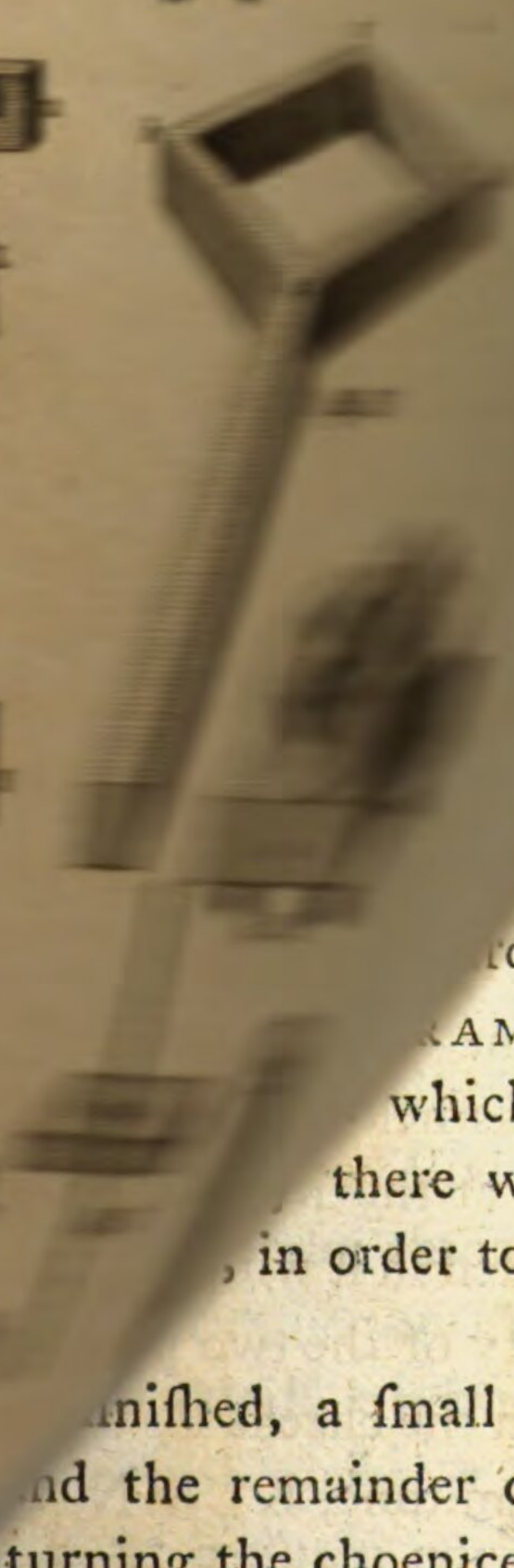
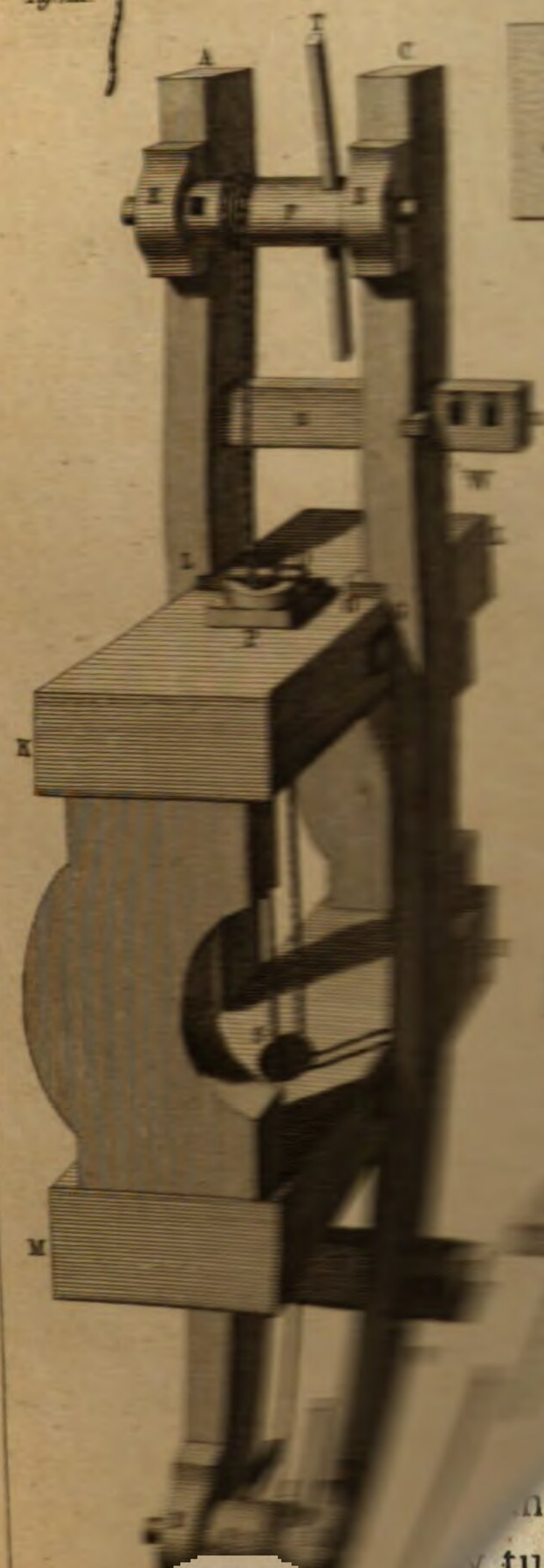


Fig. VI.

choenices or modiolis, P, being placed in the holes, as has before been described; there was tied to one of the epizyges one of the ends Q, of a cord, and the other end, R, was passed through the holes of the two choenices at the farthest roller, FF, to which it was fixed; the end of another cord, S, was, in like manner fastened to the other epizygis, and it was passed in the same manner through the two choenices to the other roller, by means of levers, T, which stretched the two cords, R and S, until (as Vitruvius says) in sounding them both, they sounded in unison. Wedges were then driven in the choenices, to hinder the parts of the cords which were between the choenices from sliding, and to keep them in the same degree of tension.

AFTER that, the parts of the cords which were about the rollers were loosened, and they were put about the EPIZYGIS by passing them through the two choenices, in the same manner as before, and they were fastened to their opposite rollers, by means of which the cords were stretched till they had the same degree of tension as those preceding; this process was repeated till the holes of the choenices were entirely filled by the cords, so as to have no room for more.

WHEN the holes of the choenices were nearly full, and it became difficult to pass the cords through them, an iron point, called cestra, fig. 5, was forced in, which being well polished and dipt in oil in order to open a passage, afterwards a cord was passed by means of a polished iron needle, called RAMPHIS, fig. 6, which had a hole near its point through which which was passed the end of the cord. At the other extremity there was a head upon which strokes of a hammer were given, in order to force a passage for the needle.

THIS operation being finished, a small portion of the cord was tied about the tonus, and the remainder cut off. After this the tonus was twisted, by turning the choenices with the key, fig. 3, as before explained. It was then finished.

THE large machines of this species, whose forces were very considerable, were worked by different combinations of pullies, or pullies combined with the *SUCULÆ*, instead of simple *SUCULAS*; and instead of simple bars of iron, or *EPIZYGES*, which sustained the *TONUS*; the machines, *M*, called by Vitruvius, *Modiols*, and by Hero *CHOENICES* were used; they shall be explained in the description of the *balista*.

BUT as this machine of war was infinitely too large and too weighty to be managed by hand, and as it was required to turn and elevate it in different directions, it became necessary to support it upon a base which should procure it those different movements; that base was thus constructed:

A *PILLAR*, *M*, or *COLUMELLA*, (as Vitruvius calls it) in height two feet and a quarter, was fixed upright upon a foot with three branches, *PQR*, and sustained by three props, *SSS*, placed thereon; on the top of the *COLUMELLA*, there was a cylindric tenon, *T*, upon which the *CHALCHESIUM*, *UV*, turned, which was thus made: upon a horizontal and rectangular plane, *UV*. two perpendicular and rectangular sides, *Ua* & *Vb*. were fixed on the right and left, and between these was fixed another similar horizontal plane, *b, c, d*, a little above the first.

IN the middle of these two horizontal planes, were holes capable of receiving the tenon, *T*, of the *COLUMELLA*; the two perpendicular sides were at such a distance one from the other, that they could receive between them the breadth of the *fyrinx*, which being placed there, an iron axis, *E*, was passed horizontally cross the two sides of the *chalchesium* and of the *fyrinx*, binding them altogether, and permitting the *fyrinx* to revolve vertically about that axis, in such a manner, that the whole *catapulta* could be inclined in all possible positions, and by means of the *chalchesium* which turned upon the tenon of the *columella*, it might be moved horizontally on all sides, and in this manner it might be pointed towards any object whatsoever.

To

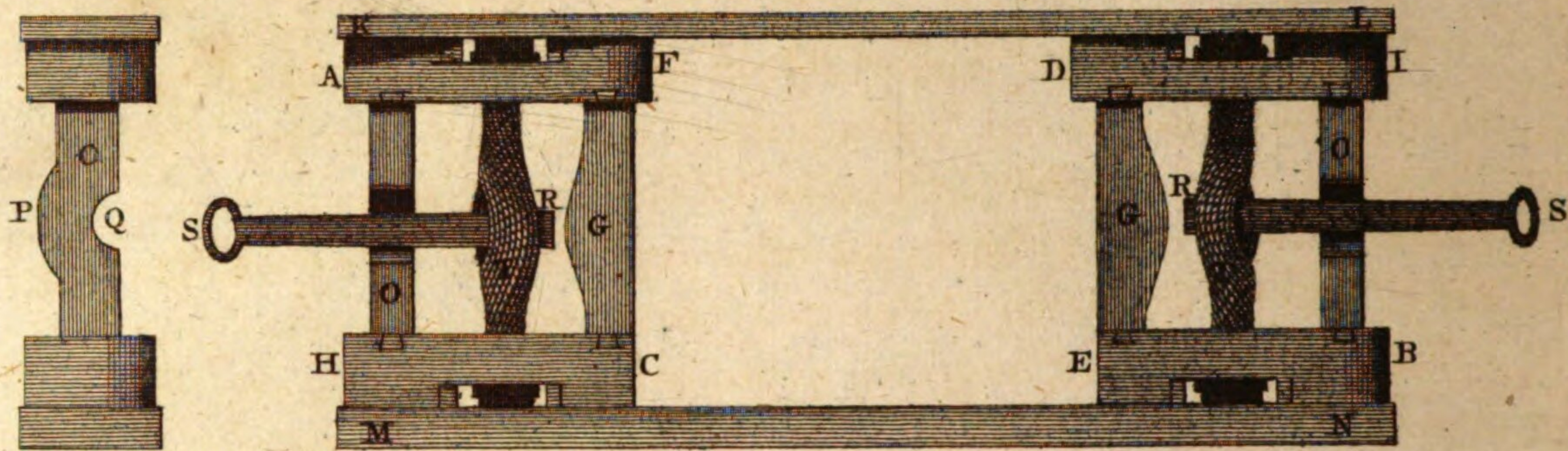


Fig. 1.

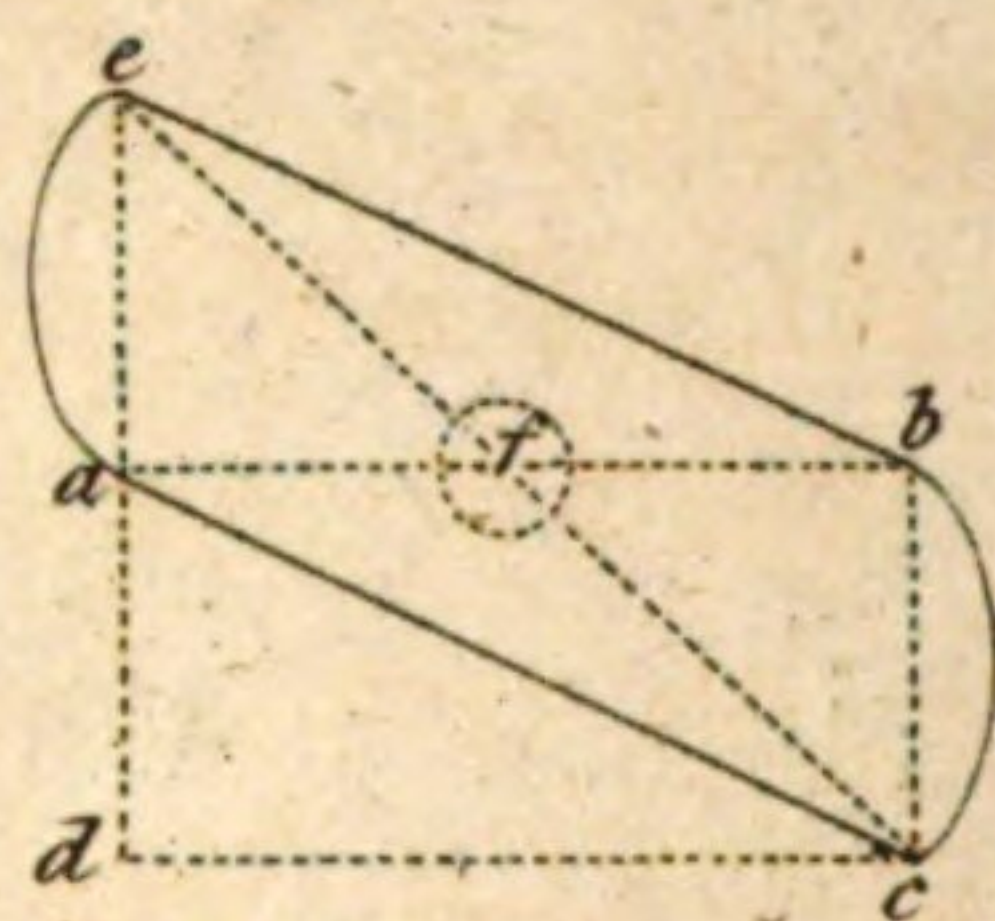


Fig. 2

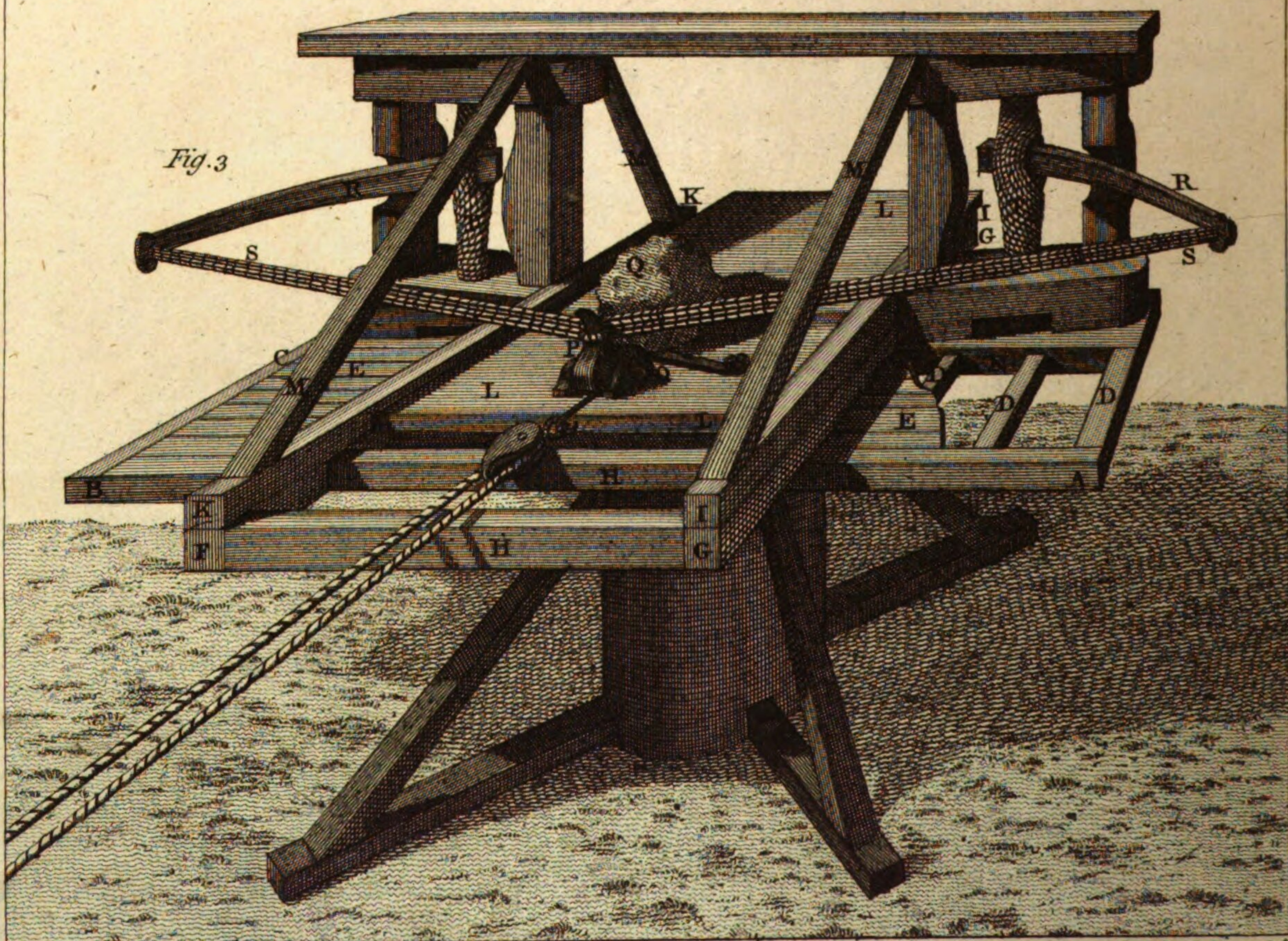


Fig. 3

To keep it fixed and immoveable in the direction desired, it was thus managed; one end *f*, of a piece of wood, *f, g*, was joined to the top of the COLUMELLA by a hinge or joint, which permitted it to turn vertically, so that the other end which rested on the earth, might be placed in different situations; this piece was called ANTERIDIUM, near its upper extremity, the ANAPAUSTERIA, *h, i*, was joined to it by a joint, which permitted it to turn vertically. When the SYRINX was placed in the proposed direction, the lower end *g*, of the ANTERIDIUM was moved and fixed it on the earth, so that the ANAPAUSTERIA rested perpendicularly under the syrx, the end *i*, of the ANAPAUSTERIA was then raised and fixed under the syrx in the holes purposely made: by this means the SYRINX was rendered immoveable in its position; and then the archer discharged the arrow in the same manner as is said in the description of the Scorpion; Catapulta's were made of different sizes, but there were only two generally in use: the smallest was called TRISPATIUM, because it threw arrows of three spans long: the largest was called TRICUBITAL, because it shot arrows of three cubits or six spans long.

VITRUVIUS gives here the proportions of their different parts, but they are so altered and corrupted by the copyists, that they are not to be relied on. Hero says, that they were only fixed after the experience of several trials. Philo's description of several of their proportions, and differs much from Vitruvius; they however all agree in this, that is, that the proportions are regulated by the size of the holes in the SCUTULA, and that the diameters of these holes were always made equal to the ninth part of the length of the arrow that the catapulta was made to throw.

THE capitule, pl. 3, AB, fig. 1. of the balista was similar to that of the catapulta, except that the two hemitones, AE and BD, were placed at a greater distance one from the other, leaving a larger interval, CE, between the two mesostæ, G, G, which in the balista were called ANTISTÆ.

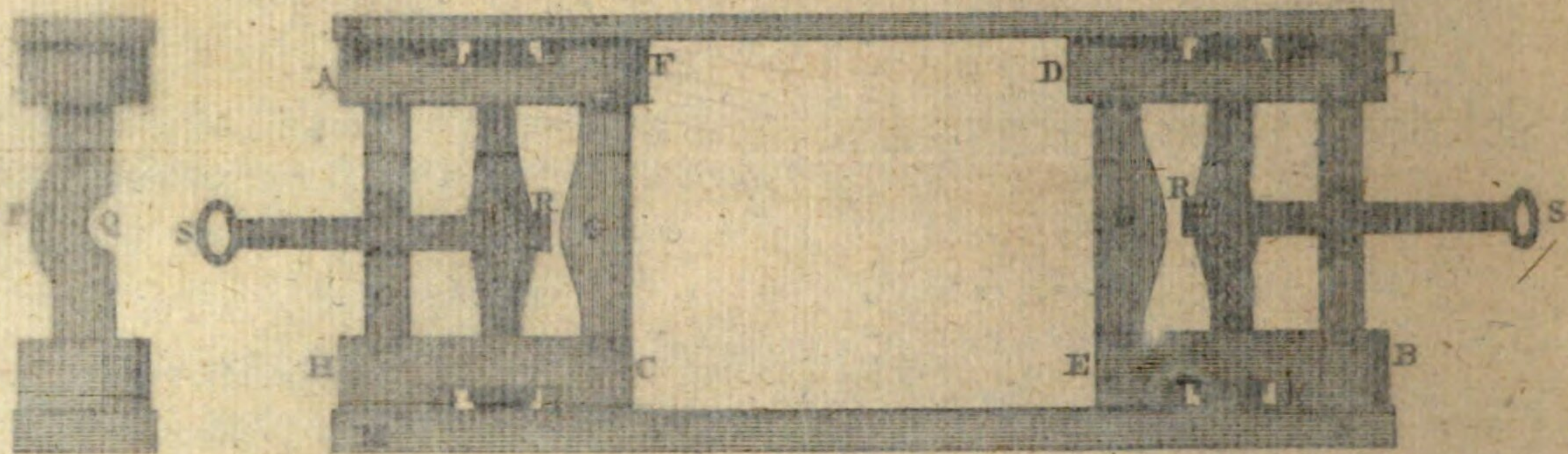


Fig. 1.

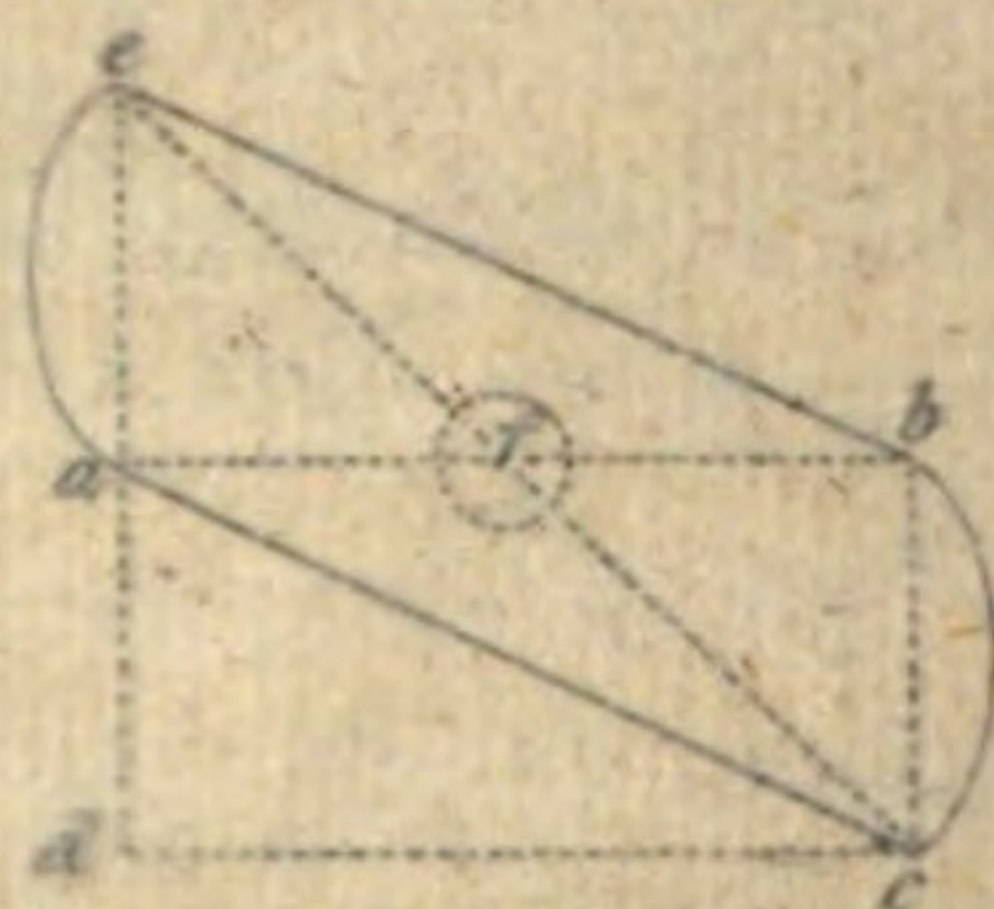


Fig. 2.

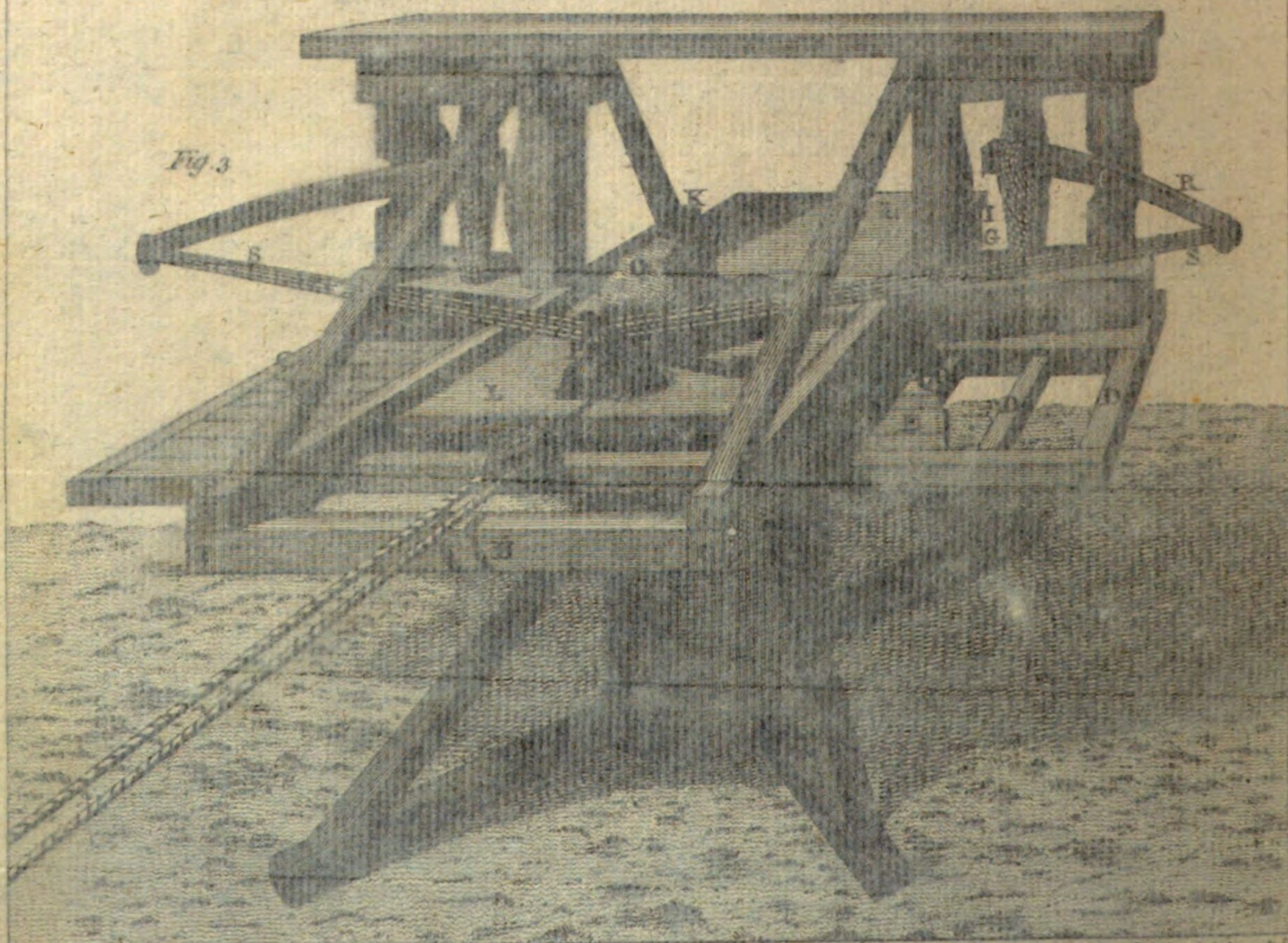


Fig. 3.

To keep it fixed and immoveable in the direction desired, it was thus managed; one end *f*, of a piece of wood, *f*, *g*, was joined to the top of the COLUMELLA by a hinge or joint, which permitted it to turn vertically, so that the other end which rested on the earth, might be placed in different situations; this piece was called ANTERIDIUM, near its upper extremity, the ANAPAUSTERIA, *b*, *i*, was joined to it by a joint, which permitted it to turn vertically. When the SYRINX was placed in the proposed direction, the lower end *g*, of the ANTERIDIUM was moved and fixed it on the earth, so that the ANAPAUSTERIA rested perpendicularly under the syrinx, the end *i*, of the ANAPAUSTERIA was then raised and fixed under the syrinx in the holes purposely made: by this means the SYRINX was rendered immoveable in its position, and then the archer discharged the arrow in the same manner as is said in the description of the Scorpion; Catapulta's were made of different sizes, but there were only two generally in use: the smallest was called TRISPITHAMAL, because it threw arrows of three spans long: the largest was called TRICUBITAL, because it shot arrows of three cubits or six spans long.

VITRUVIUS gives here the proportions of their different parts, but they are so altered and corrupted by the copyists, that they are not to be relied on. Hero says, that they can only be fixed after the experience of several tryals. Philo makes mention of several of their proportions, and differs much from Vitruvius; they however all agree in this, that is, that the proportions are regulated by the size of the holes in the SCUTULA, and that the diameters of these holes were always made equal to the ninth part of the length of the arrow that the catapulta was made to throw.

THE capitule, pl. 3, AB, fig. 1. of the balista was similar to that of the catapulta, except that the two hemitones, AE and BD, were placed at a greater distance one from the other, leaving a larger interval, CE, between the two mesostæ, G, G, which in the balista were called ANTISTÆ.

As this machine was designed for throwing large stones, it was necessary to have this large interval, which, according to Hero, ought to be a little less than double the length of the arm RS; there was besides another difference, namely, that the SCUTULÆ or PERITRETÆ AF and DI (which in the catapulta extended in piece over the two hemitones) were separated in the balista, and extended only over one hemitone, AF.

THE lower peritretæ, HC and EB, were also separated in the same manner, so that the two hemitones were not united by their peritretæ, but by two other pieces of wood, KL and MN, one of which, KL, extended over the two upper PERITRETÆ, and the other, MN, under the two bottom PERITRETÆ, being fastened to the same by tenons. The parastæ, O, were made like those of the catapulta, but had on their back part a curvilinear projection, P, opposed to the circular cavity, Q, in which was the arm, in order to strengthen it: The ANTISTÆ, G, had also a curved projection, R, called HYPOPTERNA, on the side next the arm, R, S, against which the root, R, of the arm called PTERNA rested. The grain of the wood in the PARASTÆ and ANTISTÆ was perpendicular, they had both tenons placed at their upper and under extremities, which entered into the peritretæ, and there joined them strongly, and all the angles and the joints of the capitule were strengthened with plates of iron; the peritretæ in this machine had the figure of a rhombe, in order to permit the arms to diverge so much the more; Hero thus describes them.—“In a rectangular parallelogram *a, b, c, d*, fig. 2. whose breadth is one half its length, a diagonal line being drawn *a, c*; parallel to the same draw *b e*, and *d, a*, continued to *e*: then will *a, e, b, c*, shew the figure of the PERITRETÆ the extremities *ae*, and *bc*, are enlarged in giving them a curved figure to strengthen them. Drawing afterwards, *c, e*, the intersection, *f*, of that line, with the line, *ab*, shews the middle of the peritretæ where the whole of the tonus is bored.”

PHILO

PHILO gives another rule for determining the obliquity of the rhomboidal figure of the PERITRETA; "divide," says he, "a semi-circle in eleven parts, and draw a line from the fourth division to the center, that line will show the obliquity sought." Vitruvius differs from these two authors; he says that the oblique form ought to be a sixth part of the length and a fourth of the breadth.

THE capitule of the balista being finished the other parts were added, which answered to the syrinx, diostra, &c. of the catapulta, as here after.

To the piece of wood, MN, fig. 1. under the lower PERITRETA, was joined the horizontal frame of wood, NABC, fig. 3. it consisted of divers pieces of wood, DDD, placed at equal distances cross-ways at the whole length of the capitule, they projected forwards, and were bound at their saliant extremity by a piece of transverse wood, AB; this frame was called MENSA, the Greeks called it TRAPEZA; over it was a covering of boards, EE, called, TABULA, of which the upper surface was on a level with the bottoms of the lower peritretæ: on the TABULA was placed the CLIMAX, or as Vitruvius calls it, the CLIMACICLOS, FGG, which was an horizontal frame of wood resembling a ladder, from whence it derived its name; it was composed of two long pieces, GG, & FF, joined together by many transverse pieces, H H, placed among themselves at suitable distances.

THE breadth FG, of the CLIMAX, according to Hero, was equal to the interval between the antistæ, and its length was of nineteen holes according to Philo, although it was but thirteen according to Vitruvius.

THE climax answered to the syrinx of the catapulta; it was placed on the tabula, so that it projected from it on every side; upon two long parallel pieces were placed two others, called ALÆ, II, & KK, equal in breadth and length; between the said ALÆ, and

and over the transverse pieces, HH, of the climax, was placed the diostra, LLL, which was of the same length as the climax; the climax was strongly fastened to the mensa, and strengthened by the antérides, or stays, MM, extending from the extremities of the alæ, to the upper peritretas.

THE chira, (or manucula) schasteria, &c. OP, were fixed on the diostra, in the same manner as in the catapulta, but here the crooked extremity, P, of the chira was not split into a fork, but was made like a finger, and was raised high enough above the diostra, that the cord of the bow when disengaged might seize the stone to be thrown, Q, towards the middle of its height, in order that it might act on it with more certainty and strength; with the same intention the arms, RR, were disposed in that manner, that the cord of the bow in going backwards might be moved at that height above the diostra; moreover, the cord of the bow, SS, was made broad like a girdle, and not round as in the catapulta, and had a loop, P, in the middle, which hooked upon the finger of the chira.

THESE machines were made with very strong and hard wood, and as light as could accord with these two qualities, in order that they might the more easily be transported from one place to another; for the same reason, the different pieces of which these machines were composed, might be separated one from the other, except the hemitones, which were always entire, on account of the difficulty and time necessary for preparing the tonus; the manner of doing it is described in a chapter following.

IN balistas and large catapultas, they made use of machines, that Hero calls, choenices, and Virtuvius modiolis, pl. 4, fig. 1, 2, instead of simple bars of iron, or epizyges before-mentioned; if they were small, they were made of brass, but if they were great, of some hard wood: the upper part, *a, a*, was square, and was placed on the peritreta, *c, c*, above the hole of the tonus; the upper
part

part was circular. In the middle of the circle was pierced a hole *d*, through the CHOENICIS, equal in diameter to the hole *e*, in the peritreta; joined to the inferior surface of the square part were four tenons or teeth, called ANTITORMI, *f, f*, which entred into a circular excavation, cut in the surface of the peritreta, in order to hold the CHOENICIS firmly in its place: and in the said excavation under the teeth was a plate of iron, to prevent them from penetrating into the wood, upon the upper surface of the CHOENICIS was cut a groove *g*, passing exactly through the diameter, and in that groove was placed the EPIZYGIS, *b b*; one of these CHOENICIS was put in every hole of the PERITRETA through which the TONUS was stretched, the teeth entred into the upper surface of the upper PERITRETA, and the lower surface of the lower PERITRETA; then was put about the EPIZYGES (as has before been described) the cords, *i i*, which form the TONUS. That being done, the cords were twisted by turning the choenicis, with a key of iron fig. 3, having a square collet, *a b c d*, exactly fitting the square part of the CHOENICIS. When the CHOENICIS was made of wood, the grain ought to be disposed perpendicularly, but the EPIZYGIS was made of the strongest iron, as having all the effort of the tonus to sustain.

THE proportions of the parts of a balista, are mentioned by Vitruvius, I refer the reader to him, with the advice before given in the explication of the catapulta, some information might be there obtained; but as Hero remarks, it is only after experience and trials that they ought to be fixed.

THE balista was mounted on a base; Vitruvius and Hero both mention it, without describing it; Vitruvius gives to many of its parts the same names which he made use of in speaking of the base of the catapulta; nevertheless that base could not be exactly like that of the catapulta, for the different figure of that machine, and the different manner of making it act, will not permit it.

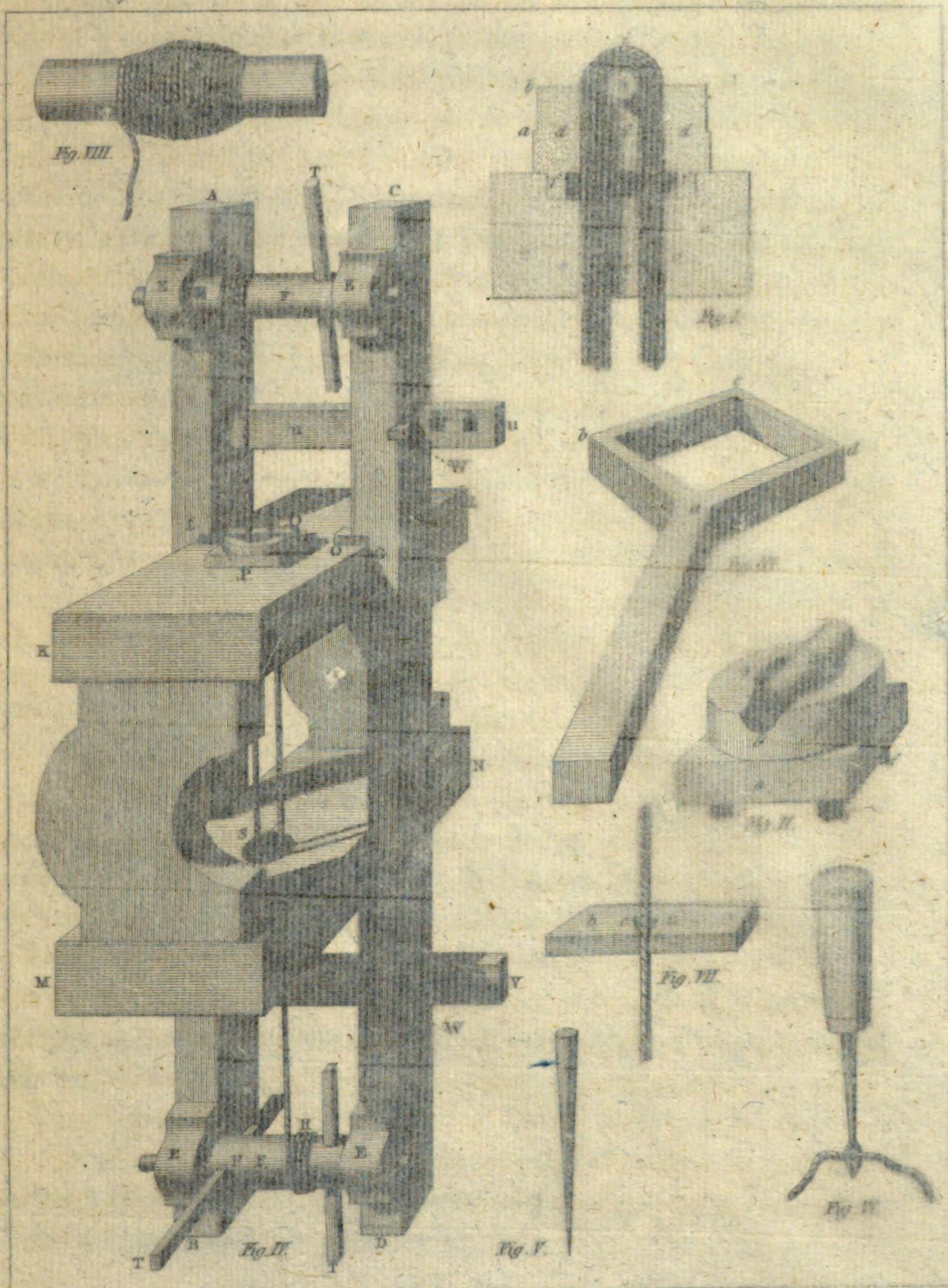
FOR the balista was not made to act by means of the SUCULA,

or any other power joined to it, as was the case in the catapulta; but detached powers of diverse constructions were used, differing among themselves according as the force of the machine or other circumstances required. Vitruvius remarks, that some were put in action with the *SUCULA* and levers; others by means of the pulley, and others by combinations of wheels and cogs, placed at proper distances and convenient situations.

THE diameter of the hole of the *TONUS*, pierced in the *PERITRETA*, was proportional to the weight of the stone to be thrown by the balista, when that was determined, all its members and parts were regulated by the diameter of that hole, as was practised in the catapulta. Several authors make mention of the sizes of the holes corresponding with different weights, but they differ greatly in their calculations.

THE following method was observed in preparing the *TONUS*, that is to say, the combination of twisted cords, from the elasticity of which was derived the force of these military machines.

FOR this purpose the machine, plate 4, fig. 4, was made use of, it was called *ENTONIUM*. It consisted of two parallel posts, *AB*, and *CD*, so joined by the two traverses *UU*, and *VV*, as to form a rectangular frame, capable of receiving into its cavity either the capitule of the catapulta, or the hemitone, *KLMN*, of the balista to which it was applied. The extremities of these two traverses passed through the posts, and had holes, *X*, in which, when the hemitone was inserted in the frame, wedges, *W*, were driven in, and by these means the hemitone was held firmly fixed in the frame; there was also cut a notch, *GH*, at the inner side of each post, to receive the hemitone, which was fixed in it with wedges, *OO*, so that it could not move; at each extremity of the two posts, there was an axis, *FF*, the ends of which turned in the cheeks *E*, which were fixed to the posts. The said capitule or hemitone, *KLMN*, being thus placed between the posts with the two *PERITRETÆ* towards the two axels, and the
choe-



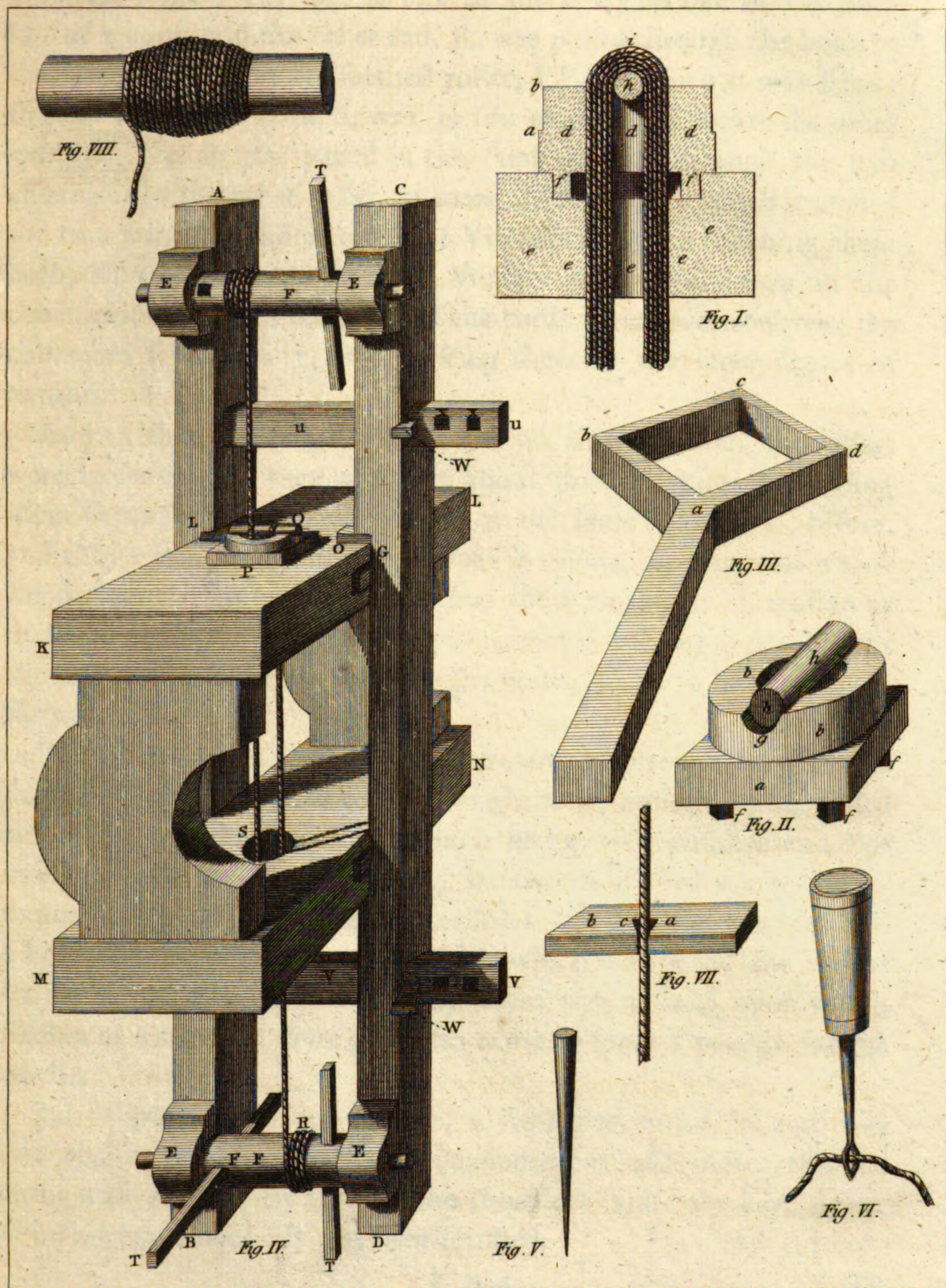
Engraved by J. B. B. 1734.

or any other power joined to it, as was the case in the catapulta; but detached powers of diverse constructions were used, differing among themselves according as the force of the machine or other circumstances required. Vitruvius remarks, that some were put in action with the *SUCULA* and levers; others by means of the pulley, and others by combinations of wheels and cogs, placed at proper distances and convenient situations.

THE diameter of the hole of the *TONUS*, pierced in the *PERITRETA*, was proportional to the weight of the stone to be thrown by the balista, when that was determined, all its members and parts were regulated by the diameter of that hole, as was practised in the catapulta. Several authors make mention of the sizes of the holes corresponding with different weights, but they differ greatly in their calculations.

THE following method was observed in preparing the *TONUS*, that is to say, the combination of twisted cords, from the elasticity of which was derived the force of these military machines.

FOR this purpose the machine, plate 4, fig. 4, was made use of, it was called *ENTONIUM*. It consisted of two parallel posts, *AB*, and *CD*, so joined by the two traverses *UU*, and *VV*, as to form a rectangular frame, capable of receiving into its cavity either the capitule of the catapulta, or the hemitone, *KLMN*, of the balista to which it was applied. The extremities of these two traverses passed through the posts, and had holes, *X*, in which, when the hemitone was inserted in the frame, wedges, *W*, were driven in, and by these means the hemitone was held firmly fixed in the frame; there was also cut a notch, *GH*, at the inner side of each post, to receive the hemitone, which was fixed in it with wedges, *OO*, so that it could not move; at each extremity of the two posts, there was an axis, *FF*, the ends of which turned in the cheeks *E*, which were fixed to the posts. The said capitule or hemitone, *KLMN*, being thus placed between the posts with the two *PERITRETÆ* towards the two axels, and the
choe-



Collected by J. H. Foster July 29, 1738.

choenices or modiolis, P, being placed in the holes, as has before been described ; there was tied to one of the epizyges one of the ends Q, of a cord, and the other end, R, was passed through the holes of the two choenices at the farthest roller, FF, to which it was fixed ; the end of another cord, S, was, in like manner fastened to the other epizygis, and it was passed in the same manner through the two choenices to the other roller, by means of levers, T, which stretched the two cords, R and S, until (as Vitruvius says) in sounding them both, they sounded in unison. Wedges were then driven in the choenices, to hinder the parts of the cords which were between the choenices from sliding, and to keep them in the same degree of tension.

AFTER that, the parts of the cords which were about the rollers were loosened, and they were put about the EPIZYGIS by passing them through the two choenices, in the same manner as before, and they were fastened to their opposite rollers, by means of which the cords were stretched till they had the same degree of tension as those preceding ; this process was repeated till the holes of the choenices were entirely filled by the cords, so as to have no room for more.

WHEN the holes of the choenices were nearly full, and it became difficult to pass the cords through them, an iron point, called cestra, fig. 5, was forced in, which being well polished and dipt in oil in order to open a passage, afterwards a cord was passed by means of a polished iron needle, called RAMPHIS, fig. 6, which had a hole near its point through which which was passed the end of the cord. At the other extremity there was a head upon which strokes of a hammer were given, in order to force a passage for the needle.

THIS operation being finished, a small portion of the cord was tied about the tonus, and the remainder cut off. After this the tonus was twisted, by turning the choenices with the key, fig. 3, as before explained. It was then finished.

To fix the cord in the hole of the choeniceis, to hinder it from sliding and losing its tension, the peristomis, fig. 7, was used; it was a piece of wood of the length of two or three palms, having a groove, *a*, in its side, big enough to receive the cord. The PERISTOMIS was placed over the choeniceis, and the cord was placed in the groove, where it was fixed by the wedge *b*. The cord was ordinarily prepared before-hand, and fitted for the purpose, it was rolled about a wooden roller called EPISTOMIS, fig. 8.

PERAULT observes, among his remarks, that it is difficult to comprehend, how cords made of hair, which were eight inches thick, could give a sound distinguishable by the ear. This remark arises from a false idea, which he had formed of these machines. He imagined that Vitruvius said it was the entire tonus, or the assemblage of twisted cords, which yielded the sound; instead of which it is every separate cord, the assemblage of which makes the TONUS: what has been said before explains it sufficiently.

WHAT was sought in this operation was, that every cord of the TONUS should have the same degree of tension, and that the two TONUS of the capitule should be equal in force: for had one been stronger than the other, the arm it held would have had a stronger recoil than the other, and it would have acted on the missile, or thing to be thrown, sooner than the other, by means of which the missile would have been impelled by the force of one arm only, and would also have been projected with an oblique direction.

THE cords which formed the TONUS were commonly made with the sinews or tendons of animals; those of the legs of the deer kind, and of the neck of a bull were particularly recommended; but they oftenest preferred cords made with women's hair, and considered them as the strongest.

WHEN from long use the elasticity of the TONUS was diminished, it was re-established to a certain degree, by turning the choenices with the key, in the same manner as was done in forming it at first.

THE ancients had balistas and catapultas, which were of constructions different from those we have been describing. Bito has given a description of two of these machines, and says, that it was often necessary to diversify their form, according to place, different customs, and other circumstances. Philo also makes mention of several alterations and corrections he had made in the construction which was most commonly followed.

THE catapulta that Lipsius found in the arsenal of Brussels, although it much resembled the species above described, nevertheless differed in some particulars, and had some of the corrections which Philo mentions. The description found in Vegetius and Marcellinus, who lived some years after Vitruvius, prove that during that interval of time, the forms as well as the names of those military machines had undergone many changes. These authors call the machine which lanced arrows and darts BALISTA, and those which threw stones ONAGER, after the animal of that name, of whom it is reported, that he throws stones with his feet at the hunters when pursuing him. Marcellinus also says, that the same machine was called a scorpion, because, like the insect of that name, it had its sting always raised.

THE power of these machines, according to what the ancients relate, must have been very great: Athenæus speaks of a catapulta, which was only one foot long, and threw an arrow to the distance of half a mile. It is said, that others could throw javelins from one side of the Danube to the other. Balistas threw great beams of wood, lances of twelve cubits in length, and stones that weighed 360 pounds. Polybius makes mention of stones which were thrown by balistas to hinder vessels from entering into the port. Josephus has likewise related several examples of the power of these machines; he says, they beat down the battlements and corners of towers, and overthrew whole files of soldiers even to the rear rank; in fine, many other ancients have likewise spoken of their prodigious effects; I refer the reader to those authors for a more extensive

tenfive knowledge of them ; my design here being only to describe the form and construction of these ancient machines of war.

THUS far Mr. Newton. Lieutenant General Melville, an indefatigable and successful investigator of the military science and machines of the ancients, has by dint of a long and careful consideration of the description given by Marcellinus and others, aided by a knowledge of mechanicks, discovered the construction of the machine above mentioned called the onager, a model of it has been made by Mr. Wenlow, a delineation of which is here given, plate 4, of ancient artillery, that will sufficiently explain its size and structure ; on a trial, it has answered very well, considering that it is strung with common cords only. (c)

THESE were the machines used by the Greeks and Romans, and afterwards by our ancestors even after the invention of gunpowder, and its application to cannon ; some of them retained their original names, as the balista and catapula, though these were also applied to other engines ; (d) indeed, as most of the writers by whom these machines have been mentioned, were either monks or lawyers, who could only know them by hearsay, and consequently had but a very imperfect idea of them ; it is not to be wondered at that they often confounded their names and properties.

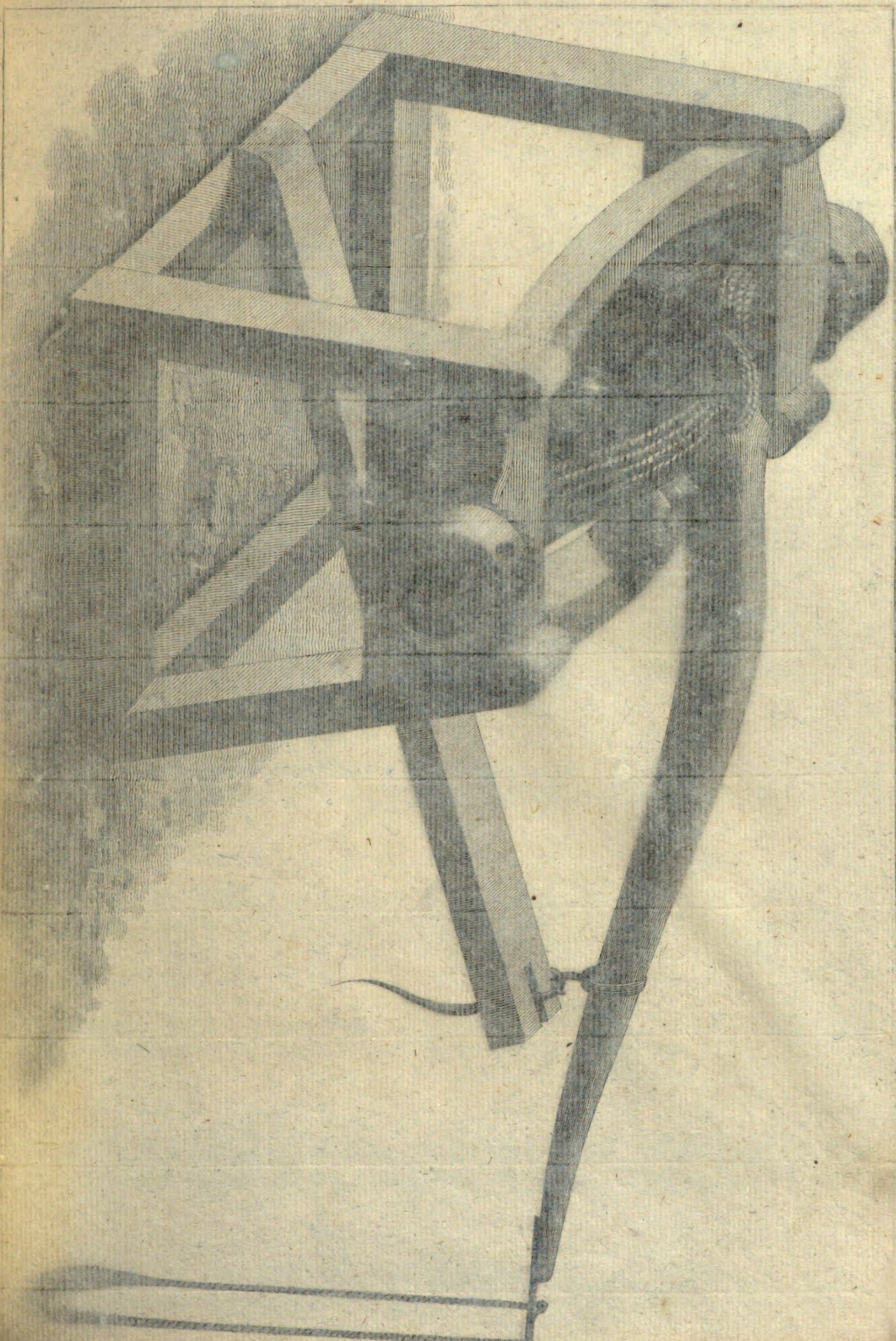
THE catalogue of projectile machines in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, exclusive of the balista, catapulta, onager, and scorpion, were the mangonel, the trebuchet, the petrary, the robinet, the mate-griffon, the bricolle, the bugle or bible, the espringal, the mata-funda, the ribaudequin, engine a verge, and the war wolf ;

(c) ANOTHER machine of the catapulta kind, for throwing stones was made for the garrison of Gibraltar, but it did not answer so well as the Onager above-mentioned ; the cost was 137 pounds, though the artist that made it, generously relinquished all profit : it threw a ball of iron of six pounds.

(d) THE cross bow was called in Latin, balista, and sometimes manubalista. The term catapulta was used in our ancient law Latin, to signify a sling.

many

St. George's



tensive knowledge of them; my design here being only to describe the form and construction of these ancient machines of war.

Thus far Mr. Newton. Lieutenant General Melville, an indefatigable and successful investigator of the military science and machines of the ancients, has by dint of a long and careful consideration of the description given by Marcellinus and others, aided by a knowledge of mechanicks, discovered the construction of the machine above mentioned called the onager, a model of it has been made by Mr. Wenlow, a delineation of which is here given, plate 4, of ancient artillery, that will sufficiently explain its size and structure, on a trial, it has answered very well, considering that it is strung with common cords only. (c)

These were the machines used by the Greeks and Romans, and afterwards by the Europeans even after the invention of gunpowder, and its application to cannon; some of them retained their original names, as the balista and catapula, though these were also applied to other engines; (d) indeed, as most of the writers by whom these machines have been mentioned, were either monks or lawyers, who could only know them by hearsay, and consequently had but a very imperfect idea of them; it is not to be wondered at that they often confounded their names and properties.

The catalogue of projectile machines in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, exclusive of the balista, catapulta, onager, and scorpion, were the mangonel, the trebuchet, the petrari, the robinet, the marte-granon, the bricole, the buglé or bible, the espringal, the mata-fuoco, the mabadequin, engine a verge, and the war wolf;

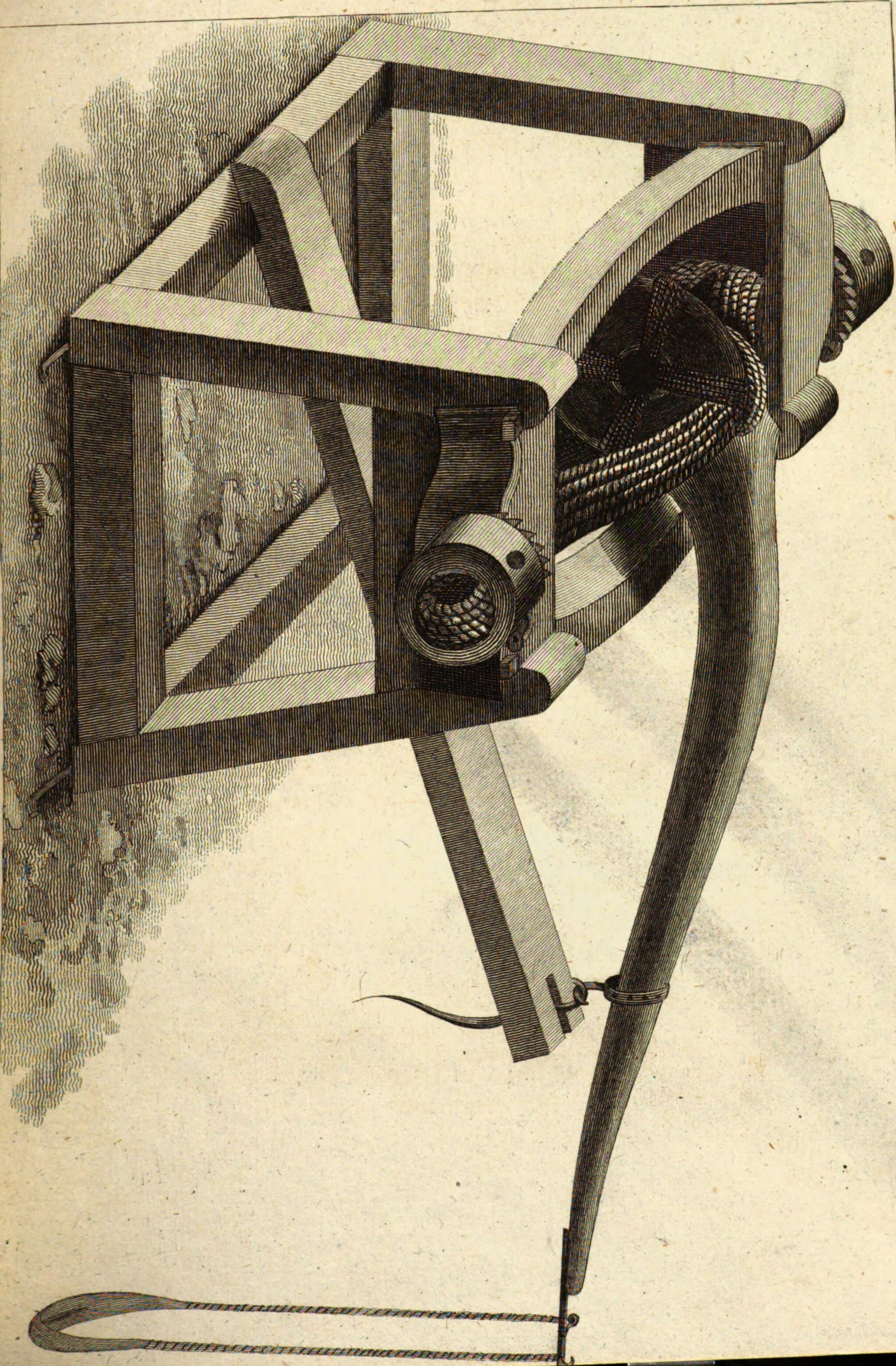
(c) Another machine of the catapulta kind, for throwing stones was made for the garrison of Constanter, but it did not answer so well as the Onager above-mentioned; the rod was six pounds, though the artist that made it, generously relinquished all profit: it threw a ball of iron of six pounds.

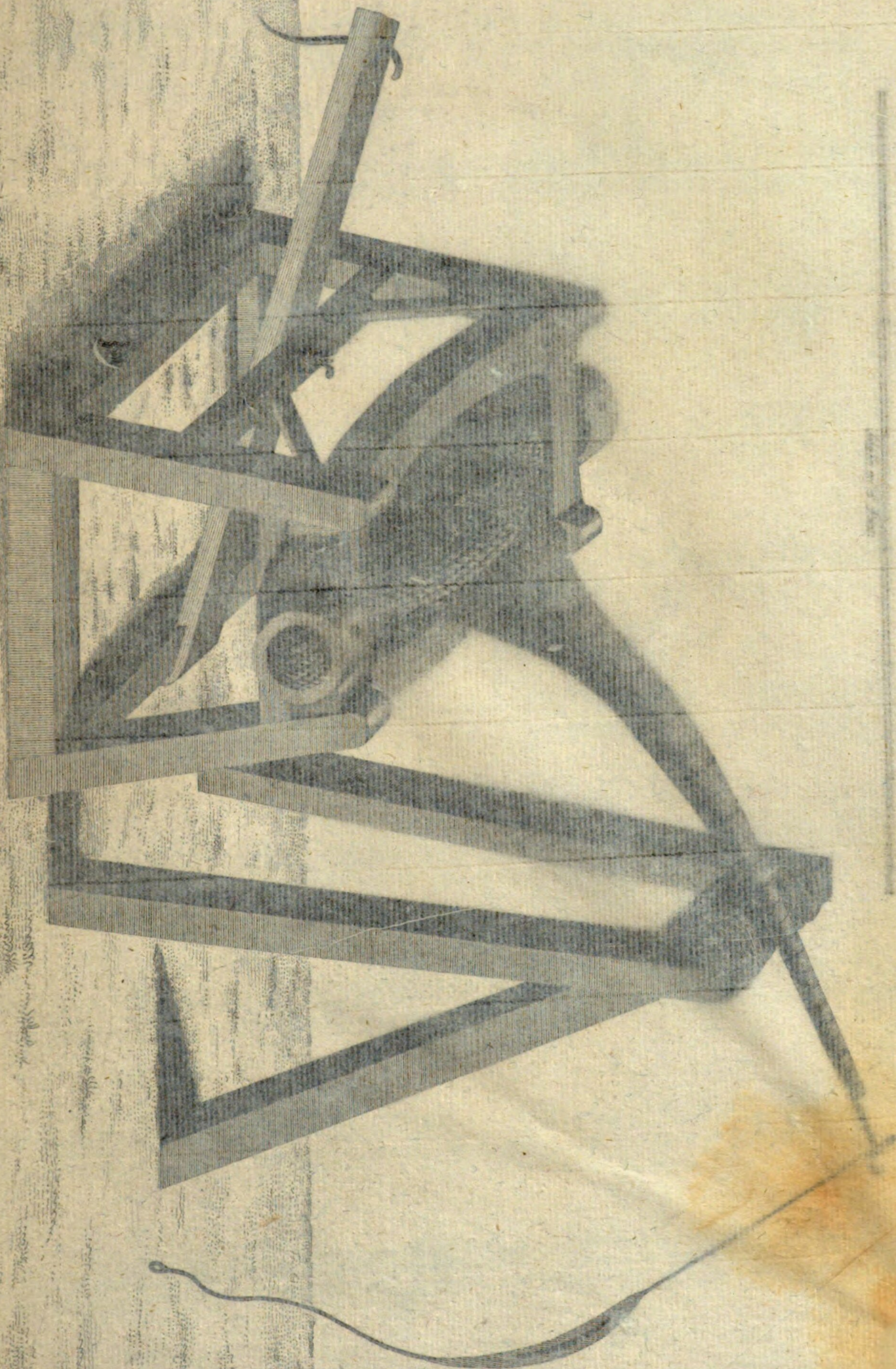
(d) The cross bow was called in Latin, balista, and sometimes manubalista. The term catapulta was used in our ancient law. Latin, to signify a sling.

Sparrow

ONAGER. Plt.

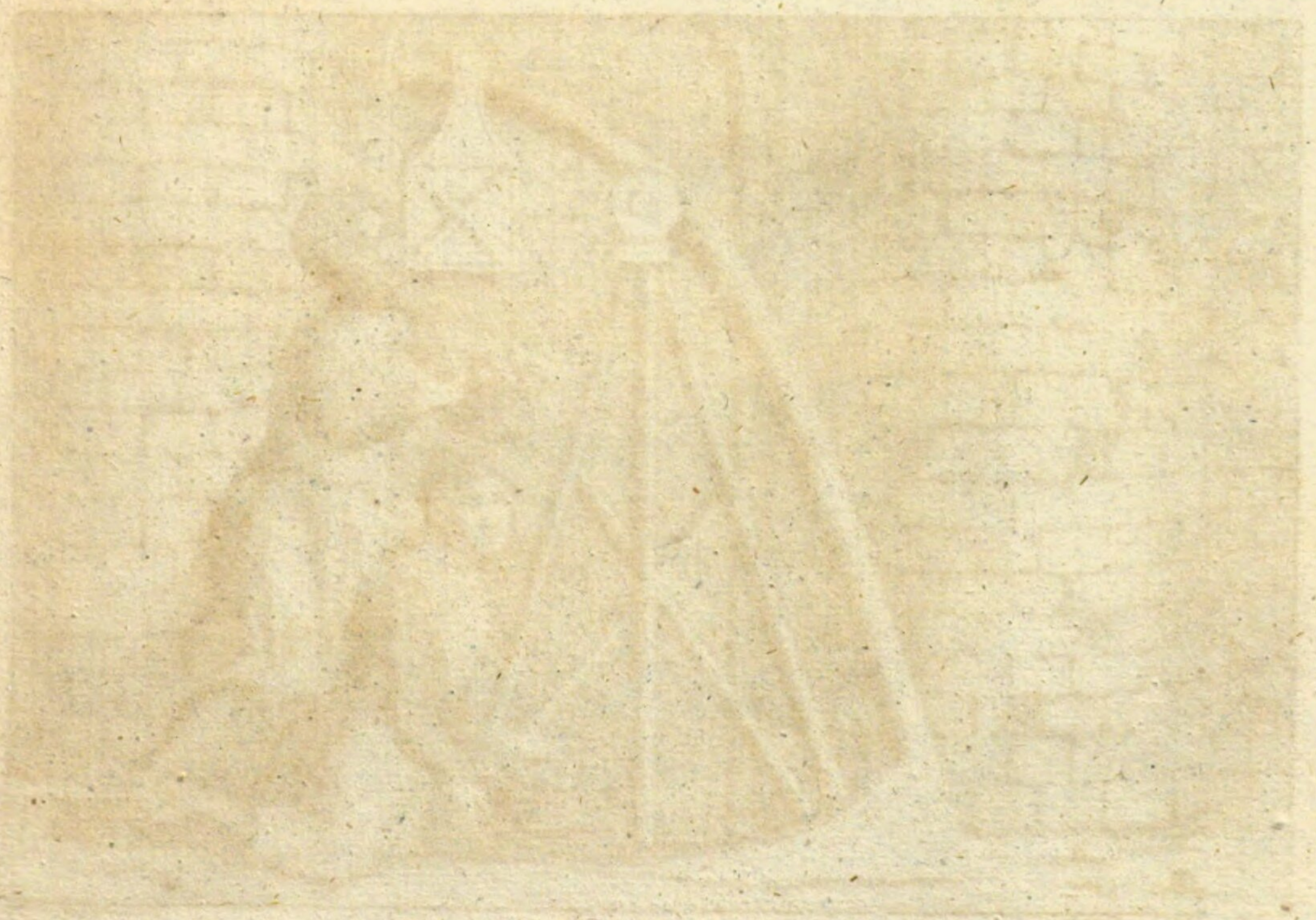
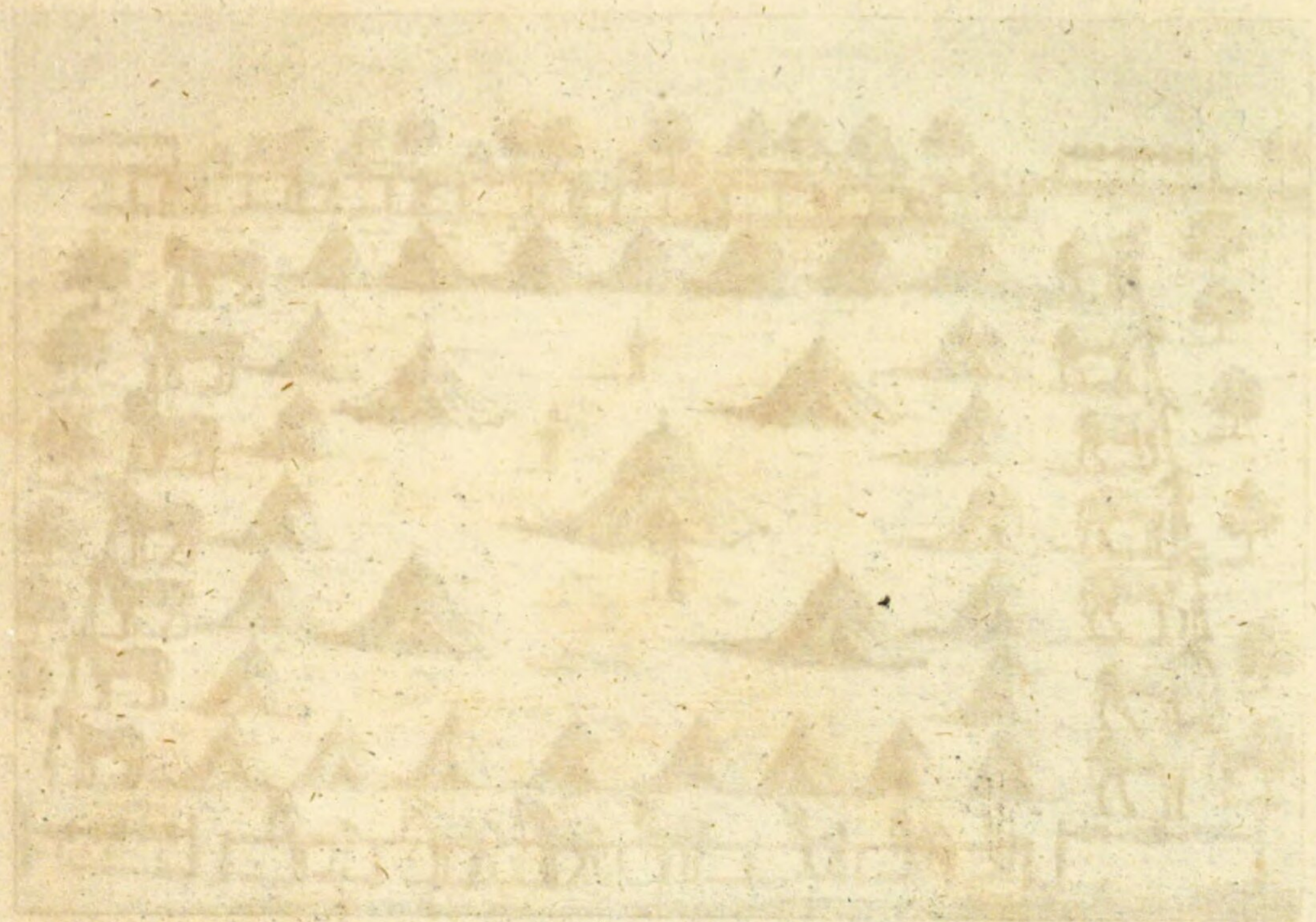
Published Aug. 13. 1788 by J. Cooper



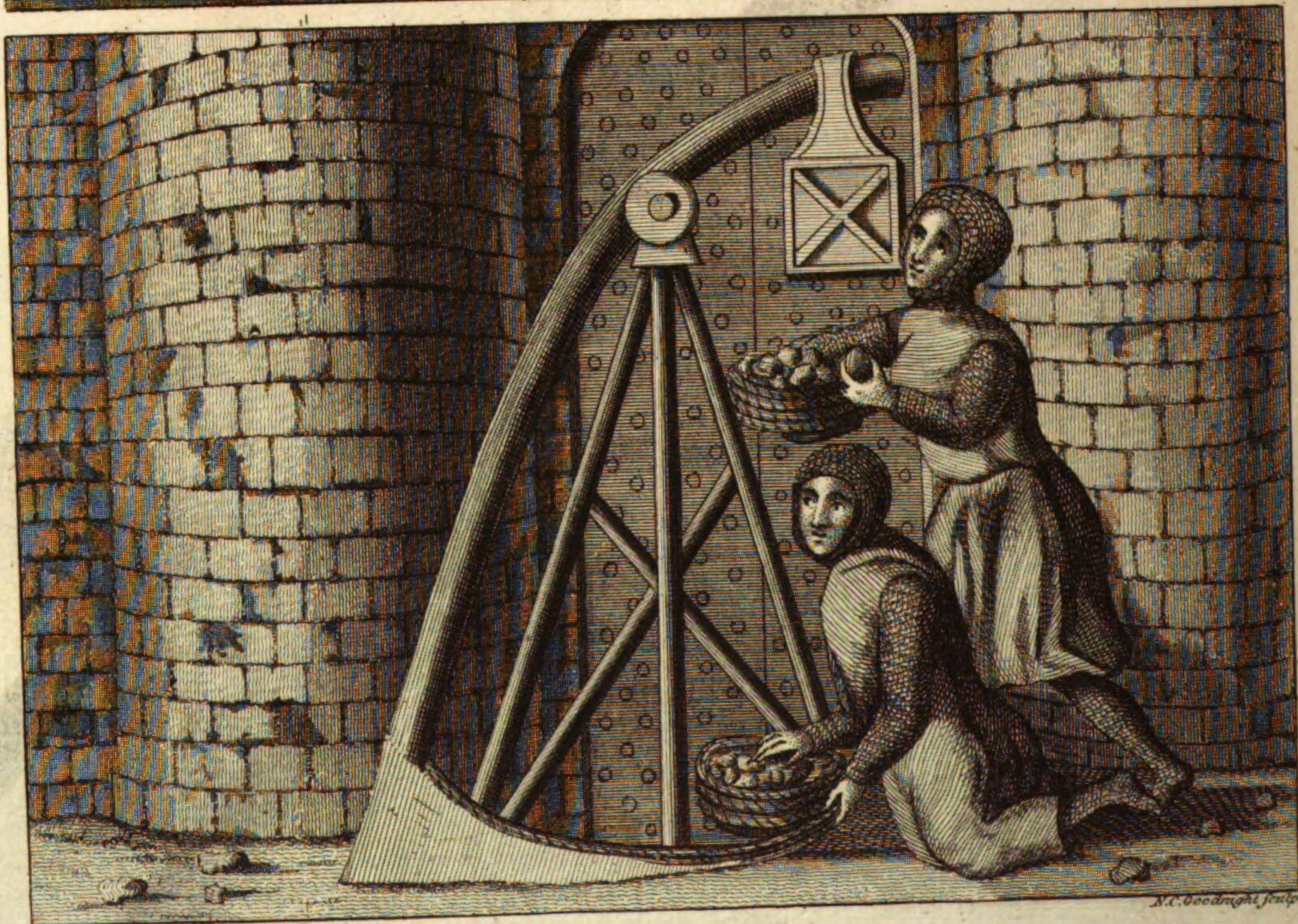
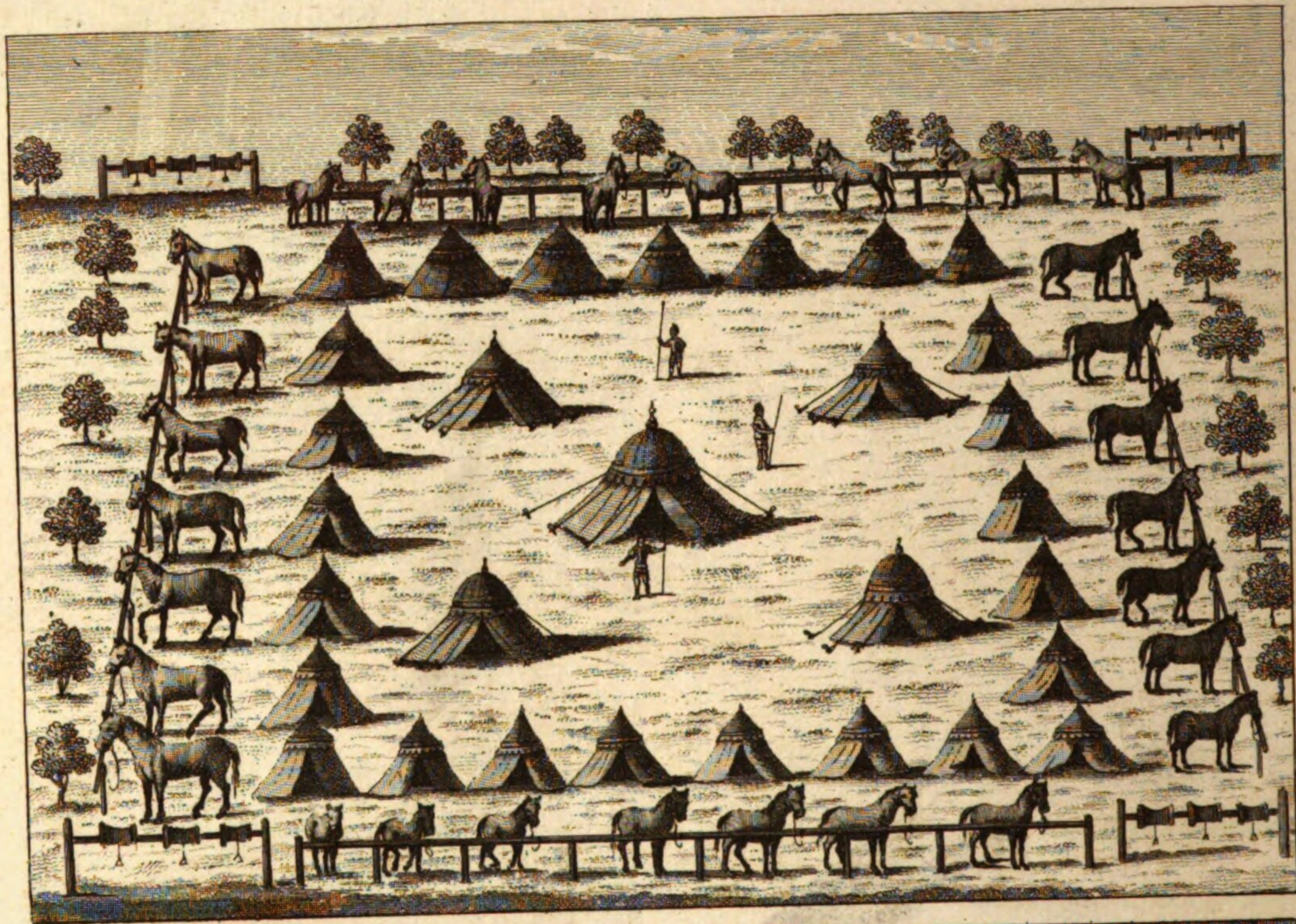


A vertical diagram of a ladder with rungs and a central vertical line. The ladder consists of a series of horizontal rungs connected by two vertical side rails. A single vertical line runs down the center of the ladder, passing through the middle of each rung. This diagram is part of a larger set of illustrations on a page, likely from a technical or scientific manual.





The Ruyters manner of Lodging.

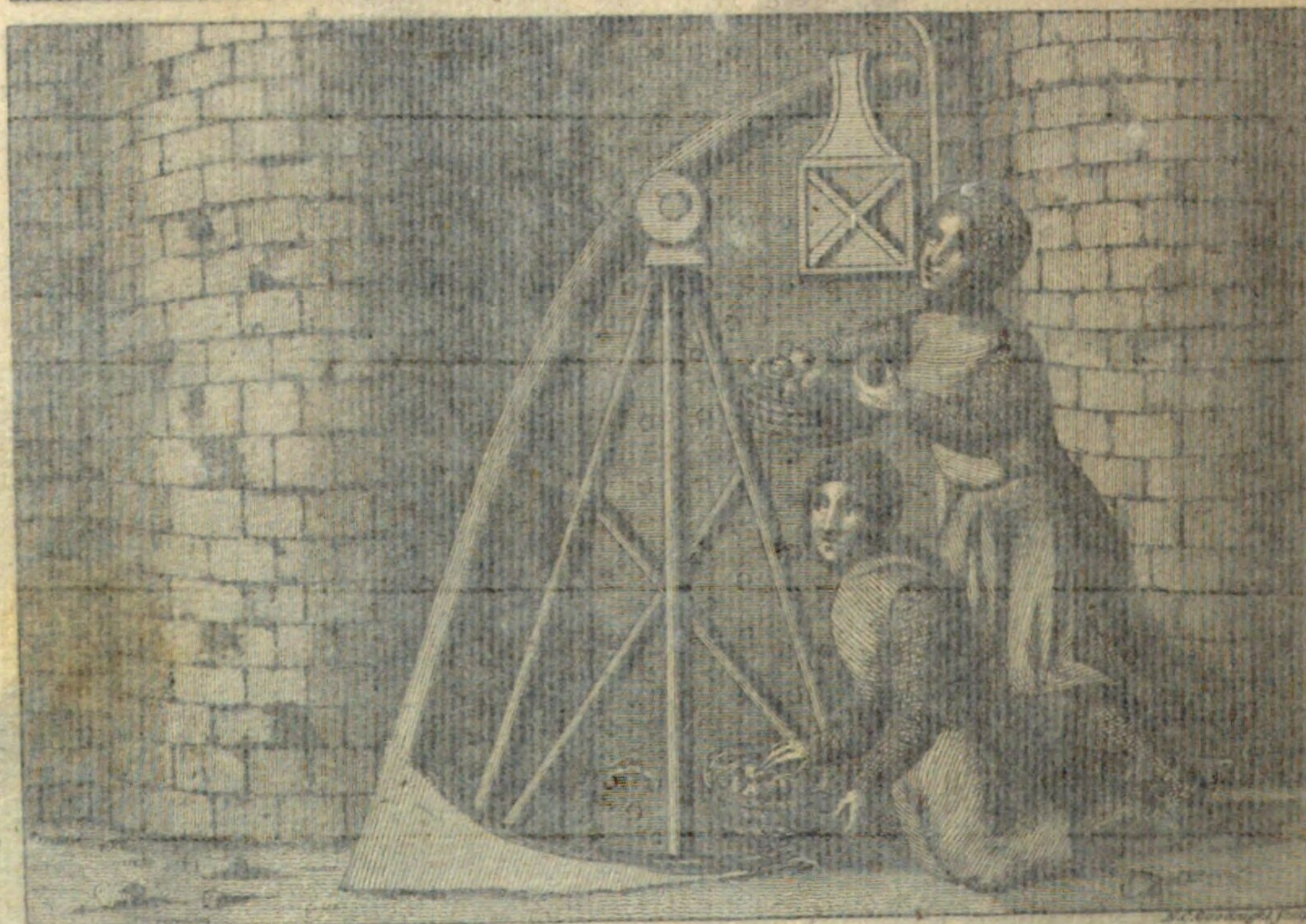


Pub. & Inv. 1788. by J. Hooper.

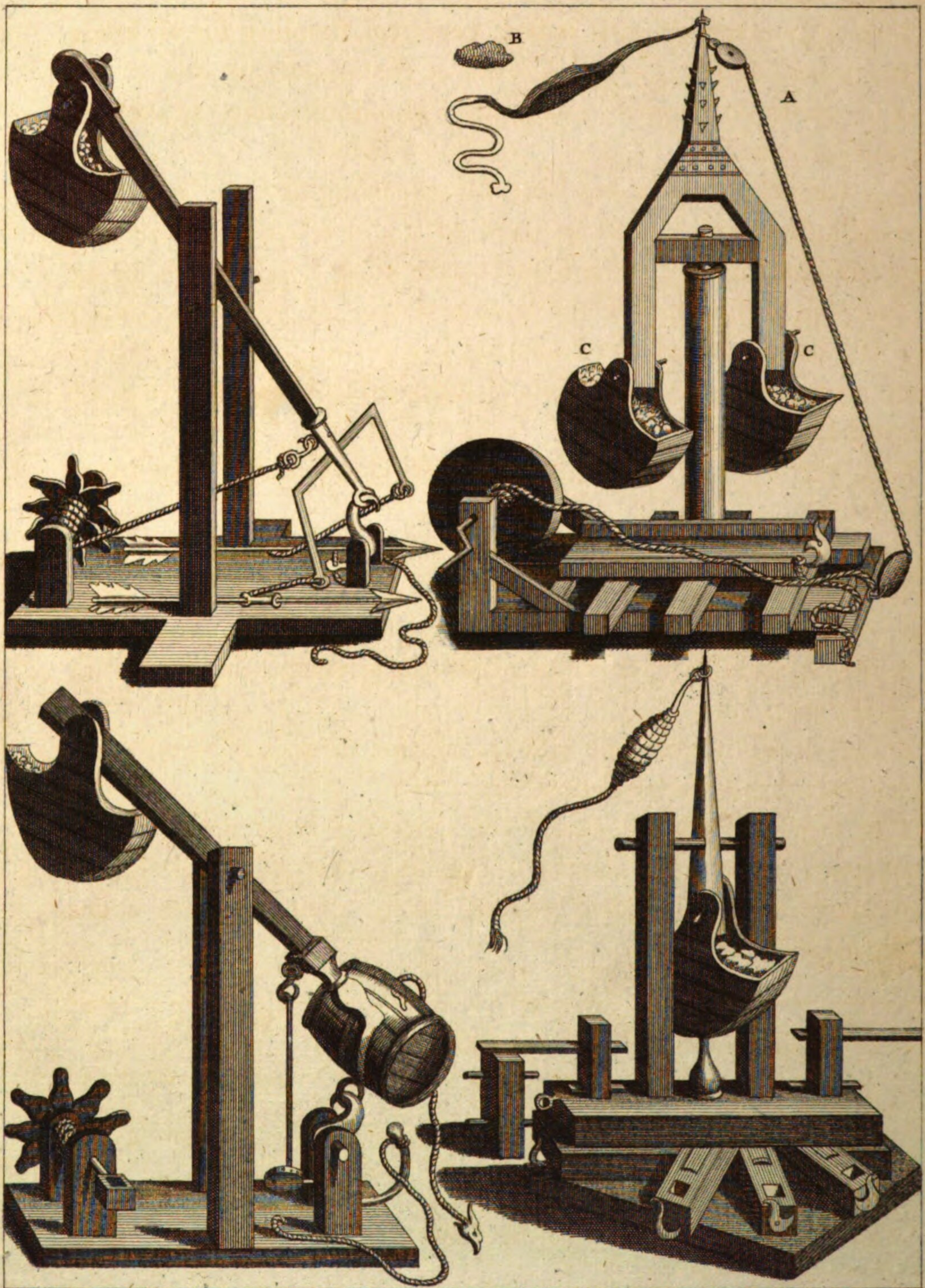
N.C. Goodnight sculp.

A Trebuchet from an Ancient carving in Ivory.

The Ancient manner of Lodging.



A Trebuchet from an Ancient carving in Ivory.



Published by S. Hooper May 23^d 1788

MACHINES FOR THROWING DARTS AND STONES.

many of these continued in use after the introduction of bombards and cannon.

THE term mangona is, it is said, generical, standing for all kinds of machines, and was a Greek word of that import, in use in the time of the lower empire; mangonel was a diminutive, applied to the smaller machines.

THE trebuchet was a machine for throwing stones, for which purpose a sling was sometimes fixed to it; it acted by means of a great weight fastened to the short arm of a lever, which being let fall, raised the end of the long arm with a great velocity; a singular delineation of the trebuchet is given in this work, taken from an ancient carving in ivory, supposed to be of the time of Edward II.

THE petrary was also a stone-throwing machine, as its name imports.

THE robinet and mate-griffon threw both darts and stones. (e)

THE bricolle, according to Frontinus, threw darts, called, *carreaux*, and in English quarrels, from their solid square pyramidal heads of iron; this is said to have acted by the same moving power as the trebuchet. (f)

BEUGLES or bibles were also engines for throwing large stones, as we learn from an ancient poem. (g)

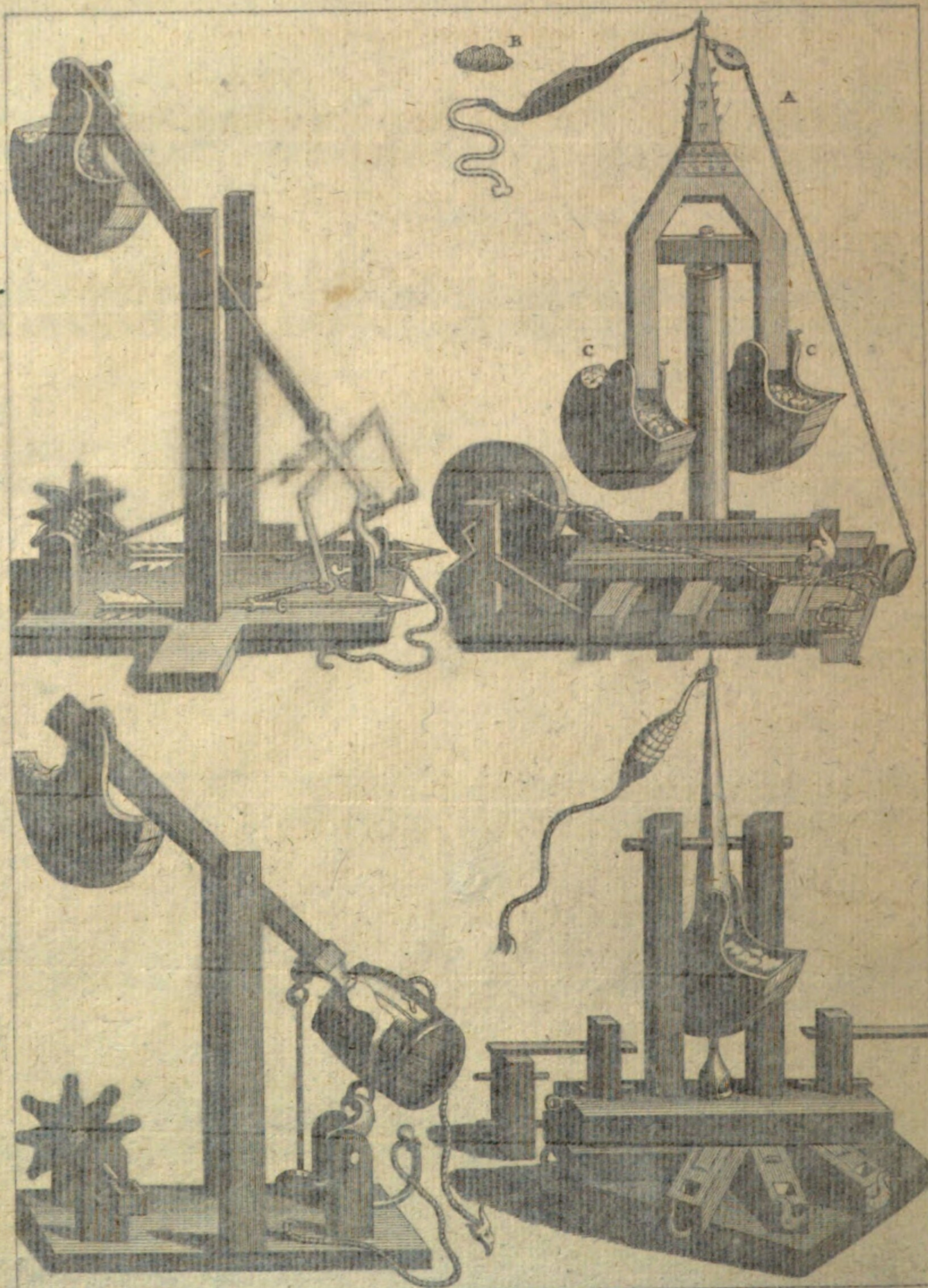
THE espringal was calculated for throwing large darts, called, *muchettæ*; sometimes instead of feathers winged with brags; these darts were also called *viretons*, from their whirling about in the air.

(e) MATE-GRIFFON, the destroyer or terror of the Greeks.

(f) SEE the plate of different machines for throwing stones and darts, constructed on this principle.

(g) Et pierres grans, & les perrieres,
Et les bibles qui sont trop fieres;
Gétent trop manuellement.

FROM the Romance of Claris in the French king's library, No. 7534. See a large extract in the appendix, No. 1.



Published by S. Hooper May 23 1788

MACHINES FOR THROWING DARTS AND STONES.

many of these continued in use after the introduction of bombards and cannon.

THE term mangona is, it is said, generical, standing for all kinds of machines, and was a Greek word of that import, in use in the time of the lower empire; mangonel was a diminutive, applied to the smaller machines.

THE trebuchet was a machine for throwing stones, for which purpose a sling was sometimes fixed to it; it acted by means of a great weight fastened to the short arm of a lever, which being let fall, raised the end of the long arm with a great velocity; a singular delineation of the trebuchet is given in this work, taken from an ancient carving in ivory, supposed to be of the time of Edward II.

THE petrary was also a stone-throwing machine, as its name imports.

THE robinet and mate-griffon threw both darts and stones. (e)

THE bricolle, according to Froissart, shot darts, called, carreaux, and in English quarrels, from their solid square pyramidical heads of iron; this is said to have acted by the same moving power as the trebuchet. (f)

BEUGLES or bibles were also engines for throwing large stones, as we learn from an ancient poem. (g)

THE espringal was calculated for throwing large darts, called, muchettæ; sometimes instead of feathers winged with brass; these darts were also called viretons, from their whirling about in the air.

(e) MATE-GRIFFON, the destroyer or terror of the Greeks.

(f) SEE the plate of different machines for throwing stones and darts, constructed on this principle.

(g) Et pierres grans, & les perrieres,
Et les bibles qui sont trop fieres;
Gétent trop manusement.

FROM the Romance of Claris in the French king's library, No. 7534. See a large extract in the appendix, No. 1.

THE matafunda; this was a stone-throwing machine, probably by means of a sling; some derive its name from the words, funda and mactare, sometimes written, matare, i. e. a murdering sling.

THE ribaudequin was a large kind of cross bowe.

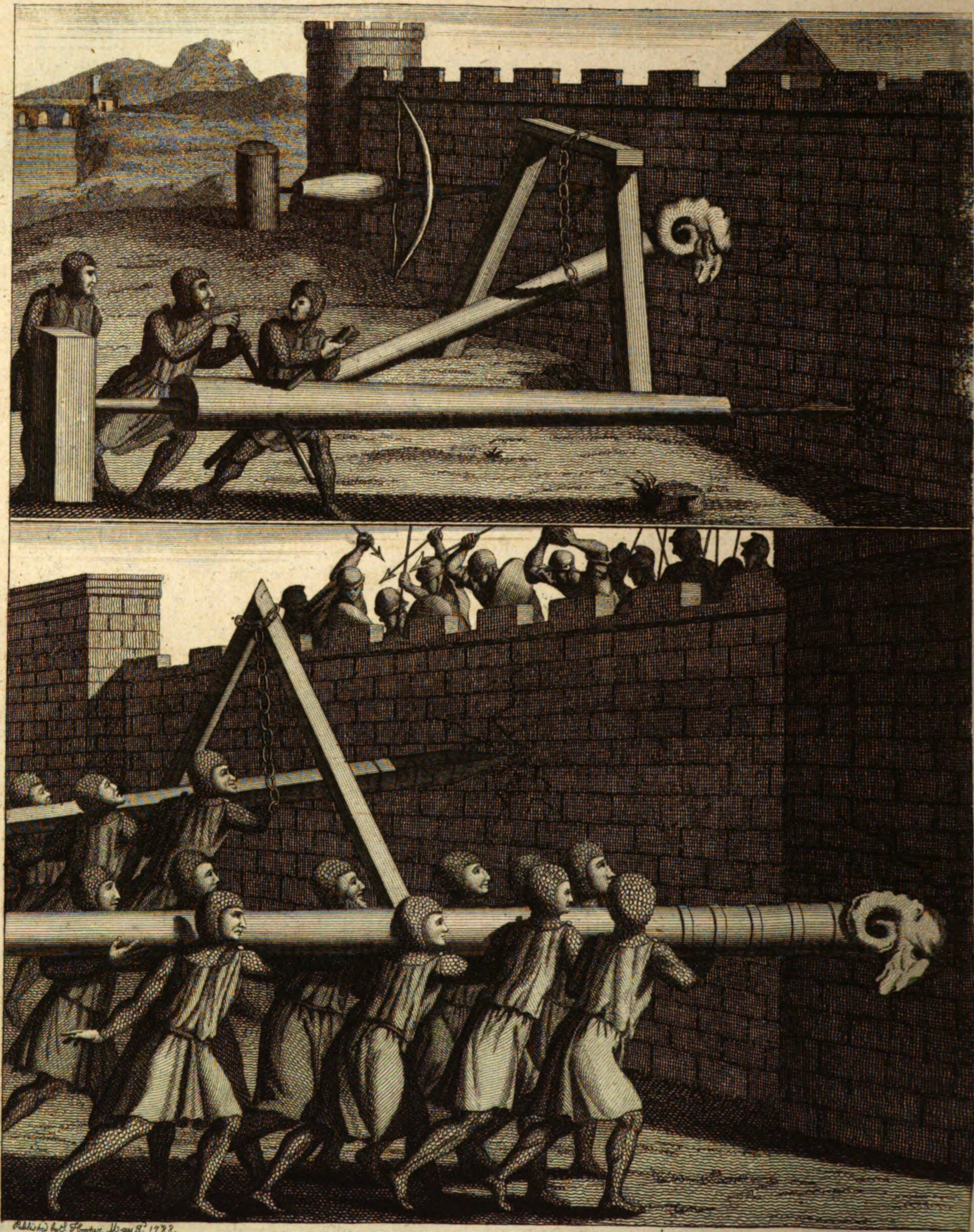
THE war wolf is very differently described by different writers; Procopius makes it a kind of portcullis, or rather a harrow for defending a gate; Mathew of Westminster, and Camden, a machine for throwing stones. See both their descriptions in the note; (h) possibly they might be different machines under the same name.

OF the engine a verge, there is no particular description; but from a passage in the history of Charles VII. of France, quoted by father Daniel; we learn that it was a projectile machine, that it was used with canon, and that it remained in use after the other machines were laid aside. "Lesquels engins a verge & bombardes,

(h) AT the gates they set up *wolves* made thus: they set two beams from the ground reaching to the battlements, and laying chequer wise pieces of timber wrought, some upright, and some cross; they joint them so that the mortissing holes meete one another; and before each joint sticks out a pointed piece of wood like a thick spurr, and fastening the cross timbers to another beam, which from the top, reaches half way down; they lay the beams flat long upon the gates, and an enemy approaching, men above lay hold of the higher ends of the beams, and thrust them down, which falling suddenly among the assailants with those wooden points sticking out, kill all they light on. *Procopius History of the Gothic Wars, book 1. p. 27.* Probably there was a chain or cord to draw it back after it had taken effect.

THE war-wolf is thus mentioned from Mat. Westm. by Camden in his Remains, speaking of K. Edward I. "At the siege of Stivenen, where he with another engine, named the war-wolfe, pierced with one stone, and cut as even as a thread, two vauntmures; as he did before at the siege of Brehin, where Thomas Maule, the Scotsman, scoffed at the English artillerie, with wiping the walls with his handkerchief, until both he and the walls were wiped away with a shot." Again in his Britannia relating to the siege of Bedford: "concerning these mangonels, petreries, trabucces, bricoles, espringolds, and what our ancestors called the war-wolf, out of which, before the invention of bombs, they threw great stones, with so much force as to break open strong gates, concerning these (I say) I have several things to add, if they were not foreign to my purpose." *Jussit rex arietem fabricari, quem Greci nicantam vocant, quasi vincentem omnia, et lupum belli. Verum aries indecens, et incompositus parum aut nihil profuit: lupus autem belli, minus sumptuosus inclusis plus nocuit. Mat. Westm. Ann. 1304.*

dit



Published by J. Sturges, May 3^d 1788.

BATTERING MACHINES.

dit l'historien, jettoient & tiroient nuit & jour sans, cesse contre ce chateau."

Of the vast force of these machines surprising stories are related, though from the construction of our ancient castles, it does not seem as if their range was very great, since many of our most important fortresses are commanded by hills within four or five hundred yards of them, an instance of which may be seen in the castle of Dover, once deemed the key of this kingdom, and also in those of Corfe and Guildford; Monsieur Joly de Mezeray says, the greatest range of a mangonel was 5 stadia, or 1042 yards, but then this was at an elevation; these machines not only threw darts and large stones, but even the bodies of men and horses; instances of both are mentioned by Froissart.

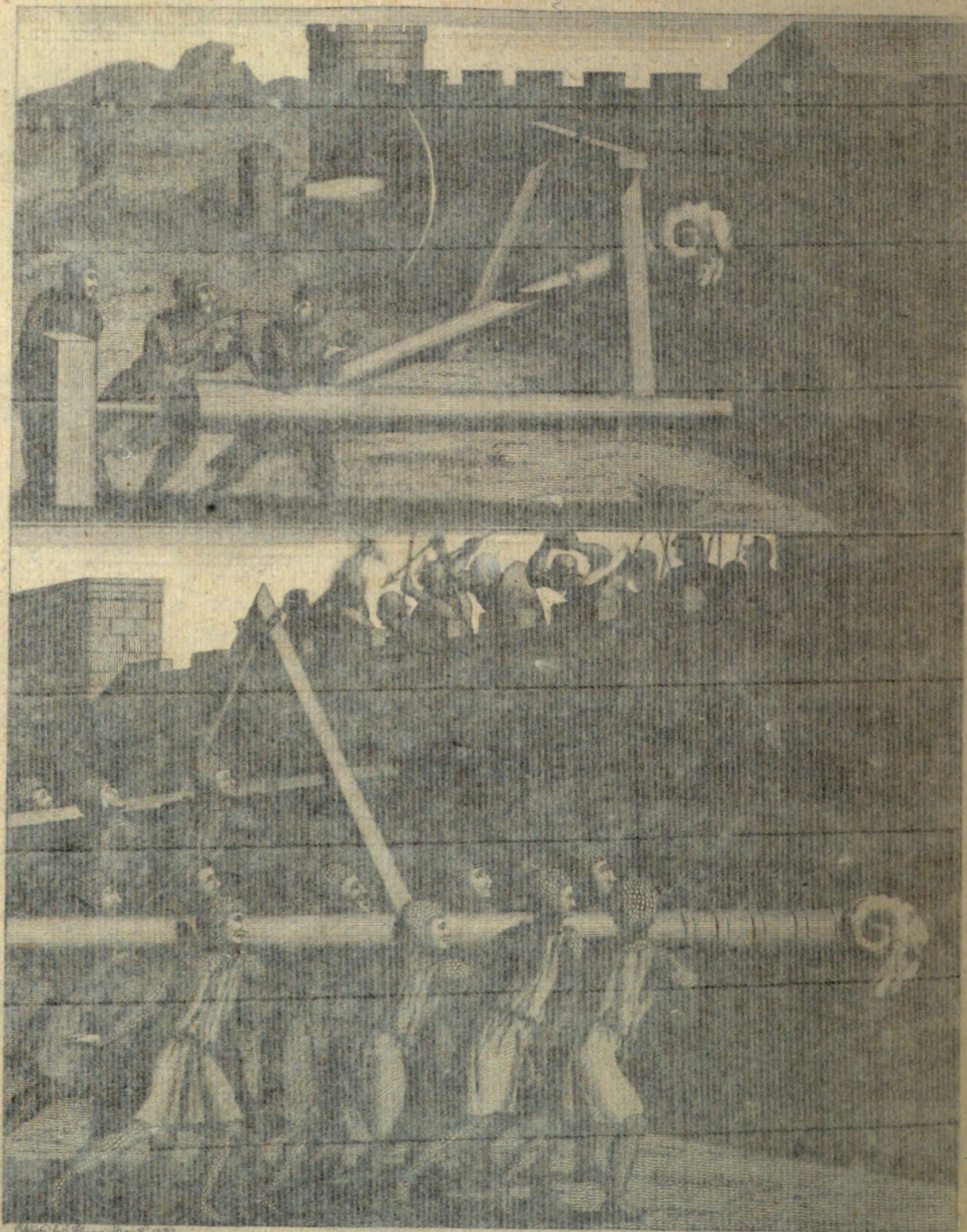
Of the machines moved by human strength, the chief was the ram, which was a huge beam or beams joined together, having its extremity shod with iron, sometimes cast in the shape of the head of a ram; it was pushed forwards by the united strength of a number of men in the method shewn in the plate, when its iron head striking or butting against the wall, in the manner of the animal, whose name it bore, it displaced the stones, and made a breach. The ram, though sometimes supported on the shoulders of men, was more frequently suspended to a triangle or beam, so that the whole force of the men was directed to pushing it forwards; the ram was frequently used in the middle of the 14th century. In Dr. Desagulier's Lectures on Experimental Philosophy, the momentum of a large battering ram, worked by a thousand men, is compared with and found equal to that of a point blank shot from a thirty-six pounder. (i)

VOL. II.

Q 9

THE

(i) DR. DESAGULIERS has demonstrated in the annotations on his second lecture on experimental philosophy, that the momentum of a battering ram, twenty eight inches in diameter, one hundred and eighty feet long, with a head of cast iron, of one ton and a half,



BATTERING MACHINES.

dit l'historien, jettoient & tiroient nuit & jour fans, cesse contre ce chateau."

OF the vast force of these machines surprising stories are related, though from the construction of our ancient castles, it does not seem as if their range was very great, since many of our most important fortresses are commanded by hills within four or five hundred yards of them, an instance of which may be seen in the castle of Dover, once deemed the key of this kingdom, and also in those of Corfe and Guildford; Monsieur Joly de Mezeray says, the greatest range of a mangonel was 5 stadia, or 1042 yards, but then this was at an elevation; these machines not only threw darts and large stones, but even the bodies of men and horses; instances of both are mentioned by Froissart.

OF the machines moved by human strength, the chief was the ram, which was a huge beam or beams joined together, having its extremity shod with iron, sometimes cast in the shape of the head of a ram; it was pushed forwards by the united strength of a number of men in the method shewn in the plate, when its iron head striking or butting against the wall, in the manner of the animal, whose name it bore, it displaced the stones, and made a breach. The ram, though sometimes supported on the shoulders of men, was more frequently suspended to a triangle or beam, so that the whole force of the men was directed to pushing it forwards; the ram was frequently used in the middle of the 14th century. In Dr. Desagulier's Lectures on Experimental Philosophy, the momentum of a large battering ram, worked by a thousand men, is compared with and found equal to that of a point blank shot from a thirty-six pounder. (i)

VOL. II.

Q q

THE

(i) DR. DESAGULIERS has demonstrated in the annotations on his second lecture on experimental philosophy, that the momentum of a battering ram, twenty eight inches in diameter, one hundred and eighty feet long, with a head of cast iron, of one tun and a half;

THE machines used for covering the approaches of troops employed in sieges, were moveable towers of several stories, called belfreys, cats and fows, similar to the tortoise, vinea and pluteus of the ancients: these were fixed on wheels, and likewise pushed forward or drawn by human strength, latterly, sometimes assisted by the capstern or other mechanical contrivances.

THE moveable towers of the ancients were of an amazing magnitude. Hero distinguishes three kinds; the smallest were, he says, of sixty cubits and ten stories; the base which was square, measured seventeen cubits on each side. The larger were of ninety cubits height, and had fifteen stories, the greatest, called double, were of twenty stages, they were largest at bottom, and decreased every story; the dimensions of the timber used for the uprights, the traverses, and other principal pieces were proportioned to each of their three sizes. The strength and thickness of the wheels was also in the ratio of the weight they were to carry. The number of the wheels was in the proportion of the squares of their bases, they had at least six, and sometimes eight.

THE towers or belfreys of more modern times were not so large, they rarely exceeded three or four stages or stories, and were covered with raw hides, to protect them from fire; in them was a bridge to let down on the parapet, when the works were to be stormed.

THE lower stage or ground floor was occupied by a ram; the upper stories by archers and cross bow men. In the annexed plate

a half; the whole ram, with its iron hoops, weighing 41,112 pounds, and moved by the united strength of 1000 men, will be only equal to that of a ball of thirty-six pounds weight, shot point blank from a cannon. Sir Christopher Wren made great use of the battering ram to demolish and throw down the walls of the old church of St. Paul, when he was pulling it down in order to rebuild it. He found no machine equal to it for that purpose, particularly in disjoining the stones.

there

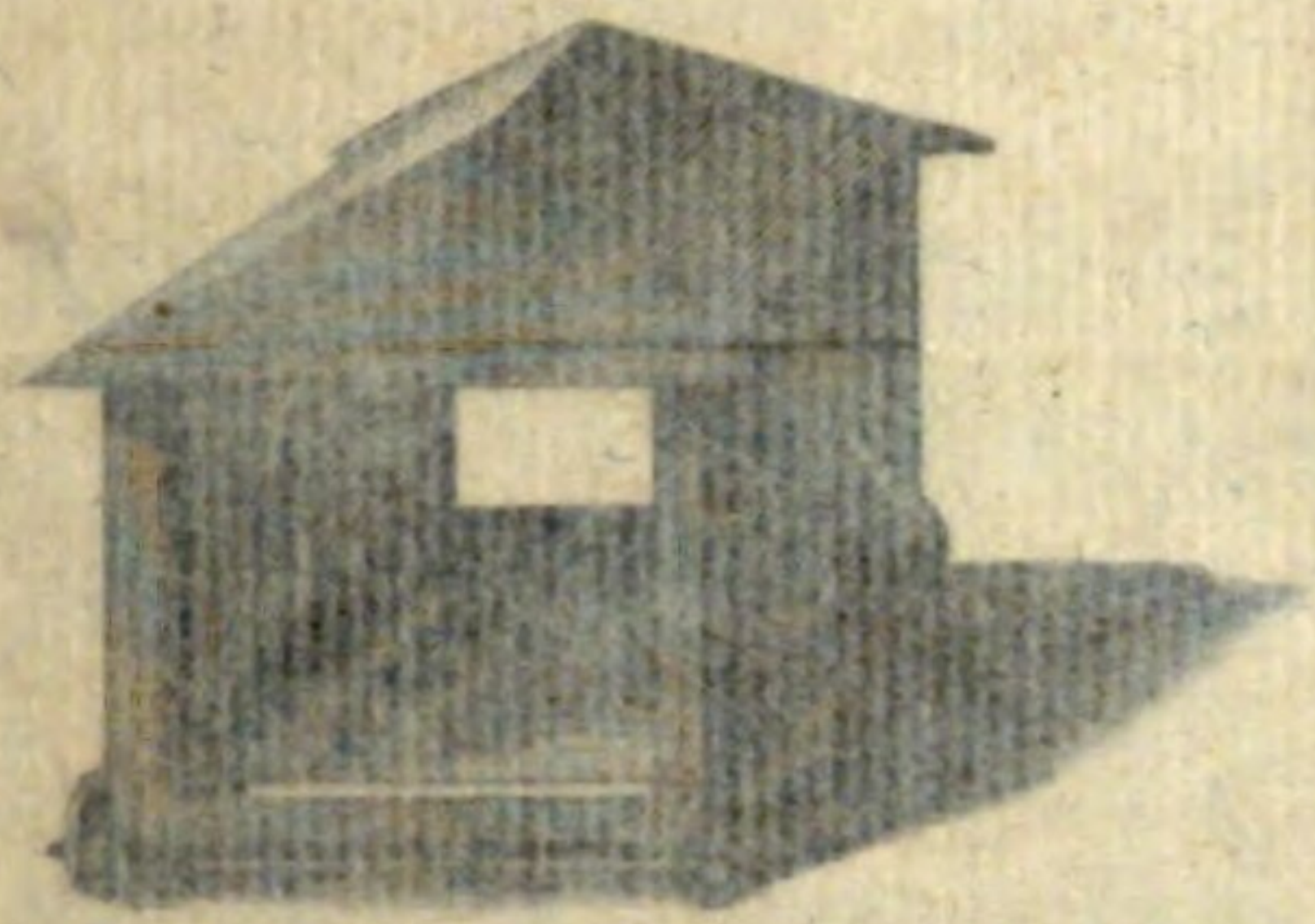


Fig. 1

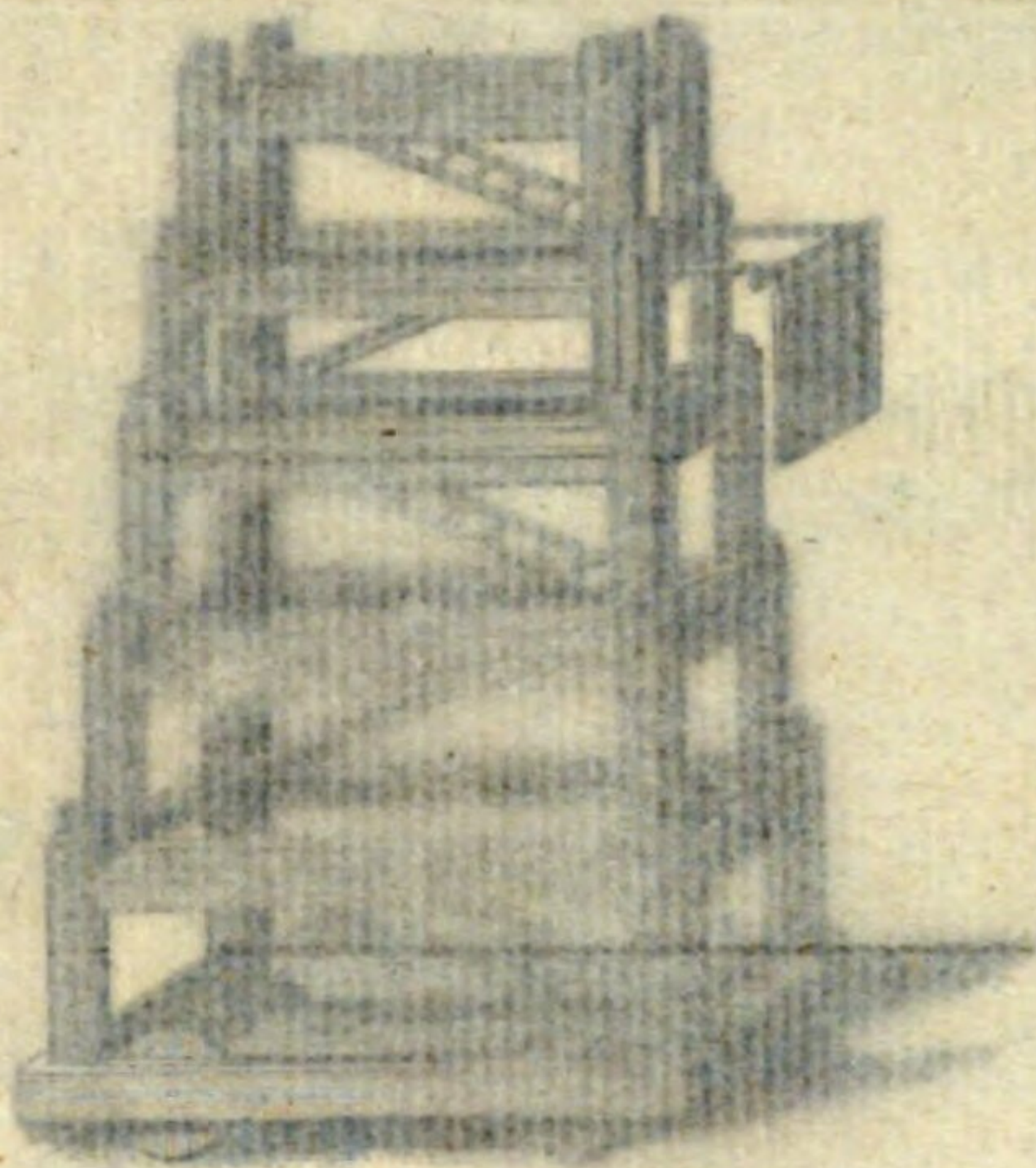


Fig. 3

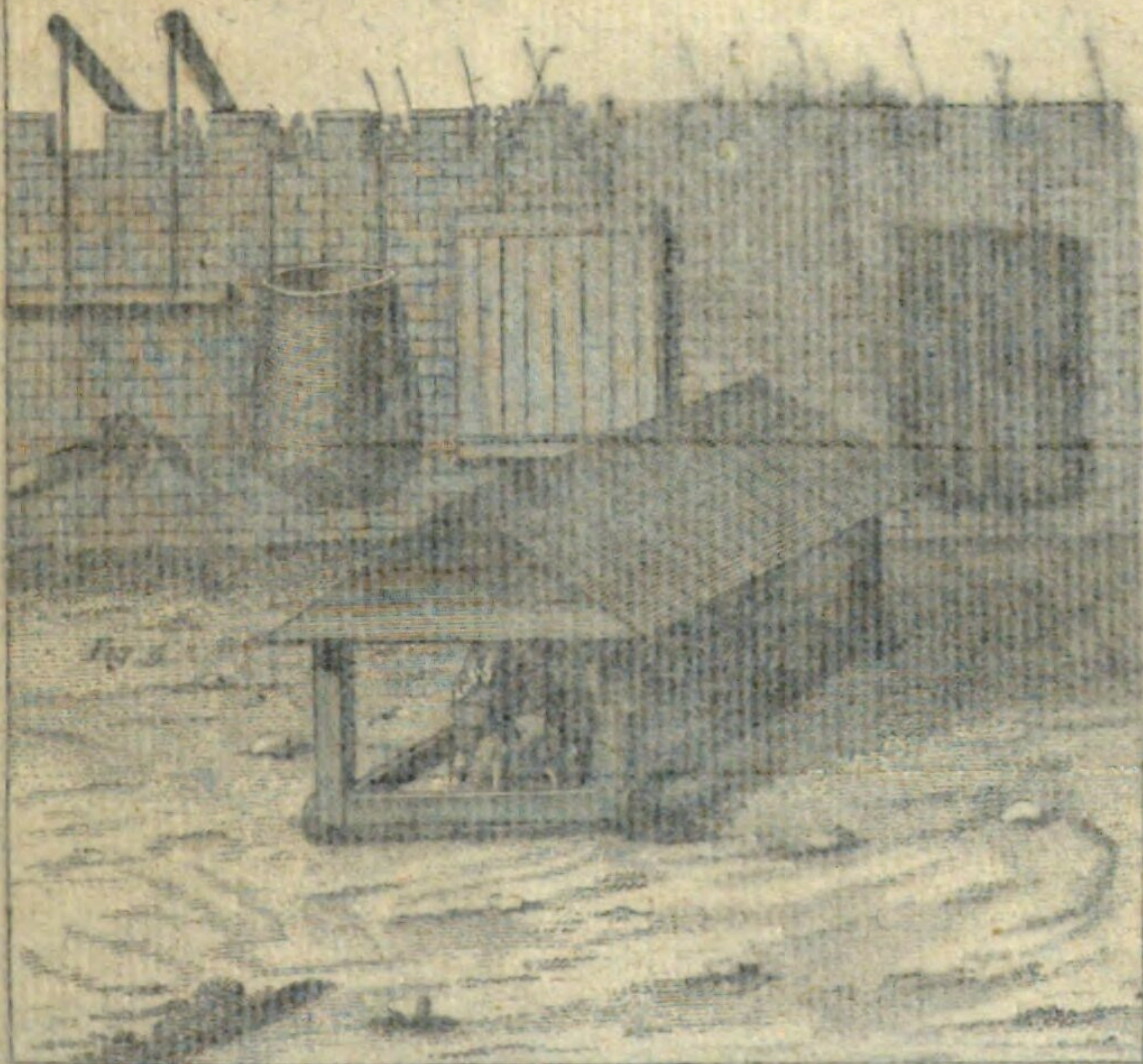


Fig. 4

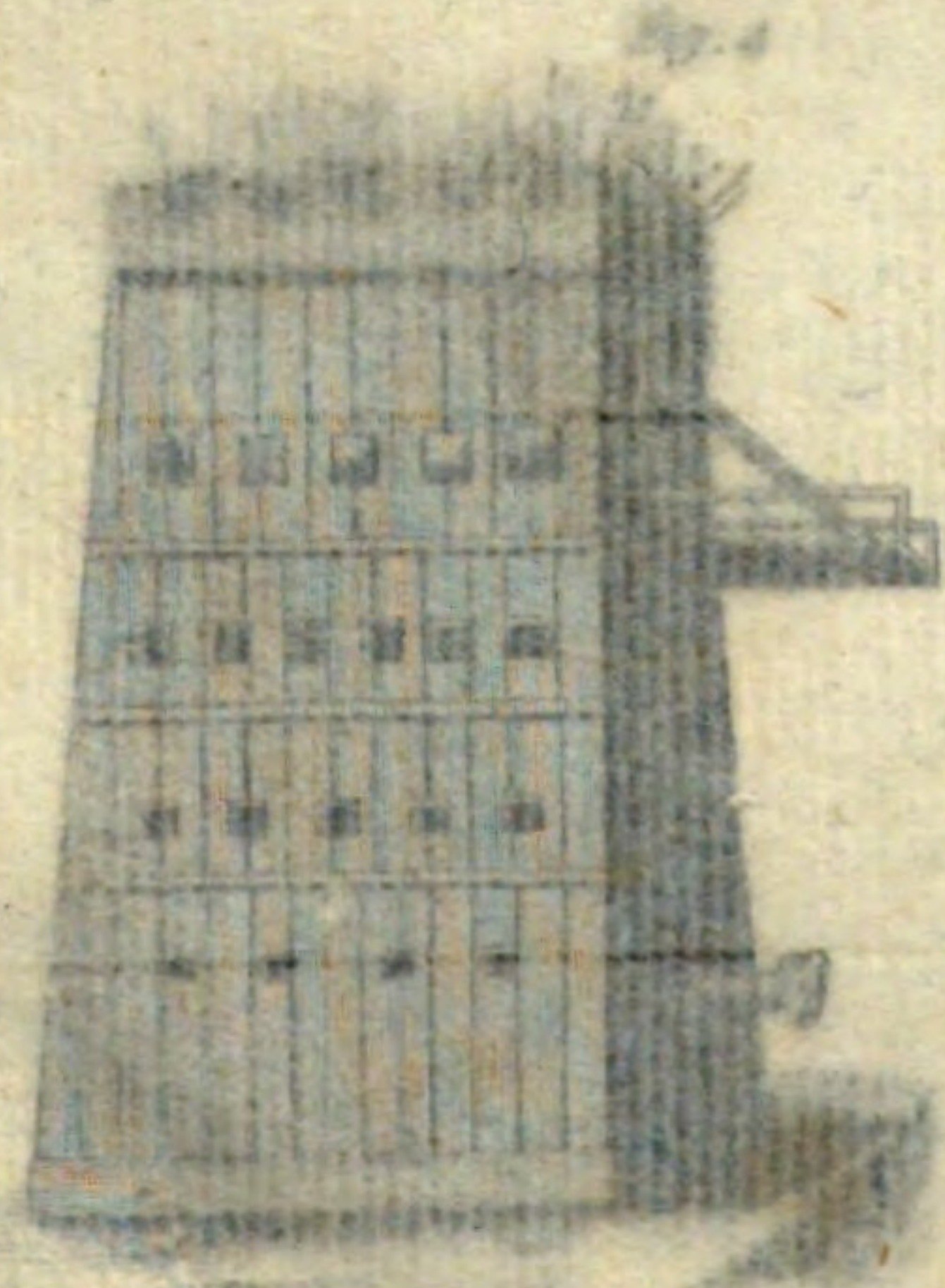


Fig. 5

Edw. Line 1865 by H. Cooper

Edw. Line 1865 by H. Cooper

MACHINES USED IN ANCIENT SIEGES.

THE machines used for covering the approaches of troops employed in sieges, were moveable towers of several stories, called belfreys, cats and lows, similar to the tortoise, vinea and pluteus of the ancients: these were fixed on wheels, and likewise pushed forward or drawn by human strength, latterly, sometimes assisted by the capstern or other mechanical contrivances.

THE moveable towers of the ancients were of an amazing magnitude. Hero distinguishes three kinds; the smallest were, he says, of sixty cubits and ten stories; the base which was square, measured seventeen cubits on each side. The larger were of ninety cubits height, and had fifteen stories, the greatest, called double, were of twenty stages, they were largest at bottom, and decreased every story; the dimensions of the timber used for the uprights, the traverses, and other principal pieces were proportioned to each of their three sizes. The strength and thickness of the wheels was also in the ratio of the weight they were to carry. The number of the wheels was in the proportion of the squares of their bases, they had at least six, and sometimes eight.

THE towers or belfreys of more modern times were not so large, they rarely exceeded three or four stages or stories, and were covered with raw hides, to protect them from fire; in them was a bridge to let down on the parapet, when the works were to be stormed.

THE lower stage or ground floor was occupied by a ram; the upper stories by archers and cross bow men. In the annexed plate

a half; the whole ram, with its iron hoops, weighing 41,112 pounds, and moved by the united strength of 1000 men, will be only equal to that of a ball of thirty-six pounds weight, shot point blank from a cannon. Sir Christopher Wren made great use of the battering ram to demolish and throw down the walls of the old church of St. Paul, when he was pulling it down in order to rebuild it. He found no machine equal to it for that purpose, particularly in disjoining the stones.

there

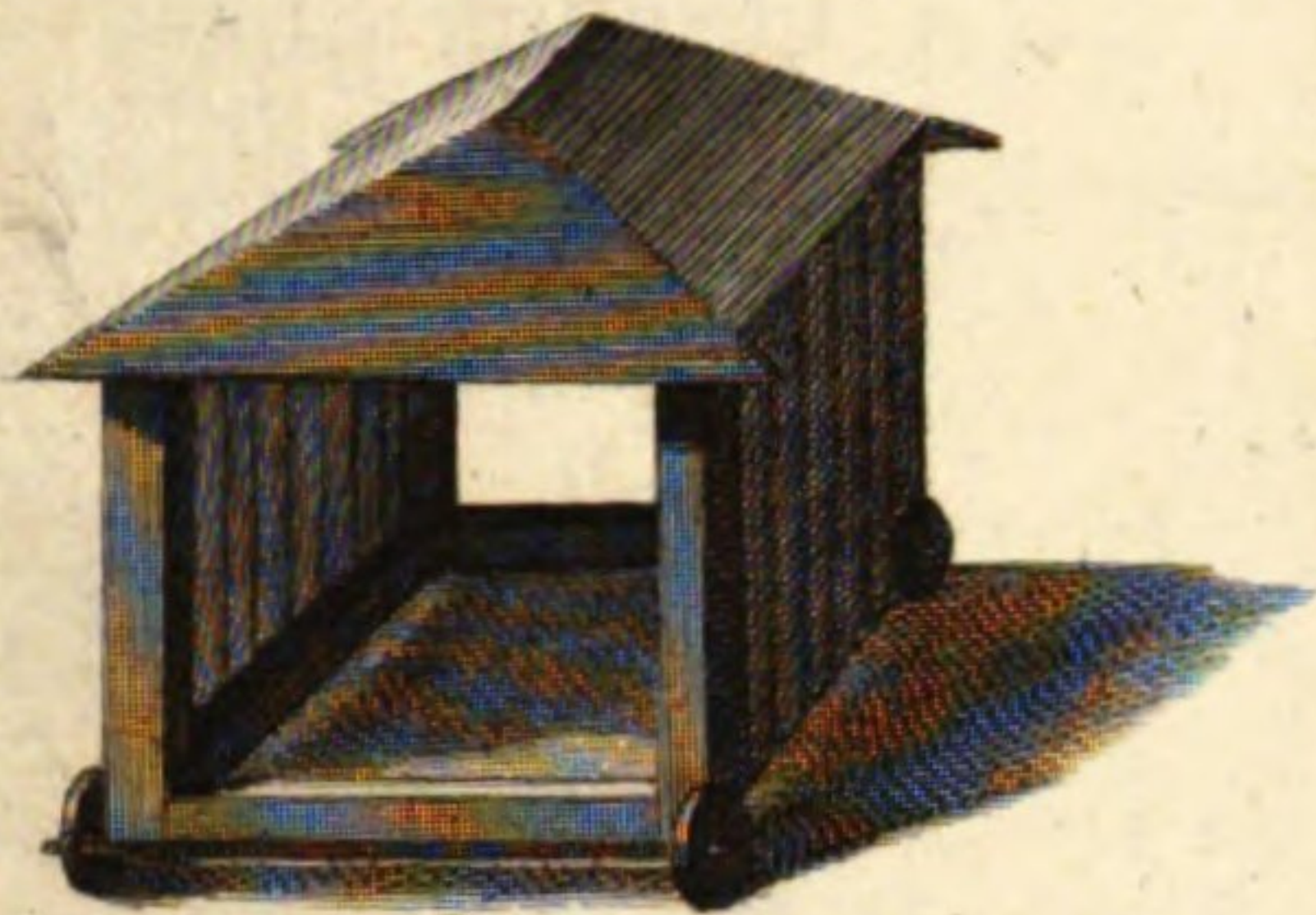


Fig. 1

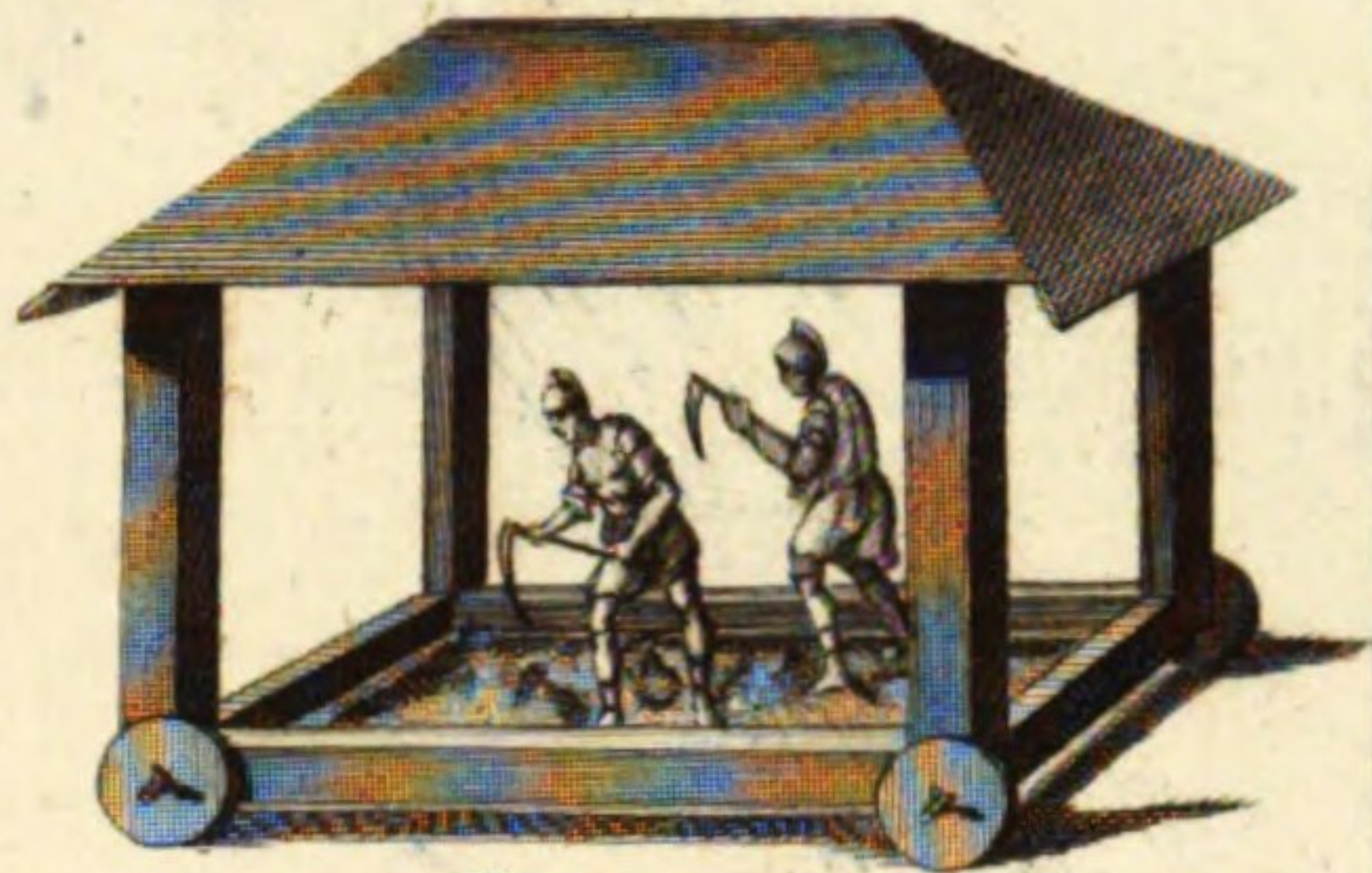


Fig. 2

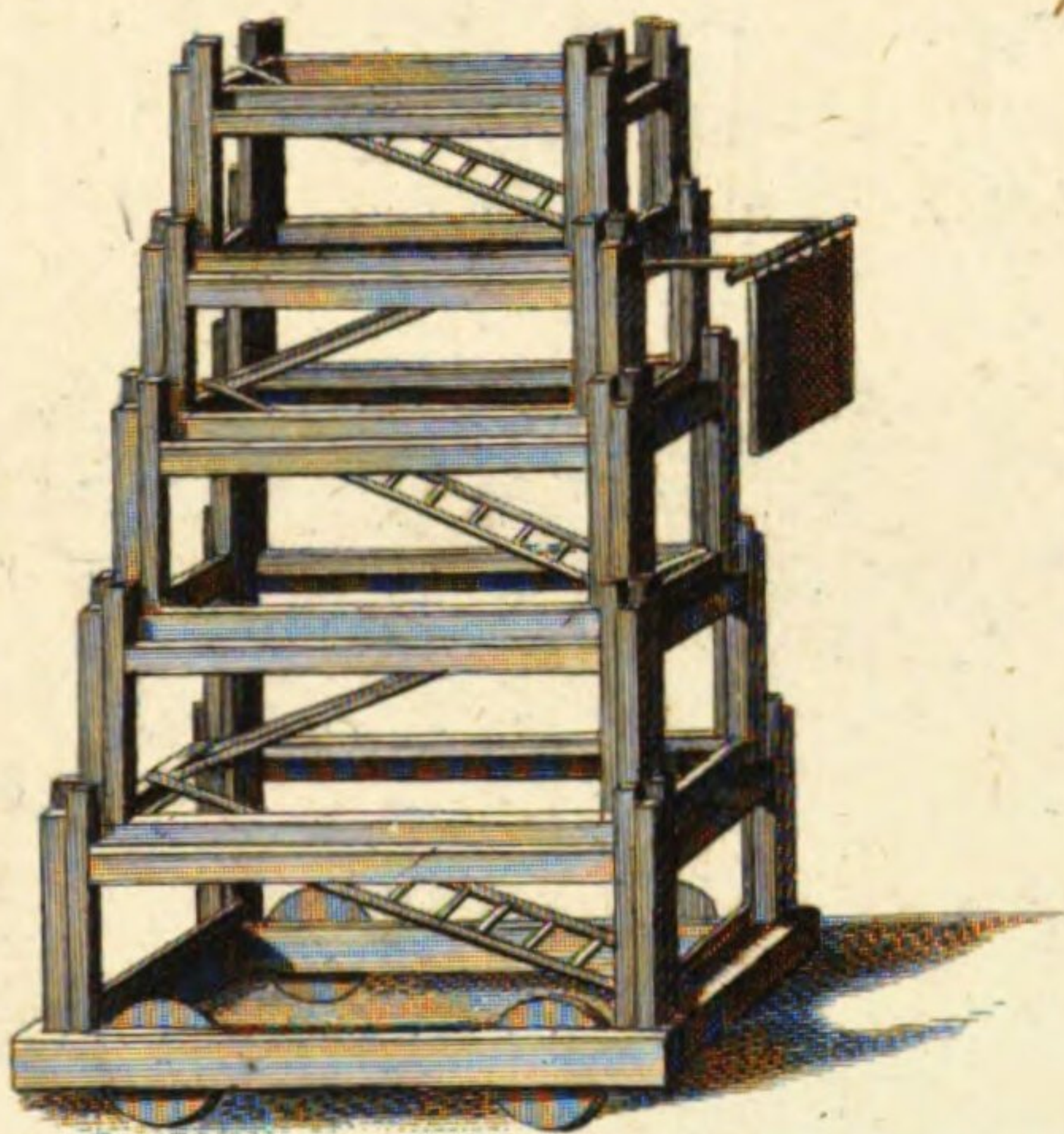


Fig. 3

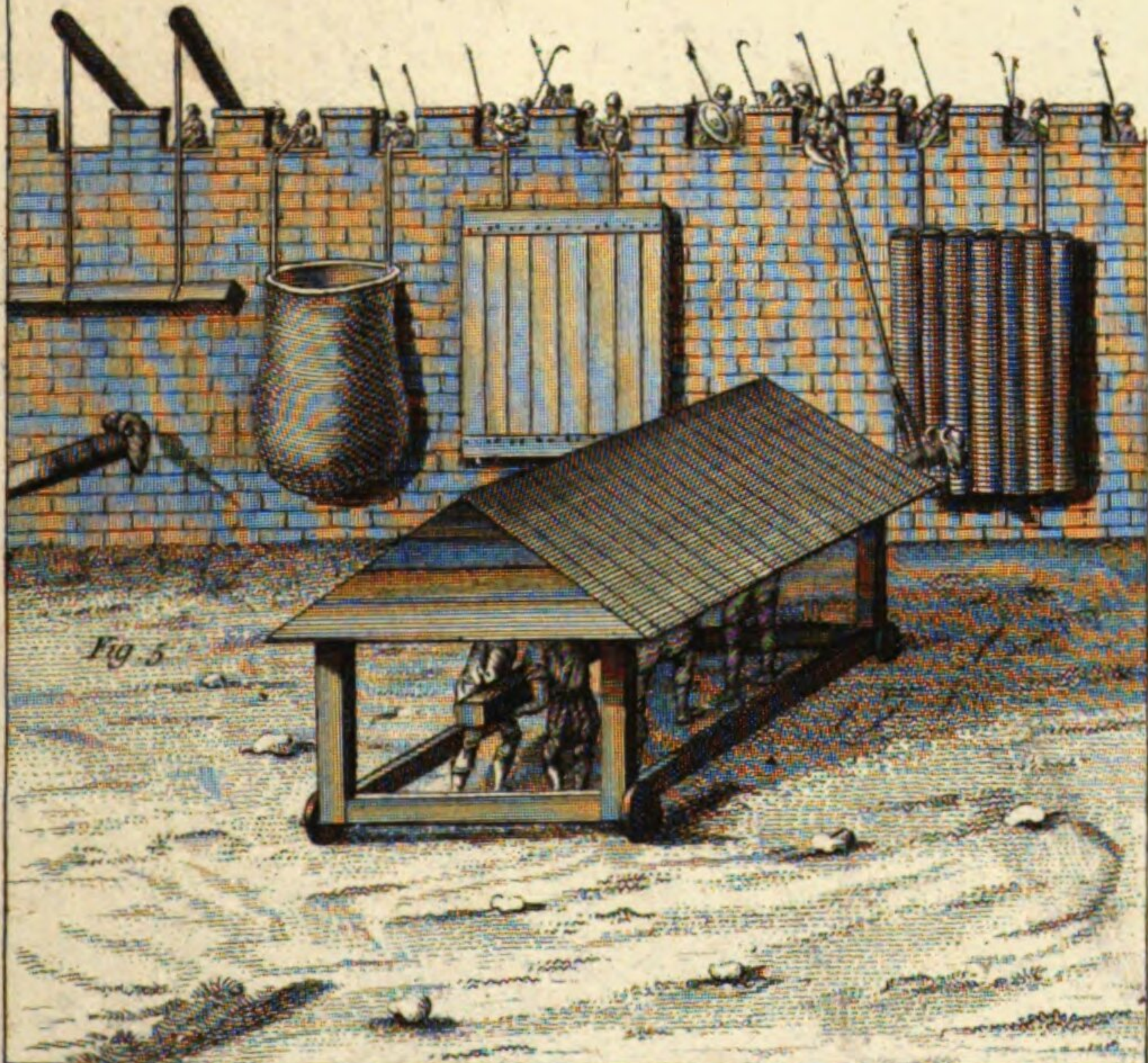


Fig. 5

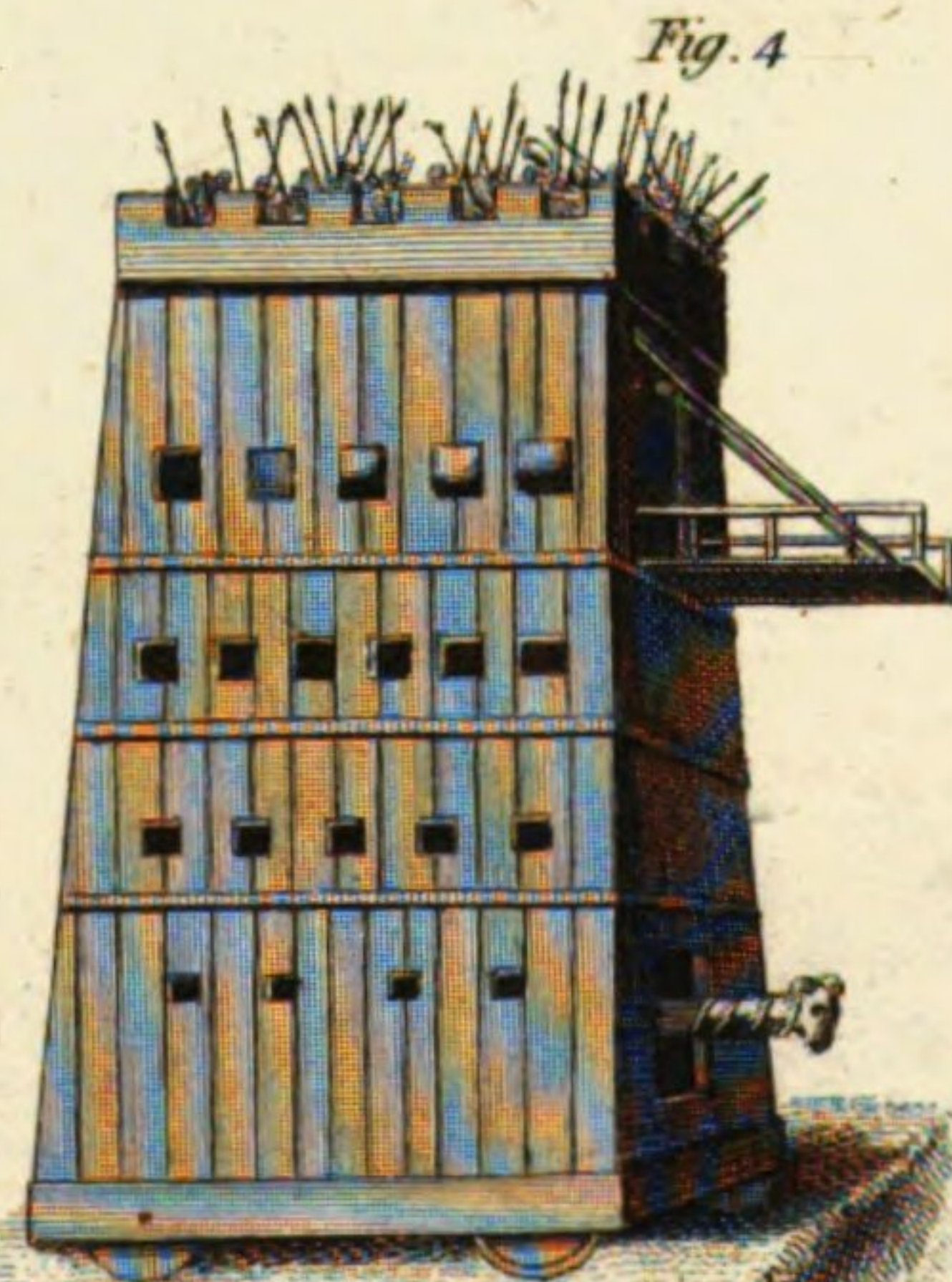


Fig. 4

Pub. 23 June 1768 by S. Hooper

Goodnight sculp.

MACHINES USED IN ANCIENT SIEGES.

there is a view of an attack of the parapet from one of these towers, and in the ditch, the archers covered by their pavifours.

A MOVEABLE tower was constructed by the royalists so late as the troubles under King Charles I. and surprised and taken by the parliamentary forces ; it was misnamed a sow. (k)

THE

(k) AND much about the same time we had certaine information by letters from Gloucester, that that valiant and most active governour of Gloucester had intelligence of a designe against Canon Froom by the enemy in Hereford, for the storming and surprising of it, with a strange engine, which they had provided for that purpose, and brought along with them ; marching thus forth out of Hereford with about 400 men, with their governour, they only faced the house, and after that wheeled about toward Malvern hills, to meet with additional forces from Worcester, fully to besiege it ; whereof the governour of Canon Froom having knowledge, and considering his present dis-furnishment of things necessary to defend the garrison against a siege or assault, he sent to valiant Colonel Morgan to Gloucester, praying his assistance, who presently came forth to help him, with 500 horse and 200 foot, and marched to Ridley, where he joyned with 300 of Corflane men, but the enemy having notice thereof (lying then about Ledbury) posted thence quite away, but had left behind them the strange engine (which sorely frightened our men at Froome) guarded with two or three troops of horse from Hereford, till they returned ; in the interim those that had faced Canon Froom, as was touch't before, falling in at Ledbury, in their way to Malvern, to refresh themselves there, a quarter-master of Canon-Froom, with about twelve onely of their horse, accidentally being forth to view the coasts, and coming through the towne, not knowing of the Roysters being there, fell upon them all, and seeing themselves suddenly engaged, cried out, fall on ! fall on ! flew two on the place, and brought away five prisoners, past by the engine without much ado, the enemy, it seems, being amazed at the sudden onset, and unprovided, some drinking, and others carelesse of any such attempt, cried horse ! horse ! and went away in a distracted manner, where they surprised the engine within a mile and half of the place, drove away the troops that were with it, seized on it with two captains, and many prisoners, and brought all, with their ladders and other instruments provided for the storme, to the garrison at Canon Froom ; upon the coming in whereof, such a shout was made, that all the country rang of it. The engine was such a one as the like hath not been known since these wars : the Roysters call it a Sow : it was carried upon great wheelles, and to bedrawn with oxen, it was made with rooms or lofts one over another, musquet proof, and very strong, out of which were holes to play and shoot out. It was so high, that it was above all the works at Canon Froom, so that they could discharge over the works ; besides which, a doore opened to bring them into the works, out of which a bridge went for
their

THE cattus, cat-house, gattus or cat, was a covered shed, occasionally fixed on wheels, and used for covering of soldiers employed in filling up the ditch, preparing the way for the moveable tower, or mining the wall: it was called a cat, because under it soldiers lay in watch, like a cat for its prey. Some of these cats had crenelles and chinks, from whence the archers could discharge their arrows; these were called castellated cats. Sometimes under the cover of this machine, the besiegers worked a small kind of ram.

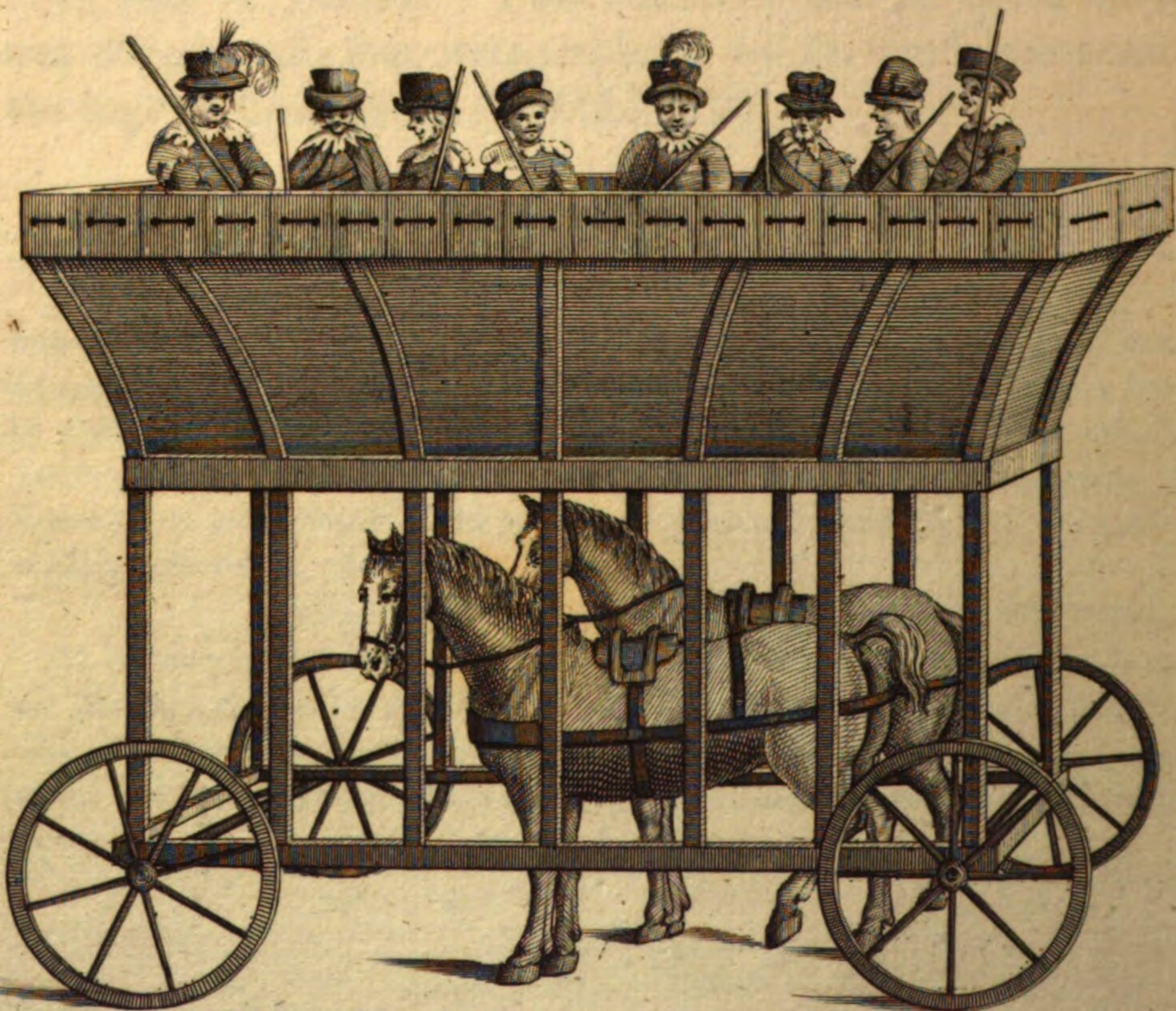
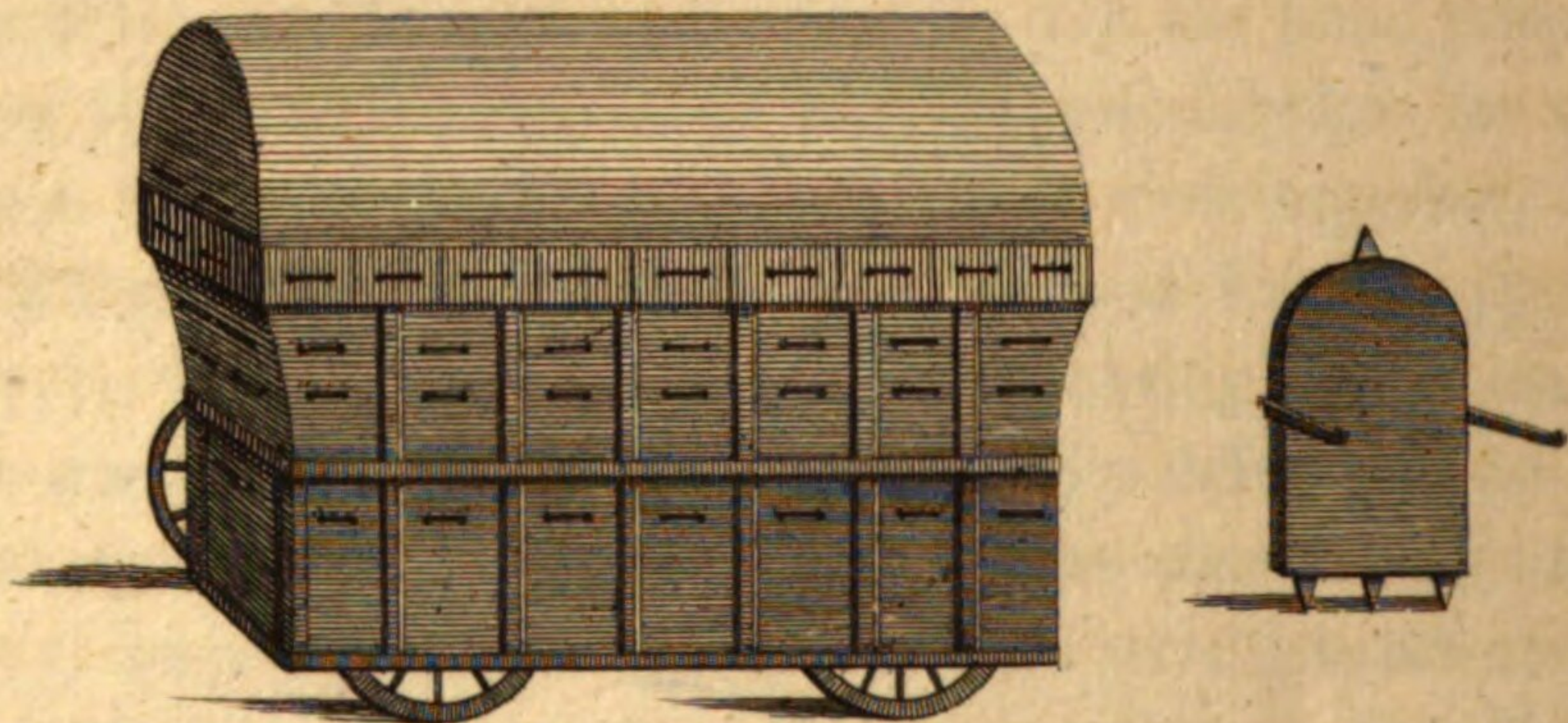
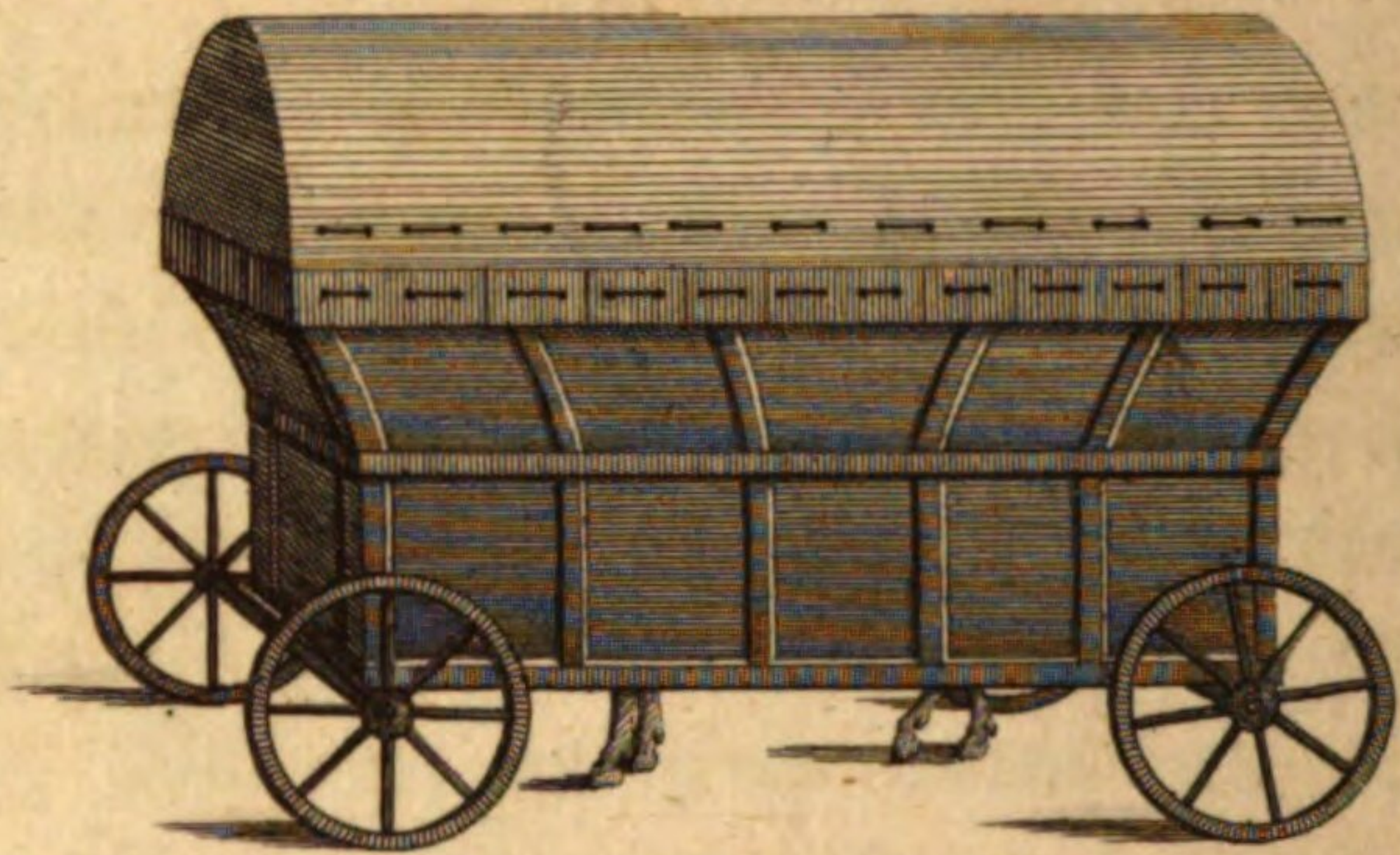
THE sow was also a covered machine for the same purpose, and much of the same construction; though probably less, as it derived its name from the soldiers under it lying close together, like pigs under a sow; though another reason is given for that appellation, namely, its being applied to digging and rooting up the earth. The former was alluded to by the countess who defended the castle of Dunbar against King Edward III. when she threatened, that unless the Englishmen kept their sow better, she would make her cast her pigs. Camden, who mentions this circumstance, says "The sow is yet used in Ireland." Two machines, the one called the boar, and the other the sow, were employed by the parliamentarians in the siege of Corfe castle, Dorsetshire. (1)

THE

their entrance. The garrison was then in such a condition, that had they not been thus disappointed, in all probability this engine had effected their intended design; but God be praised, it was prevented. On the Lord's day following, November 9th, Master Jackson, a Minister of Gloucester, having information thereof in the morning (before sermon) gave public thanks in the pulpit for so great a deliverance, and unexpected and unlikely preservation. A. D. 1645.

See Vicars's Chronicle, entitled the Burning Bush not consumed, p. 318.

(1) AMONG some ancient drawings of the time of Henry VIII. preserved in the British Museum, there is the representation of a kind of covered war cart, or waggon, filled with musketeers, the top and sides of the waggon are pierced with loop holes, the horses placed under cover beneath the waggon; several of these waggons were stationed in the center



THE ENGLISH ARMY.

THE Greek fire was, as the oriental Greeks pretend, invented by Callinicus, an architect of Heliopolis or Halbeck, who lived in the reign of the Emperor Constantine Pogonatus. That emperor, it is said, forbid the art of making it, to be communicated to any strangers, or others, except his subjects; (m) it was, however, at length known, and in common use among the nations conversant with the Byzantines; the crusaders also possessed the secret of preparing this wonderful composition. (n)

ANNA COMMENA has given an account of the ingredients of which it was composed, these were bitumen, sulphur and naptha. The Greek fire is much spoken of in all the Histories of the Holy Wars, as frequently employed with success by the Saracens against the Christians. Procopius, in his History of the Goths, calls it Medea's oil, considering it as an infernal composition prepared by that sorceress.

It is said to have been known in China, 800 years after Constantine Pogonatus, under the name of the oil of the cruel fire, and was carried thither by the Khan Tamerlan, who had it from the king of Ou. (o)

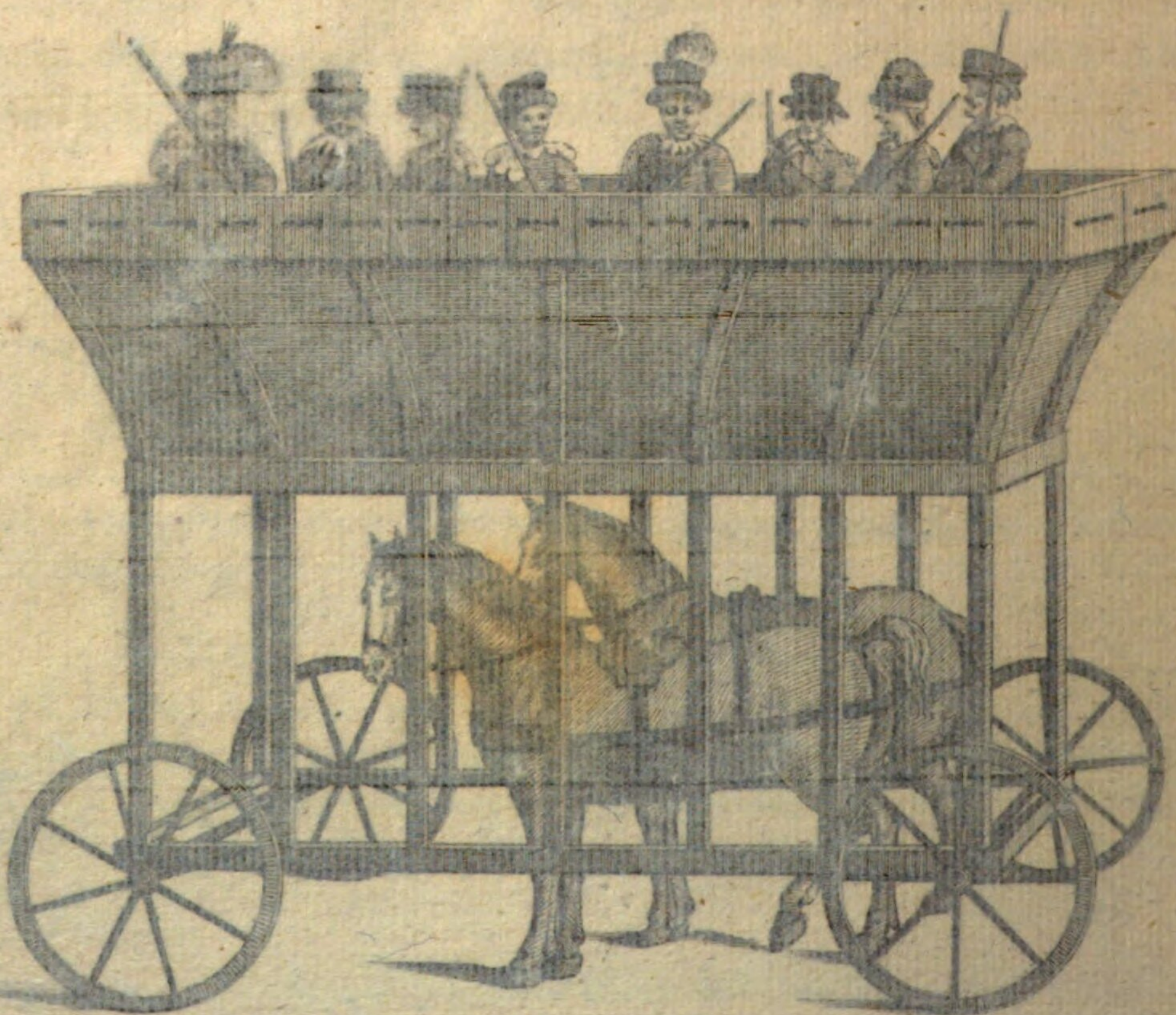
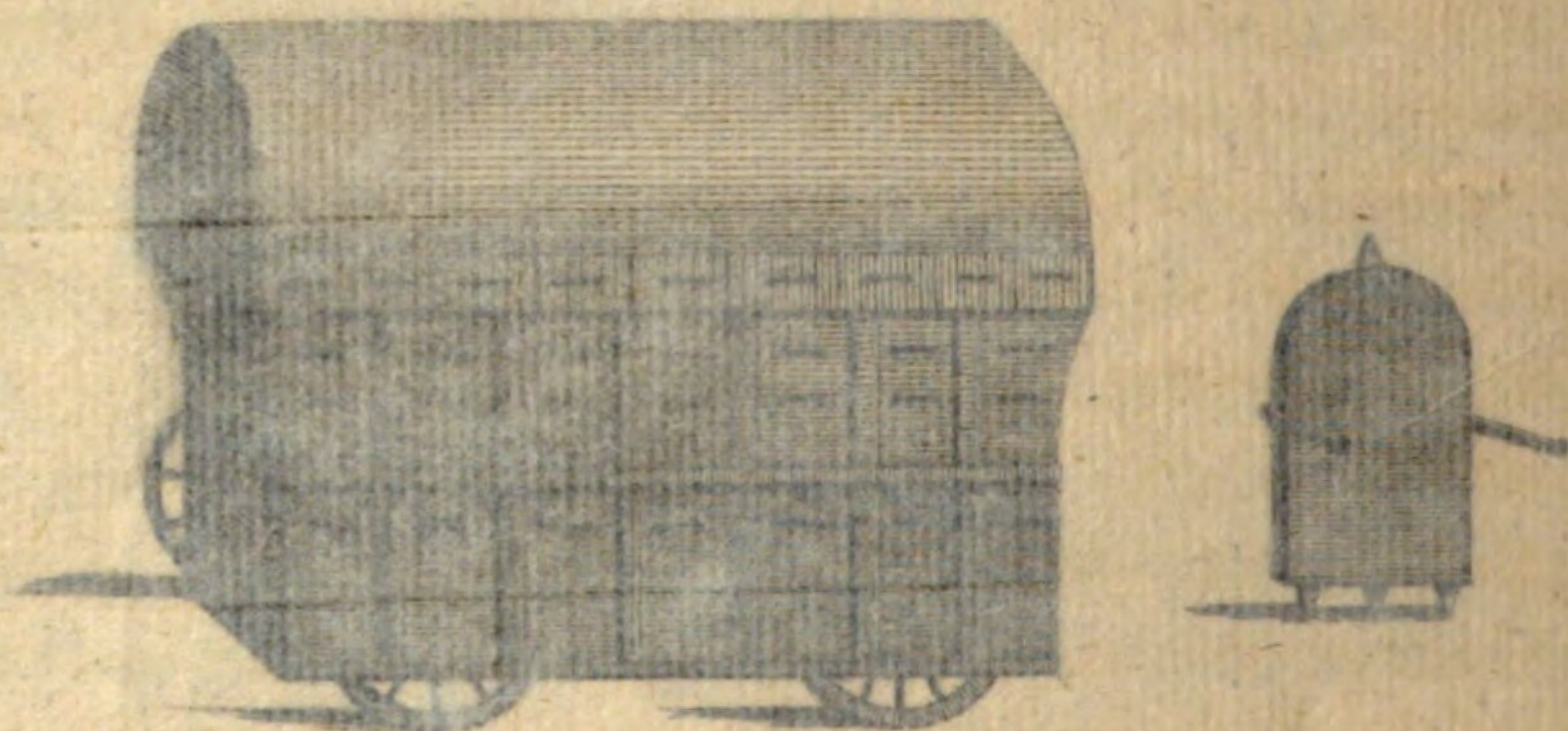
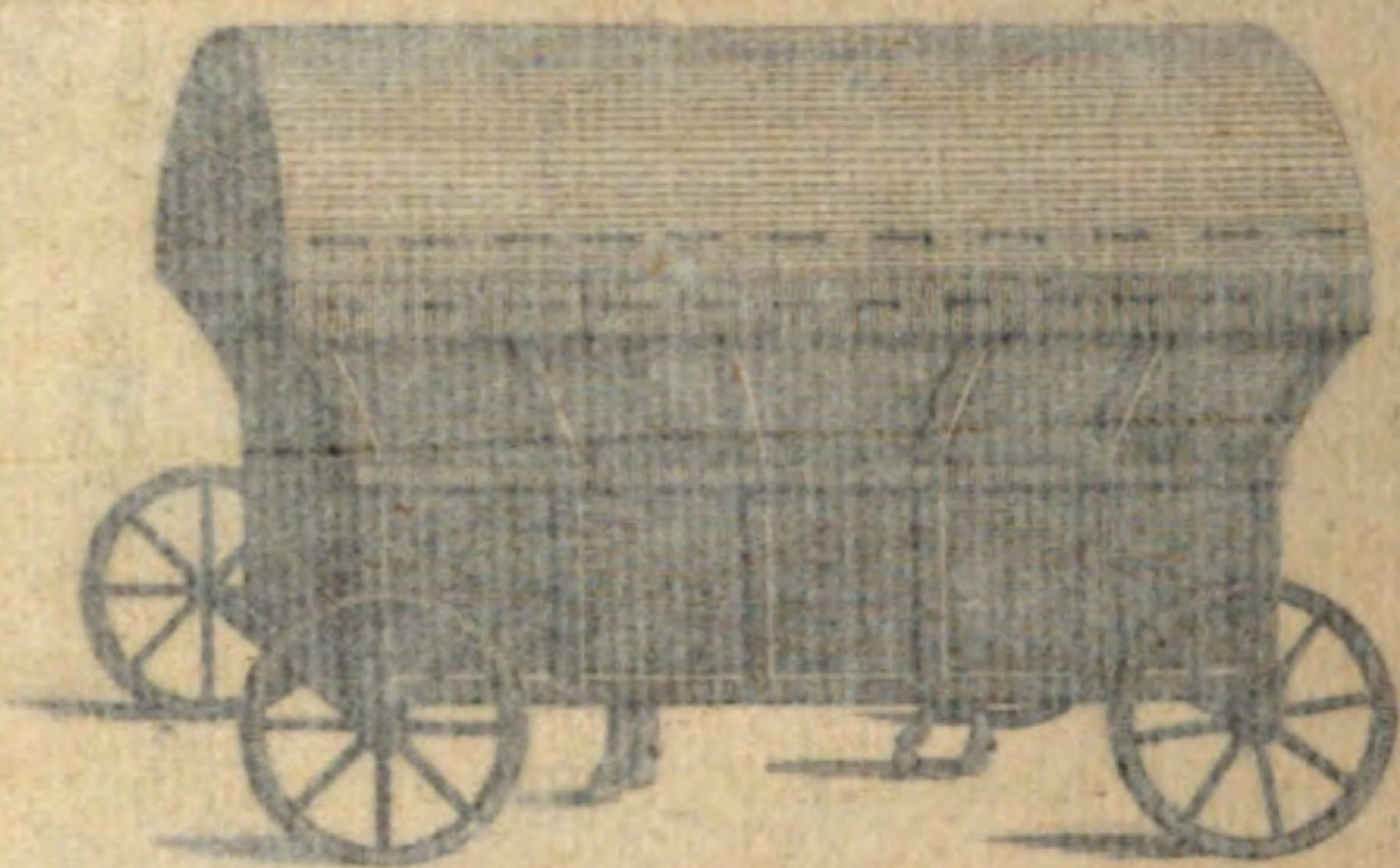
By

center of a square battalion of halberdiers; one of them is represented as without its covering in order to explain its construction; a kind of portable mortar is also shewn in those drawings and copied here.

(m) THE Greeks if asked to give the composition, answered it was strictly forbidden by Constantine the Great, according to them the original inventor.

(n) THIS is more properly supposed to have been the invention of some of the Arabian chymists, who were formerly great adepts in their art. Something like this fire is mentioned by Quintus Curtius. It is supposed to have been compounded of the gum of the pine and other resinous trees, reduced to powder with brimstone, to which was added *Naptha*, and other bitumens, and according to some, the water of a fountain in the East, which had the property to amalgamate with these combustibles, and to render them more inflammable; this seems hardly possible, as in that case it could have been only made where the water was to be had, whereas it was in use both all over Asia, and in Europe. *L'Esprit des Croissades*, &c. Amsterdam, 1780.

(o) *L'ESPRIT des Croissades*. A machine seemingly depending on the Greek fire,



THE Greek fire was, as the oriental Greeks pretend, invented by Callinicus, an architect of Heliopolis or Balbeck, who lived in the reign of the Emperor Constantine Pogonatus. That emperor, it is said, forbid the art of making it, to be communicated to any strangers, or others, except his subjects; (m) it was, however, at length known, and in common use among the nations confederated with the Byzantines; the crusaders also possessed the secret of preparing this wonderful composition. (n)

ANNA COMMENA has given an account of the ingredients of which it was composed, these were bitumen, sulphur and naptha. The Greek fire is much spoken of in all the Histories of the Holy Wars, as frequently employed with success by the Saracens against the Christians. Procopius, in his History of the Goths, calls it Medea's oil, considering it as an infernal composition prepared by that sorceress.

It is said to have been known in China, in 917, 300 years after Constantine Pogonatus, under the name of the oil of the cruel fire, and was carried thither by the Kitan Tartars, who had it from the king of Ou. (o)

By

center of a square battalion of halberdiers; one of them is represented as without its covering in order to explain its construction; a kind of portable mantlet is also shewn in those drawings and copied here.

(m) THE Greeks if asked to give the composition, answered it was strictly forbidden by Constantine the Great, according to them the original inventor.

(n) THIS is more properly supposed to have been the invention of some of the Arabian chymists, who were formerly great adepts in their art. Something like this fire is mentioned by Quintus Curtius. It is supposed to have been compounded of the gum of the pine and other resinous trees, reduced to powder with brimstone, to which was added *Naptha*, and other bitumens, and according to some, the water of a fountain in the East, which had the property to amalgamate with these combustibles, and to render them more inflammable; this seems hardly possible, as in that case it could have been only made where the water was to be had, whereas it was in use both all over Asia, and in Europe. *L'Esprit des Croissades*, &c. Amsterdam, 1780.

(o) L'ESPRIT des Croissades. A machine seemingly depending on the Greek fire,

or

By the following description of it, given by Joinville, who was an eye-witness, it has somewhat the appearance of one of the iron rockets still used in India: he says it was thrown from the bottom of a machine called a petrary, and that it came forwards as large as a barrel of verjuice, with a tail of fire issuing from it as big as a great sword, making a noise in its passage like thunder, and seeming like a dragon flying through the air, and from the great quantity of fire it threw out, giving such a light that one might see in the camp as if it had been day; such was the terror it occasioned among the commanders of St. Louis's army, that Gautier de Cariel, an experienced and valiant knight, gave it as his advice, that as often as it was thrown, they should all prostrate themselves on their elbows and knees, and beseech the Lord to deliver them from that danger, against which he alone could protect them; this counsel was adopted and practised; besides which, the king being in bed in his tent, as often as he was informed that the Greek fire was thrown, raised himself in his bed, and with uplifted hands thus besought the Lord; "good Lord God, preserve my people! The effects of this fire do not seem to justify the great terrors it here occasioned; some of their castelated cats were set on fire, but extinguished; it was thrown three times in the night from the petrary, and four times from a large cross bow; the fire caused by this composition is said to have been inextinguishable by water: Geeoffry de Vineauf, who accompanied King Richard I. to the crusade; says of it, "with a pernicious stench and livid flame, it consumes even flint and iron, nor could it be extinguished by water, but by sprinkling

or that of gunpowder, is mentioned in the *Speculum Regale*, an islandish manuscript supposed to have been written some time in the 13th century, where treating of the different kinds of warlike machines then in use, it is said, "*omnium autem quæ enumeravimus armorum et machinarum, præstantissimus est incurvus clypeorum gigas, flammæ venenatus eructans.*"

land

land upon it, the violence of it may be abated, and vinegar poured upon it will put it out ;” (p) from other descriptions it appears, this composition was of an unctuous and viscid nature, sticking to the objects against which it was thrown ; it was in land engagements and sieges projected by the machines of the times, and at sea by hand, enclosed in vessels or phials, in which it was also kept and transported ; (q) it was likewise sometimes fastened to the heads of arrows ; sea-water instead of extinguishing it seemed to give it new violence and activity.

FATHER DANIEL says this wildfire was not only used in sieges, but even in battles, and that Philip Augustus, King of France, having found a quantity of it ready prepared in Acre, brought it with him to France, and used it at the siege of Dieppe, for burning the English vessels in that harbour. It was also used at several other sieges in France, and an engineer named Gaubert, a native of Mante, acquired the art of making it, which luckily for mankind has been since lost. A composition something of the same nature was a few years ago invented by a chymist in this country, who at present enjoys an annual allowance so long as it shall remain a secret ; our government being unwilling to encrease the destruction

(p) To these some add urine and even oil. See Ducange.

THE following lines shew the general opinion of its properties :

Pereat ó utinam ignis hujus vena,
Non enim extinguitur aquâ, sed arenâ,
Vix que vinum acidum arctat ejus fræna
Et urinâ stringitur ejus vix habena :
Ignis hic conficitur tantum per paganos,
Ignis hic exterminat tantum Christianos,
Incantatus namque est per illos prophanos,
Ab hoc perpetuo Christe, libera nos.

Monachus Florentinus de Expugnat. Acconensi.

(q) AINSI qu'il alloit par mer, il raconte une nef de Saracens que, le Soudan Saladin envoioit en Acre pour le secours faire a ceux, qui estoient en la cité & cele nef avoit grand plant de fioles de voire pleines de feu Gregois. *Chron. MS. Franc. ex Bib. Mam-miana, an. 1190.*

and

and cruelty of war; a like discovery was made in France or Holland, and for the like reason suppressed. (r)

GREEK fire was used long after the introduction of fire arms, particularly in sieges. When the bishop of Norwich besieged Ypres, A. D. 1383, the garrison is said by Walsingham to have defended themselves so well with stones, arrows, lances, Greek fire, and certain engines called guns, that they obliged the English to raise the siege with such precipitation, that they left behind them their great guns, which were of inestimable value. A great part of that army was soon after besieged in the town of Burburgh by the French, who threw such quantities of Greek fire into it, that they burned a third part of the town, and obliged the English to capitulate. (s)

ALTHOUGH the invention of gunpowder, with its application to fire-arms, may be ranked among the most important and beneficial discoveries, yet, strange to relate! the date of that invention, with the name of the person to whom mankind are indebted for it, are both equally unknown. (t) Perhaps one cause of this was,

(r) DANS ce siècle des gens ont prétendu en avoir retrouvé la composition; & il n'y a pas dix ans qu'un nommé Dupré est mort avec un pension, que lui faisoit le gouvernement, pour tenir son secret dans l'oubli; nous connoissons nous mêmes un medecin, qui a fait la même decouverte, ou de moins quelque chose de bien approchant, mais dont la ministre s'est bien gardé de recompenser les travaux, humanité qui fait autant d'honneur a la philosophie qu'a notre nation, la seule, peut etre, ou il puisse se trouver des hommes en place assez amis des hommes pour ne pas multiplier, les germes de leur destruction, pour se souvenir que si malheureusement les guerres sont quelque fois necessaire il faut laisser aux armées infernales, des secrets infernaux, et que c'est deja trop de la poudre a Canon. *L'Esprit des Croissades.*

(s) T. WALSINGHAM, p. 303, and 304.

(t) PERHAPS, at first sight, the assertion of its being a beneficial discovery may seem somewhat paradoxical, but let any one compare the slaughter of ancient battles, with the killed and wounded in modern engagements, and the length and consequent miseries of sieges before and since the invention of gunpowder, where equal armies were engaged,

or

was, that at first it was extremely weak ; of this, indeed, we may be certain from the proportion of its ingredients here annexed ; so that it probably reached it's present perfection and force by degrees, and was originally only used for recreative fireworks, as Bacon seems to say, and afterwards might be applied to military uses, in setting fire to ships, castles and buildings.

THE common story respecting the invention of gunpowder and artillery is thus related : about the year 1320, one Bartholdus Schwartz, a German monk, and student in alchymy, a pursuit then much in fashion, having in the course of his work mixed salt-peter, sulphur, and charcoal in a mortar, and partly covered it with a stone, by some accident it took fire, and blew the stone with great violence to a considerable distance ; thus by one accident furnishing the hint for making gunpowder, its use, and a piece of ordnance for using it ; and it is worthy of observation, that stones are said to have been thrown from mortars long before point blank shooting was attempted ; possibly, this story may be true ; but it does not at all follow from thence, that gunpowder was not

or the same or similar places attacked, and I flatter myself the propriety of the epithet beneficial will be apparent.

WAR is now carried on at a distance, and in large and distinct bodies, so that the least advantage becomes instantly obvious ; whereas formerly troops engaged hand to hand, whereby they were so intermingled as to be with difficulty separated, and besides the victor had no other certainty of his success, than by finding no more of the enemy to slaughter : in sieges, a numerous train of artillery, with a few barrels of this wonderful powder deposited in a mine, soon batter and throw down the strongest walls, and we now rarely hear of those long sieges, where thousands are destroyed by fatigue and famine.

INDEED the greatest effects towards a victory or capitulation is by gunpowder and artillery, brought about without any mischief or slaughter, but solely by the terror raised by the noise, few men having sufficient firmness to stand their dreadful thunder ; and it is undoubtedly a fact, that a battle or a town is won, more by the flight of those who are terrified at the noise of the cannon, than from the loss of those killed or wounded by them.

before known, the same discovery having been frequently made by different persons engaged in the same study.

MANY modern writers carry the invention of gunpowder, and even its application to artillery, back to very remote antiquity; the ingenious translator of the Gentoo Laws, finds fire-arms, gunpowder, and cannon, mentioned in that code, supposed at least coëval with Moses; it will, no doubt, (says he) strike the reader with wonder, to find a prohibition of fire-arms, in records of such unfathomable antiquity; and he will probably from hence renew the suspicion which has long been deemed absurd, that Alexander the Great did absolutely meet with some weapons of that kind in India, as a passage in Quintus Curtius seems to ascertain; (u) "gunpowder has been known in China, as well as in Hindostan, far beyond all periods of investigation."

"UFFANO, says another author, (x) reporteth, that the invention and use, as well of ordnance as of gunnepowder, was in the 85 yeere of our lord, made known and practized in the great and

(u) THERE is also the following ancient testimony to this point in Grey's Gunnery, printed A. D. 1731. In the life of Appolonius Tyanæus written by Philostratus, about fifteen hundred years ago, there is the following passage concerning a people of India, called Oxydracæ; (L. 2. c. xiv.) "These truly wise men, says he, dwell between the rivers Hyphasis and Ganges; their country Alexander the Great never entered, deterred not by fear of the inhabitants, but as I suppose by religious considerations; for had he passed the Hyphasis, he might doubtless have made himself master of the country all round them; but their cities he could never have taken, though he had led a thousand as brave as Achilles, or three thousand such as Ajax to the assault, for they come not out to the field to fight those who attack them, but these holy men beloved by the Gods, overthrow their enemies with tempests and thunderbolts shot from their walls: it is said, that the Egyptian Hercules and Bacchus when they over-run India, invaded this people also, and having prepared warlike engines, attempted to conquer them; they in the mean time made no shew of resistance, appearing perfectly quiet and secure; but upon the enemyes near approach, they were repulsed with storms of lightning, and thunderbolts, hurled upon them from above."

(x) ROBERT NORTON, in a folio book, entitled, the Gunner, London, 1664: Norton there styles himself, one of his late majesties gunners and engineers.

ingenious

ingenious kingdom of China; and that in the maretyme provinces thereof, there yet remains certaine peaces of ordnance, both of iron and brasse, with the memory of their yeares of founding engraved upon them, and the armes of King Vitey, who he saith was the inventor; and it well appeareth also in antient and credible historyes, that the said King Vitey was a great enchanter and nigromancer; who one time being vexed with cruel warres by the Tartarians, conjured an evil spirit, that shewed him the use and making of gunnes and powder, the which he put in warlike practice in the realm of Pegu, and in the conquest of the East Indies, and thereby quieted the Tartars; the same being confirmed by certain Portingales that have travelled and navigated those quarters, and also affirmed by a letter sent from Captain Artred, written to the King of Spaine; wherein, recounting very diligently all the particulars of Chyna sayd, "that they long since used there both ordnance and powder; and affirming further, that there he found ancient ill-shapen pieces; and that those of later founding, are of farre better fashion and metal than their ancient were; some also imagine powder and ordnance were invented by the famous mathematician, Archimedes, who made use of them at the siege of Syracuse, in Cicillia, and they grownd that supposition upon Vitruvius, who reporteth that one of his engines with a terrible noise did shote forth great bullets of stone; which, by reason of that report, could neither be supposed the catapulta, balista, scorpion, nor any other of the known engines.

OUR countryman, Frier Bacon, whose works were written at Oxford, about the year 1270, fourscore years before the supposed invention by Swartz, has expressely named the ingredients of gunpowder as a well known composition used for recreation, (y) and

R r 2

describes

(y) ET experimentum hujus rei capimus ex hoc ludicro puerili quod fit in multis mundis partibus, scil. ut instrumento facto ad quantitatem pollicis humani, ex violentia
 falis,

describes it as producing a noise like thunder, and flashes like lightning, but more terrible than these produced by nature; and adds, this might be applied to the destruction of an enemy by sea and land: Bacon acquired this composition from a treatise on Artificial Fireworks, written by one Marcus Græcus, the manuscript is still extant, and is quoted by the Reverend Mr. Dutens, in order to prove that gunpowder was known to the ancients; (z) the composition therein prescribed is, two pounds of charcoal, one pound of sulphur and six pounds of saltpeter, well powdered and mixt together in a stone mortar; this is a better composition for powder than many in late use.

IN a black letter book in quarto, entitled, the Forrest, or Collection of Histories, (a) there is the following account of the invention of gunpowder and artillery; but all these were trifles of little weight and importance far surpassed in cruelty by the invention of shot in diverse sorts of artillery: the first invention of

salis, qui sal petrae vocatur, tam horibilis sonus nascitur, in ruptura tam modice rei scil. modici pergameni, quod fortis tonitrum excedere rugitum & corruscationem maximam sui luminis jubar excedit. Vide Dr. Jebb's Preface to his edition of Bacon's Opus Majus.

(z) THE title of this manuscript runs thus; "Incipit liber ignium a Marco Græco perscriptus, cujus virtus et efficacia est ad comburendum hostes, tam in mari quam in terra:" At page 9, of the MS. in the following directions for making a rocket; "secundus modus ignis volatilis hoc modo conficitur: R. lib. i. sulphuris vivi. lib. ii. carbonis saliciis, salis petrose vi. libras, quæ tria subtilissime tereantur in lapide marmorea, postea pulvis ad libitum in tunica reponatur volatili, vel tonitrum facienta. Nota, quod tunica ad volandum debet esse gracilis et longa, et prædicto pulvere optime concalcato repleta; tunica vel tonitrum faciens debet esse brevis, grossa, et prædicto pulvere semiplena, et ab utraque parte filo fortissimo bene ligata. Nota, quod in qualibet tunica primum foramen faciendum est, ut tenta imposita accendatur quæ tenta in extremitatibus, sit gracilis, in medio vera lata, et prædicta pulvere repleta. Nota, quod ad volendum tunica plicaturas ad libitum habere potest, tonitrum vero, faciens quam plurimas plicaturas. Nota, quod duplex poteris facere tonitrum, ac duplex volatile instrumentum, vel tunicam subtiliter in tunica includendo. Dutens's Inquiry, p. 266.

(a) PRINTED by John Day, dwelling over Aldersgate, 1576.

which

which some attribute unto an Almain whose name we find nowhere, as unworthy of memory; as report Blondus and R. Volateranus: the first that used shot to their behalf and profit were, the Venetians, against the inhabitants of Genua, in the yeere of our Lord, a thousand three hundred and four score; howbeit in my judgement this invention was yet more ancient, for that we read in the Chronicle of Alfonsus the XI. king, by just account, of Castille, who at the conquest of the citie of Algezcar, found while he besieged the towne, in the yeare of our redemption, a thousand, three hundred, and fortie and three; that the Moores from within, threw out among the enemyes certain thunders through long mortars, or troughs of iron, and this was almost fortie yeares before that Blondus recordeth.

AGAIN before that, it is reported by the said Alphonfus which seemblably conquer'd Toletam in Spain, that one Petus, bishop of Leon, writeth, that in a certain battail don on the sea, betwixt the King of Tunnye, and Morus, King of Sibilis, whose faction Alphonfus favoured, that the Tunnigenciens threw on their enemyes, certain bombards or tunnes of fire, which by all likelihood might be deemed artillerye, although it were not in such perfection as now, and that was foure hundred yeeres before and more."

To the above accounts it may be added, that iron rockets have been used as military weapons, or machines, in the East Indies time out of mind, and are still in great fashion and estimation.

CAMDEN, in his Life of Queen Elizabeth, says, she was the first that procured gunpowder to be made in England, that she might not pray and pay for it also to her neighbours. (b)

AT first, gunpowder was not corned, but remained in its mealed state;

(b) P. 56. In the work called, Cotton's Abridgment of the Records of the Tower of London, p. 24 there is a strange mistake respecting gunpowder; it being there said, that a pardon was directed to be made out 14 Ed. 3. to Thomas de Brookhall, for a debt of 32 tuns

state; it was then called serpentine powder in several accounts of military stores in the time of Ed. VI. and Elizabeth; there are large quantitys of serpentine powder.

The following Proportions of the Ingredients for making Gunpowder is given by Peter Whiteborne. (c)

The first invention and oldest manner in making serpentine poudor or poudor for ordinaunce.

1.	Saltpeter	1 part
	Brimstone	1 part
	Coles	1 part

The next practis of making poudor for ordinaunce.

2.	Saltpeter	3 parts
	Brimstone	3 parts
	Coles	3 parts

Poudor for ordinaunce of a newer making.

3.	Saltpeter	10 partes
	Brimstone	3 partes
	Coles	3 partes

Poudor for ordinaunce not so olde.

4.	Saltpeter	12 partes
	Brimstone	3 partes
	Coles	2 partes

Poudor for ordinaunce not verie olde.

5.	Saltpeter	9 partes
	Brimstone	2 partes
	Coles	3 partes

Poudor used of late daies for handgunnes.

6.	Saltpeter	4 partes
	Brimstone	1 parte
	Coles	1 parte

tuns of powder, and in the index it is added by way of note, (before its pretended invention). The original in the rolls of parliament stands thus: Item, pur Thomas de Brookhall, pur trent & deux toneux de pomadre, des quex il est charge sur son acounte du temps qu'il estoit assigne de faire divers purveances a l'oeps le roi en le countee de Kent."

Pomadre, is cyder, instead of gunpowder, and probably provided for the king's drinking.

(c) THIS work is entitled "Certaine Wayes for the ordering of Souldiours in Battelray, and setting of Battayles after diverse Fashions, with their Maner of marching: and also Figures of certayne new Plattes for Fortification of Townes: and moreover how to make Saltpeter, Gunpowder, and diverse Sortes of Fireworks or Wilde-fire, with other Things appertayning to the Warres, gathered and set forth by Peter Whiteborne. Imprinted at London by W. Williamson, for Jhon Wight. Anno 1573."

Poudor

Pouder for ordinaunce used not long agon.

7.	Saltpeter	20 partes
	Brimstone	3 partes
	Coles	10 partes

Pouder for ordinaunce used of latter daies.

8.	Saltpeter	100 partes
	Brimstone	10 partes
	Coles	26 partes

Grosse pouder of a newer sorte.

9.	Saltpeter	100 partes
	Brimstone	20 partes
	Coles	37 partes

Grosse pouder of a newer making.

11.	Saltpeter	2 partes
	Brimstone	1 parte
	Coles	1 parte

Harkabus pouder of a newer making.

12.	Saltpeter	3 partes
	Brimstone	1 parte
	Coles of willow stickes ..	1 parte

Fine pouder of newer making.

13.	Saltpeter often refined ..	5 partes
	Brimstone	1 parte
	Coles of young hasell stickes	1 parte

Grosse pouder of newer making.

14.	Saltpeter refined	3 partes
	Brimstone	1 parte
	Willow coles	2 partes

Pouder of newer making.

15.	Saltpeter	10 partes
	Brimstone	2 partes
	Willow coles	3 partes

Harkabus pouder used nowe adayes.

16.	Saltpeter very often refined	10 partes
	Brimstone	1 parte
	Coles made of hasell twigges, with the barke pilled	1 parte

Handgun pouder of a newer making.

17.	Saltpeter refined	27 partes
	Brimstone	3 partes
	Coles of hasell having their rindes pulled off ..	3 partes

Handgun pouder of a stronger and of a newer making.

18.	Saltpetre refined	7 partes
	Brimstone	1 parte
	Coles of young hasell ..	1 parte

Finer and stronger handgun powder.

19.	Saltpeter diverse times re- fined	7 partes
	Brimstone	1 parte
	Coles of young hasell twigges, having their rindes pulled off	1 parte

Grosse pouder used now a dayes.

20.	Saltpeter	4 partes
	Brimstone	1 parte
	Willowe coles	1 parte

Grosse pouder used nowe adays.

21.	Saltpeter	20 partes
	Brimstone	4 partes
	Willow coles	5 partes

Hande

Hande gun powder used nowe adaies.			Hande gun powder used nowe adaies.		
22.	Saltpeter refined drie	48 partes	23.	Saltpeter refined	18 partes
	Brimstone cetrine	7 partes		Brimstone	2 partes
	Hafell coles	2 partes		Hafel coles	3 partes

NYE, in his Treatise on Fireworks, gives the proportions as hereunder, with the dates when they were used.

THE making of gunpowder after the most ancient manner, anno 1380.

Saltpeter, brimstone, charcole, equal parts.

ANNO, 1410, faltpeter 3 parts, brimstone 2 parts, charcole 2 parts.

ANNO, 1480, faltpeter 8 parts, brimstone, 3 parts, charcole, 3 parts.

THE making best powder, 1520, faltpeter 4 parts, charcole 1 part, brimstone, 1 part.

ANNO, 1647, the best fort now made, faltpeter, 6 parts, brimstone, 1 part, charcole, 1 part.

THE musket powder is now commonly made of faltpeter 5 parts, brimstone 1 part, charcole 1 part; cannon powder, faltpeter 4 parts, 1 part charcole, 1 part brimstone. (d)

AT

(d) THESE were the most approved compositions, but diverse conceits have prevailed at different periods respecting the strengthening of gunpowder by the addition of various substances, such as to every pound of brimstone, an ounce of mercury, or to every pound of faltpeter, a quarter of an ounce of sal armoniac; to sprinkle the powder with brandy, or spirits of wine; and Ward has the following receipt to make a gun shoot half as far again as its usual distance with the same quantity of powder; this is effected, he says, by taking of white case-pepper of the soundest cornes, and steepe them 24 houres in strong aqua vitæ, then being taken out and dryed in the sunne, so that they may not danke the powder; then charging the peece with the usual charge of powder, you must take so many of these pepper-cornes as will cover the circumference of the bore, and being put downe close with the sticke to the powder; then putting next to the pepper the bullet, this being tryed at any marke, it shall be sensibly found to convey the bullet with such a violence,

AT what time cannon (e) were first used in Europe is not clearly ascertained; if we may credit John Barbour, archdeacon of Aberdeen, King Edward III. had artillery in his first campaign against the Scotch, A.D. 1327; these the archdeacon calls (f) crakys of war; Father Daniel does not carry his claim in behalf of the French so high by some years, as he only cites a record preserved in the Chamber of accounts at Paris, to prove that the French had and used cannon in the year 1338. (g)

VILANI, an Italian author, says, the English had cannon at the battle of Cressy, in 1346; this, however is not mentioned by Froissart, or any other of the many historians who have described that battle.

LUIGI COLLADO states the introduction of cannon to have taken place in 1366; and other authors say, that cannon was first used by the Venetians against the Genoese, in 1378.

THESE machines when first invented, were rather mortars than

a violence, farre beyond the accustomed shooting, and being charged without this ingredient, the bullet shall not come little more than half the way: Thomas Diggs, in his *Stratoticos*, likewise mentions an extraordinary degree of science possessed by his father, who could, as he says, by reflection of glasses, fire powder, and discharge ordnance many miles distant; which, with several other curious matters, he partly acquired by the "aide he had by one old written book of the same Bacon's Experiments, that by strange adventure, or rather destinie, came to his hands." By Bacon, he meant the learned Friar of that name: I do not assert the truth of these matters.

(e) CANNON is derived from canna, a large hollow reed.

(f) IN his metrical life of King Robert Bruce, p. 408, and 409.

Twa novelties that day the saw,	That they brought then of great beautie,
That forouth in Scotland had been nane,	And also wonder for to see;
Timbers for helmes was the ane,	The other crakys were of war,
	That they before heard never air.

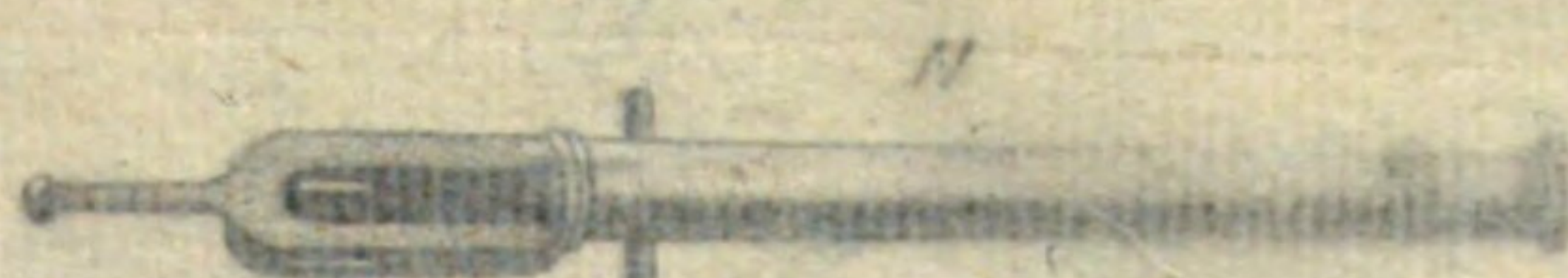
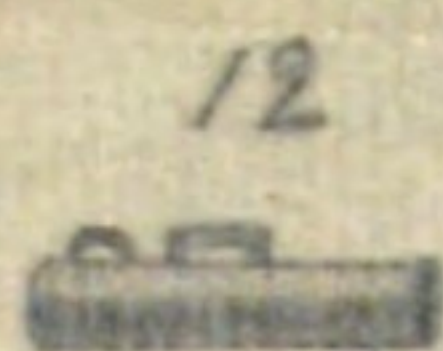
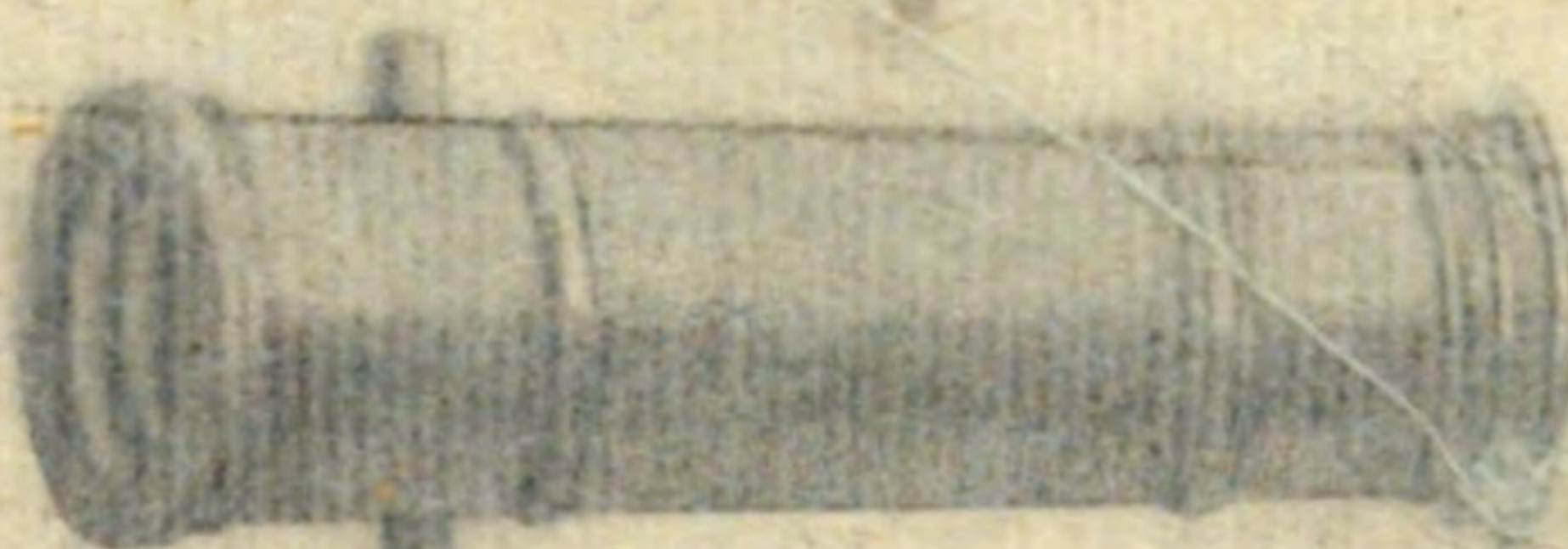
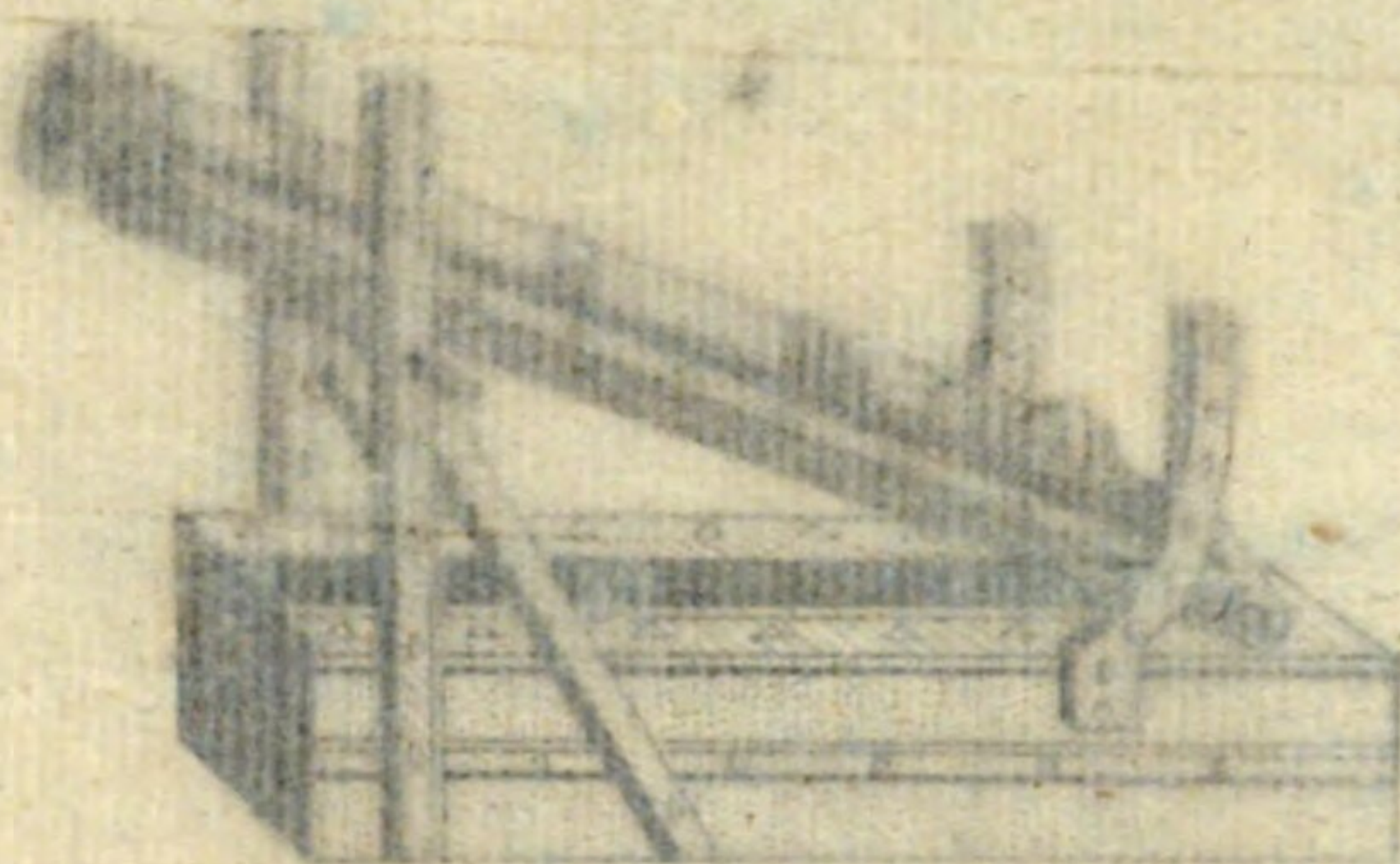
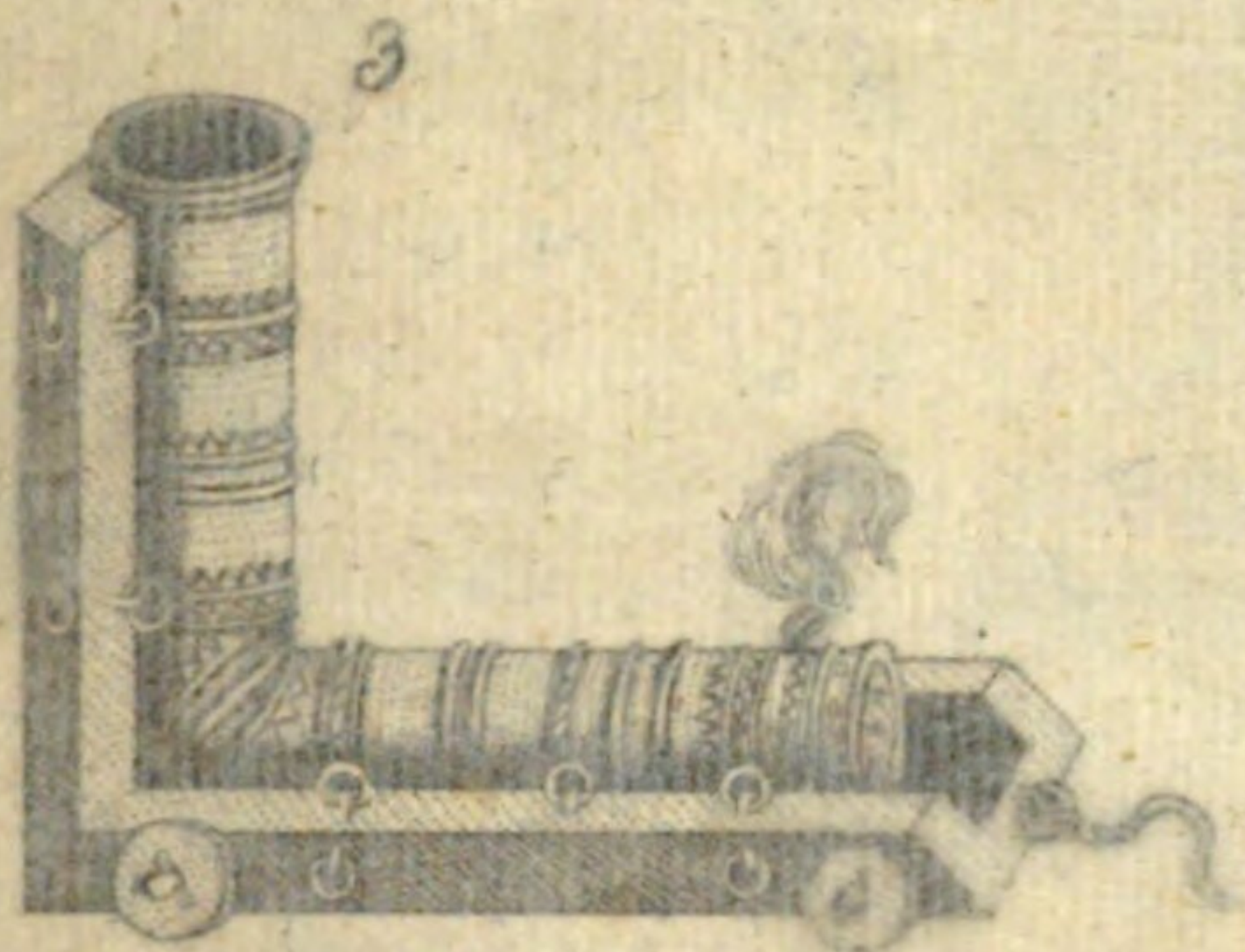
(g) IN the accounts of Bartholomew de Drach, treasurer of war for the year 1388, there is the following charge: To Henry de Faumechon, for powder and other things necessary for the canons which were before Puy Guillaume Puy Guillaume, is a castle in Auvergne.

cannon, most of them having chambers; they were in general constructed of iron bars, soldered or welded together, and strengthened with iron hoops; others were made of plates of iron rolled up and fortified with hoops of the same metal; of the first kind, there are several remaining; some I think at Woolwich. One belonging to Pooley, Esq. in Suffolk; and another well known by the name of Mons Meg, now in the Tower, are here engraved, and also several of those hooped guns, which were loaded by chambers fixed in at the breech, these are kept in a cellar at Peel, in the Isle of Man: canons called also bombards, (h) were at first chiefly made of hammered iron, but in process of time many were cast of that composition, named bell or gun metal; they were also sometimes made of plates of iron and copper, with lead run between them: one of these sort of guns was taken up on the coast of Ireland by a fisherman, and is supposed to have belonged to the Spanish armada: see Col. Vallency's account of it in the note below: (i) another gun

(h) FROM the Greek word bombos, expressing the noise made by them in firing; great guns were afterwards named from serpents, as the basilisk, colouverine, &c. some of the large bombards, were jocularly called, bourgeoise, from their constant residence in one place, their weight rendering them inconvenient to move.

(i) THE inside is a tube of copper soldered; the length of the piece, this tube is covered with a tube of plated, or hammered iron, as it could not be made to shut close upon the copper, the interval is filled with melted lead, over the iron tube is lead, then plated iron where necessary to fortify it from the trunnions to the breech, and over all sheathing copper, lapping over one another, as may be seen by the drawing. The dolphins are broke, the heads and tails remain; the cascabel broke. The trunnions are composed of iron cylinders, half an inch diameter, covered with lead, probably they were also covered with sheet copper, they are much bruised; the ornaments are punched. I send you some pieces of the outside copper, and of the lead coatings, but could not rip off a piece of the iron tube, which is about an eighth of an inch in thickness where I opened it, which was half way between the trunnions and the muzzle. I do not recollect this construction of a cannon described by any of our old authors. This gun which is nearly a four pounder, was taken up in Kinsale harbour, by some fishermen in their nets. It is supposed to have belonged to the Spanish armada. See a delineation of it, artillery,
plate

fig 1



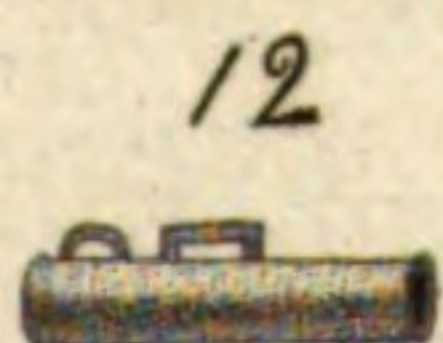
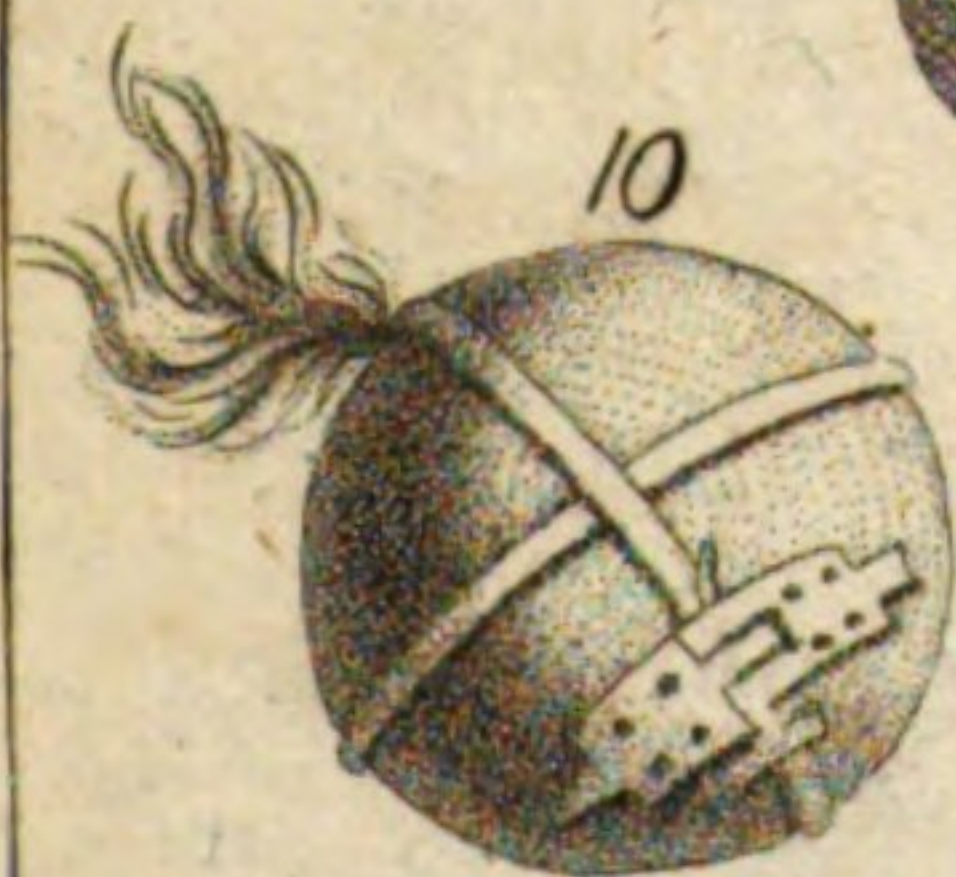
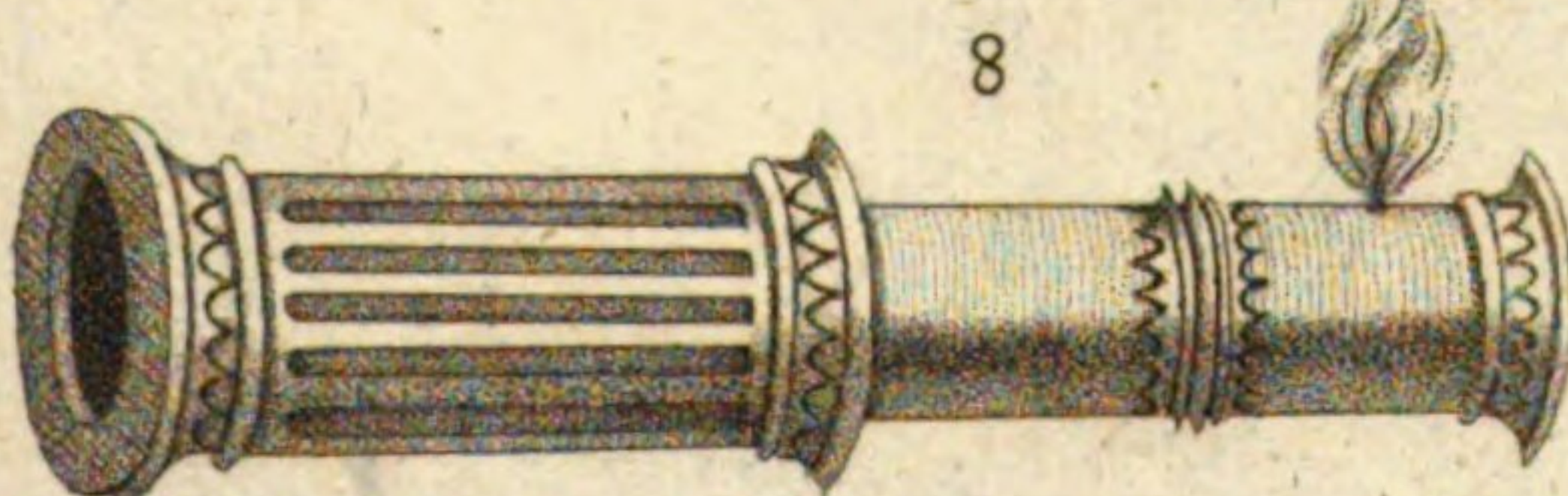
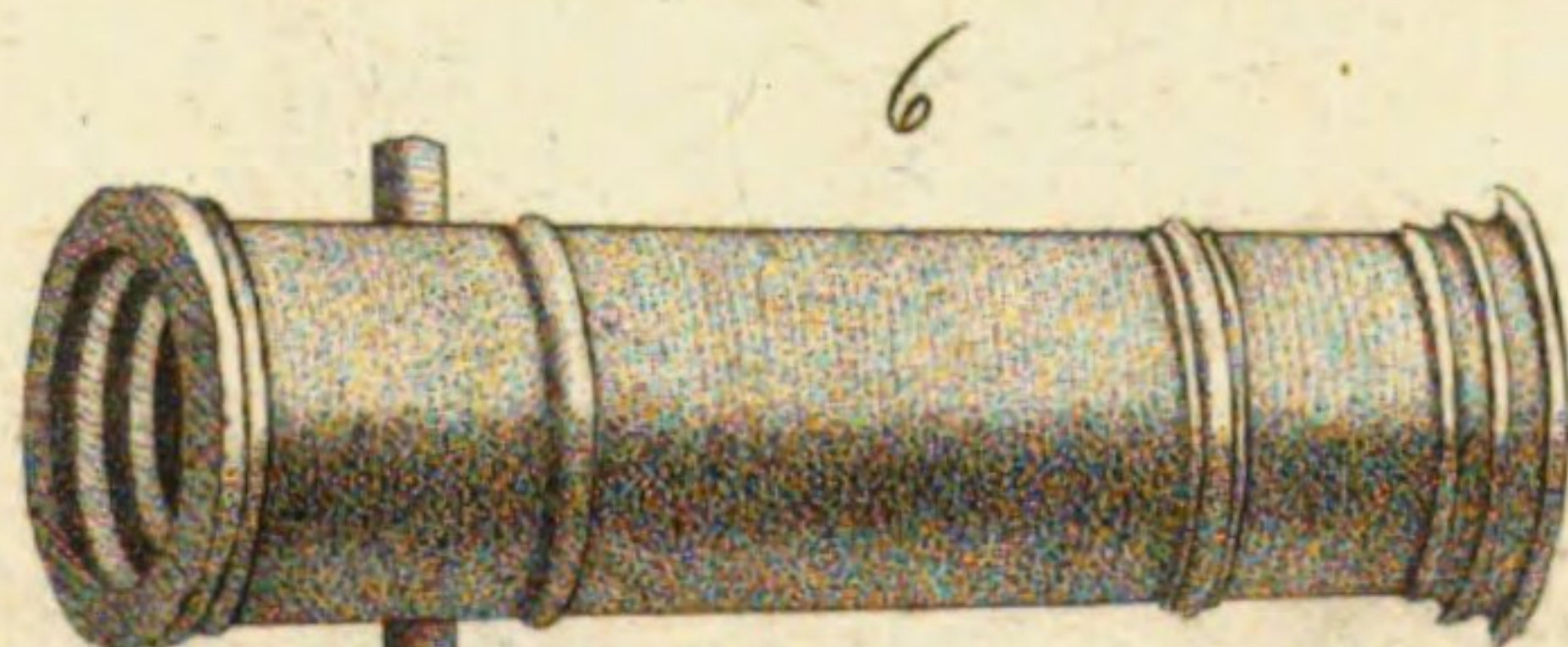
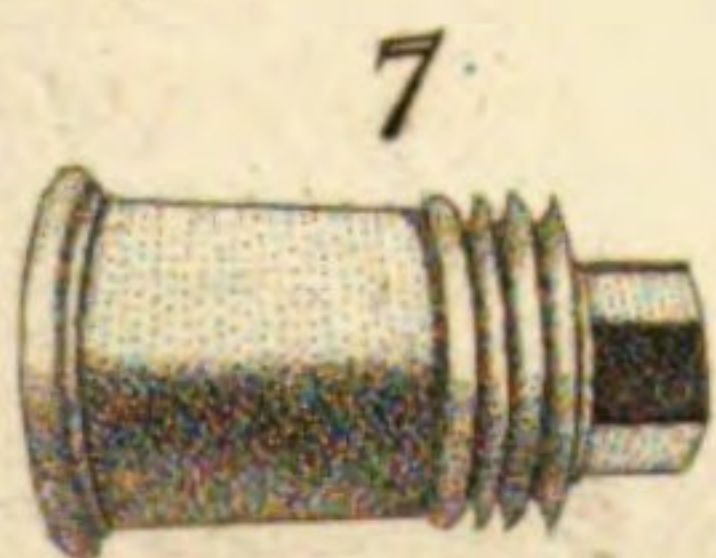
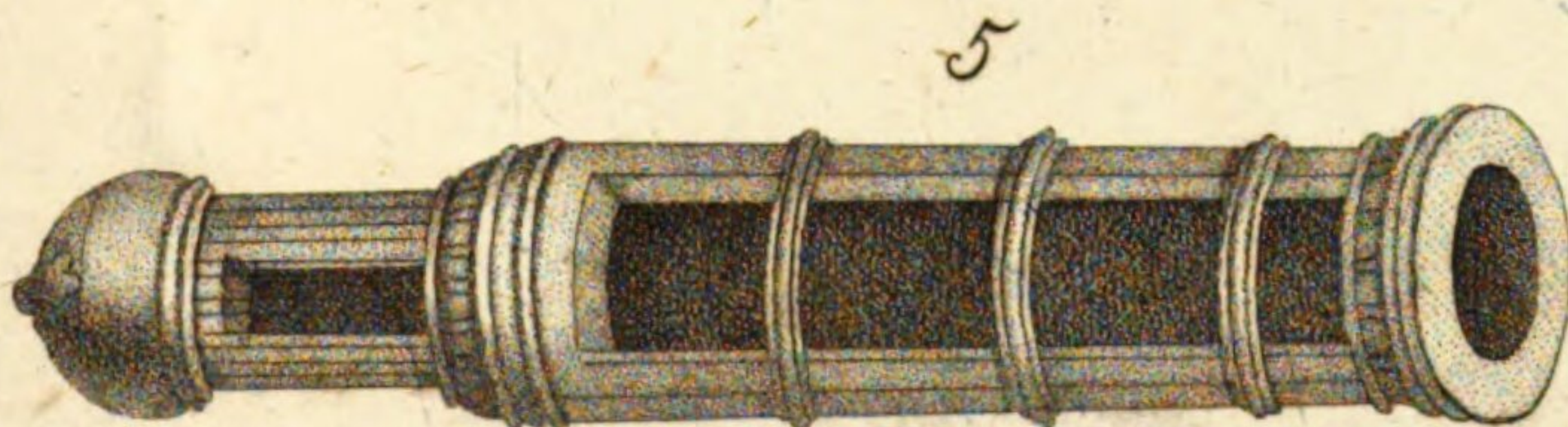
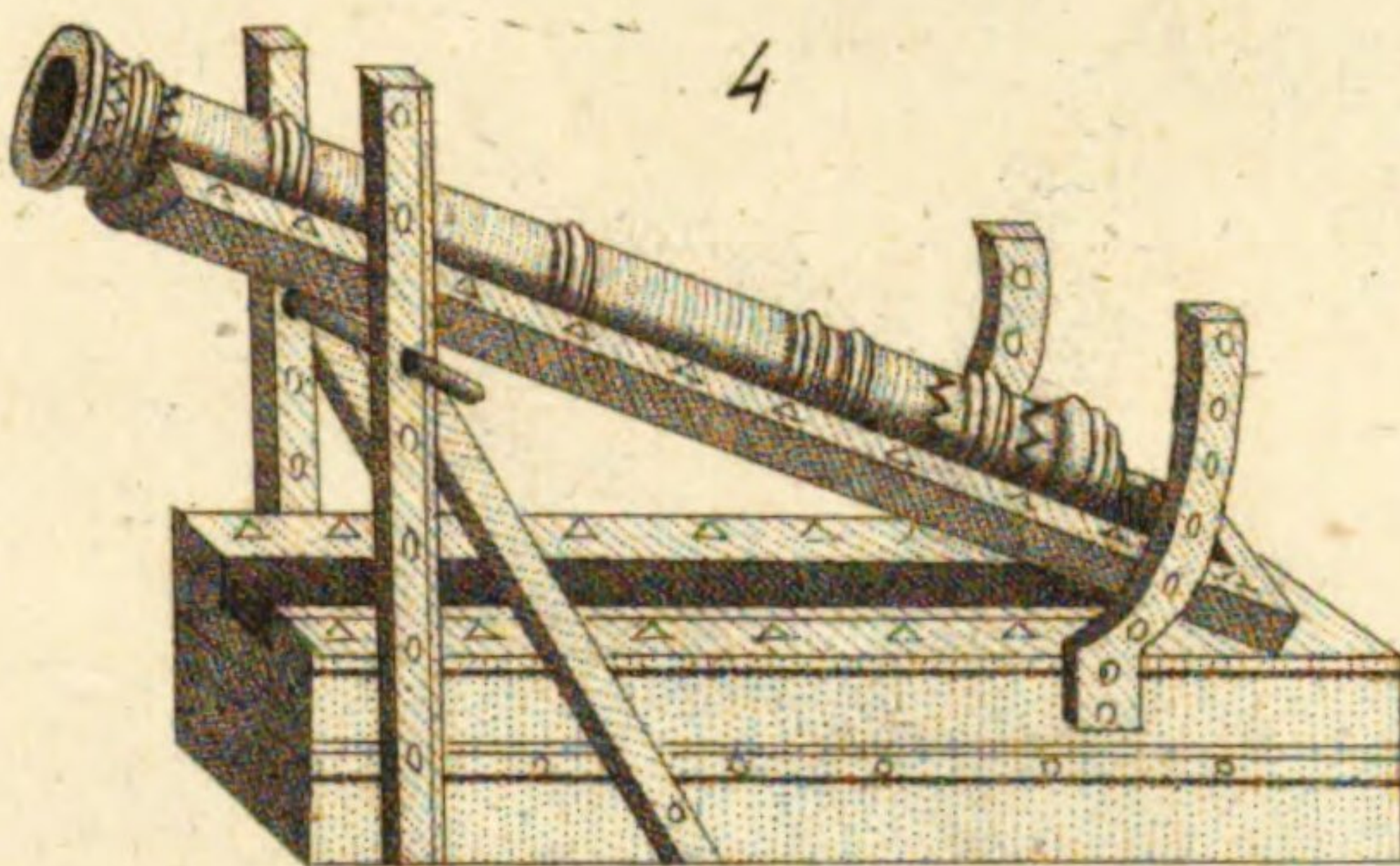
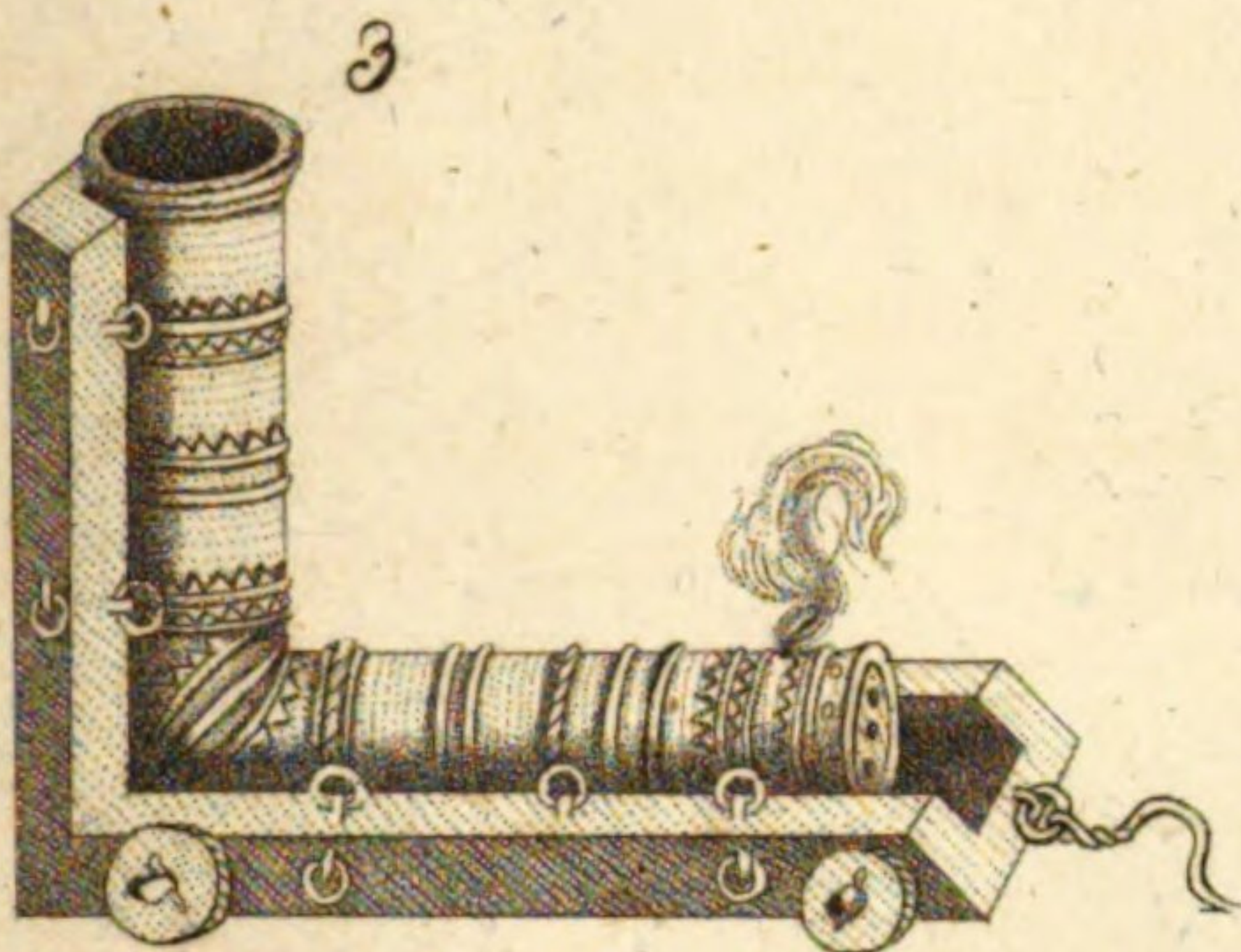
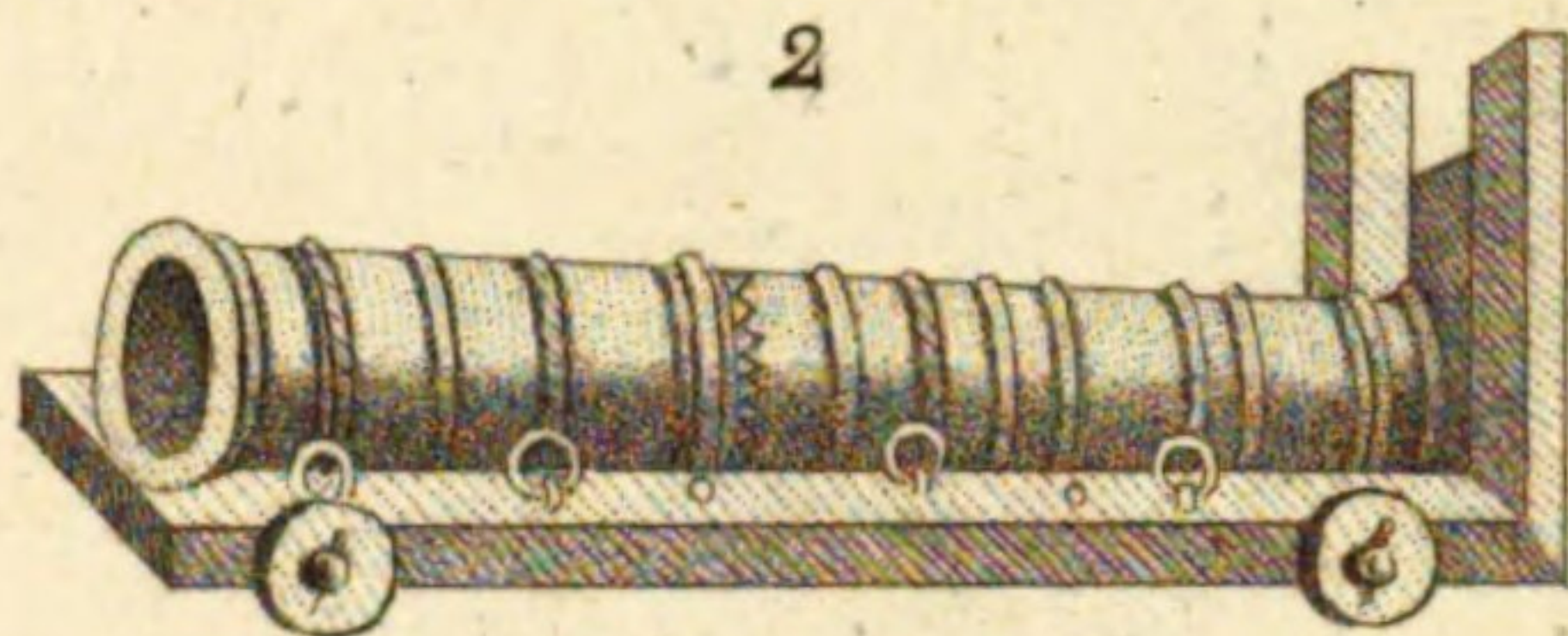
Pat^d for S. Hooper

HISTORY OF

cannon, most of them having chambers; they were in general constructed of iron bars, soldered or welded together, and strengthened with iron hoops; others were made of plates of iron rolled up and fortified with hoops of the same metal; of the first kind, there are several remaining; some I think at Woolwich. One belonging to Pooley, Esq. in Suffolk; and another well known by the name of Mons Meg, now in the Tower, are here engraved, and also several of those hooped guns, which were loaded by chambers fixed in at the breech, these are kept in a cellar at Peel, in the Isle of Man: canons called also bombards, (h) were at first chiefly made of hammered iron, but in process of time many were cast of that composition, named bell or gun metal; they were also sometimes made of plates of iron and copper, with lead run between them: one of these sort of guns was taken up on the coast of Ireland by a fisherman, and is supposed to have belonged to the Spanish armada: see Col. Vallency's account of it in the note below: (i) another
gun

(h) From the Greek word *bombos*, expressing the noise made by them in firing; great guns were afterwards named from serpents, as the basilisk, colouverine, &c. some of the large bombards, were jocularly called, *bourgeoise*, from their constant residence in one place, their weight rendering them inconvenient to move.

(i) THE inside is a tube of copper soldered; the length of the piece, this tube is covered with a tube of plated, or hammered iron, as it could not be made to shut close upon the copper, the interval is filled with melted lead, over the iron tube is lead, then plated iron where necessary to fortify it from the trunnions to the breech, and over all sheathing copper, lapping over one another, as may be seen by the drawing. The dolphins are broke, the heads and tails remain; the cascabel broke. The trunnions are composed of iron cylinders, half an inch diameter, covered with lead, probably they were also covered with sheet copper, they are much bruised; the ornaments are punched. I send you some pieces of the outside copper, and of the lead coatings, but could not rip off a piece of the iron tube, which is about an eighth of an inch in thickness where I opened it, which was half way between the trunnions and the muzzle. I do not recollect this construction of a cannon described by any of our old authors. This gun which is nearly a four pounder, was taken up in Kinsale harbour, by some fishermen in their nets. It is supposed to have belonged to the Spanish armada. See a delineation of it, artillery,
plate



Pub. d for S Hooper

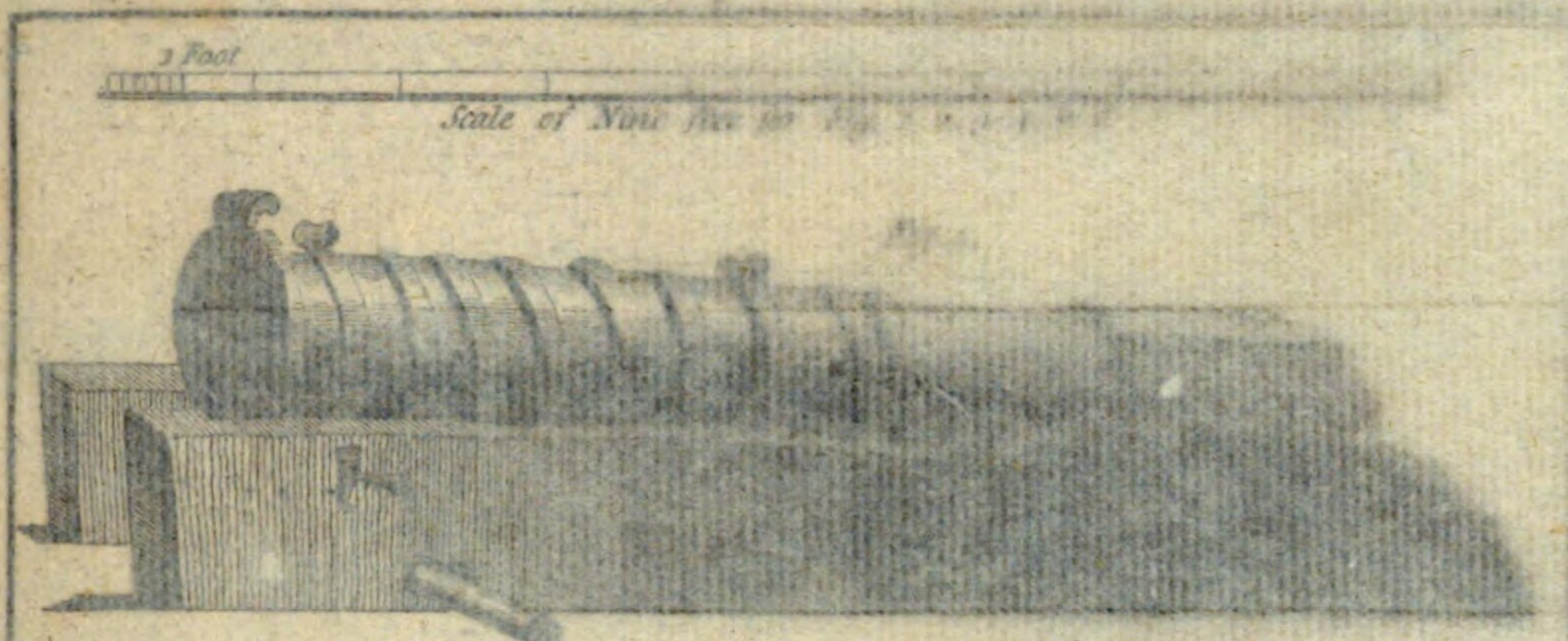


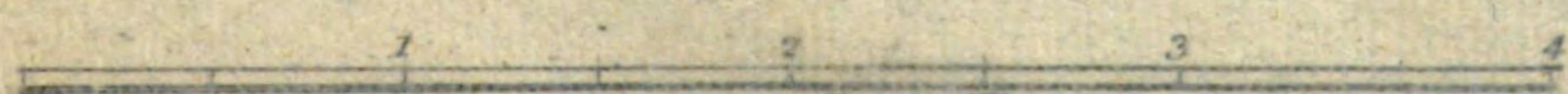
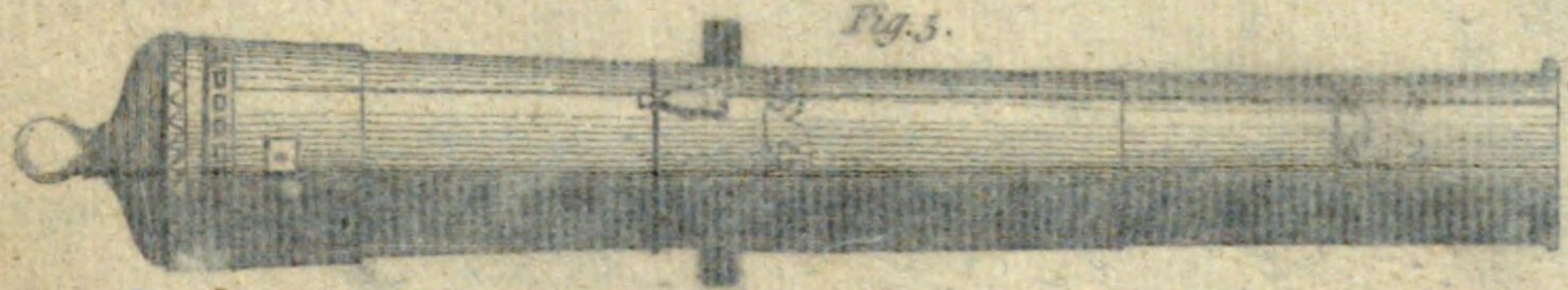
Fig. 2.



Fig. 4.



Fig. 5.

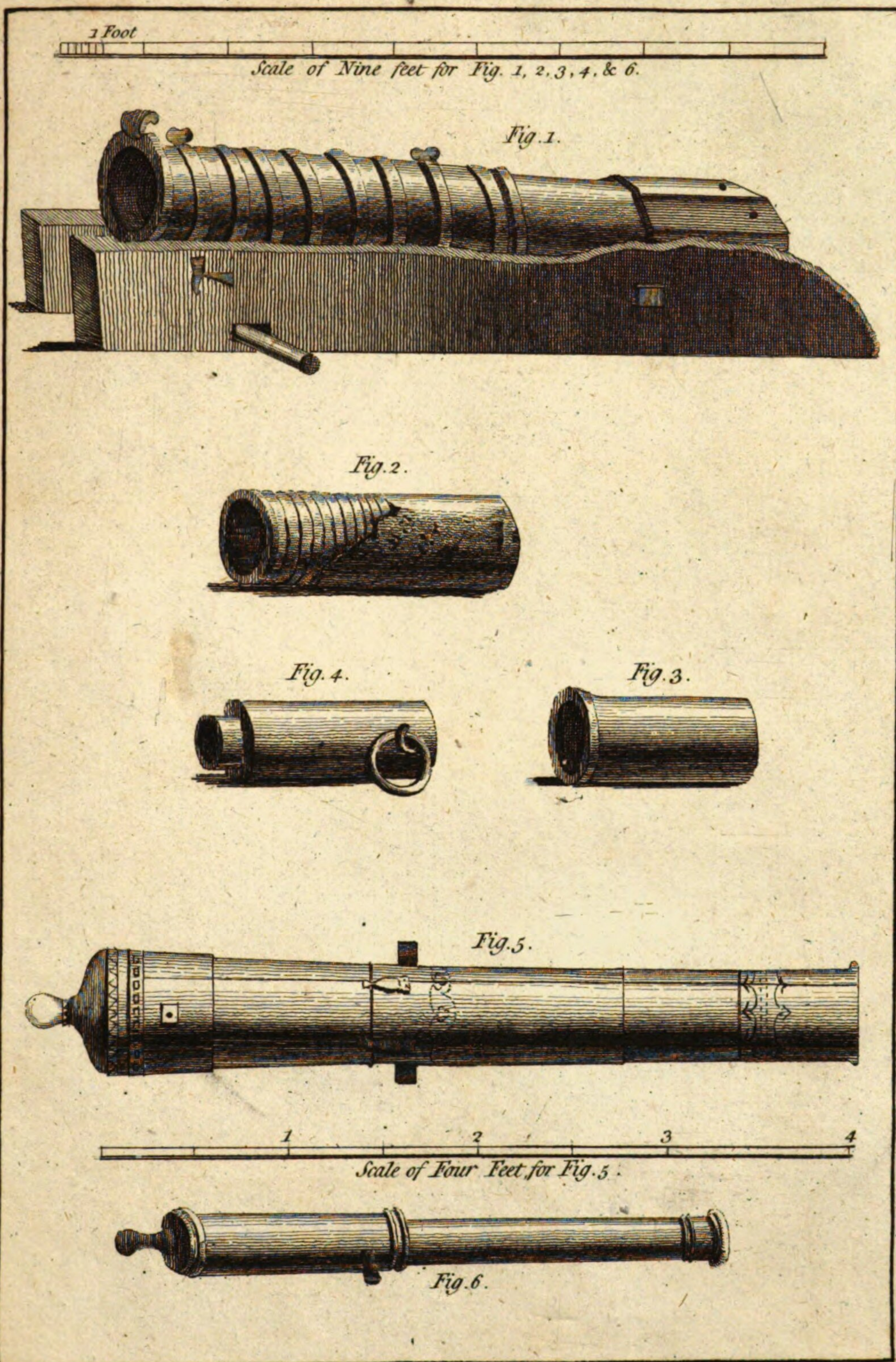


Scale of Four Feet for Fig. 5.



Fig. 6.

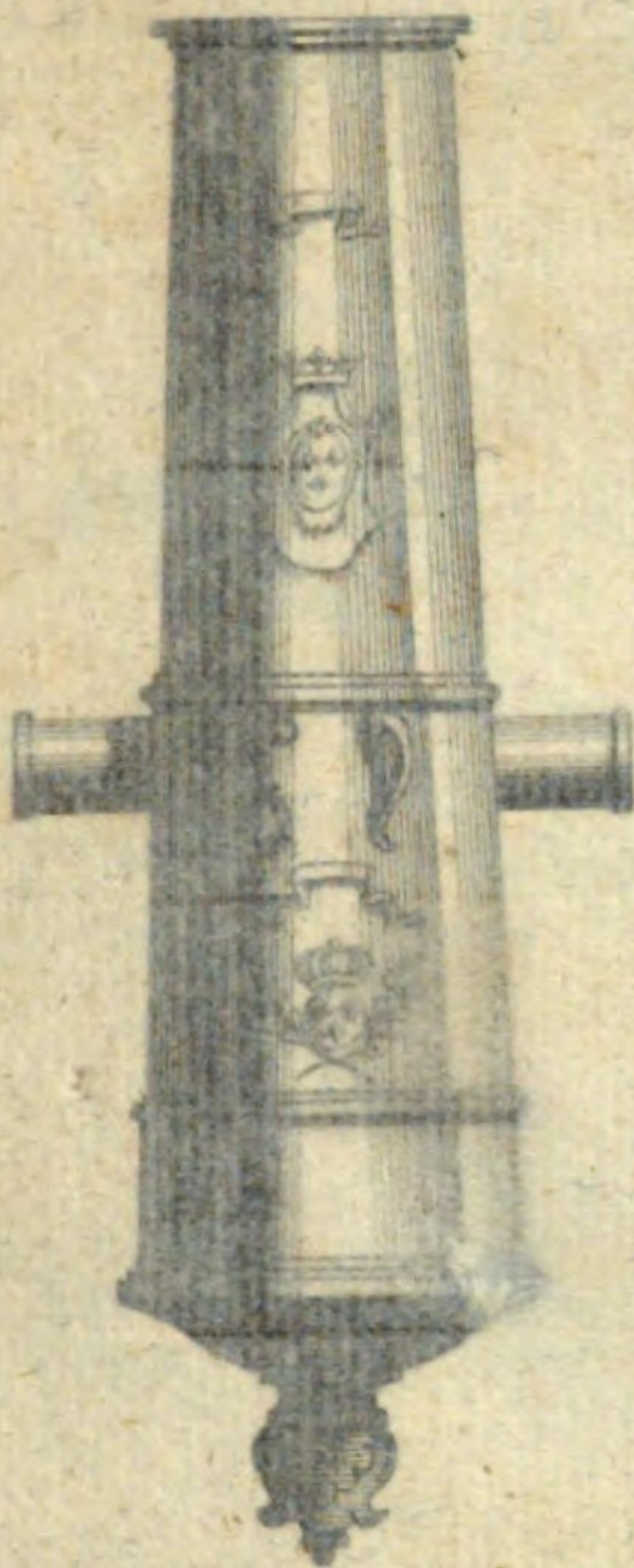
Printed by S. & J. Smith



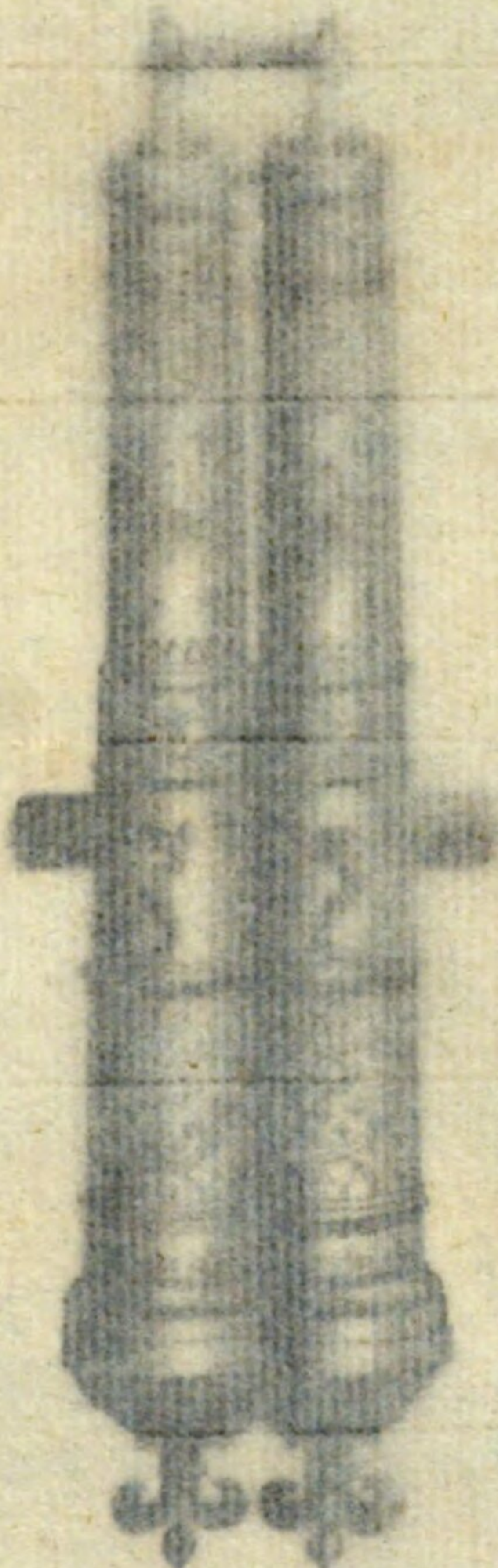
Prattent Sculp

Pub. 28 Dec. 1786 by J. Hooper

Triple Cannon



Section of the breech of the Triple Cannon.



Twin Cannon



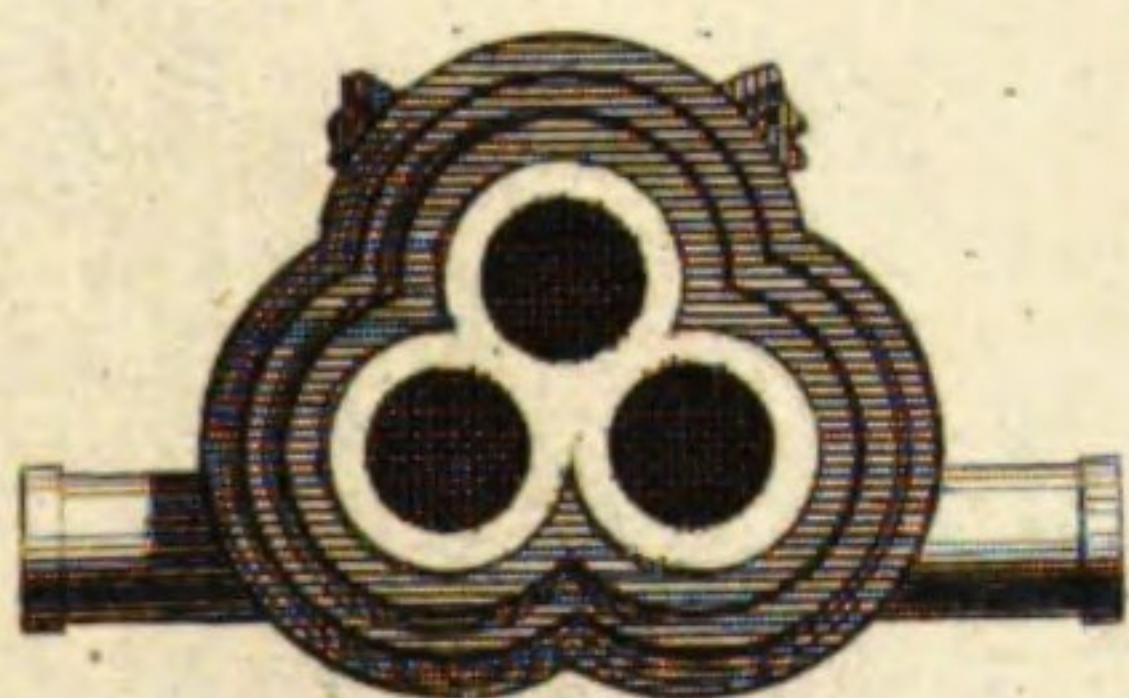
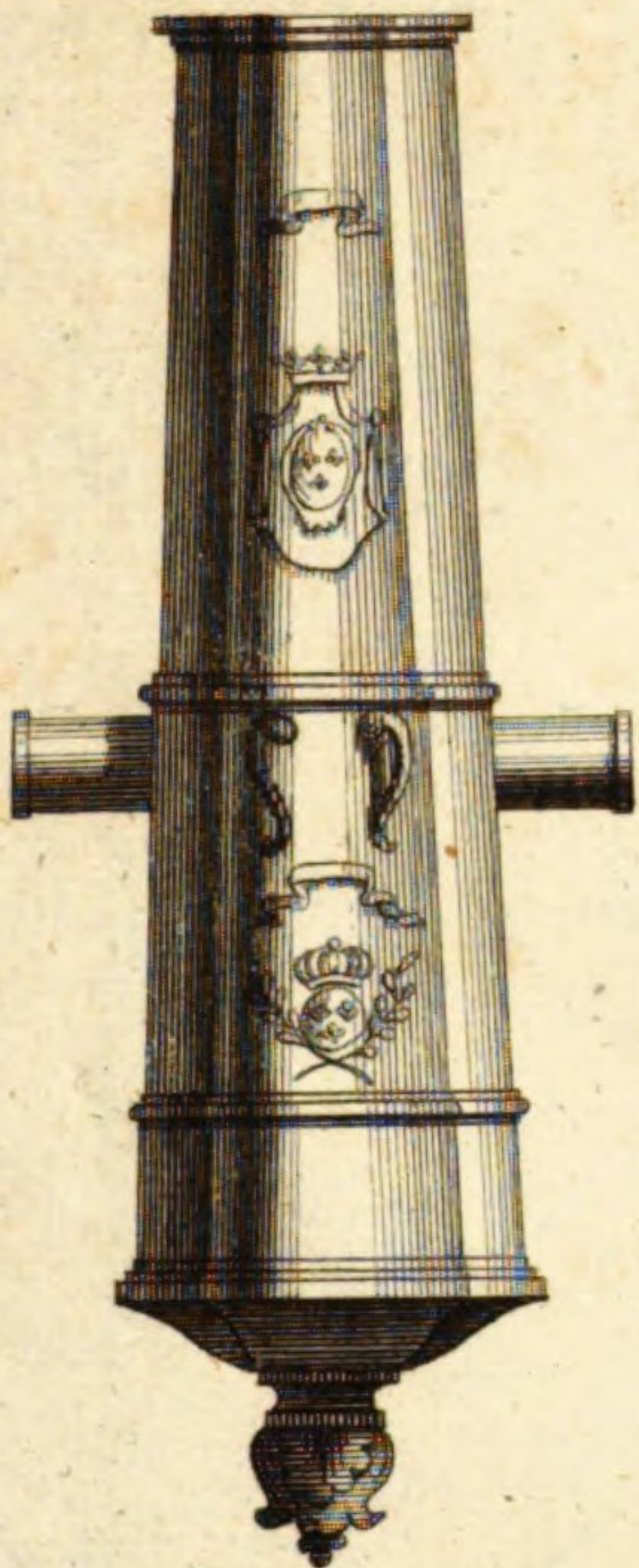
Ancient Screw piece.



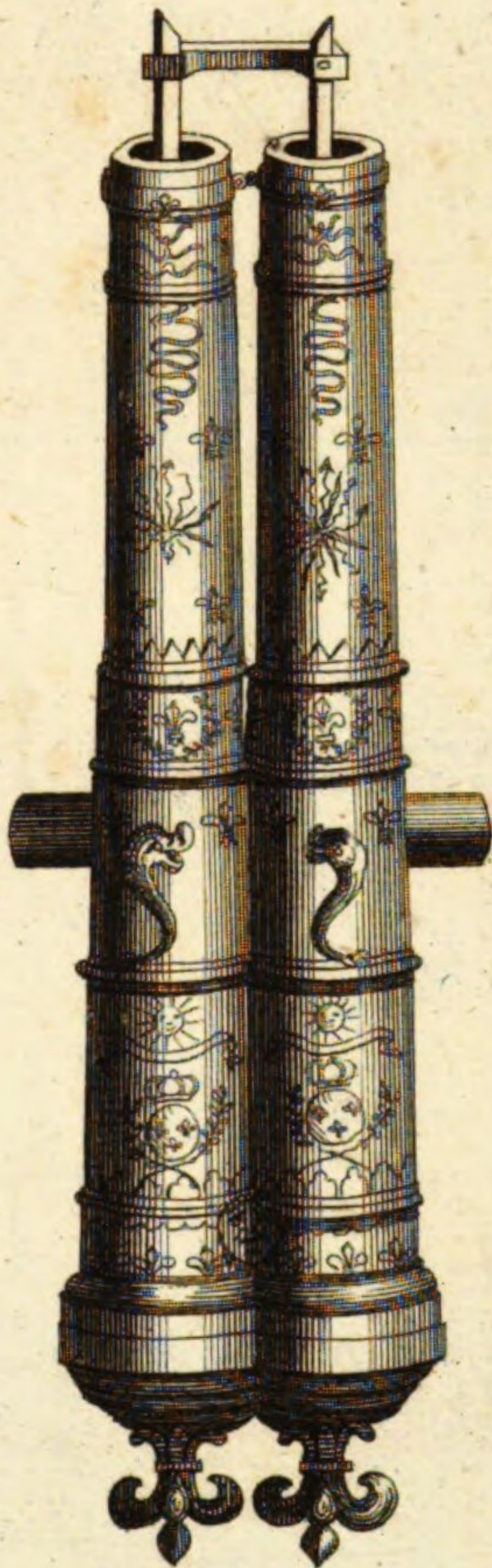
Engraved by J. H. St. John, 1778

EXTRAORDINARY PIECES OF ARTILLERY.

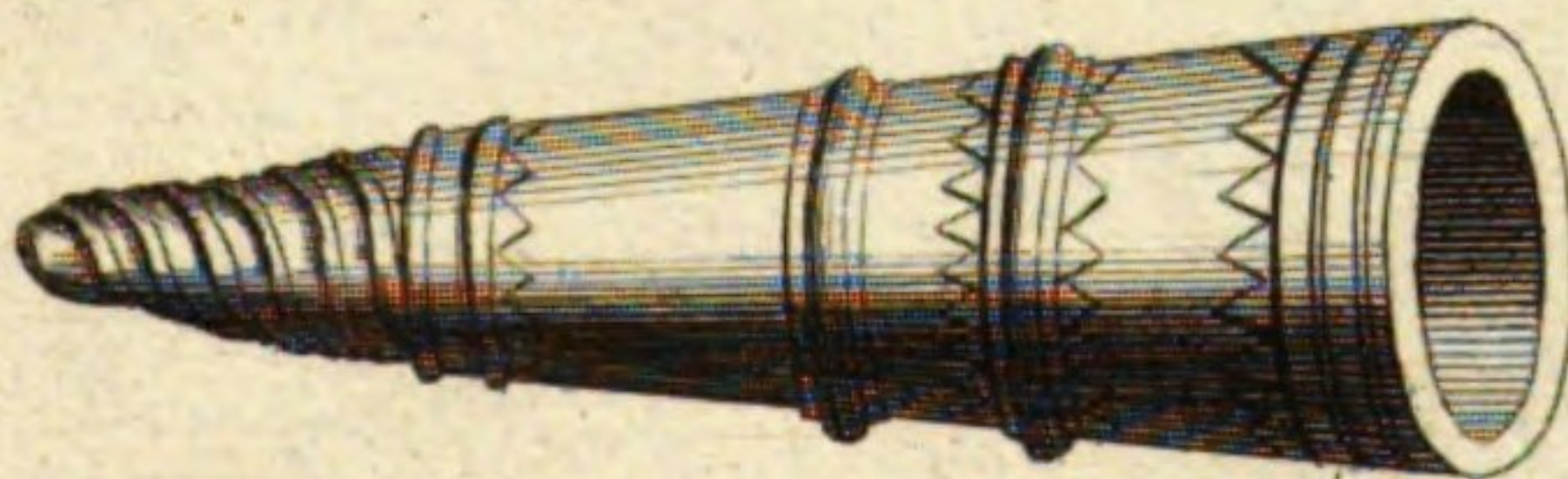
Triple Cannon



Section of the breech of the Triple Cannon.

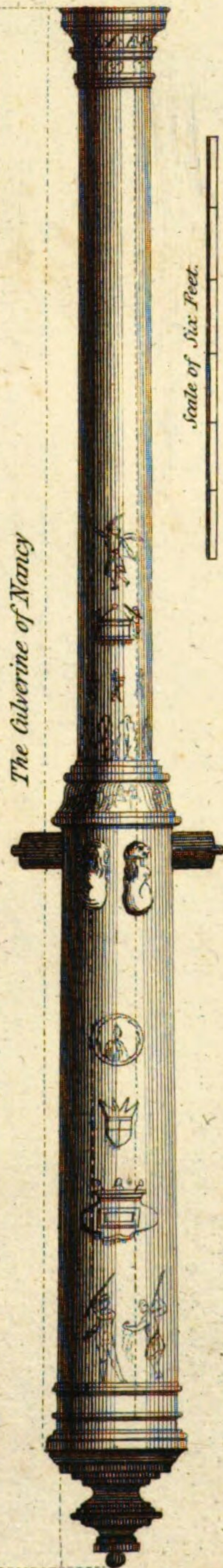


Twin Cannon



Ancient Screw-piece.

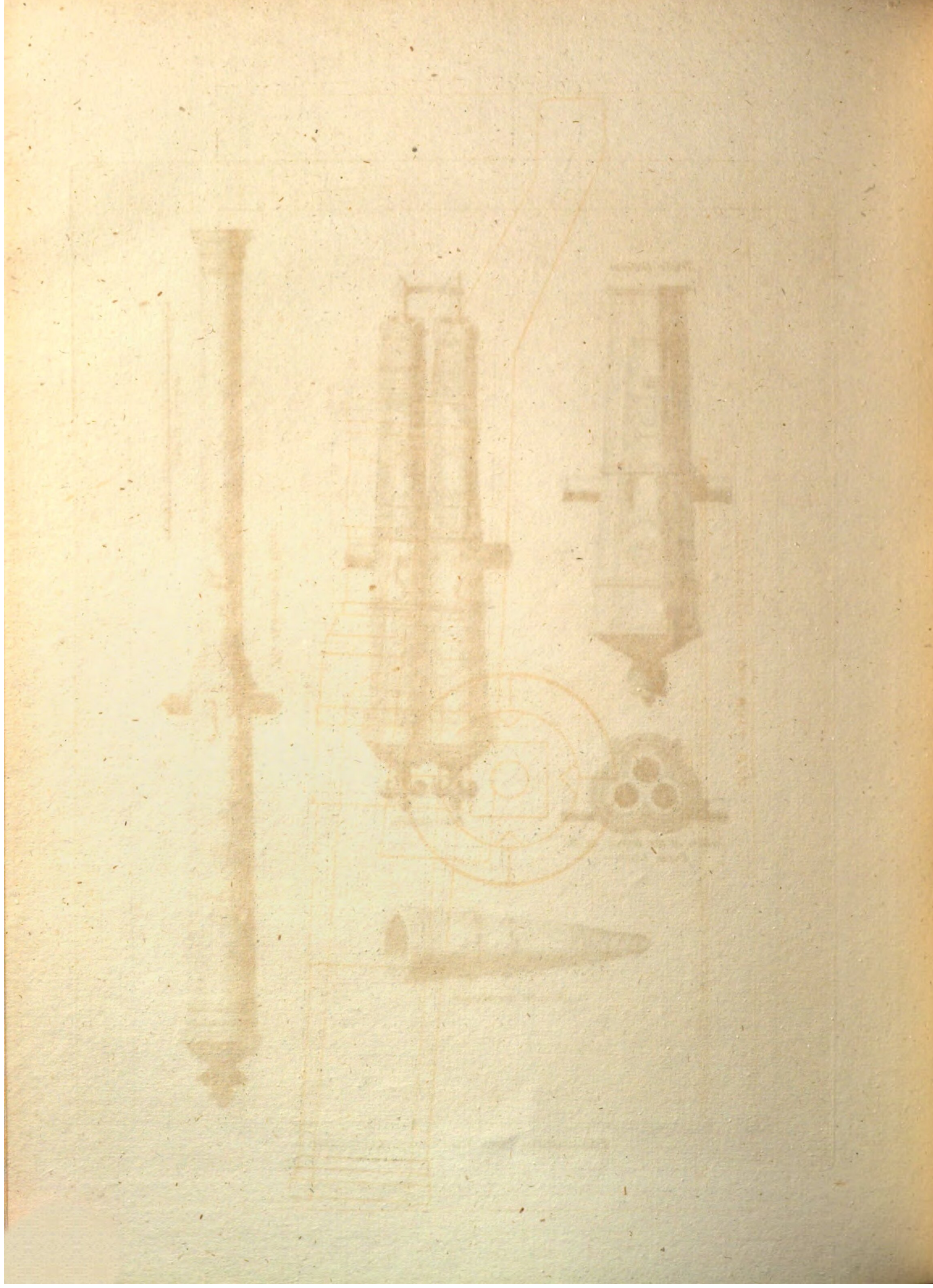
The Culverine of Nancy

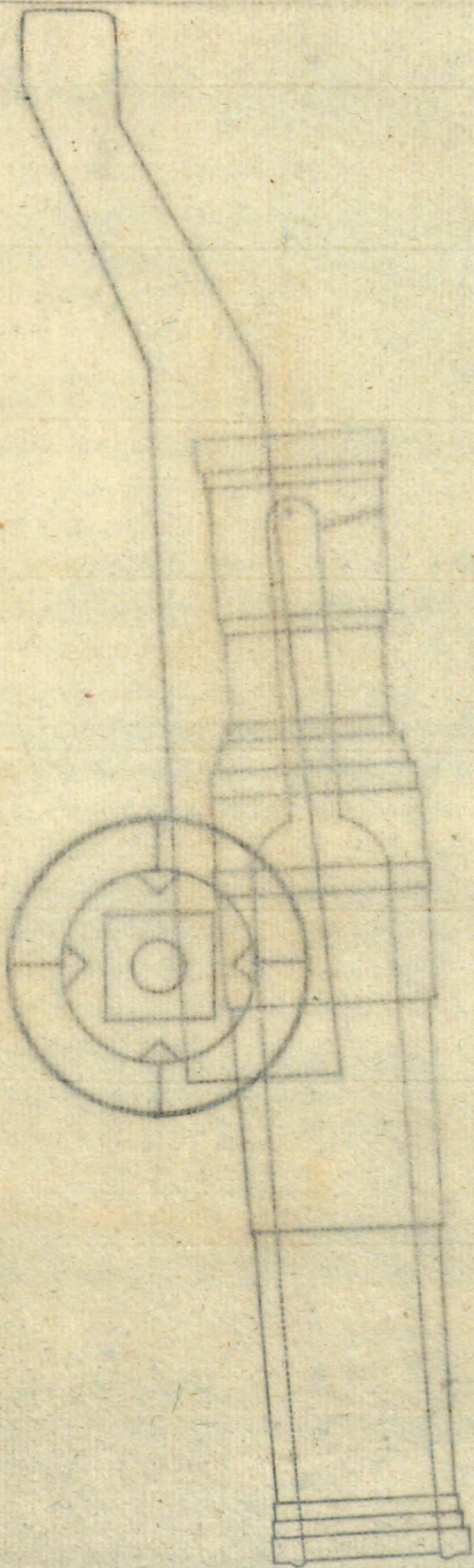


Scale of Six Feet.

Published by J. Hooper, 31. July 1788.

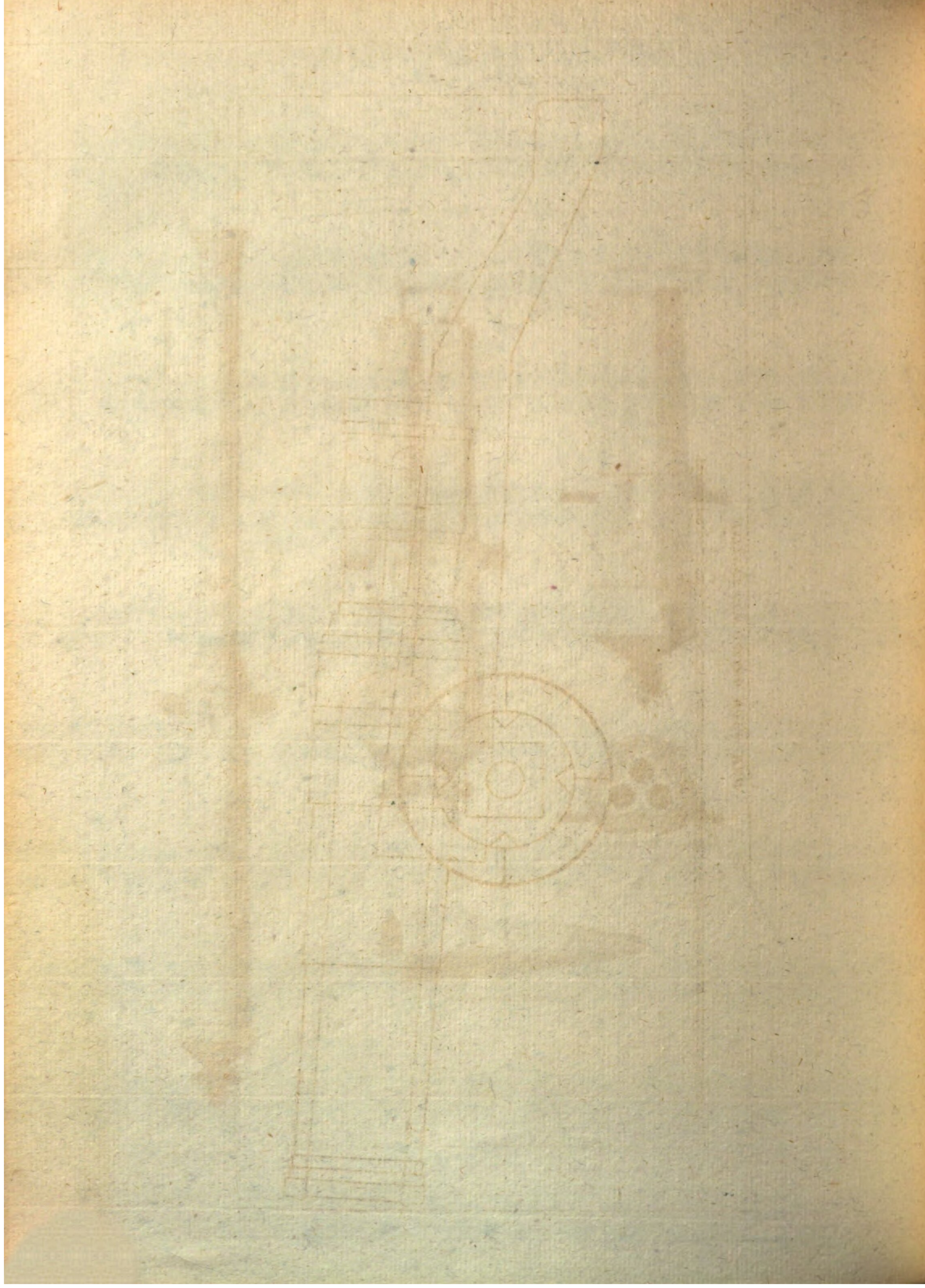
EXTRAORDINARY PIECES OF ARTILLERY.

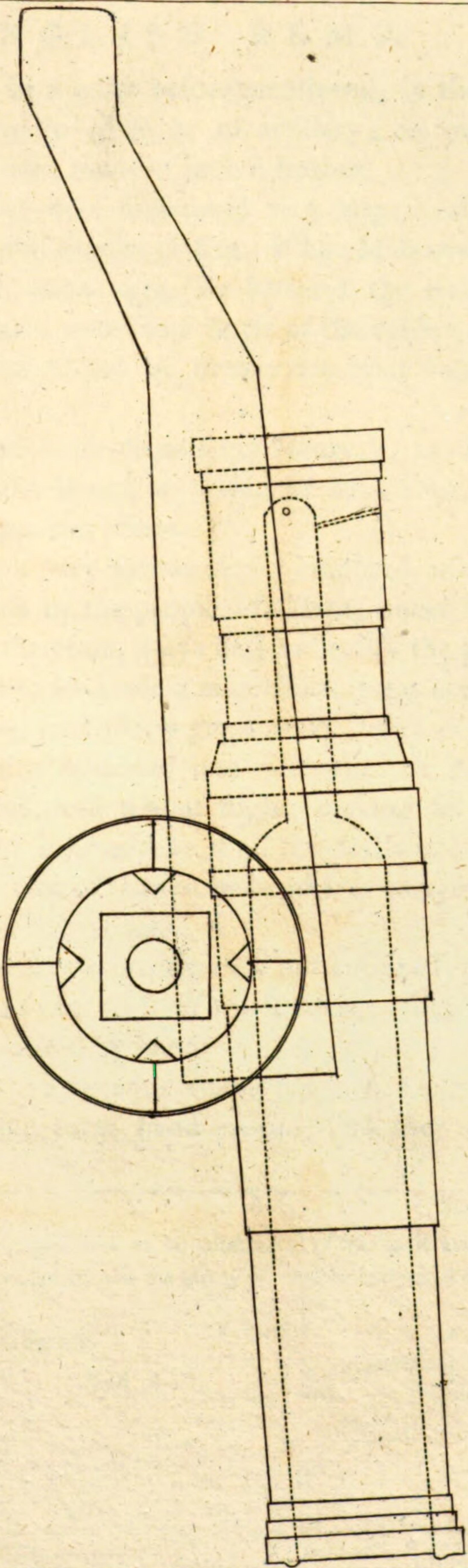




Scale of Feet.

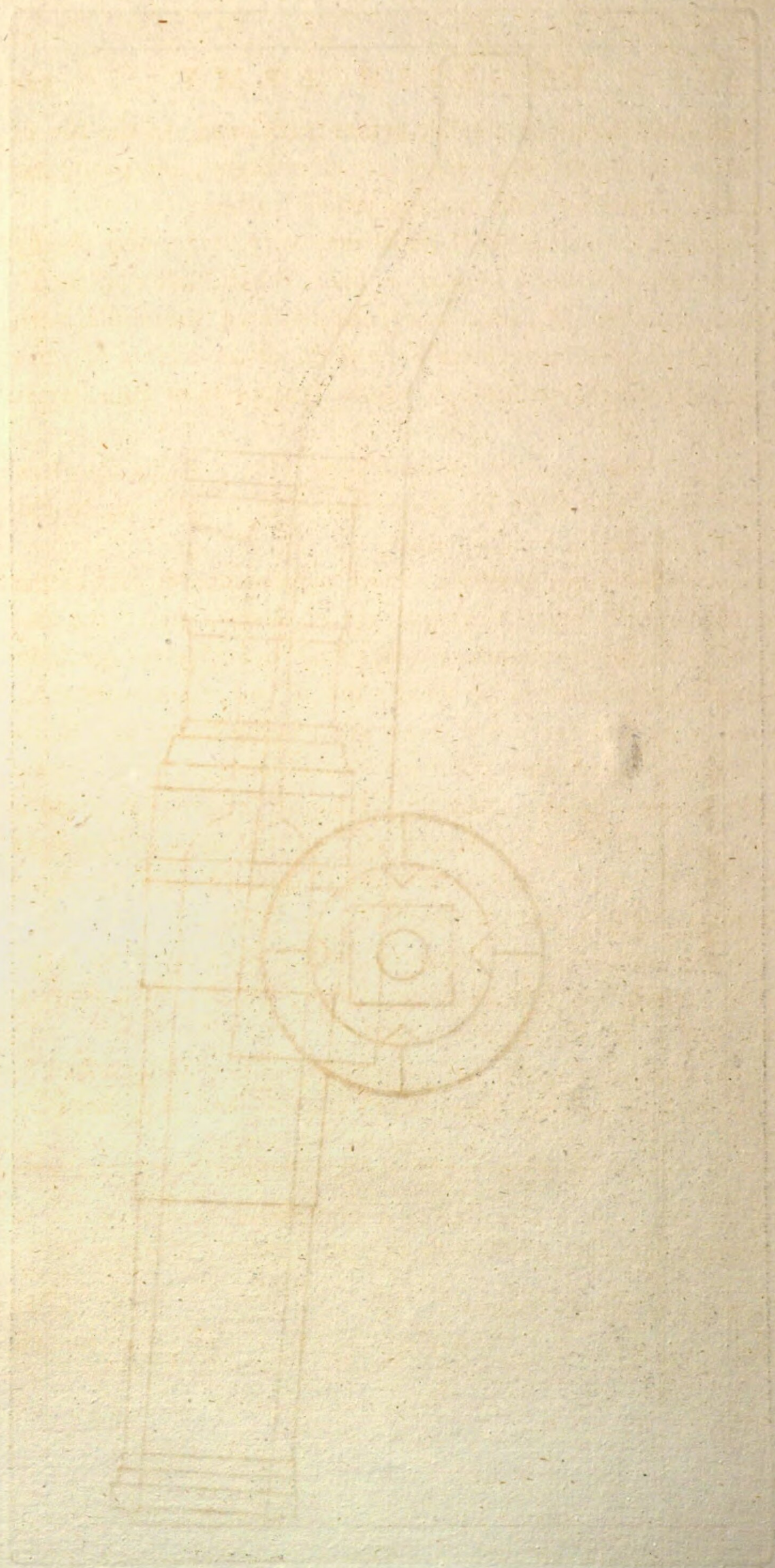
FACTORY OF N. C. LEE, MONROE, MISS.





Scale of Feet.

ANCIENT GUN, CALLED, MONS MEG.



gun of this kind is kept in a cellar before mentioned, in the Isle of Man; both are engraved in plate 2, of artillery; on particular emergencies, guns have been made of jacked leather.

THE ancient bombards were sometimes very large, and chiefly discharging stone balls of a monstrous size. When Mahomet the II. besieged Constantinople, anno 1453, he battered the walls with stone bullets, and his pieces were some of the calibre of 1200 pounds; but then they could not be fired more than four times a day. (k)

IN Rymer, there is an order from King Henry V. to the clerk of the ordnance, and John Bonet, a mason of Maidstone, to cut 7000 stone shot in the quarries there.

FROISSART describes a very extraordinary bombard, used at the siege of Oudenarde, made by the people of Ghent, under the direction of D'Arteville; therefore, (says he,) to terrify the garrison of Oudenarde, he caused to be made a marvellous great bombarde, which was fifty feet long, and threw great heavy stones of a wonderful bigness; when this bombard was discharged, it might be heard five leagues by day, and ten at night, making so great a noise in going off, "that it seemed as if all the devils in hell were abroad." We frequently read of cannon or bombards carrying stone balls from 200 to 500 pounds weight.

THE terms cannon and colouverine were not confined to large guns, but were given also to those of small caliber, such as were portable, and might be moved by hand.

JUVENAL DES URSINS, an author contemporary with Charles VI. under the year 1414, calls them hand canons, and they were so

plate 2, fig. 5; fig. 6, shews a gun said to be constructed of the same materials, at Peel town, in the isle of Man, where are also the pieces of ancient hooped guns, fig. 2, 3, 4.

(k) SEE preface to Robins's Gunnery.

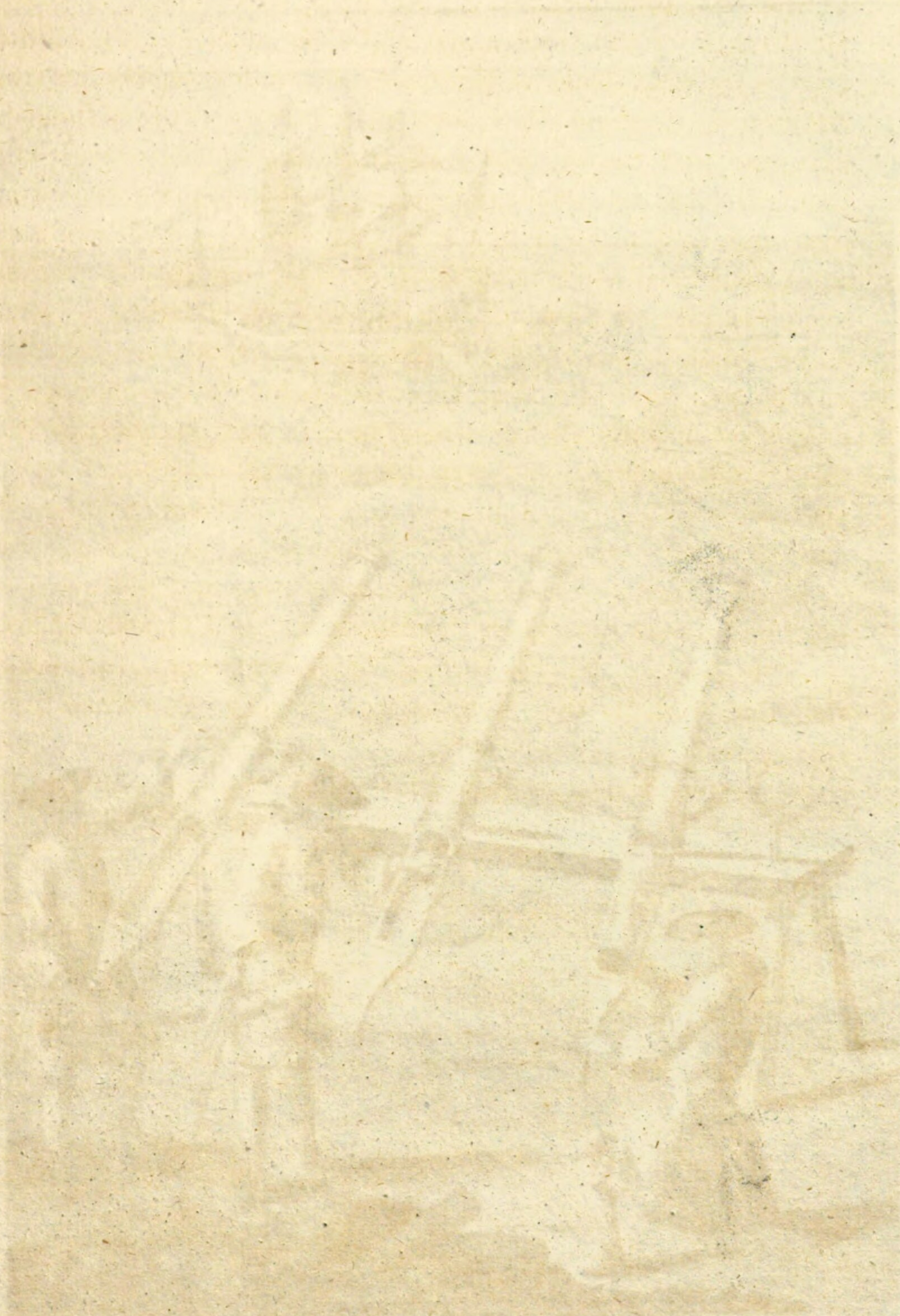
named at the time of Louis XI. for Philip de Comines, reckoning the strength of the Swiss army, and their allies, which defeated Charles the bold, Duke of Normandy, before Morat, not far from Bern, in Switzerland; says, that there might be thirty thousand footmen, well chosen, and well armed; that is to say, eleven thousand pikes, ten thousand halberts, and ten thousand coulouverines: now it is manifest by the word, coulouverines, he could not mean those great and long canons formerly so named, but something like a musquet, or arquebuse, a croc, sufficiently light, to be carried by hand, or put on very small stands, and moved and turned by one or two men; (l) this supposition is further corroborated by diverse other instances, in which small armies are said to have had several hundreds, and even thousands of canons and coulouverines; one mentioned by the author last cited, who in the year 1411, says; that in the army of the Duke of Orleans, under Charles VI. there were four thousand canons and coulouverines; hand guns were not however introduced into England till sixty years afterwards, as has before been mentioned: (m) during this time perhaps they were improving, so as to become more manageable.

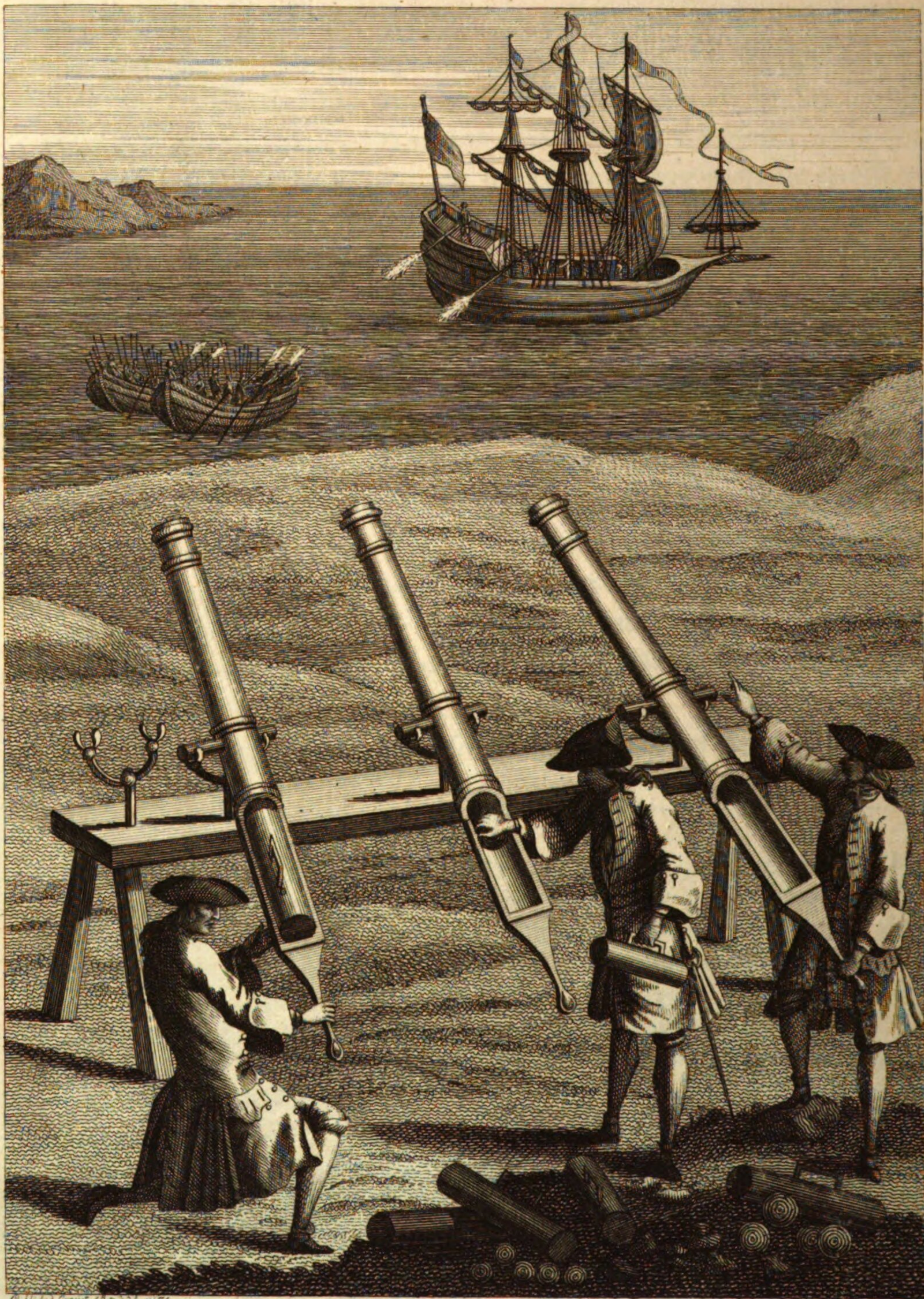
ALTHOUGH artillery was used from the time of King Edward III.

(l) THE Duke of Burgundy appears to have had some very large ordnance in his army; our countryman Coriat, describes one that he saw in the arsenal at Zurich; "among them, I saw one passing great murdering piece, both ends thereof were so exceeding wide, that a very corpulent man might easily enter the same; this also was wonne in the field from the said duke." Vol. 2. p. 193. He likewise mentions another large piece, termed a basiliske, which he saw in the arsenal of Milan; "also, (says he,) I saw an exceeding huge basiliske, which was so great, that it would easily contayne the body of a very corpulent man."—In the 2d of King Henry V. A. D. 1414, there was a master of the ordnance named Nicholas Merbury, and John Louth, his clerk; to whom that king by a warrant in Rymer, assigned the necessary workmen and materials, with authority for pressing all sorts of carriages required.

(m) VOL. I. p. 162.

and



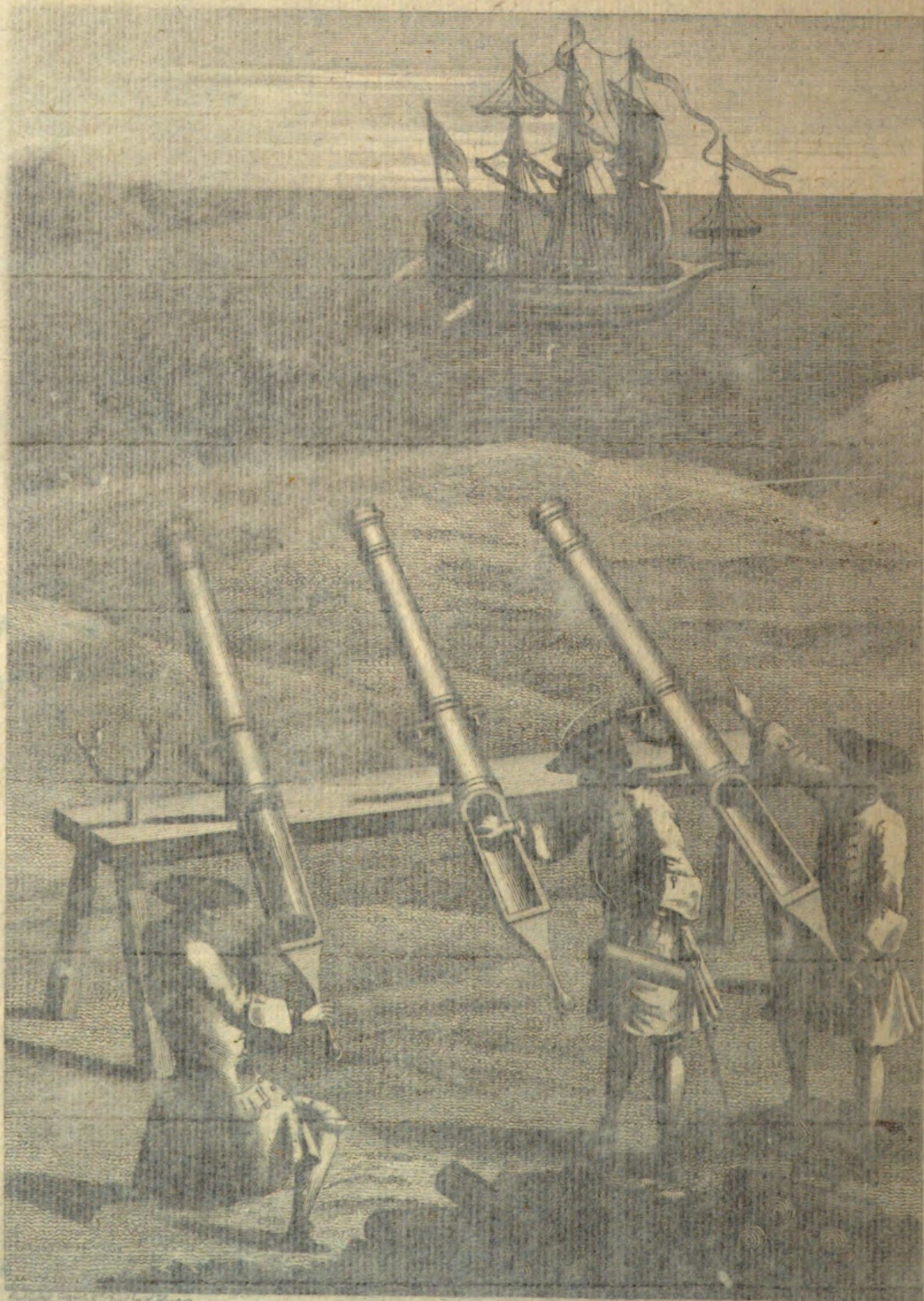


Published August 6. 1762 by W. Woodcut

Pierriers vulgarly called Pattereros.

and purchased from abroad by all our successive kings, was extremely strange, that none of our workmen attempted to cast them, till the reign of King Henry VIII. when in 1521, according to Stowe, or 1535, (Camden says) great brass ordnance, or canon and culverins, were first cast in England, by one John Cown, they formerly having been made in other countreys; whether this man did not succeed, or died before the year 1541, is not mentioned; but in that year, according to Stowe, the king employed two aliens as his gunfounders, his words are, "the king, who being at war with France, made great preparations and provision, as well of munitions and artillery, as also of brass ordnance; amongst which at that time, one Peter Bawd, a Frenchman born, a gun-founder, or maker of great ordnance, and one other alien, called, Peter Van Collen, a gunsmith, both the king's feedmen, conferred together, devised and caused to be made, certain mortar pieces, being at the mouth, from eleven inches, unto nineteen inches wide; for the use whereof, the said Peter and Peter caused to be made certain hollow shot of cast yron, stuffed with fire-works, or wild-fire; whereof the bigger sort for the same, had screws of yron to receive a match to carry fire kindled, that the fire-work might be set on fire to break in small pieces the same hollow shot; whereof the smallest piece hitting any man, would kill or spoil him; and after the king's return from Bullen, the said Peter Bawd by himself in the first year of Edward VI. did also make certain ordnance of cast yron of diverse sorts and forms, as fawconets, falcons, minions, sakers, and other pieces." (n) Chamber'd pieces for throwing stones, called cannon perriers, port-pieces, stock-fowlers, sling-pieces, portingale bafes, and murtherers, were about this time much used in small forts, and on ship-board.

(n) Stowe's Chron. p. 584.



Pierriers vulgarly called Pattereras.

and purchased from abroad by all our successive kings, it seems extremely strange, that none of our workmen attempted to cast them, till the reign of King Henry VIII. when in 1521, according to Stowe, or 1535, (Camden says) great brass ordnance, as canon and culverins, were first cast in England, by one John Owen, they formerly having been made in other countreys; whether this man did not succeed, or died before the year 1543, is not mentioned; but in that year, according to Stowe, the king employed two aliens as his gunfounders; his words are, "the king minding wars with France, made great preparations and provision, as well of munitions and artillery, as also of brass ordnance; amongst which at that time, one Peter Bawd, a Frenchman born, a gun-founder, or maker of great ordnance, and one other alien, called, Peter Van Collen, a gunsmith, both the king's feedmen, conferred together, devised and caused to be made, certain mortar pieces, being at the mouth, from eleven inches, unto nineteen inches wide; for the use whereof, the said Peter and Peter caused to be made certain hollow shot of cast yron, stuffed with fire-works, or wild-fire; whereof the bigger sort for the same, had screws of yron to receive a match to carry fire kindled, that the fire-work might be set on fire to break in small pieces the same hollow shot; whereof the smallest piece hitting any man, would kill or spoil him; and after the king's return from Bullen, the said Peter Bawd by himself in the first year of Edward VI. did also make certain ordnance of cast yron of diverse sorts and forms, as fawconets, falcons, minions, sakers, and other pieces." (n) Chamber'd pieces for throwing stones, called cannon perriers, port-pieces, stock-fowlers, sling-pieces, portingale bases, and murtherers, were about this time much used in small forts, and on ship-board.

(n) STOWE'S Chron. p. 584.

KING HENRY VII. and his son Henry VIII. took great pains to introduce the art of gunnery into this kingdom, and for that purpose both of them had a number of Flemish gunners in their daily pay.

THE wretched state of that art is related by William Bourne, author of a treatise on the Art of shooting in great ordnance, printed at London, in 1587; "I have seen (says he) a number of bookes that have been written concerning ordnance, but surely they that wrote them were not seen in any part of the mathematical science, neither good mechanicians; but (in respect) utterly void of any science; in (comparifon,) no good order described in the shooting of ordnaunce, to know what distance the shotte is delivered from the peece; neyther have they known what instruments have meaned; and although they have named degrees in their bookes, yet it appeareth unto me, that they have no knowledge what a degree signifieth, for that they have named a quadrant, a triangle, and other fond and foolish bye-names; wherefore, they that have written these bookes, that the gunners have amongst them, were utterly unlearned in any manner of science; which were in the beginning, in the time of King Henry VIII. made by Flemmings; for in the war of those daies, the king sent over into Flanders and those parts thereabouts, to have gunners to serve him in the warres, and the gunners have no other bookes, but such as were written by them; wherefore, I do thinke it good to shewe unto you what a degree is."

IN the year 1626, the 2d of King Charles I. some improvement was attempted in the ordnance, for one Arnold Rotifpen had a patent for 14 years for making guns of all sorts both great and small after a new way, or manner, not formerly practised by any within these dominions. (o)

THE next year a patent was granted to William Drummond, of Hawthornden, for the sole making and vending a number of war-like machines; an abstract of the patent is printed in the Appendix, No. IX. As we hear nothing further of them, it is most reasonable to suppose, like many other wonderful projects, they proved abortive.

SINCE the introduction of artillery a variety of whimsical pieces have been invented, many by ecclesiastics, but in the whole the simple gun has been found the most serviceable. Several of these inventions as matters of curiosity, are engraved for this work.

BOMBS are certainly of greater antiquity than is generally supposed. (p) Strada says, they were used in the year 1588, at the siege of Vakterdonc, a town in Guelders; but from his description it appears, that what he calls a bomb was in reality a carcass. Nothing, says he, frightened the burgers more than certain hollow balls filled with powder and materials that could not be extinguished, these balls were thrown into the air by mortars, and had a match of a certain length, in order to set fire to the powder. Falling on the tops of houses they broke through them, and as soon as they had taken fire, they burst, and spread out on every side a flame, which was difficult to extinguish with water. This instrument, which gave origin to grenades, fire-pots, and the like machines contrived for the destruction of the human species, were invented, as it is said, a few days before the siege of Vakterdonc, by an inhabitant of Veulo, a maker of fireworks; the inhabitants of that town proposed with this invention to divert the duke of Cleves, who was on a visit to them, and to whom they had given a grand repast; they therefore were desirous of making the first

(p) It has been supposed that the first guns or bombards were used for throwing stones, not point blank, but at an elevation, so that they might rather be considered as mortars than guns.

trial of it before him, and it succeeded much better than they proposed, for the bomb falling on a house, beat in the roof and floors, and set it on fire, which communicating with the neighbouring houses, burnt two thirds of the town, the fire being so violent, that it was impossible to extinguish it. I know, adds Strada, that some have written, that a month or two before, a like experiment had been made at Bergen Op Zoom, by an Italian deserter from the Spanish troops, who had engaged with the Dutch, and had promised to make them some hollow balls of stone or iron, which being thrown into a besieged town, and bursting after their fall, would set every thing on fire; but as he was preparing his composition, a spark having fallen on the powder, he was killed, and by his death left those for whom he was working in an uncertainty, whether or not his secret would have succeeded. From both these descriptions it is evident the end proposed was to burn the towns by means of these fire balls. The effect of the bomb is chiefly confined to beating down buildings by its fall, or by its explosion and the pieces of broken iron thrown about in all directions, to break and destroy every thing around it.

VALTURINUS who is the oldest of the modern writers on war, the first edition of whose book was published in Latin, at Basle, in 1472, carries the invention of bombs at least a century farther back than Strada; for in book x. page 267, of his work, there is the figure of a cannon, somewhat of the howitzer kind, destined to throw a brazen ball filled with powder, it is entitled *machina quæ pilæ æneæ tormentarii pulveris plenæ, cum fungi aridi fomite urentis, emittuntur.* (q)

BOMBS

(q) THIS passage is in a note, p. 394, of Monsieur Joly de Maizeroy's *Treatise on Ancient Sieges*. I have never been able to see the Latin Edition of Valturinus; but in a French translation of that author, printed at Paris in 1555, in book X. p. 163. b. there is a print of a cannon as just fired, with a ball in the air, seemingly burning out of the

BOMBS since their first invention have been much improved, they are now made of cast iron; thickest at the part opposite the vent, by which means that side being heaviest, they fall with the fuse uppermost, and thereby prevent its being broken or smothered. Though some engineers think that when cast equal they fly truer, and burst into more pieces. (r) Blondel at the end of his book (s) points out an extraordinary method of throwing stones into a besieged town without making use of a mortar. "The Poles (says he) assisted by some auxillary troops besieged the town of Thorn in Prussia, held by the Swedes, into which they frequently threw stones of a monstrous size, great quarters of mill stones, and squared stones of more than 800 weight, without making use of mortars, in this manner; in the firm ground near the counterscarp, they digged holes just of the size and figure of the stone they intended to throw, the bottom of which hole being flat and even, was turned towards the town, with such an angle of inclination as they

the vent, and another ball likewise burning on the ground. The balls appear to open by means of hinges opposite the vent. The title over it is *Voyci encores une autre tienne invention d'artillerie par laquelle on tire un boulet artificiel plein de poudre avec un nourissement de feu.* It is copied in Artillery plate 1. fig. 8. 9. 10. the last is made a little larger than the other to shew the hinges.

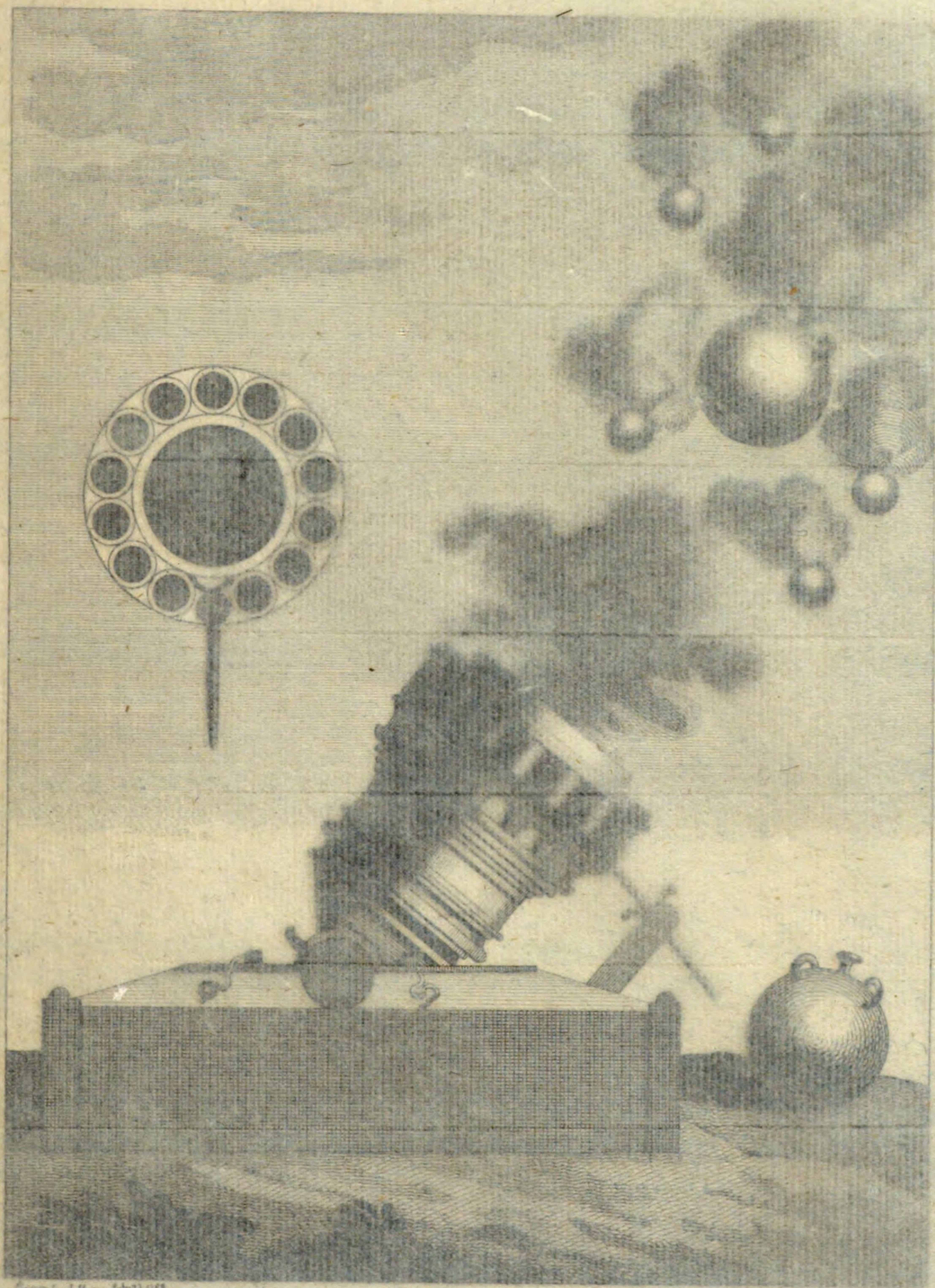
(r) AT the siege of Bergen Op Zoom in the year 1747, I was shewn a Scotch Highlander, I think of Collyer's regiment, who tempted by the reward given for stifled shells, contrived a machine of the lever kind, with which he had, when I saw him, drawn out the burning fuses of two bombs, but afterwards making a third attempt, an eighteen inch shell burst between his legs, and tore him in pieces.

(s) ENTITLED *L'Art de Jetter les Bombes.* This author agrees as to the above-mentioned epocha of the invention of bombs, but at the same time remarks that that of mortars is still more ancient, he says he has seen them both of iron and brass, of a structure which seemed to be of the time of the oldest cannon, and that they were used to throw stones and red hot balls. He confirms what he advances by a print, which is in the frontispiece of the book of Nicholas Tartaglia, a mathematician, of Bressa in Italy, printed in the year 1538, where among diverse other pieces of artillery, a mortar is represented throwing a burning ball.

judged by estimation was proper for the direction of their throw, and in the middle of this bottom they digged another hole deeper and in form of a chamber, and in such sort, that the axis of the last hole passing through the center of gravity of the stone, was perpendicular to its bed, and was the same as the line of direction; they filled this hole with powder, if the earth was sufficiently firm, or else they put in a petard of a size proportioned to the weight of the stone, which resting on the plane of the madrier of the petard, or of the tompion of the chamber, received the full force of the powder, which was lighted by means of a thread dipt in brandy, and composition of artificial fire-works, and rising to a great height in the air, fell in the town at the destined places, where it crushed every thing it met with in it's fall." This contrivance is also mentioned in an ancient English Book of Fireworkes, the name of whose author I cannot recollect. Diverse mortars of this kind are (as it is said) cut in the rocks at Malta, some of these perhaps suggested the idea to Healey for that he constructed at Gibraltar, an account of which see in the Appendix, No. XX.

AFTER the first invention of bombs, those of carcasses of different kinds, and grenades, naturally followed; the latter are said to have been first used in 1594. The howitzer which is a kind of mortar mounted like a gun on a field carriage, its trunnions being fixed in the middle, is a modern discovery, and on particular occasions extremely serviceable, they were invented by the Germans about the year 1593 or 1594.

ANOTHER species of artilllery were the war carts, each carrying two peteraros, or chamber'd pieces; several of these carts are represented in the Cowdry picture of the siege of Bullogne, one of which is given in this work; these carts seem to have been borrowed from the Scotch; Henry in his History of England, mentions them as peculiar to that nation, and quotes the two following acts of parliament respecting them; one A. D. 1456, wherein they are thus described, "it is tocht speidfull, that the king mak
requeist



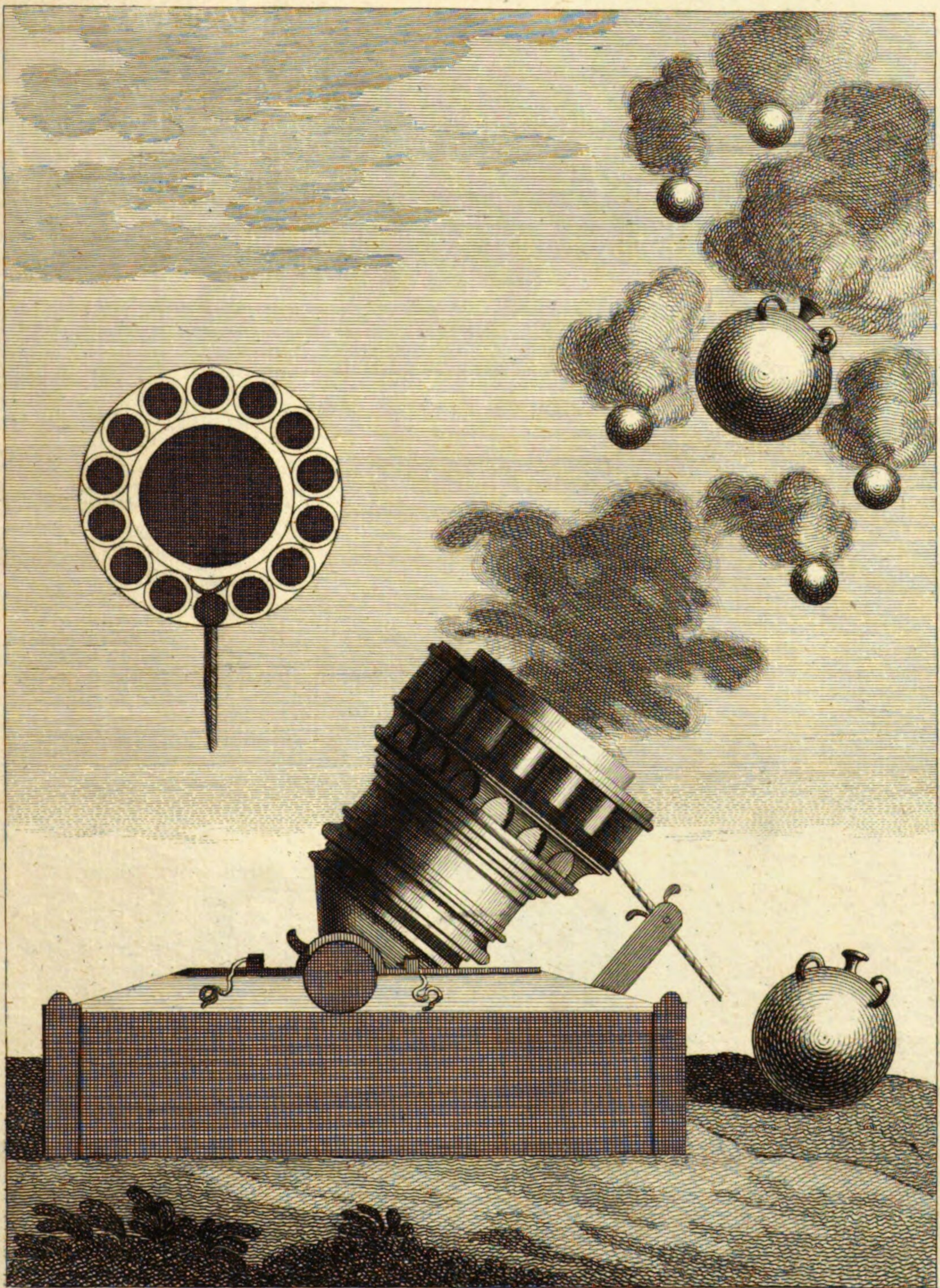
THE PARTRIDGES.

HISTORY OF

judged by circumstances was proper for the direction of their throw, and in the middle of this bottom they digged another hole deeper and in form of a chamber, and in such sort, that the axis of the hole passing through the center of gravity of the stone, was perpendicular to its bed, and was the same as the line of direction; they filled this hole with powder, if the earth was sufficiently firm, or else they put in a petard of a size proportioned to the weight of the stone, which resting on the plane of the madrier of the petard, as of the bottom of the chamber, received the full force of the powder, which was lighted by means of a thread dipt in brandy, and composition of artificial fire-works, and rising to a great height in the air, fell in the town at the destined places, where it crushed every thing it met with in it's fall." This contrivance is also mentioned in an ancient English Book of Fireworkes, the name of whose author I cannot recollect. Diverse mortars of this kind are (as it is said) cut in the rocks at Malta, some of these perhaps suggested the idea to Healey for that he constructed at Gibraltar, an account of which see in the Appendix, No. XX.

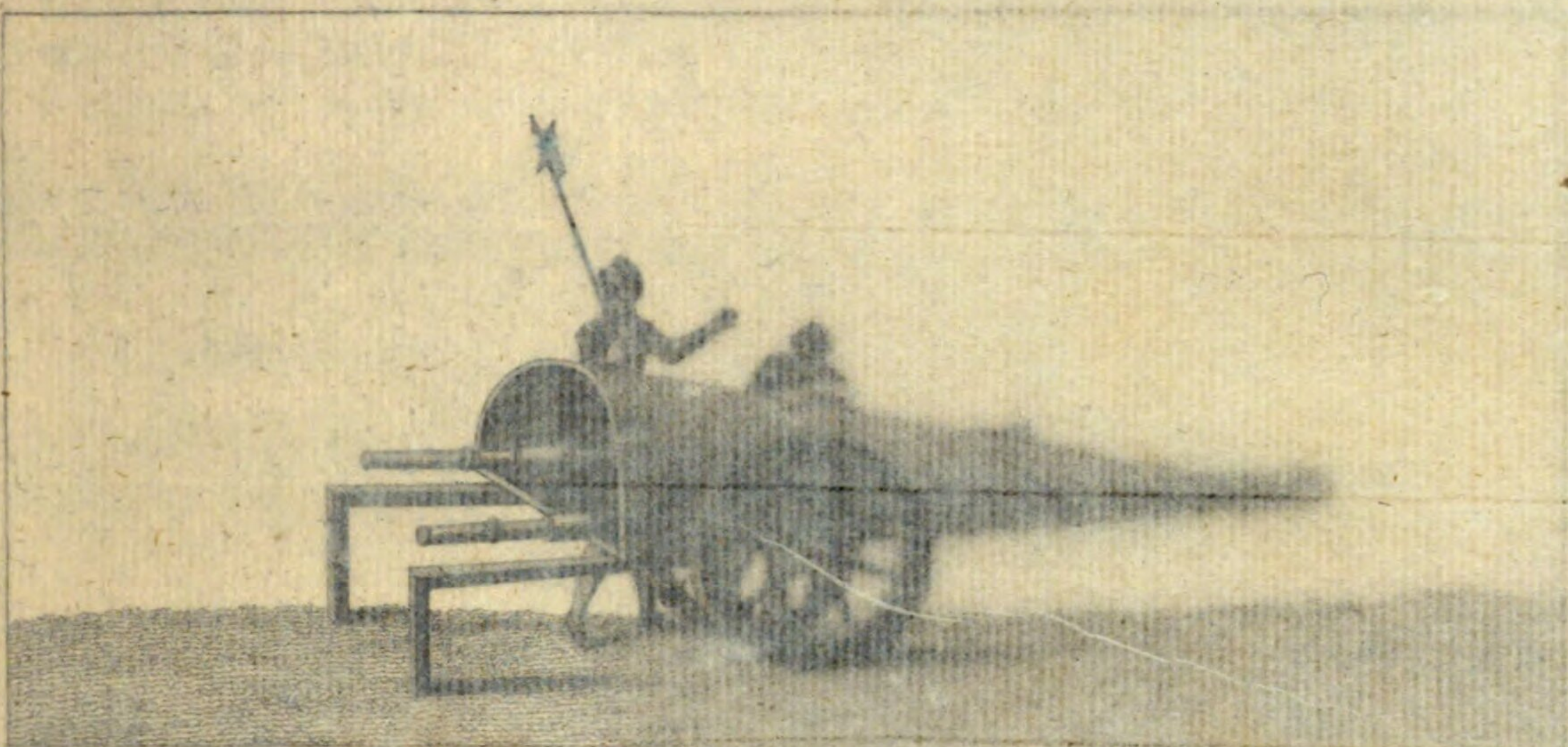
AFTER the first invention of bombs, those of carcasses of different kinds, and grenades, naturally followed; the latter are said to have been first used in 1594. The howitzer which is a kind of mortar mounted like a gun on a field carriage, its trunnions being fixed in the middle, is a modern discovery, and on particular occasions extremely serviceable, they were invented by the Germans about the year 1593 or 1594.

ANOTHER species of artilllery were the war carts, each carrying two peteraros, or chamber'd pieces; several of these carts are represented in the Cowdry picture of the siege of Bullogne, one of which is given in this work; these carts seem to have been borrowed from the Scotch; Henry in his History of England, mentions them as peculiar to that nation, and quotes the two following acts of parliament respecting them; one A. D. 1456, wherein they are thus described, "it is tocht speidfull, that the king mak request

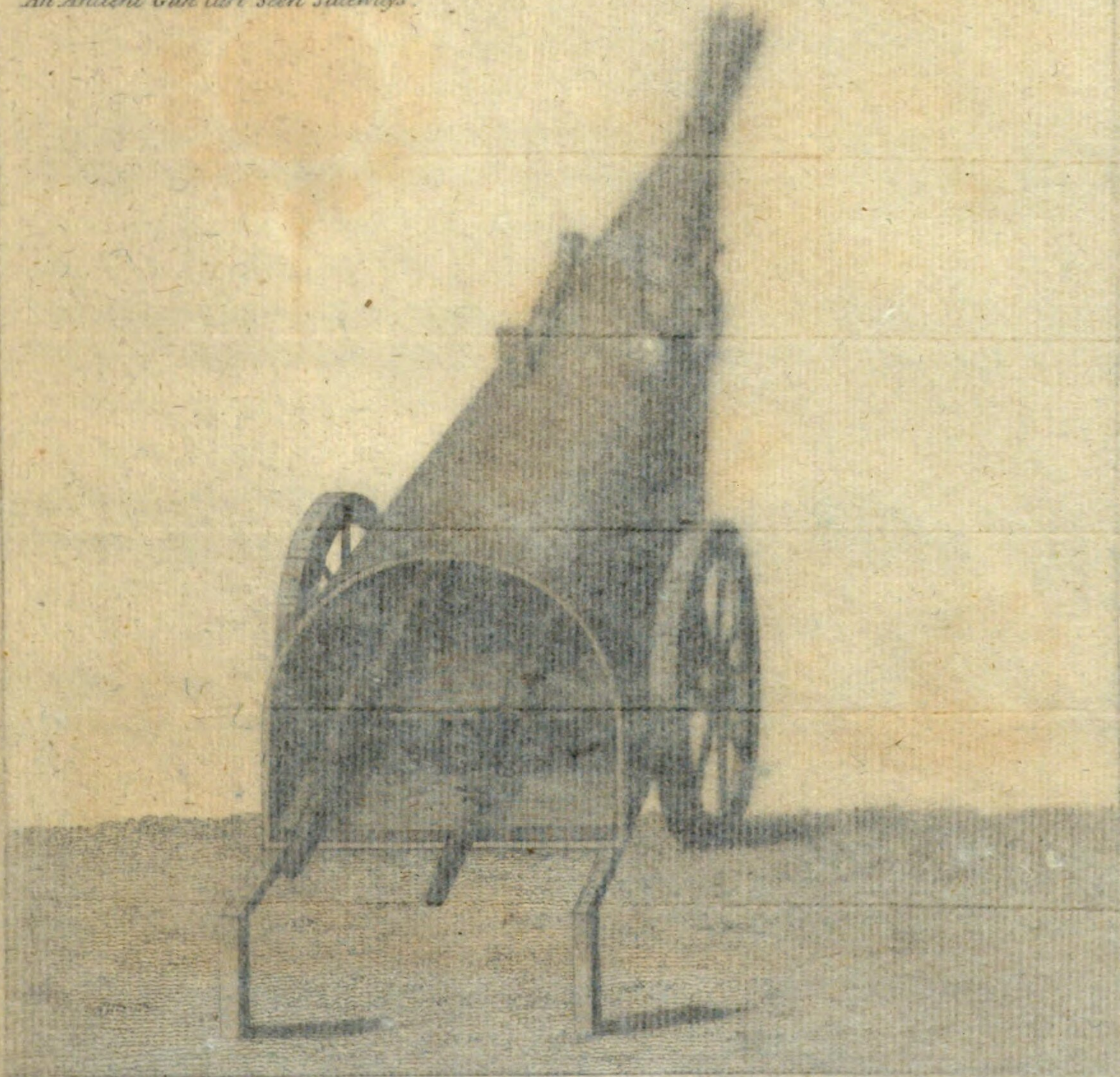


Engraved by J. H. Knapton July 23 1788

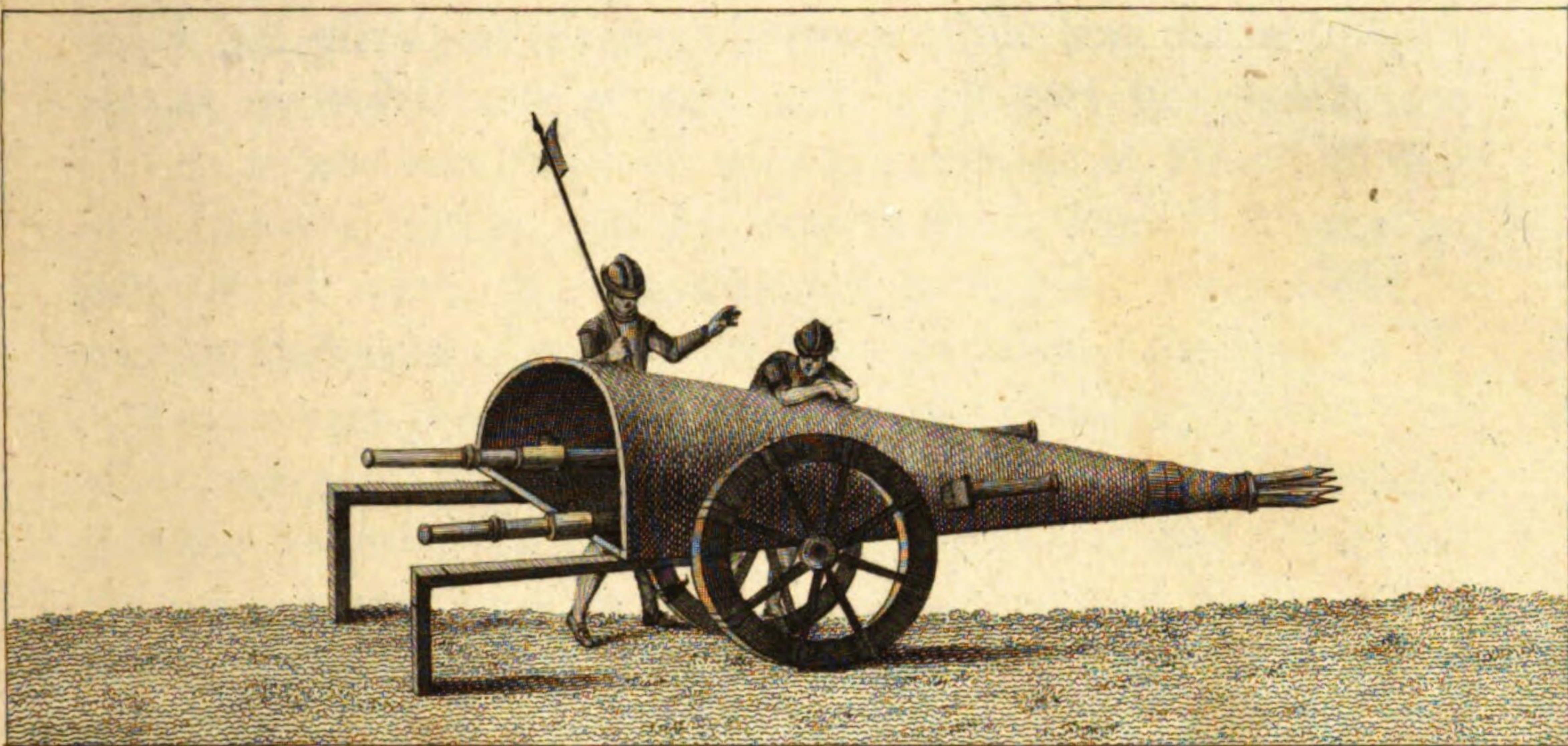
THE PARTRIDGES.



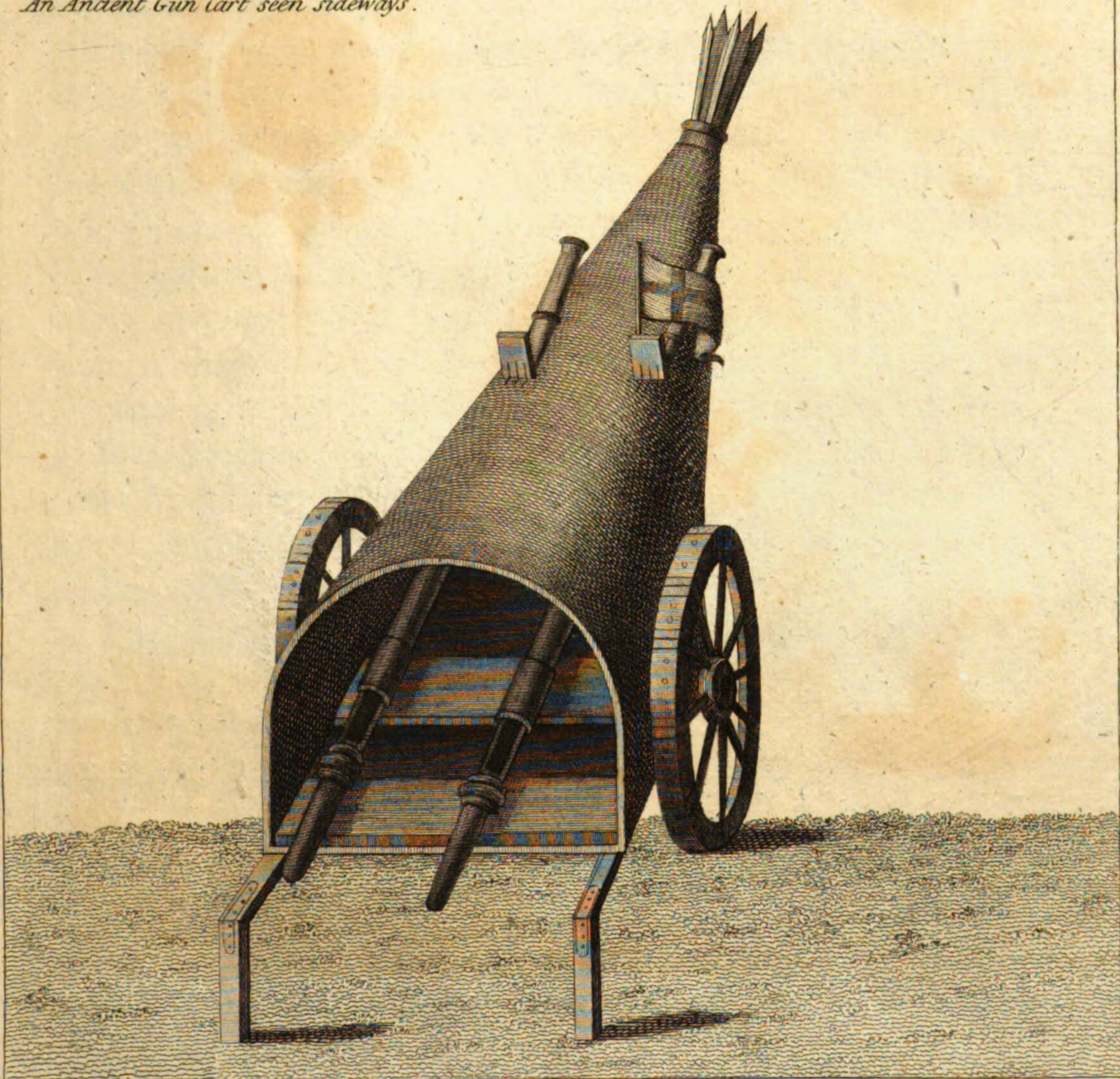
An Ancient Gun Cart seen sideways.



An Ancient Gun Cart viewed from the rear.



An Ancient Gun Cart seen sideways.



N. C. Goodnight Sculp.

An Ancient Gun Cart, viewed from the rear.

Pub. 29 Sep 1786 by S. Hooper.

requiest to certain of the great burrows of the land that are of ony myght, to make carts of weir, and in elk cart twa gunnis, and ilk ane to have twa chalmers, with the remnant of the graith that effeirs thereto, and an cunnand man to shute thame:" by another act, A. D. 1471, the prelates and barons are commanded to provide such carts of war against their old enemies the English. (t)

THESE carts seem to be the same as mentioned by Monro, (u) who speaking of the invention of artillery, says; and it is thought that the invention of cannon was found first at Nurenberg, for the ruin of man, being at first for a long time used for battering down of walles and cities, and for counter-batteries, till at last they were used in the field to break the squadrons and battailes of foot and horse, some carrying pieces, called SPINGARDS, of foure foote and a halfe longe, that shot many bullets at once no greater than walnuts, which were carried in the fields on little chariots behinde the troopes, and how soone the trumpet did founde, the enemy was thundered on, first with those as with shoures of haile stone, so that the enemies were cruelly affrighted with them, men of valour being suddenly taken away, who before were wont to fight valiantly and long with the sword and launce, more for the honour of victory, than for any desire of shedding of bloud; but now, men are martyryzed and cut downe, at more than half a mile of distance; by those furious and thundring engines of great cannon, that sometimes shoote fiery bullets able to burne whole cities, castles, houses, or bridges, where they chance to light, and if they happen to light within walles, or amongst a briggad of foote or horse, as they did at LEIPSIGH, on the grave fon Torne his briggad, spoiling a number at once, as doubtlesse the devilish invention did within Walestine, his leaguer at this time."

(t) BLACK Acts, James II. act 52. James III. act 55.

(u) MONRO his Expedition with the worthy Scots Regiment, called Mac-Keyes Regiment levied in August, 1626, &c. &c. part 2. p. 151.

THE petard is a machine made use of to burst open gates, draw-bridges and doors of arsenals or fortresses and castles attacked by surprise.

It is a kind of iron mortar of the form of a truncated cone, or that of a bell, with a touch-hole in the centre of the breech, and four handles for fastening it to its madrier; petards were of different sizes, according to the uses for which they were designed; a small one sixteen lines thick at the breech, and eight or nine at the mouth; its caliber five inches at the breech, and eight at the mouth; its length from ten inches to a foot long, weighed about sixty pounds, and was the best size for general use.

THE manner of loading it was this; it was to be filled nearly full with the best gunpowder, and then covered with wadding, and afterwards by a wooden trencher exactly fitted to its caliber; after this, it was to be driven with seven or eight strokes of a wooden mallet, care being taken not to break the grains of the powder: (x) the remainder of the petard was filled with yellow wax, or Greek pitch, and covered over with a waxed cloth; the mouth of the petard was then placed in a cavity turned to receive it, in a strong plank about eighteen inches square, called, a madrier, strengthened on the opposite side with a cross band of iron, and a strong iron hook; to this madrier, the petard was fastened by staples passing through the handles before-mentioned; when it was to be used, the madrier was

(x) SEVERAL authors recommend driving in the powder with a force that must have broken the corns of the powder, in which case it is doubtful whether it would have had its intended effect; others recommend moistening the powder with spirits of wine, and afterwards drying it in the sun, in order to make it stronger, and then to sprinkle every layer of powder of two inches thick with mercury, laying the powder on it, and pressing it down; then sprinkling it again with mercury, and continuing the same operation till the petard is filled.

THE best effect would probably be produced by filling the petard loosely with good powder, the fire would thereby be more quickly communicated,

made



Published June 17 1782 by J. Hooper

THE PETARD.

A petard is a machine made use of to burst open gates, draw-bridges and doors of arsenals or fortresses and castles attacked by surprise.

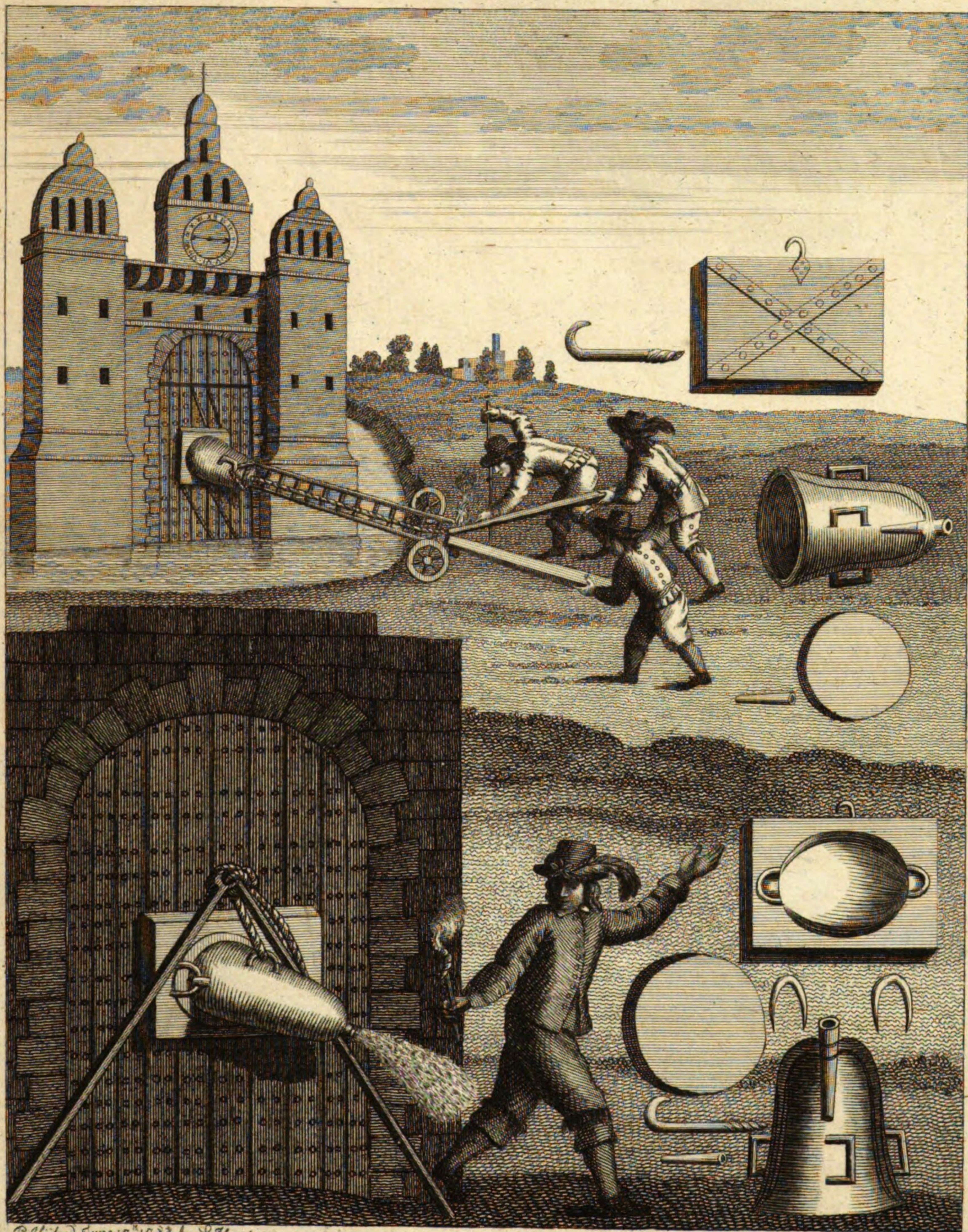
It is a kind of iron mortar of the form of a truncated cone, or that of a bell, with a touch-hole in the centre of the breech, and four handles for fastening it to its madrier; petards were of different sizes, according to the uses for which they were designed; a small one sixteen lines thick at the breech, and eight or nine at the mouth; its caliber five inches at the breech, and eight at the mouth; its length from ten inches to a foot long, weighed about thirty pounds, and was the best size for general use.

The manner of loading it was this; it was to be filled nearly full with the best gunpowder, and then covered with wadding, and afterwards by a wooden trencher exactly fitted to its caliber; after this, it was to be driven with seven or eight blows of a wooden mallet, care being taken not to break the grains of the powder: (x) the remainder of the petard was filled with yellow wax; or Greek pitch, and covered over with a waxed cloth; the mouth of the petard was then placed in a cavity turned to receive it, in a strong plank about eighteen inches square, called, a madrier, strengthened on the opposite side with a cross band of iron, and a strong iron hook; to this madrier, the petard was fastened by staples passing through the handles before-mentioned; when it was to be used, the madrier was

(x) SEVERAL authors recommend driving in the powder with a force that must have broken the corns of the powder, in which case it is doubtful whether it would have had its intended effect; others recommend moistening the powder with spirits of wine, and afterwards drying it in the sun, in order to make it stronger, and then to sprinkle every layer of powder of two inches thick with mercury, laying the powder on it, and pressing it down; then sprinkling it again with mercury, and continuing the same operation till the petard is filled.

THE best effect would probably be produced by filling the petard loosely with good powder, the fire would thereby be more quickly communicated.

made



Published June 17th 1783. by J. Hooper.

THE PETARD.

made fast by its hook, and divers other contrivances, to the gate to be broken, and fire set to the fuse which passed through its vent or touch-hole into the center of the powder; the effect was generally a fracture in the gate equal to the madrier. In the annexed plate is shewn the back of the madrier, with its hook and cross bands, the petard, its trencher, and fuse; and under them, the cavity of the madrier, section of the petard, and the staples for fastening it; two different methods of applying it are also represented.

ACCORDING to Father Daniel, the petard was invented in France, a short time before the year 1579, in which year it was used by Henry IV. of France, then only King of Navarre. In December, 1641, Arundel castle was taken by the parliamentary forces under Sir William Walter and Colonel Browne, who coming unexpectedly, and finding the castle gate shut, they blew it open with a petard. (y)

THE infernals were floating mines constructed in the bodies of ships or boats; the first inventor of them, or at least, the first who put them in practice was, Frederick Jambelli, an Italian engineer; at the siege of Antwerp, by the Spaniards, under Alexander, Prince of Parma, in the year 1585: a very particular and interesting relation of their wonderful effects is given by Strada, in his History of the Belgic War.

THE great destruction made by these caused several others to be tried, but none of them by any means succeeded. At Dunkirk, and St. Maloes they were tried by the English; at Havre de Grace by the English and Dutch, under King William; and one was constructed by the French, to be used against Algiers, in 1688, but was not made use of.

IN St. Remi's Memoirs of Artillery, there is a section and view

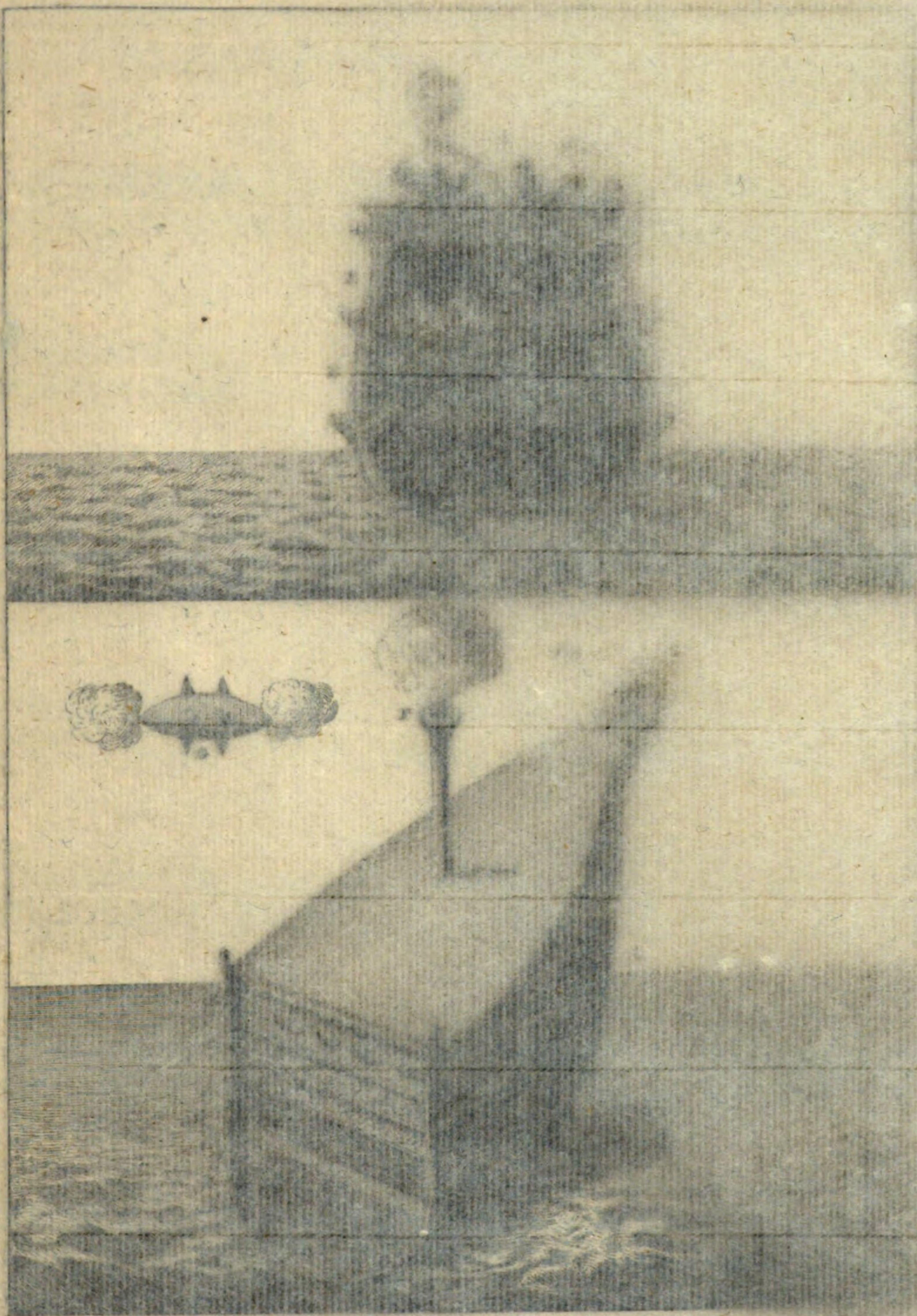
(y) SEE *Vicar's Parliamentary Chronicle, God in the Mount*, p. 231.

of the infernal used by the Dutch and English at St. Maloes, which is copied in this work; with it is the following description; fig. 1. A, section or profile of the machine; B, bottom of the vessel filled with sand; C, lower deck filled with twenty thousand pounds of powder, with a covering of masonry a foot thick; D, second deck furnished with six hundred bombs and carcasses, having two feet of masonry over it; E, third deck above the gaillard, furnished with fifty barrils, hooped with iron, filled full of all sorts of fireworks.

F, CANAL, or tube for conducting the fire to the powder, and to the priming; G, fig. 2, iron instruments, fifty in number, filled with fireworks, and armed with points, whereby they would, if they fell on wood, stick fast to it.

THE machine or vessel was thirty-four feet in length, eighteen in height, and drew nine feet water; the upper deck was covered with old iron cannon and langridge, it broke a great number of windows and uncovered many houses without any other effect; one part of the vessel did not blow up, by what remained, its construction was known.

THE ancients seem to have had but very imperfect ideas of the benefit arising from that kind of mutual defence, which constitutes the very essence of our modern fortification; their chief dependence appears to have been on the height and thickness of their walls; they however found that when the enemy was close under them, they could not molest them by arrows, darts, or stones, unless by such as they could let fall perpendicularly on their heads; hence the kind of defence, called a machicolation, was probably among the first discoveries on that subject; they, however, soon found, that persons who could not be seen from the main ramparts, might be seen, and shot or thrown at from towers projecting beyond these walls; round towers were then constructed at small distances one from the other, and portions of wall between them were built in a right line, so that the circle which was
probably



Engraved by J. H. B. 1768

The INTERNAL, used by the English at St. Malo's

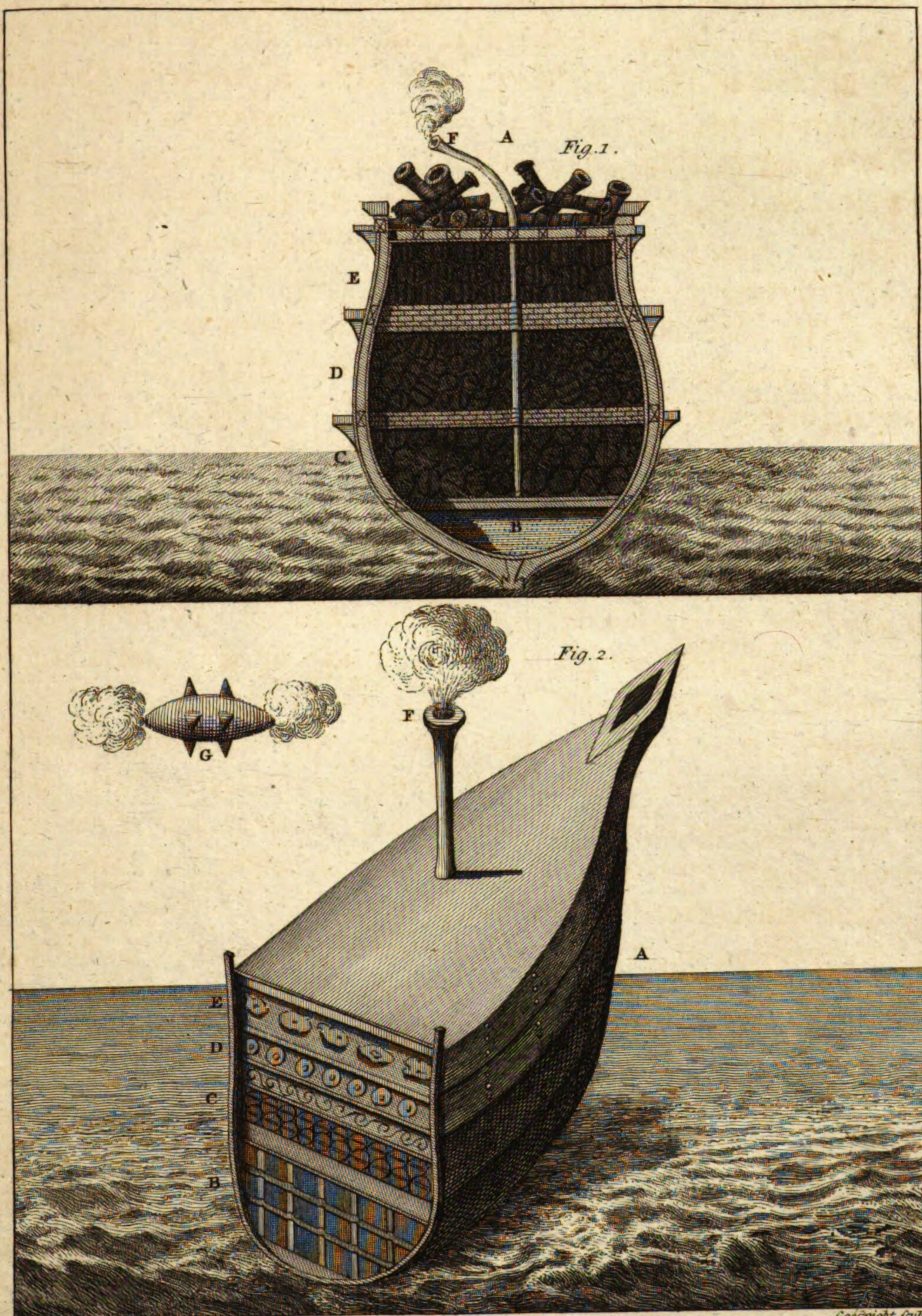
of the mineral used by the Dutch and English at St. Maloes, which is copied in this work; with it is the following description;

A, section or profile of the machine; B, bottom of the vessel filled with sand; C, lower deck filled with twenty thousand pounds of powder, with a covering of masonry a foot thick; D, second deck furnished with six hundred bombs and carcasses, having two feet of masonry over it; E, third deck above the gunward, furnished with fifty barrils, hooped with iron, filled full of all sorts of fireworks.

F, CANAL, or tube for conducting the fire to the powder, and to the priming; G, Fig. 2, iron instruments, fifty in number, filled with fireworks, and armed with points, whereby they would, if they fell on wood, stick fast to it.

The machine or vessel was thirty-four feet in length, eighteen in height, and drew nine feet water; the upper deck was covered with old iron cannon and langridge, it broke a great number of windows and uncovered many houses without any other effect; one part of the vessel did not blow up, by what remained, its construction was known.

THE ancients seem to have had but very imperfect ideas of the benefit arising from that kind of mutual defence, which constitutes the very essence of our modern fortification; their chief dependence appears to have been on the height and thickness of their walls; they however found that when the enemy was close under them, they could not molest them by arrows, darts, or stones, unless by such as they could let fall perpendicularly on their heads; hence the kind of defence, called a machicolation, was probably among the first discoveries on that subject; they, however, soon found, that persons who could not be seen from the main ramparts, might be seen, and shot or thrown at from towers projecting beyond these walls; round towers were then constructed at small distances one from the other, and portions of wall between them were built in a right line, so that the circle which was
probably



Pub. 30 May 1788 by S. Hooper

Goodnight sculp.

The INFERNAL, used by the English at S^t Malo's.

probably the original figure of most ancient towns was changed into a polygon; this in some measure, mended the evil complained of, but there still remained parts of and near the tower which could not be seen, called, dead angles; to remedy these, the towers were built square, and sometimes set with one of their angles in the angle of the wall; near as they were to the true shape, this contrivance did not do, till at length, some more lucky thought dictated the method of describing the salient faces of the towers, by right lines drawn from the angles, made by the sides of the adjoining towers, with the curtain or main wall; this compleated the matter and left no spot unseen or undefended by the opposite towers; this will be clearly understood by turning to the plate; obvious as this is, round towers continued in use even so late as the reign of King Henry VIII. many of the forts and block-houses built by that king for the defence of the coast, having towers of that form.

To obtain an accurate idea of an ancient fortrefs, let us consider it from without. The first work that presented itself, was the bayles, a space on the outside of the ditch commonly furrounded by strong pallisades and sometimes by a low embattled wall: this is clearly pointed out by the lines in the note. (a)

NEXT the bayle was the ditch, fofs, graff, or mote, generally, where it could be, a wet one and pretty deep; the passage over it was by a draw bridge frequently covered by an advanced work, called a Barbican, sometimes the Barbican was beyond the ditch covering the head of the draw-bridge. (b)

(a) HORS des Foffez a une lice
De trop fort murs, á Creneaux bas,
Si que chevaux ne puiſſent pas

Juſqu'au foſſé venir d'allée
Qu'il ny eût avant meſſé.

(b) THE term Barbican is ſtill preſerved by the ruins of different caſtles; a ſmall ſtone work covering the gate of Bodiham caſtle, in Suffex is ſtill called the Barbican. In towns and large fortrefſes the Barbicans were large and ſtrong, frequently having a ditch and draw-bridge of their own.

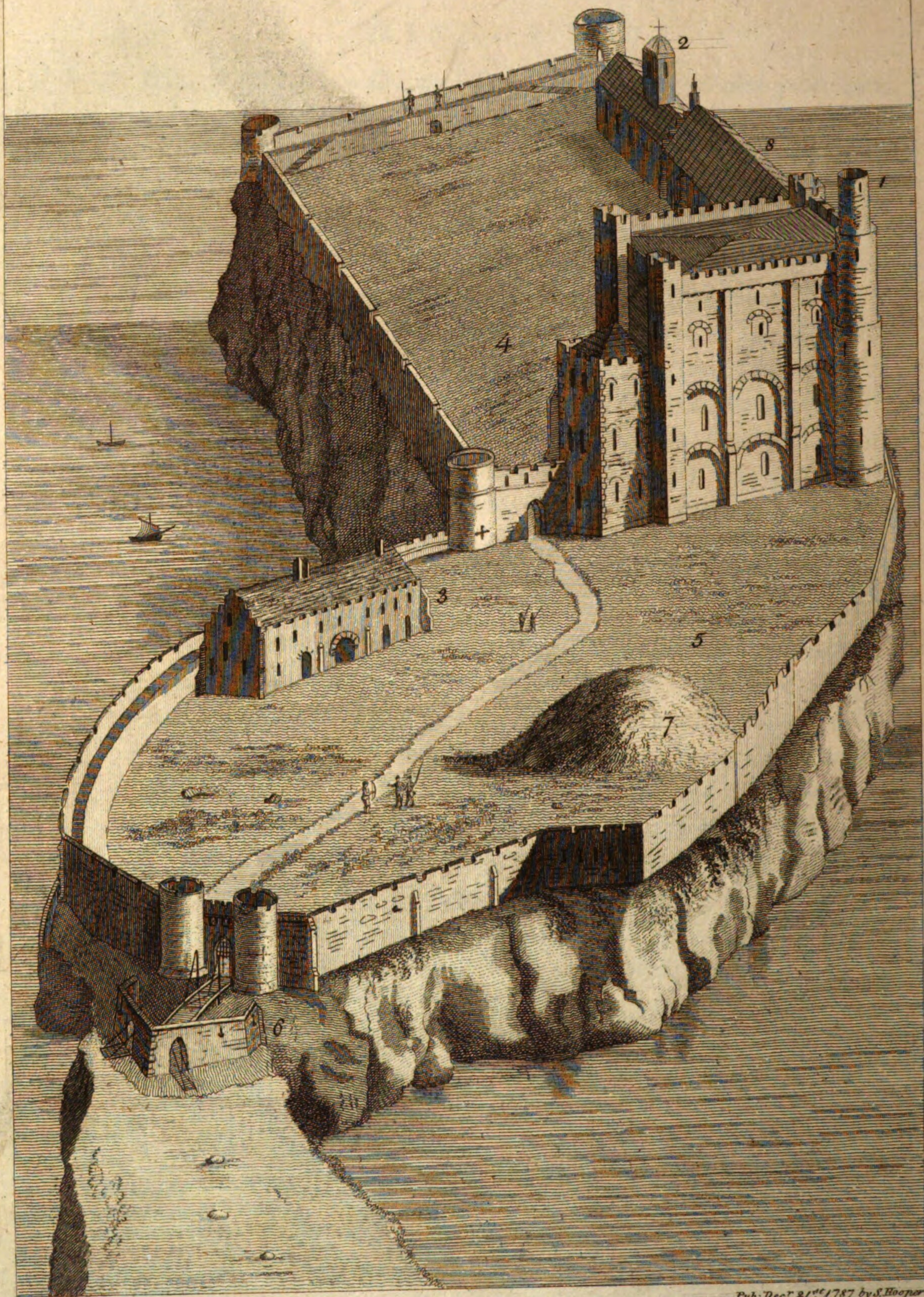
THE outermost walls enclosing towns or fortresses were commonly perpendicular, or had a very small external talus, they were flanked by semi-circular polygonal or square towers commonly about forty or fifty yards distant from each other, within were steps to mount the terre pleine of the walls or ramparts, which were always defended by an embattled or crenellated parapet.

THE grand entrance was mostly through a gate flanked by two large and strong towers, with a projection over the passage, called a machicolation, being a contrivance for letting fall great weights, scalding water, or melted lead, on the heads of any assailants who might have got undiscovered close to the gate; further to secure the entrance there were commonly one or more iron portcullis's fashioned like harrows, which were drawn up and let down by means of grooves cut in the stone. Besides these, there were strong wooden gates of an enormous thickness, with a wicket, both secured by large bars and bolts of iron, and strengthened with iron plates and large headed nails driven at a small distance from each other.

ON entering the outer gate the next part that presented itself was the outer ballium or bailey separated from the inner ballium by a strong embattled wall and towered gate, here frequently in old castles we see large mounts of earth, probably erected as a sort of cavaliers in some former siege, to equal a moving tower, or command some distant work of the besiegers.

TO the outer ballium joined the inner ballium, where were commonly the houses and barracks for the garrison, the chapel, stables and hospital; within this or at one corner of it, surrounded by a ditch stood the keep or dungeon, (c) generally a large square tower, flanked at its angles by small turrets, having within them

(c) DONJON, en fortification est un réduit dans un place ou dans une citadelle, où l'on se retire quelquefois pour capituler. *Dictionnaire portatif de L'Engenieur. Par Belidor.*

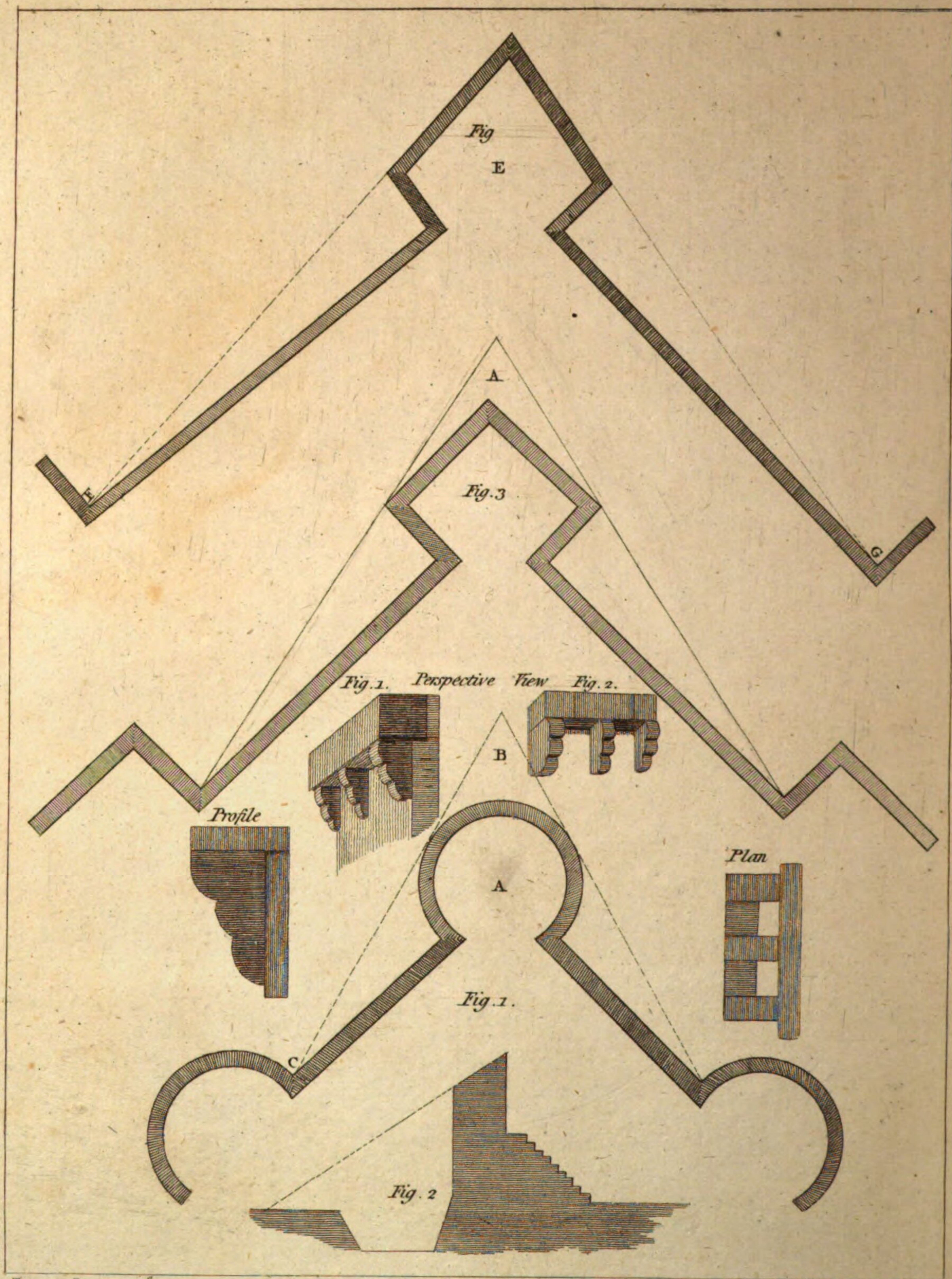


Pub. Decr 21st 1787 by S. Hooper.

ANCIENT FORTIFICATION Pl. I.

From an Ancient drawing in the Collection of Joseph Gullston Esq^r.

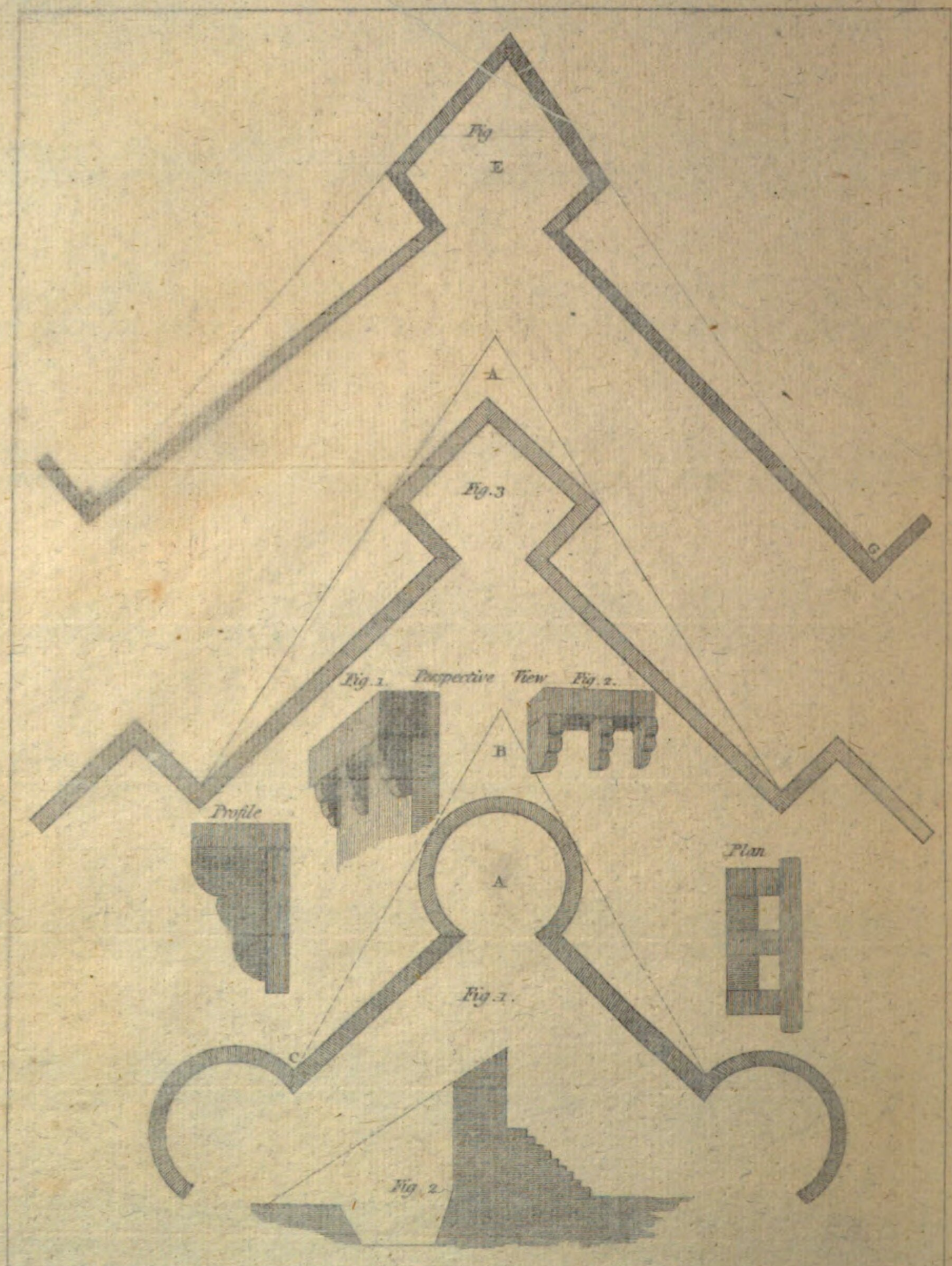
1. The Dungeon. 2. The Chapel. 3. Stable. 4. Inner Bailey.
5. Outer Bailey. 6. Barbican. 7. Mount. 8. Soldiers Lodgings.



James Sparrow Sc.

Published June 25th 1788. by J. Cooper.

FORTIFICATION.



James Sperron Jr.

Published June 25th 1788 by J. Cooper

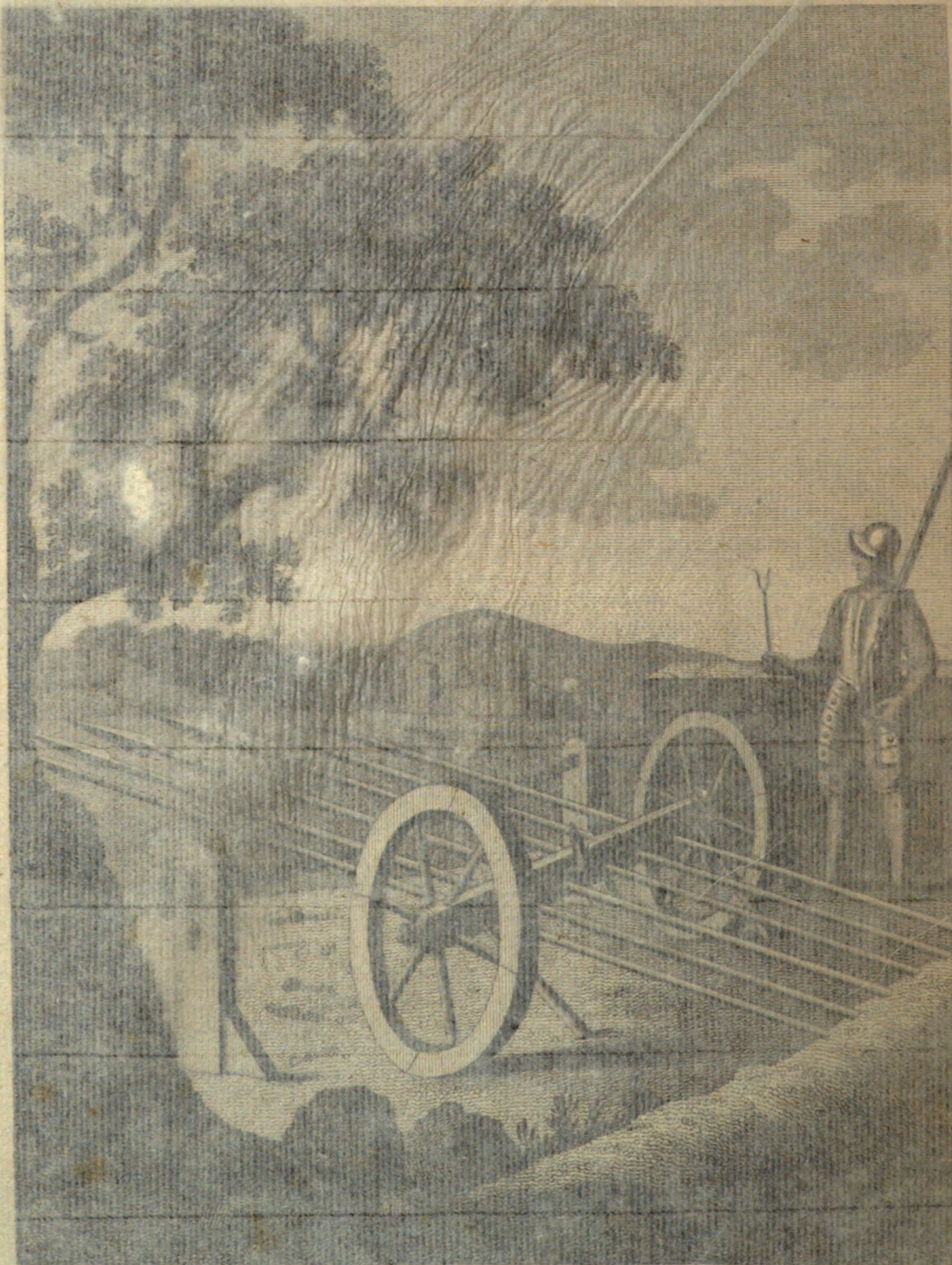
FORTIFICATION.



Published by S. Hooper May 27th 1788

J. Newton sculp

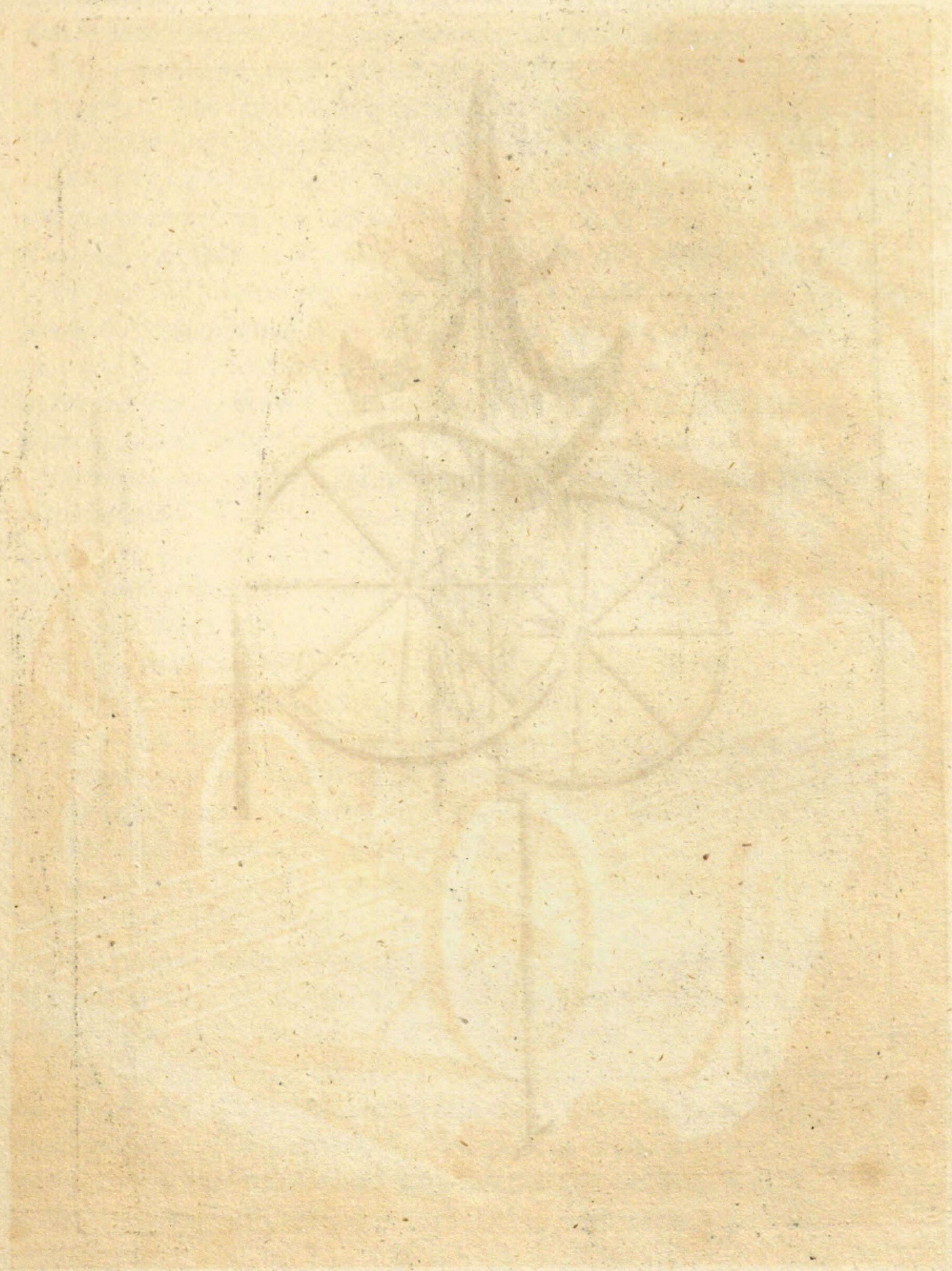
AN ANCIENT MACHINE FOR DEFENDING A PASS.

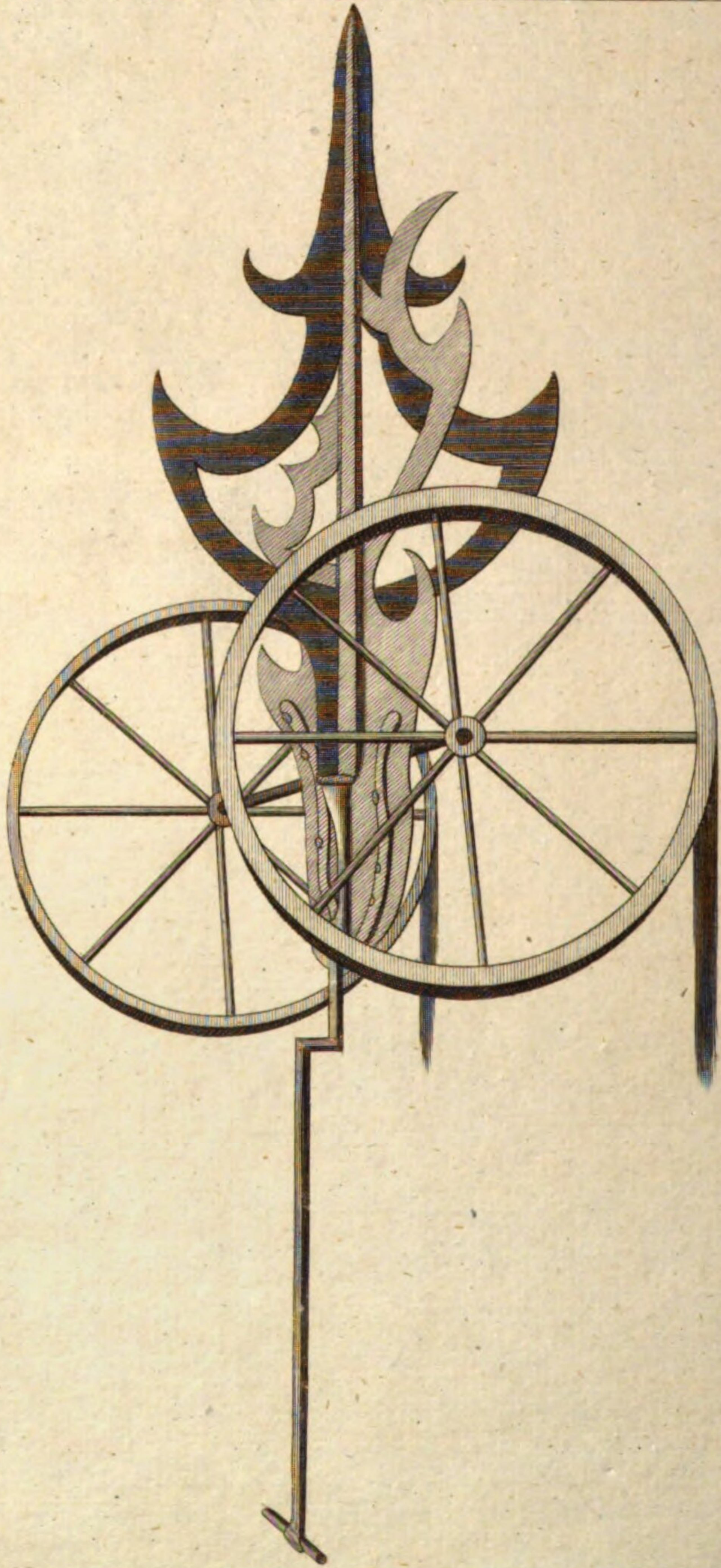


Published by J. Hooper & Co. 27. 1788

J. Newton fecit

AN ANCIENT MACHINE FOR DEFENDING A PASS.





Pub. Aug. 1888 by S. Hooper

The Lyonors, a Machine for defending a Breach.

one or more wells. This keep was to our old fortresses, what the citadel is to modern ones, the last retreat or resort of the garrison.

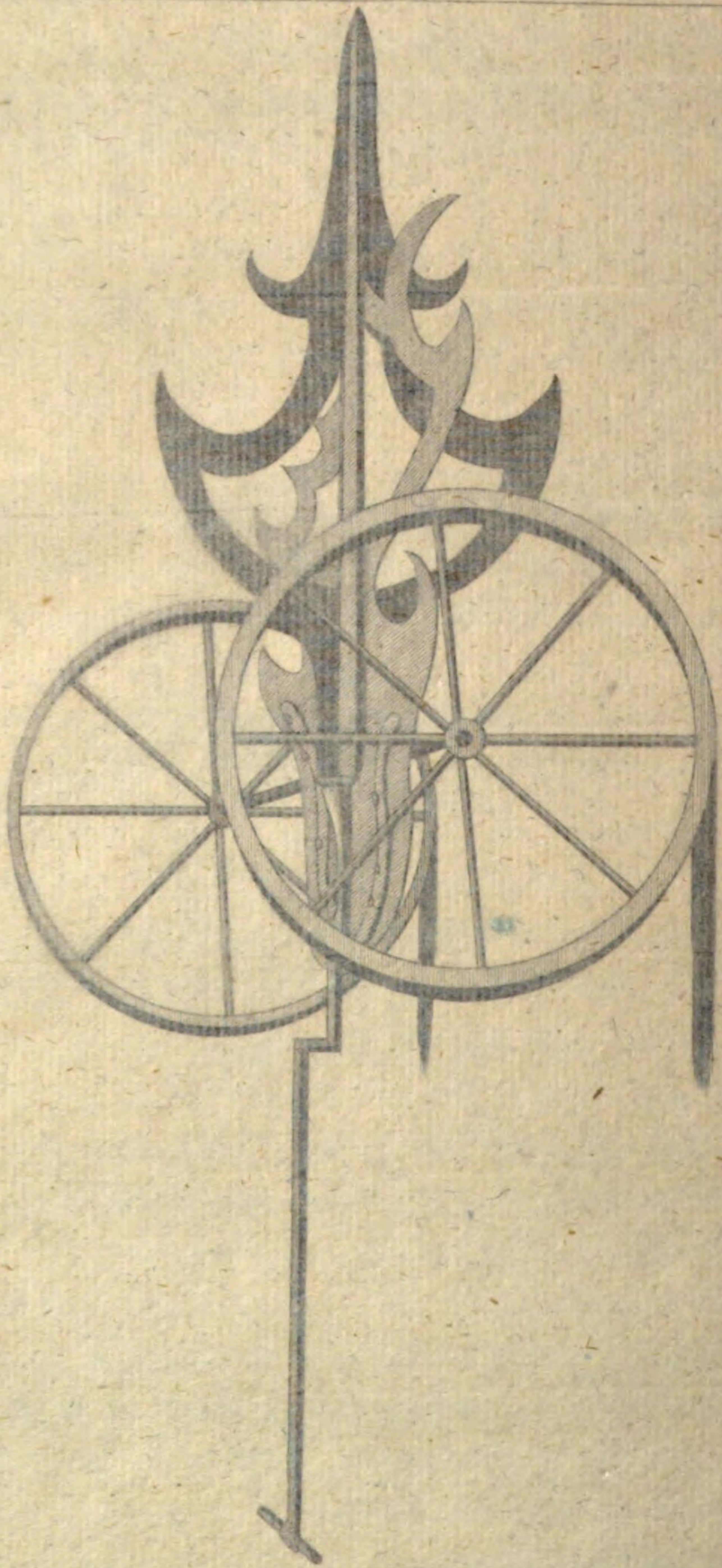
THE walls of these castles are generally of an immense thickness. The governor's residence was usually in the second or third story from the ground. The tops of these keeps are surrounded by an embattled parapet, from whence there is a view over the adjacent country. The annexed plate, taken from an ancient drawing, will shew nearly such a fortress as is here described.

IN fortified towns the outworks and external works were as has here been mentioned, only that instead of one, they had several great gates besides sally ports and posterns; and a castle which in former times, citadel like, was intended to keep the inhabitants in awe, as well as for defence against external enemies.

IN times of war or civil dissention, the streets of towns were often defended by iron chains drawn across them, these were always ready, the contrivance is shewn by the plate. The defence of towns and villages were likewise frequently harried by the machine here delineated.

IN the attack of towns and fortresses, as the range of the machines then in use did not exceed the distance of five stadia, the besiegers did not carry on their approaches by means of trenches; but began their operations above ground, with the attacks of the bayles or lifts, where many feats of chivalry were performed by the knights and men at arms, who considered the assault of that work as particularly belonging to them, the weight of their armour preventing them from scaling the walls. As this part was attacked by the knights and men at arms, it was also defended by those of the same rank in the place, whence many single combats were fought here; this was at the first investing of the place.

THE besiegers having carried the bayle and lifts, brought up their machines, and established themselves on the counterscarp, began under cover of their tortoises, fows or cats, to drain the ditch, if a wet one, and also to fill it up with hurdles and fascines, and level it for the passage of their moveable towers; whilst this was doing,



The Lyonets, a Machine for defending a Breach.

Pub. Aug 5th 1868 by J. Hoover

one or more wells. This keep was to our old fortresses, what the citadel is to modern ones, the last retreat or reduit of the garrison.

THE walls of these castles are generally of an immoderate thickness. The governor's residence was usually in the second or third story from the ground. The tops of these keeps are surrounded by an embattled parapet, from whence there is a view over the adjacent country. The annexed plate, taken from an ancient drawing, will shew nearly such a fortress as is here described.

IN fortified towns the outworks and external walls were as has here been mentioned, only that instead of one, they had several great gates besides sally ports and posterns; and a castle which in former times, citadel like, was intended to keep the inhabitants in awe, as well as for defence against external enemies.

IN times of war or civil dissention, the streets of towns were often defended by iron chains drawn across them, these were always ready, the contrivance is shewn by the plate. The avenues of towns and villages were likewise frequently barricaded by the machine here delineated.

IN the attack of towns and fortresses, as the range of the machines then in use did not exceed the distance of five stadia, the besiegers did not carry on their approaches by means of trenches; but began their operations above ground, with the attacks of the bayles or lifts, where many feats of chivalry were performed by the knights and men at arms, who considered the assault of that work as particularly belonging to them, the weight of their armour preventing them from scaling the walls. As this part was attacked by the knights and men at arms, it was also defended by those of the same rank in the place, whence many single combats were fought here; this was at the first investing of the place.

THE besiegers having carried the bayle and lifts, brought up their machines, and established themselves on the counterscarp, began under cover of their tortoises, sows or cats, to drain the ditch, if a wet one, and also to fill it up with hurdles and fascines, and level it for the passage of their moveable towers; whilst this was doing,

the archers, attended by young men carrying large shields called pavises, attempted with their arrows to drive the besieged from the towers and ramparts, being themselves covered by these portable mantlets. The garrison on their part essayed by the discharge of machines, cross and long bows to keep the enemy at a distance.

THE moveable towers or belfreys which were brought in pieces being now framed and fitted together, were pushed forwards cross the ditch, these the besieged used every means in their power to destroy, burn or overthrow.

THE cats, fows and moveable towers having reached the walls, the besiegers under them either began to mine, or batter them with the ram, they also established batteries of balistas or mangonels on the counterscarp. These were opposed by those of the enemy.

THE archers and cross bow men from the upper stories in the moveable towers essayed to drive away the garrison from the parapets, and on a proper opportunity to let fall a bridge, by that means to enter the town. In the bottom story of the tower was often a large ram, with which a breach was attempted.

AGAINST the moveable tower there were many modes of defence; the chief was to break up the ground over which it was to pass, or by undermining it to overthrow it; attempts were likewise made with different fireworks to set it on fire, to prevent which it was covered with raw hides, or coated over with alom. Sometimes huge mounts or cavaliers were thrown up to a level with it.

To deaden the strokes of the ram, hurdles, woofsacks or bags of horse-hair were let down before the wall, and to destroy or seize it, a huge beam fastened by chains to two leavers was let fall on it, or a machine like a pair of sheers, or a noose in a strong rope was employed to lay hold on it. To protect the parapet, machines called hourdeys were made use of.

MINES of two kinds were also employed in ancient sieges, one merely as a subterraneous passage into the town, to open in the night in some unfrequented place, the other with an intent to throw

throw down the walls and towers, for which purpose the miners propped up the incumbent part or roof of the mine till it was completed, after which on drawing away or burning the props, the whole with the walls and buildings on it tumbled in; the galleries of these mines were much larger than those of the present times, so that the miners of the opposite parties often met and fought in them: (d) sometimes under cover of volleys of arrows, quarrels, darts and stones, discharged by the machines, archers and cross bow men, the besiegers attempted to scale the walls, or mount the breach; for which purpose there were various contrivances and combinations of ladders. The besieged to prevent them threw down beams, pointed stakes, melted lead, and boiling water.

THE walls being thus taken, the garrison retired to the keep or dungeon of the castle, where they made the best capitulation they could obtain.

(d) AT the siege of Melun by Henry V. King of England and the Duke of Burgundy in the year 1420: the mine on the side of the English was pierced almost to the walls, the besieged, says the Historian (Monstrelet) countermined in opposition to it, and the English made a barrier where the king and the duke fought with lances against two Dauphinois, and several knights and esquires came and fought at the said mine." As those combatants were armed from head to foot, it was necessary that the galleries of the mine should be at least seven feet high and the same in breadth, that two men might act with convenience. It often happened that challenges were given to be decided here, and that the manner of fight was agreed upon. At this same siege of Melun which Barkun defended, a great Chevron was placed cross a mine, to the height of the breast, and it was forbidden that any one should pass over or under it: many champions of both parties successively presented themselves, and fought with the sword or battle ax. When a knight was made during a siege, and they were at work to undermine the wall of the town, the candidate instead of performing his vigil of arms in a chapel according to custom, kept it in the mine, where he passed the night with an ancient knight. *Joly de Maizeroy, p. 239.* Gunpowder was first unsuccessfully tried in a mine by the Genoese at Serezanella, a town belonging to the Florentines in 1487: but Peter of Navarre made another essay, and succeeded at the castle of the Eg at Naples in 1503. Paul Jovius says he had before tried the experiment at the siege of Cephalonia, some years before, when the Venetians assisted by the Spaniards took that island from the Turks.

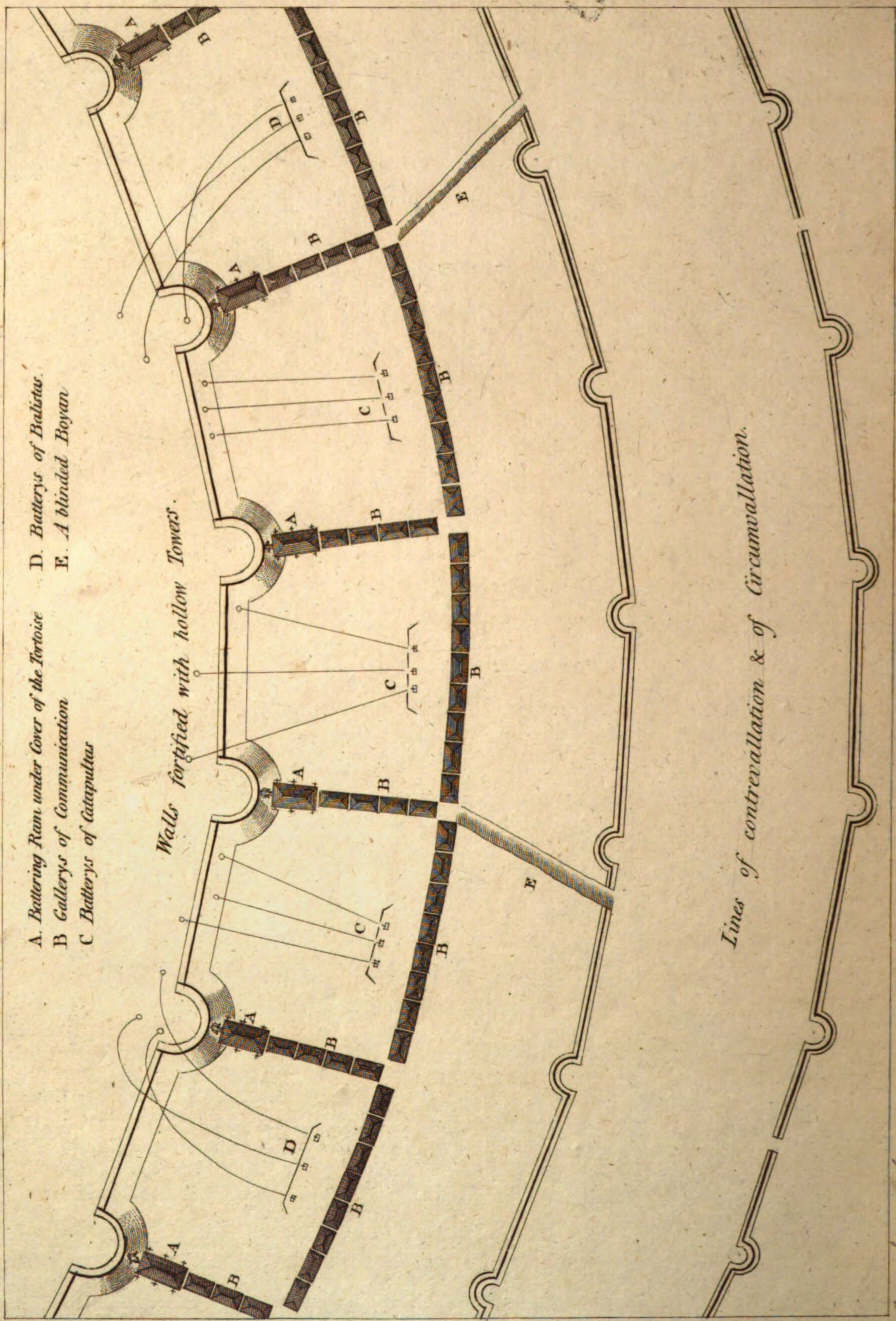
IN sieges of large places, not only lines of contra and circumvallation were traced, but complete towns were built round them, as was practised by King Edward III. at the siege of Calais.

THE following extract from an old poem, will give a further idea of an ancient siege.

THE following description of a siege is extracted from the Romance of Claris, a manuscript in the library of the King of France, No. 7534; the original is printed in the Appendix, No. 1.

“THE king gave orders for a party to go into the forest to fell and hew wood to make engines, mangonels, great and strong belfreys, and cats for filling up the ditches.

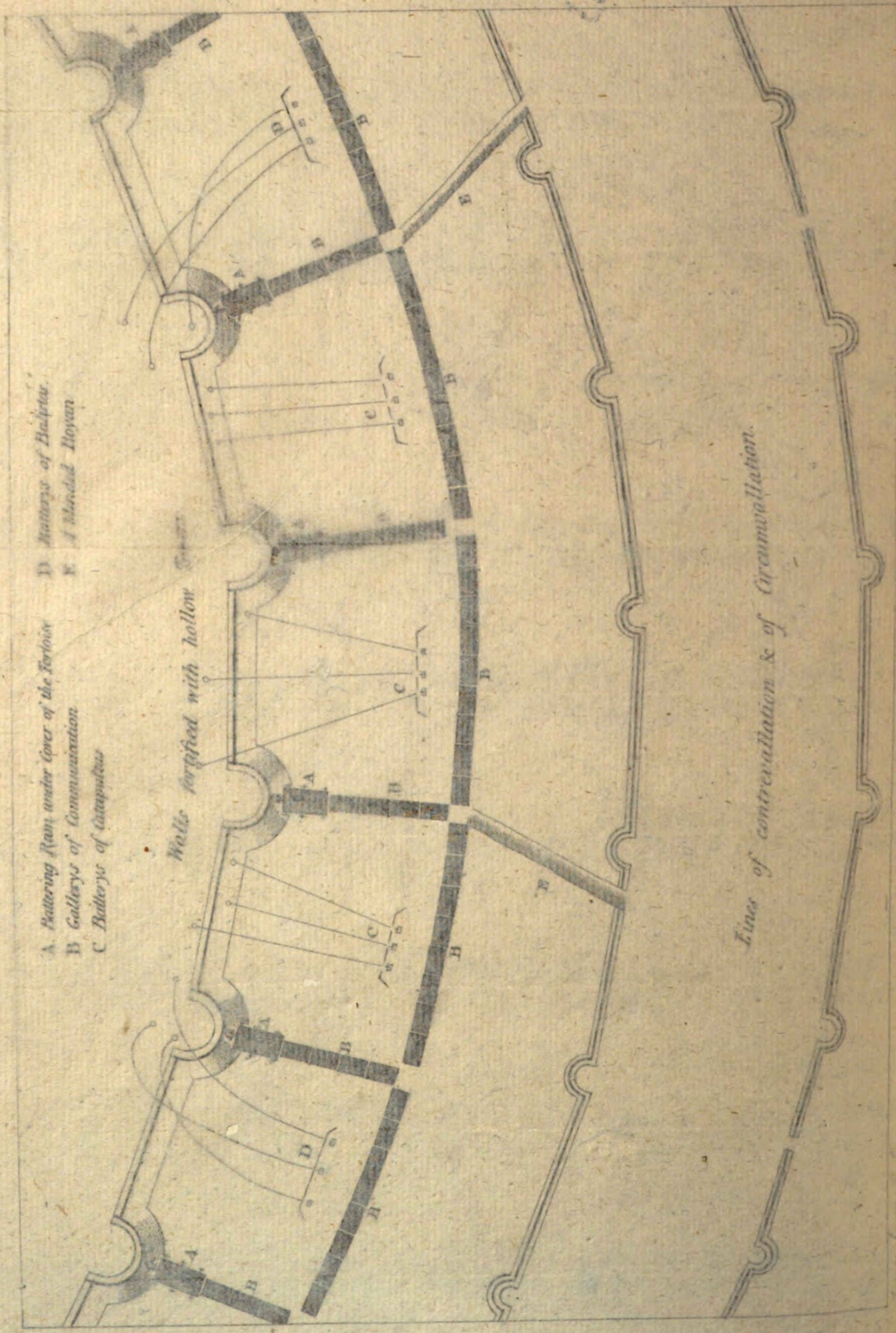
THE inhabitants on their side think of defending themselves; they make mangonels for throwing stones outwards, hourdeys for covering the crenelles, darts and pointed stakes to throw at the assailants, and to fortify the gates, barbicans, barrs, portcoulisses, and deep ditches; they then put themselves in a state of repelling the enemy, who thought them defenceless; the king causes his engines to be prepared and brought near the town; he causes the bibles and mangonels to play, the cats to advance to the ditch, and the belfreys to be conducted to the foot of the walls; the inhabitants have every reason to fear when they see the engines rolling; they mount upon the walls to defend themselves against the assailants; Arthur with his troops marches to the attack, then might you see the esquires advance under the engines, (gallerys or vineas,) to be under cover; they carry earth, under the cat, and boldly fill up the ditch; the townsmen shoot at them with cross bows, and throw darts, quarrels fly on all sides; from the top of the belfry, King Arthur's archers, and his most expert cross bow-men, shoot at the defenders of the walls; the king cries to his men, advance, brave knights! in a moment you might behold the cats roll, and already many arrive at the wall; the soldiers immediately erect their long and strong ladders, but they, (the besieged) throw on them sharpened stakes, melted



THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

- A. Batteries of Balistae.
- B. Batteries of Catapults.
- C. Galleries of Communication.
- D. Batteries of Ballistae.
- E. A Minded Hovyan

Walls fortified with hollow

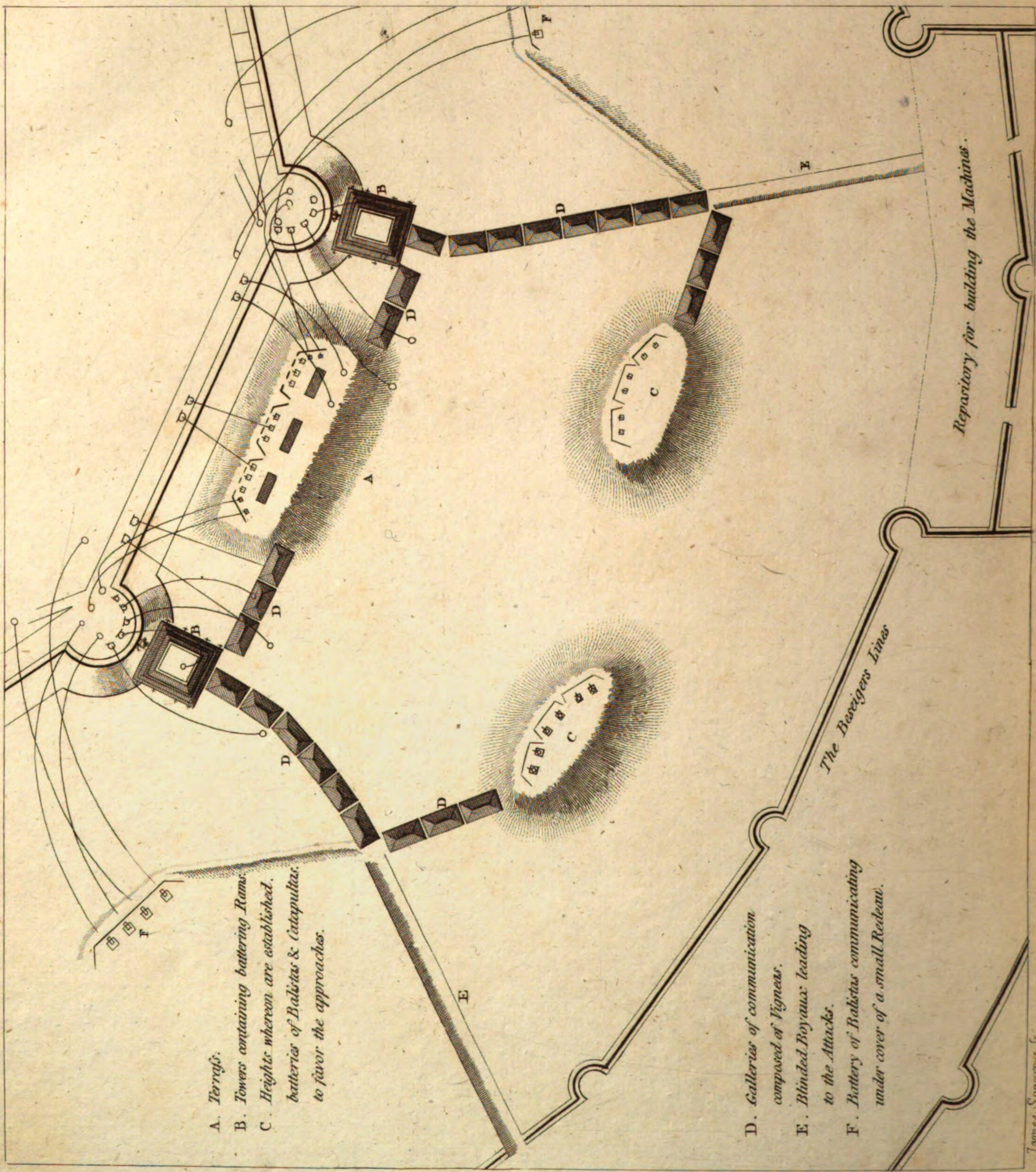


Lines of contravallation & of Circumvallation.

James Sparrow, Sc.

ANCIENT MANNER OF BESIEGING TOWNS

Published May 12th 1758 by J. Knapton



THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO LIBRARY

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY
540 EAST 58TH STREET
CHICAGO, ILL. 60637

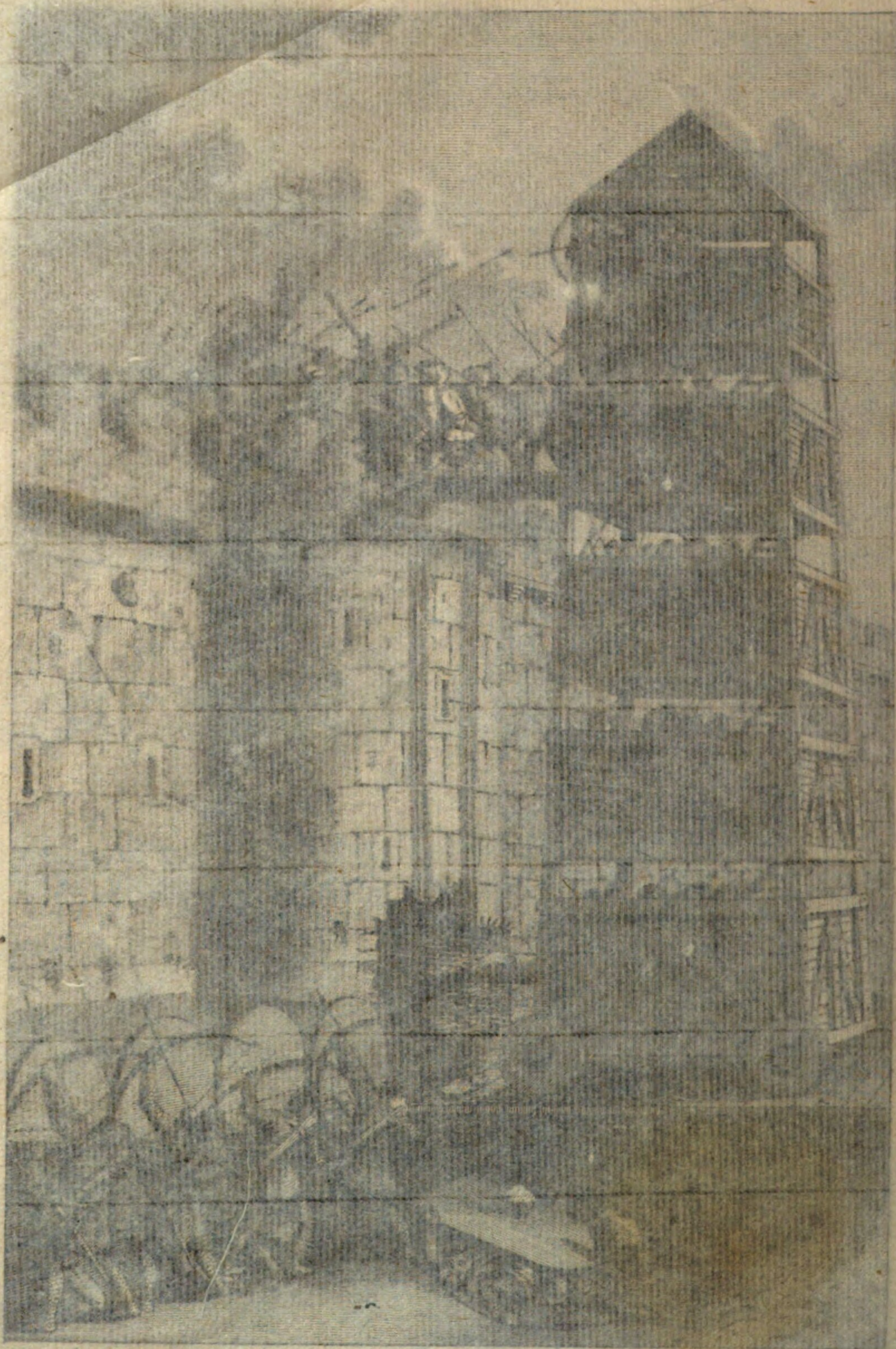
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY



Pub: 26th Feb. 1788 by S. Hooper.

N.C. Goodnight sculpit.

PAVISORS, & A MOVEABLE TOWER.



Patented Feb. 1783 by S. Hopper.

J. C. Smith del. & sculp.

PAVISORS, & A MOVEABLE TOWER.

melted pitch, mixed with glue, cauldrons of boiling water, and then succeed in repelling them; the next day a new attack, the serjeants returned to the engines, the knights to the gates, and the cross bow-men to the belfroy; the inhabitants also remount their walls, they no longer fear any thing, and still believe themselves certain to conquer; the assault recommences, the knights near the gate labour in cutting down the lists, the townsmen sally out to defend them; on both sides they endeavour to behave well, to distinguish themselves, and to maintain the fight with advantage; the confusion is lively in this part: the attack begins again at the crenelles and the towers, quarrels, stakes, and great stones fly on all sides, the petrarys and threatning bibles play without ceasing, the knights in the mean time fight in crowds at the lists, every one of them endeavouring to overthrow an enemy; at their head are sword in hand, Gauvain, Claris, Master Yvain, Laris, and Sagramore; they rush upon the knights of the town, these lose ground and the lists, they retire behind the thick bars and there maintain the combat; but ours redouble their efforts, they do not sleep, and are become carpenters, and in fine so well preserve their advantage, they fight so valliantly, that they push back the enemy into the town with great loss; on the other side those who were in the belfreys, gain the walls and jumped on them sword in hand; the attack lasted the whole day till the evening.

IN the night the besieged hold a council, and send a deputy to offer to surrender."

THREE plates copied from Mr. Joly de Maizeroy's History of Sieges, will explain his idea of the ancient mode of attacking a fortified place, and the machines used for covering the workmen.

IT was formerly the custom of almost every nation when joining in battle, to begin the attack with loud shouts, called cries of war, or of arms; these shouts were intended to terrify the enemy, to occupy the soldiers, and to prevent them from hearing the shouts of

of their opponents; Froissart says, "that at the battle of Crecy, fifteen thousand Genoese archers began to yell in a most frightful manner to terrify the English." In these cries every nation and almost every leader had their peculiar word, or sentence, which also served as a kind of parole to distinguish friends from foes; cries of arms were likewise used to rally broken squadrons, especially when their banner was in danger.

THE ancient English cry was St. George, this was in such estimation that a military writer of the beginning of the last century inserts the observance of it among the ordinances or military laws, to the obedience of which he would have all soldiers sworn. (e)

ITEM, says he, that all souldiers entering into battaile, assault, skirmishe, or other action of arms, shall have for their common crie and word, ST. GEORGE! ST. GEORGE! forward or upon them St. George; whereby the souldier is much comforted, and the enemy dismaide, by calling to mind the auncient valour of England, which with that name hath been so often victorious; therefore he that shall maliciously omit it, shall be severely punished for his obstinacie.

ALTHOUGH the cry of St. George has been long disused, war cries are still kept up among our sailors, who constantly accompany their first broadside, with three huzzas, stiled by them, three cheers; several of our modern officers, among them General Wolf, recommend on charging the enemy with fixed bayonets, to give a loud warlike shout: (f) Sir James Ware says, the ancient Irish war cry

(e) EDWARD DAVIS, 1619.

(f) THE war cry of the Spaniards was á mat; that of the French montjoye St. Dennis, concerning which the French etymologists by no means agree, some making it St. Dennis my joy, my hope, my consolation; some consider montjoye as a diminutive of mount, and that it alluded to the mount of martyrdom on which St. Dennis suffered; others supposed it a corruption of mons Jovis and to have some now forgotten reference to a Pagan temple or a mount dedicated to Jupiter: at present the French in assaults of the covered way, or any other attack, cry tué, tue.

was farrah ! farrah ! In after ages, each sept or clan made use of a different war cry, most of them terminating in the word *ABOE*, derived from an obsolete Irish word, signifying, cause or business ; thus the Earle of Kildare's cry was crom-aboe, supposed from a strong castle called Crom.

THE ransom of prisoners of war, was one of the principal sources of emolument to military men of ancient days, similar to the prize-money of the present time, to the officers and seamen of the Royal Navy, many having thereby raised large fortunes ; Sir Walter Manny in the reign of King Edward III. is said to have gained 8000*l.* by prisoners of war in one campaign ; but this right of ransom was by custom restricted to certain ranks, (g) and sometimes particular persons were excepted in the indentures, made between the king and the contracting soldier ; (h) nor did the whole

(g) THUS in the ordinances of war of Henry V. in the article respecting prisoners it is enacted, that if a prisoner shall be superior to his captor, and shall have his sovereign's leave to display his standard, or if he shall be of the blood royal, a duke, a marquis or an earle, or a chief captain, then the said prisoner to be the captive of the chief captain of that part of the army by which he was taken, who is to give a compensation or reward to the original captor. An instance of the compensation made for the caption of a royal prisoner occurs in Rymer, where it appears that for the taking of David Bruce King of Scotland at Durham, John de Coupland was constituted a bannerett, and to maintain the state thereof King Edward gave to him and his heirs five hundred pounds per ann. 400 from the exits of the customs of the port of London, and 100 from those of Berwick upon Tweed ; and also to the said John for his former services, and for those in future of himself with ten men at arms, annually one hundred pounds from the exits of the port of Newcastle, for life or till he is provided with an hundred pounds rent. Tom. 5. p. 539. And Thomas de Holland had a grant of eighty thousand Florins (*Florinorum de Scuto*) granted him by the king for taking of the Earl of Eu, constable of France. Rymer, tom. 5, p. 568.

(h) IN an indenture of K. Ed. III. with Thomas Tunstall, the prisoners excepted are, the King of France, any of his sons, nephews, uncles, cousins german, or any King of any kingdom whatsoever ; the king's lieutenant, or any chieftain having the power

whole ranfome in any cafe accrue to the captor, for the king and the commanding officer of the corps were both entitled to certain proportions of his good fortune.

THE usual price demanded for the ranfome of a prifoner of war was, according to Monsieur St. Palaye, one year's rent of his eftate, one third of which was by the royal ordonnances, the property of the chief captain under whom the captor ferved; out of which, one third of that third, equal to one ninth of the whole ranfome, was to be paid by the captain to the king; ftipendiary foldiers who had no eftates, ufually paid for their ranfome one half of their year's pay; one third of any plunder, or the ranfome of prifoners taken by the followers of the army, not being in the king's pay, was alfo the property of the crown.

RYMER has preferved a very curious record refpecting the mode of fecuring and paying ten thoufand marks for the ranfome of Aph. Till. A. D. 1207, 9th K. John, wherein it is ftipulated, that of ten thoufand marks to be paid by that prifoner for his ranfome, he fhould pay down two thoufand, and the price of ten horfes, each of the value of thirty marks, before he was releafed on his parole; and fe- curity for the remaining 7700 marks he fhould give hoftages; namely, his brother, his fon, and two daughters, and five of his knights prifoners with him, which the king fhould felect and de- tain; the faid hoftages, that is, his brother, fons, and daughters to come to England before he went out of prifon, and between the fifth day of our Lord and the ninth, the king to deliver up all the knights he had belonging to the faid Aph, except the five above mentioned, who were to remain in prifon till the whole ranfome

of the faid adverfary of France: *Rymer*. See alfo the indenture between the King and John Hateley, printed in this work, vol. 1. p. 72. n. c. the perfons excepted are alfo named in the 37 article of the ordinance of war of Henry VIII. in which and the ten fucceeding articles there is much about prifoners. See p. 99 of this vol.

was

was paid ; after the said Aph had paid the 200 marks, and value of ten horses, and caused the hostages to be given, he was to have leave to go to his country to seek for the remainder of his ransome, which if he remitted by the stated time, his hostages should be set at liberty ; if he could not pay it, then he should return and surrender himself prisoner to the king, and the hostages, except the five knights, should be set at liberty ; but the 2000 marks, and the price of the horses to remain in the hands of the king ; to whom proof was to be made that the persons called the brother, son, and daughters of the said Aph, were really and legitimately so ; and if the said Aph should return to prison, and bring with him the knights released, the king should return him the 2000 marks, and the price of the horses, or a proportionable part according to the numbers of knights he should bring back with him.

THE hopes of ransom frequently acted in the place of humanity, avarice assuming the place of mercy ; this is evident from the reason assigned by Patin, for the great slaughter of the Scots, at the battle of Muffelborough, in 1548, to wit, that their mean appearance gave little hopes of their ability to pay ransom. (i)

(i) To these another, and not the meanest matter, was (says he) their armour among them so little differing, and their apparail so base and beggerly, whearin the lurdein was in a maner all one with the lorde, and the lounde wyth the larde : all clad alyke in jackes coovered with whyte leather, doublettes of the same, or of fustian, and most commonly all white hosen, not one with either cheine, brooch, ryng or garment of filke that I could see, onles cheynes of latten drawn four or fyve tymes along the thighs of their hosen, and dooblet sleeves for cuttyng, and of yt fort I sawe many. This vilenes of port was the caus that so many of their great men and gentlemen wear kyled and so few saved. The outwarde sheaw, the semblaunce and signe whearby a stranger might discern a villain from a gentleman, was not among them to be seen. As for woordes and goodly proffer of great raundsoms wear as common and ryfe in the mouthes of the tone as in toother. And therefore hereby it cam to pas that after the examinacions and counting of their prisoners ; we found taken above twenty of their villayns to one of their gentlemen, whom no man nede to dout, we had rather have spared then the villayns yf we could have knowe ony difference between them in takyng.

UNDER the regulations here mentioned prisoners of war were so much the property of the captors, that they might (k) give, bequeath, or with the king's licence sell them to any person; and princes or great men frequently bestowed some of their prisoners on knights who had distinguished themselves in an engagement, thereby to enrich them. (l)

THE non-payment of ransom was deemed so particularly dishonourable, that according to Colombiere, persons dying under that predicament, could have their image represented on their tombs, only in a particular manner, which was, without spurs, cask, coat of arms or sword, the scabbard only hanging by their

(k) AFTER the death of King Henry V. A. D. 1422, a petition was presented by the lords, captains and others, indented to serve his late majesty in his wars, praying that the thirds and thirds of thirds of all sorts of gains taken in war, as also the prisoners belonging to the king at the day of his death should be deducted and accounted for at the exchequer, out of the sums due to the petitioners from the late king, on condition that the overplus due after the deduction of the said wages shall be paid to the king, and that after this account, they, their heirs and executors should be discharged and released of all demands, by the authority of parliament; this was granted; and also that all those to whom jewels had been pledged by the late king, if not satisfied in half a year for their services, might keep the said jewels, provided they were not the ancient jewels of the crown. *Rot. Parl.*

(l) THE captors sometimes sold their prisoners to other persons, perhaps for the sake of ready money, but for this it appears that the royal licence was necessary, for an archer having taken the archdeacon of Paris prisoner, and sold him without the king's licence to the abbot of Colchester, was directed to be seized and brought before the council, A. D. 1346, 20 Ed. III. (See Rymer.) And in the same year the sheriffs of Yorkshire, Nottingham, Lancaster and Derby were directed by the king's writ to make diligent search after certain persons who had ransomed and released diverse Scotch prisoners of war taken by them at Durham, without the royal licence for such ransoming; they were likewise ordered to forbid the like practice by proclamation throughout their bailiwick, under penalty of forfeiture of life and limb, and every other possible forfeiture; and all persons having such prisoners in their custody, were directed to appear personally with them before the council at London, there to treat with them for the satisfaction to be made them for the said prisoners. *Rymer, tom. v. p. 533.*

fides

sides in their belt; (m) if the non-payment was intentional, the arms of the defaulter was reversed and he was deemed infamous.

PERSONS taken prisoners were, with the king's permission, frequently permitted to go home to raise money for the payment of their ransom, or giving their parole to return within a stated time, either to pay the money, or to surrender themselves prisoners; a breach of their parole was always severely punished, and in most treaties and truces there was a clause, agreeing that justice should be done on both sides respecting prisoners; (n) prisoners of high rank obtained passports for their servants, as well to procure money for their ransom, as to transact their private affairs. (o)

SOMETIMES prisoners were purchased of their captors in order to be exchanged for others of the same rank; ransom was not only paid for prisoners of war, but also for the dead bodies of great per-

(m) PART 2d. p. 625.

(n) IN the truce made at Calais it was agreed that justice should be done on both sides, respecting prisoners who had broken their faith; and William de Wyncheles having complained that during the war, he took a certain William le Conte in Normandy, and afterwards on his faith permitted him to cross over, on condition that he should return at a stated time to pay his ransom, but he remaining in Jersey in violation of his faith, had not satisfied the said William for his ransom; wherefore being desirous of doing justice in this case, the king by this writ, dated 12th of December, 1347, directed the bayliffs and jurats of Jersey to arrest the said William, and deliver him to William de Wyncheles, to be held by him as his prisoner, according to the law of arms and form of the aforesaid truce. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 599.

A. D. 1351, 25 Ed. III. John de Bello Campo being prisoner to the King of France and over in England on his parole, the king by his writ forbids all his officers and subjects under penalty of loss of body and goods to prevent his return by any kind of arrest or imprisonment whatsoever, and promises to oblige his securities to fulfill their obligations. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 730.

(o) A. D. 1350, 24. Ed. III. That King granted his passport for fifteen persons, servants to the Earl of Eu, to go to France and to return to England (in war or peace) for the purpose of procuring money for his ransom, and other business. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 688.

sonages slain in battle; an instance of this is cited by St. Palaye, which he says happened at the siege of Rouen, where 400 nobles were paid for the body of a person there slain. (p)

THE rigid treatment shewn to prisoners of war in ancient times, strongly marks the ferocity and uncultivated manners of our ancestors, and that even to ladies of high rank; notwithstanding the homage said to have been paid to the fair sex in those days of chivalry: many instances of this appear in our histories, and a striking one is recorded by Rymer, respecting the Countess of Baghun, or Buchan, a Scotch prisoner, for whose confinement, the Chamberlain of Scotland, or his lieutenant, were by writ of privy seal, 34 Ed. I. A.D. 1306, directed to fit up one of the turrets of the castle of Berwick upon Tweed, and therein to build a strong cage of lattice work, constructed with stout posts and barres, and well strengthened with iron; this cage to be so contrived, that the countess might have the convenience of a privy, proper care being taken that it did not lessen the security of her person: in this cage the countess was to be kept, without being suffered to go out on any account whatsoever, and also to be prevented from speaking with any person, Scotch or English, except the keeper of the castle, and a woman or two of the town of Berwick, appointed by him to deliver her food; the keeper to be answerable for the safe keeping of her body. The sister of Robert Bruce was prisoner at the same time, and treated in the same manner. See Appendix, No. V.

IN the directions given by Ed. I. A.D. 1306, respecting the confinement of the wife of Robert Bruce: among the servants allowed is the following; and also let her have a foot-boy to remain in her chamber; one that shall be sober, and not a riotous one, to make her bed, and to do other things required for her chamber. From the

(p) *Jean le Fevre de. S. Rem. Hist. de C. VI. page 127 and 128.*

same authority it appears, that a child, the heir of Mar, was excused wearing fetters on account of his tender age, which strongly implies that it was customary to fetter prisoners of war; and this receives some farther confirmation from a subsequent order in the reign of Ed. III. whereby Thomas de Bodestone, keeper of the castle of Gloucester, soon after the invasion and destruction of Winchelsea, was directed to keep the Count de Juny, the king's prisoner in the said town of Gloucester, carefully, without irons, unless on just cause of suspicion; none of his attendants were to remain in the said town or castle with him, except one for the purpose of providing and dressing his victuals, which was to be taken to the castle gate by a servant deputed by the said keeper, who was to deliver it to the count, and to attend on him; the usual oath taken by other prisoners, was directed to be administered to him, if he refused to take it, the keeper to guard him at his peril, and as he would answer to the king; and A. D. 1347, in the 21st of the same reign, the king by his writ to the Archbishop of Canterbury, William Bishop of Winchester, Richard de Stafford, and Peter de Gildesburgh commands, that they cause the Lord Tankervill, then lately taken in the wars in France, to be strictly confined in some strong and well walled place, so that he may not speak or communicate by writing with any one without his (the king's) especial licence, and that his servants or attendants should not be suffered to go out of that place; a like writ was directed to Thomas Holland for the safe keeping of the Earl of Eu, constable of France. (q)

ANNO 1543, 35 Hen VIII. Thomas Lord Audeley, of Walden, Chancellor of England, the Duke of Norfolk, Stephen Bishop of Winchester, Thomas Bishop of Westminster, William Lord St. John, and Sir John Gage, Knt. commissioners appointed by King Henry VIII. treated with the Earl of Glencairne, George Douglas,

(q) RYMER, tom. v. p. 558.

William Hamilton, and diverse others deputed as commissioners, proctors, orators, and ambassadors of Mary, Queen of Scotland, then a minor, and with the advice of James, Earl of Arreyn, governor of the realm during the queen's minority, for the ransome of diverse Scottish prisoners, when they settled their ransomes at different sums, from 1000l. to 100l. sterling; (r) "and it was farthermore covenanted, that in case such prisoners of England as have their rawnsomes to be taxed in Scotland, shall be there seased and taxed in their rawnsomes after a lower rate and moderation than the sumes of rawnsome before limited and taxed; they shall be abated and diminished agreeably, portion for portion alike, and that the said prisoners of Scotland shall be used with such gentlenes as is shewed unto the Englishmen prisoners there.

AND further it was agreed, that at such tyme as the hostages of Scotland shal be delivered, at the same tyme the prisoners of Scotland giving bonde by obligation for the payment of their rawnsome at convenyant daies, with their owne promise to yelde themself prisoners if they breke their faide daies of payment, with a writing also of the Governour of Scotlande, conteyninge his promise to upholde and mainteigne the faide bondes and promises; this doon, the prisoners of Scotland shal be at that day, and from thence forward accompted free of the captivitie; provided always, that the Englishmen, prisoners in Scotland, be used in all thingis after the same sortee, meaning oonly in the covenante suche prisoners Englishmen as were taken by the King of Scots lieft. or others, and were to be specially deteigned as notable prisoners."

IN witness of this covenant and agreement, both parties subscribed and sealed those indentures.

(r) THE Earl of Casselis was rated 1000l. sterling, the Earl of Glencairne the same, the Lord Somerwell, 1000 marks.

By the feudal system all the tenants vassals of a lord were obliged to contribute towards his ransom, if taken prisoner of war: thus King Richard I. levied an aid for the ransom of his person, when he was taken and imprisoned, on his return from the Holy Land. The tenants in capite, both barons and knights, paid it under the name of scutage or escuage, so called from its being assessed at XXs. per scutum or for each knight's fee, at the same time a payment was also made for the same purpose by the name of hidage.

INFERIOR lords of seigneuries had the same aids as the king. John de Brittany Earl of Richmond being taken prisoner by the Scots, whilst he was in the king's service in the field, had the king's letters directed to all his tenants requesting them to pay reasonable aid, there called a subsidy, for his ransom according to their ability, and the quantity of their respective tenures, to which, said the record, they were bound as well by natural equity as by the duty of their fealty.

THE expence of keeping the king's prisoners of war was advanced by the sheriffs of counties, wherein they were confined, and charged in their accounts at the exchequer. A number of instances of writs directing them to advance different sums on this account out of the profits of their bailiwicks occur in Rymer. Probably these expences were repaid by the prisoners, with their ransom.

THE usual sum was from one shilling to sixpence per diem, for men of rank; for a knight fourpence, and for his robe twenty five shillings per annum, ordinary prisoners were allowed three-pence and two-pence; with a mark for their annual clothing.

THE Bishop of St. Andrews was delivered to the sheriff of Southampton to be kept in Winchester castle, his allowance for his proper expences sixpence per diem, for one valet serving him three-pence, one boy likewise in his service three halfpence, and one chapellain to celebrate mass to him one penny and a halfpenny by

by the day, which chapellain, valet and boy were to be chosen from such as might be trusted, and for whom the sheriff would be answerable.

IN other matters the sheriff was authorised to use such other means for the safe keeping of the said bishop as he thought necessary. The same allowance was made to the Bishop of Glasgow confined in Portchester castle. The Abbot of Stone, a rebel, was directed to be kept in a strong part of Winchester castle with iron fetters on his feet.

WITH this article the author begs leave to conclude his work, having to the utmost of his abilities endeavoured to complete the plan proposed in the advertisement; for the faults and errors, particularly the typographical ones, he relies on the candour and indulgence of his readers, as he can assure them they were not caused by negligence or inattention; industry being the only merit he pretends to claim, except that of having brought forwards, and preserved from oblivion, many curious manuscripts and scarce printed books, respecting the Military Antiquities of this kingdom.

F I N I S.

A P P E N D I X, No. I.

*Description of an Ancient Siege, taken from the Romance of Claris, a
Manuscript in the King of France's Library, No. 7543.*

LI Rois
Comande en la forest aler
Le merrien trancher & doler,
Et faire engins & mangoniaux,
Et grans béfrois riches & biaux,
Châz pour des granz fosses emplir.
Cilz dedans pensent d'els garnir :
Mangonniax font por fors giter,
Hourdiz por les creniax garder,
Darz & piens agus por lancer,
Barbacanes por enforcier.
Barres & portes couleïces,
Et granz trenchées tailleïces ;
Bien s'appareillent por defendre
De ceus qui les cuident sorprendre.
Li Rois fet ses engins drécier
Et vers les hauz murs charroïer,
Bibles & Mangonniax getter,
Et les Chaz aux fossez mener,
Les befrois traire vers les murs :
Cil dedens ne sont pos féurs
Quant les engins voient venir,
Aus murs montent pour maintenir
La cité contre ceus de fors.
Li Roi Artus & ses efforts
S'en vont avant por assaillir :
Escuyers veïffiez faillir

Par les engins pour euls couverre.
Par les chaz vont portant la terre
Les fossés emplent fièrement ;
Et cils dedenz communément
Traient d'aubalestes & dars :
Carrels volent de toutes parts,
Car aus béfrois sont li archier,
Et li plus mestre aubalestrier.
Qui á ceux desus les murs traient :
Li Roi Artus sa gent s'escrie
Avant franche Chevalerie.
Lors veïffiez les chaz mener
Et les plusors aus murs muïer :
Li auquant drécent les eschieles
Par les murs & fortes & fieres ;
Més cil lor lancent piez agus
Et poiz chaude mellée á gluz,
Et eue bouillante, & chaudiere ;
Par force les merent arriere.
Li Lendemain
Aus engins corent les fergens,
Aus portes vont li chevalier,
Aus béfrois li aubalestrier.
Cil de laiens montent as murs,
Ne doutent rien, ainz sont féurs ;
Dont recomence li assaut.
Li chevaliers vers les portaus

Des lices couper se travaillent ;
 Més cil de la cité lor faillent,
 Lors lices durement défendent ;
 D'une port & d'autre contendent
 De bien fere, de bien ferir,
 Et de bien l'estor maintenir.
 Aus lices est granz li estors,
 Et au fenêtres & aus tours
 Rest li assaüz. De toutes parz
 Volent carrel, & pel, & dars ;
 Et pierres grans & les perrieres
 Et les bibles qui sont trop fieres
 Gétent trop menuétement.
 Li chevalier communément
 Sont aus lices, lá se combatent ;
 Li uns d'euls les autres abatent.
 Claris & Laris & Gauvain,
 Sagremor, & Messire Yveins

Sont devant, les épées tresetes,
 Lors ont les envaies fetes
 A ceus dedens, dont trop perdirent ;
 Par force les lices perdirent.
 Aus mestres barres sont venu ;
 Lá ont le chaple maintenu ;
 Més li nostre tozjours s'enforcent
 Ne font pas semblant que il dorcent ;
 Cil sont Charpentier devenuz.
 Tant fu li assaüz maintenuz,
 Tant si pénerent fièrement
 Nostre baron communément
 Qu'en lacité les ambatirent.
 Asez de lor genz i perdirent.
 Cil de Béfrois dus qu'aus' murs vienent,
 Les épées en lor mains tiennent ;
 Toute jour fut l'assaüz tenus,
 Tant que li vespres fu venuz.

La nuit les assiegés tiennent Conseil, & ils envoient un depute pour offrir de se rendre.



A P P E N D I X, No. II.

*The Trials of William de Weston and Sir John de Gomenez, from the
Rolls of Parliament, 1st of King Richard II. A. D. 1377.*

WHEREAS it was prayed by the commons, that all such captains as had by their misbehaviour lost or delivered up either castles or towns, might be made to answer for it to this parliament, and according to their desert, be severely punished by the award of the lords and baronage, to prevent the effects of the bad example which they have given to others, who are governors of towns and castles, it is commanded to Sir Alein de Buxhul, constable of the Tower of London, that he doth cause to come before the lords in parliament at Westminster, on Friday, the 27th day of November, of the year aforesaid, John Sieur de Gomenez, and William de Weston, taken and detained in the said Tower, by the command of our lord the king, because they had lost and rendered certain castles and towns to the enemies of our lord the king, there to answer upon the said articles which shall be surmised against them for the said cause, on the part of our lord the king. Upon which day of Friday, the said John and William, being brought by the said constable, before the lords aforesaid in full parliament, sitting in the white chamber, they were severally arraigned, at the commandement of the said lords, by Sir Richard Lescrop, knight, steward of the house of our lord the king in manner as ensueth.

WILLIAM DE WESTON, you took upon you from the most puissant prince whom God affoyle, Sire Edward, late king of England, grandfather of our Lord the king that now is, safely to keep to him and his heirs, kings of England, the castle of Outhrewyck, without surrendering it to any one but to the said grandfather or to his said heirs, or by command from him, or from his said heirs; have you William, who are a liege man of our lord the king, in times of the same our lord the king, who now is true heire to the said grandfather, deli-

vered and surrendered the same to the enemies of our lord the king, without command from him to the dishonour (or damage) of him and his crown, and of the estate of his realme of England, against your allegiance and undertaking afore said; what say you thereunto?

WHEREUPON the said William said, that he had put his answers in writing, and produced before them a cedula containing many things comprised within the same, and came and read the said cedula in full parliament. Whereupon it was demanded of him by the said steward, if he presented before them this cedula for a finall answer in this behalfe, or not. And hereupon the said William prayed that this cedula might be re-delivered unto him, and that he might put in his finall answer; which cedula for the cause afore said, was re-delivered unto him; and after the said William delivered the said cedula, with an addition put thereunto in full parliament, for his finall answer in this behalf; the tenor of which cedula is such as followeth. To the most sage counsell of our lord the king, and to the other lords and commons of the parliament, supplicates and sheweth William de Weston, that albeit he be accused of this, that he hath maliciously rendered the castle of Outhrewyk, of which he had the custody by delivery and assignment of our Lord the king; may it please your sage and just discretion to have the said William excused thereof, for these causes ensuing. First of all, may it please you to remember, how that the said William was lately enformed by a spie, that a great power of the enemies would come upon him to besiege the said castle, with very great and very grievous ordnances, whereupon he the said William, presently, by his attorney and by his letters, required of the said counsell that it would please them to reinforce the said castle with more men, for the defence and safeguard thereof, in regard that the garrison of the said castle that then was, were not half sufficient in respect of multitude to resist so great a force in so large a place; but in conclusion, for all this, he could not have any succour from the said counsell; and so the said William not at all through his default, was left without people sufficient for to keepe and defend the said castle any long time, which he beseecheth you to take into your just and benigne consideration; and please you to know, how upon a Monday about one of the clock, the enemy came to beseige the said castle, to the number of about two thousand six hundred men of armes, and seven hundred Genoese cross bowe men, and with five thousand of the commonality of the country, having nine great canons, a great engine, and a trebuchet beyond all measure greater than had before been seen
in

in these marches: and the same hour, presently a great number of the men at armes and cross bowe men aforesaid, came before the gates for to assaile the said castle, and at this time a knight of theirs was slain, who was cousin to the Lord de Clifton, as was reported, and many others were then likewise slain and hurt; and within a short time after they began to discharge and shoot with their ordnance and other engines, and so continued their assaults from one day to another, that is to say, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday; and then were the walls and houses battered down, and shattered in many places, and they had likewise by force trenched the ditches of the said castle, in three places, so that all the water was drained out; and that night came a great party of them, and by force made an assault, and beat down the barricadoes, so that the next day which was Friday, they came about the break of day with all their force to assault the said castle, but with God's assistance they were yet forcibly repulsed from their attack, and on both sides some were slain and wounded; and the same day the marshall of Burgoyne spoke to the said William and others of the said castle to surrender; whereupon, considering that the said castle was not tenable, as well on account of the smallness of the garrison, as that the walls were in many parts weakened by their marvellous ordnance, there was a treaty with the lords, to the end that the said William and his companions might advise themselves against the next morning, and so they departed. Also this same night the enemies caused all their ordnances, engines, trebuchet, and canons, with faggots and scaling ladders, with all their other necessities to be drawn to the ditch of the said castle, and the next morning which was Saturday, they made all things ready to assault the place, and then they first sent a herald to the said William, to know whether the said castle should be surrendered to them or not; whereupon the said William, by the advice of the wisest of his companions, considering how the said place had been battered and weakened by their ordnance, and also that they were but few of them for its defence, because twelve of their companions were at that time killed, wounded, and sick, so that there remained of the whole garrison in health to defend it, only thirty-eight men, wherefore by common assent the said castle, which was no longer tenable, was by force obliged to surrender, to save the goods and lives of the men; and that all these things before mentioned are true, the said William undertakes to prove according to your discreet ordonnances.

ITEM, it is to be remembered, that when the said castle was thus surrendered, as is above said, certain Frenchmen bargained with the said William for the purchase

purchase of his provisions, and also of certain prisoners which the said William held confined in the said castle, for which things he received of them in payment 1500 francs, of which he paid to his companions in part of their wages, which were in arrear one quarter of a year and a half, 578 francs.

ITEM, afterwards there was paid afterwards at Calais for the provisions of the said castle due before that time 442 francs.

ITEM, for the passage of the said William, and of his companions to England, and likewise for the expences of the said William being at Calais 135 francs. Wherefore the said William prayeth that in this business having regard to justice and benignity, although by envious suggestions he hath been against all reason accused, and by the malice of false witnesses greatly injured, as well in his fame as in his estate, and having also consideration, that out of his private property he has paid his companions the greatest part of the wages due to them, and also for the great costs he hath been at before this time, in victualling the castle, for which he has given his obligations in diverse places, and oweth great sums, by reason of which he is on all sides undone, if your just benignity doth not succour him, you will please for God's sake, and for pity, to ordain likewise for him, that he may, by your discreet nobleness recover his estate and goods. Also the said William Weston sheweth how the first day the enemy came before Arde, he went in haste to Calais, to the captain, and desired of him more succour and aid of men for the better guarding his fort of Outhrewyk, and to defend it if the enemies should come thither; and the captain answered him briefly, that he would not deliver nor give him aid nor succour, at the said time, because he apprehended the said enemies would come before the town of Calais.

AND the said cedula being seen and read in full parliament, immediately after was the said John there arraigned by the said seneschal in the manner following:

JOHN LORD DE GOMENEZ, you took upon you to the most puissant prince, whom God assoile, Sire Edward late King of England, grandfather to our Lord the King that now is, safely to keep to him and his heirs Kings of England, the town and castle of Arde, without surrendering the same to any person, except to the said grandfather and his heirs, or by commandment of him or of his heirs; these have you lord of Gomineys, in the time of our lord the king that now is, true heir to the said grandfather, delivered and surrendered to the enemies

mies of our lord the king, without commandment from him, to the dishonour of him and his crown, and the estate of the realme of England, against your undertaking aforesaid ; what say you thereunto ?

WHEREUPON the said John answered, that the said town and castle of Arde were so weak, that he could not keep them against so great a power of the enemies as were there and ready to assaile the said towne and castle, and therefore he caused all the knights, esquires and other inhabitants of the said town, to be assembled, and informed them of the danger of the said town and the force of the enemy, and by the common council and assent of the said knights, esquires and others ; he went forth out of the said town to treat with them, in order to save the subjects of our lord the king, within the said town and castle of Arde. Upon which, one Geoffrey d'Argentein, a knight, said, in full parliament to the said John, that he the said Geoffrey, was at that time in the said town and company with the said John, and that the town and castle of Arde were not ever delivered or surrendered by his council or assent ; but that he was always ready to dye or live on the safe guard thereof ; and the said Geoffrey undertook to prove this against any one who should deny it. And it was further asked the said John, if he had any thing more to say ? and he said, he had not. On which, the said constable was charged with the safe custody of the said John and William, until the next day, the Saturday next ensuing, and to bring them again safely before the said lords in the said parliament, at the place and day aforesaid ; at which day of Saturday, that is to say, the 28th day of November, in the year aforesaid, the said John and William were brought again before the said parliament at the place aforesaid ; and it was shewed unto them separately by the said seneschal, on the said day, by commandment of the lords aforesaid ; how, that on the answers, that the said John and William had given in the said parliament, as is aforesaid, the lords of the said parliament, that is to say, the King of Castile and Leon, and Duke of Lancaster, Esmond, Earl of Cambridge, Esmond, Earl of March, Richard, Earl of Arundel, Thomas, Earl de Warr, Hugh, Earl of Stafford, William, Earl of Suffolk, William, Earl of Salisbury, Henry, Earl of Northumberland, John, Lord of Nevil, Roger, Lord of Clifford, and many other Lords, Barons, and Banneretts, being at the said parliament, had assembled, and consulted from the time when the said answers were given in parliament, the Friday, as well as to this Saturday, at the third hour, respecting the answers aforesaid ; and seen, and diligently examined the said answers and other articles touching these matters ; and had thereon mature deliberation, and

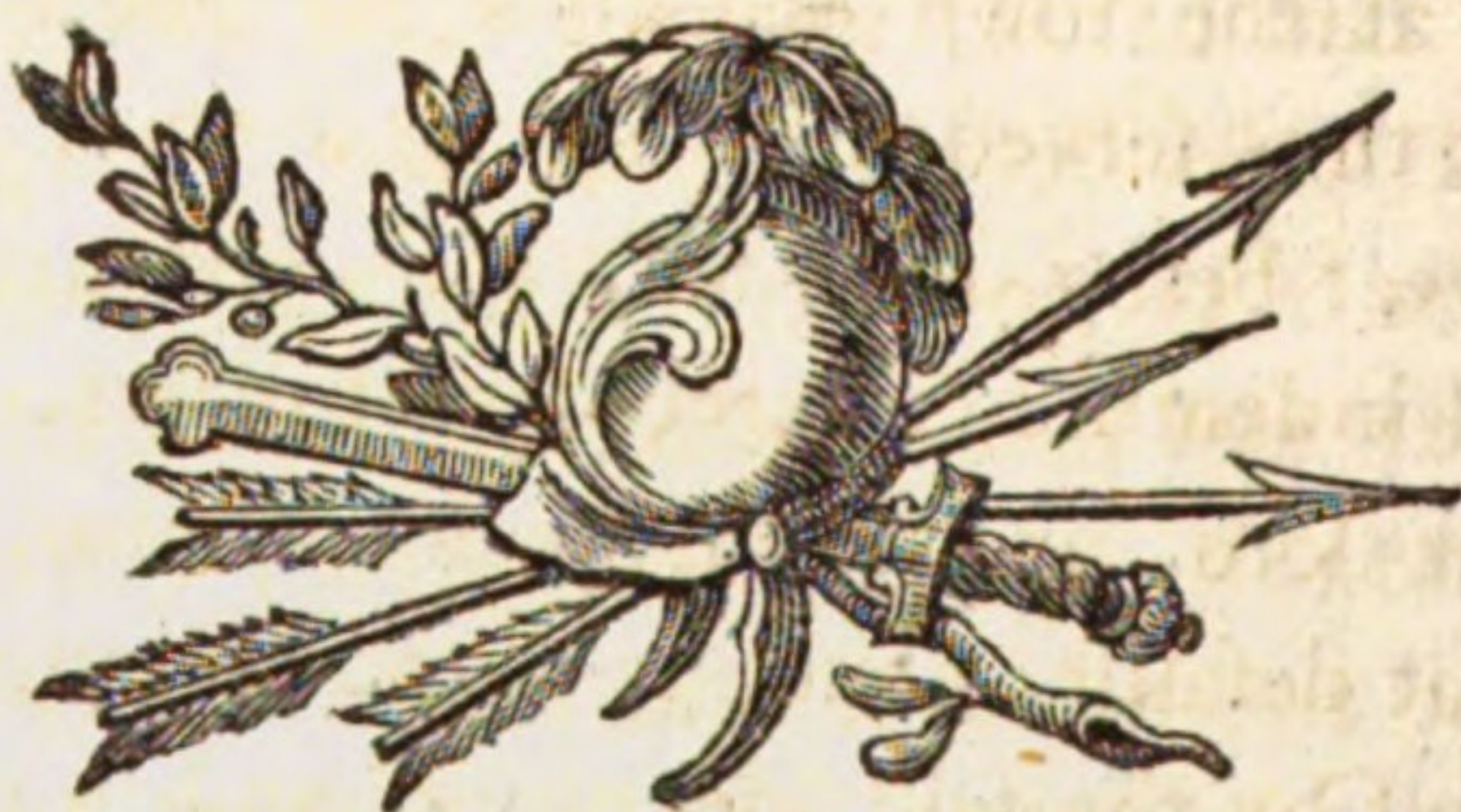
and due information from the most vaillant, and most discreet knights and others being in the said parliament, it was thus said : first of all in the manner as followeth by the said seneschal, reciting the matters aforesaid touching the said William ; It seemeth to the aforesaid lords, that you William who had undertaken safely to keep the castle of Outhrewyk as is before said ; that you William, have without any hardship or default of victuals, wickedly delivered and surrendered the same to the enemies of our lord the king, by your own default, against all apparent right and reason, and contrary to your allegiance and undertaking beforementioned. And having had due information of the case of the late baron of Graystock, who was a lord, and one of the peers of the realm, who had taken upon him safely to keep to the aforesaid grandfather (of the king) the towne of Berwick ; the said baron perceiving afterwards, that the said grandfather was preparing for an expedition to the realm of France, (without command of the said grandfather) committed the said towne of Berwick to a vailliant esquire, Robert de Ogle, as lieutenant to the said baron, safely to keep the said town of Berwick for the said grandfather, and the said baron went like a man of chivalry to France to the said grandfather, and there remained in his company ; it happened that an assault of war was made on the said town of Berwick, by the Scots ; and the said Robert, as lieutenant of the said baron, defended it forcibly, and at last, by such violent assaults, the same town was taken from the said Robert, and two of the sons of the said Robert were slain in the defence thereof ; nevertheless, because the said baron had himself undertaken safely to keep the said town for the said grandfather, and departed thence without the commandment of the said grandfather, and the said town of Berwick was lost in the absence of the said baron, he being in the company of the said grandfather in France, (as is said) was adjudged by the advice of the said grandfather, the king of Castile, now present, the noble dukes and counts whom God assoile ; Henry, late Duke of Lancaster, the late Earl of Northumberland and Stafford, and Sir Walter de Many, that the said town was lost by the default of the said baron, and for this cause, he should have judgment of life and member, and that he should forfeit all he had ; and the said Sir Walter had the commands of the grandfather, to give the said judgement, and the words in which it was to be given ; which things being considered, and this also, that you William didst surrender the said castle of Outhrewyk to the enemies of our lord the king aforesaid, without any hardship or defect of victuals, contrary to your allegiance and undertaking afore-

said

the lords abovenamed sitting here in full parliament, adjudge you to death; and that you be drawn and hanged; but because that our lord the king is not yet informed of the manner of this judgment, the execution thereof shall be respited till the king shall be informed thereof; on which, the constable was commanded safely to keep the said William untill he should receive farther commands from our lord the king.

AND as to the said John Lord de Gomenez, touching his answers before-said, it was shewn him by the said seneschal, how the said lords had assembled themselves, and consulted on the said answers as is abovesaid; and it was besides shewn to him how, that at the time that Sir Ralph de Ferrers, knight, had the custody of the said town and castle of Arde, the said town of Arde was not half so strong, as it was at the time the said John surrendered the same; and the said Ralph had commandment from the said grandfather, to surrender the same, on account of the weakness thereof; before which, the said Ralph put himself in great danger by the safe keeping thereof; nevertheless, the said Ralph held, and vailliantly defended them, against a very great and strong assault of war; and thereupon, and the things aforesaid, and other evidences, touching the answers of the said John in this part: it was said in the following manner to the said John being in parliament, by the said seneschal, reciting all the things before said touching the aforesaid John, and also the aforesaid judgement of the said baron, and the cause thereof, in manner as aforesaid: it seemeth to the lords before-named here sitting, in full parliament, considering your answers in this party, and the examinations and informations thereupon had as above; and having also regard to this, that there were lately sent unto you to the said town and castle of Arde, above the number of men, with which you had at another time undertaken the safe guarding of the said town and castle; 20 men of arms, and 20 archers to strengthen the same, according to your request then made to certain lords, late being on a message to Calais on the behalf of the said grandfather: and this also, that at that time, it was said unto you by the King of Castile, who is here present, that if you could not well keep them, you ought in no manner to undertake the same, and that another should have the custody of them, who would undertake to keep them safely for the said grandfather, and his heirs aforementioned; and you undertook to keep them safely without surrendering them to any, unless in the manner as aforesaid; and now you John, without duresse, want of victuals, artillery, or other things necessary for the defence of the said town and castle of Arde, without commandment of our lord the king, have

in an evil manner delivered and surrendered to the enemies of our lord the king, by your own default, against appearance of right or reason, and contrary to your undertaking before-mentioned; by which the lords aforesaid, here in full parliament do adjudge you to suffer death, and because that you are a gentleman and a banneret, and have served the said grandfather in his wars, and are no liege-man of our lord the king; you shall be beheaded without having any other judgement: and because also that our lord the king is not yet informed of the manner of this judgment, the execution shall be respited untill our lord the king shall be informed thereof; on which, commandment was given to the said constable, safely to keep the said John till he shall have received farther orders from our lord the king.



A P P E N D I X, No. III.

*The Tryal of the Bishop of Norwich, A. D. 1383, 7th Richard II.
from the Rolls of Parliament.*

ITEM, Henry Bishop of Norwich was impeached in this parliament of many things, but especially of four articles to him shewn by the chancellor of England, in the presence of the king himself and of my lord of Lancastre, in full parliament; the which chancellor thus said; My Lord Bishop of Norwich, I am commanded to say, what I shall say to you, by the king; true it is, altho' that by indenture and covenants made between the king and you, you was there obliged, and had undertaken to serve the king our lord in his wars of France, with two thousand and five hundred men of arms, and as many archers, well armed, arrayed and mounted, of whom you was to make your muster suitably at the town of Calais for one whole year; and true it is, that you have not thus served the king for a year, nor yet for half a year, thus before the half year being returned, and your army disbanded contrary to the form of the said indenture, whereby great disgrace, loss and damage have come to the king our lord, and to his whole realm, and therefore in this you are in a very great default: Item, as to the said number of men for which you had bound yourself by the said indenture, and to make the said muster at Calais; you have failed in one and the other, and in this you are in another great default: Item, that in the last parliament it was agreed, that our lord of Spain, or some other of the uncles of the king our lord should have the voyage towards France for the honor of the kingdom; you caused our lord the king to be induced by great promises made by you; and particularly, you undertook, first of all, to the commons assembled in the last parliament, and afterwards to the king himself in the said parliament, that if it should please the king to grant you the voyage before-mentioned, you would have in your company in the said voyage the number above limited, and with them some of the best captains of the kingdom of England after the royal ones; at

which time, the king asked you to certify especially the names of the captains and leaders that you should have in your company, in case the voyage should be granted to you; and you answered him, that for certain reasons you could not shew their names, untill you was sure that the voyage would be finally granted to you; but you made strong and sure promises, that if it would please the king to grant you the said voyage, you would have with you the best and most sufficient captains of the kingdom, after the royal ones, as is said. By one and the other of the promises made by you, in all which you have since failed, as you yourself know, the king our lord has been greatly deceived, and thus the said voyage was granted to you, and you had it in fact as you yourself had desired it, and the king's uncles were by these deceits ousted, to the great damage and disgrace of the king our lord, and of his realm afore said: Item, upon the grant and contract made to you of the said voyage, as it is said, the king caused to be offered to you in the said parliament, that for the good government and safety of the said army, to constitute and create a sufficient temporal lord of the kingdom of England his lieutenant; who should be obedient to you whilst in the army, with matters respecting the crusade, and you in matters to him touching the lieutenancy; which proffer thus made to you by the king our lord, did not please you; therefore in fact you refused it, and what is worse, by your fair promises and other things, the king was so deceived, and thus led in the said parliament by your other affairs, that you had the said voyage, and the sole government thereof; and every where and to all persons it is a notorious thing, that for want of a lieutenant and good captains and governors, as great disgrace, and unsupportable damages have happened solely by your default to the said army, and consequently to the king and to his said kingdom, as ever happened; by which you was also as to this in another very great default; of which things now surmised to you by the king's order, you may say what you think best so to do on the occasion.

To which the said bishop answered and said, although that of right by the licence of his liege lord, he ought to have counsel in the case; always making protestation, that if in his answer he shall give, he should mistake his matter or thing by negligence or ignorance in so high a place, or that he should say more or less than he ought to say, that he may amend and correct it at another time, and as soon as shall seem best for him to do it; and he himself in his proper person, as being more knowing in the business than any other, by the licence of his liege lord will give his answer, humbly praying his liege-lord

to

to give him audience and attention; and first said, as to that which was then surmised, that he had not half served the king for the term he had promised, nor for the half thereof; he said, that by the said covenants cut, he was held, and also had in charge of his liege, that principally and before other things he should with his forces go to the rescue of the town of Gaunt; and by the virtue of that charge, so soon as he was arrived abroad, he took his way with his people towards the said town of Gaunt, and in his said way, as it pleased God, he had engagements with the enemy as well at Gravenynge, as at Dunkirk and elsewhere; and at length when the people of Gaunt had met him, and they had discoursed and consulted what would then be best to do, as well in their aid as to the exploit of the voyage then began; thus was the final purpose of the inhabitants of Gaunt, to wit, that he should lay siege to the town of Ipres, affirming by their words, that Ipres was not half furnished with people nor provisions, to withstand an attack from the powers of England and of Gaunt; and further they said, that if the town of Ipres was taken, in which were the keys of all Flanders, the remainder would soon be gained; and thus, by the incitement and encouragement of the men of Gaunt, and with the assent of all the English captains which were in the said voyage, the siege was laid thereto, in which many of his men fell into diverse great diseases, and many were wounded and killed, and a great number of bad men who were rebels and disobedient to the said bishop, returned with their pillage to England: and therefore, and also, for that on the departure of the people of Gaunt from the said siege, the captains of the English army perceiving, that after the departure of the men of Gaunt, the English army was greatly diminished, and being actuated by the said causes, and the fear that the French had assembled, the English would not, nor could not in any manner keep the field: therefore having due consideration to these causes by him alledged, and the engagements that the said bishop with his people have had in this voyage, to the honor and profit of our liege lord, and of his kingdom, and especially that by the said voyage, truces are made, and offers of a treaty of peace made by the adversary of France, which if it please God, may serve as an introduction to a final peace, and what is thus happened, ought not in the least in reason, be surmised in his default, the more so, as it has happened more by the chance of God, than by any other manner: it therefore seemeth to him, that as to this article, he ought to be held excused in all things.

ITEM, respecting its being surmised against him that he did not make his muster at Calais; he says, that in order to hasten his people to come to the
said

saïd voyage for the relief of Gaunt, in manner as he had promised, he passed over to Calais before his other captains, with a small number of such persons as he could assemble, and did not remain after his arrival at Calais, but two or three days; then immediately set forward on his way towards Gravenynge, and took it by the assistance of our Lord; and afterwards, when he arrived before Ipres, although he did not make his muster at Calais for the saïd cause; nevertheless he had before Ipres, his full number of persons of each degree, and still more at the saïd town of Ipres, and this he is ready to prove by good and sufficient witnesses, or by any other reasonable manner that the king will assign; and therefore as to this he is not, as it seems to him, to blame; and as to what is saïd, that he had not with him the best chieftains of the kingdom, except the royal ones; he thinks that he had good and sufficient chieftains, but that he would have had better if licence and leave had been granted, such as the Sieur de Nevill, who offered in the presence of the king, to have gone on the saïd voyage if it had pleased the king to have given him leave, which was denied; he therefore thinks, that in this matter he is not to blame.

AND as to that which is surmised against him, that he refused to have a lieutenant; he says, it is true that our lord the king sent his letters, and a message to him in Flanders where he was with his army, respecting this matter of having a lieutenant; to which letters and message, the saïd bishop by his letters made answer, returning thanks and acknowledgment to his liege lord, as much as was in his power, for that it had pleased him to remember him, and to be careful of him and his state; which letter made express mention, that whenever our saïd lord the king and his council would order such lieutenant, it would well please him; and therefore he did not refuse the lieutenant aforesaid, and held himself bound to pay him when the king had appointed him; and therefore it appears to him also, that as to this, he ought not to be blamed in any way, but that rather in the saïd cause, and by the other causes above alledged on his part, and for other services which he has done to the king our lord and his kingdom formerly, and would still do according to his small power, he therefore thinks he deserves reward and good will, and not ill will, such as they would now cause him to submit to; praying our lord the king, that it will please him to accept these excuses truly by him given to the four articles surmised against him, and that he will be his gracious lord, and that it may appear to his highness that in this part he has not offended.

To

To which the said chancellor answered and said, that it is true, that when you was in Flanders after you had for a small time remained there, and certain news had come to our lord the king and his counsel in England many times, by letters and otherwise, sent to him from Flanders by the captains of your army; containing, that the said army was in very great peril, and from one day to another, for want of a lieutenant and good government thereof, grew worse; therefore the king our lord caused the Earl of Arundell to be treated with on the matter, and finally it was agreed with the said earl, that he should be the king's lieutenant in the said army, and should come to you speedily with a sufficient number of good men of arms and archers, to your aid and succour, and of the said army, if you would consent thereunto, for without your assent the king would not cause any thing to be accomplished in the business; and therefore he sent you his letters and message to Flanders to have your opinion; to which you answered by your letters, which are still ready to be shewn, in such guise, that by the form of your said letters, which are composed of double meaning, and by other words made use of by you in other parts, it evidently appears that you would not have a lieutenant; and although you have before alledged this last matter comprised in your said letters of excuse as it is not sufficient, even your letter well understood; that allegiance is not any ways to the point, respecting what was before surmised; that is to say, that you refused to have a lieutenant finally before your departure out of the kingdom, according to the first order made to you as has been aforesaid; and since also by the want of good chieftains and governors, all the mischief has happened to your army; and therefore as to that matter you have not, nor can you in any manner with truth excuse yourself; and be it known that this matter heard and understood in parliament, the said chancellor by commandment of the king himself there present, said to the same bishop: Sir Bishop of Norwich, the king our lord has well heard what you thus said and alledged in excuse of the articles and misprisions surmised to you, and has had good deliberation with the lords temporal, and other wise men of his council here present; and it appears to our lord the king, and the temporal lords aforementioned, that the answers you have thus given in excuse, are nothing to the purpose in the matter surmised to you, nor do your excuses suffice for the disgraces, unsupportable damages, losses and other misprisions, which have been done to the king and his kingdom by you, and your procurement as is said; by which also it is their opinion, that you for default of a sufficient answer shall be convicted of the offences comprised in the four articles surmised to you; and therefore

therefore shall be put to fine and ranfome at the will of the king for your misdeed; and it also their opinion, the king ought to constrain you thereto, by the seizure of the temporalities of your bishoprick of Norwich, when it shall please him so to do.

ITEM, among the said requests made by the commons of England in this parliament the Saturday on the 13th day of November, making mention, how the said bishop of Norwich undertook to perform the last mentioned voyage in the kingdom of France, with a certain number of men for a whole year; for the fifteenth granted to the king our lord by the said commons, and other goods of the kingdom of England, which he received principally for that cause, and for that undertaking, a very great sum was charged in parliament by the king, to certify our said lord the king and his council distinctly, and by writing, of the names, estates, and degrees of all those who were retained with him in the said voyage, and who have not yet performed their services and covenants made, and especially of the manner of their entertainment, and the term for which they are still held to serve the king by form of covenant, mutually agreed, in order that these services may be performed and employed in the service of the king, and defence of the kingdom of England aforesaid, at the place where there shall be the greatest necessity: in discharge likewise of the said commons, who were most heavily charged on account of the said voyage. To which the said bishop answered and said, that it was true, that many of his retinue had not performed their service, according to the agreement made with them; and therefore, if it should please the king our lord to grant that Sir Robert de Foulemere, his clerk, and treasurer for the said voyage, who has in his keeping all the indentures and other evidences, and remembrances, touching his retinue in the said voyage, be set at large out of prison, where he is detained by the king's commandment, and upon that give him a suitable term and space, because the thing demands great occupation, willingly he will use his best diligence to perform the said charge given him by his liege lord; by which the said Sir Robert Foulemere was delivered from prison for a suitable term, by mainprize found in that case; and it was commanded by the king to the said bishop, that this certification should be made in the manner as is aforesaid, Wednesday next ensuing after the charge delivered at the latest; which bishop answered again and said, that he would willingly do it in all haste that he well could; and afterwards, at the request of the said bishop, the time limited

limited to him to make the said certification as is said, was prolonged by eight days next ensuing.

ITEM; another time the said bishop alledging in presence of the king, that forasmuch as he was in many manners disturbed and interrupted in giving his answers on the articles upon which he was impeached, as well by captious words spoken to him, as in other manners, whereby he had left out and forgotten great part of the matter which he had to say in his excuse; he prayed the king our lord, that for God's sake he would please to give him another day, and suitable audience, without interruption in this parliament; and then he said, that with the aid of our lord, he would excuse himself in the said parliament, so clearly of what had been surmised to him, as ought in reason to suffice. And this request was granted him, and another day given; to wit, the 24th day of November.

At which day, the said bishop rehearsing the four articles surmised to him before the parliament and in the presence of the king himself, gave nearly the same answers as before, of all the things aforesaid, adding thereunto, that the time when he heard the news, that the vant-guard of the French army had entered the county of Flanders, and that the said siege of Ipre was thereby removed, he took a resolution to have met the said vant-guard to have fought with them; which purpose of his, he could not perform, by reason that the captains of his army would not assent thereunto, but those captains and others of his army opposed him, insomuch, that of necessity and for fear of the enemies, they were obliged to depart to, and betake themselves to their fortresses; and thereupon the said bishop returned to the town of Gravelynge, and the same would he have held out well enough against all men, and did hold out untill the other captains had rendered their forts to the French, and after that, untill that some English might come unto him incontinently, although there were well nigh about six or seven thousand English lying upon the sands near Calais, who were made to come out of the said forts rendered, to their great mischief and prejudice, because they had not wherewith to live, neither could they have entrance into the towne of Calais; and forasmuch as the truce made before that time was to cease within two or three days then next ensuing, the French had a purpose to fall upon them, and slay them all, as soon as the said truce was ended; which slaughter, if it had been made, would principally have turned upon the said bishop, and after on the other captaines, to far greater disgrace and mischief than any
C other

other thing could bring; the bishop was thereupon required and charged in behalf of the king himselfe, that he should render the town to the enemies, or else demolish it, and goe his way to succour the said people, and after that to England, in salvation of himself and others of his army; for they said, that if any thing else than good had happened to the said people lying on the sands, they would truly have called the said bishop to an account before the king himself; whereupon it behoved him the said bishop to abate and voyd the same town of Gravelynge, as it was lawful for him to doe at his pleasure, being gained by his proper conquest from the enemy; and for this, and for other reasons formerly alledged by him, as also because that letter from our lord the king, come to him before, commanding him, that if there were great want of victuals in the said towne, as in verity there was, that then in salvation of himselfe and the said people, he should voyd the towne, and succour the said people, and after return to England; it seems to him, that he ought to be well excused of whatever is surmised against him. To which the said chancellor replied and said; Sir Bishop, as to this your last reason it is true that you had sufficient victuals when this letter came unto you; and besides this, the king sent you other victuals in great plenty; and also with it, other good letters, containing how he had appointed his uncle of Spain to come speedily to you for your aid and succour; and all this notwithstanding, you departed thence, leaving the said towne to the enemies against the form of your indenture, by which the king hath given and granted you whatever you might conquer, not at all to render, sell, or leave the same to the enemy, but to hold and possess; and also to that which you have said in your first answer, that by your said voyage, truces had been agreed between the realmes, and happy offers of peace made by the adversaries of France, which you say will be an introduction to a good and final peace, which God grant; it contains no truth at all; for true it is, that the news spread in the army of France, of the coming of our lord the king, and of Monsieur of Lancaster, who was at the sea-side ready to pass for your succour, was the principal cause of the truce and profers afore said, and of the treaty to be commenced; for it is no probable thing at all, nor in any ways agreeable to reason, that you, who were with your people chased by force of the enemies out of the field, and afterwards besieged by them within your fortresses, should be the cause of the said treaty by any way; and so as to this, nor yet as to any other of the reasons before alledged, nor for the rebellion of your captains, or others of your retinue, nor
any

any other defaults which you have or may surmise unto them; (considering that you had them all of your proper choosing and election, and not at all by the denomination of our lord the king or his council;) you neither can, nor ought to be at all excused of the damages, deceits, disgraces, contempts, and other losses and misprisions surmised to you, nor in especiall of the treaty made with the enemies upon the deliverance of the said fortresses, of which there are certain indentures made and drawn between you and your captains on the one part, and the enemies of the king on the other part, sealed with their seals, and the seals of the other captains, without the authority or consent of the said our lord the king as before is said.

AND moreover the said chancellor said in the behalf of the king; Sir Bishop, although the king our lord might clearly handle and judge you as a temporal person of his realm, because you have behaved and carried yourself as a temporal person, for you expressly obliged yourself to the king our lord by your indenture, to be a soldier of the king, to govern the Christian people after the term of your crossado ended, and you used commonly to have your sword carried before you, and you did many other such like things every day, publicly, as a lord temporal, against the common custom and estate of a prelate of England: notwithstanding, by reason of your estate, the king our lord, of his grace, will forbear for the present to lay his hand upon your body; but forasmuch as he is informed, that you yourself have complained to many lords of the realm, that wrong hath been done to you on the last day, affirming by your words, that that which was done passed not at all by assent or knowledge of your peers of the realm; this is greatly to be marvelled of you, and of these your words, seeing the ill success toucheth nothing at all your peeralty, but only certain misprisions which you have made and perpetrated as a soldier of the king, against the form of your indentures and covenants, which you have made with the king our lord, to the great damage of the king as before said, whereof the cognisance and punishment, of common right and ancient custom of the realm of England, only and totally appertaineth to our lord the king, and no other; and true it is, that you have not at all by this your last answer any whit amended your matter in excuse of yourself, upon the things surmised against you, but as it seems have more greatly impaired the same; wherefore, by the assent of the earles, barons, and other lords temporal present in parliament, it is assented and accorded, that you shall be in the mercy of the king,

and

and put to a fine and ranfome for your misdoing, according to the quality and quantity thereof; and to do this, you fhall be compelled and conſtrained by the ſeizure of the temporalities of your biſhoprick of Norwich; and the king commands you, that from henceforth you fhall not cauſe nor ſuffer any ſword to be carried before you, as it hath been done, under the peril which fhall follow; and it is expreſſly accorded in this parliament, that whatſoever has been expended on your uſe of the ſaid francs of gold you fhall make full payment thereof into the treasury of our lord the king without delay or difficulty.



APPENDIX, No. IV.

Returns of diverse Religious Houses to the Demand of Carriages for transporting the Baggage of the Army of King Edward II. towards the North, from the original MS. in the Possession of John Watson Reed, Esq. F. A. S.

Return by the Prior of Minting, of his not being able to provide the Earl with any Carriages.

A TRES honorables Seignur Thomas Counte de Lanastr. e de Leycestr. seneschal d'Engleterre, le soen moygne frere Johan priur de mintyng. salut. honors. e reverences. purceo tres honorable seignr. qe vous mauetz maunde par vosz lres qe ieo vous eidas de cariage devers le North pur vostre demoer cest iuoir. voillietz fauoir fir qe ieo ne vous pusse eider peise moi. par qi. fir vous pre qe a mal ne ne preignetz. Dieux fir vous teigne bone vie e lounge e vous meinteigne en honor.

Return of the Prior of Sempringham.

A son tres honorable seignur si luy plest. Mounf. Thomas, Count de Lancast. e de Leycestr. e seneschal d'Engleterr. Sein lige prestre Frer. Johan priour de Sempingham saluz reuerenz e honor com a sun seignur. Pur ceo fir q vous mauetz maunde qe ieo vous eidas de cariage a vre alier vers le North, e qe ieo vous certifiassé de quoi vous puissiez feurer. Vous face a fauoir qe ieo fuyen volente de vous eidir a tiel poer com ieo aij par quoi fir vous asseurez bien d'une forte carette as trois chiuax quel houre q ieo soi guarny e certeynement fir muld me peise q ieo ne fuisse de poer de plus faire; a dieu ch. seignur qe vous ward corps e alme.

Return

Return of the Prior of Spalding.

A son tres honorable seigneur, Sire Thomas Counte de Lancastre, & de Leycestre, seneschal d'Engleterre, le soen chapeleyn Clement priour despaud-
yngs honours reuerences & seruises en dieu ; come vous nous eiez requis fire
par voz lettres de eyde de cariage fuz vostre remuement deuers le North au
temps q^{nt} par voz lettres enferrons garny. nous voillantz vre requeste qe
nous est comaundement a nostre poiar a tul temps bonement acomplir come
tenuz le sumes, vous fesoms fire a sauoir qe dieus charettes et sys chiuans oue
le attir vous ferront prestes au temps q^{nt} vous plerra pur eus maunder, et
pons a dieu fire qe tieles choses puissions faire qe vous veignent a gree &
honour ; a dieu treschr fire qe vous gard & sauue & vois, doynt bone vye,
& lunge. Escrit. a Espaudyngs, le x iour de Novembre.

THESE returns were probably made in the year 1319.

N. B. Thomas Earl of Lancaster and Leicester, was son of Edmond
Crouch-back, brother to King Edward I. he was beheaded at Pontefract,
15th of Edward II. 1722.



A P P E N D I X, No. V.

A. D. 1306. An. 34. E. 1. Rymer, tom. 2d. p. 1013.

FAIT a remembrer, qi quant la femme le Conte de Carrik sera venue au roi, ele soit enveé a Brustewik, & qe ele eit tien mesnee & sa sustenance ordenee en la maniere desouz escrite, cest assavoir.

QE ele eit deus femmes du pays ovesqe li; c'est asaver, une damoiselle & une femme por sa chambre, qi soient bien d'age, & nyent gayes, & qi eles soient de bon & de meur port; les queles soient entendantz a li por li servir.

Et deux valetz, qe soient aufint bien d'age & avisez: de queux l'un soit un des valetz le conte de Ulvestier, c'est asaver Johan de Benteley, ou autre q'il mettra en lieu de li, & vautre acun du pays qi soit par trencher devant li.

Et ausant eit ele un garzon a pee por demorer en sa chambre, tiel qi soit sobre, & ne une riotous, por son lit faire, & por autres choses qe covendront por sa chambre.

Et estre ce, ordenez est qeele est un vadlet de mestier, qe soit de bon port & avisez, por port ses cleifs, por panetrie & botellerie, & un cu.

Et ele deit aufint aver trois leveriers por aver son deduyt en la garene illueques, & en les parcs quant ele voudra.

Et qe ele est de la veneison & du peisson es pescheries selenc ce qe mester li sera.

Et qe ele gesse en la plus bele maison du manoir a sa volunte.

Et qe ele voit guyer es parcs, r'aillois entor le manoir, a sa volunte.

Et mandez soit, par lettres du prive seal le roi, a Richard Oysel, seneschal de Holderness, qil face trouver a la dite dame, por soi por sa dite mesnee, & por les autres chose, ce qe mestier lor sera, en convenable manere selonc l'ordeynement defusdit.

ORDENEZ est & mandez, par lettres du prive seal, au chamberlent d'Escoce, ou a son lieutenant a Berwik sur Twed, qe en une des turelles dedenz le chastel de meisme le lieu, en lieu qu'il veist qe a ce feust plus covenable, feist faire une kage de fort laitz, de fuist & barrez, & bien efforcez de ferrement: en la quele il feist mettre la contesse de Baghun.

Et

Et q'il la feist si bien & si feurement garder en meisme le kage qe ele ne puiſt iſſir en nule manere.

Et q'il feist assigner une femme, ou deux, de la dite ville de Berewik, Englesche, qe ne ſoit, ou ne ſoient en nule ſuſpeczon; qe entende, ou entendent por ſervir la dite conteſſe, de manger & de beiure, & d'autres choſes, qi a li afferont, en tien demoere.

Et q'il la face ſi bien & ſi eſtroitement garder en la kage, qe ele ne parle ad nulli, ne qe home ne femme, qi ſoit de la nation d'eſcoce, ne nul autre, ne paroge ad li, fors tant ſeulement la femme ou les femmes qe li ferra, ou ſeront assignees, & ceux qi auront la garde de li.

Et que la kage ſoit enſi faite, qe la conteſſe y eit eſement de chambre cortoiſe; mais qe ce ſoit ſi bien & ſi feurement ordenez, qe paril ne aveigne en droit de la garde, de la dite conteſſe.

Et qe celi, qe aura la garde de li, en ſoit chargez de reſpoundre, corps pour corps & q'il eit alloance des cuſtages.

En meisme la manere ordenez eſt qe marie fuer a Robert de Brus, jadis conte de Carrik, ſoit envee a Rokesburgh, por garder illueques, en chaſtel en un kage.



A P P E N D I X, No. VI.

ALTHOUGH the Scots brigade in the service of the republick of Holland, does not strictly speaking come within the plan of this work, yet as British soldiers who have nobly supported the honour of their country among foreigners, it is hoped the following short account of them will be favourably received.

ABOUT the year 1570, the fame of the low country wars, and the great name of the prince of Orange, caused in many Scotch gentlemen of martial spirits a desire to study the art of war under him; they therefore went over to Holland, carrying with them a number of their countrymen who were formed into independent companies: among these gentlemen were many of the first families in Scotland, such as Balfour, Lord Burley, Scott, Earl of Buccleugh, Preston of Gorton, Halkett of Pitferran, many of the different families of the name of Stewart, Hay, Sinclair, Douglas, Graham, Hamilton, &c.

THESE troops signalised themselves on all occasions, and were much respected and depended on by the States; and in 1594, at the return of their ambassadors from Scotland, where they had been to compliment King James on the birth of his son; they carried back with them 1500 recruits for their Scotch companies, who were probably now, if not before, regimented.

THESE troops suffered much at the siege of Bommel, in 1599, at the famous battle of the Downs, near Newport, in 1600, and at the siege of Ostend, in 1601, gaining in the whole so much honour, that at the siege of Bois-le-Duc, in 1629, Frederick Henry Prince of Orange, stiled them, the Bullwark of the Republick; there were then three regiments; namely, Scott's, Buccleugh's, and Halkett's.

AFTER the death of Prince William II. in 1630, the affairs of the republick were in great disorder, parties run high, and the army was much neglected,

lected; and particularly the Scotch brigade, who having nobody to protect them, had a number of Dutchmen, Germans, and French refugees, by the interest of different burgo-masters, made officers among them, which entirely dispirited them; so that in diverse engagements, in the years, 1675, and 1676, they did not behave themselves with their accustomed gallantry, at which King William being surprized and displeased, asked General Mackay, then lately come into his service from France, if he was not much hurt, and ashamed at the behaviour of his countrymen the Scotch brigade, and if he could conceive the reason of their being so much degenerated from what they were, when serving in the army of Gustavus Adolphus, and commanded by the Lord Rae.

MACKAY as much piqued as the prince, beg'd leave to observe, that this corps, though called the Scotch brigade, was in reality, a mixture of deserters and out-casts from all nations, and that in promotions to commissions, the preference had been given to Dutch, Germans, and Frenchmen; the young Scotch officers and cadets had therefore left the service, and prevented others coming into it as volunteers, and the old private men, not being commanded by their countrymen, had many of them deserted; but that if his highness would dispose of the foreign officers in the national or new levied regiments, and replace them with Scotch gentlemen of family, and raise Scotch recruits, he would answer that the corps would be as good as ever.

IN 1688, this brigade was demanded of the States by King James, but they refused to send them back, whereupon he issued a proclamation, requiring them to return home, on pain of being declared rebels to their country; the revolution being then on foot, this proclamation produced no effect; but the brigade soon after came to England in support of King William; they were then commanded by General Mackay: by this circumstance, it does not appear that these troops were raised under any formal treaty, but rather that they were tacitly connived at.

AFTER King William was made Stadtholder, General Mackay got the brigade put on a good footing, and formed the plan of their cloathing, pay, recruiting, &c. as it lately stood, but the price of every article of life having greatly increased since those regulations of their pay, it was by no means sufficient: the pay and perquisites of a colonel at the highest, not exceeding three hundred and fifty pounds; that of a company,
one

one hundred and forty pounds, and of a lieutenancy, forty pounds per annum.

AFTER the peace of Aix la Chappelle, and the death of the Prince of Orange, the brigade suffered greatly by reduction and incorporation, and were from ill treatment, and neglect, by degrees dwindling to nothing, when the late rupture between England and Holland caused them entirely to quit the service of that ungrateful Republick.



A P P E N D I X, No. VII.

A Proclamation for the Use of the Bowe and Pike together in Military Discipline.

A. D. 1633. }
 Pat. 9. Car. I. }
 p.⁶ n. 9. dors. } **W**HEREAS in former tyme bowes and arrowes have been found serviceable weapons for the wars, whereby great victories and conquests have been gotten, and by fundry statutes the use thereof hath been enjoyned; which statutes are still in force, and we expect that our subjects should conform themselves thereunto, knowing the exercise of shooting to be a means to preserve health, strength, and agility of body, and to avoid idleness, unlawfull disports, drunkenness, and such like enormities and disorders, which are too frequent among our people.

AND whereas our loving subject William Nead, an ancient archer, hath presented unto us a warlike invention, of the use of the bowe with the pike together, whereby every pikeman may also be a bowman; which warlike service, we, together with our counsell of state and counsell of war, have seen exercised in military discipline, and we do approve the same to be serviceable and usefull in tyme of warr, and have by our commissions under our great seal of England, authorised the said William Nead, and William Nead his son, whom he hath instructed, to teach and exercise our loving subjects therein: and to that end and purpose, we do by this our proclamation signifie our will and pleasure; that the use and exercise of the bowe and pike together, shall be put together within this our realm of England, and dominion of Wales, that all our loving subjects who are fit to exercise arms, and especially the chief officers of our trayned bands, may be instructed therein, by such ways, and in such manner as shall be prescribed and directed by the said William Nead, and William Nead, or either of them, and those whom either of them shall have sufficiently instructed and deputed in that behalf, at such convenient times and places as shall be appointed by the deputy-lieutenants, or justices of the peace in every county, mayors, bailiffs, constables, and
 other

other head officers in every city or town corporate respectively, so that the same may be done without prejudice or hindrance to general musters, trayning, or other publick affairs, willing and requiring them and every of them respectively, upon notice given by the said William Nead, and William Nead, or either of them, or by such others as by either of them shall be thereunto appointed; that they, or some of them, do from tyme to tyme prescribe and appoint convenient tymes and places for the exercise of this warlike service, and by warrant or such other ways and means as shall seem most meet unto them, to cause such of our loving subjects as aforesaid to be present at such tyme and place, there to be exercised and made perfect in the use of the bow and the pike together in military discipline.

AND that this our proclamation may take the better effect, we do hereby require and commaund all and singular deputy-lieutenants, and justices of peace, mayors, bailiffs, constables, and all other our officers, ministers and subjects whom it may concern respectively, that they and every of them be aiding and assisting unto the said William Nead, and William Nead, and persons deputed as aforesaid in the exercise and performance of the said premises, according to our will and pleasure herein declared, as they tender our pleasure, and will avoid the contrary, at their perills.

Given at our Court at Oateland, this 12th day of August.

Per ipsum Regem.



APPENDIX, No. VIII.

*From the Deputy-Lieutenants of Surry to the Lords of the Privy Council
in Answer to one of their Letters concerning the Billetting of Soldiers.*

RIGHT HONOURABLE,

WHEREAS very lately we have received l^{rs} from yo^r lo^{pps} requiring us to receave and to billet such numbers of souldiers as shall be sent from the countyes of Devon and Cornwall, by the appointment of the commiss^{rs} at Plimouth, and to be billeted in this county of Surry, wth the weekly allowance of 3s. 6d. the man; and likewise to take order, that such as shall march through the said county, be accommodated wth lodginge and money for their dyet, after the rate of 8d. per diem for each man, accounting twelve myles for a dayes march; wee, in discharge of o^r duties, doe humbly certifie y^r l^{pps}, the great sums of money lately disbursed for the loane to his majes^{tie}, and alsoe for the late sendinge out of soldiers to the number of 800, whereof 600 weare coated at the rate of 12s. 6d. the coate, besides the presse and conduct money; as alsoe for passinge of soldiers travellinge throughe this county, w^{ch} sums are not yet rayfed of the inhabitants of the county accordinge to yo^r lo. directions, they pretending want of monnies in respect of the many and continuall greate chardges they are subject unto for the severall provisions of his ma^{ties} house and carriadges, (from many of w^{ch} diverse remote countyes of greate ability are freed.

IN discharge of o^r duties, well knowing the state of this county and the greate difficulty to rayse money for necessary and ordinary services, and humble fut^{rs} to y^r lo^{pps} to take into y^r hon^{ble} confiderations, the smallness and povertie of this county in this great and extraordinary charge, and wee shall be

always

ready to obey y^r lo^ps comandes to our uttermost power, humbly resting

Y^r lo^ps, in al duty to do you service,

7 December, 1627.

FR. VINCENT,
GEORGE SHORE,

NICH. CAREW,

THO. CRYMEE,

RICHARD ONSLOW, FERRA. LEIGH.

From the original in the Paper Office.

*From y^e Dep^y Lie^{nt} to the Right Ho^{ble} and Singular good Lordes of his
Maj^s most Ho^{ble} Privy Councell.*

These dd.

MAY it please your lo^{pps}; we have very lately received your lo^{pps} letters of the 17th of this monthe for the billeting of so many souldieres within this county of Essex, as the commissioners at Portsmouth shall directe and appointe, wth the weekly allowance of 3s. 6d. a man, and alsoe for the accomodatinge of others in there march through the counteye with lodginge and money for their dyett, at 8d. per diem a man, accomptinge 12 miles for a daies march, in w^{ch} le^r, because your lo^{pps} make no mention nyther of the time when they are to come, nor of the nomber, eyther of those whoe are to passe throughe the countye, or that are to remain here, nor in what p^{te} of the countrey your lo^{pps} conceive fittest for them to bee billeted, whether in the maritime or inlande p^{te}: we humbly desire to understande your lo^{pps} further pleasure in all these particulars; untill when, we doe neither knowe what places will be fittest to accomodate them in, and what proportion of money wil be necessarie for them, nor at what time wee shall prepair to receive them into the countye: and although your lo^{pps} are pleased to signifie unto us, that you have taken order wth the Right Ho^{ble} the Lord Treas^r, and Mr. Chancellor

cellor of the Exchequer, for the repaiment of the money upon a just accompte, yet your lo^{pp}s give us noe directions what course wee shall take for the present providinge thereof, wherein of ourselves we are altogether ignorant, and know not what to doe untill your lo^{pp}s shal be pleased further to direct us, all which we humbly submitt to your lo^{pp}s hon^{ble} confiderations, and resting

Att your Lo^{pp}s commands,

December 27th, 1627.

most humble,

HENRY MYLDEMAY.

W. MAYNARD,
GAMA CAPELL.

From the original in the Paper Office.



APPENDIX, No. IX.

State of the Half pay on the English and Irish Establishment.

	ENGLISH, Per diem.						IRISH, Per diem.					
	Horse.		Dra- goons.		Foot.		Horse.		Dra- goons.		Foot.	
	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.	l.	s.	d.
Colonel	0	16	6	0	13	0	0	19	0	0	15	8
Lieutenant colonel } and captain	0	12	0	0	10	0	0	12	6	0	9	8
Major	0	11	6	0	8	0	0	11	3	0	8	8
Captain	0	7	0	0	5	6	0	8	6	0	6	2
Lieutenant	0	5	0	0	3	0	0	5	3	0	3	1
Cornet, ensign and second lieutenant	0	4	6	0	2	6	0	4	3	0	2	7
Quarter master	0	3	0	0	2	0	0	1	6	0	1	6
Adjutant	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0
Surgeon	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	2	0
Chaplain	0	3	4	0	3	4	0	3	4	0	3	4
Physician to the hospital	-	-	-	-	-	0	10	0	-	-	-	-
Apothecary	-	-	-	-	-	0	5	0	-	-	-	-
Deputy commissary	-	-	-	-	-	0	5	0	-	-	-	-



Computation of the Pay of the First Troop of Horse Guards, for 365 Days, as it is distributed in all its Branches, to every Officer and Private Gentleman, conformable to the Establishment, Anno 1753.

No.	Quality.	Full Pay.		Subsistence.		Superannuated men, not liable to deduction	Poundage at 12d. per pound.		Hospital or one day's pay per annum.		Allowance to widows.		Net off-reckonings for 365 days.		Net clearings for 365 days.	
		Per diem.	For 365 days.	Per diem.	For 365 days.		l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
1	Captain	1 16 0	657 0 0	1 7 0	492 15 0	—	—	—	1 16 0	—	—	—	—	—	129 12 0	0
1st	Lieutenant	1 11 0	565 15 0	1 3 3	424 6 3	—	—	—	1 11 0	—	—	—	—	—	111 12 0	0
2d	Lieutenant	1 7 0	492 15 0	1 0 6	374 2 6	—	—	—	1 7 0	—	—	—	—	—	92 12 9	0
1	Cornet	1 6 0	474 10 0	0 19 6	355 17 6	—	—	—	1 6 0	—	—	—	—	—	93 12 0	0
1	Guidon	1 4 0	438 0 0	0 18 0	328 10 0	—	—	—	1 4 0	—	—	—	—	—	86 8 0	0
1	Exempt	0 16 0	292 0 0	0 12 1	221 12 1	—	—	—	0 16 0	—	—	—	—	—	54 19 10	0
3	Exempts more	2 8 0	876 0 0	1 16 5	664 16 5	—	—	—	2 8 0	—	—	—	—	—	164 19 6	0
1	Brigadier	0 11 0	200 15 0	0 8 2	149 18 2	—	—	—	0 11 0	—	—	—	—	—	40 5 6	0
3	Ditto more	1 13 0	602 5 0	1 4 7	449 14 7	—	—	—	1 13 0	—	—	—	—	—	120 15 1	0
1	Sub brigadier	0 6 0	109 10 0	0 4 8	86 0 8	—	—	—	0 6 0	—	—	—	—	—	17 13 9	0
3	Ditto more	0 18 0	328 10 0	0 14 1	258 2 1	—	—	—	0 18 0	—	—	—	—	—	53 1 4	0
1	Chaplain	0 6 8	121 13 4	0 5 0	91 5 0	—	—	—	0 6 8	—	—	—	—	—	24 0 0	0
1	Adjutant	0 11 0	200 15 0	0 8 6	155 2 6	—	—	—	0 11 0	—	—	—	—	—	35 0 9	0
1	Surgeon	0 8 0	146 0 0	0 6 0	109 10 0	—	—	—	0 8 0	—	—	—	—	—	21 16 0	0
1	Trumpeter	0 5 0	91 5 0	0 4 0	73 0 0	—	—	—	0 5 0	—	—	—	—	—	13 8 9	0
3	Ditto more	0 15 0	273 15 0	0 12 0	219 0 0	—	—	—	0 15 0	—	—	—	—	—	40 6 3	0
1	Kettle drummer	0 5 0	91 5 0	0 4 0	73 0 0	—	—	—	0 5 0	—	—	—	—	—	13 8 9	0
1	Private gentleman	0 4 0	73 0 0	0 2 10	52 2 10	—	—	—	0 4 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
149	Ditto more	29 16 0	10877 0 0	21 5 8	7769 5 8	73 0 0	—	—	29 16 0	—	—	—	17 0 1	—	—	—
1	Ditto superannuated	0 4 0	73 0 0	—	—	—	—	—	0 4 0	—	—	—	2534 1 3	—	—	—
2	Ditto widows	0 8 0	146 0 0	—	—	—	—	—	0 8 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2	Ditto agent	0 8 0	146 0 0	0 5 8	104 5 8	—	—	—	0 8 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1	Ditto riding master	0 4 0	73 0 0	0 2 10	52 2 10	—	—	—	0 4 0	—	—	—	34 0 3	—	—	—
181		47 10 8	17349 13 4	34 5 2	12504 10 2	73 0 0	863 16 8	47 6 8	138 6 0	—	—	—	2585 1 8	—	1137 12 1	1
													Subsistences		12504 10 2	2
													Superann. men		73 0 0	0
													Poundage		863 16 8	0
													Hospital		47 6 8	0
													Widows		138 6 0	0
													Off-reck.		2585 1 8	0
															17349 13 4	4

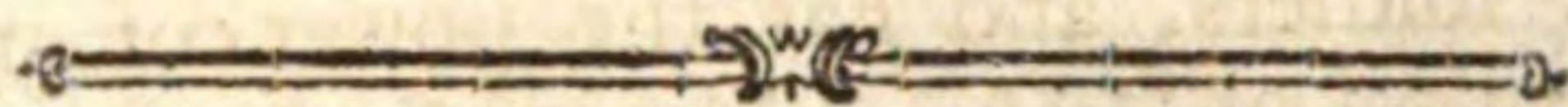
N. B. The allowance to the superannuated men, being 4s. a day, is issued monthly with the subsistence.

N. B. The Fractions, 1-7th, 2-7th, 3-7th, 4-7th, 5-7, and 6-7th not being cast to this letter are obliged to be omitted where they occur in the above table.

No.	Qualities:	Full Pay.		Subsistence.		Poundage at 12d. per pound.	Hospital, or one day's pay per ann.	Allowance to widows.		Net off-reckonings for clothing.	Agency.	Net clearings.	
		For 365 days.		For 365 days.				l. s. d.					
		Per diem.	l. s. d.	Per diem.	l. s. d.			l. s. d.	l. s. d.				
1	Captain and colonel	1 10 0	547 10 0	1 2 6	410 12 6	27 7 6	1 10 0	—	—	—	—	108 0 0	
1	Lieutenant and lieu. colonel	1 2 6	410 12 6	0 17 6	319 7 6	20 10 7½	1 2 6	—	—	—	—	69 11 10½	
1	Major	1 0 0	365 0 0	0 15 0	273 15 0	18 5 0	1 0 0	—	—	—	—	72 0 0	
1	Lieutenant and captain	0 17 0	310 5 0	0 13 0	237 5 0	15 10 3	0 17 0	—	—	—	—	56 12 9	
1	Ditto more	0 17 0	310 5 0	0 13 0	237 5 0	15 10 3	0 17 0	—	—	—	—	56 12 9	
1	Guidon and captain	0 16 0	292 0 0	0 12 0	219 0 0	14 12 0	0 16 0	—	—	—	—	57 12 0	
1	Sub lieutenant	0 10 0	182 10 0	0 7 6	136 17 6	9 2 6	0 10 0	—	—	—	—	36 0 0	
1	Ditto more	0 10 0	182 10 0	0 7 6	136 17 6	9 2 6	0 10 0	—	—	—	—	36 0 0	
1	Chaplain	0 6 8	121 13 4	0 5 0	91 5 0	6 1 8	0 6 8	—	—	—	—	24 0 0	
1	Surgeon	0 8 0	146 0 0	0 6 0	109 10 0	7 6 0	0 8 0	—	—	—	—	28 16 0	
1	Adjutant	0 7 0	127 15 0	0 5 6	100 7 6	6 7 9	0 7 0	—	—	—	—	20 12 9	
1	Serjeant	0 4 0	73 0 0	0 3 6	63 17 6	3 13 0	0 4 0	—	—	—	—	5 5 6	
5	Ditto more	1 0 0	365 0 0	0 17 6	319 7 6	18 5 0	1 0 0	—	—	—	—	26 7 6	
1	Corporal	0 3 0	54 15 0	0 2 6	45 12 6	2 14 9	0 3 0	—	—	—	—	—	
5	Ditto more	0 15 0	273 15 0	0 12 6	228 2 6	13 13 9	0 15 0	—	—	—	—	6 14 4½	
1	Drummer	0 2 6	45 12 6	0 2 0	36 10 0	2 5 7½	0 2 6	—	—	—	—	20 3 1½	
3	Ditto more	0 7 6	136 17 6	0 6 0	109 10 0	6 16 10½	0 7 6	—	—	—	—	6 14 4½	
1	Hautbois	0 2 6	45 12 6	0 2 0	36 10 0	2 5 7½	0 2 6	—	—	—	—	20 3 1½	
3	Ditto more	0 7 6	136 17 6	0 6 0	109 10 0	6 16 10½	0 7 6	—	—	—	—	—	
1	Private man	0 2 6	45 12 6	0 2 0	36 10 0	2 5 7½	0 2 6	—	—	—	—	—	
114	Ditto more	14 5 0	5201 5 0	11 8 0	4161 0 0	260 1 3	14 5 0	—	—	—	—	—	
29	6 Captain and colonel	0 15 0	273 15 0	0 12 0	219 0 0	13 13 9	0 15 0	—	—	—	—	—	
	3 Lieut. and lieu. col.	0 7 6	136 17 6	0 6 0	109 10 0	6 16 10½	0 7 6	—	—	—	—	—	
	2 Major	0 5 0	91 5 0	0 4 0	73 0 0	4 11 3	0 5 0	—	—	—	—	—	
	2 Lieutenants and capt.	0 5 0	91 5 0	0 4 0	73 0 0	4 11 3	0 5 0	—	—	—	—	—	
	1 Guidon	0 5 0	45 12 6	0 4 0	36 10 0	2 5 7½	0 5 0	—	—	—	—	—	
	2 Sub lieutenants	0 5 0	91 5 0	0 4 0	73 0 0	4 11 3	0 5 0	—	—	—	—	—	
	1 Adjutant	0 2 6	45 12 6	0 2 0	36 10 0	2 5 7½	0 2 6	—	—	—	—	—	
	2 Riding masters	0 5 0	91 5 0	0 4 0	73 0 0	4 11 3	0 5 0	—	—	—	—	—	
	1 Widows	0 2 6	45 12 6	0 2 0	36 10 0	2 5 7½	0 2 6	—	—	—	—	—	
	3 Agent	0 7 6	136 17 6	0 6 0	109 10 0	6 16 10½	0 7 6	—	—	—	—	—	
1	Recruiting horses	0 15 0	273 15 0	0 12 0	219 0 0	13 13 9	0 15 0	—	—	—	—	—	
1	Private man to the clerk	0 2 6	45 12 6	0 2 0	36 10 0	2 5 7½	0 2 6	—	—	—	—	—	
		29	8 8	10743 3 4	8477 2 6	537 3 2	29 8 8	43 4 4½	941 1 11½	57 2 1½	658 0 6	57 2 1½	
		376											715 2 7½
													8477 2 6
													537 3 2
													29 8 8
													43 4 4½
													941 1 11½
													10743 3 4
													Total -
													Subsistence
													Poundage
													Hospital
													Widows
													Off-reck.

Computation of the Pay of the Royal Regiment of Horse Guards, for 365 Days, as it is distributed in all its Branches, to every Officer and Private Man, conformable to the Establishment, Anno 1753.

No.	Quality.	Full Pay.		Subsistence.		Poundage at 12d. per pound.	Hospital, or one day's pay per ann.	Allowance to widows.	Net off-reckonings for clothing.	Agency.	Net Clearings.
		Per diem.	For 365 Days.	Per diem.	For 365 days.						
		l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.	l. s. d.		l. s. d.
1	Colonel and captain	2 1 0	748 5 0	1 11 0	565 15 0	37 8 3	2 1 0	—	—	—	143 0 9
1	Lieut. colonel and captain	1 9 6	538 7 6	1 2 6	410 12 6	26 18 4½	1 9 6	—	—	—	99 7 1½
1	Major and captain	1 7 0	492 15 0	1 1 6	392 7 6	24 12 9	1 7 0	—	—	—	74 7 9
1	Chaplain	0 6 8	121 13 4	0 5 0	91 5 0	6 1 8	0 6 8	—	—	—	24 0 0
1	Surgeon	0 6 0	109 10 0	0 4 6	82 2 6	5 9 6	0 6 0	—	—	—	21 12 0
1	Adjutant	0 5 0	91 5 0	0 4 6	82 2 6	4 11 3	0 5 0	—	—	—	4 6 3
1	Captain	1 1 6	392 7 6	0 16 6	301 2 6	19 12 4½	1 1 6	—	—	—	70 11 1½
5	Ditto more	5 7 6	1961 17 6	4 2 6	1505 12 6	98 1 10½	5 7 6	—	—	—	352 15 7½
1	Lieutenant	0 15 0	273 15 0	0 11 6	209 17 6	13 13 9	0 15 0	—	—	—	49 8 9
8	Ditto more	6 0 0	2190 0 0	4 12 0	1679 0 0	109 10 0	6 0 0	—	—	—	395 10 0
1	Cornet	0 14 0	255 10 0	0 11 0	200 15 0	12 15 6	0 14 0	—	—	—	41 5 6
8	Ditto more	5 12 0	2044 0 0	4 8 6	1606 0 0	102 4 0	5 12 0	—	—	—	330 4 0
1	Quarter master	0 8 6	155 2 6	0 6 6	118 12 6	7 15 1½	0 8 6	—	—	—	28 6 4½
8	Ditto more	3 8 0	1241 0 0	2 12 0	949 0 0	62 1 0	3 8 0	—	—	—	226 11 0
1	Kettle drummer	0 3 0	54 15 0	0 2 6	45 12 6	2 14 9	0 3 0	—	—	—	6 4 9
1	Corporal	0 3 0	54 15 0	0 2 6	45 12 6	2 14 9	0 3 0	—	—	—	—
17	Ditto more	2 11 0	930 15 0	2 2 6	775 12 6	46 10 9	2 11 0	—	—	—	—
1	Trumpeter	0 2 8	48 13 4	0 2 0	36 10 0	2 8 8	0 2 8	—	—	—	9 12 0
8	Ditto more	1 1 4	389 6 8	0 16 0	292 0 0	19 9 4	1 1 4	—	—	—	76 16 0
1	Private man	0 2 6	45 12 6	0 2 0	36 10 0	2 5 7½	0 2 6	—	—	—	—
269	Ditto more	33 12 6	12273 2 6	26 18 0	9818 10 0	613 13 1½	33 12 6	—	—	—	—
	Allowance to widows	2 5 0	821 5 0	—	—	41 1 3	2 5 0	777 18 9	—	—	—
	Allow. to col. for clothing	1 16 0	657 0 0	0 18 0	328 10 0	32 17 0	1 16 0	—	—	—	—
	Allowance to the captain	1 16 0	657 0 0	0 18 0	328 10 0	32 17 0	1 16 0	—	—	—	—
	Allowance to the agent	0 18 0	328 10 0	0 18 0	328 10 0	16 8 6	0 18 0	—	—	—	—
		73 12 8	26876 3 4	56 6 6	20558 12 6	1343 16 2	73 12 8	777 18 9	2043 13 1½	124 11 1½	1953 19 0
											124 11 1½
											2078 10 1½
											20558 12 6
											1343 16 2
											73 12 8
											777 18 9
											2343 13 1½
											26876 3 4
											Total



A PATENT was granted by King Charles I. to William Drummond of Haithornden, in 1625, for the sole making and vending for the space of twenty-one years, the following machines and warlike engines invented by him; the patent is printed in his works.

THE first is an equestrian instrument, by which a single horseman may be equal in fight to five or six armed with the common arms, which instrument indeed agrees also most excellently with the foot service, and from effects not less terrible than speedy, is called the thundering staff; but from its various properties, the box pistol, box musquet, box carrabyn or box dragoon.

THE second is a new kind of spear, with which any foot soldier, besides using it as a pike, may discharge five or six guns; this weapon may be named the projecting spear or pike arquebus.

THE third is a sort of machine of conjugated muskets, by the assistance of which one soldier or two, are enabled to oppose an hundred guns, which machine from its effect is called the thundering chariot, and vulgarly the fiery waggon.

THE fourth is a new species of gun of the greater kind, by the assistance of which in the same time that they have been able to discharge one ball, they may now discharge three, four or five, and that either in a land or sea engagement. Of this machine there are different figures and sizes, but from the common property of all, they may be called by the general name of the open cannon, vulgarly the open ordnance.

THE fifth and sixth are of the mortar kind, of which one from its remarkable use in defending walls and ships, and from its wonderful expedition is called the flat scourer. The other, which is extremely useful in naval fights, for breaking the masts, yards and oars, whence it is called the cutter.

THE seventh is a machine not unlike the species of the ancient Heliopolis, accommodated to the modern discipline for defending a fortress, and also for attacking one, by the assistance of it the besiegers may enter into the inner part of a city or fortification, or over a ditch, without the use of rolling mounts,

mounts; and in the defence of a city, the fortification may be so strengthened by the use of this machine, as it shall never be taken or demolished, and it will stand free on the curtain. This from its likeness to a cavalier, and because it carries a number of soldiers, and has the power of motion, may be vulgarly called the elephant or cavalier errant. (a)

THE ninth a new kind of ship, that cannot be prevented by chains or barricades, or the force of any cannon, from entering any port, and either burning or taking all the vessels therein; this vessel from its stupendous manifest and terrible effects, and horrid demolition of ports and vessels, deserves to be called the Leviathon.

THE tenth is an instrument serving to observe the proportional intensity and remission of winds, whereby the sailor is instructed with more certainty to take the just measure of his voyage, wherefore it is called the sea measurer.

THE eleventh is a kind of light vessel, which with sails and oars, is carried with great celerity against the wind, for any time, and for velocity will outgo any ordinary vessel, and thence called the sea postillion.

THE twelfth is a certain instrument whereby the course of a vessel is exactly measured, and the difference of longitude of places either on the coast or at sea are determined: it is called the length compass.

THE thirteenth an instrument, whereby a quantity of salt water is rendered sweet and drinkable at a small expence, it will make every day a sufficient quantity of sweet water for the day's consumption, so that putrefaction by keeping it is not to be apprehended: this is called a ship fountain.

THE fourteenth contains burning glasses of different kinds, with which at any distance, any combustible matter, whether on land or sea, may be set on fire, to which no guns are equal. These from various conic-sections, concave and convex, and other curvilinear superficies, and those variously combined, will burn both by reflection and refraction; and as the honor belongs the Archimedes, they are called Archimedean mirrors.

THE fifteenth comprehends a kind of perspective or telescope, by the assistance of which, an object, the light being thrown on it, will appear as plainly and vividly at any distance, as if viewed in the ordinary manner at a proper distance: this is vulgarly called the lynx's eye.

(a) THIS is printed from a manuscript; the eighth article is wanting, and I have not been able to obtain a printed copy of the book.

THE sixteenth is an organised machine, from natural causes producing an unremitted and perpetual motion, the use of which from its different principles, may be a great benefit to various mechanical operations: it is called the mover.

THIS patent was dated at Hampton Court, the 29th day of September 1626, and sealed Holy-rood-house,



APPENDIX, No. X.

A
GENERAL AND COMPLEAT
LIST - MILITARY
OF EVERY
COMMISSION-OFFICER
OF HORSE AND FOOT, NOW COMMANDING HIS MAJESTIES
LAND-FORCES OF
ENGLAND,

(Excepting the un-regimented Companies :)

A S A L S O

The proper Distinctions of their CLOATHING, BADGES of HONOUR, and
COLOURS of each Troop and Regiment;

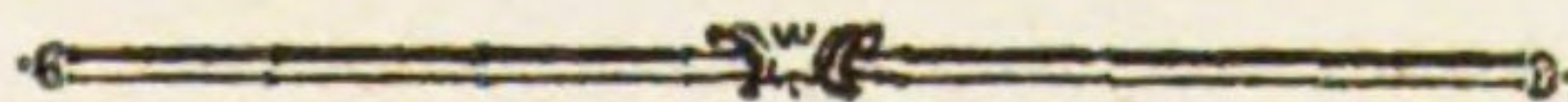
The NAMES of the CHIEF OFFICERS of the ORDNANCE, and
other Officers belonging to the Army :

With a LIST of the ROYAL BAND of GENTLEMEN-PENTIONERS, and
YEOMEN of the KING'S GUARD of his BODY;

Of the GOVERNOURS, LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOURS, and DEPUTY-
GOVERNOURS throughout the Kingdom.

As Established at the Time of the REVIEW, upon PUTNEY-HEATH, the
first of October, 1684.

As also an ACCOUNT of the said REVIEW, &c.



LONDON: Printed by J. GAIN, for NATHAN BROOKS, at *Thomas Knapton's*,
next Door to the *Flying-Horse*, in *Upper Moorfields*, 1684.

APPENDIX, No. X.

TO THE READER

FOR the first time since the publication of the first edition of this work, the author has been enabled to present to the public a new and improved edition. The alterations are of a considerable nature, and have been made with a view to the more complete and accurate representation of the original text. The author has also been enabled to add several new chapters, which he trusts will be found of great interest and value to the reader. The work is now published in a new and more elegant form, and is offered to the public at a price which he trusts will be found reasonable. The author has no other object in view than to present to the public a work which he trusts will be found of great interest and value to the reader. The work is now published in a new and more elegant form, and is offered to the public at a price which he trusts will be found reasonable. The author has no other object in view than to present to the public a work which he trusts will be found of great interest and value to the reader.

TO THE READER.

FOR fear these essays of Military Lists, after all the unspeakable drudgeries undergone to collect and digest them into those methods they are now published with, should nevertheless, in the first place, not afford their managing reader, drums and trumpets enough for his money; nor, in the second place, afford their happy author, a rattling round vent enough of the whole impression for his pains, which comes all to one reckoning: are you, gentlemen, who had perhaps rather read men than books, without any farther cutting upon good nature, bid most heartily welcome to make the meal up with a treat from Putney-Heath, whose camp, and manner of encamping, described by an eye-witness, on the first of October, 1684, is here over and above served up gratis; when but pleased to pay for the dish you have it in; that way, endeavouring, rather to give you all your bellys-full, if possible, in the stead of some meagre advertisement, garnish't with an hundred small peccavi's to no purpose, for unavoidable great faults in all undertakings of this nature; indeed, of all our standing dishes, the most nauseous, whose craving sort of rosemary, some few may chance to look at, but tasted of by nobody.

The major part then of those his majesties forces, not moving from their posts of present duty, of whom these scattering sheets attempt to give the world some little light: the remaining part quartered near hand, encamped the first of October, upon Putney-Heath, officer and souldier parading there not in less gay and splendid, than in a martial equipage.

The horse that day consisted of the three troops of guards, and of their three of granadiers, of the Earl of Oxford's regiment of horse-guards, and the Lord Churchill's regiment of dragoons.

The foot of two battalions, form'd from the royal regiment of guards, and their granadiers; of one battalion from the Colestream regiment of guards and granadiers; of one battalion from the Earl of Dunbarton's and their granadiers; and lastly, of one from the admiral regiment.

The horse and foot imbodied, and drawn in a continued line, took their proper post upon a rising ground, in length from right to left, near a mile and

half, viz. from the Red House, near the Bowling-green, extended cross the Heath, and fronting to the River.

The horse at their usual depth made four squadrons upon the right wing, of which, the troops of guards made three, and their granadiers one: the left wing of horse in the like manner made four squadrons, whereof my Lord of Oxford's regiment formed two, and my Lord Churchill's dragoons the other: the three troops of guards flanking in that figure upon the right of the main body; my Lord of Oxford's, and my Lord Churchill's regiments flanking it on the left; in all, of horse, eight squadron, each consisting of two hundred.

The admiral's battalion, as youngest in the field, took their post in the centre of the line; the two battalions of the royal regiment of guards and granadiers being drawn upon the admiral's right, were immediately flanked by the right wing of horse; my Lord Dunbarton's battalion and granadiers being posted on the admiral's left; and upon my Lord Dunbarton's left was drawn the Colestream battalion of guards and granadiers, which the left wing of horse immediately flanked: all the foot at their order drawn four deep, consisted of five battalions, each of eight companies.

The Colestream, my Lord Dunbarton's, and the admiral's battalions successively exercised, all three by beat of drum, the military postures of pike, sword and musket; every man dexterously discharging their duties with an exact and general readiness, to the great delight and satisfaction of their Majesties and Royal Highnesses, vouchsafing all the time of exercise to grace their arms with the honour of their presence; the other two battalions of the royal regiment had not fell short of the like performance, if illness of weather, when they just intended it, had not prevented; the day proving wet and showry, was a general impediment from proceeding at that time to any other motions, customary upon the like reviews: all decamp'd sooner than otherwise they would have done.

The total horse and foot which then rendezvouz'd were above four thousand advantageously trained, and well clad men; commanded in the field for that day's generalship, by the right honourable the Earl of Craven.

A P P E N D I X, No. X.

*A List of the Royal Band of Gentlemen Pentioners, by the Right Honourable
Theophilus, Earl of Huntington, commanded in Chief.*

Theophilus, Earl of Huntington,
The Honourable Francis Vilars,
Sir Tho. Bloodworth, Bar.

Captain.
Lieutenant.
Standard-bearer.

} { William Thomas,
Clerk of the Cheque.

Gentlemen Pentioners.

Thomas Hales,
Sir Tho. Roe, Knight,
Anthony Gawdy,
Hugh Teient,
Sir Robert Dacrees, Knight,
Roger Conisby,
Abraham Clark,
John Hubbard,
John West,
William Ashton,
John Barnard,
Walter Baker,
George Farington,
Edward Courthrop,
Charles Gostwick,
Edward Glynn,
Sir Gerard Fleetwood, Knight,
David Vivian,
Thomas Frances,
Charles Cludd,

Gentlemen Pentioners.

Sir Thomas Kniveston, Baronet,
Christopher Turner,
William Rowley,
Edward Mainard,
Peter Lock,
John Estcourt,
Lancelot Lake,
Richard Willis,
Thomas Manning,
William Morgan,
Bernard Turner,
Ambrose Sycom,
Sir Theop. Janson, Baronet,
John Cooper,
Charnock Heron,
Abraham Duplex,
Henry Bynn,
Thomas Orme,
Miles Marth,
John Hastings,
Richard Child, Gent. Harbinger.

THE royal band of gentlemen pentioners, consists of forty gentlemen, besides officers; the usual arms they do duty with, are gilt battle-axes; their standard is St. George's cross, in a field-argent, with four bends. The captain's pay is one thousand pounds yearly, the lieutenants five hundred pounds, standard-bearers three hundred and ten pounds, clerk of the cheques one hundred and twenty pounds, to each gentleman of the band one hundred pound yearly.

A List

A List of the Commission-Officers and Yeomen of his Majesty's Guard of his Body, commanded by the Right Honourable George, Lord Viscount Grandison.

George, Lord Grandison

Captain.

Thomas Howard,
Henry Dutton, Colt.

}

Lieutenant.
Ensign.

Exempts { William Houghton, | Thomas Orme, } { The Honourable Charles Villars,
Sir Herbert Whaley, | Robert Sares, } clerk of the cheque.

Yeomen.	Yeomen.	Yeomen.	Yeomen.
Ri. Dewel } Yeomen-	Isaac Snelling,	Edward Ellis,	Anthony Clark,
W. Sherloc, } Ushers.	John Hebborn,	Jervis Thwaites,	Thomas Thackam,
Richard Roiston,	J. Millart, } Yeomen-	Jo. Scorer,	Thomas Frye,
Matthew Leper,	Du. Brook, } Ushers.	John Tendring,	Daniel Coyes,
Edward Finch,	Edward Hargrave,	Jo. Templer, } Yeom.	Richard King,
Thomas Skelton,	Robert Stone,	Tho. Nicols, } Ushers.	Rob. Parsons, } Yeo.
William Blackford,	Jonas Price,	Thomas Lambert,	Usher.
Thomas Worth,	Thomas Banister,	John Inge,	Robert Kidwell,
Daniel Jenings,	James Morgan,	William Crofier, jun.	Richard St. Peire,
Richard Bowman,	John Ferrers,	George Bulloc,	Henry Winchester,
Charles Webb,	Henry Harwar,	William Hobbs,	Robert Radford,
Wil. Crofier, senior,	John Lambert,	Ambrose Tooth,	Eleazer Coates,
William Ford,	Robert Norman,	William Wheatly,	Wil. Harvey, } Yeo.
John Earling,	Philip Willis,	John Beter,	senior. } Usher.
Ed. Briscoe, sen. } Yeo.	Thomas Scott,	James Palmer,	Thomas Roberts
W. Finch, } Ush.	Richard Palmer,	John Webster,	Nicholas Caple,
William Dover,	Chr. Sanders, } Yeo.	James Haffel,	William Bastian,
Thomas Nicolas,	John Sares, } Ushers.	William Green,	William Harrison,
William Woodrof,	John Millart,	T. Bishop, } late Yeo.	Tho. Evans, } Yeom.
John Smith,	Abraham Story,	Usher.	Usher.
William Attlee,	John Holmden,	Nicholas Lane,	Peter Hickman,
Nicholas Hawkins,	Thomas Gilpin,	Robert Thomson,	Tristram Thomas,
Daniel Lambert,	Henry Crow,	John Franks,	Thomas Smith,
Ja. Trumble,	Joseph Collier,	Edward Brisco, junior,	Henry Meyson,
William Harvey, jun.	Robert Fowler,	William Jones,	John Brayfield.
Thomas Winstanley,	John Kirton,	Jof. Troit, } Yeoman-	
		Usher.	

{ James Evans, Roger Jakson, } { Thomas Coleman, deputy-clerk of }
chamber-keepers. } the cheque.

THIS guard consists of one hundred yeomen, besides officers; of those, fifteen are appointed subaltern officers, or yeomen-ushers, with some additional pay, exceeding their fellow-yeomen, which to each is 30l. yearly. To a yeoman-usher, 37l. they wear large skirted scarlet coats, guarded with black velvet, badged with a rose crown'd upon their backs and breasts; fifty of them armed with harquebuziers; fifty with partizans. The captains yearly pay, 1000l. the lieutenant's, 500l. ensigns, 300l. exempts, 150l. clerk of the cheque 200l.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the King's own Troop of Horse-Guards, and Troops of Grenadiers, by his Grace, Christopher Duke of Albemarle, Knight of the most Noble Order of the Garter, commanded in Chief, as eldest Colonel of Horse in his Majesty's Kingdom of England.

Christopher Duke of Albemarle, Captain, commanding as colonel.

The Honourable Edward Villars,	}	Lieutenants, commanding as lieutenant colonels.
Edmond Ashton,		
Edward Griffin,		
Richard Binns,		
Sir Walter Clarges,	}	} Commanding as majors,
The R. Hon. Joseph Ld. Berceley,		
		Guidon,
Stephen Dyer		Quarter-master, commanding as captain,
Lewis Billingsley	}	Brigadiers, commanding as lieutenants,
Robert Nowell,		
John Baynes,		
Edward Symms,	}	Sub-Brigadiers commanding as assistants to the brigadiers.
Thomas Wilford,		
Jo. Brailsford,		
George Nailor		

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers belonging to this Troop of Guards.

Dr. Ja. Gardiner, chaplain, { Hugh Fisher,
William Chapman, clerk, { Ben. Ragois,
Tho. Hobs, chirurgion, { Michael Mear,
John Bassett, } Trumpets. { Robert Mawgridge,
kettle-drum.

Grenadiers attending this Troop of Guards.

John Parker, } Lieutenants, } two Sergants, } two Corporals, { Hautbois 4, } Private Men,
Tho. Guy, } } } } } Drums 2, } 64.

This troop of guards consists of 200, besides officers, distinguished by their carbine belts of velvet, laced with gold and silver, by their red hoes and holster-caps, embroidered with the royal cypher and crown, coated and cloaked in scarlet lined with blew; the standard crimson, with the royal cypher and crown, the guidon different only from the standard by being rounded and slit at the end.

THE captain's pay of this troop, per diem, 1*l.* 10*s.* the lieutenants, 15*s.* the cornets, 14*s.* the guidons, 12*s.* quarter-masters, 9*s.* brigadiers, 7*s.* sub-brigadiers equal with the king's pay of a private man, which is daily 4*s.*

THE granadiers of this troop have blue loops, tufted with yellow upon red coats, lined blew, with granadier caps, lined the same, and a blew round mark on the outside, armed with bayonets and harquebuzes: the lieutenants pay per diem, of granadiers to this troop, 8s. serjents, 4s. corporals, 3s. private men, hautbois and drums, 2s. 6d.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Queen's Troop of his Majesty's Horse-Guards and Troop of Granadiers, commanded by the Honourable Sir Philip Howard.

Sir Philip Howard,	Captain, commanding as colonel.
Sir George Hewyt, Bar. Sir John Fenwick, Bar.	} Lieutenants, commanding as lieutenant-colonels.
Charles Orby, The Honourable John Darcy,	Cornet, } Guidon, } Commanding as majors.
William Upcott,	Quarter-master, commanding as captain.
George Collingwood, John Staples, John Chittam, Sir Richard Brown, Bar.	} Brigadiers, commanding as lieutenants.
Richard Beale, Richard Barham, George Howard, Mich. Stadholm,	} Sub-brigadiers, commanding as assistants to the brigadiers.

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers belonging to this Troop.

Benj. Barnet, chaplain, Philip Aires, clerk, Richard Mills, chirurg,	{ { William Bounty, William Bull, Thomas Barnwell, Mat. Shoar, } Trumpets. { Francis Breban, Kettle-Drum.
--	---

Grenadiers attending this Troop of Guards.

Richard Potter, } Robert Dixon, }	Lieuts. }	Two serjts. }	Two corpor. }	Four hautbois, } Two drums, } 64 private men.
--------------------------------------	-----------	---------------	---------------	--

The queen's troop of horse-guards has but two lieutenants, otherwise consisting of equal number with that of the king's, distinguished by carbine belts of green velvet, laced with gold, green hoores, and holster-caps, embroidered with the same cypher and crown, coated and cloaked as the king's standard, and guidon the same as the king's.

THE captain's pay of this troop per diem, is 10s. less than that of the king's, all the other officers pay alike with the king's troop, excepting the brigadiers, who has but 6s.

THE granadiers pay'd, clad, and armed as the king's, differenc't by green loops, with yellow tufts upon their coats.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Duke's Troop of his Majesty's Horse-Guards, and Troop of Granadiers, commanded by the Right Honourable Louis, Earle of Feversham.

Louis, earle of Feversham,	Captain, commanding as colonel.
Robert Werden, Theophilus Oglethorp,	} Lieutenants, commanding as lieutenant-colonels.
Philip Darcy, Edmund Main,	} Cornet, } Guidon, } Commanding as majors.
Ferdinand Stanhop,	Quarter-master, commanding as captain.
William Springall, Ambrose Norton, George Hastings, Jenken Morgan,	} Brigadiers, commanding as lieutenants.
Henry Rimborn, Henry Griffith, Samuel Harrison, Samuel English,	} Sub-brigadiers, commanding as assistants to the brigadiers.

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers belonging to this Troop, &c.

William Roles, chaplain, James Bridgeman, clerk, Gabriel Jones, chirurg.	{ Joseph Seignior, Peter Lefever, Richard Phillips, Moses Phillips, }	Trumpets. {	Cornet Vanderend, Kettle-drum.
--	--	-------------	-----------------------------------

The Granadiers attending this Troop of Guards.

Anthony Heyford, John Vaughan,	} Lieutenants. }	Two serjeants. }	Two corporals. }	{ Four hautbois. Two drums.
-----------------------------------	------------------	------------------	------------------	--------------------------------

THE duke's troop and granadiers, the same in pay and number with the queen's, the guards only distinguished by their carbine belts, laced with silver upon yellow velvet; hoores and holdster-caps embroidered upon yellow, with the same cypher and crown as the king's; the standard and guidon yellow damask, with his royal highnesses cypher and coronet.

THE granadiers paid and clad as the king's, differenc't by their coat-loops of yellow upon their breasts.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Royal Regiment of Horse-Guards, commanded by the Right Honourable Aubery, Earle of Oxford, Knt. of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

Aubery, earl of Oxford, } Colonel.
The honourable Sir Francis Compton, } Major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Cornets.</i>	<i>Quarter-masters.</i>
Captain Wil. Leg, commanding the king's own troop. }	Lt. William Wind,	Cor. Rowland Selfby,	Quar. Rich. Wise,
Captain Lieutenant Henry Cornwell, commanding the co- lonel's troop. }	Lt. Henry Cornwell,	Cor. Edward Scot,	Quar. Geo. Cary,
The major's troop, } commanded by	Lt. Charles Adderly,	Cor. Henry Norris,	Quar. C. Duncom,
Sir C. Windham, cap.	Lt. Edmund Harris,	Cor. David Loid,	Quar. Robert Bourg,
Edw. Sandys, capt.	Lt. Edmund Turner,	Cor. Oldfield,	Quar. Vernam,
Tho. Lucy, capt.	Lt. Davenport Lucy,	Cor. Leigh,	Quar. Tho. Conisby,
Sir T. Slingsby, capt.	Lt. John Lehunt,	Cor. Edw. Andrews,	Quar. John Tuck,
Wal. Littleton, capt.	Lt. Philip Munocks.	Cor. William Carew.	Quar. Wa. Chetwyn.

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers belonging to this Regiment.

{ David Lloid, adjutant, } { Syffom, chirurgeon, }

THIS regiment of horse-guards consists of eight troops, each of them having, besides those commissioned-officers above-named, three corporals, two trumpets, forty-five private men, distinguished by their carbine belts, laced with gold, upon buff with a red edging, hooves and holdster-caps with the royal cypher, embroidered upon blew, coated and cloaked blew, lined red. The colonel's pay per diem, as colonel and captain, 1l. 14s. the major's, as major and captain, 17s. a captain's, 11s. a lieutenant's, 10s. cornet's, 9s. quarter-master's, 6s. corporals, 3s. trumpets, 3s. a private man's pay, 2s. 6d. the king's troop has only a kettle-drum, which none of the other troops have; with a standard, crimson, and the imperial crown embroidered: the colonel's colours flies the royal cypher, crimson; the major's gold streams, crimson: the first troop, the rose crown'd; the second, a thistle crown'd; the third, the flower-de-luces crowned; the fourth, the harp crowned; the fifth, the royal oak, embroidered upon their crimson colours.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the King's own Royal Regiment of Dragoons, commanded by the Right Honourable John Lord Churchill.

The right honourable,	{ John Lord Churchill, Edward Lord Cornbury, Hugh Sutherland,	} Colonel. Lieutenant-colonel. Major.
<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Cornets.</i>
The colonel's troop commanded by captain lieutenant Thomas Huffy.	Thomas Huffy,	Cor. William Huffy,
The lieutenant-colonel's troop, commanded by	Lt. Charles Ward,	Cor. Piercy Roche,
Alex. Mackenzie, capt.	Lt. Hugh Windham,	Cor. John Cole,
Charles Neatby, capt.	Lt. John Williams,	Cor. George Clifford,
John Coye, capt.	Lt. Charles La Rue,	Cor. William Staniford,
Tho. Langston, capt.	Lt. Fran. Langston.	Cor. Thomas Pownel.

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Regiment of Dragoons.

Thomas Crawley, adjutant,	{ {	Theobald Churchil, chaplain,
Henry Hawker, quarter-master,	{ {	Peregrine Yewel, chirurg.

THIS royal regiment of dragoons consists of six troops, besides the officers above-named: each has one quarter master, two serjeants, three corporals, two hautbois, two drums, and fifty private men, armed with muskets and bayonets, coated and cloaked red lined blew; hooves embroidered with blew and yellow upon red, with the royal cypher, caps the same with R. cypher. The colonel's pay of dragoons, per diem, as colonel and captain, 1l. 6s. lieutenant-colonel's pay, as lieutenant colonel and captain, 1l. captain's pay, 11s. lieutenant's pay, 6s. cornet's, 5s. quarter-master's, 3s. serjeant's, 2s. 6d. corporals, 2s. hautbois, and drums, 2s. private men, 1s. 6d. per diem.

THE colours to each troop thus distinguish't: the colonel's, the royal cypher and crown embroidered upon crimson; the lieutenant-colonel's, the rays of the sun, proper crowned, issuing out of a cloud proper, and is a badge of the black princes; the first troop has for colours the top of a beacon crowned ore with flames of fire proper, and is a badge of Henry V. the second troop, two estreages feathers crowned, argent; a badge of Henry VI. the third, a rose and pomgranate impaled, leaves and stalk vert. a badge of Henry VII. the fourth troop, a phoenix in flames proper; a badge of Queen Elizabeth: each embroidered upon crimson.

Capt. John Staples, adjutant-general of the horse.
Peter Smith, marshal of the horse.

*A List of the Chief Officers of the Ordnance, and other General Officers
belonging to the Army.*

The right honourable George Lord Dartmouth, master-general of the ordnance.

Sir Charles Musgrave, Bar. lieutenant-general of the ordnance.

Sir Bern. De Gomi, surveyor, and ingeneer-general of the ordnance.

Captain Richard Leake, master gunner of England.

The honourable Charles Bertie, treasurer of the ordnance.

Sir Edward Sherburn, clerk of the ordnance.

William Bridges, Esq; store-keeper.

—— Gardiner Esq; clerk of the deliveries.

Other General Officers belonging to the Army.

Charles Fox, Esq; pay-master-general of all the land forces.

The honourable Henry Howard, commissary-general of the musters :

David Crawford, Esq; deputy commissary-general of the musters.

To whom belong eight provincial commissaries.

William Blathwait, Esq; secretary at war.

George Clark, Esq; judge-advocate.

Colonel James Hassel, scout-master-general.

James Pierce, Esq; chirurgion-general.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Royal Regiment of Foot-Guards, commanded in Chief by his Grace, Henry Duke of Grafton, Knight of the most noble Order of the Garter.

The Duke of Grafton, colonel.

John Strode, lieutenant-colonel.

William Eyton, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The honourable Sackville Tuffton, commanding the king's own company as cap.	Lt. Gilbert Talbot,	Enf. William Seymour,
The colonel's company, commanded by Capt. Lt.	Edward Rouse,	Enf. Hen. Bennet,
The Lieutenant-colonel's company, commanded by	Lt. John Headly,	Enf. Giles Spicer,
The major's company, commanded by	Sir Wil. Queristan, Bar. Lt.	Enf. Fra. Edwards,
Sir Roger Manly, Capt.	Lt. Robert Baxter,	Enf. Robert Knott,
The honourable John Berckley, Capt.	Lt. Edmund Harris,	Enf. Thomas Rawly,
Thomas Stradling, Capt.	Lt. John Leake,	Enf. Jo. Berckley,
Ralph Delavall, Capt.	Lt. John George,	Enf. Jo. Gibbons,
John Skelton, Capt.	Lt. Henry Colyer,	Enf. Tho. Dring,
Edmond Rerersby, Capt.	Lt. Stint Duncome,	Enf. Jo. Throgmorton,
Knivet Hastings, Capt.	Lt. Henry Sandys,	Enf. Edmund Wyndam,
Henry Saville, Capt.	Lt. William Richards,	Enf. Hen. Wigmore,
William Selwyn, Capt.	Lt. James Hancock,	Enf. Oliver St. John,
Charles Lloid, Capt.	Lt. Corbet Hen,	Enf. William Aston,
Tho. Throgmorton, Capt.	Lt. Charles Robinson,	Enf. William Cornwallis,
Arthur Corbet, Capt.	Lt. Mat. Palmer,	Enf. Stephen Bellieu,
John Seymour, Capt.	Lt. William Chumley,	Enf. James Harison,
Ferdin. Hastings, Capt.	Lt. David Taylor,	Enf. Hen. Hodson,
Philip Kirk, Capt.	Lt. Gilbert Primrose,	Enf. John Delavalle,
Francis Wheeler, Capt.	Lt. Richard Woodward,	Enf. Charles Gost,
Lenthal Warcup, Capt.	Lt. A. Pitcarn, al. Wheeler,	Enf. Charles Wolfeley,
Charles Proier, Capt.	Lt. Duncan Abercromy,	Enf. David Eaton,
Charles Middleton, Capt.	Lt. William Smith.	Enf. Forister.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Royal Regiment of Foot-Guards and Granadiers, commanded by his Grace, Henry, Duke of Grafton.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
William Parsons, Capt.	Lt. John Byns,	Enf. Richard Dalby.
Francis Hawly, capt. of a company of granadiers.	Lt. Chevalier De'meziere, Lt. Dolmain.	

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Royal Regiment of Foot-Guards.

Henry Sands, adjutant, Chevalier de Meziere, 2d adjutant, Tho. Jones, quarter-master and marshal.	Dr. Morrice, chaplain, John Noad, chirurgeon, Franckin and Belemay, chi- rurgeon's mates.	Edward Skirrum, drum- major.
---	--	---------------------------------

THIS first regiment of foot-guards has twenty-four companies establish't, two serjeants, three corporals, and two drums in each; the king's own company having a serjeant more than the other companies, distinguish't by red coats, lined blew, blew stockings, blew breeches, and white sashes, with blew fringe: the pay of all his majesties commission-officers of foot in every regiment and company, alike: that of private centinels, 8d. per diem, excepting in the two regiments of foot-guards, which is per diem 10d.

ATTENDED by a company of granadiers, armed with muskets and bayonets, without swords, having besides the commissioned officers, two serjeants, three corporals, and two drums; upon caps, lined blew, tufted blew and red, the granadiers bear the royal cypher, crowned for their distinction; this regiment flies St. George's cross in a white field, viz. The king's own company, the standard all crimson, cypher and crown embroidered with gold. — The colonel's white, with the red cross, the crown or. — The lieutenant-colonel's the same cross, with C. R. crowned or. — The major's with C. R. and crown or. with a blaze crimson. — The first company with the king's crest, which is a lyon passant guardant, crowned, or standing on a crown or. — II. Comp. a rose and crown or. — III. Flower-de luce and crown or. — IV. Portcullis and crown or. — V. A white rose in the rays of the sun, and crown or. — VI. Thistle and crown or. — VII. Harp and crown or. — VIII. A dragon passant and crown. — IX. A greyhound passant argent coloured and crown or. — X. Sun and crown. — XI. Unicorn passant, argent, armed ungled, and lined and crown or. — XII. Antelope argent, armed, ungled, and lined or gorged with a ducal crown and chain circumflexed or. — XIII. A stag, standing at gaze, and crown or. — XIV. A falcon rising argent within a fetterlock or, crowned or. — XV. Rose and crown, or, stalk and leaves vert. — XVI. A swan argent, membered and beak or, gorged with a collar and chain circumflexed or. — XVII. A falcon argent membered, beak't, bells, and jesses, and ground, holding in the the dexter foot a scepter all or, crown or. — XVIII. The stump of a tree eraced or, leaves vert, a crown or. — XIX. A sword and scepter insaltier or, the blade proper. — XX. The royal oak and crown or. — Each colours has a white field, the king's own excepted, with a red cross, with these badges in the center in the crosses.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Cole-Stream, al. Cauld-Stream Regiment of Foot-Guards, commanded by the Right Honourable William, Earl of Craven.

The earl of Craven, colonel.

Edward Sackville, lieutenant-colonel.

John Huitson, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company, } commanded by capt. lt. }	Henry Cope,	Enf. George Wyth,
The lieutenant-colonel's } company commanded by }	Lt. Edmond Steukley,	Enf. William Wakefield,
The major's company com- } manded by }	Lt. Henry Wharton,	Enf. John Drake,
John Miller, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Seymour,	Enf. Adrian Moor,
Anthony Markham, Capt.	Lt. Robert Wilkins,	Enf. Francis Marshal,
James Kendal, Capt.	Lt. William Gibbons,	Enf. William Mathews,
William Wakelin, Capt.	Lt. Edward Braddoc,	Enf. Gamal. Chitwynd,
William Cholmely, Capt.	Lt. John Clark,	Enf. James Wynd,
Charles Cotton, Capt.	Lt. William Hewyt,	Enf. Charles Wakelyn,
Richard Pope, Capt.	Lt. William Rigg,	Enf. Bozoon Symons,
Heneage Finch, Capt.	Lt. Edward Jones,	Enf. John Wyberd,
Dudly Rupert, Capt.	Lt. John Hope,	Enf. Allen Cotton,
James Bridgeman, Capt. }	Lt. Edward Skelton,	
of a company of granadiers }	Lt. James Ward,	

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Cole-stream Regiment, &c.

Robert Wilkins, adjutant, }	Dr. John Price, chaplain, }	John Brown, chir's mate, }
Math. Ingram, quar. mast. }	John Treutbeck, chirurg. }	Th. Goodman, drum-ma. }

THIS regiment of foot-guards established as the former, consisting of twelve companies, distinguished by red coats lined green, red stockings, and red breeches, and white sashes, fringed green, attended by a company of granadiers, as the duke of Grafton's; their caps lined green, with green tassels for their distinction; flies St. George's cross, bordered with white in a blew field.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Royal Regiment of Foot and Granadiers, commanded by the Right Honourable George, Earl of Dunbarton.

The earl of Dunbarton, colonel.

Sir James Hacket, lieutenant-colonel.

Archibald Douglas, major.

<i>Captains.</i>		<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company commanded by	Capt. Lt.	{ James Eastland, capt. lt.	Enf. Charles Arnott,
The lieutenant-colonel's commanded by		{ John Ackmooty, young. lt.	
The major's company commanded by		{ Robert Drury,	Enf. Alex. Gawn,
		{ Robert Hacket, young. lt.	
		{ Murdo Macenzie,	Enf. Tho. Davison,
		{ James Lawe, young. lt.	
Patrick Melvin,	Capt.	{ John Sterling,	Enf. Pet. Robinson,
		{ Henry Car, young. lt.	
Robert Douglas,	Capt.	{ David Clark,	Enf. Adam Bell,
		{ John Murray, young. lt.	
Andrew Monro,	Capt.	{ Robert Gordon,	Enf. Alex. Monro,
		{ An. Rutherford, young. lt.	
Robert Lawder,	Capt.	{ William Deans,	Enf. Roth. Makenzie,
		{ John Chittam, young. lt.	
Archibald Rollo,	Capt.	{ John Mouat,	Enf. Collen Camel,
		{ Tho. Ogleby, young. lt.	
Sir James Moray,	Capt.	{ Andrew Scot,	Enf. Cha. Moray,
		{ John Straghan, young. lt.	
Ld. G. Hamilton,	Capt.	{ Sir John Johnston, bar.	Enf. Jo. Alexander,
		{ Jo. Leeds, young. lt.	
James Moncrife,	Capt.	{ George Graham,	Enf. John Lundy,
		{ John Leviston, young. lt.	
Of granadiers, Robert Hodges	Capt.	{ James Stuart,	
		{ George Griffin, young. lt.	
Charles Barclay,	Capt.	{ George Stuart,	Enf. Wil. Robinson,
		{ And. Barclay, young. lt.	
Charles Murray,	Capt.	{ Walter Murray,	Enf. Tho. Bruce,
		{ Thomas Scot, young. lt.	
John Ruthen,	Capt.	{ Fred. Hamilton,	Enf. M. Mackentoch,
		{ David Garioch, young. lt.	
John Car,	Capt.	{ James Macrackin,	Enf. Wil. Magil,
		{ Ja. Moultray, young. lt.	
Thomas Forbes,	Capt.	{ Robert Leviston,	Enf. Jo. Bannerman,
		{ Mat. Smelt, young. lt.	
John White,	Capt.	{ Robert Car,	Enf. Ja. Poor,
		{ Wil. White, young. lt.	
George Murray,	Capt.	{ Adam Cunningham,	Enf. Jo. Mackultoch,
		{ Wil. Owen, young. lt.	
Ld. Geo. Murray,	Capt.	{ William Barclay,	Enf. Ja. Grant,
		{ Da. Mac Adam, young. lt.	
Alex. Cunningham,	Capt.	{ Alexander Person,	Enf. Geo. Hamilton.
		{ John Maxwell, young. lt.	

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of this Regiment of Foot.

Roth. Mackenzie, chaplain,	{	Franc. Beaulieu, chirurgion,	{	Char. Price, drum-major,
Murdo Mackenzie, adjut.	{	chir. mate,	{	One piper belonging to
J. Broomer, qu. ma. & mar.	{		{	the colonel's company.

THIS regiment of foot consists of 21 companies, has 2 lieutenants to each company, 3 serjeants, 3 corporals, and 2 drums establish't, distinguish't by red coats lined white, fasces white, with a white fringe, breeches and stocking light grey; granadiers. distinguish't by caps lined white, the lions face proper crown'd, flys St. Andrew's Cross, with thistle and crown, circumscribed in the centre, nemo me impune lacesset.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Queen's Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Honourable Piercy Kirk.

Piercy Kirk, colonel.

Marmaduke Bointon, lieutenant-colonel.

Sir James Lesley, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company, } commanded by Capt. Lt. }	William Berry, Capt. Lt.	Enf. Samuel Atkins,
The lieutenant-colonel's } company, commanded by }	Lt. George Westcomb,	Enf. Mountague,
The major's company, } commanded by }	Lt. Henry Withers,	Enf. John Fairborne,
John Giles, Capt.	Lt. Jenken Thomas,	Enf. Jo. Mortimore,
Thomas St. John, Capt.	Lt. William Webster,	Enf. Jo. Synhouse,
Brent. Ely, Capt.	Lt. John Wingfield,	Enf. David Roach,
Henry Rowe, Capt.	Lt. Charles Gerard,	En. Antho. La Pinitiere,
George Wingfield, Capt.	Lt. James Adams,	En. John Fitzgerald,
Thomas Barbour, Capt.	Lt. Richard Law,	En. Ewald Tussteen.
William Mathews, Capt. }	Lt. Richard Billin, } Lts. of	
commanding the Granad. }	Lt. George Kirk, } Granad.	

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Queen's Regiment.

William Staunton, adjutant,	} {	Edward Hughs, chaplain,
William Powny, quarter-master,		John Wyllye, chirurgion.

THE queen's regiment consists of ten companies exclusively, besides the granadiers; flies a red cross, bordered white, and rays as the admiral's, in a green field, with her majesty's royal cypher in the centre.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Lord High Admiral of England's, his Royal Highness the Duke of York and Albany's Maritime Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Honourable Sir Charles Littleton.

Sir Charles Littleton, colonel.

Oliver Niclas, lieutenant-colonel.

Richard Bagett, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company } commanded by Capt. Lt.	Robert Craford, Capt. Lt.	Enf. Philomon Powell,
The lieutenant-colonel's } company, commanded by	Lt. Edmond Yarbourn,	Enf. Anthony Townsend,
The major's company } commanded by	Lt. Theophil. Blechenden,	Enf. William Pearson,
George Littleton, Capt.	Lt. Edmond Wilton,	Enf. James Man,
Sir Thomas Cutler, Capt.	Lt. Robert Lloid,	Enf. John Hill,
Edward Nott, Capt.	Lt. Francis Hoblin,	Enf. Alexander Erwin,
Francis Ezord, Capt.	Lt. Francis Butler,	Enf. Thomas Man,
Edward Harris, Capt.	Lt. John Thorn,	Enf. William Somer,
Samuel Scudamore, Capt.	Lt. George Rook,	Enf. Gilbert Simons,
Chichester Wray, Capt.	Lt. Henry Hewys,	Enf. George Littleton,
Charles Herbert, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Whaly,	Enf. Francis Ezord,
Edmond Plowden, Capt.	Lt. William Oglethorpe,	Enf. Jo. Whaley.

State-Major, or the Staff-Officers of the Admiral-Regiment.

Richard Beauvoir, adjutant,	} }	Samuel Tatham, chirurg.
Tobias Legrose, quarter-master.		John Tatham, chirurgmate.

THE admiral's regiment consists of twelve companies, without granadiers, coated yellow, lined red, flies the red cross, with rays of the sun issuing from each angle of the cross or.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Holland Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Right Honourable John, Earl of Mulgrave, Knight of the most noble Order of the Garter.

John earl of Mulgrave, colonel.

Sir Thomas Ogle, lieutenant-colonel.

James Stirling, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company, } commanded by Capt. Lt.	John Bristow, Capt. Lt.	Enf. John King,
The Lt. col. company, } commanded by	Lt. Henry Holt,	Enf. Jo. Skrimpton,
The major's company, } commanded by	Lt. Francis Sterling,	Enf. Fra. Rogers,
Sir John Berry, Capt.	Lt. Francis Williamson,	Enf. Richard Moore,
Henry Boade, Capt.	Lt. Henry Bayton,	Enf. Jo. Menles,
Cha. Manwaring, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Sanders,	Enf. Ehud Boad,
Edw. Fitz Patrick, Capt.	Lt. Bernard Boutell,	Enf. Antho. Alix,
Fran. Collingwood, Capt.	Lt. Edward Fox,	Enf. Jo. Prideux,
Sir William Wheeler, Capt.	Lt. Henry Fielding,	Enf. Tho. Smith,
Herb. Throgmorton, Capt.	Lt. John Martin,	Enf. Mich. Richardson,
Andrew Birch, Capt.	Lt. Richard Boulton,	Enf. Fran. Foster,
Humphry Barington,	Lt. George Pilkinton,	Enf. Oliver Luke.

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Holland Regiment.

Jervas Rouse, adjutant.

John Wormal, quarter-master and marshal.

} James Peirce, chirurg.
chirurg. mate.

THE Holland regiment consists of twelve companies, without granadiers; coated red, lined with a flesh colour; flies the red cross, bordered white in a green field.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Lord High Admiral of England's, his Royal Highness the Duke of York and Albany's Maritime Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Honourable Sir Charles Littleton.

Sir Charles Littleton, colonel.

Oliver Niclas, lieutenant-colonel.

Richard Bagett, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company } commanded by Capt. Lt.	Robert Craford, Capt. Lt.	Enf. Philomon Powell,
The lieutenant-colonel's } company, commanded by	Lt. Edmond Yarbourn,	Enf. Anthony Townsend,
The major's company } commanded by	Lt. Theophil. Blechenden,	Enf. William Pearson,
George Littleton, Capt.	Lt. Edmond Wilson,	Enf. James Man,
Sir Thomas Cutler, Capt.	Lt. Robert Lloid,	Enf. John Hill,
Edward Nott, Capt.	Lt. Francis Hoblin,	Enf. Alexander Erwin,
Francis Ezord, Capt.	Lt. Francis Butler,	Enf. Thomas Man,
Edward Harris, Capt.	Lt. John Thorn,	Enf. William Somer,
Samuel Scudamore, Capt.	Lt. George Rook,	Enf. Gilbert Simons,
Chichester Wray, Capt.	Lt. Henry Hewys,	Enf. George Littleton,
Charles Herbert, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Whaly,	Enf. Francis Ezord,
Edmond Plowden, Capt.	Lt. William Oglethorpe,	Enf. Jo. Whaley.

State-Major, or the Staff-Officers of the Admiral-Regiment.

Richard Beauvoir, adjutant,	} }	Samuel Tatham, chirurg.
Tobias Legrose, quarter-master.		John Tatham, chirurgmate.

THE admiral's regiment consists of twelve companies, without granadiers, coated yellow, lined red, flies the red cross, with rays of the sun issuing from each angle of the cross or.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Holland Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Right Honourable John, Earl of Mulgrave, Knight of the most noble Order of the Garter.

John earl of Mulgrave, colonel.

Sir Thomas Ogle, lieutenant-colonel.

James Stirling, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company, } commanded by Capt. Lt. }	John Bristow, Capt. Lt.	Enf. John King,
The Lt. col. company, } commanded by }	Lt. Henry Holt,	Enf. Jo. Skrimpton,
The major's company, } commanded by }	Lt. Francis Sterling,	Enf. Fra. Rogers,
Sir John Berry, Capt.	Lt. Francis Williamfon,	Enf. Richard Moore,
Henry Boade, Capt.	Lt. Henry Bayton,	Enf. Jo. Menles,
Cha. Manwaring, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Sanders,	Enf. Ehad Boad,
Edw. Fitz Patrick, Capt.	Lt. Bernard Boutell,	Enf. Antho. Alix,
Fran. Collingwood, Capt.	Lt. Edward Fox,	Enf. Jo. Prideux,
Sir William Wheeler, Capt.	Lt. Henry Fielding,	Enf. Tho. Smith,
Herb. Throgmorton, Capt.	Lt. John Martin,	Enf. Mich. Richardson,
Andrew Birch, Capt.	Lt. Richard Boulton,	Enf. Fran. Foster,
Humphry Barington,	Lt. George Pilkinton,	Enf. Oliver Luke.

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Holland Regiment.

Jervas Rouse, adjutant.

John Wormal, quarter-master and marshal.

} James Peirce, chirurg.
chirurg. mate.

THE Holland regiment consists of twelve companies, without granadiers; coated red, lined with a flesh colour; flies the red cross, bordered white in a green field.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Lord High Admiral of England's, his Royal Highness the Duke of York and Albany's Maritime Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Honourable Sir Charles Littleton.

Sir Charles Littleton, colonel.

Oliver Niclas, lieutenant-colonel.

Richard Bagett, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company } commanded by Capt. Lt.	Robert Craford, Capt. Lt.	Enf. Philomon Powell,
The lieutenant-colonel's } company, commanded by	Lt. Edmond Yarbourg,	Enf. Anthony Townsend,
The major's company } commanded by	Lt. Theophil. Blechenden,	Enf. William Pearson,
George Littleton, Capt.	Lt. Edmond Wilson,	Enf. James Man,
Sir Thomas Cutler, Capt.	Lt. Robert Lloid,	Enf. John Hill,
Edward Nott, Capt.	Lt. Francis Hoblin,	Enf. Alexander Erwin,
Francis Ezord, Capt.	Lt. Francis Butler,	Enf. Thomas Man,
Edward Harris, Capt.	Lt. John Thorn,	Enf. William Somer,
Samuel Scudamore, Capt.	Lt. George Rook,	Enf. Gilbert Simons,
Chichester Wray, Capt.	Lt. Henry Hewys,	Enf. George Littleton,
Charles Herbert, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Whaly,	Enf. Francis Ezord,
Edmond Plowden, Capt.	Lt. William Oglethorpe,	Enf. Jo. Whaley.

State-Major, or the Staff-Officers of the Admiral-Regiment.

Richard Beauvoir, adjutant,	} {	Samuel Tatham, chirurg.
Tobias Legrose, quarter-master.		John Tatham, chirurgmate.

THE admiral's regiment consists of twelve companies, without granadiers, coated yellow, lined red, flies the red cross, with rays of the sun issuing from each angle of the cross or.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Holland Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Right Honourable John, Earl of Mulgrave, Knight of the most noble Order of the Garter.

John earl of Mulgrave, colonel.

Sir Thomas Ogle, lieutenant-colonel.

James Stirling, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company, } commanded by Capt. Lt.	John Bristow, Capt. Lt.	Enf. John King,
The Lt. col. company, } commanded by	Lt. Henry Holt,	Enf. Jo. Skrimpton,
The major's company, } commanded by	Lt. Francis Sterling,	Enf. Fra. Rogers,
Sir John Berry, Capt.	Lt. Francis Williamson,	Enf. Richard Moore,
Henry Boade, Capt.	Lt. Henry Bayton,	Enf. Jo. Menles,
Cha. Manwaring, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Sanders,	Enf. Ehad Boad,
Edw. Fitz Patrick, Capt.	Lt. Bernard Boutell,	Enf. Antho. Alix,
Fran. Collingwood, Capt.	Lt. Edward Fox,	Enf. Jo. Prideux,
Sir William Wheeler, Capt.	Lt. Henry Fielding,	Enf. Tho. Smith,
Herb. Throgmorton, Capt.	Lt. John Martin,	Enf. Mich. Richardson,
Andrew Birch, Capt.	Lt. Richard Boulton,	Enf. Fran. Foster,
Humphry Barington,	Lt. George Pilkinton,	Enf. Oliver Luke.

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Holland Regiment.

Jervas Rouse, adjutant.

John Wormal, quarter-master and marshal.

} James Peirce, chirurg.
chirurg. mate.

THE Holland regiment consists of twelve companies, without granadiers; coated red, lined with a flesh colour; flies the red cross, bordered white in a green field.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Royal Regiment of Foot and Granadiers, commanded by the Right Honourable George, Earl of Dunbarton.

The earl of Dunbarton, colonel.

Sir James Hacket, lieutenant-colonel.

Archibald Douglas, major.

<i>Captains.</i>		<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company com- manded by	Capt. Lt.	{ James Eastland, capt. lt.	Enf. Charles Arnott,
The lieutenant-colonel's commanded by		{ John Ackmooty, young. lt.	
The major's company com- manded by		{ Robert Drury,	Enf. Alex. Gawn,
		{ Robert Hacket, young. lt.	
		{ Murdo Macenzie,	Enf. Tho. Davison,
		{ James Lawe, young. lt.	
Patrick Melvin,	Capt.	{ John Sterling,	Enf. Pet. Robinson,
		{ Henry Car, young. lt.	
Robert Douglas,	Capt.	{ David Clark,	Enf. Adam Bell,
		{ John Murray, young. lt.	
Andrew Monro,	Capt.	{ Robert Gordon,	Enf. Alex. Monro,
		{ An. Rutherford, young. lt.	
Robert Lawder,	Capt.	{ William Deans,	Enf. Roth. Makenzie,
		{ John Chittam, young. lt.	
Archibald Rollo,	Capt.	{ John Mouat,	Enf. Collen Camel,
		{ Tho. Ogleby, young. lt.	
Sir James Moray,	Capt.	{ Andrew Scot,	Enf. Cha. Moray,
		{ John Straghan, young. lt.	
Ld. G. Hamilton,	Capt.	{ Sir John Johnston, bar.	Enf. Jo. Alexander,
		{ Jo. Leeds, young. lt.	
James Moncrife,	Capt.	{ George Graham,	Enf. John Lundy,
		{ John Leviston, young. lt.	
Of granadiers, Robert		{ James Stuart,	
Hodges	Capt.	{ George Griffin, young. lt.	
Charles Barclay,	Capt.	{ George Stuart,	Enf. Wil. Robinson,
		{ And. Barclay, young. lt.	
Charles Murray,	Capt.	{ Walter Murray,	Enf. Tho. Bruce,
		{ Thomas Scot, young. lt.	
John Ruthen,	Capt.	{ Fred. Hamilton,	Enf. M. Mackentoch,
		{ David Garioch, young. lt.	
John Car,	Capt.	{ James Macrackin,	Enf. Wil. Magil,
		{ Ja. Moultray, young. lt.	
Thomas Forbes,	Capt.	{ Robert Leviston,	Enf. Jo. Bannerman,
		{ Mat. Smelt, young. lt.	
John White,	Capt.	{ Robert Car,	Enf. Ja. Poor,
		{ Wil. White, young. lt.	
George Murray,	Capt.	{ Adam Cunningham,	Enf. Jo. Mackultoch,
		{ Wil. Owen, young. lt.	
Ld. Geo. Murray,	Capt.	{ William Barclay,	Enf. Ja. Grant,
		{ Da. Mac Adam, young. lt.	
Alex. Cunningham,	Capt.	{ Alexander Person,	Enf. Geo. Hamilton.
		{ John Maxwell, young. lt.	

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of this Regiment of Foot.

Roth. Mackenzie, chaplain,	{	Franc. Beaulieu, chirurgon,	{	Char. Price, drum-major,
Murdo Mackenzie, adjut.	{	chir. mate,	{	One piper belonging to
J. Broomer, qu. ma. & mar.	{		{	the colonel's company.

This regiment of foot consists of 21 companies, has 2 lieutenants to each company, 3 serjeants, 3 corporals, and 2 drums establish't, distinguish't by red coats lined white, fashes white, with a white fringe, breeches and stocking light grey; granadiers distinguish't by caps lined white, the lions face proper crown'd, flys St. Andrew's Cross, with thistle and crown, circumscribed in the centre, nemo me impune lacesset.

A List

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Queen's Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Honourable Piercy Kirk,

Piercy Kirk, colonel.

Marmaduke Bointon, lieutenant-colonel.

Sir James Lesley, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company, } commanded by Capt. Lt. }	William Berry, Capt. Lt.	Enf. Samuel Atkins,
The lieutenant-colonel's } company, commanded by }	Lt. George Westcomb,	Enf. Mountague,
The major's company, } commanded by }	Lt. Henry Withers,	Enf. John Fairborne,
John Giles, Capt.	Lt. Jenken Thomas,	Enf. Jo. Mortimore,
Thomas St. John, Capt.	Lt. William Webster,	Enf. Jo. Synhouse,
Brent. Ely, Capt.	Lt. John Wingfield,	Enf. David Roach,
Henry Rowe, Capt.	Lt. Charles Gerard,	En. Antho. La Pinitiere,
George Wingfield, Capt.	Lt. James Adams,	En. John Fitzgerald,
Thomas Barbour, Capt.	Lt. Richard Law,	En. Ewald Tussteen.
William Mathews, Capt. }	Lt. Richard Billin, } Lts. of	
commanding the Granad. }	Lt. George Kirk, } Granad.	

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Queen's Regiment.

William Staunton, adjutant,	} {	Edward Hughs, chaplain,
William Powny, quarter-master,		John Wylve, chirurgion.

THE queen's regiment consists of ten companies exclusively, besides the granadiers; flies a red cross, bordered white, and rays as the admiral's, in a green field, with her majestie's royal cypher in the centre.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Lord High Admiral of England's, his Royal Highness the Duke of York and Albany's Maritime Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Honourable Sir Charles Littleton.

Sir Charles Littleton, colonel.

Oliver Niclas, lieutenant-colonel.

Richard Bagett, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company } commanded by Capt. Lt.	Robert Craford, Capt. Lt.	Enf. Philomon Powell,
The lieutenant-colonel's } company, commanded by	Lt. Edmond Yarbourn,	Enf. Anthony Townsend,
The major's company } commanded by	Lt. Theophil. Blechenden,	Enf. William Pearson,
George Littleton, Capt.	Lt. Edmond Wilson,	Enf. James Man,
Sir Thomas Cutler, Capt.	Lt. Robert Lloid,	Enf. John Hill,
Edward Nott, Capt.	Lt. Francis Hoblin,	Enf. Alexander Erwin,
Francis Ezord, Capt.	Lt. Francis Butler,	Enf. Thomas Man,
Edward Harris, Capt.	Lt. John Thorn,	Enf. William Somer,
Samuel Scudamore, Capt.	Lt. George Rook,	Enf. Gilbert Simons,
Chichester Wray, Capt.	Lt. Henry Hewys,	Enf. George Littleton,
Charles Herbert, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Whaly,	Enf. Francis Ezord,
Edmond Plowden, Capt.	Lt. William Oglethorpe,	Enf. Jo. Whaley.

State-Major, or the Staff-Officers of the Admiral-Regiment.

Richard Beauvoir, adjutant,	} }	Samuel Tatham, chirurg.
Tobias Legrose, quarter-master.		John Tatham, chirurgmate.

THE admiral's regiment consists of twelve companies, without granadiers, coated yellow, lined red, flyes the red cross, with rays of the sun issuing from each angle of the cross or.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in the Holland Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Right Honourable John, Earl of Mulgrave, Knight of the most noble Order of the Garter.

John earl of Mulgrave, colonel.

Sir Thomas Ogle, lieutenant-colonel.

James Stirling, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company, } commanded by Capt. Lt.	John Bristow, Capt. Lt.	Enf. John King,
The Lt. col. company, } commanded by	Lt. Henry Holt,	Enf. Jo. Skrimpton,
The major's company, } commanded by	Lt. Francis Sterling,	Enf. Fra. Rogers,
Sir John Berry, Capt.	Lt. Francis Williamson,	Enf. Richard Moore,
Henry Boade, Capt.	Lt. Henry Bayton,	Enf. Jo. Menles,
Cha. Manwaring, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Sanders,	Enf. Ehud Boad,
Edw. Fitz Patrick, Capt.	Lt. Bernard Boutell,	Enf. Antho. Alix,
Fran. Collingwood, Capt.	Lt. Edward Fox,	Enf. Jo. Prideux,
Sir William Wheeler, Capt.	Lt. Henry Fielding,	Enf. Tho. Smith,
Herb. Throgmorton, Capt.	Lt. John Martin,	Enf. Mich. Richardson,
Andrew Birch, Capt.	Lt. Richard Boulton,	Enf. Fran. Foster,
Humphry Barington,	Lt. George Pilkinton,	Enf. Oliver Luke.

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Holland Regiment.

Jervas Rouse, adjutant.

John Wormal, quarter-master and marshal.

} James Peirce, chirurg.
chirurg. mate.

THE Holland regiment consists of twelve companies, without granadiers; coated red, lined with a flesh colour; flies the red cross, bordered white in a green field.

A List of all Commission and Staff-Officers in her Royal Highnesses, the Dutches of York and Albanys Regiment of Foot, commanded by the Honourable Charles Trelawny.

Charles Trelawny, colonel.

Charles Churchil, lieutenant-colonel.

Zachariah Tiffen, major.

<i>Captains.</i>	<i>Lieutenants.</i>	<i>Ensigns.</i>
The colonel's company, } commanded by Capt. Lt.	William Davis, capt. Lt.	Enf. John Bedford,
The lt. col's company, } commanded by	Lt. George Bynn,	Enf. Willliam Wharton,
The major's company, } commanded by	Lt. Henry Paget,	Enf. Henry Tiffen,
Henry Trelawny, Capt.	Lt. John Malham,	Enf. Wolforn Cornwall,
Charles Fox, Capt.	Lt. John Cole,	Enf. Peircy Kirke,
Edward Griffin, Capt.	Lt. Stephen Hobson,	Enf. Samuel Arnott,
Edward Hastings, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Atkinson,	Enf. La Bruce,
John Strode, Capt.	Lt. Fran. Nicolson,	Enf. John Avery,
Edward Saville, Capt.	Lt. Thomas Lucy,	Enf. Emmanuel Hobbs,
Hayman Rook, Capt.	Lt. John Hedger,	Enf. Fra. Wyvitt.
{ Charles Johnson, capt. of }	Lt. Henry Davis, }	
{ a company of granadiers. }	Lt. William Ghames. }	

The State-Major, or Staff-Officers of the Dutches Regiment.

Charles Carole, adjutant.
Samuel Rich, quarter-master.

} Henry Muslo, chirurg.
John Bynn, chirurg. mate.

CONSISTS of ten companies exclusively, besides the company of granadiers, which attends this regiment; it flies a red cross in a yellow field, bordered white, with rays, as that of the admiral's, with her Royal Highnesses cypher in the centre.

A List

A List of all Governours, Lieutenant-Governours, and Deputy-Governours, &c.

Governours.

Lt. Governours, & Deputy-Governours.

His grace, Henry, Duke of Newcastle, Governour of Berwick.	} The honourable Raph. Widdrington, deputy-governour of Berwick.
Sir John Fenwick, baronet, Governour of Holy Island.	}
The right honourable, Edward, Lord Morpeth, governour of Carlisle.	}
The right honourable Thomas, earl of Plimouth, governour of the block-houses, town and county of Hull.	} Captain Lionel Copley, lieutenant-governour of the block-houses and town of Hull.
Sir John Reresby, baronet, governour of York and Clifford's Tower.	}
Sir Thomas Slingsby, governour of Scarborough Castle.	}
Sir Edward Villars, senior, governour of Tinnmouth Castle.	} Captain Henry Miller, deputy-governor of Tinnmouth Castle.
His grace, the duke of Beaufort, governour of Chepstow.	}
Peter Shakerly, Esq; governour of Chester Castle.	}
The right honourable John, earl of Bath, governour of Plimouth, and St. Nicolas Island.	} Sir Hugh Piper, deputy-governour of Plymouth.
The right honourable Edward, earl of Gainfbourough, governor of Portsmouth.	} Major Henry Slingsby, deputy-governour of Portsmouth.
The right honourable Lord Cambden, governour of Gosper, near Portsmouth.	}

*Governours.**Lt. Governours & Deputy-Governours.*

The right honourable Richard, Lord Arundel of Trerise, governour of Pendennis Castle.	}	
Sir Robert Holmes, governour of the Isle of Wight, Cowes, Sandham-Fort, West-Yarmouth, and Carisbrook.	}	
Sir William Godolphin, governour of Scilly Island.	}	Captain Godolphin, deputy-governour of Scilly.
The right honourable Christopher, Lord Viscount Hatton, governour of the isle of Guernsey.	}	Captain George Littleton, deputy-governour of the isle of Guernsey.
The right honourable Thomas, Lord German, governour of Jersey Island.	}	Capt. Henry Boad, deputy-governour of Jersey Island.
Captain Henry Holmes, governour of Hurst Castle.	}	
Captain Freeman, governour of Sandown Castle.	}	
Colonel John Strode, governour of Dover and cinque-ports.	}	
Sir Thomas Daniel, governour of one of the forts under Dover Castle.	}	
Captain Richard Noadward, governour of another fort under Dover Castle.	}	
Sir Charles Littleton, governour of Sheerness.	}	Captain Robert Crawford, deputy-governour of Sheerness.
Sir Roger Manly, governour of Languard Fort.	}	
The honourable Sackville Tufton, governour of Tilbury and Gravesend.	}	Captain Robert St. Clair, lieutenant-governour of Tilbury and Gravesend.
Captain Robert Minors, governour of Upner Castle.	}	
Sir Edmund Seymour, baronet, governour of Dartmouth.	}	
The right honourable William, Lord Allington, constable of the Tower.	}	
Captain Thomas Check, lieutenant of the Tower.	}	
His grace, Henry, duke of Norfolk, governour and constable of his majesties castle of Windsor.	}	Captain Charles Potts, deputy-governour of his majesties castle of Windsor.

A P P E N D I X, No. XI.

The Copy of the Warrant for the Pay of five Men, a Troop and Company discontinued upon the Muster Rolls of the Forces, from the 25th August 1716 to the 24th June following, both inclusive.

GEORGE R.

WHEREAS our deereft son George, Prince of Wales, did, by our fecretary at warr, in purfuance of our direCTIONS in that behalf before given, fignify his pleaſure, the 11th day of Auguſt laſt, to our commiſſary-general of the muſters, that he ſhould give the neceſſary orders, that upon the muſter, commencing the 25th of the ſaid month of Auguſt, and in all ſucceeding muſters of our forces, there ſhould be paſſ'd and allow'd, thirty-five private men only in each troop of light horſe and dragoons, except the royal regiment of horſe guards, which were to conſiſt of thirty-seven private men in each troop; and ſixty-five private men only in each company of all the other regiments of foot in Great Britain; and that the ſtricteſt orders and direCTIONS ſhould be given to the deputy-commiſſarys, not to paſs, or allow any names upon the muſter-rolls, but ſuch as were effective men actually in the ſervice, declaring it to be our intentions that the five diſcontinued men upon the muſter-rolls of each troop or company ſhould be diſpoſed of in ſuch manner and proportions, as we ſhould afterwards direct, and we having thought fit to direct, that the pay of the five diſcontinued men, a troop and company ſhould be diſpoſed of in the following manner and proportion: viz.

THE full pay of one man a troop and company to the widows fund as uſual; the ſubſiſtence of one man a troop and company to the colonels of the reſpective regiments in lieu of all cuſtomary allowances and pretenſions. The ſubſiſtence of two men a troop and company to the reſpective captains, for the charges of recruiting and other regimental contingent expences and cuſtomary allowances. The ſubſiſtence of one man a troop and company to the agents of the reſpective regiments in lieu of the cuſtomary allowances.

AND

AND the remainder of the full pay of the four men last mentioned after the usual deductions made, to be issued as off-reckonings upon such assignment or assignments, as have been made or shall be made thereof by the respective colonels, towards enabling them to supply the loss of cloathing by desertion.

OUR will and pleasure therefore is, and we do hereby authorise and direct, that in the debentures to be made out by you for the pay of our forces in Great Britain, from the 25th day of August 1716 to the 24th of June last, both days inclusive, you do include the full pay of the five men a troop and company before-mentioned for each respective regiment of our said forces; but in case there shall appear upon the muster-rolls of our said forces any respitt or respitts upon any troop or company, you shall not only deduct the pay of such respitts as usual, but you shall also deduct from each captain who shall have any such respitts on his troop or company, the subsistence of two men for such time or times as any such respitt shall appear as beforementioned, it being our intentions that the benefit of the said allowance of subsistence money shall be only on condition and during the time that the respective troops and company shall be kept compleat, according to the numbers beforementioned, and not otherwise; and for so doing this shall be as well to you as all others whom it doth or may concern, a sufficient warrant and authority. Given at our court at St. James's, this 15th day of July, 1717, in the third year of our reign.

By his Majesty's Command

STANHOPE,

TORRINGTON,

THO. MICKLETHWAIT.

A true copy,

PEREG. FURY.

To our right trusty and right welbeloved Cousin
and Councillour Henry Earl of Lincoln,
paymaster-general of our guards, garrisons
and land forces in Great Britain and forces
abroad.

A P P E N D I X, No. XII.

*Orders for a Detachment of Guards to do Duty at the King's Theatre
in the Hay Market every Night a Ball is to be there.*

IT is his majesty's pleasure that when, and as often as you shall have due notice from John James Heidegger, Esq; of a ball to be held at the King's Theatre in the Haymarket, you cause a detachment of one hundred private men with non-commission officers proportionable, to be made from the three regiments of foot guards under your commands respectively, and march under the command of a lieutenant colonel, captain, and ensign, to the said theatre, in order to do duty there, during the continuance of the said ball, and be aiding and assisting to the civil magistrates in the preservation of the peace, and prevent as much as possible, all manner of rudeness, drunkenness or indecencies, as well in words as in actions, by obliging those that are guilty of such misbehaviour to quit the place; and not to permit any person whatsoever, to enter the said theatre inhabits that may draw reflections upon the Church of England, or ridicule upon the same; and for so doing, this shall be your warrant. Given at Whitehall, this 20th day of November 1719.

By his Majesty's Command

GEO. TREBY.

To the colonels of his majesty's three regiments
of foot guards, or to the officer in chief with
the said regiments and detachments re-
spectively. }

True copy,

L. FFOLLIOTT.

Tower, the 25th of June 1723.

APPENDIX, No. XIII.

THE underwritten master-surveyor of his majestie's ordnance in Great Britain, and Ireland, doth hereby certifie, that the standard in the Tower for making muskets or firelocks to arm his majestie's foot forces, is as follows :

THE barrell to be exactly three foot and ten inches long, and bor'd large enough to admit a leaden bullet of eleven to the pound avoirdupois; with which bullet of eleven to the pound, it must be loaded for proof, allowing powder equal to the weight of the ball : And further, that the ball or bullets for service, are always fourteen to the pound avoirdupois, and no more.

JOHN ARMSTRONG.

A true copy,

JOHN FFOLLIOTT.

Tower, the 25th of June, 1723.



APPEN-

APPENDIX, No. XIV.

GEORGE R.

WHEREAS our late royal father was graciously pleased, upon a report of the board of general officers of the army, to direct by a warrant, dated the 28th day of June, 1721, the following regulation of weekly pay, and stoppages to be made from the dragoons and foot, for answering the expences customarily borne by the regiments; viz.

DRAGOONS.

						Remains to be paid weekly.			
		s.	d.	s.	d.	s.	d.	s.	d.
In winter quarters, or in the house.	Serjeant, full pay per week,	-	-	-	-	15	9		
	Deductions.								
	{ To his landlord, { Diet,	-	-	3	6				
	{ for { Hay and straw,	-	-	3	6				
	{ For corn	-	-	-	-	7	0		
	{ To the farrier	-	-	-	-	1	5½		
						0	3½		
								8	9
	Corporal and drum, each	-	-	-	-			7	0
	Deductions, as above,	-	-	-	-	12	3		
At grafs.						8	9		
	Dragoon,	-	-	-	-			3	6
	Deductions, as above,	-	-	-	-	9	11		
						8	9		
								1	2
	Serjeant, full pay per week,	-	-	-	-	15	9		
	Deductions.								
	{ To his landlord, for diet,	-	-	-	-	3	6		
	{ For grafs,	-	-	-	-	2	4		
	{ To the farrier,	-	-	-	-	0	3½		
	{ To the riding-master,	-	-	-	-	0	7		
	{ Grafs-money, hereafter-mentioned,	-	-	-	-	1	10½		
								8	7
								7	2
	Corporal and drum, each	-	-	-	-	12	3		
	Deductions, as above,	-	-	-	-	8	7		
								3	8
	Dragoon, full pay per week,	-	-	-	-	9	11		
	Deductions.								
	{ To his landlord, for diet,	-	-	-	-	3	6		
	{ For grafs,	-	-	-	-	2	4		
	{ To the farrier,	-	-	-	-	0	3½		
	{ To the riding-master,	-	-	-	-	0	7		
								6	8½
								3	2½
	Of which said 3s. 2½d. there being paid to the dragoon, weekly,					1	4		
								There will remain, 1 10½	
								commonly	

commonly called grafs-money; of which, the ferjeant, corporal, drum, and dragoon, may be furnished with all fuch neceffaries as are not (by the regulation for cloathing) fupplied by the colonel, and pay 2s. a year to the furgeon for medicines; out of which alfo, fuch loffes may be made good, as may happen by exchange of money in the remittance of their pay: and, it is humbly offered, that the captains do find the dragoons with the afore-mentioned neceffaries, at the rates before fet down, both in the houfe, and at grafs, taking the fame at all hazards, equally in all regiments; and that they be required to account with them for the remainder, within fourteen days after the horfes are taken up from grafs.

F O O T.

		s. d.	Remainder of pay. s. d.
Serjeant, full pay per week,	- - - - -	7 0	
Paid weekly,	- - - - -	6 0	
			1 0
Corporal and drum, each	- - - - -	4 6	
Paid	- - - - -	4 0	
			0 6
Private foldier,	- - - - -	3 6	
Paid,	- - - - -	3 0	
			0 6

out of which remainders of pay, the captain may deduct for fhoes, ftockings, gaters, medicines, fhaving, mending of arms, and lofs by exchange in remittance of their pay; but nothing elfe; except fuch things as may be loft, or fpoiled, by the foldiers negligence; and the captain is to account with them for the refidue every two months.

AND we, having taken the faid regulation into our royal confideration, do hereby think fit to eftablifh and confirm the fame; directing further, that it fhall be obferved in North Britain and fuch other places, where the dragoons may not be billeted; with this difference only, that the money herein directed to be paid to the landlord for diet, may be paid to the foldier; and that the captain may receive the money, appointed for providing them with hay and ftraw, as it would be paid to the landlord, if our faid troops were in quarters; our will and pleafure therefore is, and we do hereby ftrictly require and command, that the aforefaid regulation of weekly pay, and ftoppages from the dragoons and foot, for answering the expences customarily borne by the regiments, do commence, and take place from the 25th day of December, 1731; and that, from thenceforth, it be punctually obferved, notwithstanding any former regulations or orders to the contrary; whereof our general officers, and commanders in chief of our forces, and all other our officers, whom it doth or may concern, are to take notice, and govern themfelves accordingly. Given at our Court at St. James's, this 29th day of April, 1732, in the fifth year of our reign.

By his Majefty's Command,

W. STRICKLAND.



APPEN-

APPENDIX, No. XV.

Regulation of the Pay of a Serjeant, Corporal, Drummer, and private Dragoon, now the Eight-pence Half-penny is taken off, &c. They are to pay but 6d. per Ration for their Forage.

	l. s. d.	l. s. d.
A serjeant, at 2s. 3d. per diem, for 30 days, -		3 7 6
To be paid 1s. 7½d. -	2 9 4½	
Stopped for forage, at 6d. per diem, -	0 15 0	
Farrier, - - - - -	0 1 6	
Paymaster, - - - - -	0 0 9	
Surgeon, - - - - -	0 0 5½	
Riding-master, - - - - -	0 0 5½	
		3 7 6
A serjeant's subsistence, at 1s. 7½d. for 30 days.		
Serjeant's subsistence for 30 days, as above, -		2 9 4½
Paid at 1s. per diem, - - - - -	1 10 0	
To be paid every 30 days, - - - - -	0 19 4½	
		2 9 4½
A corporal or drummer, at 1s. 9d. per diem for 30 days, -		2 12 6
To be paid to each, 1s. 1¼d. ten hundred parts of a penny, -	1 14 7½	
Stopped for forage, at 6d. per diem, - - - - -	0 15 0	
Paymaster, - - - - -	0 0 6	
Farrier, - - - - -	0 1 6	
Surgeon, - - - - -	0 0 5½	
Riding-master, - - - - -	0 0 5½	
		2 12 6
A corporal or drummer's subsistence, at 1s. 1¼d. ten hundred parts of a penny. }		
A corporal or drummer's subsistence, 30 days, as above, -		1 14 7½
Paid at 10d. per diem, - - - - -	1 5 0	
To be paid every 30 days, - - - - -	0 9 7½	
		1 14 7½
A private dragoon, at 1s. 5d. per diem, - - - - -		2 2 6
To be paid 9¼d. and 12 of 100 parts of a penny, -	1 4 8¼	
Stopped for forage, at 6d. per day - - - - -	0 15 0	
Farrier, - - - - -	0 1 6	
Paymaster, - - - - -	0 0 5½	
Surgeon, - - - - -	0 0 5½	
Riding-master, - - - - -	0 0 5½	
		2 2 6
A private dragoon's substance, at 9¼d. and 12 of 100 parts of a penny.		
A private dragoon's subsistence, 30 days as above, -		1 4 8¼
Paid, at 6½d. per day, - - - - -	0 16 3	
To be paid every 30 days, - - - - -	0 8 5½	
		1 4 8¼

APPENDIX, No. XVI.

Extract from a Manuscript, entitled, a Table of the several Books of Orders of the Coldstream Regiment, commencing March 10, 1720.

March 10th, 1720.

Colonel FOLLIOT, A. D. 1739, page 17.

Colonel MERRICKE.

ON the review-day, the officers to appear in their regimental cloat's, gaters, square-toed shoes, gorjets, fashies, buff-coloured gloves, regimental laced hatts, cockades, ye buttons worne on the left side, and twisted wiggs.

THE men to appear perfectly clean, and shaved, square-toed shoes, gaters, their hatts well cock't and worne, their hair well tuck't under and powdered, but none on their shoulders.

THE point of their hatts pointing a little to the left, with cockades fix't under the loop as usual, their arms perfectly clean; and in good order, well flint-ed and drawn, ye touch-holes well pick't, no oyl to be near it, or the hammer; the bayonets, fwords, and brasses of the accoutrements, to be as bright as silver; and likewise the buttons of their waistcoats; to have on their new accoutrements, which must be worn according to the last directions.

THE men are not to put on their gaters till ordered; nothing is to be in the men's pouches but their ammunition.

No serjeant, corporal, or private man, is to appear with a wigg on, except such as are bald, who must have one that cannot be distinguished from their own hair.

EACH man must have ten rounds of powder, which must be delivered to them in the field, and what is not made use of, to be taken from them directly with the cockades.

APPENDIX, No. XVII.

From the same.

General FOLLIOTT, 1742, page 221.

Field Officer, C. INGOLSBY.

IT is his grace's the duke of Marlborough's order, that ye 1st battalion intire, on Wednesday morning next, 6 o'clock, draw up, on the ground where the 1st battallion exercife, near the mount, by the garden-wall next Kensington; the men to appear as follows; viz. arms, cloaths, and accoutrements in perfect order, clean, white stockings, gaters, and every thing in complete order: the officers to appear in blew frocks, regimental hats, waistcoats, white stockings, fashes, half-pikes, twisted wiggs, buff-coloured gloves, and gaters, in order to be seen by his majestie.

His grace likewise orders, that if any man shall then be absent, he shall be whipt through the battalion, and the serjeants to take care that the mens hair be cutt according to order, and each man to have eight rounds of powder.



A P P E N D I X, No. XVIII.

Order for Embodying the Militia.

GEORGE R.

WE having (agreeably to the acts for the better ordering of the militia forces in that part of Great Britain, called England, communicated to parliament, our having received advice, that the warlike preparations in France, become every day more considerable; and that, in this critical conjuncture, we should not think we acted consistently with the care and concern we feel for our faithful people, if we omitted any means in our power that might contribute to their defence: our will and pleasure is, and we do hereby order you, with all convenient speed, to draw out and embody at such place as you shall judge most convenient, all the militia of the county of Surrey under your directions; and that you do cause the same to be held in every respect, ready to march, as occasion shall require, to such posts within this kingdom, as we shall judge proper to assign them; and to be put under the command of such general officer or officers as we shall be pleased to appoint over them; and to obey such further orders as shall be judged necessary for the safety and defence of this kingdom; and for so doing, this shall be your warrant. Given at our Court at St. James's, the 28th day of March, 1778, in the eighteenth year of our reign.

By his Majesty's Command,

WEYMOUTH.

To our right trusty and well-beloved counsellor, George, Lord Onslow, our lieutenant of our county of Surry, and in his absence, to the deputy-lieutenant of the said county.

My

War-Office, 31 MARCH, 1778.

MY LORD,

THE king having (agreeably to the acts for the better ordering of the militia forces, in that part of Great Britain, called England) communicated to parliament, that he had received advice, that the warlike preparations in France, became every day more considerable; and that in this critical conjuncture, his majesty should not think he acted consistently with the care and concern he feels for his faithful people, if his majesty omitted any means in his power, that might contribute to their defence; and his majesty having accordingly ordered the militia of the county of Surry to be drawn out, and embodied, with all convenient speed, and to be held in every respect ready to march, as occasion shall require, to such posts within this kingdom as his majesty shall judge proper to assign them, and to be put under the command of such general officer or officers, as his majesty shall be pleased to appoint over them; and to obey such further orders as shall be judged necessary for the safety and defence of this kingdom: I am to desire your Lordship will be pleased to give me the earliest intelligence of the place and day fixed for the assembling of the militia under your command, in order that no time may be lost in arranging their future quarters, and appointing the general officer under whom they are to serve.

I HAVE the honour to acquaint your Lordship, that from the date of the king's warrant for embodying the militia, the regiment under your command, both officers and men, will cease to receive militia pay, and will be entitled to the same pay as his majesty's other forces.

As it is necessary I should have a return of the militia under your Lordship's command, in order to my preparing an estimate of their pay; I must desire, you will cause as soon as possible, an exact return to be transmitted to me of the said militia, as divided into companies, with the numbers of commission-officers, non-commission-officers, and private men in each, who are to receive pay: when I receive this return, the proper estimate shall be immediately sent to the paymaster-general; and the pay of the said militia will be issued from time to time, to such person as shall be authorised to receive it: it will be therefore necessary, that the said colonel of the said militia should appoint immediately, an agent to receive the pay of the said militia, for whom fixpence per diem for every company will be allowed on the establishment.

THAT no inconvenience may arise from the want of money 'til a proper es-

E

timate

estimate can be formed, the paymaster general is directed to advance 1000*l.* upon account, to the agent of the said militia.

As his majesty is pleased to allow a quarter-master and surgeon to each battalion of militia, during the time of their being embodied; I desire your Lordship will be pleased to appoint proper persons to act in the above-mentioned capacities, and include them in your return: I must, however, acquaint you, that those persons will not be entitled to half pay.

His majesty having taken into consideration the deficiency of the cloathing provided for the militia by parliament, hath been graciously pleased to order, that such a sum of money should be given to the colonels of the said militia drawn out upon service, as in addition to the parliamentary allowance, will enable them to supply their men with the several articles of cloathing, which are usually furnished to his majesty's other regiments of foot.

THE sum necessary for this service is computed to be 2*l.* 4*s.* 7*d.* for each corporal, drummer, and private man, to furnish them with the following articles; viz. waistcoat, breeches, shirt and roller, pair of shoes and pair of stockings; I shall therefore procure his majesty's warrant for the amount of the additional allowance to your militia at the abovementioned rates, as soon as I can receive a return of the number of serjeants, corporals, drummers, and private men of which it consists.

It having been represented to the king in behalf of the captains of the several regiments of embodied militia, that they are subject to various contingent expences on account of their companies, which they have no fund to defray; and that it will be for the good of his majesty's service, and for the ease and convenience of the said captains, if they may be allowed to receive the pay of a certain number of non-effective men in each company, to defray the expence of the same, as is the practice in his majesty's other forces: his majesty, in consequence of the above representation, has been pleased to order, that the captains of the militia when embodied, shall not for the future be obliged to compleat their companies to the establishment; but that they shall be permitted to have one non-effective man out of every twenty-five rank and file of which their companies consist, whose pay shall be issued to the said captains for defraying the contingent expences of their respective companies according to the custom of the army.

THE contingent expences which are to be paid out of the fund, are in particular, the repair of arms and accoutrements, and hospital charges for house-rent, nurses, &c. besides other accidental losses which may fall on the captains by death, or the desertion of their men.

I AM

I AM also to signify to you it is his majesty's pleasure, that when any regiments, battalions, or detachments of his militia forces shall meet, they shall draw lots for taking post while they remain on duty together only, without prejudice to any of their pretensions whatsoever.

THIS order is not to interfere with the precedence which may have been established by agreement, or otherwise, between the several battalions of militia belonging to the same county.

WHEN the militia were first embodied for service during the late war, it was thought proper to send an intelligent officer from the marching regiments to each regiment of militia, for the purpose of giving them his advice and assistance in those things, which might, at first, from their novelty, produce difficulties; but, as the same reason does not now subsist, I do not propose to direct any officer from the marching regiments to attend the Surrey militia, unless your Lordship desires it.

I HOPE you will believe, that both from duty and inclination, I shall think myself happy in every opportunity of assisting the regiment under your command; and I beg your Lordship, or the commanding officer for the time being, will always apply to me whenever it is thought my assistance can be useful.

I have the Honour to be,

My Lord,

Your Lordship's most obedient,

and most humble Servant,

BARRINGTON.

It will be necessary that the surgeons and mates of all the militia corps should be examined at Surgeon's Hall, as are the surgeons and mates of all his majesty's other forces.

Right Honourable Lord Onslow, his Majesty's lieutenant of the county of Surrey.

APPENDIX, No. XIX.

Warrant for Dis-embodiment of the Militia.

GEORGE R.

WHEREAS by warrant under the sign-manual of our late royal grandfather, bearing date the 3d day of July, 1759, in the thirty-third year of his reign; our said royal grandfather did for the weighty and lawful causes therein recited, order you to draw out and embody all the militia of the county of Surrey, under your direction, and to hold the same in readiness to march to such parts within this kingdom as might be judged proper, under the command of such general officers as should be appointed, and to obey such further orders as might be deemed necessary for the safety and defence of this kingdom: And whereas, preliminary articles of peace have been signed, whereof the ratifications are exchanged; and in consequence of the said preliminary articles, a cessation of arms has been proclaimed; we being most desirous to take the first opportunity of relieving our faithful subjects from the heavy burdens and expences occasioned by the war; our will and pleasure therefore is, and we do hereby order you with all convenient speed, to cause the militia of our said county of Surrey to be dis-embodied, and to issue all the necessary and proper directions on your part, for returning the said militia, under the order of their commanding officers, to their respective parishes and places of abode, where they are to remain subject to the same orders and directions, as they were by law subject and liable to before they were drawn out and embodied as aforesaid, and for so doing, this shall be your warrant. Given at our Court at St. James's, the twenty-second day of December, 1762, in the third year of our reign.

To our right trusty and well-
beloved, Richard, Lord On-
slow, our lieutenant for and
in the county of Surrey.

By his Majesty's command,

EGREMONT.

A P P E N D I X, No. XX.

Copy of a Letter from Captain Phipps, Engineer, at Gibraltar, to Lieutenant Colonel Ramsay, of the 30th Regiment, dated May 17th, 1771.

DEAR SIR,

AGREEABLE to promise, I set down to write a few lines, relating to Healy's mortar; the 14th instant was at length fixed for trying that new invented pierrier; eight in the morning was the time ordered by the governor; South Port Gate was shut, and the three guards between that and the South Barracks retired out of harm's way; the general had referred the charge of the mortar, &c. to Colonel Philips; Healy stood out for 50 pounds of powder, but the Colonel insisted, that the first experiment should be with 27 pounds; proper paving stones were collected, and a detachment of artillery attended to assist in loading; after the powder was placed in the piece, a tompon, or bottom of wood was carefully put to cover the charge, a copper tube conveyed the quick-match from the tompon to the centre; the stones were carefully put into the mortar, 1470 in number; the least a pound weight, and few exceeded 1½lb. a hollow cane well directed, conveyed the quick-match thro' the stones to the copper tube, and upon the extremity was fastened a port fire, to burn five minutes before the fire should reach the quick-match, when the port-fire was first lighted, and every one retired to a great distance with various conjectures about the success of the machine; five minutes passed, ten minutes passed, no explosion! poor Healy, very impatient; at length, people approached nearer and nearer to inquire into the mortar's silence, when upon examination it was found that the portfire had but half burned; by some accident it was choaked in the making; another was immediately applied, which had the desired effect; great was the explosion, near a quarter part of the stones went into the sea, above 100 yards; to the right they extended as far as Ragged Staff, and to the left, as far as the Watering Pier, but no damage was done, the cavity of the piece was searched, but no fracture could be seen, and what was surprising, the rock above that appeared so bad did

did not give way ; it was fired a second time with the same charge, the success much the same as the first.

THE 3d time it was loaded with $13\frac{1}{2}$ lb. (viz. half the former charge) and 1220 stones, when I suppose about 200 passed over the line wall ; with these three discharges, the eight gun battery was covered over with stones ; she spit her venom most there ; after three experiments, Healy received the congratulations of Colonel Boyd and all the officers upon the road ; the general took his observation from the terras walk ; the mortar has not received the least damage ; its complexion is a little changed by the powder.

COLONEL BOYD who goes home in the Lizard, which sails the first Levantor, hopes to see you in London, to give you a particular account of the success of your friend Healy, who wished several times you were present, such a number of people assembled together, and gaping upon one spot, put me in mind of the mountain in labour : Dr. Monington was man-midwife, and many others had a finger in the pye ; the delivery was not a mouse, (according to the fable,) but 1500 paving stones, and by way of secundine, a large tompion, which made no small figure in the air. It may not be improper to remind you that the figure of the mortar is a parabolic conoid, length of the axis 4 feet, and the diameter of the bore at the muzzle 36 inches, and the solid content 14 cubical feet.

I am Sir, with great esteem,

Your most obedient,

and very humble servant,

J. PHIPPS.

As this letter is not perhaps explicit enough to gentlemen who have neither been at Gibraltar, nor have heard of the construction and utility of this mortar, I shall endeavour to explain it a little further.

THIS mortar is cut out of a rock, which Mr. Healy pitched upon, about 200 yards higher than the level of the sea, and 400 yards horizontal distance from the line wall.

HE began by forming a plain surface of 45 degrees elevation, then bored a center hole or axis, 4 feet deep, and perpendicular to the said surface, from that center described a circle three feet diameter ; the rock being so hard that he

he could not excavate it by chipping, was therefore obliged to bore holes all round the circle, each inclining to the centre, so that all those holes run into one another, and into the center hole near its bottom.

THEN cutting away the partitions betwixt the holes, a core of a conical figure become loose and was extracted, which core, Captain Benttinck brought home in the Centaur; Healy's next care was to chip off that conoid, so as to form it into a true parabola, and then to polish it.

As the nature of a parabola is such, that either light or sound sent from its focus proceeds in parallel lines; so he concluded, that the impetus given to any charge by the explosion of gunpowder, would be also parallel, doubtless it would be so, but as his mortar was loaded brimfull of stones, those which lay close to the tompon, being first impelled, must of course strike those before them variously, by which means, like billiard balls, the foremost must pursue the direction in which they were struck, whence their spreading to the right and left a good distance is obvious, and rather an advantage than otherwise, where a great body of men are supposed to be marching, or a great number of boats are attempting to land troops.

THIS mortar has no other chamber but the bottom of the parabola, nor touch-hole, but the hollow reed and copper tube which convey the fire from the muzzle to the focus, down through the very centre of the stones and tompon; by this contrivance the copper tube terminating in the focus and centre of the powder, the whole being instantly kindled, acts more forcibly than when lighted on one side, as in cannon, mortars, &c.

THE utility of this mortar in defence of any pass is very evident, especially where it may be formed on a high ground not easily comeatable by an enemy, and the weight that each stone will fall with, renders this a very terrible machine to invaders, and a very serviceable one to defenders; for by the same rule, that one of three feet diameter can throw about 1500 weight of stones, what would one of six feet diameter do, and be easier made than the former, because labourers could go into the inside to chip and polish it.

ONE objection to such is, that it cannot be turned or traversed as may be requisite; in answer thereto, it is only calculated for a pass, and if taken by an enemy cannot be turned against its friends, which is too often the case of mortars and cannon.

WHEN there are rocks of any kind at the entrance of harbours, &c. such a mortar might be constructed at a cheap rate for the defence of our ships, &c. and where there are no rocks, I have invented an artificial battery of such mortars, that

that with great safety to the defenders, and peril to the offenders, might be put in practice at every accessible place on our coast, and the mortars traversable as need required; but as we are at present more attentive to domestic than foreign enemies, this is not the season for guarding against the latter, therefore needless to propose it.

If the above description of Healy's mortar be not sufficient to convey an idea of it to those who are not acquainted with parabolic curves; the inside of a common wine glass is nearly the figure of it; 'tis likely the book you mention may have given Healy the hint of this, which you will allow is a great improvement; on the same principle he has invented mines, which with a tenth of the powder, will do ten times more damage by blowing tuns of stones and rubbish horizontally.

J. RAMSAY.

F I N I S.



A

DESCRIPTION of the PLATES
IN THE
SECOND VOLUME.

Military Rewards and Punishments.

OF this there are two plates. First, Chelsea College, as originally began by King James I. Second, entitled, Military Punishments. This plate shews the whirligig and wooden horse.

RESPECTING the subject of Castrametation, there are thirteen plates to be placed in the order here annexed; 1, 2, 3, 4, plates entitled Castrametation, engraved from the Harleian MS. No. 7364, and referred to in the letter press.

ROYAL TENTS, plates 1, 2, 3; these are engraved from Drawings in the Cotton Collection, marked Augustus II. No. 1 and 2, are supposed to represent some of the tents pitched for the meeting of King Henry VIII. with the King of France, near Ardres, in 1520. The third plate is by mistake, entitled, Ancient Tents and Huts, instead of a Royal Encampment, temp. Hen. VIII. It represents the royal quarters of the camp, and that of the market-place, with the huts of the shopkeepers, butchers, &c.

Modern Tents, Three Plates.

PLATE I. Fig. 1. The tent poles of a private tent. 2. A private tent. 3 and 4. Fly tents. 5. An officer's marquis. 6. One of a very modern construction, chiefly calculated for subalterns; the door by being placed in the centre of the side, leaves an area between the beds which are placed at each end. 7. A captain's tent or marquis with a chimney. 8. A captain's marquis shewn in a different

ferent point of view. 9. A field officer's marquis. 10. His servant's tent in the rear. 11. Tent or tents of a colonel of militia.

PLATE 2. Fig. 2. A horse for supporting the firelocks. 2. The manner in which the notches for receiving them are cut. 3. The side of one of the supporters. 4. Manner in which the arms are placed. 5. Laboratory tents belonging to the artillery. 6. A field-officer's tent or marquis. *Note*, the word marquis and tent are promiscuously used, though strictly speaking, they are different things; the internal part commonly made of ticking, the marquis; the external covering, canvas.

PLATE 3. Called bell tents, colour stand, and camp kitchen. Fig. 1. A bell tent viewed in the front. 2. The same seen in the rear. 3. The centre pole with the cross for supporting the arms. 4. The stand for the drums, colours, and officers espontons. 5. A camp kitchen with a woman cooking.

Three Plans of Encampments, in the Present Form.

PLATE 1. Plan of the encampment of a battalion of foot of nine companies, each consisting of seventy private men.

PLATE 2. Ditto of nine companies, of one hundred private men each.

PLATE 3. Plan of the encampment of a regiment of dragoons, consisting of six troops, forming three squadrons, with the light troop on the right.

N. B. The lodging of the ruyters, which belongs to this subject, being engraved on the same plate as the trebuchet, is placed among the ancient artillery.

The Instruments of Military Music

ARE comprised in one plate, containing, fig. 1. An ancient Danish trumpet, found in cleaning the bed of the river Witham, in Lincolnshire; it is now in the collection of Sir Joseph Banks, Bart. President of the Royal Society. 2. An ancient horn or trumpet in

in the collection of Mr. Rawle. 3. A common trumpet used in the cavalry. 4. An Asiatic kettle-drum, called, a Naccaire. 5. A common kettle-drum. 6. A fife. 7. A fide drum, such as is now used by the infantry. 8. An Asiatic drum.

The Military Exercise of Different Kinds occupied Twenty-three Plates.

THE EXERCISE OF THE PIKE, plates 1, 2, 3, 4.

DOUBLE ARMED MAN, or bow and pike, plate 1 and 2. *Note*, the two bottom figures in this plate are taken from Prince Maurice de Nassau's Exercise of the Target and Roundel, which he attempted to bring again into use.

MATCHLOCK, MUSKET, AND HALBERT EXERCISE, plates 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7, the first from Hexham, the latter from Hogarth, engraved for Mr. Blackwell's Account of the Artillery Company.

THE SALUTE, plates 1, 2, 3, marching and standing, by the same artist for the same work.

THE HORSE EXERCISE, in plates 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, from Capt. Cruso's Instructions for the Cavallerie.

The Machines for Projecting Stones and Darts, Eight Plates.

PLATE 1. The scorpion. 2. The catapulta. 3. The balista. 4. Machine and method for stringing the balista. All from Mr. Newton's Designs for Vitruvius. 5. The onager, constructed by Mr. Wenlow under the direction of Lieutenant General Melville. 6. Another view of the same. 7. An engraving of a trebuchet from an ancient carving in ivory.

PLATE 8. Machines for throwing darts and stones, from Lipsius and others, constructed on the principle of the counterpoise; one of them is double, as CC, by that fall it discharges a sling B, fixed near its point A.

THE machines impelled by human force, and those for covering the approaches of besiegers, are contained in the two following plates.

Battering Machines.

PLATE 1. In the uppermost part of the plate, there is a representation of the ram, and also of two different kinds of borers for piercing a wall.

At the bottom a kind of ram with a sharp point, supported by a triangle, and another on the shoulders of the men who work it: this plate was partly taken from Lidius.

Machines used in Ancient Sieges.

PLATE 2. The vinea and pluteus of the ancients, with the moveable tower; the different modes of defending the walls from the strokes of the ram.

Artillery used with Gunpowder, Nine Plates.

PLATE 1. Several ancient guns from Valturinus, Uffano and others. That marked 3, is called an elbow-piece, and probably existed only in imagination. Fig. 8. A bombard for throwing bombs. 10. Is a bomb on a larger scale to shew its construction. 11 and 12. A perrier and chamber.

PLATE 2. An ancient gun, the property of G. Weller Poley, Esq. of Boxted Hall, Suffolk. 2, 3, and 4. Pieces of ancient perriers kept in a cellar at Peele in the Isle of Man. 5. A Spanish gun supposed to have belonged to the Armada, it is made of copper, lead and iron. 6. A gun constructed with the same metals, it is with those shewn above, in the cellar at Peele.

PLATE 3. Entitled an ancient bombard or gun, called Mons Meg. Tradition says a woman was got with child in it.

PLATE 4. Entitled extraordinary pieces of artillery, contains the view and section of a triple cannon, a twin cannon, the famous culverin

A DESCRIPTION of the PLATES.

verin of Nancy, and an ancient screw-piece. 5. The petard, with its form and manner of applying it. 6. The perrier. 7. The partridges, a mortar that threw thirteen grenadoes and one bomb at the same time; the bomb representing the old hen, and the grenadoes the young partridges. 8. An ancient gun cart used at the siege of Bullogne, and represented in the Cowdry picture. 9. The infernal, with its section. Fig. 1. The following description answers to both figures. A. the delineation of the vessel; B. the hole filled with sand; C. the first deck filled with twenty thousand weight of powder, with a layer of masonry of a foot thick over it; D. second deck, furnished with 600 bombs and carcases filled with all kinds of military fireworks; E. the third deck, furnished with fifty iron hooped barrels filled with all sorts of fireworks; channal or tube conducting the fire to the powder and primings of the fireworks; G. instruments of iron to the number of fifty, filled with artificial fireworks for burning ships or houses; these falling on any wood by means of their points stuck fast on it: on the deck was stowed old guns and other heavy pieces of old iron.

Fortification contains Five Plates.

PLATE 1. Entitled Ancient Fortification, a castle with its different works.

PLATE 2. Fortification. The defects of ancient round and square towers, A. and Fig. 3; rectified in the bastion E. The plan, profile, and perspective views of a machicollation. Fig 2. The section of an ancient wall.

PLATE 3. The entrance of a street defended by a chain which was let into grooves in the posts, and contained in a trough at the bottom of the street. In the adjoining building was the windlass for drawing tort the chain. Fig. 4. An ancient machine for defending a pass against cavalry, somewhat similar to a cheval de frise.

PLATE 5. Carts of war, covered over, pierced with loop holes, and filled with musketteers, forming a kind of small moveable redoubt, the horses for drawing it being placed in safety under it. In the bot-
tom

tom figure the covering is taken off to shew the construction. These carts were placed in the center of square battalions of pikes and halberts, as appears in an ancient drawing in the book before quoted. Augustus II. An ancient mantlet, taken also from the same book, is shewn in the middle figure.

The ancient Attack and Defence of Fortified Places, Four Plates.

PLATE 1. Front of a fortified place attacked according to the ancient manner.

PLATE 2. Ancient manner of besieging towns, both from Mons. Joly de Maizeroy. These plates want no explanation.

PLATE 3. Pavifours and moveable tower. This plate shews the storming of the parapet, by means of a bridge let down from one of the upper stories of the belfrey or moveable tower. In the ditch are a number of archers attempting to drive the garrison from the defences, they are covered by large shields called pavoises, each born by a young man called a pavifour.

PLATE 4. The lyonoise, a machine proposed for defending a breach, drawn from one at Chatham Lines made by order of Colonel Debbeige.



I N D E X

TO THE S E C O N D V O L U M E.

A

ACT for punishing mutiny and desertion, the first that passed, 157
 Adair, William, his account of the clothing of several regiments of horse and foot, 32
 Administration of justice, 52
 Amendments proposed in the mutiny act, 159
 Ancient siege, account of, in an old metrical French poem, Appendix, No. I.
 Appaticisements, what, 82. *n.* (c)
 Army, list of, A. D. 1684, Appendix, No. X.

C

BACON, Frier, his account of gunpowder from Marcus Græcus, 315
 Badges frequently worn by soldiers as a distinction, 3—Mistake occasioned by them at the battle of St. Alban's, *ibid.*—Forbidden, 4—Worn by the drummers of Lord Castleton's regiment, 10—Badges

and devices of the royal regiments and the six old corps, 263
 Baggage of the army anciently carried by carts and horses, found by the religious houses, 167—Returns of different houses on that subject, Appendix, No. IV.
 Balista, construction of, 293
 Ballium, outer, 336—Inner, *ibid.*
 Barbican, an advanced work, 335
 Battalion, particulars of encamping one, 234
 Beugles or bibles, projectile machines, 303
 Bawd, (Peter) a gun founder, employed by Henry VIII. 325
 Billeting, letters to the lords of the council respecting it, Appendix, No. VIII.
 Boar, a military machine used by the parliamentarians, temp. Charles I. 308
 Bombards, cannon anciently so called, and why, 322
 Bombs, when first used, 325
 Bourgeoises, ancient guns so called, and why, 322, *n.* (h.)
 Boy or youth making a disturbance in his quarters, to have his left ear cut off, 75
 Bricolle, a military machine, *ibid.*

Bruce,

I N D E X.

Bruce, (Robert) his wife confined by order of King Edward I. 351, and Appendix, No. V. his sister confined in a cage, *ibid.*

Buchan, (Countess of) confined in a cage by order of King Edward I. 348, and Appendix, No. V.

Burt, (Edmond,) his account respecting clothing, 38

C

CABBINS, soldiers lodged in, 214

Cage, Countess of Buchan, and the sister of Robert Bruce confined therein, 348 Appendix, No. V.

Camp of K. Henry VIII. 211

Cannon, when first used, 321—Etymology of, *ibid.*—First cast in England, 325

Carts of war, 330

Casheering, what, 202

Castleton, Lord, his account with Mr. Molineux for clothing his regiment, 9

Castrametation, 204

Cattus, cat-house, gattus, or cat, an ancient machine, 308—Castellated cat, *ibid.*

Catapulta, construction of, 289

Champions hired to fight legal duels, their hair close shorn, 59, *n.* (x)

Charter of K. Richard I. for the army going into the Holy Land, 59

Chelsea college originally intended for divines, 187—The first provost and fellows, *ibid.*—Appointed for the reception of superannuated and maimed soldiers, 184

Clothing, history of, 1—Captains authorised to stop part of a soldier's pay for clothing, temp. Hen. VI. 2.—Duke of Norfolk, his order respecting it, 36 Hen. VIII. 3.—Lord Wharton's Letter to the E. of Shrewsbury concerning it, 5—

Clothing in the reign of Queen Eliz. 6.

Sir John Harrington's Account of the clothing of the army in Ireland, anno 1599, with the prices and stoppages for the same, 7, 8—Clothing account of Lord Castleton's regiment, anno 1693, 9—Clothing, price of, 30 Charles II. *ibid.*—Regulations for clothing, in 1729, 11—State in which the clothing used to be delivered to the different regiments, 47

Coat and conduct-money, 169—Appendix, No. VIII.

Collen, Peter Van, a gunfounder, employed by King Henry VIII. 325

Comparison between the effect of a battering ram, and that of a thirty-six pounder, 305. *n.* (i)

Constitutions, military, of K. John, 58

Cooper, John, his examination respecting clothing, 47

Courts for trial of military delinquents, composed of both civil and military members, 55

Courts martial, according to their present form, when first instituted, 56

Crakys of war, cannon so called, 321

Craven, Launcelot, his examination and answers respecting clothing, 47

Cries of war used by different nations, 342

Crom-aboe, the war cry of the Earl of Kildare, 343

Culverines, 322. *n.* (h)—Small or hand guns so called, 324

D

DEAD angles in ancient fortifications, 335

Decimation, how performed, 196

Degradation of an officer, form of, 203

Dice cast to determine the prisoners who were to suffer, 197

Double armed men, a treatise so called, 732
Dragoon

I N D E X.

Dragoon, clothing of, by the regulation A. D. 1729, p. 11, 15—Regulation respecting the sum to be stopped from his pay for different articles, Appendix, No. XIV. and XV.

Drum, kettle, 246—Of Asiatic origin, *ibid.*

Drum, side, 247—Different beats, 253

Dungeon or keep of a castle, 136

E

EQUITATIONS, general regulations respecting them, 73

Encamping, ancient mode of, 204

Engine, a verge, 304

Essex, Henry de, his punishment for cowardice, 53, *n.* (n)

Essex, deputy-lieutenants of the county of, their letter to the lords of the privy council respecting billeting soldiers, Appendix, No. VIII.

Essex, earl of, his speech, 271

Estimate of the clothing of a regiment of foot of ten companies, &c. 27, &c.

Espringal, a military machine, 303

Expences of a prosecution demanded of an officer acquitted by a court-martial, 166

Exercise of our ancient armies uncertain, 267—Changed towards the latter end of the reign of Q. Eliz. 268—Exercise that succeeded, *ibid.*—In use, A. D. 1686—

National exercise changed three times within 40 years, 282—Of the ancient cavalry in France, A. D. 1473, p. 283—

Of the horse and dragoons, 285

F

FIFE, of Swiss origin, 247—Used temp. Eliz. 248—Laid aside, and again introduced by Wm. Duke of Cumberland, *ibid.*

Fisher, Thomas, agent to Lord Harry
VOL. II.

Beauclerk, his information respecting the clothing of his Lordship's regiment, 34

Fisher, John, clothier, his account of clothing General Fuller's regiment, 42

Foot soldier, clothing of, by the regulations of 1729, p. 12

Fortresses, ancient, their defects, 334—
Their different parts described, 335

Fusileers, Welch, particular custom observed in that regiment, 265. *n.* (r)

G

GANTELOPE, running the, form of, 201

George, St. the English war cry, 342—
Cries of different nations, *ibid.*

Going in or out of the army or camp by any but the ordinary way, punished with death, 115

Gomez, John de, his trial, Appendix, No. II.

Greek fire, an account of, 309—Joinville's description of it, 310—Vinesauf's, *ibid.*—
The art of making it discovered here and abroad, but suppressed by both governments, 311, and note (q)

Grenades, when first introduced, 330

Grenadiers march, K. Charles I. his order respecting it, 250

Grey coats, the uniform of Lord Castleton's regiment, 9

Guards, foot, an order to the colonels of them to prevent indecencies and affronts to religion at the Opera House, Appendix, No. XII.

Guerin Maynard, his account of the off-reckoning and clothing of the Duke of Montague's regiment, 16

Gun carts, used by the Scots, 330

Gunpowder, the invention attributed to Bertholdus Swartz, 313—Mentioned by

Friar

I N D E X.

Friar Bacon, 315—Probably known to the ancients, 314, *n.* (u)—Different proportions of the ingredients for making it, 318, 319—Unsuccessfully applied to a mine, 148, 339, *n.* (2)—Succeeds in 1503, *ibid.*

H

H A L E S and tents, the king's dimensions of, 206

Half pay, 187—When first instituted, A. D. 1697, 188—Half pay officers tried by a court-martial, and shot at Preston, *ibid.* *n.* (p)—Regulation of half pay to English and Irish establishment, Appendix, No. IX.

Hankins, John, his examination respecting clothing, 446

Harrington, Sir John, his account of the clothing of Q. Elizabeth's army in Ireland, 7, 8

Havock, penalty of beginning that cry, 62, 72, 96

Hautbois and fide drum used by the dragoons, 249—Exchanged for the trumpet, *ibid.*—Anecdote of General Churchill respecting them, *ibid.* *n.* (e)

Healy's mortar at Gibraltar, Appendix, No. XX.—Similar mortars used by the Poles, 329—At Malta, 330—Mentioned by an English writer, *ibid.*

Henry V. his ordonances of war, 65—Orders to the captain of Rouen, 79

Henry VII. his orders to the English army, A. D. 1486, p. 83

Henry VIII. his ordonances of war, 85

Herbergers, their names to be given in to the constable and marshal, 65

Herbergage, 86

Horse, the lodging of a company of, 216
— exercise of

Hospital, Coningsby's, at Hereford, 192

Houses of office in camp, where placed, 245

Huts used instead of tents, 231

I

I N F E R N A L S an account of, 333

Instructions to be observed in the payment of the royal bounty to the widows of officers, &c. 189

K

K E T T L E - D R U M . See drum

Kitchens, how made in camp, 240

L

L E S L I E, Alex. his information respecting clothing, 38

Levett, Capt. Tho. his account of the clothing of the royal regiment of horse-guards, and several regiments of foot, 34

Lionois, a machine invented at Lyons for defending a breach. See plate of one

List military of the army ordnance, garri- sons, &c. A. D. 1684, Appendix, No. X.

Lloyd, Mr. Edward, his account respecting clothing, 34

Loudon, earl of, his memorial to the secretary of war respecting the clothing and appointments of a highland regiment, 48

M

M A C H I C O L A T I O N S, what, 336

Machines projectile, 285

Magistrates not to presume to imprison soldiers without a licence, unless for capital offences, 125

Mangona and mangonel, ancient machines or engines, 303

Man, Galfridus, his account of clothing, 38

Manœuvres, ridiculous ones formerly practised in France, 270, *n.* (t)

March, the grenadiers, K. Charles I. his order respecting it, 249

Marlborough,

I N D E X.

Marlborough, Duke of, his orders respecting the dress of the guards for a review, Appendix, No. XVIII.

Martial law, Charles I. his commission for using thereof, 56

Matafunda, an ancient machine for throwing stones, 304

Mat-griffon, an ancient machine, 303

Militia, the warrant for embodying, Appendix, No. XVIII. and disembodiment, No. XIX.

Mines, ancient ones, 338—Of two sorts, *ibid.*—Their galleries larger than those of modern ones, 339, *n.* (d)—Gunpowder first applied to mines, *ibid.*

Minting, return of the prior of, specifying his inability to provide horses or carriages for the army, Appendix, No. IV.

Monasteries obliged to find carts and horses for carrying the baggage of the army, 167, Appendix, No. IV.

Mons Meg, 322

Mortar, cut out of the rock of Gibraltar, Appendix, No. XX. at Malta, 330

Moveable towers, 306—One used by the Royalists, 308, *n.* (k)

Mountee, penalty of beginning that clamour, 62, 72

Mounts, in ancient fortification—Their use Melville, Lt. Gen. his onager, 302

Music military, 245

N

NACCAIRE, a kind of kettle-drum, 246

Navarre, Peter de, first successfully applied powder to mines, A.D. 1503, p. 339, *n.* (d)

Nead, his treatise called the Double Armed Man, obtains a patent of K. Charles I. for teaching the use of the bow and pike,

273, *n.* (x)—That exercise explained, 273, &c.

Norfolk, D. of, his orders respecting clothing, 36th Hen. VIII. 3

Norwich, Bishop of, his trial for military offences, 53, *n.* (n) and Appendix, No. III.

O

OATH taken by soldiers, 126

Off-reckonings, what, 17

Onager, 301 & 302

Orders of King Hen. V. to the captain of Rouen, 79

Orders respecting the appearance of the Coldstream regiment of guards for a review. Appendix, No. XVI. and XVII.

Ordonance made by the parliament for relief of maimed soldiers, A.D. 1643, p. 179

Owen, John, the first English founder who cast brass guns, 325

P

PATERSON, Thomas, his account respecting clothing, 35

Pearse, Nicholas, his examination respecting clothing, 46

Petard, its construction, 332

Perrier, a cannon for throwing stones, 325

Petrary, an ancient machine for the same use, 303

Picketing, a military punishment, method of inflicting it, 200

Pike and bow, attempt to unite them, 273, Appendix, No. VII.

Phipps, Capt. his letter to Lieut. Col. Ramsey, describing the mortar cut in the Rock at Gibraltar, Appendix No. XX.

Pioneers, made so as a punishment, 119

Pitch

I N D E X.

Pitch mixed with glue, used in ancient sieges, 341
 Prices of the different articles of soldiers clothing, 38
 Profit to a colonel by clothing a regiment of foot, 33, 39
 President of the high court of war, 55
 Prisoners of war, regulations respecting the taking of them, 62, 63, 64, 75, 77, 99, 100, 102, 111, 119—Their ransom, 344
 Proclamation for the use of the bowe and pike, Appendix, No. VII.
 Proportions for encamping a regiment of dragoons, 236—For a battalion of foot, 234, 242
 Prostitutes, punishment of, by the ordinances of war, 79, 95
 Punishments military, 195, &c.
 Purple coats and badges worn by the drummers of Lord Castleton's regiment, 10

Q

QUARTERING, the ancient mode of, 166—Troops quartered by William the conqueror on religious houses, 167
 Regulations respecting quartering and quarters in the different ordinances of war, 61, 65, 74, 84, 86, 117
 Remarkable clause in the statute of the 12th of Anne, respecting quarters, 171
 The present method of quartering, 172
 Queens or second regiment of foot, an anecdote respecting it, 264

R

RAM, a machine used for battering walls, 305—Its effect compared with a 36 pounder, *ibid.* *n.* (i)
 Ransom of prisoners of war, the usual price, 344

Reason for a soldier's coat being red, 6, *n.* (h)
 Recruiting greatly injured by an injudicious call of the out-pensioners, 186, *n.* (o)
 Regiment of foot, review exercise of in 1686, p. 277—Evolutions and manœuvres and firings, 279
 Reprimand, usual form of, 204
 Returns of divers religious houses to the demand of horses and carriages for the army, Appendix, No. IV.
 Rewards military, 175
 Ribaudequin, an ancient warlike machine, 304
 Richard I. king, his charter for the government of the army on their voyage to the holy land, 59
 Richardson, John, his account of the clothing of the first troop of horse guards, 37
 Riding the wooden horse, 199
 Roberts, John, clothier, his account respecting clothing the army, 44
 Robinet, an ancient military machine, 303
 Round towers, their defect, 335
 Rush, William, taylor, his account of the prices of making soldiers clothes, 41

S

SAWYER, Major George, his information respecting clothing, 37
 Scorpion, a military machine, its construction explained, 286
 Scotch brigade in the Dutch service, account of, Appendix, No. VI.
 Scutage, what, 351
 Sempringham, the prior of, his return to the demand of horses and carriages for the army, Appendix, No. IV.
 Side drum, the different beats on it, 253
 Siege,

I N D E X.

Siege, detail of an ancient one, from a MS in the library of the king of France, 340—The original in French verse, Appendix, No. I.

Soldier keeping a concubine, imprisoned for a month, to lose his wages for that time, and to give security for his future good behaviour, 81, 95

Sow, a military machine, its construction and use, 308—Machine called a sow, used temp. Charles I. 307, 308

Spalding, the prior of, his return respecting horses and carriages demanded for the army, Appendix, No. IV.

Spingards, a species of small chambered guns, carried on chariots, 331

Squadron, the particulars of encamping one, 235

Standards and colours, &c. 256, 257, 258, 259, &c.—Devices and badges of the Royal Regiment and six old corps, 263—Story respecting the third colour of the second regiment of foot, 262, *n.* (p)

Statutes and ordonances of war of King Richard II. p. 60.—Of King Henry V. made at Mans, p. 65—Of King Henry VII. p. 83—Of the 38th Henry VIII. p. 85—Of the earl of Northumberland, 107—Of the earl of Essex, 107, *n.*—Of the Scots army in 1643, p. 127—Of King James II. 138—Of King William III.

Stoppages to be made from the dragoons and foot, Appendix, No. XIV. and XV.

Surry, deputy lieutenants of, their letter to the privy council, respecting the billeting of soldiers, Appendix, No. VIII.

Subsistence advanced by the inhabitants of towns, where troops were quartered, 170

Sword money given to reduced regiments, 189

Swords, when left off by the infantry, 189

T

TARRING and feathering a military punishment for theft, 59

Taylor, Mr. Henry, his account respecting the clothing of Lord John Ligonier's regiment, an. 1744, p. 19

Third regiment of foot, a particular privilege claimed by it, 263, *n.* (q)

Third part of the ransom of a prisoner of war due to the commanding officer of the corps in which the captor served, 344—One third of that third due to the king, *ibid.*

Thorn, town of, besieged by the Poles, who threw monstrous stones into it, with gunpowder, but without guns or mortars, *how*, 329

Trebuchet, a military machine, 303

Trooper, clothing of by the regulations of 1729, p. 11, 14.

Trumpet, an ancient instrument chiefly appropriated to the horse, 249—Dragoons change the hautbois and side drum for the trumpet, *ibid.*—Trumpet banners, regulations respecting them and the kettle drums, 252—Different sounds of the trumpet, 255

V

VENETIANS, a kind of long breeches, worn by Queen Elizabeth's soldiers in Ireland, 9

Vireton, darts so called, 303

Vere, Sir Horace, his commission, anno 1622, p. 53, *n.* (o)

Vere, Sir Francis, his description of the duty of colonels respecting the administration of justice, 55, *n.* (p)

Volley, difference between it and a general discharge, 280, *n.* (z)

W A R.

I N D E X.

W

WAR-CART, for carrying musket-
teers, 308, *n.* (1)—For carrying small
perriers, or cannon called springards, 331

War, crakys of, cannon so called, 321

Warrant for the fictitious men, Appendix,
No. XI.

Warwolf, a military machine, 304, *n.* (h)

Weston, William de, his trial, Appendix,
No. II.

Wharton, Thomas Lord, his letter to the
Earl of Shrewsbury respecting clothing

Whirligig, a military punishment for fol-
lowers of the army, 304

Widows of officers, the king's regulations
respecting them, 189

Wilkinson, Captain William, his informa-
tion respecting clothing, 36

Wilson, Captain Alexander, his account
of the clothing of the horse grenadier
guards, 21. — Of General Hawley's,
Lord Mark Kerr's, Major General Ha-
milton's, Major General St. George's,
and diverse other regiments of dragoons,
23, 24

Willson, Thomas, his account respecting
clothing, 37

Wilson, William, clothier, his account re-
specting ditto, 40

Winter, John, his account respecting ditto,
34

Whores, to be turned out of the army,
their money taken from them, and their
left arms to be broken, 79—To be
burned on the right cheek, 95

Wooden horse, a military punishment, 195

ERRATA, VOL. I.

P. 38, *note* (f), l. 4, for 4s. read 3s. 8d.

P. 52, *note* (h), l. 6, for shall read should.—L. 5, from the bottom, for officers read
officer.

P. 112, *note* (r), l. 10, for 19th November, 1683, read 25th November, 1681.

P. 204, l. 11, for 100l. read 1000l.

VOL. II.

P. 163, l. 2. for troop read troops.

P. 185, l. 6, after the word structure, insert the word amounted.

P. 186, *note* (n), l. 5, for valet de chambres read valets de chambre.

P. 262, *note* (p), l. 6, for Foroke read Fowke.

P. 263, l. 4, for badge read badges, and for sixth read fix.

P. 285, l. 6, for Cruse read Cruso; and in the last line but one, dele the Comma be-
tween Ammianus and Marcellinus.

First on the List of Masters of the Ordnance, place Nicholas Merbury, 2d Henry V.
A. D. 1414: see Rymer, and page 324, *n.* (1)

D I R E C T I O N S

For PLACING the CUTS to Vol. II.

	Page		Page
CHELSEA College	181	Machines for throwing darts and stones	303
Military punishments	199	Battering machines, (the ram)	305
Ancient tents and huts	206	Machines used in ancient sieges	306
Royal tents, pl. 1 & 2	211	Carts of war	309
Castrametation, pl. 1	214	Artillery, pl. 1 & 2	322
————— pl. 2	220	Extraordinary pieces of artillery to	
————— pl. 3	219	follow ditto	322
————— pl. 4	221	Ancient gun, called mons meg ditto	322
Plan of encampments, pl. 1 & 2	242	Perriers, vulgarly called pattereros	325
————— pl. 3	236	The partridges	330
Instruments of military music	246	An ancient gun-cart, viewed from	
Double armed men, pl. 1 & 2	273	the rear	330
Exercise of the pike, pl. 1, 2, 3, 4,	270	The pitard	332
of the musketeers, pl. 1, 2, }	274	The infernal, used by the English at	
3, 4, 5, to follow the pike		St. Maloes	334
of the halberts, pl. 6 & 7	282	Entrance of a street defended by a chain	337
Standing salute to follow the halbert	282	N. B. Put as a frontispiece to this vo-	
Standing and marching salutes to fol-		lume.	
low the halbert	282	Ancient fortification, pl. 1	337
Exercise of the horse, pl. 1, 2, 3, 4, }	285	Fortification	337
5, 6		An ancient machine for defending a	
Ancient artillery, pl. 1, (the scorpion)	285	pass, ditto	337
————— pl. 2, (the catapulta)	289	The lyonors, a machine for defending	
————— pl. 3, (the capitule)	293	a breach, ditto	
————— pl. 4, (the entom-		Ancient manner of besieging a town ..	341
iums)	298	Front of a fortified place attacked	
Onager, pl. 1 & 2*	302	according to the ancient manner }	341
Trebuchet, with the ruyters manner		Pavifors and a moveable tower	341
of lodging	303		

* Plate 4, mentioned in page 302, is a mistake.

The

The following Works by FRA. GROSE, Esq. F. A. S.

Printed for S. HOOPER, (No. 212,) *High-bolborn*.

(Under the Inspection of the Author), elegantly printed on a fine Imperial Paper, in 8 large Volumes, containing upwards of 700 Views, &c. finely engraved by capital Artists; a new Edition, corrected and greatly enlarged, of

The ANTIQUITIES of ENGLAND and WALES.

Being a Collection of Views of the most remarkable Ruins and ancient Buildings, accurately drawn on the Spot. To each View is added, an Historical Account of its Situation, when and by whom built (tracing its Possessors from its Foundation to the present Time,) with every interesting Circumstance relating thereto. And to render this Work a complete Introduction to the Study of every Species of our national Antiquities; a Description is given of the several Kinds of Druidical Monuments. Boards, 13l. 10s.

Also THE SUPPLEMENT to the large Edition, in 4 Vols. printed on a superfine Royal Quarto, and comprized in 44 Numbers; containing an Addenda to the Preface of the former Edition, and upwards of 300 Views, &c. in the Supplement, including the County Maps, a General Index to the 6 Vols. as likewise an Index-Map, shewing the Situation of each Building contained in the Whole, with a Portrait of the Author, engraved by Bartolozzi, which completes the above Work.

The first Part of the Military History, being

A TREATISE on ANCIENT ARMOUR and WEAPONS,

Taken from the original Armour in the Tower of London, and other Arsenals, Museums, and Cabinets, illustrated with 51 Copper-plates, containing upwards of 200 Subjects, beautifully engraved by Mr. Hamilton, President of the Royal Society of Great Britain. Price in Boards, 2l. 2s.

A PROVINCIAL GLOSSARY

With a Collection of local Proverbs and popular Superstitions. Price in Books, 5s.

RULES for DRAWING CARICATURES,

With an ESSAY on COMIC PAINTING. Price 2s.

N. B. The Reviewers conclude their Criticism of this Production thus:—"Mr. Grose has given a Number of engraved Sketches, to elucidate his Principles; and these seem to have been drawn with so much Truth and Correctness, that they ought, as he observes, to be considered in the Light of Mathematical Diagrams.—To the Rules and Instructions are added an ESSAY on COMIC PAINTING: This Piece abounds with so many witty, sensible, and apposite Remarks, that we cannot help lamenting the Want of Room for a few Extracts from it for the Entertainment of our Readers, whom we must therefore refer to the Pamphlet for further Gratification."—MONTHLY REVIEW for August last.

A GUIDE to HEALTH, BEAUTY, HONOUR and RICHES;

Being a Collection of Humorous Advertisements, pointing out the Means to obtain those Blessings. To which is added, a suitable Introductory Preface. Price 1s. 6d.







Grose, Francis, 1731-1791

Military antiquities

Bd.: 2

London 1786

Res/4 Brit. 46 c-2

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10887938-3